CITY OF HOUSTON
DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND ENGINEERING
WATER ENGINEERING DIVISION

PROJECT MANUAL

RENOVATION OF THE 4200 LEELAND ANNEX & IMPROVEMENTS AT THE NEWPP ADMINISTRATION BUILDING

WBS No. S-001000-0052-4

VOLUME 1 of 1

Divisions 00 through 16

STATE OF TEXAS
WILLIAM P. KRASNER
93782
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER

William P. Krasner
12-4-15

HUITT-ZOLLARS, INC.
TBPE FIRM # F-761
1500 S. DAIRY ASHFORD, SUITE 200
HOUSTON, TEXAS 77077
281-496-0066

Document 00010

TABLE OF CONTENTS

NOTE: Bold capitalized Specification Sections are included in the City of Houston Department of Public Works and Engineering Standard Construction Specifications for Wastewater Collection Systems, Water Lines, Storm Drainage, Street Paving, and Traffic located here: **http://documents.publicworks.houstontx.gov/document-center/cat_view/88-engineering-and-construction/92-specifications/208-division-02-16-standard-specifications.html**; and are incorporated in Project Manuals by reference as if copied verbatim. Documents listed "for filing" are to be provided by Bidder and are not included in this Project Manual unless indicated for example only. The Document numbers and titles hold places for actual documents to be submitted by Contractor during Bid, post-bid, or construction phase of the Project. Specification Sections marked with an asterisk (*) are amended by a supplemental specification, printed on blue paper and placed in front of the Specification it amends. Documents in the 200, 300 and 400 series of Division 00, except for Document 00410B – Bid Form, Part B, are not part of the Contract.

Doc. No. **Document Title** **Doc. Date**

INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION

00010 Table of Contents 08-01-2015
00015 List of Drawings 02-01-2004
00041 List of Pre-qualified Asbestos & Lead Abatement Contractors 03-21-2012

BIDDING REQUIREMENTS

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

00200 Instructions to Bidders 08-01-2015
00210 Supplementary Instructions to Bidders 08-01-2015
00220 Request for Bid Information 06-11-2004

INFORMATION AVAILABLE TO BIDDERS
00320 Geotechnical Information 09-02-2005

BID FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS
00410 Bid Form, Parts A & B 08-01-2015
00430 Bidder's Bond (For filing; Example Form) 02-01-2004
00450 Bidder's Statement of MWBE/PDBE/DBE/SBE Status 07-01-2013
00452 Contractor Submission List - Fair Campaign Ordinance 04-30-2004
00453 Bidder's Statement of Residency 02-01-2004
00454 Affidavit of Non-interest 02-01-2004
00455 Affidavit of Ownership or Control 09-04-2007
00457 Conflict of Interest Questionnaire 02-28-2006

Doc. No.	Document Title	Doc. Date
00459	Contractor's Statement Regarding Previous Contracts Subject to EEO	02-01-2004
00460	(POP-1) Pay or Play Acknowledgement Form	07-03-2012
00470	Bidder's MWSBE Participation Plan	08-01-2015
00471	Pre-bid Good Faith Efforts	08-01-2015
00472	Bidder's Goal Deviation Request	08-01-2015
POST-BID PROCEDURES		
00495	Post-bid Procedures	08-01-2013

CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

AGREEMENT		
00501	Resolution of Contractor	02-01-2010
00520	Agreement	07-01-2013
00570	Contractor's Revised MWSBE Participation Plan	08-01-2013
00571	Record of Post-Award Good Faith Efforts	08-01-2013
00572	Contractor's Request for Plan Deviation	08-01-2013
BONDS AND CERTIFICATES		
00600	List of Proposed Subcontractors and Suppliers	07-01-2013
00601	Drug Policy Compliance Agreement	02-01-2004
00602	Contractor's Drug Free Workplace Policy (For filing)	
00604	History of OSHA Actions and List of On-the-job Injuries	02-01-2004
00605	List of Safety Impact Positions	02-01-2004
00606	Contractor's Certification of No Safety Impact Positions	02-01-2004
00610	Performance Bond	05-17-2005
00611	Statutory Payment Bond	05-17-2005
00612	One-year Maintenance Bond	05-17-2005
00620	Affidavit of Insurance (with attached Certificates of Insurance)	02-01-2004
00622	Name and Qualifications of Proposed Superintendent (For filing)	
00624	Affidavit of Compliance with Affirmative Action Program	02-01-2004
00630	(POP-2) Certification of Compliance with Pay or Play Program	07-03-2012
00631	(POP-3) City of Houston Pay or Play Program – List of Subcontractors	07-03-2012
00642	Monthly Subcontractor Payment Reporting Form	02-01-2010
00646	Payment Notification Explanation of Withholding	02-01-2010
GENERAL CONDITIONS		
00700	General Conditions	08-15-2015
SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS		
00800	Supplementary Conditions	12-30-2015
00805	Equal Employment Opportunity Program Requirements	05-01-2012
00808	Requirements for the City of Houston Program for Minority,	

Doc. No.	Document Title	Doc. Date
	Women, and Small Business Enterprises (MWSBE), and Persons with Disabilities Business Enterprises (PDBE) Program	12-23-2015
00820	Wage Scale for Engineering Construction	02-01-2015
00821	Wage Scale for Building Construction	02-01-2015
00830	Trench Safety Geotechnical Information	02-01-2004
00840	Pay or Play Program Construction	07-03-2012

ADDENDA AND MODIFICATIONS

00931	Request for Information	02-01-2004

SPECIFICATIONS

DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01110	Summary of Work	06-27-2005
01145	Use of Premises	01-01-2011
01255	Change Order Procedures	08-01-2003
01270	Measurement and Payment	08-01-2003
01292	Schedule of Values	08-01-2003
01312	Coordination and Meetings	08-01-2003
01321	Construction Photographs	08-01-2003
01325	Construction Schedule	08-01-2003
01326	Construction Schedule (Bar Chart)	08-01-2003
01330	Submittal Procedures	08-01-2003
01340	Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples	08-01-2003
01351	Environmental Safety and Worker Protection	01-01-2011
01410	TPDES Requirements (with Attachments)	02-01-2011
01422	Reference Standards	08-01-2003
01450	Contractor's Quality Control	08-01-2003
01452	Inspection Services	08-01-2003
01454	Testing Laboratory Services	08-01-2003
01502	Mobilization	08-01-2008
01504	Temporary Facilities and Controls	01-01-2011
01506	Diversion Pumping	08-01-2003
01520	Temporary Field Office	02-08-2012
01554	Traffic Control and Street Signs	07-01-2012
01555	Traffic Control and Regulation	01-01-2011
01560	Site Security	01-15-2016
01562	Tree and Plant Protection	01-01-2011
01570	Storm Water Pollution Control	01-26-2012
01575	Stabilized Construction Access	02-01-2011
01576	Waste Material Disposal	08-01-2003
01578	Control of Ground and Surface Water	01-01-2011
01580	Project Identification Signs	08-01-2003
01581	Excavation in Public Way Permit Signs	08-01-2003

Doc. No.	Document Title	Doc. Date
01610	Basic Product Requirements	01-01-2011
01630	Product Substitution Procedures	08-01-2003
01650	Equipment Nomenclature, Data Identification and Data Input	11-23-2015
01725	Field Surveying	01-01-2011
01731	Cutting and Patching	01-01-2011
01732	Procedure for Water Valve Assistance (with Attachments)	08-01-2003
01740	Site Restoration	08-01-2003
01755	Starting Systems	08-01-2003
01770	Closeout Procedures	08-01-2003
01782	Operations and Maintenance Data	08-01-2003
01785	Project Record Documents	08-01-2003
01820	Demonstration and Training	04-30-2009
01951	Commissioning	04-30-2009

DIVISION 2 - SITE WORK

02081	**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE MANHOLES**	**01-01-2011**
02082	**PRECAST CONCRETE MANHOLES**	**12-01-2014**
02083	**FIBERGLASS MANHOLES**	**01-01-2011**
02084	**FRAMES, GRATES, RINGS, AND COVERS**	**12-01-2014**
02085	**VALVE BOXES, METER BOXES, AND METER VAULTS**	**01-01-2011**
02136	**WASTE MATERIAL HANDLING, TESTING AND DISPOSAL**	**01-01-2011**
02221	**REMOVING EXISTING PAVEMENTS AND STRUCTURES**	**07-01-2009**
02233	**CLEARING AND GRUBBING**	**01-01-2011**
02260	**TRENCH SAFETY SYSTEM**	**02-01-2011**
02316	**EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR STRUCTURES**	**01-01-2011**
02317	**EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR UTILITIES**	**01-01-2011**
02318	**EXTRA UNIT PRICE WORK FOR EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL**	**01-01-2011**
02319	**BORROW**	**01-01-2011**
02320	**UTILITY BACKFILL MATERIALS**	**01-01-2011**
02321	**CEMENT STABILIZED SAND**	**01-01-2011**
02322	**FLOWABLE FILL**	**08-01-2008**
02330	**EMBANKMENT**	**10-01-2002**
02411	Selective Demolition	01-13-2016
02447	**AUGERING PIPE AND CONDUIT**	**10-01-2002**
02465	**DRILLED SHAFT FOUNDATIONS**	**10-01-2002**
02502	**STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**	**01-01-2011**
02506	**POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE**	**01-01-2011**
02511	**WATER LINES**	**01-01-2011**
02512	**WATER TAP AND SERVICE LINE INSTALLATION**	**04-27-2012**
02513	**WET CONNECTIONS**	**10-01-2002**
02514	**DISINFECTION OF WATER LINES**	**01-01-2011**
02515	**HYDROSTATIC TESTING OF PIPELINES**	**01-01-2011**
02525	**TAPPING SLEEVES AND VALVES**	**01-01-2011**

Doc. No.	Document Title	Doc. Date
02526	**WATER METERS**	**01-01-2011**
02531	**GRAVITY SANITARY SEWERS**	**01-01-2011**
02532	**SANITARY SEWER FORCE MAINS**	**01-01-2011**
02533	**ACCEPTANCE TESTING FOR SANITARY SEWERS**	**01-01-2011**
02534	**SANITARY SEWER SERVICE STUBS OR RECONNECTIONS**	**01-01-2011**
02611	**REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE**	**12-01-2014**
02621	**GEOTEXTILE**	**10-01-2002**
02631	**STORM SEWERS**	**12-01-2014**
02632	**CAST-IN-PLACE INLETS, HEADWALLS, AND WINGWALLS**	**10-01-2002**
02751	**CONCRETE PAVING**	**07-01-2009**
02752S	*Concrete Pavement Joints*	*12-30-2009*
***02752**	**CONCRETE PAVEMENT JOINTS**	**10-01-2002**
02753	**CONCRETE PAVEMENT CURING**	**10-01-2002**
02754	**CONCRETE DRIVEWAYS**	**09-01-2002**
02771	**CURB, CURB AND GUTTER, AND HEADERS**	**10-01-2002**
02775	**CONCRETE SIDEWALKS**	**10-01-2002**
02811	**LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION**	**10-01-2002**
02911	**TOPSOIL**	**10-01-2002**
02912	**TREE, PLANT, AND HARDSCAPE PROTECTION**	**07-01-2009**
02915	**TREE PLANTING**	**01-01-2011**
02921	**HYDROMULCH SEEDING**	**01-01-2011**
02922	**SODDING**	**07-01-2009**
02951	**PAVEMENT REPAIR AND RESTORATION**	**07-01-2009**

DIVISION 3 – CONCRETE

03100	Concrete Formwork	11-10-2015
03200	Concrete Reinforcement	11-10-2015
03250	Concrete Joints and Joint Accessories	11-10-2015
03300	Cast-In-Place Concrete	11-10-2015
03313	Lightweight Structural Concrete	11-10-2015
03350	Concrete Finishes	11-10-2015
03600	Grout	11-10-2015
03740	Modifications to Existing Concrete	11-10-2015

DIVISION 4 - MASONRY

04200	Concrete Unit Masonry	04-30-2009

DIVISION 5 - METALS

05120	Structural Steel	04-30-2009
05210	Steel Joists and Joist Girders	04-30-2009
05311	Steel Floor Deck	11-10-2015
05400	Cold-Formed Metal Framing	11-10-2015
05500	Miscellaneous Metals	11-10-2015

Doc. No.	Document Title	Doc. Date
05530	Metal Gratings and Cover Plates	11-10-2015
DIVISION 6 - WOOD AND PLASTICS		
06105	Miscellaneous Carpentry	11-10-2015
06261	Mineral Profile Paneling	11-10-2015
06402	Interior Architectural Woodwork	11-10-2015
06423	Interior Laboratory Woodwork	11-10-2015
DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION		
07115	Bituminous Dampproofing	11-10-2015
07160	Underslab Vapor Retarder	11-10-2015
07190	Water Repellents	11-10-2015
07210	Building Insulation	11-10-2015
07540	Thermoplastic Membrane Roofing	11-10-2015
07555	Modified Bituminous Protected Membrane Roofing	11-10-2015
07710	Manufactured Roof Specialties	11-10-2015
07720	Roof Accessories	11-10-2015
07841	Through-Penetration Firestop Systems	11-10-2015
07842	Fire Resistive Joint Systems	11-10-2015
07920	Joint Sealants	11-10-2015
DIVISION 8 - DOORS AND WINDOWS		
08111	Standard Steel Doors and Frames	11-10-2015
08114	Custom Steel Doors and Frames	11-10-2015
08120	Interior Aluminum Door/ Sidelight Frames and Partition Trim	11-10-2015
08211	Flush Wood Doors	11-10-2015
08212	Site and Rail Wood Doors	11-10-2015
08220	Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Doors and Frames	11-10-2015
08311	Access Doors and Frames	11-10-2015
08331	Overhead Coiling Doors	11-10-2015
08411	Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts	11-10-2015
08710	Door Hardware	11-10-2015
08800	Glazing	11-10-2015
08830	Mirrors	11-10-2015
DIVISION 9 – FINISHES		
09260	Gypsum Board Assemblies	11-10-2015
09310	Porcelain Tile	11-10-2015
09511	Acoustical Panel Ceilings	11-10-2015
09521	Acoustical Wall Panels	11-10-2015
09651	Resilient Flooring, Base and Accessories	11-10-2015
09680	Carpet	11-10-2015
09705	Epoxy Resin Composition Flooring	11-10-2015

Doc. No.	Document Title	Doc. Date
09911	Exterior Painting	11-10-2015
09912	Interior Painting	11-10-2015
09960	High Performance Coatings	11-10-2015
09970	High Performance Low-Voc Concrete Sealer	11-10-2015
DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES		
10101	Visual Display Surfaces	11-10-2015
10431	Signage	11-10-2015
10520	Fire Protection Specialties	11-10-2015
10730	Walkway Covers	11-10-2015
DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT		
11315	Packaged Pump Station	11-10-2015
11420	Peristaltic Sampling Pumps, Piping and Equipment	11-10-2015
11440	Pre-Engineered Walk-In Coolers	11-10-2015
11600	Lab Equipment	11-10-2015
DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS		
12360	Laboratory Casework	11-10-2015
12491	Horizontal Louver Blinds	11-10-2015
12500	Furniture Systems	11-10-2015
12566	Appliances	11-10-2015
DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION		
13730	Access Control	11-10-2015
13740	Intrusion Detection	11-10-2015
13760	Video Surveillance	11-10-2015
13851	Addressable Fire Alarm System	11-10-2015
DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING SYSTEMS		
DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL		
15005	Mechanical General Provisions	11-10-2015
15008	Mechanical Division 15 Submittals	11-10-2015
15058	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment	11-10-2015
15060	Hangers and Supports	11-10-2015
15072	Vibration Controls for Piping and Equipment	11-10-2015
15077	Identification for Piping and Equipment	11-10-2015
15081	Duct Insulation	11-10-2015
15083	Pipe Insulation	11-10-2015
15093	Sleeves and Seals for HVAC Piping	11-10-2015
15183	Refrigerant Piping	11-10-2015
15300	Fire Suppression	11-10-2015
15400	Plumbing	11-10-2015

Doc. No.	Document Title	Doc. Date
15500	Lab Gas Piping and Equipment	11-10-2015
15732	Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units	11-10-2015
15733	Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units	11-10-2015
15738	Split System Air Conditioners	11-10-2015
15815	Metal Ducts	11-10-2015
15820	Air Duct Accessories	11-10-2015
15837	Centrifugal Fans	11-10-2015
15838	HVAC Power Ventilators	11-10-2015
15855	Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles	11-10-2015
15861	Particulate Air Filtration	11-10-2015
15900	Instrumentation and Control for HVAC	11-10-2015
15950	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	11-10-2015
15951	Commissioning of HVAC	11-10-2015

DIVISION 16 – ELECTRICAL

16010	Electrical General Provisions	11-10-2015
16060	Grounding and Bonding	11-10-2015
16073	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems	11-10-2015
16075	Electrical Identification	11-10-2015
16091	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling	11-10-2015
16120	Conductors and Cables	11-10-2015
16123	Control Voltage Electrical Power Cables	11-10-2015
16130	Raceways and Boxes	11-10-2015
16140	Wiring Devices	11-10-2015
16145	Lighting Control Devices	11-10-2015
16269	Variable Frequency Motor Controllers	11-10-2015
16289	Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits	11-10-2015
16410	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	11-10-2015
16420	Enclosed Controllers	11-10-2015
16442	Panelboards	11-10-2015
16460	Dry-Type Transformers	11-10-2015
16461	Low-Voltage Transformers	11-10-2015
16475	Fuses – 600 Volt and Below	11-10-2015
16490	Enclosed Safety Switches	11-10-2015
16510	Lighting Fixtures and Lamps	11-10-2015
16711	Pathways for Communication Systems	11-10-2015
16712	Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems	11-10-2015
16714	Communications Equipment Room Fittings	11-10-2015
16717	Communications Horizontal Cabling	11-10-2015
16951	Commissioning of Electrical Elements	11-10-2015

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00015

LIST OF DRAWINGS

Sheet Number	Sheet Designation	Drawing Title
1		COVER SHEET
2	G-001	INDEX OF DRAWINGS
3	G-002	GENERAL INFORMATION
4	01-G-001	CODE SUMMARY
5	01-C-101	SITE CIVIL GRADING AND STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN
6	01-C-102	SITE CIVIL & SWPPP DETAILS
7	01-C-110	SAMPLE LINE LAYOUT
8	01-C-111	SAMPLE LINE ROUTES IN EXISTING TRENCH
9	01-C-112	TRENCH SECTION AND DETAILS
10	01-C-210	SAMPLE PUMP SCHEMATIC AND DETAILS
11	01-C-211	SAMPLE POINTS SP-01 & SP-02
12	01-C-212	FLOC/SED SPLITTER BOX SAMPLE PUMPS SP-03 & SP-04
13	01-C-213	PRE UV AND POST UV SAMPLE POINTS SP-05 & SP-06
14	01-C-214	POINT OF ENTRY SAMPLE POINT SP-07
15	01-C-215	SAMPLE WATER RECYCLE PUMP STATION AND FORCE MAIN CONNECTION
16	01-C-216	PUMP SUPPORT DETAILS
17	01-A-100	DEMOLITION PLAN
18	01-A-110	FLOOR PLAN
19	01-A-120	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN
20	01-A-130	ROOF PLAN & DETAILS
21	01-A-201	BUILDING ELEVATIONS
22	01-A-301	BUILDING SECTION
23	01-A-401	WALL SECTIONS
24	01-A-402	WALL SECTIONS
25	01-A-403	WALL SECTIONS
26	01-A-404	WALL SECTIONS
27	01-A-501	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
28	01-A-502	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
29	01-A-503	FURNITURE LAYOUT & INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
30	01-A-601	ARCHITECTURAL DETAILS
31	01-A-602	ARCHITECTURAL DETAILS
32	01-A-603	OVERHEAD DOOR DETAILS
33	01-A-701	ARCHITECTURAL SCHEDULES
34	01-A-801	INTERIOR MILLWORK DETAILS
35	01-S-000	STRUCTURAL GENERAL NOTES
36	01-S-101	FOUNDATION PLAN

Sheet Number	Sheet Designation	Drawing Title
37	01-S-201	ROOF FRAMING PLAN
38	01-S-501	STRUCTURAL TYPICAL FOUNDATION DETAILS
39	01-S-511	STRUCTURAL FRAMING DETAILS
40	01-M-001	MECHANICAL GENERAL NOTES AND SYMBOLS
41	01-M-100	MECHANICAL DEMO PLAN
42	01-M-110	MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN
43	01-M-201	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
44	01-M-301	MECHANICAL DETAILS
45	01-E-001	ELECTRICAL NOTES AND SYMBOLS
46	01-E-101	ELECTRICAL DEMO POWER / LIGHTING PLAN
47	01-E-102	ELECTRICAL POWER PLAN
48	01-E-103	ELECTRICAL SITE PLAN
49	01-E-201	LIGHTING PLAN
50	01-E-301	FIRE ALARM PLAN
51	01-E-302	COMMUNICATIONS PLAN
52	01-E-501	ELECTRICAL DETAILS
53	01-E-601	PANEL SCHEDULES
54	01-E-602	PANEL SCHEDULES
55	01-E-701	ONE LINE DIAGRAM
56	01-P-001	PLUMBING LEGEND, GENERAL NOTES & SCHEDULES
57	01-P-100	PLUMBING DEMOLITION PLAN
58	01-P-101	PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN
59	01-P-501	PLUMBING DETAILS FIRE PROTECTION
60	01-F-101	FIRE PROTECTION FLOOR PLAN
61	01-Q-110	EQUIPMENT PLAN AND SCHEDULE
62	09-G-001	CODE SUMMARY
63	09-C-100	TOPOGRAPHIC & PLANIMETRIC SURVEY
64	09-C-110	SITE PLAN
65	09-C-901	DETAILS
66	09-A-100	DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN
67	09-A-110	FLOOR PLAN
68	09-A-111	FURNITURE LAYOUT
69	09-A-120	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN
70	09-A-130	ROOF DEMOLITION PLAN
71	09-A-131	ROOF PLAN AND DETAILS
72	09-A-132	ROOF DETAILS
73	09-A-201	BUILDING ELEVATIONS
74	09-A-401	WALL SECTIONS
75	09-A-402	WALL SECTIONS
76	09-A-403	WALL SECTIONS
77	09-A-501	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS

Sheet Number	Sheet Designation	Drawing Title
78	09-A-502	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
79	09-A-503	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
80	09-A-504	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
81	09-A-505	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
82	09-A-506	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
83	09-A-507	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
84	09-A-701	ARCHITECTURAL SCHEDULE
85	09-A-702	ARCHITECTURAL SCHEDULE
86	09-A-801	INTERIOR MILLWORK DETAILS
87	09-A-802	INTERIOR MILLWORK DETAILS
88	09-A-803	INTERIOR MILLWORK DETAILS
89	09-A-901	ARCHITECTURAL DETAILS
90	09-A-902	ARCHITECTURAL DETAILS
91	09-A-903	ARCHITECTURAL DETAILS
92	09-A-904	ARCHITECTURAL DETAILS
93	09-S-100	STRUCTURAL ROOF PLAN
94	09-S-900	STRUCTURAL DETAILS
95	09-S-901	STRUCTURAL DETAILS
96	09-M-001	MECHANICAL GENERAL NOTES AND SYMBOLS
97	09-M-101	MECHANICAL DEMO FLOOR PLAN
98	09-M-102	MECHANICAL DEMO ROOF PLAN
99	09-M-201	MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN
100	09-M-202	MECHANICAL ROOF PLAN
101	09-M-301	MECHANICAL ENLARGED PLAN
102	09-M-401	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
103	09-M-402	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
104	09-M-501	MECHANICAL DETAILS
105	09-M-502	MECHANICAL DETAILS
106	09-E-001	ELECTRICAL GENERAL NOTES, LEGEND & ABBREVIATIONS
107	09-E-100	ELECTRICAL SITE PLAN
108	09-E-101	ELECTRICAL DEMO POWER PLAN
109	09-E-102	ELECTRICAL DEMO LIGHTING PLAN
110	09-E-201	ELECTRICAL POWER PLAN
111	09-E-201A	ENLARGED ELECTRICAL POWER PLANS
112	09-E-201B	ENLARGED ELECTRICAL PLANS
113	09-E-202	ELECTRICAL LIGHTING PLAN
114	09-E-203	ELECTRICAL/MECHANICAL POWER PLAN
115	09-E-204	ELECTRICAL/MECHANICAL ROOF POWER PLAN
116	09-E-301	FIRE ALARM PLAN
117	09-E-302	COMMUNICATIONS AND SECURITY PLAN

Sheet Number	Sheet Designation	Drawing Title
118	09-E-501	ELECTRICAL DETAILS
119	09-E-502	ELECTRICAL DETAILS
120	09-E-601	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES
121	09-E-602	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES
122	09-E-603	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES
123	09-E-604	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES
124	09-E-701	ONE LINE DIAGRAM
125	09-E-702	CCTV ONE LINE DIAGRAM
126	09-E-703	SECURITY ONE LINE DIAGRAM
127	09-P-001	PLUMBING LEGEND AND SCHEDULES
128	09-P-002	PIPING SCHEDULES
129	09-P-100	PLUMBING DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN
130	09-P-110	LAB GAS FLOOR PLAN
131	09-P-111	LAB GAS FLOOR PLAN
132	09-P-112	PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN
133	09-P-113	PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN
134	09-P-114	ROOF GAS PLAN
135	09-P-401	DI ENLARGED FLOOR PLAN
136	09-P-501	PLUMBING DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS
137	09-P-502	PLUMBING DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS
138	09-P-503	PLUMBING DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS
139	09-P-504	PLUMBING DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS
140	09-P-505	PLUMBING DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS
141	09-P-506	PLUMBING DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS
142	09-P-507	PLUMBING DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS
143	09-P-601	PLUMBING DETAILS AND SCHEDULES
144	01-F-110	FIRE PROTECTION FLOOR PLAN
145	01-F-501	FIRE PROTECTION DETAILS
146	09-Q-110	EQUIPMENT PLAN
147	09-Q-201	EQUIPMENT SCHEDULE
148	09-Q-202	EQUIPMENT SCHEDULE
149	01-C-100	TOPOGRAPHIC & PLANIMETRIC SURVEY

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00041

LIST OF PRE-QUALIFIED ASBESTOS/LEAD ABATEMENT, MOLD & SOIL REMEDIATION, DEMOLITION AND PETROLEUM STORAGE TANK REMOVAL CONTRACTORS

1.01 DOCUMENT INCLUDES

A. Authorization

B. List of Authorized Contractors.

2.0 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Section 13280 – Hazardous Materials Remediation

B. Section 13281&13282 – Abatement of Asbestos/Lead Containing Materials

3.0 AUTHORIZATION

A. The list of Contractors Pre-qualified for Asbestos/Lead Abatement, Mold & Soil Remediation, Demolition & Petroleum Storage Tank Removal ("List") was authorized on March 21, 2012, by City of Houston Council Motion No. 12-0180.

B. Only those firms on the List can be utilized by Bidder in subcontracting for asbestos & lead abatement, mold & soil remediation, demolition & petroleum storage tank removal included in the Work.

C. The List is administered by General Services Department. All inquiries should be directed to Gabriel Mussio (832-393-8079).

4.0 LIST OF AUTHORIZED CONTRACTORS

A. As of the date specified in paragraph 3.0.A., all contractors listed in paragraph 4.0.B were licensed in the State of Texas for the type of work. Authorized Contractors must maintain there license to be on the list.

B. Authorized Contractors:

1. AAR Incorporated, 6640 Signat Drive, Houston, Texas 77041

2. A & M Environmental, LLC, 6536 Supply Row, Houston, Texas 77011

3. ARC Abatement Inc., 6827 Signat Drive, Houston, Texas 77041

4. AIA General Contractors, Inc., 18331 Running Vine Lane, Spring, Texas 77379

5. Arrow Services, Inc., 10202 Airline Drive, Suite A, Houston, Texas 77037

6. Basic Environmental Group, LLC., 1839 Key Biscayne Court, Houston,

Texas 77065

7. Cherry Environmental Services, Inc., 4501 Cherry Lane, Santa Fe, Texas 77517

8. Clark-Tech Environmental Systems, Inc., 1515 Globe Street, Houston, Texas 77034

9. CRG Environmental Services, LLC., 2504 Avenue I, Rosenberg, Texas 77471

10. DNB Enterprises, Inc., 12969 West Hardy, Houston, Texas 77037

11. Dunphey Petroleum Services, Inc., 3505 Daphne, Houston, Texas 77021

12. EC Government Services, 5850 San Felipe, Suite 400, Houston, Texas 77057

13. Effective Environmental, Inc., 9950 Chemical Road, Pasadena, Texas 77507

14. GenTech Construction Company, LLC., 2211 West 34th Street, Houston, Texas 77018

15. Hazard Assessment Leaders, Inc., dba HAL, Inc., 5311 Petty Street, Houston, Texas 77007

16. Inland Environmental, Ltd., PO Box 6751, Kingwood, Texas 77325

17. J.T.B. Services, Inc., 9026 Lambright, Houston, Texas 77075

18. NCM, 16421 Aldine Westfield Road, Houston, Texas 77032

19. PfP Abatement Group, LLC., 3823 Shadow Trail Drive, Houston, Texas 77084

20. PEMCO, Inc., PO Box 2009, Pearland, Texas 77588-2009

21. RNDI Companies, Inc., 2255 Ridge Road, Suite 216, Rockwell, Texas 75807

22. Separation Systems Consultants, Inc., 17041 El Camino Real, Suite 200 Houston, Texas 77058

23. Texas Environmental Control, Inc., 4623 Steffani Lane, Houston, Texas 77041

24. Weston Solutions, Inc., 5599 San Felipe, Suite 700, Houston, Texas 77056

25. 1 Priority Environmental Services, Inc., 2573 Gravel Drive, Fort Worth, Texas 76118

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00200

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

PARA	TITLE	PAGE
1.0	*RELATED DOCUMENTS*	3
2.0	*DEFINITIONS*	3
3.0	*NOTICE TO BIDDERS*	3
4.0	*BID DOCUMENTS*	4
5.0	*EXAMINATION OF DOCUMENTS, SITE, AND LOCAL CONDITIONS*	4
6.0	*INTERPRETATIONS DURING BIDDING*	4
7.0	*ADDENDA*	4
8.0	*SUBSTITUTION OF PRODUCTS*	5
9.0	*PREPARATION OF BIDS*	5
10.0	*BID SUBMISSION*	5
11.0	*BID SECURITY*	5
12.0	*SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS*	6
13.0	*MODIFICATION OR WITHDRAWAL OF BID*	6
14.0	*BID DISQUALIFICATION*	6
15.0	*PREBID MEETING*	6
16.0	*OPENING OF BIDS*	6
17.0	*EVALUATION AND CONSIDERATION OF BIDS*	6
18.0	*ACCEPTANCE OF THE BID*	6

Document 00200

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

1.0 *RELATED DOCUMENTS*

A. Document 00210 – Supplementary Instructions to Bidders.

B. Document 00320 – Geotechnical Information.

C. Document 00330 – Existing Conditions.

D. Document 00410 – Bid Form, Parts A & B.

E. Document 00495 – Post-Bid Procedures.

F. Document 00520 – Agreement.

G. Document 00700 – General Conditions.

H. Document 00800 – Supplementary Conditions.

2.0 *DEFINITIONS*

A. Definitions set forth in Document 00700 – General Conditions and in other documents of Project Manual, are applicable to Bid Documents.

B. *Addendum:* Written or graphic instrument issued prior to Bid opening, which clarifies, modifies, corrects, or changes Bid Documents.

C. *Alternate:* The total amount bid for additions to work, as described in Section 01110 – Summary of Work. Each Alternate includes cost of effects on adjacent or related components, and Bidder's overhead and profit.

D. *Bid:* A complete and properly signed offer to perform the Work in accordance with this Document and Document 00210 – Supplementary Instructions to Bidders.

E. *Bid Date:* Date and time set for receipt of Bids as stated in Document 00210 – Supplementary Instructions to Bidders, or as modified by Addenda.

F. *Bid Documents:* Project Manual, Drawings, and Addenda.

G. *Bid Supplement: A* Bid submittal that is required in Document 00410 – Bid Form.

H. *Bidder:* Person or firm, identified in Document 00410B – Bid Form – Part B, including its successors, and its authorized representative.

I. *Code:* Code of Ordinances, Houston, Texas.

J. *Low Bidder:* Apparent successful Bidder that qualifies as a responsible Bidder and that submits Bid with lowest Total Bid Price.

K. *Project Manager:* Person designated in Document 00100 – Advertisement for Bids and Document 00220 – Request for Bid Information to represent the City during bidding and post-bid periods.

L. *Project Manual:* Volume assembled for the Work that includes the bidding requirements, sample forms, Conditions of the Contract, and Specifications.

M. *Security Deposit:* A certified check, cashier's check, or bid bond in the amount of 10 percent of the Total Bid Price.

N. *Total Bid Price:* Total amount bid for performing the Work as identified by Bidder in Document 00410B – Bid Form – Part B, which amount includes:

1. Stipulated Price;
2. Total Base Unit Prices;
3. Total Extra Unit Prices;
4. Total Cash Allowances; and
5. Total Alternates.

3.0 *NOTICE TO BIDDERS*

A. The City of Houston Fair Campaign Ordinance makes it unlawful for a Contractor to offer any contribution to a candidate for City elective office (including elected officers and officers-elect) during a certain period of time prior to and following the award of the Contract by the City Council. The term "Contractor" includes proprietors of proprietorships, all partners of partnerships, and all officers, directors, and holders of 10 percent or more of the outstanding shares of corporations. A statement disclosing the names and business addresses of each of those persons will be required to be submitted with each bid or proposal; for a City Contract. Bidder shall complete and submit Document 00452 – Form A, Contractor Submission List, City of Houston Fair Campaign Ordinance, with its Bid to comply with this requirement. See Chapter 18 of the Code for further information.

B. Chapter 15, Article VIII, of the City's Code provides that no contract shall be let, nor any other business transaction entered into, by the City with any person indebted to the City or a qualifying entity, if the contractor or transaction comes within the provisions of Section 15-1 (c) of the Code. Exceptions are provided in Section 15-126 of the Code. Bidder shall complete and submit Document 00455 – Affidavit of Ownership or Control, with its Bid to comply with this requirement.

C. Neither bidder(s) nor any person acting on bidder(s)'s behalf shall attempt to influence the outcome of the award by the offer, presentation or promise of gratuities, favors, or anything of value to any appointed or elected official or employee of the City of Houston, their families or staff members. All inquiries regarding the solicitation are to be directed to the designated City Representative identified on the first page of the solicitation. Upon issuance of the solicitation through the pre-award phase and up to the date the City Secretary publicly posts notice of any City Council agenda containing the applicable award, aside from bidder's formal response to the solicitation, through the pre-award phase, written requests for clarification during the period officially designated for such purpose by the City Representative, neither bidder(s) nor persons acting on their behalf shall communicate with any appointed or elected official or employee of the City of Houston, their families or staff through written or oral means in an attempt to persuade or influence the outcome of the award or to obtain or deliver information intended to or which could reasonably result in an advantage to any bidder. However, nothing in this paragraph shall prevent a bidder from making public statements to the City Council convened for a regularly scheduled session after the official selection has been made and placed on the City Council agenda for action, or to a City Council committee convened to discuss a recommendation regarding the solicitation.

4.0 *BID DOCUMENTS*

A. The Bid Documents may be obtained at location specified in Document 00210 – Supplementary Instructions to Bidders.

B. The Bid Documents are made available only for the purpose of bidding on the Work. Receipt of Bid Documents does not grant a license for other purposes.

C. On receipt of Bid Documents, Bidder shall verify that documents are legible and complete, compare contents of Project Manual with Document 00010 – Table of Contents, and compare Index of Drawings with Document 00015 – List of Drawings. Bidder shall notify Project Manager if Bid Documents are incomplete.

D. If City of Houston Standard Specifications or Standard Details are required by the Project Manual, Bidder shall refer to Document 00210 – Supplementary Instructions to Bidders for purchase information.

5.0 *EXAMINATION OF DOCUMENTS, SITE, AND LOCAL CONDITIONS*

A. Bidder shall examine Project site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work shall be performed, conduct appropriate investigations, and correlate personal observations with requirements of the Bid Documents before submitting a Bid.

B. Bidder shall make site investigations to the extent Bidder deems necessary to ascertain extent of subsurface conditions.

C. Failure of Bidder to perform the investigations prior to submitting a Bid does not relieve Bidder of responsibility for investigations, interpretations and proper use of available information in the preparation of its Bid.

D. Bidder shall observe limitations of access to occupied or restricted site as stated in Document 00210 – Supplementary Instructions to Bidders.

6.0 *INTERPRETATIONS DURING BIDDING*

A. Bidder shall immediately submit Document 00220 – Request for Bid Information to Project Manager upon finding errors, discrepancies, or omissions in Bid Documents. Confirmation of receipt of questions by the City is the responsibility of Bidder. Verbal discussions and answers are not binding.

B. Document 00220 – Request for Bid Information must be received at least 10 days before the Bid Date to allow issuance of Addenda in accordance with Paragraph 7.O.D. Replies, if issued, are by Addenda.

7.0 *ADDENDA*

A. Addenda that affect bidding requirements are applicable only during applicable only through issuance of the Notice to Proceed. Addenda that affect the Contract are a part of the Contract.

B. BIDDERS WHO SUBMIT A BID ON THIS PROJECT SHALL BE PRESUMED TO HAVE RECEIVED ALL ADDENDA AND TO HAVE INCLUDED ANY COST THEREOF IN THEIR BIDS, REGARDLESS OF WHETHER THEY ACKNOWLEDGE THE ADDENDA OR NOT.

C. The City will make Addenda available at same location where the Bid Documents may be obtained. The City will notify plan holders of record when Addenda are available. Bidders are responsible for obtaining Addenda after notification.

D. No Addendum will be issued later than noon on Monday before Bid Date, except Addenda with minor clarifications, withdrawing request for Bids, or postponing Bid Date.

8.0 *SUBSTITUTION OF PRODUCTS*

A. No substitutions of Products will be considered during the bidding period.

9.0 *PREPARATION OF BIDS*

A. Bidder shall fill in applicable blanks in Document 00410A&B – Bid Form – Parts A & B and Bid Supplements. In addition, Bidder shall bid all Alternates. Bidder shall properly sign Document 00410B -Bid Form.

B. Bidder shall initial all pages, except signature page, of Document 00410B – Bid Form – Part B.

C. Bidder is responsible for all costs incurred by the Bidder, associated with preparation of its Bid and compliance with Post-bid Procedures.

D. Bidder may not adjust preprinted price on line items stating "Fixed Unit Price" in the description on the Bid Form.

E. Bidder may increase, but not decrease, preprinted price on line items stating "Minimum Bid Price" in the description on the Bid Form by crossing out the minimum and inserting revised price on the line above. Bidder **may not** decrease the preprinted price on line items stating "Minimum Bid Price".

F. Bidder may decrease, but not increase, preprinted price on line items stating "Maximum Bid Price" in the description on the Bid Form by crossing out the maximum and inserting revised price on the line above. Bidder **may not** increase the preprinted price on line items stating "Maximum Bid Price".

G. Bidder shall insert a price no greater than the maximum preprinted range and no less than the preprinted range for line items stating "Fixed Range Unit Price" in the description on the Bid Form by crossing out prices noted and inserting revised price on the line above.

H. Bidder may not adjust Cash Allowance amounts.

10.0 *BID SUBMISSION*

A. City Secretary will receive Bids on Bid Date at location specified in Document 00210 – Supplementary Instructions to Bidders.

B. Bids submitted after Bid Date will be returned to Bidder unopened.

C. Verbal, facsimile, or electronic Bids are invalid and will not be considered.

D. Bidder shall submit in person or by mail one copy of the signed Document 00410 – Bid Form, Parts A and B, along with required Security Deposit, and required Bid Supplements, in a sealed, opaque envelope. In addition, Bidder shall clearly identify Project, Bid Date and Bidder's name on outside of envelope. If forwarded by mail, the sealed envelope containing the Bid must be enclosed in another envelope addressed for postal delivery.

11.0 *BID SECURITY*

A. Bidder shall submit a Security Deposit with its Bid.

B. Certified Check or Cashier's Check

1. Bidder shall make check payable to the City of Houston.

2. A check is submitted on the condition that if Bidder is named Low Bidder and fails either to timely and properly submit documents required in Document 00495 – Post-Bid Procedures, the City will cash the check in accordance with Paragraph 11.0.E.

C. Bid Bond

1. The bid bond must be a valid and enforceable bond, signed by a surety that complies with other requirements set out by law.

2. The bid bond must name the City of Houston as obligee, and be signed by the Bidder as principal and signed and sealed by the surety.

3. The bid bond must be conditioned such that if Bidder is named Low Bidder and then fails to timely and properly submit documents required in Document 00495 – Post-Bid Procedures, surety will be obligated to pay to the City an amount in accordance with Paragraph 11.0.E.

D. Security Deposits will be retained until after the Contract is awarded or all Bids are rejected.

E. Low Bidder forfeits Security Deposit if it fails to timely and properly submit documents required in Document 00495 – Post-Bid Procedures. The City may claim an amount equal to the difference between the Total Bid Price of the defaulting Bidder and the Total Bid Price of the Bidder awarded the Contract. If Security Deposit is a check, the City will reimburse any remaining balance to the defaulting Bidder.

12.0 *SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS*

A. The City may reject proposed Subcontractors or Suppliers.

B. Refer to Document 00800 – Supplementary Conditions, for MWBEPDBE, DBE and SBE goals.

13.0 *MODIFICATION OR WITHDRAWAL OF BID*

A. A Bidder may modify or withdraw a Bid submitted before the Bid Date by written notice to the City Secretary. The notice may not reveal the amount of the original Bid and must be signed by the Bidder.

B. Bidder may not modify or withdraw its Bid by verbal, facsimile, or electronic means.

C. A withdrawn Bid may be resubmitted up to the time designated for receipt of Bids.

14.0 *BID DISQUALIFICATION*

A. The City may disqualify a Bid if the Bidder:

1. fails to provide required Security Deposit in the proper amount;

2. improperly or illegibly completes information required by the Bid Documents;

3. fails to sign Bid or improperly signs Bid;

4. qualifies its Bid; or

5. improperly submits its Bid.

B. When requested, Low Bidder shall present satisfactory evidence that Bidder has regularly engaged in performing construction work as proposed, and has the capital, labor, equipment, and material to perform the Work.

15.0 *PREBID MEETING*

A. A prebid meeting is scheduled to be held at the place, time, and date listed in Document 00210 – Supplementary Instructions to Bidders.

B. All Bidders, subcontractors, and suppliers are invited to attend.

C. Representatives of City Engineer will attend.

16.0 *OPENING OF BIDS*

A. Bids are opened by the City Secretary and publicly read in City Council Chambers on the Public Level in City Hall Annex at 11:00 a.m. on Bid Date.

B. Place and date of Bid opening may be changed in accordance with Sections 15-3(b)(5) and 15-3(b)(6) of the City Code.

17.0 *EVALUATION AND CONSIDERATION OF BIDS*

A. Project Manager will tabulate, record and evaluate Bids.

B. The City may reject all Bids or may reject any defective Bid.

18.0 *ACCEPTANCE OF THE BID*

A. The City will send to Low Bidder Document 00498 – Notice of Intent to Award. Acceptance by the City is conditioned upon Bidder's timely and proper submittal of documents required in Document 00495 – Post-Bid Procedures.

B. The Bid remains open to acceptance and is irrevocable for the period of time stated in Document 00410A – Bid Form – Part A.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00210

SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

The following Paragraphs modify Document 00200 - Instructions to Bidders. Where a portion of the Instructions to Bidders is modified or deleted by these Supplementary Instructions, the unaltered portions of the Instructions to Bidders remains in effect.

2.0 – DEFINITIONS: Add the following Paragraphs to this Section:

O. *Office of Business Opportunity (OBO):* All references to Affirmative Action Contract Compliance Division (AACC) set forth in Document 00700 – General Conditions and in other documents of the Project Manual, shall refer to, and include, the Office of Business Opportunity.

3.0 - NOTICE TO BIDDERS: Add the following Paragraph to this Section:

C. The City will award this contract to a "Local Business", as that term is defined in Section 15-176 of the City of Houston Code of Ordinances ("the Code"):

- If the bid of the Local Business is less than $100,000 and is the lowest responsible bid or is within 5% of the lowest bid received, or
- If the bid of the Local Business is more than $100,000 and is the lowest responsible bid or is within 3% of the lowest bid received, and
- Unless the Director determines that such an award would unduly interfere with contract needs, as provided in Section 15-181 of the Code.

If there is no bid of a Local Business that meets these criteria, the City will award the contract to the lowest responsible bidder.

4.0 – BID DOCUMENTS: Add the following Paragraphs to this Section:

A. Add the following Paragraph A.1:

1. Bid documents may only be obtained electronically at the City's website: http://bidsets.publicworks.houstontx.gov/.

D. Add the following Paragraph D.1:

1. Copies of the City Standard Specifications and Details may be acquired at no cost on the City's website **http://documents.publicworks.houstontx.gov/document-center/cat_view/88-engineering-and-construction/92-specifications/208-division-02-16-standard-specifications.html**

E. The following plan rooms, whose names, addresses, phone and fax numbers were last updated on April 9, 2007, have been authorized by the City to display Bid Documents for examination:
(Note: The Bid Documents furnished to the plan rooms for examination can be in electronic format, in hard copies, or in any other formats pertaining to each City Contracting Division's discretion.)

1. AMTEK Information Services, Inc., 4001 Sherwood Lane, Houston, TX 77092, 713-956-0100, Fax 713-956-5340, Email: planroom@amtekusa.com

2. Associated Builders & Contractors, Inc., (ABC), 3910 Kirby, Suite 131, Houston, TX 77098-4151, 713-523-6222, Fax 713-874-0747. Email: lori@abchouston.org

3. Associated General Contractors (AGC-BB) Building Branch, 3825 Dacoma, Houston, TX 77092-8717, 713-843-3700, Fax 713-843-3701. Email: karla.s@agchouston.org

4. Associated General Contractors, (AGC-HHUI), Highway, Heavy Utilities and Industrial Branch, 2400 Augusta St., Suite 180, Houston, TX 77057, 713-334-7100, Fax 713-334-7130. Email: houston@agctx.org (Attention: Mel Keyser)

5. Construction Information Network, 1225 North Loop West, Suite 550, Houston, TX 77008, 713-868-2233 ext. 329, Fax 866-852-2713. Email: paul.tilford@cnsx.com

6. F. W. Dodge Corporation, 4101 Greenbriar, Suite 320, Houston, TX 77098, 713-529-4895, Fax 713-524-7639. Email: terrie_harris@mcgraw-hill.com

7. Hispanic Contractors Association of Houston (HCA-GHA), 11 Parker Road, Suite 7, Houston, TX 77241, 713-699-2732 or 832-754-3705, Fax 713-695-1556, Email: hispanicontractorsassociation@yahoo.com; or Randymagdaleno@yahoo.com

8. Houston Minority Business Development Center, 2900 Woodridge, Suite 124, Houston, TX 77087, 713-644-0821, Fax 713-644-3523. Email: gtamez@gacompanies.com

9. Reed Construction Data, 30 Technology Parkway South, Suite 100, Norcross, GA – 30092-8629. Tel. 1-800-424-3996 or 1-800-699-8640; Fax 1-800-317-0870 or 1-800-508-5370.

10. The Builders' Exchange of Texas, Inc., 3910 Kirby, Suite 131, Houston, TX 77098, 210-564-6900, Fax: 210-564-6921, Email: houston@bxtx.com

F. Add the following Paragraph F.1:

1. **Designation as a City Business or Local Business**

To be designated as a City or Local Business for the purpose of the Hire Houston First Program, as set out in Article XI of Chapter 15 of the Houston City Code, a bidder or proposer must submit the Hire Houston First Application and Affidavit to the Director of the Mayor's Office of Business Opportunity (OBO) and receive notice that the designation has been approved prior to submission of a bid or proposal. Submit with your bid a valid official letter from OBO with your designation as a City or Local Business.

5.0 - EXAMINATION OF DOCUMENTS, SITE, AND LOCAL CONDITIONS: Insert the following paragraph:

A. Add the following Paragraph D.1:

1. Work will be performed in public right-of-way. The site may be examined at any time during daylight hours.

9.0 – PREPARATION OF BIDS: Add the following Paragraph I to this Paragraph:

I. For math errors the City encounters in analyzing Bids, the following guidance will be used:

In the event of a conflict between:	The Bid Price is:
1. Individual Unit Price and Extension of that Unit Price	Individual Unit Price times Estimated Quantity
2. A Unit Price extension and total of Unit Price Extensions	Sum of all Individual Unit Price Extensions
3. Individual Alternate and total of Alternates	Sum of all Individual Alternates
4. Individual subtotals for Stipulated Price, Base Unit Prices, Extra Unit Prices, Contractor Bonus, Cash Allowances, and Alternates; and the Total Bid Price	Sum of Individual subtotals for Stipulated Price, Base Unit Prices, Extra Unit Prices, Contractor Bonus, Cash Allowances and Alternates

10.0 – BID SUBMISSION: Add the following Paragraph A.1 to this Section:

A. Add the following Paragraph A.1:

1. City Secretary will receive Bids at 900 Bagby, Room P101, Houston, Texas until 10:30 a.m., local time on February 25, 2016.

15.0 – PREBID MEETING: Add the following Paragraph A.1 to this Section:

A. Add the following Paragraph A.1:

1. A Prebid Meeting will be held at 10:00 A.M. on Tuesday, February 9, 2016, at Administration Building, NEWPP, 12121 N. Sam Houston PKWY E., Houston, TX 77396.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00220

REQUEST FOR BID INFORMATION

PROJECT: Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex & Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building

PROJECT No.: WBS No. S-001000-0052-4

TO: John Msigwa, P.E.
15th Floor
611 Walker, Houston, Texas 77002

Phone No. (832) 395-2318
Fax No. (832) 395-2333
Email Addr. john.msigwa@houstontx.gov

(Type or Print question legbly; use back if more space is needed)

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

This request relates to _____ and/or _____
Drawing / Detail No. Specification Section No.

Attachments to this request: _____
_____
_____

_____ _____
Signature Date

_____
(Type or Print Name)

_____
(Type or Print Company Name)

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00320

GEOTECHNICAL INFORMATION

1. DOCUMENT INCLUDES

   A. Soils investigation reports.
   B. Bidder's responsibilities.

2. RELATED DOCUMENTS

   A. Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems

3. SITE INVESTIGATION REPORTS

   A. In the design and preparation of Contract documents for this Project, the City and Design Consultant have used information in geotechnical reports for the investigation and analysis of soils and subsurface conditions at the Project site.

   B. An electronic copy of the report for this project is included in a CD-Rom affixed to the inside front cover of the project manual.

   C. Neither the City nor Design Consultant is responsible for accuracy or completeness of any information or data.

4. GEOTECHNICAL REPORTS

   A. Report No.: 1850 Prepared by (Firm Name): Kenall Inc.; Title: Geotechnical Investigation – Building Improvements for North East Water Purification Plant; Report Date: 9/2014; No. of Pages: 17

5. BIDDER RESPONSIBILITIES

   A. Bidder shall take full responsibility for interpretation and use of information contained in above listed reports for its bidding and construction purposes.

   B. Bidder may perform additional soils investigations as Bidder deems appropriate.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00410A

BID FORM – PART A

To: **The Honorable Mayor and City Council of the City of Houston**
City Hall Annex
900 Bagby Street
Houston, Texas 77002

Project: Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex & Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building

Project No.: WBS No. S–001000-0052-4

Bidder: _____

(Print or type full name of business entity, such as corporation, LLC, etc)

1.0 OFFER

A. Total Bid Price: Having examined the Project location and all matters referred to in Bid Documents for the Project, we, the undersigned, offer to enter into a Contract to perform the Work for the Total Bid Price shown on the signature page of this Document

B. Security Deposit: Included with the Bid is a Security Deposit in the amount of 10 percent of the Total Bid Price subject to terms described in Document 00200 – Instructions to Bidders.

C. Period for Bid Acceptance: This offer is open to acceptance and is irrevocable for 90 days from Bid Date. That period may be extended by mutual written agreement of the City and Bidder.

D. Addenda: All Addenda have been received. Modifications to Bid Documents have been considered and all related costs are included in the Total Bid Price.

E. Bid Supplements: The following documents are attached:

[X] Security Deposit *(as defined in Document 00200 – Instructions to Bidders)*
[X] Document 00450 - Bidder's Statement of MWSBE Status
[X] Document 00452 - Contractor's Submission List - Fair Campaign Ordinance Form A
[X] Document 00453 – Bidder's Statement of Residency *(not required for AIP funded project)*
[X] Document 00454 - Affidavit of Non-interest
[X] Document 00455 - Affidavit of Ownership or Control
[ ] Document 00456 - Bidder's Certificate of Compliance with Buy American Program *(required for AIP funded project)*
[X] Document 00457 – Conflicts of Interest Questionnaire (CIQ)
[ ] Document 00458 - Bidder's Certificate Regarding Foreign Trade Restriction *(required for AIP funded project)*
[ ] Document 00459 - Contractor's Statement Regarding Previous Contracts Subject to EEO *(required for AIP funded project)*

[X] Document 00460 – Pay or Play Acknowledgement Form (POP 1-A)
[X] Document 00470 – Bidder's MWSBE Participation Plan *(required unless no MWSBE participation goal is provided in Document 00800* (the "Goal")*)*.
[X] Document 00471 – Bidder's Record of Good Faith Efforts *(required if the goal in Bidder's Participation Plan–Document 00470 is lower than the Goal).*
[X] Document 00472 – Bidder's Goal Deviation Request *(required if the goal in Bidder's Participation Plan–Document 00470 is lower than the Goal).*
[X] Others as listed: Valid official letter from OBO with your designation as a City or Local Business *(Bidder's Participation Hire Houston First)*

2.0 CONTRACT TIME

A. If offer is accepted, Contractor shall achieve Date of Substantial Completion within **480** calendar days after Date of Commencement of the Work, subject to adjustments of Contract Time as provided in the Contract.

Document 00410B

BID FORM – PART B

1.0 TOTAL BID PRICE HAS BEEN CALCULATED BY BIDDER, USING THE FOLLOWING COMPONENT PRICES AND PROCESS (PRINT OR TYPE NUMERICAL AMOUNTS):

THIS IS A CONSOLIDATED BID FORM FOR THE FOLLOWING TWO LOCAL SITES:

- Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex
- Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building

Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex:

A1. STIPULATED PRICE: **$**N/A

(Total Bid Price; minus Base Unit Prices, Extra Unit Prices, Cash Allowances and All Alternates, if any)

B1. BASE UNIT PRICE TABLE:

B1. BASE UNIT PRICES - Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex:

Item No.	Spec Ref.	Base Unit Short Title	Unit of Measure	Estimated Quantity	Unit Price (this column controls)	Total in figures
1.	01502	Mobilization	LS	1	$150,000.00(1)	$150,000.00(1)
2.	01555	Traffic Control and Regulation	LS	1	[$1,000.00](2)	[$1,000.00](2)
3.	02411	Selective Demolition at 4200 Leeland Annex	LS	1		
4.	ALL	Water Quality Laboratory in 4200 Leeland Annex	LS	1		
5.	11600, 11440, 12566	Laboratory Equipment and Appliances for 4200 Leeland Annex	LS	1		
6.	12500	Furniture for 4200 Leeland Annex	LS	1		
7.	02317, 15400	Acid Neutralization Sump at 4200 Leeland Annex	EA	1		
8.	02317, 15400	Sample Well at 4200 Leeland Annex	EA	1		

Bidder's Initials [ ]

B1. BASE UNIT PRICES - Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex:

Item No.	Spec Ref.	Base Unit Short Title	Unit of Measure	Estimated Quantity	Unit Price (this column controls)	Total in figures
9.	02317, 02506, 02531, 02533, 02260	4" PVC Pipe at 4200 Leeland Annex	LF	60		
10.	02506, 02531, 02533, 02260	4" PVC Clean Out at 4200 Leeland Annex	EA	2		
11.	02317, 02506, 02531, 02533, 02534, 02260	Sanitary Sewer Connection to existing sewer Line at 4200 Leeland Annex	LS	1		
12.	02317, 02502, 02511, 02260	8" Water Line for Fire Pump at 4200 Leeland Annex	LF	30		
13.	02502, 02512, 02260	8" x 8" Tap & Sleeve and Valve at 4200 Leeland Annex	EA	1		
14.	02526, 02260	6" Fire Service Turbine Meter, Vault and Post Indicator Valve at 4200 Leeland Annex	EA	1		
15.	02502, 02513, 02260	Wet Connection to 8" Water Line at 4200 Leeland Annex	EA	1		
16.	07555, 07620, 07710, 07720	Remove and Replace Roofing	LS	1		
17.	13730, 13740, 13760	Security Equipment, Controls and Conductors	LS	1		
18.	16711, 16712, 16714, 16717	IT/Communications	LS	1		
19.	01650	Provide electronically completed Technical Asset Data forms in accordance with specification 01650 using electronic Microsoft Excel format template provided by CM. Submit hard copies of all electronic files.	LS	1		
TOTAL BASE UNIT PRICES FOR B1.: ***Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex***						

Bidder's Initials [ ]

C1. EXTRA UNIT PRICE TABLE:

C1. EXTRA UNIT PRICES - Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex:						
Item No.	Spec Ref.	Extra Unit Short Title	Unit of Measure	Estimated Quantity	Unit Price (this column controls)	Total in figures
20.	02318	Extra hand excavation	CY	50	_____ [$40.00](2)	_____ [$2,000.00](2)
21.	02318	Extra machine excavation and backfill	CY	50	_____ [$18.00](2)	_____ [$900.00](2)
22.	02321	Furnish, place and compact extra backfill material	CY	50	_____ [$14.00](2)	_____ [$700.00](2)
23.	02321	Extra Cement stabilized sand backfill	CY	50	_____ [$15.00](2)	_____ [$750.00](2)
24.	01270	Extra Material Hauling	CY	50	_____ [$5.00](2)	_____ [$250.00](2)
25.	02318	Extra Bank Sand	CY	50	_____ [$5.00](2)	_____ [$250.00](2)
26.	02502	Extra 8” Water Line for Fire Pump	LF	100	_____ [$150.00](2)	_____ [$15,000.00](2)
27.	02531	Extra 4” PVC Pipe for Sanitary Sewer	LF	50	_____ [$55.00](2)	_____ [$2,750.00](2)
TOTAL EXTRA UNIT PRICES FOR C1.: ***Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex***						_____ [$22,600.00](2)

D1. CASH ALLOWANCE TABLE:

D1. CASH ALLOWANCES - Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex:			
Item No.	Primary Spec Ref.	Cash Allowance Short Title	Cash Allowance in figures (1)
28.	N/A	City of Houston Building Permit Fee	$9,000.00
29.	15400	Relocation and Installation of the equipment for two Deionized Water Systems and components by others	$10,000.00
TOTAL CASH ALLOWANCES FOR D1.: ***Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex***			$19,000.00

E1. ALTERNATES TABLE – N/A

F1. TOTAL BID PRICE FOR
***Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex*:** **$_____**
(Add Totals for Items A1., B1., C1., D1., and E1. above)

Bidder’s Initials [ ]

***Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building*:**

A2. STIPULATED PRICE: **$**N/A

(Total Bid Price; minus Base Unit Prices, Extra Unit Prices, Cash Allowances and All Alternates, if any)

B2. BASE UNIT PRICE TABLE:

***B2. BASE UNIT PRICES: Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building*:**

Item No.	Spec Ref.	Base Unit Short Title	Unit of Measure	Estimated Quantity	Unit Price (this column controls)	Total in figures
30.	01502	Mobilization	LS	1	$50,000.00(1)	$50,000.00(1)
31.	02411	Selective Demolition	LS	1		
32.	01410	Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan	LS	1		
33.	ALL	Water Quality Laboratory	LS	1		
34.	11600, 12566	Laboratory Equipment and Appliances	LS	1		
35.	12500	Furniture	LS	1		
36.	ALL	Storage Building to include lighting and HVAC	LS	1		
37.	ALL	Interior Renovations	LS	1		
38.	09521	Acoustical Insulation/{Panel Installation in Conference Room	LS	1		
39.	02775	Reinforced Concrete Sidewalk, 4-1/2” thick	SF	1,200		
40.	10730	Aluminum Canopy	LF	180		
41.	02317, 02506, 02531, 02533, 02260	4” Influent Line	LF	20		

Bidder’s Initials [ ]

***B2. BASE UNIT PRICES: Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building*:**						
Item No.	Spec Ref.	Base Unit Short Title	Unit of Measure	Estimated Quantity	Unit Price (this column controls)	Total in figures
42.	11420	Sample Pump to include pressure gauge, switch, valves, fittings, pipe supports, reducers, stainless steel bolts and nuts and concrete pad and electrical service connection	EA	4		
43.	11420	¾" Diameter Stainless Steel Sample Lines to include trench wall mount supports	LF	8,100		
44.	11420, 02513	Connection of ¾" diameter Stainless Steel Sample Lines to Sample Points to include Valves and Fittings	EA	7		
45.	11315	Sample Water Recycle Lift Station to include discharge sump pump with wet well, 3" discharge pipes, valves and valve vault and electrical service connection	EA	1		
46.	02532, 02317, 02260	3" Force Main, underground installation and connection to basin	LF	1,100		
47.	03300	Bollard	EA	2		
48.	01650	Provide electronically completed Technical Asset Data forms in accordance with specification 01650 using electronic Microsoft Excel format template provided by CM. Submit hard copies of all electronic files.	LS	1		
***TOTAL BASE UNIT PRICES FOR B2.:* Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building**						$_____

REST OF PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Bidder's Initials [ ]

C2. EXTRA UNIT PRICE TABLE:

C2. EXTRA UNIT PRICES - Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building:						
Item No.	Spec Ref.	Extra Unit Short Title	Unit of Measure	Estimated Quantity	Unit Price (this column controls)	Total in figures
49.	02318	Extra hand excavation	CY	50	_____ [$40.00](2)	_____ [$2,000.00](2)
50.	02318	Extra machine excavation and backfill	CY	50	_____ [$18.00](2)	_____ [$900.00](2)
51.	02321	Furnish, place and compact extra backfill material	CY	50	_____ [$14.00](2)	_____ [$700.00](2)
52.	02321	Extra Cement stabilized sand backfill	CY	50	_____ [$15.00](2)	_____ [$750.00](2)
53.	01270	Extra Material Hauling	CY	50	_____ [$5.00](2)	_____ [$250.00](2)
54.	02318	Extra Bank Sand	CY	50	_____ [$5.00](2)	_____ [$250.00](2)
55.	11420	Extra ¾" Diameter Stainless Steel Sample Lines to include trench wall mount supports	LF	100	_____ [$25.00](2)	_____ [$2,500.00](2)
56.	02775	Extra Reinforced Concrete Sidewalk, 4-1/2" thick	SF	100	_____ [$6.00](2)	_____ [$600.00](2)
57.	02531	Extra 4" PVC Pipe for Sanitary Sewer	LF	50	_____ [$55.00](2)	_____ [$2,750.00](2)
TOTAL EXTRA UNIT PRICES FOR C2.: ***Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building***						_____ [$10,700.00](2)

D2. CASH ALLOWANCE TABLE:

D2. CASH ALLOWANCES - Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building:			
Item No.	Primary Spec Ref.	Cash Allowance Short Title	Cash Allowance in figures (1)
58.	N/A	City of Houston Building Permit Fee	$6,000.00
TOTAL CASH ALLOWANCES FOR D2.: ***Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building***			$6,000.00

E2. ALTERNATES TABLE: N/A

F2. TOTAL BID PRICE FOR
***Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building*: $_____**
(Add Totals for Items A2., B2., C2., D2., and E2. above)

Bidder's Initials [ ]

SUMMARY OF BID PRICES FOR RENOVATION OF THE 4200 LEELAND ANNEX & IMPROVEMENTS AT THE NEWPP ADMINISTRATION BUILDING

F1. TOTAL BID PRICE FOR THE 4200 LEELAND ANNEX:$_____
(Add Totals for Items A1., B1., C1., D1., and E1. above)

F2. TOTAL BID PRICE FOR IMPROVEMENTS AT THE NEWPP ADMINISTRATION BUILDING: $_____
(Add Totals for Items A2., B2., C2., D2., and E2. above)

GRAND TOTAL BID PRICE FOR RENOVATION OF THE 4200 LEELAND ANNEX & IMPROVEMENTS AT THE NEWPP ADMINISTRATION BUILDING:
(Add Totals for Items F1. and F2. above) **$_____**

2.0 SIGNATURES: By signing this Document, I agree that I have received and reviewed all Addenda and considered all costs associated with the Addenda in calculating the Total Bid Price.

Bidder: _____
(Print or type full name of your proprietorship, partnership, corporation, or joint venture.*)

** By: _____
Signature Date

Name: _____
(Print or type name) Title

Address: _____
(Mailing)

_____
(Street, if different)

Telephone and Fax Number: _____
(Print or type numbers)

* If Bid is a joint venture, add additional Bid Form signature sheets for each member of the joint venture.

** Bidder certifies that the only person or parties interested in this offer as principals are those named above. Bidder has not directly or indirectly entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action in restraint of free competitive bidding.

Note: This document constitutes a government record, as defined by § 37.01 of the Texas Penal Code. Submission of a false government record is punishable as provided in § 37.10 of the Texas Penal Code.

Footnotes for Tables B1 through E2:
(1) Fixed Unit Price determined prior to Bid. Cannot be adjusted by the Bidder.
(2) Minimum Bid Price determined prior to Bid. Can be increased by the Bidder, but not decreased, by crossing out the Minimum and inserting revised price on the line above. **Cannot** be decreased by the Bidder.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00430

BIDDER'S BOND

THAT WE, _____, as Principal,
(Bidder)
("Bidder"), and the other subscriber hereto, _____, as Surety, do hereby acknowledge ourselves to be held and firmly bound to the City of Houston, a municipal corporation, in the sum of _____ Dollars ($_____) (an amount equal to 10 percent of the Total Bid Price, including Cash Allowances and Alternates, if any, for the payment of which sum, well and truly to be made to the City of Houston and its successors, the Bidder and Surety do bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns, jointly and severally.

THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION ARE SUCH THAT:

WHEREAS, the Bidder has submitted on or about this day a proposal offering to perform the following:

_____
(Project Name, Location and Number)
in accordance with the Drawings, Specifications, and terms and conditions related thereto to which reference is hereby made.

NOW, THEREFORE, if the Bidder's offer as stated in the Document 00410 – Bid Form is accepted by the City, and the Bidder executes and returns to the City Document 00520 – Agreement, required by the City, on the forms prepared by the City, for the Work and also executes and returns the same number of the Performance, Payment and Maintenance Bonds (such bonds to be executed by a Corporate Surety authorized by the State Board of Insurance to conduct insurance business in the State of Texas, and having an underwriting limitation in at least the amount of the bond) and other submittals as required by Document 00495 - Post-Bid Procedures, in connection with the Work, within the Contract Time, then this obligation shall become null and void; otherwise it is to remain in full force and effect.

If Bidder is unable to or fails to perform the obligations undertaken herein, the undersigned Bidder and Surety shall be liable to the City for the full amount of this obligation which is hereby acknowledged as the amount of damages which will be suffered by the City on account of the failure of such Bidder to perform such obligations, the actual amount of such damages being difficult to ascertain.

Notices required or permitted hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed delivered when actually received or, if earlier, on the third day following deposit in a United States Postal Service post office or receptacle, with proper postage affixed (certified mail, return receipt requested), addressed to the respective other Party at the address prescribed in the Contract documents, or at such other address as the receiving Party may hereafter prescribe by written notice to the sending Party.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, the Bidder and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument on the respective dates written below their signatures and have attached current Power of Attorney.

ATTEST, SEAL: (if a corporation)
WITNESS: (if not a corporation)

By: _____
Name:
Title:

ATTEST/SURETY WITNESS: (SEAL)

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

_____
(Name of Bidder)

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

_____
(Full Name of Surety)

_____
(Address of Surety for Notice)

_____

_____
(Telephone Number of Surety)

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00450

BIDDER'S STATEMENT OF MWBE/PDBE/DBE/SBE STATUS

This certifies that the status of the Bidder, _____, in
(Bidder's Name)
regard to the City of Houston Code of Ordinances, Chapter 15, Article V, relating to City-wide percentage goals for contracting with Minority and Women-owned Business Enterprises (MWBE) and Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE), Chapter 15, Article VI, relating to City-wide percentage goals for contracting with Persons with Disabilities Business Enterprises (PDBE) and Chapter 15, Article IX, relating to City-wide percentage goals for contracting with a Small Business Enterprise (SBE) is as follows:

1. Bidder (individual, partnership, corporation) is [__] is not [__] a Minority Business Enterprise as certified by the Office of Business Opportunity.

2. Bidder (individual, partnership, corporation) is [__] is not [__] a Women-owned Business Enterprise as certified by the Office of Business Opportunity

3. Bidder (individual, partnership, corporation) does [__] does not [__] declare itself to be a Persons with Disabilities Business Enterprise as defined above.

4. Bidder (individual, partnership, corporation) does [__] does not [__] declare itself to be a Disadvantaged Business Enterprise as defined above.

5. Bidder (individual, partnership, corporation) does [__] does not [__] declare itself to be a Small Business Enterprise as defined above.

Signature: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00452
Form A
CONTRACTOR SUBMISSION LIST
CITY OF HOUSTON FAIR CAMPAIGN ORDINANCE

The City of Houston Fair Campaign Ordinance makes it unlawful for a Contractor to offer any contribution to a candidate for City elective office (including elected officers-elect) during a certain period of time prior to and following the award of the Contract by the City Council. The term "Contractor" includes proprietors of proprietorships, partners or joint venturers having an equity interest of 10 percent or more for the partnership or joint venture, and officers, directors and holders of 10 percent or more of the outstanding shares of corporations. Submission of a statement disclosing the names and business addresses of each of those persons is required with each Bid/Proposal for a City Contract. See Chapter 18 of the City of Houston Code of Ordinances for further information.

This list is submitted under the provisions of Section 18-36(b) of the City of Houston Code of Ordinances in connection with the attached Bid/Proposal of:

Firm or Company Name: _____
Firm or Company Address: _____
_____

The firm/company is organized as indicated below. Check one as applicable and attach additional pages if needed to supply the required names and addresses.

[ ] SOLE PROPRIETOR

Name _____ _____
Proprietor Address

[ ] A PARTNERSHIP

LIST EACH PARTNER HAVING EQUITY INTEREST OF 10% OR MORE OF PARTNERSHIP (IF NONE STATE "NONE")

Name _____ _____
Partner Address

Name _____ _____
Partner Address

[ ] A CORPORATION

LIST ALL DIRECTORS OF THE CORPORATION (IF NONE STATE "NONE")

Name _____ _____
Director Address

Name _____ _____
Director Address

Name _____ _____
Director Address

LIST ALL OFFICERS OF THE CORPORATION (IF NONE STATE "NONE")

Name _____ _____
Officer Address

Name _____ _____
Officer Address

Name _____ _____
Officer Address

LIST ALL INDIVIDUALS OWNING 10% OR MORE OF OUTSTANDING SHARES OF STOCK OF THE CORPORATION (IF NONE STATE "NONE")

Name _____ _____
Owner Address

Name _____ _____
Owner Address

Name _____ _____
Owner Address

I certify that I am duly authorized to submit this list on behalf of the firm, that I am associated with the firm in the capacity noted below, and that I have knowledge of the accuracy of the information provided herein.

_____
Signature

_____
Printed Name

_____
Title

Note: This list constitutes a government record as defined by § 37.01 of the Texas Penal Code.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00453

BIDDER'S STATEMENT OF RESIDENCY

The City may not award a contract for general construction, services, or purchases to a Nonresident Bidder unless Nonresident's Bid is lower than the lowest Bid submitted by a responsible Texas Resident Bidder by the same amount that a Texas Resident bidder would be required to underbid the Nonresident Bidder to obtain a comparable contract in the state in which Nonresident's principle place of business is located.

1. This certifies that the Bidder, _____, is a State of Texas Resident Bidder as defined in TEX. GOVT. CODE ANN. § 2252.001(4) (Vernon 1994).

   _____ _____
   Signature Title

   "Texas Resident Bidder" means a bidder whose principal place of business is in this State, and includes a Contractor whose ultimate parent company or majority owner has its principal place of business in this State. *When bidder cannot sign 1, above, proceed to 2.*

2. a. _____ is a resident of _____ and is a Nonresident Bidder as defined in TEX. GOVT. CODE ANN. § 2252.001(3) (Vernon 1994).

   _____ _____
   Signature Title

   "Nonresident Bidder" means a bidder whose principal place of business is not in this State, but excludes a contractor whose ultimate parent company or majority owner has its principal place of business in this State.

   b. The State of _____ _____ have a state statute giving
   Bidder's resident state Does or Does Not
   preference to resident bidders.

   _____ _____
   Signature Title

   If the answer to 2.b is that your state does have a statute giving preference to resident bidders, then you must provide a copy and proceed to 3.

3. A copy of the State of _____ statute is attached.

   _____ _____
   Signature Title

   _____
   Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00454

AFFIDAVIT OF NON-INTEREST

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, a Notary Public in and for the State of Texas, on this day personally appeared _____, who
Affiant

being by me duly sworn on his oath stated that he is _____, of
Title

_____,
Name of Firm

the firm named and referred to and in the foregoing; and that he knows of no officer, agent, or employee of the City of Houston being in any manner interested either directly or indirectly in such Contract.

_____
Affiant's Signature

SWORN AND SUBSCRIBED before me on _____.
Date

_____
Notary Public in and for the State of TEXAS

_____
Print or type name

My Commission Expires: _____
Expiration Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00455

AFFIDAVIT OF OWNERSHIP OR CONTROL

ORIG. DEPT.: DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND ENGINEERING **FILE/I.D. NO.:** S-001000-0052-4

INSTRUCTION: ENTITIES USING AN ASSUMED NAME SHOULD DISCLOSE SUCH FACT TO AVOID REJECTION OF THE AFFIDAVIT. THE FOLLOWING FORMATIS RECOMMENDED: CORPORATE/LEGAL NAME DBA ASSUMED NAME.

STATE OF _____ §
§ **AFFIDAVIT OF OWNERSHIP OR CONTROL**
COUNTY OF _____ §

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, on this day personally appeared _____ [*FULL NAME*] (hereafter "Affiant"), _____ [*STATE TITLE/CAPACITY WITH CONTRACTING ENTITY*] of _____ [*CONTRACTING ENTITY'S CORPORATE/LEGAL NAME*] ("Contracting Entity"), who being by me duly sworn on oath stated as follows:

1. Affiant is authorized to give this affidavit and has personal knowledge of the facts and matters herein stated.

2. Contracting Entity seeks to do business with the City in connection with _____ [*DESCRIBE PROJECT OR MATTER*] which is expected to be in an amount that exceeds $50,000.

3. The following information is submitted in connection with the proposal, submission or bid of Contracting Entity in connection with the above described project or matter.

4. Contracting Entity is organized as a business entity as noted below (check box as applicable).

FOR PROFIT ENTITY:

[ ] SOLE PROPRIETORSHIP
[ ] CORPORATION
[ ] PARTNERSHIP
[ ] LIMITED PARTNERSHIP
[ ] JOINT VENTURE
[ ] LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY
[ ] OTHER (Specify type in space below)

_____

_____

_____

NON-PROFIT ENTITY:

[ ] NON-PROFIT CORPORATION
[ ] UNINCORPORATED ASSOCIATION

5. The information shown below is true and correct for the Contracting Entity and all owners of 5% or more of the Contracting Entity and, where the Contracting Entity is a non-profit entity, the required information has been shown for each officer, *i.e.*, president, vice-president, secretary, treasurer, etc. ***[NOTE: IN ALL CASES, USE FULL NAMES, LOCAL BUSINESS AND RESIDENCE ADDRESSES AND TELEPHONE NUMBERS. DO NOT USE POST OFFICE BOXES FOR ANY ADDRESS. INCLUSION OF E-MAIL ADDRESSES IS OPTIONAL, BUT RECOMMENDED. ATTACH ADDITIONAL SHEETS AS NEEDED.]***

Contracting Entity

Name: _____

Business Address *[NO./STREET]* _____

[CITY/STATE/ZIP CODE] _____

Telephone Number (____)_____

Email Address *[OPTIONAL]* _____

Residence Address *[NO./STREET]* _____

[CITY/STATE/ZIP CODE] _____

Telephone Number (____)_____

Email Address *[OPTIONAL]* _____

5% Owner(s) or More (IF NONE, STATE "NONE.")

Name: _____

Business Address *[NO./STREET]* _____

[CITY/STATE/ZIP CODE] _____

Telephone Number (____)_____

Email Address *[OPTIONAL]* _____

Residence Address *[NO./STREET]* _____

[CITY/STATE/ZIP CODE] _____

Telephone Number (____)_____

Email Address *[OPTIONAL]* _____

6. *Optional Information*

Contracting Entity and/or _____ [***NAME OF OWNER OR NON-PROFIT OFFICER***] is actively protesting, challenging or appealing the accuracy and/or amount of taxes levied against _____ [***CONTRACTING ENTITY, OWNER OR NON-PROFIT OFFICER***] as follows:

Name of Debtor: _____

Tax Account Nos. _____

Case or File Nos. _____

Attorney/Agent Name _____

Attorney/Agent Phone No. (_____)_____

Tax Years _____

Status of Appeal *[DESCRIBE]* _____

_____

_____

_____

Affiant certifies that he or she is duly authorized to submit the above information on behalf of the Contracting Entity, that Affiant is associated with the Contracting Entity in the capacity noted above and has personal knowledge of the accuracy of the information provided herein, and that the information provided herein is true and correct to the best of Affiant's knowledge and belief.

_____
Affiant

SWORN TO AND SUBSCRIBED before me this _____ day of _____, 20_____.

(Seal)

_____
Notary Public

NOTE:
This affidavit constitutes a **government record** as defined by Section 37.01 of the Texas Penal Code. Submission of a false government record is punishable as provided in Section 37.10 of the Texas Penal Code. Attach additional pages if needed to supply the required names and addresses.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00457

Conflict of Interest Questionnaire

****

Print out latest version of CIQ form from website listed below:

****

Local Government Code Chapter 176 requires Bidders with the City of Houston ("City") to file a Conflict of Interest Questionnaire with the City Secretary of the City of Houston.

The Conflict of Interest Questionnaire is available for downloading on the Texas Ethics Commission's website at: http://www.ethics.state.tx.us/forms/CIQ.pdf. The completed Conflict of Interest Questionnaire will be posted on the City Secretary's website. Also you will find a list of the City Local Government Officers on the City Secretary's website.

For your convenience the CIQ form is attached as part of this document. Although the City has provided this document for the Bidders convenience, it is the Bidders responsibility to submit the latest version of the CIQ form as promulgated by the Texas Ethics Commission.

The Failure of any Bidder to comply with this law is a Class C misdemeanor.

END OF DOCUMENT

CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

FORM CIQ

For vendor doing business with local governmental entity

This questionnaire reflects changes made to the law by H.B. 23, 84th Leg., Regular Session.

This questionnaire is being filed in accordance with Chapter 176, Local Government Code, by a vendor who has a business relationship as defined by Section 176.001(1-a) with a local governmental entity and the vendor meets requirements under Section 176.006(a).

By law this questionnaire must be filed with the records administrator of the local governmental entity not later than the 7th business day after the date the vendor becomes aware of facts that require the statement to be filed. *See* Section 176.006(a-1), Local Government Code.

A vendor commits an offense if the vendor knowingly violates Section 176.006, Local Government Code. An offense under this section is a misdemeanor.

OFFICE USE ONLY

Date Received

1 **Name of vendor who has a business relationship with local governmental entity.**

2 ☐ **Check this box if you are filing an update to a previously filed questionnaire.** (The law requires that you file an updated completed questionnaire with the appropriate filing authority not later than the 7th business day after the date on which you became aware that the originally filed questionnaire was incomplete or inaccurate.)

3 **Name of local government officer about whom the information is being disclosed.**

Name of Officer

4 **Describe each employment or other business relationship with the local government officer, or a family member of the officer, as described by Section 176.003(a)(2)(A). Also describe any family relationship with the local government officer. Complete subparts A and B for each employment or business relationship described. Attach additional pages to this Form CIQ as necessary.**

A. Is the local government officer or a family member of the officer receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from the vendor?

☐ Yes ☐ No

B. Is the vendor receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from or at the direction of the local government officer or a family member of the officer AND the taxable income is not received from the local governmental entity?

☐ Yes ☐ No

5 **Describe each employment or business relationship that the vendor named in Section 1 maintains with a corporation or other business entity with respect to which the local government officer serves as an officer or director, or holds an ownership interest of one percent or more.**

6 ☐ Check this box if the vendor has given the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts as described in Section 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding gifts described in Section 176.003(a-1).

7

Signature of vendor doing business with the governmental entity

Date

Document 00459

CONTRACTOR'S STATEMENT REGARDING PREVIOUS CONTRACTS SUBJECT TO EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY

Section 60-1.7(b) of the Regulations of the Secretary of Labor requires each bidder or prospective prime contractor and proposed subcontractor, where appropriate, to state in the bid or at the outset of negotiations for the contract whether it has participated in any previous contract or subcontract subject to the equal opportunity clause; and if so, whether it has filed with the Joint Reporting Committee, the Director, an agency, or the former President's Committee on Equal Employment Opportunity all reports due under the applicable filing requirements. In any case in which a bidder or prospective prime contractor or proposed subcontractor which participated in a previous contract subject to Executive Order 10925, 11114. or 11246 has not filed a report due under the applicable filing documents, no contract or subcontract shall be awarded unless such contractor submits a report covering the delinquent period or such other period specified by the FAA or the Director, OFCCP.

Contractor has __ has not __ participated in a previous contract subject to the equal opportunity clause prescribed by Executive Order 10925, or Executive Order 11114, or Executive Order 11246.

Contractor has __ has not __ submitted all compliance reports in connection with any such contract due under the applicable filing requirements; and that representations indicating submission of required compliance reports signed by proposed subcontractors will be obtained prior to award of subcontracts.

If Contractor has participated in a previous contract subject to the equal opportunity clause and has not submitted compliance reports due under applicable filing requirements, Contractor (Proposer) shall submit a compliance report on Standard Form 100, "Employee Information Report EEO-1" prior to the award of the Contract.

Standard Form 100 is normally furnished to contractors annually, based on a mailing list currently maintained by the Joint Reporting Committee. In the event Contractor has not received the form, Contractor may obtain it by writing to the following address:

Joint Reporting Committee
1800 G Street
Washington, DC 20506

_____
(Printed or typed Name of Signatory)

_____ _____
Signature Date

_____
Title

_____
Contractor's Firm Name

NOTE: The penalty for making false statements in offers is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00460
(POP -1)
City of Houston
Pay or Play Program
Acknowledgement Form

It has been determined that the project currently open for bidding meets the criteria of the City of Houston Pay or Play program. This form acknowledges your awareness of the Pay or Play program which is authorized by Ordinance 2007-534. Your signature below affirms that you will comply with the requirements of the program if you are the successful bidder/proposer, and ensure the same on behalf of subcontracts subject to the Pay or Play Program.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the State of Texas that if awarded this contract which meets the criteria for the City of Houston's Pay or Play Program, I will comply with all requirements of the Pay or Play Program in accordance with Executive Order 1-7.

***Fill out all information below and submit this form with your bid/proposal packet.**

_____
Solicitation Number

_____ _____
Signature Date

_____ _____
Print Name City Vendor ID

_____ _____
Company Name Phone Number

_____
Email Address

Note: For more information contact your POP Liaison or the POP Contract Administrator. All contact information can be found on www.houstontx.gov →Departments→Office of Business Opportunity→Pay or Play.

Document 00470

BIDDER'S MWSBE PARTICIPATION PLAN

. he Bidder or Proposer shall submit this completed form with the bid, to demonstrate the Bidder/Proposer's plan to meet the contract-specific MWSBE goal ("contract goal"). If the Bidder or Proposer cannot meet the contract goal, the Bidder/Proposer has the burden to demonstrate "Good Faith Efforts", which shall include correctly and accurately preparing and submitting this form, a Record of Good Faith Efforts (Document 00471), a Request for Deviation from the Goal (Document 00472), and providing supporting documentation evidencing their "Good Faith Efforts", as required by the City of Houston's Good Faith Efforts Policy (Document 00808). The City will review the Participation Plan and Good Faith Efforts at the time of bid opening. Visit http://www.houstontx.gov/obo for more information.

City Contract Goal	MBE 13%	WBE 7%	• MBE and WBE Goals are two separate Contract Goals. • Any excess of one Goal cannot be applied to meet another Goal. • An SBE can be applied to the MBE and/or WBE Goal, but not to exceed 4%.

NAICS Code (6 digit)	Description of Work (Plan Sheet #, Unit Price #, Scope of Work #, as applicable)	% of Total Bid Price (2 decimal places; for example, 5.00%)	Cert. Type for Goal: MBE, WBE, or SBE	Certified Firm Name Firm Address Contact Name Phone No. and E-Mail
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	

Bidder's Participation Plan Total	MBE	WBE	SBE

Signature for Company: _____*

Printed Name: _____

Company Name: _____

Phone #: _____

Date: _____

*I understand that supplying inaccurate information may violate Texas Penal Code Section 37.10 and lead to City sanctions.

Document 00470

CONTINUATION PAGE

NAICS Code (6 digit)	Description of Work (Plan Sheet #, Unit Price #, Scope of Work #, as applicable)	% of Total Bid Price (2 decimal places; for example, 5.00%)	Cert. Type for Goal MBE, WBE, or SBE	Certified Firm Name Firm Address Contact Name Phone No. and E-Mail
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	
			MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐	

Signature for Company: _____* Date: _____

Print Name/Company Name:_____ Phone: _____

*I understand that supplying inaccurate information may violate Texas Penal Code Section 37.10 and lead to City sanctions.

Document 00471

PRE-BID GOOD FAITH EFFORTS

Bidder Name: _____ **Project Name**_____

A Bidder or Proposer that may be unable to complete or follow a Participation Plan (Document 00470) to meet the Contract Goal in the Supplemental Conditions (Document 00800), must submit this completed form, Goal Deviation Request Form (Document 00472), providing supporting documentation evidencing their "Good Faith Efforts", as required by the City of Houston's Good Faith Efforts Policy (see Document 00808).

The Bidder or Prime Contractor has the burden to demonstrate "Good Faith Efforts" to meet the MWSBE goal, which includes correctly and accurately preparing and submitting this form and other efforts described in the City's Good Faith Efforts Policy (Document 00808). The Office of Business Opportunity will review Good Faith Efforts and Participation Plan after selection of an apparent low bidder.

UNLESS THE BIDDER'S/PROPOSER'S PARTICIPATION PLAN MEETS THE CONTRACT GOAL, FAILURE TO SUBMIT THIS FORM MAY RESULT IN THE BID BEING FOUND NON-RESPONSIVE.

NAICS Code	Plan Item No.	MWSBE Type for Goal	Certified Firm Name Address, Phone No., and E-Mail	Certified Firm Contact Person	Methods of Contact	Prime Contact Dates	Certified Firm Response	Results of Contact (why suitable or not suitable for work)
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			

Authorized Signature: _____ Date: _____ Phone: _____

Print Name: _____ Email Address: _____

Company Name: _____

CONTINUATION PAGE

NAICS Code	Plan Item No.	MWSBE Type for Goal	Certified Firm Name Address, Phone No., and E-Mail	Certified Firm Contact Person	Method of Contact	Prime Contact Dates	Certified Firm Respons e	Results of Contact (why suitable or not suitable for work)
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
		MBE ☐ WBE ☐ SBE ☐			Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			

Authorized Signature: _____ Date: _____ Phone: _____

Print Name: _____ Email Address: _____

Company Name: _____

Document 00472
BIDDER'S MWSBE GOAL DEVIATION REQUEST

Company Name: _____

Project Name: _____

Department Approved Contract Goals	**MBE** %	**WBE** %	**Total** %

Bidder's Proposed Participation Plan	**MBE** %	**WBE** %	**SBE (Max 4% for Credit)** %	**Total** %

Justification: Please provide the reason the Bidder is unable to meet the Contract Goal in Document 00800.

_____

_____

_____

Good Faith Efforts: Please list any efforts not listed in the Bidder's Pre-Bid Good Faith Effort (Document 00471) and provide supporting documentation evidencing "Good Faith Efforts", as required by the City of Houston's Good Faith Efforts Policy (Document 808).

_____

_____

_____

_____

Date: _____
Email: _____
Phone Number: _____

Company Name: _____
Company Representative: _____
Title: _____

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY: Approved [ ] Not Approved [ ]

OBO Representative _____ Date: _____

_____ Title: _____

Document 00495

POST-BID PROCEDURES

3.0 DOCUMENT ADDRESSES

A. Notice of Intent to Award

B. Monitoring Authority/Contracting Department

C. Requirements of Bidder

D. Failure of Bidder to comply with requirements

E. Notice to Proceed

4.0 NOTICE OF INTENT TO AWARD

A. The City will provide written Notice of Intent to Award to Low Bidder.

5.0 DEFINITIONS

A. The "Monitoring Authority" or "OBO" for this Project is:

Director, Office of Business Opportunity Division
City of Houston
611 Walker Street, 7th Floor
Houston, Texas 77002

B. The "Contracting Department" for this Project is:
Director, Department of DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND ENGINEERING
City of Houston
611 Walker Street
Houston, Texas 77002
ATTN: **John Msigwa, P.E.,**

6.0 REQUIREMENTS OF BIDDER

A. Within10 days of receipt of Notice of Intent to Award, Low Bidder shall execute and deliver to John Msigwa, P.E., Project Manager and Monitoring Authority, for the City's approval, documents indicated by an "X" below:
[ ] Document 00570 – Revised MWSBE Participation Plan *(Do not submit if OBO Director approved Bidder's Plan – Document 00470)*

[X] Executed Subcontract(s), Letter(s) of Intent, or documentation of good faith efforts to meet the MWSBE goals

B. Within 10 days of receipt of Notice of Intent to Award, Low Bidder shall execute and deliver to John Msigwa, P.E., Project Manager for the City's approval, documents indicated by an "X" below:

[ ] Document 00500 - Form of Business
[X] Document 00501 - Resolution of Contractor
[X] Document 00520 - Agreement
[X] Document 00600 - List of Proposed Subcontractors and Suppliers
[X] Document 00601 - Drug Policy Compliance Agreement
[X] Document 00602 - Contractor's Drug-free Workplace Policy *(Contractor creates this document.)*
[X] Document 00604 - History of OSHA Actions and List of On-the-job Injuries
[X] Document 00605 - List of Safety Impact Positions *(Contractor completes this list. Do not submit if submitting Document 00606.)*
[ ] Document 00606 - Contractor's Certification of No Safety Impact Positions *(Do not submit if submitting Document 00605.)*
[ ] Document 00607 - Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, and Other Responsibility Matters
[ ] Document 00608 - Contractor's Certification Regarding Non-segregated Facilities for Project Funded by AIP Grant
[X] Document 00610 - Performance Bond
[X] Document 00611 - Statutory Payment Bond
[X] Document 00612 - One-year Maintenance Bond
[ ] Document 00613 - One-year Surface Correction Bond
[X] Document 00620 - Affidavit of Insurance *(with Certificate of Insurance attached)*
[X] Document 00622 - Name and Qualifications of Proposed Superintendent *(Contractor creates this document.)*
[ ] Document 00623 - Contractor's Act of Assurance (SRF Form ED-103)
[X] Document 00624 - Affidavit of Compliance with S/WMBE Program
[ ] Document 00625 - SRF Participation Summary
[ ] Document 00626 - SRF Affirmative Steps Solicitation Report
[ ] Document 00627 - SRF Prime Contractor Affirmative Steps Certification and Goals
[ ] Document 00629 - Affidavit for FAA Form 7460-1
[X] Document 00630 - Certification of Compliance with Pay or Play Program
[X] Document 00631 - City of Houston Pay or Play Program – List of Subcontractors
[ ] Document 00809 – CDBG Requirements for Federally Funded Projects

C. Within 10 days of receipt of Notice of Intent to Award, Low Bidder shall execute the following forms and deliver them directly to the Monitoring Authority.

1. Original forms contained in Document 00805 – Equal Employment Opportunity Program Requirements:
   [X] Pages 00805-3 to 00805-5, Certification by Bidder Regarding Equal

Employment Opportunity

[X] *Page 00805-6, Total Work Force Composition of the Company, or copy of latest EEO-1 form (required only if Contractor has a work force of 50 or more people and the Original Contract Price is $50,000 or more)*

[X] *Page 00805-7, Equal Employment Opportunity Compliance Program*

[X] *Page 00805-26, Certification by Proposed Subcontractor Regarding Equal Employment Opportunity*

[X] *Page 00805-29, Certification by Proposed Material Supplier, Lessor, and Professional Service Providers Regarding Equal Employment Opportunity*

2. Original completed form Document 00633 - Certification by Proposed Material Suppliers, Lessors, and Professional Service Providers Regarding Equal Employment Opportunity, for each proposed material supplier and equipment supplier.

3. Original forms contained in Document 00820 – Wage Scale for Engineering Construction.

[X] *Certificate from Contractor Appointing Officer or Employee to Supervise Payment of Employees*

[ ] *Certificate from SubContractor Appointing Officer or Employee to Supervise Payment of Employees*

[ ] Document 00812, Exhibit "A" – Certificate from Contractor Appointing Officer or Employee to Supervise Payment of Employees

D. Designations of Subcontractors and Suppliers, who have been selected by Bidder in Document 00600 - List of Proposed Subcontractors and Suppliers, and accepted by the City, may be changed only with prior notice and acceptance by Project Manager as provided in Conditions of the Contract. For each Product Supplier subsequently added or substituted, provide an original completed form, Document 00633 - Certification by Proposed Material Suppliers, Lessors, and Professional Service Providers Regarding Equal Employment Opportunity, directly to the Monitoring Authority.

E. On Bidder's written request, John Msigwa, P.E., Project Manager may grant an extension of time, not to exceed 5 days, to furnish documents specified in Paragraphs 4.0.A and 4.0.B. If Bidder is required to resubmit documents specified in Paragraph 4.0.A or 4.0.B, Bidder shall do so within time limits provided in the request for resubmission.

F. Designations of Subcontractors and Suppliers, who have been selected by Bidder in its Participation Plan, and accepted by the City, may be changed only with prior notice and acceptance by the Monitoring Authority as provided in Document 00808 – Bidder/Contractor Requirements for the City of Houston Minority, Women, and Small Business Enterprise (MWSBE), and Persons with Disabilities Business Enterprise (PDBE).

5.0 FAILURE OF BIDDER TO COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS

A. Should Bidder, on receipt of Notice of Intent to Award, fail to comply with requirements of this Document 00495 within stated time, the City may declare award in default and require forfeiture of the Security Deposit.

B. After the City's written notice of default to Low Bidder, the City may award the Contract to Bidder whose offer is the next lowest bid, and Security Deposit of Bidder in default shall be forfeited to the City in accordance with provisions of Document 00200 - Instructions to Bidders.

6.0 NOTICE TO PROCEED

A. Upon the City's execution of the Agreement and delivery to Contractor, City Engineer will give Document 00551 - Notice to Proceed to Contractor, which establishes Date of Commencement of the Work.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00501

RESOLUTION OF CONTRACTOR

_____ ("Contractor"),
(Name of Contractor, e.g., "Biz. Inc.", "Biz LLP")

is a _____,
(Type of Organization, e.g.: Corporation, Limited Partnership, Limited Liability Partnership, Limited Liability Company, etc.)

which is bound by acts of _____,
(Name and Form of Governing Entity, e.g., "Biz Inc. Board of Directors", "Bill Smith, GP", etc.)

("Governing Entity").

On the _____ day of _____, 20__, the Governing Entity resolved, in accordance with all documents, rules, and laws applicable to the Contractor, that

_____, is authorized to act as the
(Contractor's Representative)

Contractor's Representative in all business transactions (initial one) ____ conducted in the State of Texas OR ____ related to this Contract; and

The Governing Entity warrants that the above resolution (a) was entered into without dissent or reservation by the Governing Entity, (b) has not been rescinded or amended, and (c) is now in full force and effect; and

In authentication of the adoption of this resolution, I subscribe my name on this day of _____, 20___.

_____ _____
(Authorized Signature for Governing Entity) (Print or Type Name and Title of Authorized Signatory)

SWORN AND SUBSCRIBED before me on _____
Date

_____
Notary Public in and for the State of Texas

My Commission Expires: _____ _____
Expiration Date Print or Type Name of Notary Public

Document 00520

AGREEMENT

Project: Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex & Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building

Project Location: 4200 Leeland, Houston, Texas, 77023 and 12121 N. Sam Houston PKWY E., Houston, Texas 77396(Key Map No. 494S, 377W)

Project No: WBS No. S-001000-0052-4

The City: THE CITY OF HOUSTON, 900 Bagby Street, Houston, Texas 77002 (the "City")

and

Contractor: _____

(Address for Written Notice) _____

_____

Fax Number: _____ **Phone Number:** _____

City Engineer, with respect to Sections 4.3 thru 4.5 of the General Conditions, is:

J. Timothy Lincoln, P.E. (or his successor)

P. O. Box 1562, Houston, Texas 77251-1562 (Address for Written Notice)

City Engineer, with respect to all other terms of the General Conditions, is:

Joseph T. Myers, P.E. (or his successor)

Fax Number: (832) 395-2410

THE CITY AND CONTRACTOR AGREE AS FOLLOWS:

ARTICLE 1
THE WORK OF THE CONTRACT

1.1 Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract.

ARTICLE 2
CONTRACT TIME

2.1 Contractor shall achieve Date of Substantial Completion within **480** days after Date of Commencement of the Work, subject to adjustments of Contract Time as provided in the Contract.

2.2 The Parties recognize that time is of the essence for this Agreement and that the City will suffer financial loss if the Work is not completed within the Contract Time. Parties also recognize delays, expense, and difficulties involved in proving in a legal or arbitration proceeding actual loss suffered by the City if the Work is not completed on time. Accordingly, instead of requiring any such proof, the Parties agree that as

liquidated damages for delay (but not as a penalty), Contractor shall pay the City the amount stipulated in Document 00800 – Supplementary Conditions, for each day beyond Contract Time.

ARTICLE 3
CONTRACT PRICE

3.1 Subject to terms of the Contract, the City will pay Contractor in current funds for Contractor's performance of the Contract, Contract Price of $_____ which includes Alternates, if any, accepted below.

3.2 The City accepts Alternates as follows:

Alternate No. 1 ___[*Accepted or Not Accepted*]_____
Alternate No. 2 ___[*Accepted or Not Accepted*]_____
Alternate No. 3 ___[*Accepted or Not Accepted*]_____
Alternate No. 4 ___[*Accepted or Not Accepted*]_____

ARTICLE 4
PAYMENTS

4.1 The City will make progress payments to Contractor as provided below and in Conditions of the Contract.

4.2 The Period covered by each progress payment is one calendar month ending on the [___] 15th or [___] last day of the month.

4.3 The City will issue Certificates for Payment and will make progress payments on the basis of such Certificates as provided in Conditions of the Contract.

4.4 Final payment, constituting entire unpaid balance of Contract Price, will be made by the City to Contractor as provided in Conditions of the Contract.

ARTICLE 5
CONTRACTOR REPRESENTATIONS

5.1 Contractor represents:

5.1.1 Contractor has examined and carefully studied Contract documents and other related data identified in Request For or Competitive Sealed Proposals or Competitive Sealed Bids.

5.1.2 Contractor has visited the site and become familiar with and is satisfied as to general, local, and site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

5.1.3 Contractor is familiar with and is satisfied as to all federal, state, and local laws and regulations that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

5.1.4 Contractor has carefully studied all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or contiguous to the site and all drawings of physical conditions in or relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at or contiguous to the site (except Underground Facilities) which have been identified in Contract documents and (2) reports and drawings of a hazardous environmental condition, if any, at the site which has been identified in Contract documents.

5.1.5 Contractor has obtained and carefully studied (or assumes responsibility for having done so) all additional or supplementary examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data concerning conditions (surface, subsurface, and Underground Facilities) at or contiguous to the site which may affect cost, progress, or performance of the Work or which relate to any aspect of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Contractor, including applying specific means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction, if any, expressly required by the Contract to be employed by Contractor, and safety precautions and programs incident thereto

5.1.6 Contractor does not consider that any further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for performance of the Work at Contract Price, within Contract Time, and in accordance with the Contract.

5.1.7 Contractor is aware of general nature of work to be performed by the City and others at the site that relates to the Work as indicated in Contract documents.

5.1.8 Contractor has correlated information known to Contractor, information and observations obtained from visits to the site, reports and drawings identified in the Contract, and all additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data with the Contract.

5.1.9 Contractor has given City Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Contractor has discovered in the Contract, and written resolution thereof by City Engineer is acceptable to Contractor.

5.1.10 Contract documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for performance and furnishing of the Work.

ARTICLE 6
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

6.1 The Contract may be terminated by either Party as provided in Conditions of the Contract.

6.2 The Work may be suspended by the City as provided in Conditions of the Contract.

ARTICLE 7
ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

7.1 The following documents are incorporated into this Agreement:

7.1.1 Document 00700 - General Conditions.

7.1.2 Document 00800 - Supplementary Conditions.

7.1.3 Division 01 - General Requirements.

7.1.4 Divisions 02 through 16 of Specifications.

7.1.5 Drawings listed in Document 00015 - List of Drawings. Drawing No. _____and bound separately.

7.1.6 Addenda [and Riders] which apply to the Contract, are as follows:

Addendum No. 1, dated _____None_____

Addendum No. 2, dated None

Addendum No. 3, dated None

Rider No. [___], dated None

7.1.7 Other documents:

	Document No.	Title
[X]	00410B	Bid Form – Part B
[X]	00470	Standard Pre-Bid Participation Plan Document
[ ]	00471	Pre-Bid Good Faith Efforts Report
[ ]	00472	Goal Deviation Request
[ ]	00500	Form of Business
[X]	00501	Resolution of Contractor (if a corporation)
[ ]	00570	Amended S/MWBE Participation Plan
[ ]	00571	Contractor's Good Faith Efforts Report
[ ]	00572	Plan Deviation Request
[ ]	00608	Contractor's Certification Regarding Non-Segregated Facilities for Project Funded by AIP Grant
[X]	00610	Performance Bond
[X]	00611	Statutory Payment Bond
[X]	00612	One-year Maintenance Bond
[ ]	00613	One-year Surface Correction Bond
[X]	00620	Affidavit of Insurance (with the Certificate of Insurance attached)
[ ]	00623	Contractor's Act of Assurance (SRF Form ED-103)
[X]	00624	Affidavit of Compliance with Affirmative Action Program
[ ]	00628	Affidavit of Compliance with Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) Program for Project Funded By AIP Grant
[X]	00630	(POP-2) Certification of Compliance with Pay or Play Program
[X]	00631	(POP-3) City of Houston Pay or Play Program – List of Subcontractors
[X]	00800	Supplementary Conditions for Project CIP or AIP Funded
[ ]	00801	Supplementary Conditions for Project AIP Funded
[ ]	00802	SRF Supplementary Conditions
[X]	00805	Equal Employment Opportunity Program Requirements
[ ]	00806	EPA DBE and Wage Rate Requirements (SRF only)
[ ]	00807	Bidder/Contractor Requirements for DBE Program
[X]	00808	Minority and Women-owned Business Enterprise (MWBE) & Persons with Disabilities Business Enterprise (PDBE) Program
[ ]	00810	Federal Wage Rate - Highway
[ ]	00811	Federal Wage Rate - Building
[ ]	00812	Federal Wage Rate - Heavy
[X]	00820	Wage Rate for Engineering Construction
[X]	00821	Wage Rate for Building Construction
[ ]	00830	Trench Safety Geotechnical Information
[X]	00840	Pay or Play Program
[ ]	00912	Rider

ARTICLE 8
SIGNATURES

8.1 This Agreement is executed in two original copies and is effective as of the date of countersignature by City Controller.

CONTRACTOR:

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Tax Identification Number: _____

(If Joint Venture)

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Tax Identification Number: _____

CITY OF HOUSTON, TEXAS

APPROVED:

By: _____
Director,
Department of Public Works and Engineering

SIGNED:

By: _____
Mayor

COUNTERSIGNED:

By: _____
City Controller

Date Countersigned:

_____

ATTEST/SEAL:

By: _____
City Secretary

8.2 This Contract and Ordinance have been reviewed as to form by the undersigned legal assistant and have been found to meet established Legal Department criteria. Legal Department has not reviewed the content of these documents.

_____
Legal Assistant

_____
Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00570

CONTRACTOR'S REVISED MWSBE PARTICIPATION PLAN

As soon as the Contractor becomes aware that the Contractor may not abide by the most current approved Plan, the Contractor shall submit this completed form with a Record of Post-Bid Good Faith Efforts (Document 00571), a Request for Plan Deviation (Document 00572), and any other document evidencing "Good Faith Efforts", as required by the Good Faith Efforts Policy (Document 00808). The City will review this Revised Participation Plan and may approve this Revised Plan if the Contractor has made Good Faith Efforts. For more information, visit http://www.houstontx.gov/obo.

Original Participation Plan Percentage	MBE	WBE	SBE	Revised Participation Plan Percentage	MBE	WBE	SBE

NAICS Code (6 digit)	Description of Work (Plan Sheet #, Unit Price #, Scope of Work #, as applicable)	% of Total Bid Price (2 decimal places)	Cert. Type for Goal (MBE, WBE, SBE)	Certified Firm Name Firm Address Contact Name Phone No. and E-Mail (if available)

Signature for Company: _____* Date: _____
Print Name: _____ Phone: _____

*I understand that supplying inaccurate information may violate Texas Penal Code Section 37.10 and lead to City sanctions.

Document 00570

CONTINUATION PAGE

NAICS Code (6 digit)	Plan Item Number (if applicable)/ Description of Work	% of Total Bid Price (2 decimal places)	Cert. Type for Goal (MBE, WBE, SBE)	Certified Firm Name Firm Address Contact Name Phone No. and E-Mail (if available)

Signature for Company: _____* Date: _____
Print Name: _____ Phone: _____

*I understand that supplying inaccurate information may violate Texas Penal Code Section 37.10 and lead to City sanctions.

Document 00571

RECORD OF POST-AWARD GOOD FAITH EFFORTS

Contractor Name: _____ **Project Name:**_____

A Contractor that may be unable to follow an agreed Participation Plan (Document 00470 or 00570) must submit this completed form, a Plan Deviation Request Form (Document 00572), and any other documentation of "Good Faith Efforts" (see Document 00808) that the OBO Representative may require. The Contractor shall submit one completed Document 00571 (Part A) for each Certified Firm that is no longer performing part or all of its work duties under the Approved Plan. The Contractor has the burden to demonstrate "Good Faith Efforts" to meet the MWSBE goal, which includes correctly and accurately preparing and submitting this form and other efforts described in the Good Faith Efforts Policy (Document 00808). The Office of Business Opportunity may review Participation Plan and Good Faith Efforts from time to time and may request that the Contractor submit this form and other information.

UNLESS THE CONTRACTOR MEETS THE GOALS IN THE AGREED PARTICIPATION PLAN, FAILURE TO SUBMIT THIS FORM MAY RESULT IN A DEFAULT OF THE CONTRACT.

PART A (REASON FOR NON-USE OF CERTIFIED FIRM IN AGREED PLAN)

NAICS Code	Plan Item No.	MWSBE Type for Goal	Certified Firm Name, Address, Phone No. and E-mail	Plan Goal & Actual Use (in % of total)	Method of Contact	Reason for Non-Use (why the Contractor was not able to use the Certified Firm in accordance with the Agreed Plan)
				Plan %: ____ Actual %: ____	Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐	

PART B (REASON FOR NONUSE OF REPLACEMENT CERTIFIED FIRMS—IF APPLICABLE)

NAICS Code	Plan Item No.	MWSBE Type for Goal	Certified Firm Name Address, Phone No. and E-Mail	Certified Firm Contact Person	Method of Contact	Prime Contact Date	Certified Firm Response	Results of Contact (why Certified Firm was unsuitable or unusable)
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			

Authorized Signature: _____ Date: _____ Phone: _____

Print Name: _____ Email Address: _____

Document 00571

PART B CONTINUATION (REASON FOR NONUSE OF REPLACEMENT CERTIFIED FIRMS)

NAICS Code	Plan Item No.	MWSBE Type for Goal	Certified Firm Name Address, Phone No. and E-Mail	Certified Firm Contact Person	Method of Contact	Prime Contact Date	Certified Firm Response	Results of Contact (why Certified Firm was unsuitable or unusable)
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			
					Phone ☐ E-mail ☐ Fax ☐			

Authorized Signature: _____ Date: _____ Phone: _____

Print Name: _____ Email Address: _____

Document 00572

CONTRACTOR'S REQUEST FOR PLAN DEVIATION

Contractor Name:_____

Project Name:_____

	MBE	WBE	SBE	Total
Approved Participation Plan Percentages	%	%	%	%

	MBE	WBE	SBE	Total
Contractor's Requested Participation Plan	%	%	%	%

Justification: Please provide the reason the Contractor is unable to meet the MWSBE goal in the Approved Plan.

_____

_____

_____

Good Faith Efforts: Please list any efforts not listed in Contractor's Record of Good Faith Effort (Document 00571).

_____

_____

_____

_____

Please attach additional pages if the space for Justification or Good Faith Efforts is insufficient.

Date:_____ *Contractor:_____

E-mail: _____ *By:_____

Phone Number: _____ Title:_____

*I understand that the approval of this deviation request does not constitute a final decision by OBO that Contractor has used Good Faith Efforts in meeting the Contracting Goal.

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY: Approved ☐ Not Approved ☐

OBO Representative Date:_____

_____ Title: _____

Document 00600

LIST OF PROPOSED SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS

PROJECT NAME: Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex & Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building

TOTAL DBE AWARD: $ _____

ORIG. CONTRACT PRICE: $ _____ TOTAL MWSBE AWARD: $ _____

PROJECT NO.: WBS No. S-001000-0052-4 TOTAL HUB AWARD: $ _____

DATE OF REPORT: _____ TOTAL PDBE AWARD: $ _____

NAICS (6 digits)	SUBCONTRACTOR OR SUPPLIER (INCLUDE "MWSBE", "PDBE", "DBE", OR "HUB" DESIGNATION)[2]	ADDRESS	SCOPE OF WORK[3]

NOTES:
1. RETURN FOR ALL PROJECTS AS REQUIRED INDOCUMENT 00800 – SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS. RETURN WITHIN THE SPECIFIED NUMBER OF DAYS AFTER RECEIPT OF NOTICE OF INTENT TO AWARD
2. DESIGNATE FIRMS CERTIFIED BY THE CITY OFFICE OF BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY ON THIS FORM.
3. DESCRIBE THE WORK TO BE PERFORMED, FOR WHICH THE FIRM IS CERTIFIED, SUCH AS "PAVING", "ELECTRICAL", ETC.
4. **CONTRACTOR SHALL EXECUTE CONTRACTS WITH APPROVED SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS WITHIN 30 DAYS AFTER THE DATE OF THE NOTICE TO PROCEED. COPIES OF CONTRACTS WITH DESIGNNATED FIRMS MUST BE SENT TO THE OFFICE OF BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY.**

SIGNATURE: _____ COMPANY NAME: _____

NAME: _____ TITLE: _____
(Type or Print)

Document 00600

Continuation Page

PROJECT NAME: Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex & Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building
DATE OF REPORT: _____
PROJECT NO.: WBS No. S-001000-0052-4

NAICS (6 digits)	SUBCONTRACTOR OR SUPPLIER (INCLUDE "MWSBE", "PDBE", "DBE", OR "HUB" DESIGNATION)[2]	ADDRESS	SCOPE OF WORK[3]

SIGNATURE: _____ COMPANY NAME: _____

NAME: _____ TITLE: _____
(Type or Print)

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00601

DRUG POLICY COMPLIANCE AGREEMENT

I, _____ _____,
Name Title

of _____
Contractor

have authority to bind Contractor with respect to its Bid, Proposal, or performance of any and all contracts it may enter into with the City of Houston; and that by making this Agreement, I affirm that Contractor is aware of and by the time the Contract is awarded will be bound by and agree to designate appropriate safety impact positions for company employee positions, and to comply with the following requirements before the City issues a Notice to Proceed:

1. Develop and implement a written Drug Free Workplace Policy and related drug testing procedures for Contractor that meet the criteria and requirements established by the Mayor's Amended Policy on Drug Detection and Deterrence (Mayor's Drug Policy) and the Mayor's Drug Detection and Deterrence Procedures for Contractors (Executive Order No. 1-31).

2. Obtain a facility to collect urine samples consistent with Health and Human Services (HHS) guidelines and an HHS-certified drug-testing laboratory to perform drug tests.

3. Monitor and keep records of drug tests given and results; and upon request from the City of Houston, provide confirmation of such testing and results.

4. Submit semi-annual Drug Policy Compliance Declarations.

I affirm on behalf of Contractor that full compliance with the Mayor's Drug Policy and Executive Order No. 1-31 is a material condition of the Contract with the City of Houston,

I further acknowledge that falsification, failure to comply with or failure to timely submit declarations or documentation in compliance with the Mayor's Drug Policy or Executive Order No. 1-31 will be considered a breach of the Contract with the City and may result in non-award or termination of the Contract by the City.

_____ _____
Contractor Title

_____ _____
Signature Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00604

HISTORY OF OSHA ACTIONS AND LIST OF ON-THE-JOB INJURIES

Prior to award of the Contract, Low Bidder will be required to file the following with the City:

1. A history of all OSHA actions, advisories, etc., Contractor has received on all jobs worked in any capacity, prime or subcontractor. The history shall be for the two-year period preceding the Bid Date of the Project.

2. A list of all on-the-job injuries, accidents, and fatalities suffered by any present or former employees of Contractor during the same two-year period.

3. If less than the two-year period, give the date Contractor started doing business.

This information must be submitted to the City within the time period stated in Document 00498 - Notice of Intent to Award. An officer of the company must certify in a notarized statement that the information submitted is true and correct.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00605

LIST OF SAFETY IMPACT POSITIONS

****

Contractor is to provide a complete List of Employee Classifications that are considered in a "Safety Impact Position" and the number of employees in each of those classifications.

****

Employee Classification	Number of Employees

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00606

CONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATION OF
NO SAFETY IMPACT POSITIONS IN PERFORMANCE OF A CITY CONTRACT

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, on this day personally appeared

_____,
Affiant

who being by me duly sworn on his oath stated that he is _____
Title

of _____
Contractor

and that no employee safety impact positions, as defined in §5.17 of Executive Order No. 1-31, will be involved in performing _____.
Project

Contractor agrees and covenants that it shall immediately notify the City of Houston Director of Personnel if any safety impact positions are established to provide services in performing this City Contract.

_____
Affiant's Signature

SWORN AND SUBSCRIBED before me on this day of _____, 20___.

_____
Notary Public in and for the State of TEXAS

_____
Print or Type Notary Public Name

My Commission Expires: _____
Expiration Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00610

PERFORMANCE BOND

THAT WE, _____, as Principal, (the "Contractor"), and the other subscriber hereto, _____, as Surety, do hereby acknowledge ourselves to be held and firmly bound to the City of Houston (the "City"), a municipal corporation, in the penal sum of $_____ for the payment of which sum, well and truly to be made to the City, its successors and assigns, Contractor and Surety do bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally.

THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION ARE SUCH THAT:

WHEREAS, the Contractor has on or about this day executed a Contract in writing with the City for _____
_____,
all of such work to be done as set out in full in said Contract documents therein referred to and adopted by the City Council, all of which are made a part of this instrument as fully and completely as if set out in full herein.

NOW THEREFORE, if the said Contractor shall faithfully and strictly perform the Contract in all its terms, provisions, and stipulations in accordance with its true meaning and effect, and in accordance with the Contract documents referred to therein and shall comply strictly with each and every provision of the Contract and with this Bond, then this obligation shall become null and void and shall have no further force and effect; otherwise the same is to remain in full force and effect. Should the Contractor fail to faithfully and strictly perform the Contract in all its terms, including but not limited to the indemnifications thereunder, the Surety shall be liable for all damages, losses, expenses and liabilities that the City may suffer in consequence thereof, as more fully set forth herein.

It is further understood and agreed that the Surety does hereby relieve the City or its representatives from the exercise of any diligence whatever in securing compliance on the part of the Contractor with the terms of the Contract, and the Surety agrees that it shall be bound to take notice of and shall be held to have knowledge of all acts or omissions of the Contractor in all matters pertaining to the Contract. The Surety understands and agrees that the provision in the Contract that the City will retain certain amounts due the Contractor until the expiration of 30 days from the acceptance of the Work is intended for the City's benefit, and the City will have the right to pay or withhold such retained amounts or any other amount owing under the Contract without changing or affecting the liability of the Surety hereon in any degree.

It is further expressly agreed by Surety that the City or its representatives are at liberty at any time, without notice to the Surety, to make any change in the Contract documents and in the Work to be done thereunder, as provided in the Contract, and in the terms and conditions thereof, or to make any change in, addition to, or deduction from the Work to be done thereunder; and that such changes, if made, shall not in any way vitiate the obligation in this Bond and undertaking or release the Surety therefrom.

It is further expressly agreed and understood that the Contractor and Surety will fully indemnify and save harmless the City from any liability, loss, cost, expense, or damage arising out of Contractor's performance of the Contract.

If the City gives Surety notice of Contractor's default, Surety shall, within 45 days, take one of the following actions:

1. Arrange for Contractor, with consent of the City, to perform and complete the Contract; or

2. Take over and assume completion of the Contract itself, through its agents or through independent contractors, and become entitled to the payment of the balance of the Contract Price.

If the Surety fails to take either of the actions set out above, it shall be deemed to have waived its right to perform and complete the Contract and receive payment of the balance of the Contract Price and the City shall be entitled to enforce any remedies available at law, including but not limited to completing the Contract itself and recovering any cost in excess of the Original Contract Price from the Surety.

This Bond and all obligations created hereunder shall be performable in Harris County, Texas. This Bond is given in compliance with the provisions of Chapter 2253, Texas Government Code, as amended, which is incorporated herein by this reference.

Notices required or permitted hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed delivered when actually received or, if earlier, on the third day following deposit in a United States Postal Service post office or receptacle, with proper postage affixed (certified mail, return receipt requested), addressed to the respective other Party at the address prescribed in the Contract documents, or at such other address as the receiving party may hereafter prescribe by written notice to the sending party.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, the said Contractor and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument on the respective dates written below their signatures and have attached current Power of Attorney.

ATTEST, SEAL: (if a corporation)
WITNESS: (if not a corporation)

_____
Name of Contractor

By: _____
Name:
Title:

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

ATTEST/SURETY WITNESS:

(SEAL)

_____
Full Name of Surety

_____
Address of Surety for Notice

_____

_____
Telephone Number of Surety

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

By: _____
Name:
Title: Attorney-in-Fact
Date:

This Ordinance or Contract has been reviewed as to form by the undersigned legal assistant and have been found to meet established Legal Department criteria. The Legal Department has not reviewed the content of these documents.

_____
Legal Assistant

_____
Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00611

STATUTORY PAYMENT BOND

THAT WE, _____, as Principal, hereinafter called Contractor and the other subscriber hereto, _____, as Surety, do hereby acknowledge ourselves to be held and firmly bound unto the City of Houston, a municipal corporation, in the sum of $_____ for the payment of which sum, well and truly to be made to the City of Houston, and its successors, the said Contractor and Surety do bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors, jointly and severally.

THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION ARE SUCH THAT:

WHEREAS, the Contractor has on or about this day executed a contract in writing with the City of Houston for _____
_____, all of such work to be done as set out in full in said Contract documents therein referred to and adopted by the City Council, all of which are made a part of this instrument as fully and completely as if set out in full herein;

NOW, THEREFORE, if the said Contractor shall pay all claimants supplying labor and materials to him or a Subcontractor in the prosecution of the Work provided for in the Contract, then, this obligation shall be void; otherwise the same is to remain in full force and effect;

PROVIDED HOWEVER, that this Bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 2253, Texas Government Code, as amended, and all liabilities on this Bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Article to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, the said Contractor and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument on the respective dates written below their signatures and have attached current Power of Attorney.

ATTEST, SEAL: (if a corporation)
WITNESS: (if not a corporation)

_____
Name of Contractor

By: _____
Name:
Title:

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

ATTEST/SURETY WITNESS:

(SEAL)

_____
Full Name of Surety

_____
Address of Surety for Notice

_____

_____
Telephone Number of Surety

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

By: _____
Name:
Title: Attorney-in-Fact
Date:

This Ordinance or Contract has been reviewed as to form by the undersigned legal assistant and have been found to meet established Legal Department criteria. The Legal Department has not reviewed the content of these documents.

_____
Legal Assistant

_____
Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00612

ONE-YEAR MAINTENANCE BOND

THAT WE, _____, as Principal, hereinafter called Contractor, and the other subscriber hereto, _____, as Surety, do hereby acknowledge ourselves to be held and firmly bound to the City of Houston, a municipal corporation, in the sum of $_____, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made to the City of Houston and its successors, the said Contractor and Surety do bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors, jointly and severally.

THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION ARE SUCH THAT:

WHEREAS, the Contractor has on or about this day executed a Contract in writing with the City of Houston for _____
_____,
all of such work to be done as set out in full in said Contract documents therein referred to and adopted by the City Council, all of which are made a part of this instrument as fully and completely as if set out in full herein.

NOW THEREFORE, if the said Contractor shall comply with the provisions of Paragraph 11.5.1 of the General Conditions, and correct work not in accordance with the Contract documents discovered within the established one-year period, then this obligation shall become null and void, and shall be of no further force and effect; otherwise, the same is to remain in full force and effect.

Notices required or permitted hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed delivered when actually received or, if earlier, on the third day following deposit in a United States Postal Service post office or receptacle, with proper postage affixed (certified mail, return receipt requested), addressed to the respective other party at the address prescribed in the Contract documents, or at such other address as the receiving party may hereafter prescribe by written notice to the sending party.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, the said Contractor and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument on the respective dates written below their signatures and have attached current Power of Attorney.

ATTEST, SEAL: (if a corporation)
WITNESS: (if not a corporation)

_____
Name of Contractor

By: _____
Name:
Title:

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

ATTEST/SURETY WITNESS:

(SEAL)

_____
Full Name of Surety

_____
Address of Surety for Notice

_____

_____
Telephone Number of Surety

By: _____
Name:
Title:
Date:

By: _____
Name:
Title: Attorney-in-Fact
Date:

This Ordinance or Contract has been reviewed as to form by the undersigned legal assistant and have been found to meet established Legal Department criteria. The Legal Department has not reviewed the content of these documents.

_____
Legal Assistant

_____
Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00620

AFFIDAVIT OF INSURANCE

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, on this day personally appeared

_____, who
Affiant

being by me duly sworn on his oath stated that he is _____, of
Title

_____,
Contractor's Company Name

the Contractor named and referred to within the Contract documents; that he is fully competent and authorized to give this affidavit and that the attached original insurance certificate truly and accurately reflects the insurance coverage that is now available and will be available during the term of the Contract.

_____
Affiant's Signature

SWORN AND SUBSCRIBED before me on _____.
Date

_____
Notary Public in and for the State of TEXAS

_____
Print or type Notary Public name

My Commission Expires: _____
Expiration Date

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00624

AFFIDAVIT OF COMPLIANCE WITH
AFFIRMATIVE ACTION PROGRAM

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, on this day personally appeared

_____, who
Affiant

being by me duly sworn on his oath stated that he is _____,
Title

of _____,
Contractor

the Contractor named and referred to within the Contract documents; that he is fully competent and authorized to give this affidavit and that the Contract is in compliance with the Affirmative Action Program of the City and has done all that is required by the Contract documents, the Affirmative Action Program, and pursuant to Chapter 15, Code of Ordinances, City of Houston, §15.16 et seq.

_____
Affiant's Signature

SWORN AND SUBSCRIBED before me on this day of _____, 20__.

_____
Notary Public in and for the State of TEXAS

_____
Print or Type Notary Public Name

My Commission Expires: _____
Expiration

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00630
(POP-2)
City of Houston
Certification of Compliance with
Pay or Play Program

Contractor Name: _____ $ _____
(Contractor/Subcontractor) *(Amount of Contract)*

Contractor Address: _____

Project No.: «WBSNo» _____

Project Name: «LegalPrjName» _____

POP Liaison Name: _____

In accordance with the City of Houston Pay or Play Program authorized by Ordinance 2007-534 and Executive Order 1-7, Contractor/Subcontractor agrees to abide by the terms of this Program. This certification is required of all contractors for contracts subject to the program. You must agree EITHER to PAY or to PLAY for all covered employees. The Contractor/Subcontractor may also Pay on behalf of some covered employees and Play on behalf of other covered employees.

The Contractor/Subcontractor will comply with all provisions of the Pay or Play Program and will furnish all information and reports requested to determine compliance with program requirements of the Pay or Play Program (See Executive Order 1-7 for the terms of the Pay or Play program) The criteria of the program is as follows:

The Contractor/Subcontractor agrees to **"Pay"** $1.00 per hour for work performed by covered employees under the contract with the City. If independent contract labor is utilized the Contractor/Subcontractor agrees to report hours worked by the independent contract laborer and pay $1.00 per hour for work performed.

Otherwise the Contractor/Subcontractor agrees to **"Play"** by providing health benefits to each covered employee. The health benefits must meet the following criteria:

1. The employer will contribute no less than $150 per employee per month toward the total premium cost for single coverage only; and
2. The employee contribution, if any amount, will be no greater than 50% of the total premium cost and no more than $150 per month.
3. Pursuant to E.O. 1-7 section 4.04 a contractor is deemed to have complied with respect to a covered employee who is not provided health benefits if the employee refuses the benefits and the employee's contribution to the premium is no more than $40 per month.

The Contractor/Subcontractor will file compliance reports with the City, which will include activity for covered employees subject to the program, in the form and to the extent requested by the administering department. Compliance reports shall contain information including, but not limited to, documentation showing employee health coverage and employee work records.
Note: The Contractor is responsible to the City for the compliance of covered employees of covered subcontractors and only forms that are accurate and complete will be accepted.

Total Employees on City Job		
Covered Employees		
Non-Covered Employees		
Exempt Employees		

***Required**
I hereby certify that the above information is true and correct.

_____ _____
Contractor *(Signature)* Date

_____
Name and Title *(Print or type)*

Document 00631
(POP-3)
City of Houston
Pay or Play Program
List of Subcontractors

Prime Contractor: _____
Project Number/Description: _____

POP Contact Person: _____
Address: _____
Email: _____
Phone: _____

Note: Include ALL subcontractors (use additional form if necessary)

Subcontractor Name	Supplier Y/N?	Amount of Subcontract	Check One: Pay	Check One: Play	Check One: Both (Pay and Play)	Check One: N/A	Contact Person	Phone	Email Address	Mailing Address

*If the above information is found to be submitted fraudulently with the intent to bypass or deceive the purpose of the Pay or Play Program the contractor will be held liable for all compliance requirements from the inception of the contract. All subcontracts that surpass the $200,000.00 threshold will be responsible for Pay or Play compliance from the inception of the contract.

Affidavit

I hereby solemnly affirm, certify and confirm that the total sub-contract value stated above is the final value of the contract (*) including all material costs, fuel, payroll, taxes, fees, profit sharing, labor or any payments in relation to the contracted work and no separate payment or contract has been made for the sub-contract under contract no._____ . The above sub-contract value includes all the costs related to work under the contract. The contractor and sub-contractor(s) agree to inform The Mayor's Office of Business Opportunity of any related cost(s) added to the contracted work and re-submit POP-3 with the current value of the sub-contract. I understand that compliance with "Pay or Play" program is mandatory and nothing has been hidden to circumvent the program requirements.

_____
Contractor Authorized Representative & Title Date
Name & Signature

Document 00642

MONTHLY SUBCONTRACTOR PAYMENT REPORTING FORM

Legal Project Name:_____

Outline Agreement No.:_____ WBS No.:_____

Contractor's Company Name: _____

Address: _____

CERTIFICATION

_____, Contractor's Representative for the above referenced Contract, hereby certifies that (1) Contractor has paid all subcontractors, except those noted below, (2) Contractor made such payments (a) in proportion to the amount City paid Contractor and (b) in accordance and compliance with all applicable Contract Documents and laws; and (3) Contractor withheld no sums from any subcontractor for allegations of deficiency in Work. The term "subcontractor", as used herein, includes all persons or firms furnishing work, materials, services or equipment Contractor ordered incorporated into Work or placed near the Project for which the City made partial payment.

EXCEPTION: Contractor sent Payment Notifications to the following subcontractors explaining why Contractor withheld payment. Copies are attached.

Subcontractor Name:_____	Subcontractor Name: _____
Street Address: _____	Street Address: _____
City, State, and Zip Code: _____	City, State, and Zip Code: _____
Amount of Payment Withheld:_____	Amount of Payment Withheld: _____
Date Payment First Withheld: _____	Date Payment First Withheld: _____
Description of Good Faith Reason:_____	Description of Good Faith Reason:_____
_____	_____

_____
(Signature of Contractor's Representative)

_____
(Print or Type Name of Contractor's Representative)

SWORN TO AND SUBSCRIBED before me on:

_____
Date

_____
Notary Public in and for the State of Texas

My Commission Expires: _____
Expiration Date

_____
Print or Type Name of Notary Public

PAYMENT NOTIFICATION
EXPLANATION OF WITHHOLDING

****

Instructions:

If Contractor withholds any amount of a payment to a Subcontractor for any reason, the Contractor shall send Payment Notifications to the Subcontractor explaining why the payment was withheld.

Contractor shall provide the City Monitoring Authority with Payment Notifications for each subcontractor from which Contractor has withheld payment. Contractor shall submit all necessary Payment Notifications (Document 00646), Payment Reporting Forms (Document 00642), and other documentation at the same time Contractor submits the Application and Certification for Payment or the Estimate for Payment.

****

Document 00646

PAYMENT NOTIFICATION – EXPLANATION OF WITHHOLDING

Legal Project Name:_____

Outline Agreement No.:_____ WBS No.:_____

Contractor's Company Name: _____

Address: _____

Date: _____

SUBCONTRACTOR PAYMENT INFORMATION:

Subcontractor Name:_____

Street Address: _____

City, State, and Zip Code: _____

Business Phone Number: _____

Amount of Subcontractor Invoice: _____

Amount of Payment Made: _____

Amount of Payment Withheld:_____

Date Payment First Withheld: _____

DETAILED EXPLANATION OF WITHHOLDING: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____ _____

(Signature of Contractor's Representative) (Print or Type Name of Contractor's Representative)

Document 00700

GENERAL CONDITIONS

August 15, 2015 EDITION

TABLE OF ARTICLES

1. GENERAL PROVISIONS
2. THE CITY
3. CONTRACTOR
4. ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT
5. SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS
6. CONSTRUCTION BY THE CITY OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
7. CHANGES IN THE WORK
8. TIME
9. PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
10. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS
11. INSURANCE AND BONDS
12. UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF THE WORK
13. MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
14. TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

ARTICLE 1 - GENERAL PROVISIONS 3

1.1 DEFINITIONS 3
1.2 EXECUTION, CORRELATION, AND INTENT 5
1.3 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF DOCUMENTS 6
1.4 INTERPRETATION 6

ARTICLE 2 - THE CITY 6

2.1 LIMITATIONS OF THE CITY'S OFFICERS AND EMPLOYEES 6
2.2 DUTIES OF THE CITY 6
2.3 AVAILABILITY OF LAND AND USE OF SITE 6
2.4 THE CITY'S RIGHT TO STOP THE WORK 7
2.5 THE CITY'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT WORK 7

ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACTOR 7

3.1 RESPONSIBILITIES 7
3.2 REVIEW OF CONTRACT AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR 7
3.3 SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES 7
3.4 SUPERINTENDENT 8
3.5 LABOR 8
3.6 PREVAILING WAGE RATES 9
3.7 LABOR CONDITIONS 9
3.8 DRUG DETECTION AND DETERRENCE 9
3.9 MATERIALS & EQUIPMENT 10
3.10 PRODUCT OPTIONS AND SUBSTITUTIONS 10
3.11 CASH ALLOWANCES 11
3.12 WARRANTY 11
3.13 TAXES 12
3.14 PERMITS, FEES, AND NOTICES 12
3.15 CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES 12
3.16 DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES AT THE SITE 12
3.17 MANUFACTURER'S SPECIFICATIONS 12
3.18 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES 13
3.19 CULTURAL RESOURCES AND ENDANGERED SPECIES 13
3.20 CUTTING AND PATCHING 14
3.21 CLEANING 14
3.22 SANITATION 14
3.23 ACCESS TO WORK AND TO INFORMATION 14
3.24 TRADE SECRETS 14
3.25 INDEMNIFICATION 14
3.26 RELEASE AND INDEMNIFICATION – PATENT, COPYRIGHT, TRADEMARK, AND TRADE SECRET INFRINGEMENT 15
3.27 INDEMNIFICATION PROCEDURES 15
3.28 CONTRACTOR DEBT 156

ARTICLE 4 - ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT 16

4.1 CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION 16
4.2 COMMUNICATIONS IN ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT 17
4.3 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES 17
4.4 RESOLUTION OF CLAIMS AND DISPUTES 18
4.5 CONDITION PRECEDENT TO SUIT; WAIVER OF ATTORNEYFEES AND INTEREST 18
4.6 INTERIM PAYMENT WAIVER & RELEASE 18

ARTICLE 5 - SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS 19

5.1 AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS OTHER CONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK 19
5.2 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY FOR SUBCONTRACTORS 19

ARTICLE 6 - CONSTRUCTION BY THE CITY OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS 19

6.1 THE CITY'S RIGHT TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION AND TO AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS 19
6.2 COORDINATION 19
6.3 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY 20
6.4 THE CITY'S RIGHT TO CLEAN UP 20

ARTICLE 7 - CHANGES IN THE WORK 20

7.1 CHANGES 20
7.2 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVES 20
7.3 ADJUSTMENTS IN CONTRACT PRICE 21
7.4 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK 22

ARTICLE 8 - TIME 22

8.1 PROGRESS AND COMPLETION 22
8.2 DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME 22

ARTICLE 9 - PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION 23

9.1 UNIT PRICE WORK 23
9.2 ESTIMATES FOR PAYMENT, UNIT PRICE WORK 23
9.3 STIPULATED PRICE WORK 24
9.4 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT, STIPULATED PRICE WORK 24
9.5 CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT 24
9.6 COMPUTATIONS OF CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT 24
9.7 DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION 24
9.8 PROGRESS PAYMENTS 25
9.9 DATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION 25
9.10 PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE 26
9.11 FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT 26

9.12 LIQUIDATED DAMAGES 27

ARTICLE 10 - SAFETY PRECAUTIONS 27

10.1 SAFETY PROGRAMS 27
10.2 POLLUTANTS AND POLLUTANT FACILITIES 28
10.3 SAFETY OF THE ENVIRONMENT, PERSONS, AND PROPERTY 28
10.4 EMERGENCIES 28

ARTICLE 11 - INSURANCE AND BONDS 28

11.1 GENERAL INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS 28
11.2 INSURANCE TO BE PROVIDED BY CONTRACTOR 29
11.3 PROOF OF INSURANCE 32
11.4 PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS 33
11.5 MAINTENANCE BONDS 33
11.6 SURETY 33
11.7 DELIVERY OF BONDS 344

ARTICLE 12 - UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF THE WORK 344

12.1 UNCOVERING OF THE WORK 34
12.2 CORRECTION OF THE WORK 34
12.3 ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK 34

ARTICLE 13 - MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS 34

13.1 GOVERNING LAWS 34
13.2 SUCCESSORS 345
13.3 BUSINESS STRUCTURE AND ASSIGNMENTS . 355
13.4 WRITTEN NOTICE 35
13.5 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES 35
13.6 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS 35
13.7 INTEREST 35
13.8 PARTIES IN INTEREST 36
13.9 ENTIRE CONTRACT 36
13.10 WRITTEN AMENDMENT 36
13.11 COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS 36
13.12 SEVERABILITY 36

ARTICLE 14 - TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT 36

14.1 TERMINATION BY THE CITY FOR CAUSE 36
14.2 TERMINATION BY THE CITY FOR CONVENIENCE 37
14.3 SUSPENSION BY THE CITY FOR CONVENIENCE 37
14.4 TERMINATION BY CONTRACTOR 38

ARTICLE 1 - GENERAL PROVISIONS

1.1 DEFINITIONS

1.1.1 Agreement: Document signed by the Parties and binding the Parties, containing the name of Contractor, title and location of the Project, Original Contract Time, Original Contract Price, enumeration of documents included in the Contract, and other provisions.

1.1.2 Bonds: Performance Bond, Payment Bond, Maintenance Bond, and other Surety instruments executed by Surety. When in singular form, refers to individual instrument.

1.1.3 Business Enterprise: Any business entity registered in a program authorized by 49 C.F.R. § 26 (where applicable) or City Code of Ordinances, Chapter 15, Article II, relating to Equal Opportunity Employment and taking affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed and employees are treated without regard to race, religion, color, sex, national origin, or age. The term "Business Enterprise" may include any Disadvantaged Business Enterprise ("DBE"), Minority Business Enterprise ("MBE"), Woman Business Enterprise ("WBE"), Small Business Enterprise ("SBE"), Person with Disability Enterprise ("PDBE"), and any Historically Underutilized Business ("HUB").

1.1.4 Business Enterprise Policy: Contract documents and applicable policies relating to Business Enterprises and authorized under 49 C.F.R. § 26 or City Code of Ordinances, Chapter 15, Article II.

1.1.5 Cash Allowance: An estimated sum of money to be used only for a limited class of expenditures such as utility relocation costs, fees for special licenses or permits, or other "pass-through" costs that would be the same for any contractor. Cash Allowances may not be used to purchase goods or services that are not specified in the Contract. The unspecified items must be purchased according to the terms of Article 7.

1.1.6 Change Order: Written instrument prepared by the City and signed by City Engineer and Contractor, specifying the following:

1.1.6.1 a change in the Work;
1.1.6.2 a change in Contract Price, if any; and
1.1.6.3 a change in Contract Time, if any.

The value of a Change Order is the net amount after offsetting all deductions against all additions effected by the Change Order.

1.1.7 City: The City of Houston, a home rule municipality located principally within Harris County, Texas, including its successors and its authorized representatives.

1.1.8 City Engineer: The City Engineer, or the City employee representing the City Engineer, designated in the Agreement and authorized to represent the City, or successors.

1.1.9 Claim: Written demand or written assertion by one Party seeking adjustment of the Contract, payment of money, extension of time, or other relief under the Contract and includes, but is not limited to, claims for materials, labor, equipment, delay, changes, adjustments, substitutions, fees and third party claims. The Party making the Claim has the responsibility to substantiate the Claim.

1.1.10 Conditions of the Contract: General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions.

1.1.11 Construction Manager: Person or firm under contract with the City as its authorized representative to oversee and administer construction of the Work, and who may perform the role of Project Manager and Inspector, as designated by City Engineer in writing.

1.1.12 Contract: The Agreement; documents enumerated in and incorporated into the Agreement, Modifications, and amendments.

1.1.13 Contract Price: The monetary amount stated in the Agreement adjusted by Change Order, and increases or decreases in Unit Price Quantities, if any.

1.1.14 Contract Time: The number of days stated in the Agreement to substantially complete the Work, plus days authorized by Change Order.

1.1.15 Contractor: Person or firm identified as such in the Agreement including its successors and its authorized representatives.

1.1.16 Date of Commencement of the Work: Date established in Notice to Proceed on which Contract Time will commence. This date will not be changed by failure of Contractor, or persons or entities for whom Contractor is responsible, to act.

1.1.17 Date of Substantial Completion: Date that construction, or portion thereof designated by City Engineer, is certified by City Engineer to be substantially complete.

1.1.18 Design Consultant: Person or firm, under contract with the City, to provide professional services during construction and its authorized representatives. If a Design Consultant is not employed for services during construction, Project Manager will perform duties of Design Consultant designated in the Contract in addition to usual duties of Project Manager.

1.1.19 Drawings: Graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract that define the character and scope of the Work.

1.1.20 Extra Unit Price: Unit Prices, which may be required for completion of the Work. These Unit Prices and Unit Price Quantities are in the Contract and are included in Original Contract Price.

1.1.21 Furnish: To supply, pay for, deliver to the site, and unload.

1.1.22 General Requirements: The sections of Division 01 Specifications that specify administrative and procedural requirements and temporary facilities required for the Work.

1.1.23 Inspector: City's employee or agent authorized to assist with inspection of the Work.

1.1.24 Install: Unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, clean, protect, and similar operations.

1.1.25 Legal Holiday: Day established by the City Council as a holiday.

1.1.26 Major Unit Price Work: An individual Unit Price item,

1.1.26.1 whose value is greater than five percent of Original Contract Price,

1.1.26.2 whose value becomes greater than five percent of Original Contract Price as the result of an increase in quantity, or

1.1.26.3 whose value is $100,000, whichever is least.

1.1.27 Minor Change in the Work: A written change in the Work, ordered by City Engineer, that does not change Contract Price or Contract Time, and that is consistent with the general scope of the Contract.

1.1.28 Modification: Change Order, Work Change Directive, or Minor Change in the Work.

1.1.29 Notice of Noncompliance: A written notice by City Engineer to Contractor regarding defective or nonconforming work that does not meet the Contract requirements, and that establishes a time by which Contractor shall correct the defective or nonconforming work.

1.1.30 Notice to Proceed: A written notice by City Engineer to Contractor establishing Date of Commencement of the Work.

1.1.31 Office of Business Opportunity: any reference to, or use of, the "Office of Affirmative Action" shall mean the Office of Business Opportunity, or any such future name to which it is changed.

1.1.32 Original Contract Price: The monetary amount originally stated in the Agreement.

1.1.33 Parties: Contractor and the City. When in singular form, refers to Contractor or the City.

1.1.34 Pollutant: Any materials subject to the Texas Solid Waste Disposal Act.

1.1.35 Pollutant Facility: Any facility regulated by the State of Texas to protect the health and environment from contamination by Pollutants, including without limitation, landfills, oil and gas production and storage facilities, wastewater facilities, waste injection wells, and storage tanks (including drums).

1.1.36 Product: Materials, equipment, or systems incorporated into the Work or to be incorporated into the Work.

1.1.37 Product Data: Illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by Contractor to illustrate a Product.

1.1.38 Project: Total construction, of which the Work performed under the Contract may be the whole or a part, and which may include construction by the City or by separate contractors.

1.1.39 Project Manager: City Engineer's authorized representative for administration of the Work. Titles used within the City's departments may be different than those used in this definition.

1.1.40 Provide: Furnish and Install, complete, ready for intended use.

1.1.41 Samples: Physical examples that illustrate Products, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work is judged.

1.1.42 Shop Drawings: Drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by Contractor, Subcontractor or Supplier, to illustrate a portion of the Work.

1.1.43 Specifications: Divisions 01 through 16 of the documents that are incorporated into the Agreement, consisting of written General Requirements and requirements for Products, standards, and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

1.1.44 Stipulated Price: Single lump sum amount stated in the Contract for completion of the Work, or for designated portion of the Work.

1.1.45 Subcontractor: Person or firm that has direct or indirect contract with Contractor or with another Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work and its authorized representatives.

1.1.46 Superintendent: Employee of Contractor having authority and responsibility to act for and represent Contractor.

1.1.47 Supplementary Conditions: Part of Conditions of the Contract that amends or supplements General Conditions.

1.1.48 Supplier: Manufacturer, distributor, materialman, or vendor having a direct agreement with Contractor or Subcontractor for Products, or services and its authorized representatives.

1.1.49 Surety: Corporate entity that is bound by one or more Bonds, and is responsible for completion of the Work, including the correction period, and for payment of debts incurred in fulfilling the Contract. Surety shall include co-surety or reinsurer, as applicable.

1.1.50 Underground Facilities: Pipes, conduits, ducts, cables, wires, manholes, vaults, tanks, tunnels, or other such facilities or attachments and encasements containing such facilities that exist below ground level.

1.1.51 Unit Price: An amount stated in the Contract for an individual, measurable item of work, which, when multiplied by actual quantity incorporated into the Work, amounts to full compensation for completion of the item, including work incidental to it.

1.1.52 Unit Price Quantities: Quantities indicated in the Contract that are approximations made by the City for contracting purposes.

1.1.53 Work: Entire construction required by the Contract, including all labor, Products, and services provided by Contractor to fulfill Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a portion of the Project.

1.1.54 Work Change Directive: A written change in the Work, ordered by City Engineer, that is within the general scope of the Contract and consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions. A Work Change Directive will state proposed basis for adjustment, if any, in Contract Price or Contract Time, or both.

1.2 EXECUTION, CORRELATION, AND INTENT

1.2.1 Execution of the Contract by Contractor is conclusive that Contractor has visited the Work site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work will be performed, and fully informed itself as to conditions and matters which can affect the Work or costs. Contractor further agrees that it has carefully correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract.

1.2.2 The Contract and Modifications have been read and carefully considered by Contractor, who understands and agrees to their sufficiency for the Work. The Contract may not be more strongly construed against the City than against Contractor and Surety.

1.2.3 Contractor shall include all items necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work.

1.2.4 Reference to standard specifications, manuals, or codes of a technical society, organization, or association, or to laws or regulations of a governmental authority, whether specific or implied, mean the latest edition in effect as of date of receipt of bids, except as may be otherwise specifically stated in the Contract.

1.2.5 No provision of any referenced standard, specification, or manual changes the duties and responsibilities of the City, City Engineer, Contractor, or Design Consultant from those set forth in the Contract. Nor do these provisions assign to Design Consultant any duty or authority to supervise or direct performance of the Work or any duty or

authority to undertake any actions contrary to provisions of the Contract.

1.2.6 Organization of Specifications into divisions, sections, and articles and arrangement of Drawings does not control Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of work to be performed by any trade.

1.2.7 Unless otherwise defined in the Contract, words which have well-known construction industry technical meanings are used in the Contract in accordance with these recognized meanings.

1.3 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF DOCUMENTS

1.3.1 Drawings, Specifications, and other documents prepared by the City or by Design Consultant are instruments of service through which the Work to be executed by Contractor is described. Contractor may retain one Contract record set.

1.3.2 Neither Contractor, Subcontractor, nor Supplier will own or claim a copyright to documents contained in the Contract or any part of the Contract.

1.3.3 Documents contained in the Contract, prepared by the City or by Design Consultant, and copies furnished to Contractor, are for use solely with respect to the Work. They may not be used by Contractor, Subcontractor or Supplier on other projects or for additions to the Work, outside the scope of the Work, without the specific written consent of City Engineer, and Design Consultant, when applicable.

1.3.4 Contractor, Subcontractors, and Suppliers are granted a limited license to use and reproduce applicable portions of the Contract appropriate to and for use in execution of their work under the Contract.

1.4 *INTERPRETATION*

1.4.1 Specifications are written in an imperative streamlined form and are directed to Contractor, unless noted otherwise. When written in this form, words "shall be" are included by inference where a colon (:) is used within sentences or phrases.

1.4.2 In the interest of brevity, the Contract frequently omits modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an", but an absent modifier or article is not intended to affect interpretation of a statement.

ARTICLE 2 - THE CITY

2.1 *LIMITATIONS OF THE CITY'S OFFICERS AND EMPLOYEES*

2.1.1 No officer or employee of the City may authorize Contractor to perform an act or work contrary to the Contract, except as otherwise provided in the Contract.

2.2 *DUTIES OF THE CITY*

2.2.1 If a building permit is required, the City will process an application for, and Contractor shall purchase the building permit before Date of Commencement of the Work.

2.2.2 The City will make available to Contractor a reproducible set of Drawings. Additional copies will be furnished, on Contractor's request, at the cost of reproduction.

2.2.3 When necessary for performance of the Work, the City will provide surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations, legal description of site, and horizontal and vertical control adequate to lay out the Work.

2.2.4 Information or services that the City is required to provide under the Contract will be provided by the City with reasonable promptness to avoid delay in orderly progress of the Work.

2.2.5 The Contract imposes no implied duty on the City. The City does not warrant any plans or specifications associated with the Contract.

2.2.6 Except as expressly stated in this Article, the City owes no duty to the Contractor or any subcontractor.

2.3 *AVAILABILITY OF LAND AND USE OF SITE*

2.3.1 The City will furnish, as indicated in the Contract, rights-of-way, land on which the Work is to be performed, and other land designated in the Contract for use by Contractor unless otherwise provided in the Contract.

2.3.2 Contractor shall confine operations at site to those areas permitted by law, ordinances, permits, and the Contract, and may not unreasonably encumber site with materials or equipment.

2.3.3 In addition to land provided by the City under Section 2.3, Contractor shall provide all land and access to land that may be required for use by Contractor for temporary construction facilities or for storage of materials and equipment, and shall indemnify the City during its use of the land as stated in Section 3.25.

2.4 *THE CITY'S RIGHT TO STOP THE WORK*

2.4.1 If Contractor fails to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract, or fails to correct work which is not in accordance with requirements of the Contract as required in Sections 12.1 and 12.2, the City may, by Notice of Noncompliance, order Contractor to stop the Work or any portion of the Work until the cause for the order has been eliminated. However, the right of the City to stop the Work will not give rise to a Claim for delay or to a duty on the part of the City to exercise this right for the benefit of Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.2. If Contractor corrects the defective or nonconforming work within the time established in Notice of Noncompliance, City Engineer will give written notice to Contractor to resume performance of the Work.

2.5 *THE CITY'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT WORK*

2.5.1 If Contractor fails to carry out work in accordance with the Contract, and fails within the period established in a Notice of Noncompliance to correct the nonconforming work, the City may, after expiration of the required period, correct the deficiencies without prejudice to other remedies the City may have, including rights of the City under Section 14.1.

2.5.1.1 When the City corrects deficiencies, City Engineer will issue an appropriate Change Order and deduct from payments then or thereafter due Contractor the cost of correcting the deficiencies, including compensation for Design Consultant's and Construction Manager's additional services and expenses made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. This action by the City and amounts charged to Contractor are both subject to prior approval of City Engineer. If payments, then or thereafter due Contractor, are not sufficient to cover these amounts, Contractor shall pay the difference to the City.

2.5.2 Notwithstanding the City's right to carry out work, maintenance and protection of the Work remains Contractor's responsibility, as provided in the Contract.

ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACTOR

3.1 *RESPONSIBILITIES*

3.1.1 Contractor shall maintain office with agent in the greater City of Houston area during the Contractor's performance under the Contract. Contractor shall file its street address with City Engineer.

3.1.2 Contractor and Contractor's employees shall not give or lend money or anything of value to an officer or employee of the City. Should this Paragraph 3.1.2 be violated, City Engineer may terminate the Contract under Section 14.1.

3.2 *REVIEW OF CONTRACT AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR*

3.2.1 Contractor shall carefully study and compare documents contained in the Contract with each other and with information furnished by the City pursuant to Section 2.2 and shall immediately report, in writing, any errors, inconsistencies, or omissions to City Engineer. If work is affected, Contractor shall obtain a written interpretation or clarification from City Engineer before proceeding with the affected work. However, Contractor will not be liable to the City for failure to report an error, inconsistency, or omission in the Contract unless Contractor had actual knowledge or should have had knowledge of the error, inconsistency, or omission.

3.2.2 Contractor shall take field measurements and verify field conditions, and shall carefully compare the conditions and other information known to Contractor with the Contract, before commencing activities. Contractor shall immediately report, in writing, to City Engineer for interpretation or clarification of discrepancies, inconsistencies, or omissions discovered during this process.

3.2.3 Contractor shall make a reasonable attempt to understand the Contract before requesting interpretation from City Engineer.

3.3 *SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES*

3.3.1 Contractor shall supervise, direct, and inspect the Work competently and efficiently, devoting the attention and applying the skills and

expertise as necessary to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract. Contractor is solely responsible and has control over construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction; for safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work; and for coordinating all work under the Contract.

3.3.2 Regardless of observations or inspections by the City or City's consultants, Contractor shall perform and complete the Work in accordance with the Contract and submittals approved pursuant to Section 3.18. The City is not liable or responsible to Contractor or Surety for work performed by Contractor that is not in accordance with the Contract regardless of whether discovered during construction or after acceptance of the Work.

3.4 *SUPERINTENDENT*

3.4.1 Contractor shall employ a competent Superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be present at the site during performance of the Work. Communications given to Superintendent are binding on the Contractor.

3.4.2 Contractor shall notify City Engineer in writing of its intent to replace the Superintendent. Contractor may not replace the Superintendent if City Engineer makes a reasonable objection in writing.

3.5 *LABOR*

3.5.1 Contractor shall provide competent, qualified personnel to survey and lay out the Work and perform construction as required by the Contract. The City may, by written notice, require Contractor to remove from the Work any employee of Contractor or Subcontractors to whom City Engineer makes reasonable objection.

3.5.2 Contractor shall comply with the applicable Business Enterprise Policy set out in this Agreement and in the Supplementary Conditions, as set out in Chapter 15, Article V of the City of Houston Code of Ordinances.

3.5.3 When Original Contract Price is greater than $1,000,000, Contractor shall make Good Faith Efforts to award subcontracts or supply agreements in at least the percentages set out in the Supplementary Conditions for Business Enterprise Policy. Contractor acknowledges that it has reviewed the requirements for Good Faith Efforts on file with the City's Office of Business Opportunity and shall comply with them.

3.5.3.1 Contractor shall require written subcontracts with Business Enterprises and shall submit all disputes with Business Enterprises to voluntary mediation. Business Enterprise subcontracts complying with City Code of Ordinances Chapter 15, Article II must contain the terms set out in Subparagraph 3.5.3.2. If Contractor is an individual person, as distinguished from a corporation, partnership, or other legal entity, and the amount of the subcontract is $50,000 or less, the subcontract must also be signed by the attorneys of the respective parties.

3.5.3.2 Contractor shall ensure that subcontracts with Business Enterprise firms are clearly labeled **"THIS CONTRACT MAY BE SUBJECT TO MEDIATION ACCORDING TO THE TEXAS ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION ACT"** and contain the following terms:

3.5.3.2.1 (Business Enterprise) may not delegate or subcontract more than 50 percent of work under this subcontract to any other subcontractor without the express written consent of the City's OBO Director (the "Director").

3.5.3.2.2 (Business Enterprise) shall permit representatives of the City of Houston, at all reasonable times, to perform (1) audits of the books and records of the Subcontractors and Suppliers, and (2) inspections of all places where work is to be undertaken in connection with this subcontract. (Business Enterprise) shall keep the books and records available for this purpose for at least four years after the end of its performance under this subcontract. Nothing in this provision shall affect the time for bringing a cause of action nor the applicable statute of limitations.

3.5.3.2.3 Within five business days of execution of this subcontract, Contractor and (Business Enterprise) shall designate in writing to the Director an agent for receiving any notice required or permitted to be given pursuant to Chapter 15 of the Houston City Code of Ordinances, along with the street and mailing address and phone number of the agent.

3.5.4 The requirements and terms of the City of Houston Pay or Play Program, as set out in Executive Order 1-7 and Ordinance 2007-0534, are incorporated into the Contract for all purposes. Contractor shall comply with the terms and conditions of the Pay or Play Program as they are set out at the time of City Council approval of this

agreement. IF CONTRACTOR DOES NOT PAY IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PAY OR PLAY PROGRAM WITHIN 30 DAYS OF THE DATE CITY ENGINEEER SENDS CONTRACTOR WRITTEN NOTIFICATION, CITY CONTROLLER MAY DEDUCT FUNDS UP TO THE AMOUNT OWED FROM ANY PAYMENTS OWED TO CONTRACTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, AND CONTRACTOR WAIVES ANY RECOURSE.

3.6 *PREVAILING WAGE RATES*

3.6.1 Contractor shall comply with governing statutes providing for labor classification of wage scales for each craft or type of laborer, worker, or mechanic.

3.6.2 Prevailing wage rates applicable to the Work may be one or a combination of the following wage rates identified in Division 00:

- 3.6.2.1 Federal Wage Rate General Decisions
  - 3.6.2.1.1 Highway Rates
  - 3.6.2.1.2 Building Rates
  - 3.6.2.1.3 Heavy Construction Rates
  - 3.6.2.1.4 Residential Rates
- 3.6.2.2 City Prevailing Wage Rates
  - 3.6.2.2.1 Building Construction Rates
  - 3.6.2.2.2 Engineering Construction Rates
  - 3.6.2.2.3 Asbestos Worker Rates

3.6.3 Each week Contractor shall submit to the City's Mayor's Office of Business Opportunity certified copies of payrolls showing classifications and wages paid by Contractor, Subcontractors, and Suppliers for each employee under the Contract, for any day included in the Contract.

3.7 *LABOR CONDITIONS*

3.7.1 In the event of labor disputes affecting Contractor or Contractor's employees, Contractor shall utilize all possible means to resolve disputes in order that the Work not be delayed to any extent. These means will include seeking injunctive relief and filing unfair labor practice charges, and any other action available to Contractor.

3.7.2 When Contractor has knowledge that any actual or potential labor dispute is delaying or is threatening to delay timely performance of the Work, Contractor shall immediately notify City Engineer in writing. No Claims will be accepted by City Engineer for costs incurred as a result of jurisdictional or labor disputes.

3.8 *DRUG DETECTION AND DETERRENCE*

3.8.1 It is the policy of the City to achieve a drug-free work force and to provide a workplace that is free from the use of illegal drugs and alcohol. It is also the policy of the City that manufacture, distribution, dispensation, possession, sale, or use of illegal drugs or alcohol by contractors while on the City's premises is prohibited. By executing the Contract, Contractor represents and certifies that it meets and will comply with all requirements and procedures set forth in the Mayor's Policy on Drug Detection and Deterrence, City Council Motion No. 92-1971 ("Mayor's Policy") and the Mayor's Drug Detection and Deterrence Procedures for Contractors, Executive Order No. 1-31, (Revised) ("Executive Order"). Mayor's Policy is on file in the office of the City Secretary. Copies of Executive Order may be obtained at the location specified in the Advertisement for Bids.

3.8.1.1 The Executive Order applies to the City's contracts for labor or services except the following:

- 3.8.1.1.1 contracts authorized by Emergency Purchase Orders,
- 3.8.1.1.2 contracts in which imposition of requirements of the Executive Order would exclude all potential bidders or proposers, or would eliminate meaningful competition for the Contract,
- 3.8.1.1.3 contracts with companies that have fewer than 15 employees during any 20-week period during a calendar year and no safety impact positions,
- 3.8.1.1.4 contracts with non-profit organizations providing services at no cost or reduced cost to the public, and
- 3.8.1.1.5 contracts with federal, state, or local governmental entities.

3.8.1.2 Prior to execution of the Contract, Contractor shall have filed with the City:

- 3.8.1.2.1 a Drug Policy Compliance Agreement form (Attachment "A" to the Executive Order), and
- 3.8.1.2.2 a copy of Contractor's drug free workplace policy, and
- 3.8.1.2.3 a written designation of all safety impact positions, if applicable, or a Contractor's Certification of a No Safety Impact Positions form (Attachment "C" to the Executive Order).

3.8.1.3 Every six months during performance of the Contract and upon completion of the Contract, Contractor shall file a Drug Policy Compliance Declaration form (Attachment "B" to the Executive Order). The Contractor shall submit the Drug Policy Compliance Declaration within 30 days of expiration of each six-month period of performance and within 30 days of completion of the Contract. The first six-month period shall begin on Date of Commencement of the Work.

3.8.1.4 Contractor shall have a continuing obligation to file updated designation of safety impact positions when additional safety impact positions are added to Contractor's employee workforce during performance of the Work.

3.8.1.5 Contractor shall require its Subcontractors and Suppliers to comply with the Mayor's Policy and Executive Order. Contractor is responsible for securing and maintaining required documents from Subcontractors and Suppliers for the City inspection throughout the term of the Contract.

3.8.1.6 Failure of Contractor to comply with requirements will be a material breach of the Contract entitling the City to terminate in accordance with Section 14.1.

3.9 *MATERIALS & EQUIPMENT*

3.9.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract, Contractor shall provide and assume full responsibility for Products, labor, transportation, construction equipment and machinery, tools, appliances, fuel, power, light, heat, telephone, water, sanitary facilities, transportation, temporary facilities, supplies, and other facilities and incidentals necessary for Furnishing, performing, testing, starting-up, and completing the Work.

3.9.1.1 Contractor, Subcontractors, and Suppliers shall use Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel in all diesel operating vehicles and motorized equipment utilized in performing the Work. Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel is defined as diesel fuel having 15 ppm or the applicable standard set by state or federal law or rules and regulations of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, or the Environmental Protection Agency, whichever is less in sulfur content. Off-road Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel may be used in lieu of on-road Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel. Contractor shall provide, upon request by City Engineer, proof that Contractor, Subcontractors, and Suppliers are using Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel.

3.9.2 Contractor shall provide Products that are:

3.9.2.1 new, unless otherwise required or permitted by the Contract, and

3.9.2.2 of specified quality.

If required by City Engineer, Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence, including reports of required tests, as to kind and quality of Products.

3.9.3 Contractor shall store Products in a safe, neat, compact, and protected manner. Contractor shall also store Products delivered during the work, along the right-of-way:

3.9.3.1 so as to cause the least inconvenience to property owners, tenants, and general public; and

3.9.3.2 so as not to block access to, or be closer than, three feet to any fire hydrant.

Contractor shall protect trees, lawns, walks, drives, streets, and other improvements that are to remain, from damage. If private or public property is damaged by Contractor, Contractor shall, at its sole expense, restore the damaged property to at least its original condition.

3.9.3.1 Contractor shall obtain City Engineer's approval for storage areas used for Products for which payment has been requested under Paragraph 9.6.1. Contractor shall provide the City access to the storage areas for inspection purposes. Products, once paid for by the City, become the property of the City and may not be removed from place of storage, without City Engineer's written permission except for a movement to the site. Contractor's Installation Floater, required under Section 11.2, shall cover all perils, including loss or damage to Products during storage, loading, unloading, and transit to the site.

3.10 *PRODUCT OPTIONS AND SUBSTITUTIONS*

3.10.1 For Products specified by reference standards or by description only, Contractor may provide any Product meeting those standards or description.

3.10.2 For Products specified by naming one or more manufacturers with provision for substitutions or equal, Contractor may submit a request for substitution for any manufacturer not named.

3.10.3 City Engineer will consider requests for substitutions only within the first 15 percent of Contract Time, or first 90 days after date of Notice to Proceed, whichever is less.

3.10.4 Contractor shall document each request for substitution with complete data

substantiating compliance of proposed substitution with the Contract.

3.10.5 A request for substitution constitutes a representation that Contractor:

3.10.5.1 has investigated the proposed Product and determined that it meets or exceeds the quality level of the specified Product;

3.10.5.2 shall provide the same warranty for the substitution as for the specified Product;

3.10.5.3 shall coordinate installation of the proposed substitution and make changes to other work which may be required for the Work to be completed, with no additional cost or increase in time to the City;

3.10.5.4 confirms that cost data is complete and includes all related costs under the Contract;

3.10.5.5 waives Claim for additional costs or time extensions that may subsequently become apparent; and

3.10.5.6 shall provide review or redesign services by a design consultant with appropriate professional license and shall obtain re-approval and permits from authorities.

3.10.6 City Engineer will not consider and will not approve substitutions when:

3.10.6.1 they are indicated or implied on Shop Drawing or Product Data submittals without separate written request; or

3.10.6.2 acceptance will require revision to the Contract.

3.10.7 City Engineer may reject requests for substitution, and his decision will be final and binding on the Parties.

3.11 *CASH ALLOWANCES*

3.11.1 Contract Price includes Cash Allowances as identified in the Contract.

3.11.2 The City will pay the actual costs of Cash Allowance item exclusive of profit, overhead or administrative costs. If actual costs exceed the Cash Allowance, City Engineer must approve a Change Order for the additional costs.

3.12 *WARRANTY*

3.12.1 Contractor warrants to the City that Products furnished under the Contract are:

3.12.1.1 free of defects in title;

3.12.1.2 of good quality; and

3.12.1.3 new, unless otherwise required or permitted by the Contract.

If required by the City Engineer, Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to kind, quality and title of Products, and that Products conform to requirements of the Contract.

3.12.2 In the event of a defect in a Product, either during construction or warranty period, Contractor shall take appropriate action with manufacturer of Product to assure correction or replacement of defective Product with minimum delay.

3.12.3 Contractor warrants that the Work is free of defects not inherent in the quality required or permitted, and that the Work does conform with the requirements of the Contract. Contractor further warrants that the Work has been performed in a thorough and workmanlike manner.

3.12.4 Contractor warrants that the Work is free of concentrations on polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) and other substances defined as hazardous by the Comprehensive Environmental Response Compensation and Liability Act (CERCLA) or any other applicable law or regulation.

3.12.5 Work not conforming to requirements of Section 3.12, including substitutions not properly approved and authorized, may be considered nonconforming work.

3.12.6 Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by:

3.12.6.1 improper or insufficient maintenance by the City;

3.12.6.2 normal wear and tear under normal usage; or

3.12.6.3 claim that hazardous material was incorporated into the Work, if that material was specified in the Contract.

3.12.7 Contractor warrants that title to all work covered by Contractor's request for payment passes to the City upon incorporation into the Work or upon Contractor's receipt of payment, whichever occurs first. The Contractor further warrants that the title is free of all liens, claims, security interests or other interests ("Encumbrances"). If not, upon written demand from City Engineer, Contractor shall immediately take legal action necessary to remove Encumbrances.

3.13 *TAXES*

3.13.1 Contractor shall pay all sales, consumer, use, and similar taxes, which are in effect or scheduled to go into effect on or before bids are received, related to work provided by Contractor.

3.13.2 Contractor shall obtain, and require Subcontractors and Suppliers to obtain, necessary permits from the state and local taxing authorities to perform contractual obligations under the Contract, including sales tax permits.

3.13.3 The City is exempt from the Federal Transportation and Excise Tax. Contractor shall comply with federal regulations governing the exemptions.

3.13.4 Products incorporated into the Work are exempt from state sales tax according to provisions of the TEX. TAX CODE ANN. CH. 151, Subsection H.

3.14 *PERMITS, FEES, AND NOTICES*

3.14.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract, Contractor shall secure and pay for all construction permits, licenses, and inspections:

3.14.1.1 necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work; and

3.14.1.2 legally required at time bids are received.

3.15 *CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES*

3.15.1 On receipt of Notice to Proceed, Contractor shall promptly prepare and submit construction schedule for the Work for City Engineer's review. The schedule must reflect the minimum time required to complete the Work not to exceed Contract Time.

3.15.2 Contractor shall give 24-hour written notice to City Engineer before commencing work or resuming work where work has been stopped. Contractor shall also give the same notice to inspectors.

3.15.3 Contractor shall incorporate milestones specified in Summary of Work Specification into the construction schedule. Contractor's failure to meet a milestone, as determined by City Engineer, may be considered a material breach of the Contract.

3.15.4 Each month, Contractor shall submit to City Engineer a copy of an updated construction schedule indicating actual progress, incorporating applicable changes, and indicating courses of action required to assure completion of the Work within Contract Time.

3.15.5 Contractor shall keep a current schedule of submittals that coordinates with the construction schedule, and shall submit the initial schedule of submittals to City Engineer for approval.

3.16 *DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES AT THE SITE*

3.16.1 Contractor shall maintain at the site, and make available to City Engineer, one record copy of Drawings, Specifications, and Modifications. Contractor shall maintain the documents in good order and marked currently to record changes and selections made during construction. In addition, Contractor shall maintain at the site, approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, which will be delivered to City Engineer prior to final inspection as required in Paragraph 9.11.4.

3.16.2 Contractor shall maintain all books, documents, papers, accounting records, and other relevant documentation pursuant to the Work and shall make the books, documents, papers, and accounting records available to representatives of the City for review and audits during the Contract term and for the greater of three years following Date of Substantial Completion or until all litigation or audits are fully resolved.

3.16.3 Contractor shall provide to City Attorney all documents and records that City Attorney deems necessary to assist in determining Contractor's compliance with the Contract, with the exception of those documents made confidential by federal or state law or regulation.

3.17 *MANUFACTURER'S SPECIFICATIONS*

3.17.1 Contractor shall handle, store, and Install Products and perform all work in the manner required by Product manufacturer. Should the Contract and manufacturer's instructions conflict, Contractor shall report conflict to City Engineer for resolution prior to proceeding with the affected work.

3.17.2 References in the Contract to the manufacturer's specifications, directions, or recommendations, mean manufacturer's current published documents in effect as of date of receipt of bids, or in the case of a Modification, as of date of Modification.

3.18 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES

3.18.1 Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples are not part of the Contract. The purpose of Contractor submittals is to demonstrate, for those portions of the Work for which submittals are required, the way Contractor proposes to conform to information given and design concept expressed in the Contract.

3.18.2 Contractor shall submit to Project Manager for review the Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, which are required by the Contract. Review by Project Manager is subject to limitations of Paragraph 4.1.4. Contractor shall transmit the submittals to the Project Manager with reasonable promptness and in a sequence, so as to cause no delay in the Work or in activities of the City or of separate contractors. Contractor shall transmit submittals in time to allow a minimum of 30 days for Project Manager's review prior to date Contractor needs reviewed submittals returned. This time may be shortened for a particular job requirement if approved by Project Manager in advance of submittal.

3.18.3 Contractor shall certify that the content of submittals conforms to the Contract without exception by affixing Contractor's approval stamp and signature. By certifying and submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, Contractor represents, and Contractor's stamp of approval shall state, that Contractor has determined and verified materials, quantities, field measurements, and field construction criteria related to the submittal, and has checked and coordinated information contained within the submittals with requirements of the Contract.

3.18.4 Contractor may not perform any work requiring submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, or Samples until the submittal has been returned with appropriate review decision by the Project Manager. Contractor shall perform work in accordance with the review.

3.18.5 If Contractor performs any work requiring submittals prior to review and acceptance of the submittals by Project Manager, such work is at Contractor's risk and the City is not obligated to accept work if the submittals are later found to be unacceptable.

3.18.6 If, in the opinion of Project Manager, the submittals are incomplete, or demonstrate an inadequate understanding of the Work or lack of review by the Contractor, then submittals may be returned to the Contractor for correction and resubmittal.

3.18.7 Contractor shall direct specific attention in writing and on the resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, or Samples to any additional proposed revisions, other than those revisions requested by Project Manager on previous submittals.

3.18.8 Contractor is not relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the Contract by Project Manager's review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, or Samples unless Contractor has specifically informed Project Manager in writing of the deviation at the time of the submittal, and Project Manager has given written approval of the deviation.

3.18.9 When professional certification of performance criteria of Products is required by the Contract, the City may rely upon accuracy and completeness of the calculations and certifications.

3.18.10 For Product colors or textures to be selected by the City, Contractor shall submit all samples together to allow preparation of a complete selection schedule.

3.18.11 Contractor shall submit informational submittals, on which Project Manager is not expected to take responsive action, as required by the Contract.

3.18.12 Submittals made by Contractor which are not required by the Contract may be returned to Contractor without action.

3.19 CULTURAL RESOURCES AND ENDANGERED SPECIES

3.19.1 Contractor may not remove or disturb, or cause to be removed or disturbed, any historical, archaeological, architectural, or other cultural artifacts, relics, vestiges, remains, or objects of antiquity. If Contractor discovers one of these items, Contractor shall immediately notify City Engineer and further comply with the requirements of 13 Tex. Admin. Code Chs. 25 and 26 (2002), or successor regulation. Contractor shall protect site and cultural resources from further disturbance until professional examination can be made or until clearance to proceed is authorized in writing by City Engineer.

3.19.2 Should either threatened or endangered plant or animal species be encountered,

Contractor shall cease work immediately in the area of encounter and notify City Engineer.

3.20 *CUTTING AND PATCHING*

3.20.1 Contractor is responsible for necessary cutting, fitting, and patching to accomplish the Work and shall suitably support, anchor, attach, match, and trim or seal materials to work of other contractors. Contractor shall coordinate the Work with work of other contractors to minimize conflicts, as provided in Article 6.

3.20.2 Contractor may not endanger work by cutting, digging, or other action, and may not cut or alter work of other contractors except by written consent of City Engineer and affected contractor.

3.21 *CLEANING*

3.21.1 Contractor shall perform daily cleanup of all dirt, debris, scrap materials and other disposable items resulting from Contractor's operations, whether on-site or off-site. Unless otherwise authorized in writing by City Engineer, Contractor shall keep all streets, access streets, driveways, areas of public access, walkways, and other designated areas clean and open at all times.

3.21.2 Failure of Contractor to maintain a clean site, including access streets, is the basis for City Engineer to issue a Notice of Noncompliance. Should compliance not be attained within the time period in the Notice of Noncompliance, City Engineer may authorize necessary cleanup to be performed by others and the cost of the cleanup will be deducted from monies due Contractor.

Contractor shall legally dispose off-site, all waste materials and other excess materials resulting from Contractor's operations.

3.22 *SANITATION*

3.22.1 Contractor shall provide and maintain sanitary facilities at site for use of all construction forces under the Contract. Newly-constructed or existing sanitary facilities may not be used by Contractor.

3.23 *ACCESS TO WORK AND TO INFORMATION*

3.23.1 Contractor shall provide the City, Design Consultant, testing laboratories, and governmental agencies which have jurisdictional interests, access to the Work in preparation and in progress wherever located. Contractor shall provide proper and safe conditions for the access.

3.23.2 If required by City Engineer, Contractor shall furnish information concerning character of Products and progress and manner of the Work, including information necessary to determine cost of the Work, such as number of employees, pay of employees, and time employees worked on various classes of the Work.

3.24 *TRADE SECRETS*

3.24.1 Contractor will not make any claim of ownership of trade secrets as to products used in the Work, or preparation of any mixture for the Work. City Engineer will at all times have the right to demand and Contractor shall furnish information concerning materials or samples of ingredients of any materials used, or proposed to be used, in preparation of concrete placed or other work to be done. Mixtures, once agreed on, shall not be changed in any manner without knowledge and consent of City Engineer. The City will make its best efforts to protect confidentiality of proprietary information.

3.25 *INDEMNIFICATION*

3.25.1 CONTRACTOR AGREES TO AND SHALL DEFEND, INDEMNIFY, AND HOLD THE CITY, ITS AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OFFICERS, AND LEGAL REPRESENTATIVES (COLLECTIVELY THE "CITY") HARMLESS FOR ALL CLAIMS, CAUSES OF ACTION, LIABILITIES, FINES, AND EXPENSES (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ATTORNEYS' FEES, COURT COSTS, AND ALL OTHER DEFENSE COSTS AND INTEREST) FOR INJURY, DEATH, DAMAGE, OR LOSS TO PERSONS OR PROPERTY SUSTAINED IN CONNECTION WITH OR INCIDENTAL TO PERFORMANCE UNDER THE CONTRACT INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE CAUSED BY:

3.25.1.1 CONTRACTOR'S AND/OR ITS AGENTS', EMPLOYEES', OFFICERS', DIRECTORS', CONTRACTORS', OR SUBCONTRACTORS' (COLLECTIVELY IN NUMBERED SUBPARAGRAPHS .1 through .3, "CONTRACTOR") ACTUAL OR ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OR INTENTIONAL ACTS OR OMISSIONS;

3.25.1.2 THE CITY'S AND CONTRACTOR'S ACTUAL OR ALLEGED CONCURRENT NEGLIGENCE, WHETHER CONTRACTOR IS IMMUNE FROM LIABILITY OR NOT;

3.25.1.3 THE CITY'S AND CONTRACTOR'S ACTUAL OR ALLEGED STRICT PRODUCTS LIABILITY OR STRICT STATUTORY LIABILITY, WHETHER CONTRACTOR IS IMMUNE FROM LIABILITY OR NOT.

CONTRACTOR SHALL DEFEND, INDEMNIFY, AND HOLD THE CITY HARMLESS DURING THE TERM OF THE CONTRACT AND FOR FOUR YEARS AFTER THE CONTRACT TERMINATES. CONTRACTOR SHALL NOT INDEMNIFY THE CITY FOR THE CITY'S SOLE NEGLIGENCE.

3.25.2 NOTWITHSTANDING ANYTHING TO THE CONTRARY, THE LIABILITY OF CONTRACTOR FOR THE CITY'S CONCURRENT NEGLIGENCE SHALL NOT EXCEED $1,000,000.

3.26 *RELEASE AND INDEMNIFICATION – PATENT, COPYRIGHT, TRADEMARK, AND TRADE SECRET INFRINGEMENT*

3.26.1 UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFICALLY REQUIRED BY THE CONTRACT, CONTRACTOR AGREES TO AND SHALL RELEASE AND DEFEND, INDEMNIFY, AND HOLD HARMLESS THE CITY, ITS AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OFFICERS, AND LEGAL REPRESENTATIVES (COLLECTIVELY THE "CITY") FROM ALL CLAIMS OR CAUSES OF ACTION BROUGHT AGAINST THE CITY BY ANY PARTY, INCLUDING CONTRACTOR, ALLEGING THAT THE CITY'S USE OF ANY EQUIPMENT, SOFTWARE, PROCESS, OR DOCUMENTS CONTRACTOR FURNISHES DURING THE TERM OF THE CONTRACT INFRINGES ON A PATENT, COPYRIGHT, OR TRADEMARK, OR MISAPPROPRIATES A TRADE SECRET. CONTRACTOR SHALL PAY ALL COSTS (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ATTORNEYS' FEES, COURT COSTS, AND ALL OTHER DEFENSE COSTS, AND INTEREST) AND DAMAGES AWARDED.

3.26.2 CONTRACTOR SHALL NOT SETTLE ANY CLAIM ON TERMS WHICH PREVENT THE CITY FROM USING THE EQUIPMENT, SOFTWARE, PROCESS, OR PRODUCT WITHOUT THE CITY ENGINEER'S PRIOR WRITTEN CONSENT.

3.26.3 UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFICALLY REQUIRED BY THE CONTRACT, WITHIN 60 DAYS AFTER BEING NOTIFIED OF THE CLAIM, CONTRACTOR SHALL, AT ITS OWN EXPENSE, EITHER:

3.26.3.1 OBTAIN FOR THE CITY THE RIGHT TO CONTINUE USING THE EQUIPMENT, SOFTWARE, PROCESS, OR PRODUCT, OR

3.26.3.2 IF BOTH PARTIES AGREE, REPLACE OR MODIFY THEM WITH COMPATIBLE AND FUNCTIONALLY EQUIVALENT PRODUCTS.

IF NONE OF THESE ALTERNATIVES IS REASONABLY AVAILABLE, THE CITY MAY RETURN THE EQUIPMENT, SOFTWARE, OR PRODUCT, OR DISCONTINUE THE PROCESS, AND CONTRACTOR SHALL REFUND THE PURCHASE PRICE.

3.27 *INDEMNIFICATION PROCEDURES*

3.27.1 *Notice of Indemnification Claims:* If the City or Contractor receives notice of any claim or circumstances which could give rise to an indemnified loss, the receiving party shall give written notice to the other Party within 10 days. The notice must include the following:

3.27.1.1 a description of the indemnification event in reasonable detail,

3.27.1.2 the basis on which indemnification may be due, and

3.27.1.3 the anticipated amount of the indemnified loss.

This notice does not estop or prevent the City from later asserting a different basis for indemnification or a different amount of indemnified loss than that indicated in the initial notice. If the City does not provide this notice within the 10-day period, it does not waive any right to indemnification except to the extent that Contractor is prejudiced, suffers loss, or incurs expense because of the delay.

3.27.2 *Defense of Indemnification Claims:*

3.27.2.1 *Assumption of Defense:* Contractor may assume the defense of the claim at its own expense with counsel chosen by it that is reasonably satisfactory to the City. Contractor shall then control the defense and any negotiations to settle the claim. Within 10 days after receiving written notice of the indemnification request, Contractor must advise the City as to whether or not it will defend the claim. If Contractor does not assume the defense, the City shall assume and control the defense, and all defense expenses constitute an indemnified loss.

3.27.2.2 *Continued Participation:* If Contractor elects to defend the claim, the City may

retain separate counsel to participate in, but not control, the defense and to participate in, but not control, any settlement negotiations. Contractor may settle the claim without the consent or agreement of the City, unless it:

3.27.2.2.1 would result in injunctive relief or other equitable remedies or otherwise require the City to comply with restrictions or limitations that adversely affect the City;

3.27.2.2.2 would require the City to pay amounts that Contractor does not fund in full; or

3.27.2.2.3 would not result in the City's full and complete release from all liability to the plaintiffs or claimants who are parties to or otherwise bound by the settlement.

3.28 ***CONTRACTOR DEBT***

IF CONTRACTOR, AT ANY TIME DURING THE TERM OF THIS AGREEMENT, INCURS A DEBT, AS THE WORD IS DEFINED IN SECTION 15-122 OF THE HOUSTON CITY CODE OF ORDINANCES, IT SHALL IMMEDIATELY NOTIFY CITY CONTROLLER IN WRITING. IF CITY CONTROLLER BECOMES AWARE THAT CONTRACTOR HAS INCURRED A DEBT, IT SHALL IMMEDIATELY NOTIFY CONTRACTOR IN WRITING. IF CONTRACTOR DOES NOT PAY THE DEBT WITHIN 30 DAYS OF EITHER SUCH NOTIFICATION, CITY CONTROLLER MAY DEDUCT FUNDS IN AN AMOUNT EQUAL TO THE DEBT FROM ANY PAYMENTS OWED TO CONTRACTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, AND CONTRACTOR WAIVES ANY RECOURSE THEREFOR. CONTRACTOR SHALL FILE A NEW AFFIDAVIT OF OWNERSHIP, USING THE FORM DESIGNATED BY CITY, BETWEEN FEBRUARY 1 AND MARCH 1 OF EVERY YEAR DURING THE TERM OF THE CONTRACT.

ARTICLE 4 - ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT

4.1 *CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION*

4.1.1 City Engineer will provide administration of the Contract and City Engineer is authorized to issue Change Orders, Work Change Directives, and Minor Changes in the Work.

4.1.2 City Engineer may act through Project Manager, Design Consultant, or Inspector. When the term "City Engineer" is used in the Contract, action by City Engineer is required unless City Engineer delegates his authority in writing. The City Engineer may not delegate authority to render decisions under Section 4.4.

The City does not have control over or charge of, and is not responsible for, supervision, construction, and safety procedures enumerated in Section 3.3. The City does not have control over or charge of and is not responsible for acts or omissions of Contractor, Subcontractors, or Suppliers.

4.1.3 The City and Design Consultant may attend project meetings and visit the site to observe progress and quality of the Work. The City and Design Consultant are not required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check quality or quantity of the Work.

4.1.4 Project Manager will review and approve or take other appropriate action on Contractor's submittals, but only for limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and design concept expressed in the Contract.

4.1.5 Project Manager's review of the submittals is not conducted for purpose of determining accuracy and completeness of other details, such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of Products, all of which remain the responsibility of Contractor.

4.1.6 Project Manager's review of submittals does not relieve Contractor of its obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.12, and 3.18. Review does not constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated by Project Manager in writing, of construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. Project Manager's review of a specific item does not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

4.1.7 Based on field observations and evaluations, Project Manager will process Contractor's progress payments, certify amounts due Contractor, and issue Certificates for Payment in the amount certified.

4.1.8 Project Manager will receive and forward to City Engineer for his review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by Contractor.

4.1.9 Upon written request by Contractor or Project Manager, City Engineer will resolve matters of interpretation of or performance of the Contract, which are not Claims. City Engineer's decisions are final and binding on the Parties.

4.1.10 City Engineer may reject work which does not conform to the Contract.

4.1.11 When City Engineer considers it necessary to implement the intent of the Contract, City Engineer may require additional inspection or testing of work in accordance with Paragraphs 13.6.3 and 13.6.4, whether such work is fabricated, Installed, or completed.

4.2 *COMMUNICATIONS IN ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT*

4.2.1 Except as otherwise provided in the Contract or when authorized by City Engineer in writing, Contractor shall communicate with Project Manager. Contractor shall communicate with Design Consultant, Design Consultant's subconsultants, and separate contractors through Project Manager. The City will communicate with Subcontractors and Suppliers through Contractor.

4.3 *CLAIMS AND DISPUTES*

4.3.1 *Documentation by Project Manager:* Contractor shall submit Claims, including those alleging an error or omission by Project Manager or Design Consultant, to Project Manager for documentation and recommendation to City Engineer.

4.3.2 *Decision of City Engineer:* Upon submission of Claim by Project Manager or Contractor, City Engineer will resolve Claims in accordance with Section 4.4.

4.3.3 *Time Limits on Claims:* Claims by Contractor must be made within 90 days after occurrence of event giving rise to the Claim.

4.3.4 *Continuing the Contract Performance:* Pending final resolution of a Claim including referral to non-binding mediation, unless otherwise agreed in writing, Contractor shall proceed diligently with the performance of the Contract and the City will continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract.

4.3.4.1 Pending final resolution of a Claim including referral to non-binding mediation, Contractor is responsible for safety and protection of physical properties and conditions at site.

4.3.5 *Claims for Concealed or Unknown Conditions:* Concealed or unknown physical conditions include utility lines, other man-made structures, storage facilities, Pollutants and Pollutant Facilities, and the like, but do not include conditions arising from Contractor operations, or failure of Contractor to properly protect and safeguard subsurface facilities. Concealed conditions also include naturally-occurring soil conditions outside the range of soil conditions identified through geotechnical investigations, but do not include conditions arising from groundwater, rain, or flood.

4.3.5.1 If conditions are encountered at the site which are Underground Facilities or otherwise concealed or unknown conditions which differ materially from:

4.3.5.1.1 those indicated by the Contract; or

4.3.5.1.2 conditions which Contractor could have discovered through site inspection, geotechnical testing, or otherwise;

then Contractor will give written notice to City Engineer no later than five days after Contractor's first observation of the condition and before condition is disturbed. Contractor's failure to provide notice constitutes a waiver of a Claim.

4.3.5.2 City Engineer will promptly investigate concealed or unknown conditions. If City Engineer determines that conditions at the site are not materially different and that no change in Contract Price or Contract Time is justified, City Engineer will notify Contractor in writing, stating reasons. If City Engineer determines the conditions differ materially and cause increase or decrease in Contractor's cost or time required for performance of part of the Work, City Engineer will recommend an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Time, or both, as provided in Article 7. Opposition by a Party to the City Engineer's determination must be made within 21 days after City Engineer has given notice of the decision. If the Parties cannot agree on adjustment to Contract Price or Contract Time, adjustment is subject to further proceedings pursuant to Section 4.4.

4.3.6 *Claims for Additional Cost:* If Contractor wishes to make a Claim for increase in Contract Price, Contractor shall give written notice before proceeding with work for which Contractor intends to submit a Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency

endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

4.3.6.1 Contractor may file a Claim in accordance with Section 4.4 if Contractor believes it has incurred additional costs, for the following reasons:

4.3.6.1.1 written interpretation of City Engineer;
4.3.6.1.2 order by City Engineer to stop the Work when Contractor is not at fault;
4.3.6.1.3 suspension of the Work by City Engineer;
4.3.6.1.4 termination of the Contract by City Engineer; or
4.3.6.1.5 The City's non-compliance with another provision of the Contract.

4.3.6.2 No increase in Contract Price is allowed for delays or hindrances to the Work, except for direct and unavoidable extra costs to Contractor caused by failure of the City to provide information and services, or to make land and materials available, when required of the City under the Contract. Any increase claimed is subject to the provisions of Section 4.4 and Article 7.

4.3.6.3 The City is not liable for Claims for delay when Date of Substantial Completion occurs prior to expiration of Contract Time.

4.3.7 *Claims for Additional Time:* If Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in Contract Time, Contractor shall give written notice as provided in Section 8.2. In case of continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

4.4 *RESOLUTION OF CLAIMS AND DISPUTES*

4.4.1 City Engineer will review Claims and take one or more of the following preliminary actions within 30 days of receipt of Claim:

4.4.1.1 submit a suggested time to meet and discuss the Claim with City Engineer;
4.4.1.2 reject Claim, in whole or in part, stating reasons for rejection;
4.4.1.3 recommend approval of the Claim by the other Party;
4.4.1.4 suggest a compromise; or
4.4.1.5 take other actions as City Engineer deems appropriate to resolve the Claim.

4.4.2 City Engineer may request additional supporting data from claimant. Party making Claim shall, within 10 days after receipt of City Engineer's request, submit additional supporting data requested by City Engineer.

4.4.3 At any time prior to rendering a written decision regarding a Claim, City Engineer may refer Claim to non-binding mediation. If Claim is resolved, City Engineer will prepare and obtain all appropriate documentation. If Claim is not resolved, City Engineer will take receipt of Claim and begin a new review under Section 4.4.

4.4.4 If Claim is not referred to or settled in non-binding mediation, City Engineer may conduct a hearing and will render a written decision, including findings of fact, within 75 days of receipt of Claim, or a time mutually agreed upon by the Parties in writing. City Engineer may notify Surety and request Surety's assistance in resolving Claim. City Engineer's decision is final and binding on the Parties.

4.5 *CONDITION PRECEDENT TO SUIT; WAIVER OF ATTORNEY FEES AND INTEREST*

4.5.1 Neither the City nor Contractor may recover attorney fees for any claim brought in connection with this Contract.

4.5.2 Neither the City nor the Contractor may recover interest for any damages claim brought in connection with this Contract except as allowed by TEXAS LOCAL GOVERNMENT CODE Chapter 2251.

4.6 *INTERIM PAYMENT WAIVER & RELEASE*

4.6.1 In accordance with section 4.3, the Contractor shall use due diligence in the discovery and submission of any Claim against the City related to the Contractor's work.

4.6.2 The Contractor shall submit any Claim to the City not later than the 90th day after the occurrence of the event giving rise to the Claim.

4.6.3 Any failure to timely comply with the requirements of section 4.6.2 waives and releases any Claim when the Contractor submits an application for payment after the 90th day.

4.6.4 This waiver does not cover any retainage. In case of any conflict of law, this language shall be revised to the minimum extent necessary to avoid legal conflict. This waiver is made specifically for the benefit of the City.

ARTICLE 5 - SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS

5.1 *AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS OTHER CONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK*

5.1.1 Contractor may not contract with a Subcontractor, Supplier, person, or entity that City Engineer has made a reasonable and timely objection to.

5.1.2 If City Engineer has a reasonable objection to person or entity proposed by Contractor, Contractor shall propose another with whom City Engineer has no reasonable objection.

5.1.3 Contractor shall execute contracts with approved Subcontractors, Suppliers, persons, or entities before the Subcontractors or Suppliers begin work under the Contract. All such contracts must be executed and sent to the OBO Director and Contracting Department within 30 days after the date of the Notice to Proceed and must include provisions set forth in Articles 3 and 5 of this Document.

5.1.4 Contractor shall notify City Engineer in writing of any proposed change of Subcontractor, Supplier, person, or entity previously accepted by the City.

5.1.5 Contractor shall make timely payments to Subcontractors and Suppliers for performance of the Contract. Contractor shall protect, defend, and indemnify the City from any claim or liability arising out of Contractor's failure to make the payments. Disputes relating to payment of Business Enterprise Subcontractors or Suppliers will be submitted to arbitration in same manner as other disputes under Business Enterprise subcontracts. Failure of Contractor to comply with decisions of arbitrator may be determined by City Engineer a material breach leading to termination of the Contract.

5.2 *CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY FOR SUBCONTRACTORS*

5.2.1 Contractor is responsible to the City, as may be required by laws and regulations, for all acts and omissions of Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other persons and organizations performing or furnishing any of the Work under direct or indirect contract with Contractor.

5.2.2 Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to execution of subcontract, copies of the Contract to which Subcontractor is bound by this Section 5.2. Contractor shall notify Subcontractor of any terms of proposed subcontract which may be at variance with the Contract.

5.2.3 The City's approval of Subcontractor or Suppliers does not relieve Contractor of its obligation to perform, or to have performed to the full satisfaction of the City, the Work required by the Contract.

5.2.4 Unless there is a contractual relationship between Contractor and a Subcontractor or Supplier to the contrary, Contractor shall withhold no more retainage from Subcontractors or Suppliers than City withholds from Contractor under this Agreement. However, once a Subcontractor or Supplier completes performance, Contractor shall release all retainage to that Subcontractor or Supplier regardless if City continues to retain under this Agreement.

5.2.5 Prior to a Subcontractor or Supplier commencing performance for Contractor, Contractor shall meet with that Subcontractor or Supplier to provide instructions on invoicing procedures, dispute resolution procedures, and statutory rights, such as claim filing procedures under the McGregor Act. Subcontractors and Suppliers must certify to the City Engineer that Contractor has fulfilled the requirements of this Section.

ARTICLE 6 - CONSTRUCTION BY THE CITY OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

6.1 *THE CITY'S RIGHT TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION AND TO AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS*

6.1.1 The City may perform on-site construction operations related to the Work and as part of the Project with the City's workforce or with separate contractors.

6.2 *COORDINATION*

6.2.1 The City will coordinate activities of the City's workforce and of each separate contractor with work of Contractor, and Contractor shall cooperate with the City and separate contractors.

6.2.1.1 Contractor shall participate with other separate contractors and the City in reviewing their construction schedules when directed to do so by the Project Manager. Contractor shall make revisions to construction schedule and Contract Price deemed

necessary after joint review and mutual agreement. Construction schedules shall then constitute schedules to be used by Contractor, separate contractors, and the City, until subsequently revised.

6.2.2 Contractor shall afford to the City and to separate contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment, and for performance of their activities.

6.2.3 If part of Contractor's work depends on proper execution of construction or operations by the City or a separate contractor, Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, inspect the other work and promptly report to City Engineer apparent discrepancies or defects in the other construction that would render it unsuitable for the proper execution of the Work. Failure of Contractor to report apparent discrepancies or defects in the other construction shall constitute acknowledgment that the City's or separate contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive Contractor's work, except as to discrepancies or defects not then reasonably discoverable.

6.3 *MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY*

6.3.1 The responsible party bears the costs caused by delays, by improperly timed activities, or by nonconforming construction.

6.3.2 Contractor shall promptly remedy damage caused by Contractor to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the City or separate contractor.

6.3.3 Claims or disputes between Contractor and other City contractors, or subcontractors of other City contractors, working on the Project must be submitted to binding arbitration in accordance with Construction Industry Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association upon demand by any party to the dispute or by the City.

6.4 *THE CITY'S RIGHT TO CLEAN UP*

6.4.1 If dispute arises among Contractor, separate contractors, and the City as to responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish as described in Section 3.21, the City may clean up and allocate cost among those responsible, as determined by City Engineer.

ARTICLE 7 - CHANGES IN THE WORK

7.1 *CHANGES*

7.1.1 Changes in scope of the Work, subject to limitations in Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract, may be accomplished without invalidating the Contract, or without notifying Surety by:

- 7.1.1.1 Change Order;
- 7.1.1.2 Work Change Directive; or
- 7.1.1.3 Minor Change in the Work.

7.1.2 The following types of Change Orders require City Council approval:

- 7.1.2.1 a single Change Order that exceeds five percent of Original Contract Price,
- 7.1.2.2 a Change Order which, when added to previous Change Orders, exceeds five percent of Original Contract Price,
- 7.1.2.3 a Change Order, in which the total value of increases outside of the general scope of work approved by City Council, when added to increases outside the general scope of work approved by City Council in previous Change Orders, exceeds 40 percent of the Original Contract Price, even if the net increase to the Original Contract Price is five percent or less.

  In this context, "increase" means an increase in quantity resulting from the addition of locations not within the scope of work approved by City Council, or the addition of types of goods or services not bid as unit price items.

Nothing in this Section is intended to permit an increase of the Contract Price in excess of the limit set out in TEX. LOC. GOV'T CODE ANN. §252.048 or its successor statute.

7.1.3 Contractor shall proceed promptly to execute changes in the Work provided in Modifications, unless otherwise stated in the Modification.

7.2 *WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVES*

7.2.1 A Work Change Directive cannot change Contract Price or Contract Time, but is evidence that the Parties agree that a change, ordered by directive, will be incorporated in a subsequently issued Change Order as to its effect, if any, on Contract Price or Contract Time.

7.2.2 Failure by Contractor to commence work identified in a Work Change Directive within the time specified by City Engineer, or to complete the

work in a reasonable period of time, may be determined by City Engineer to be a material breach of Contract.

7.2.3 A Work Change Directive is used in the absence of total agreement of the terms of a Change Order. Interim payments are made in accordance with Paragraph 9.6.1.

7.2.4 If Contractor signs a Work Change Directive, then Contractor agrees to its terms including adjustment in Contract Price and Contract Time or method for determining them. Agreement by the Parties to adjustments in Contract Price and Contract Time are immediately recorded as a Change Order.

7.2.5 City Engineer, by Work Change Directive, may direct Contractor to take measures as necessary to expedite construction to achieve Date of Substantial Completion on or before expiration of Contract Time. When the Work is expedited solely for convenience of the City and not due to Contractor's failure to prosecute timely completion of the Work, then Contractor is entitled to an adjustment in Contract Price equal to actual costs determined in accordance with Article 7.

7.3 *ADJUSTMENTS IN CONTRACT PRICE*

7.3.1 Adjustments in Contract Price are accomplished by Change Order and are based on one of the following methods:

- 7.3.1.1 mutual acceptance of fixed price, properly itemized and supported by sufficient data to permit evaluation;
- 7.3.1.2 unit prices stated in the Contract or subsequently agreed upon;
- 7.3.1.3 cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the Parties and mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- 7.3.1.4 as provided in Paragraph 7.3.2.

7.3.2 If Contractor does not agree with a change in Contract Price or Contract Time or the method for adjusting them specified in the Work Change Directive within 21 days from date of the Work Change Directive's issuance, method and adjustment are determined by City Engineer. If Project Manager or Contractor disagree with City Engineer's determination they then may file a Claim in accordance with Section 4.4.

7.3.2.1 If City Engineer determines a method and adjustment in Contract Price under Paragraph 7.3.2, Contractor shall provide, in a form as City Engineer may prescribe, appropriate supporting data for items submitted under Paragraph 7.3.2. Failure to submit the data within 21 days of request for the data by City Engineer shall constitute waiver of a Claim.

7.3.2.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract, costs for the purposes of this Paragraph 7.3.2 are limited to the following:

- 7.3.2.2.1 costs of labor, including labor burden as stated below for social security, unemployment insurance, customary and usual fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, and Workers' Compensation insurance;
  - 7.3.2.2..1.1 the maximum labor burden applied to costs of labor for changes in the Work is 55 percent;
- 7.3.2.2.2 costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- 7.3.2.2.3 rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from Contractor or others, with prior approval of City Engineer;
- 7.3.2.2.4 costs of premiums for Bonds and insurance and permit fees related to the change in the Work;
- 7.3.2.2.5 additional costs of direct supervision of work and field office personnel directly attributable to the change; and
- 7.3.2.2.6 allowances for overhead and profit as stated below.
  - 7.3.2.2.6.1 the maximum allowances for overhead and profit on increases due to Change Orders:
  - 7.3.2.2.6.2 for changes in the Work performed by Contractor and Subcontractors, allowance for overhead and profit are applied to an amount equal to cost of all additions less cost of all deletions to the Work. Allowance for overhead to Contractor and first tier Subcontractors on changes performed by Subcontractors are applied to an amount equal to the sum of all increases to the Work by applicable Subcontractors.

	Overhead	Profit
to Contractor for change in the Work performed by Subcontractors:	10 percent	0 percent
to first tier Subcontractors for change in the Work performed by its Subcontractors:	10 percent	0 percent
to Contractor and Subcontractor for change in the Work performed by their respective firms:	10 percent	5 percent

7.3.3 If the City deletes or makes a change, which results in a net decrease in Contract Price, the City is entitled to a credit calculated in accordance with Paragraphs 7.3.1 and 7.3.2 and Subparagraphs 7.3.2.1, and 7.3.2.2.1 through 7.3.2.2.5. When both additions and credits covering related work or substitutions are involved in a change, allowance for overhead and profit is figured on the basis of a net increase, if any, with respect to that change in accordance with Subparagraph 7.3.2.2.6.

7.3.4 When Contractor agrees with the determination made by City Engineer concerning adjustments in Contract Price and Contract Time, or the Parties otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, the agreement will be immediately recorded by Change Order.

7.4 *MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK*

7.4.1 A Minor Change in Work is binding on the Parties. Contractor shall acknowledge, in a written form acceptable to City Engineer, that there is no change in Contract Time or Contract Price and shall carry out the written orders promptly.

ARTICLE 8 - TIME

8.1 *PROGRESS AND COMPLETION*

8.1.1 Time is of the essence in the Contract. By executing the Contract, Contractor agrees that Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

8.1.2 *Computation of Time:* In computing any period of time prescribed or allowed by the General Conditions, the day of the act, event, or default after which designated period of time begins to run is not to be included. Last day of the period so computed is to be included, unless it is a Sunday or Legal Holiday, in which event the period runs until end of next day which is not a Sunday or Legal Holiday. Sundays and Legal Holidays are considered to be days and are to be included in all other time computations relative to Contract Time.

8.1.3 Contractor may not commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance and Bonds required by Article 11.

8.1.4 Contractor shall proceed expeditiously and without interruption, with adequate forces, and shall achieve Date of Substantial Completion within Contract Time.

8.1.5 Should progress of the Work fall behind construction schedule, except for reasons stated in Paragraph 8.2.1, Contractor shall promptly submit at the request of Project Manager, updated construction schedule to City Engineer for approval. Contractor's failure to submit updated schedule may, at City Engineer's discretion, constitute a material breach of the Contract. Contractor shall take action necessary to restore progress by working the hours, including night shifts and lawful overtime operations as necessary, to achieve Date of Substantial Completion within Contract Time.

8.1.6 Except in connection with safety or protection of persons or the Work or property at the site or adjacent to the site, and except as otherwise indicated in the Contract, all the Work at the site will be performed Monday through Saturday between the hours of 7:00 a.m. and 7:00 p.m. Contractor may not perform work between 7:00 p.m. and 7:00 a.m., on a Sunday, or on a Legal Holiday, without giving City Engineer 24-hour prior written notice and receiving written consent of City Engineer.

8.2 *DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME*

8.2.1 Contractor may request extension of Contract Time for a delay in performance of work that arises from causes beyond control and without fault or negligence of Contractor. Examples of these causes are:

- 8.2.1.1 acts of God or of the public enemy;
- 8.2.1.2 acts of government in its sovereign capacity;
- 8.2.1.3 fires;
- 8.2.1.4 floods;
- 8.2.1.5 epidemics;
- 8.2.1.6 quarantine restrictions;
- 8.2.1.7 strikes;
- 8.2.1.8 freight embargoes;
- 8.2.1.9 unusually severe weather; and
- 8.2.1.10 discovery of Pollutants or Pollutant Facilities at the site.

8.2.2 For any reason other than those listed in Section 4.3.6.2, if the Contractor's work is delayed in any manner or respect, the Contractor shall have no claim for damages and shall have no right of additional compensation from the City by reason of any delay or increased expense to the Contractor's work, except for an extension of time as provided in this provision.

8.2.3 Contractor may request an extension of Contract Time for delay only if:

8.2.3.1 delay is caused by failure of Subcontractor or Supplier to perform or make progress; and

8.2.3.2 cause of failure is beyond control of both Contractor and Subcontractor or Supplier.

8.2.4 Claims relating to Contract Time must be made in accordance with Paragraph 4.3.7.

8.2.5 Claims for extending or shortening Contract Time are based on written notice promptly delivered by the Party making Claim to other Party. Claim must accurately describe occurrence generating Claim, and a statement of probable effect on progress of the Work.

8.2.6 Claims for extension of Contract Time are considered only when a Claim is filed within the time limits stated in Paragraph 4.3.3.

8.2.6.1 Notwithstanding paragraph 4.3.3, an extension of time for delays under this paragraph may be granted only upon written application by the Contractor within 48 hours from the claimed delay.

8.2.7 Written notice of Claim must be accompanied by claimant's written statement that adjustment claimed is entire adjustment to which claimant is entitled as a result of the occurrence of the event. When the Parties cannot agree, Claims for adjustment in Contract Time are determined by City Engineer in accordance with Section 4.4.

8.2.8 Adjustments to Contract Time are accomplished by Change Order.

ARTICLE 9 - PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

9.1 *UNIT PRICE WORK*

9.1.1 Where the Contract provides that all or part of the Work is based on Unit Prices, the Original Contract Price includes, for all Unit Price work, an amount equal to the sum of Unit Prices times Unit Price Quantities for each separately identified item of Unit Price work.

9.1.2 Each Unit Price includes an amount to cover Contractor's overhead and profit for each separately identified item.

9.1.3 The Contractor may not make a Claim against the City for excess or deficiency in Unit Price Quantities provided in the Contract, except as provided in Subparagraph 9.1.4. Payment at the prices stated in the Contract is in full for the completed work. Contractor is not entitled to additional payment for materials, supplies, labor, tools, machinery and all other expenditures incidental to satisfactory completion of the Work.

9.1.4 City Engineer may increase or decrease quantities of the Work within limitations stated in Paragraph 7.1.2. Contractor is entitled to payment for actual quantities of items provided at Unit Prices set forth in the Contract.

9.1.5 Where the final quantity of work performed by Contractor on Major Unit Price Work item differs by more than 25 percent from quantity of the item stated in the Contract, a Party may request an adjustment in Unit Price, for the portion that differs by more than 25 percent, by a Change Order under Section 7.3.

9.2 *ESTIMATES FOR PAYMENT, UNIT PRICE WORK*

9.2.1 Following the day of each month indicated in the Contract, Project Manager will prepare a Certificate for Payment for the preceding monthly period based on estimated units of work completed. Prior to preparing Certificate of Payment, Contractor shall have submitted to City Engineer, on a form approved by the Director of the Office of Business Opportunity, evidence satisfactory to the City Engineer of payments made to Subcontractors and Suppliers for the month preceding the month for which the Certificate for Payment is prepared, including evidence of electronic submission of certified payrolls.

9.2.2 Before final completion, City Engineer will review and confirm with Contractor the actual final installed Unit Price quantities. City Engineer's determination of actual final installed Unit Price quantities will be included in the final Certificate for Payment and any previous underpayments and overpayments will be reconciled with the actual final Unit Price quantities. Contractor shall file written notice of intent to appeal, if any, City Engineer's

determination within 10 days of receipt of final Certificate for Payment. Upon expiration of the 10-day period, City Engineer's decision is final and binding on the Parties. If Contractor submits notice within the 10-day period, Contractor shall submit a Claim in accordance with Section 4.4.

9.3 *STIPULATED PRICE WORK*

9.3.1 For work contracted on a Stipulated Price basis, 10 days before submittal of first Application for Payment, Contractor shall submit to City Engineer a Schedule of Values allocated to various portions of the Work, prepared in the form and supported by the data as City Engineer may require to substantiate its accuracy. This schedule, as approved by City Engineer, is used as a basis for approval of Contractor's Applications for Payment.

9.4 *APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT, STIPULATED PRICE WORK*

9.4.1 For work contracted on a Stipulated Price basis, Contractor shall submit Applications for Payment to City Engineer each month on a form acceptable to City Engineer in accordance with Schedule of Values. Application must indicate percentages of completion of each portion of the Work listed in Schedule of Values as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

9.4.2 Applications for Payment must be supported by substantiating data as City Engineer may require and must reflect retainages as provided below. Evidence satisfactory to the City Engineer of payments made to Subcontractors and Suppliers for the month preceding the month for which the Application for Payment is submitted must accompany each Application for Payment on a form approved by the Director of the Office of Business Opportunity. Evidence of electronic submission of certified payrolls must be included. Application must be sworn and notarized.

9.5 *CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT*

9.5.1 City Engineer will, within 10 days after the date specified in the Contract for Unit Price work, or upon receipt of Contractor's Application for Payment for Stipulated Price work, issue a Certificate for Payment for work based on amount which City Engineer determines is properly due, with copy to Contractor.

9.5.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract, payment for completed work and for properly stored Products is conditioned upon compliance with procedures satisfactory to City Engineer to protect the City's interests. Procedures will include applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to site for materials and equipment stored off-site. Contractor is responsible for maintaining materials and equipment until Date of Substantial Completion.

9.5.3 Contractor shall document its use of Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel by providing invoices and receipts evidencing Contractor's use.

9.6 *COMPUTATIONS OF CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT*

9.6.1 Subject to the provisions of the Contract, the amount of each Certificate for Payment is calculated as follows:

- 9.6.1.1 that portion of Contract Price allocated to completed work as determined by:
  - 9.6.1.1.1 multiplying the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work listed in the Schedule of Values by the value of that portion of the Work, or
  - 9.6.1.1.2 multiplying Unit Price quantities Installed times the Unit Prices listed in the Contract;
- 9.6.1.2 plus progress payments for completed work that has been properly authorized by Modifications;
- 9.6.1.3 less retainage of five percent;
- 9.6.1.4 plus actual costs, properly substantiated by certified copies of invoices and freight bills, of non-perishable materials and equipment delivered and properly stored, if approved in advance by Project Manager, less 15 percent;
- 9.6.1.5 less any previous payments by the City.

9.7 *DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION*

9.7.1 City Engineer may decline to certify payment and may withhold payment in whole or in part to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the City if, in City Engineer's opinion, there is reason to believe that:

- 9.7.1.1 nonconforming work has not been remedied;
- 9.7.1.2 the Work cannot be completed for unpaid balance of Contract Price;
- 9.7.1.3 there is damage to the City or another contractor;
- 9.7.1.4 the Work will not be completed within Contract Time and that unpaid balance

will not be adequate to cover actual and liquidated damages;

9.7.1.5 probable evidence that third party claims will be filed in court, in arbitration, or otherwise;

9.7.1.6 Contractor has failed to make payments to Subcontractors or Suppliers for labor, material, or equipment; or

9.7.1.7 Contractor has persistently failed to carry out work in accordance with the Contract.

9.7.1.8 Contractor has not paid Subcontractors or Suppliers because of a payment dispute; or

9.7.1.9 Contractor has failed to provide satisfactory evidence described in Paragraphs 9.2.1, 9.4.2, and 9.8.2.

9.7.2 When the above reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

9.7.3 City Engineer may decline to certify payment and may withhold request for payment in whole or in part upon failure of Contractor to submit initial construction schedule or monthly schedule updates, as required in Paragraphs 3.15.1 and 3.15.3.

9.8 *PROGRESS PAYMENTS*

9.8.1 The City will make payment, in an amount certified by City Engineer, within 20 days after City Engineer has issued a Certificate for Payment.

9.8.2 The City has no obligation to pay or to facilitate the payment to a Subcontractor or Supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law. Contractor shall comply with the prompt payment requirements of Chapter 2251 of the Government Code. State law requires payment of Subcontractors and Suppliers by Contractor within 7 calendar days of Contractor's receipt of payment from the City, unless there is a payment dispute between Contractor and a Subcontractor or Supplier evidenced on a form approved by the Director of Mayor's Office of Business Opportunity and submitted to the City Engineer each month with Application for Payment or Estimate for Payment. **CONTRACTOR SHALL DEFEND AND INDEMNIFY THE CITY FROM ANY CLAIMS OR LIABILITY ARISING OUT OF CONTRACTOR'S FAILURE TO MAKE THESE PAYMENTS.**

9.8.2.1 The City may, upon request and at the discretion of City Engineer, furnish to Subcontractor information regarding percentages of completion or the amounts applied for by Contractor, and action taken thereon by the City because of work done by the Subcontractor.

9.8.2.2 Contractor shall prepare and submit to City Engineer a Certification of Payment to Subcontractors and Suppliers form to be attached to each monthly Estimate for Payment or Application for Payment.

9.8.3 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Work by the City, does not constitute acceptance of work which is not in accordance with the Contract.

9.9 *DATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION*

9.9.1 When Contractor considers the Work, or a portion thereof designated by City Engineer, to be substantially complete, Contractor shall prepare and submit to Project Manager a comprehensive punch list of items to be completed or corrected. Failure to include an item on the punch list does not alter the responsibility of Contractor to comply with the Contract.

9.9.1.1 By submitting the punch list to Project Manager, Contractor represents that work on the punch list will be completed within the time provided for in Subparagraph 9.9.4.3.

9.9.2 Upon receipt of Contractor's punch list, Project Manager will inspect the Work, or designated portion thereof, to verify that the punch list contains all items needing completion or correction. If Project Manager's inspection discloses items not on Contractor's punch list, the items must be added to the punch list of items to be completed or corrected. If Project Manager's inspection reveals that Contractor is not yet substantially complete, Contractor shall complete or correct the deficiencies and request another inspection by Project Manager. The City may recover the costs of re-inspection from Contractor.

9.9.3 Prior to City Engineer's issuing a Certificate of Substantial Completion, Contractor shall also provide:

9.9.3.1 Certificate of Occupancy for new construction, or Certificate of Compliance for remodeled work, as applicable, and

9.9.3.2 compliance with Texas Accessibility Standards through state inspection of the Work, if required. If Contractor calls for inspection in a timely manner and the inspection is delayed through no fault of Contractor, and City Engineer so confirms, City Engineer may, upon request by Contractor, add the inspection to the punch list in Paragraph 9.9.2 and issue a Certificate of Substantial Completion.

9.9.4 When the Work, or designated portion thereof, is determined by City Engineer to be sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract so the City can occupy or utilize the Work, or designated portion thereof, for the purpose for which it is intended, City Engineer will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that incorporates the punch list in Paragraph 9.9.2 and establishes:

9.9.4.1 Date of Substantial Completion;

9.9.4.2 responsibilities of the Parties for security, maintenance, heating, ventilating and air conditioning, utilities, damage to the Work, and insurance; and

9.9.4.3 fixed time within which Contractor shall complete all items on punch list of items to be corrected accompanying the certificate.

9.9.5 Warranties required by the Contract shall commence on the Date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise provided by City Engineer in Certificate of Substantial Completion. Warranties may not commence on items not substantially completed.

9.9.6 After Date of Substantial Completion and upon application by Contractor and approval by City Engineer, the City may make payment, reflecting adjustment in retainage, if any, as follows:

9.9.6.1 with the consent of Surety, the City may increase payment to Contractor to 96 percent of Contract Price, less value of items to be completed and accrued liquidated damages.

9.9.7 Contractor shall complete or correct the items in Paragraph 9.9.2 within the time period set out in the Certificate of Substantial Completion. If Contractor fails to do so, the City may issue a Notice of Noncompliance and proceed according to Section 2.5.

9.10 *PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE*

9.10.1 The City may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage, provided the occupancy or use is consented to by Contractor and Contractor's insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work. Consent of Contractor to partial occupancy or use may not be unreasonably withheld.

9.10.2 Immediately prior to the partial occupancy or use, Project Manager and Contractor shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used to determine and record condition of the Work.

9.10.3 Partial occupancy or use of a portion of the Work does not constitute acceptance of work not in compliance with requirements of the Contract.

9.11 *FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT*

9.11.1 Contractor shall review the Contract and inspect the Work prior to Contractor notification to City Engineer that the Work is complete and ready for final inspection. Contractor shall submit affidavit that the Work has been inspected and that the Work is complete in accordance with requirements of the Contract.

9.11.2 Project Manager will make final inspection within 15 days after receipt of Contractor's written notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance. If Project Manager finds the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract, Contractor shall submit items set out in Paragraph 9.11.4 and, for stipulated price contracts, a final Application for Payment. City Engineer will, within 10 days, issue Certificate of Final Completion stating that to the best of City Engineer's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract, and will recommend acceptance of the Work by City Council.

9.11.3 Should work be found not in compliance with requirements of the Contract, City Engineer will notify Contractor in writing of items of noncompliance. Upon inspection and acceptance of the corrections by Project Manager, compliance with all procedures of Paragraph 9.11.2, and Contractor's submission of the items set out in Paragraph 9.11.4, the City Engineer will issue Certificate of Final Completion to Contractor as provided in Paragraph 9.11.2.

9.11.4 Contractor shall submit the following items to City Engineer before City Engineer will issue a Certificate of Final Completion:

9.11.4.1 affidavit that payrolls, invoices for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness of Contractor connected

with the Work, less amounts withheld by the City, have been paid or otherwise satisfied. If required by City Engineer, Contractor shall submit further proof including waiver or release of lien or claims from laborers or Suppliers of Products;

9.11.4.2 certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, will not be canceled or materially changed until at least 30 days written notice has been given to the City;

9.11.4.3 written statement that Contractor knows of no substantial reason that insurance will not be renewable to cover correction and warranty period required by the Contract;

9.11.4.4 consent of Surety to final payment; and

9.11.4.5 copies of record documents, maintenance manuals, tests, inspections, and approvals.

Upon City Engineer's issuance of a Certificate of Final Completion, Contractor may request increase in payment to 99 percent of Contract Price, less accrued liquidated damages.

9.11.5 If Contractor fails to submit required items in Paragraph 9.11.4 within 10 days of Project Manager's inspection of the Work under Paragraph 9.11.2 or Paragraph 9.11.3, City Engineer may, but is not obligated to:

9.11.5.1 deduct liquidated damages accrued from monies held;

9.11.5.2 proceed to City Council for acceptance of the Work, minus some or all of the items Contractor fails to submit under Paragraph 9.11.4; and,

9.11.5.3 upon acceptance by City Council of the portion of the Work completed, make final payment as set out in Paragraph 9.11.8.

9.11.6 If final completion is materially delayed through no fault of Contractor, or by issuance of Change Orders affecting date of final completion, and City Engineer so confirms, the City may, upon application by Contractor and certification by City Engineer, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted.

9.11.7 If remaining balance due for work not corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract, Contractor shall submit to City Engineer written consent of Surety to payment of balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted, prior to certification of the payment. The payment is made under terms governing final payment, except that it does not constitute waiver of Claims.

9.11.8 The City will make final payment to Contractor within 30 days after acceptance of the Work by City Council, subject to limitations, if any, as stated in the Contract.

9.11.9 Acceptance of final payment by Contractor shall constitute a waiver of all Claims, whether known or unknown, by Contractor, except those previously made in writing and identified by Contractor as unsettled at time of final Application for Payment.

9.12 *LIQUIDATED DAMAGES*

9.12.1 Contractor, Surety, and the City agree that failure to complete the Work within Contract Time will cause damages to the City and that actual damages from harm are difficult to estimate accurately. Therefore, Contractor, Surety, and the City agree that Contractor and Surety are liable for and shall pay to the City the amount stipulated in Supplementary Conditions as liquidated damages, and that the amount of damages fixed therein is a reasonable forecast of just compensation for harm to the City resulting from Contractor's failure to complete the Work within Contract Time. The amount stipulated will be paid for each day of delay beyond Contract Time until Date of Substantial Completion.

9.12.2 Contractor shall pay the City an amount equal to $1,200.00 per diesel operating vehicle or piece of motorized equipment per incident of high sulfur diesel fuel usage.

ARTICLE 10 - SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

10.1 *SAFETY PROGRAMS*

10.1.1 Contractor is responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with performance of the Contract. Contractor shall submit a safety program to City Engineer prior to mobilizing for the Work, and is solely responsible for safety, efficiency, and adequacy of ways, means, and methods, and for damage which might result from failure or improper construction, maintenance, or operation performed by Contractor.

10.2 *POLLUTANTS AND POLLUTANT FACILITIES*

10.2.1 If Contractor encounters material on-site which it reasonably believes to be a Pollutant or facilities which it reasonably believes to be a Pollutant Facility, Contractor shall immediately stop work in affected area and immediately notify City Engineer, confirming the notice thereafter in writing.

10.2.2 If City Engineer determines that the material is a Pollutant or facility is a Pollutant Facility, work in affected area may not be resumed except by Modification, and only if the work would not violate applicable laws or regulations.

10.2.3 If City Engineer determines that the material is not a Pollutant or a facility is not a Pollutant Facility, work in affected area will be resumed upon issuance of a Modification.

10.2.4 Contractor is not required to perform, unless authorized by Change Order, work relating to Pollutants or Pollutant Facilities except for that work relating to Pollutants or Pollutant Facilities specified in the Contract.

10.3 *SAFETY OF THE ENVIRONMENT, PERSONS, AND PROPERTY*

10.3.1 Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss from all causes, to:

10.3.1.1 employees performing work on-site, and other persons who may be affected thereby;

10.3.1.2 work, including Products to be incorporated into the Work, whether in proper storage, under control of Contractor or Subcontractor; and

10.3.1.3 other property at or adjacent to the site, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, utilities, and Underground Facilities not designated for removal or replacement in course of construction.

10.3.2 Contractor shall give notices and comply with applicable laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on safety of persons, property, or environment.

10.3.2.1 Contractor shall comply with requirements of Underground Facility Damage Prevention and Safety Act TEX. UTIL. CODE ANN. Ch. 251 (Vernon Supp. 2002).

10.3.2.2 Contractor shall comply with all safety rules and regulations of the Federal Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1970 and subsequent amendments (OSHA).

10.3.3 Contractor shall erect and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection of persons and property, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards, promulgating safety regulations, and notifying owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities.

10.3.4 Contractor shall designate responsible member of Contractor's organization at site whose duty is prevention of accidents. This person will be Contractor's Superintendent unless otherwise designated by Contractor in writing to City Engineer.

10.3.5 Contractor shall prevent windblown dust and may not burn or bury trash debris or waste products on-site. Contractor shall prevent environmental pollution, including but not limited to particulates, gases and noise, as a result of the Work.

10.3.6 When use or storage of hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on the activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

10.3.7 Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss to property referred to in Subparagraphs 10.3.1.2 and 10.3.1.3, caused in whole or in part by Contractor, or Subcontractors, which is not covered by insurance required by the Contract. Contractor is not required to remedy damage or loss attributable to the City, Design Consultant, or other contractors.

10.4 *EMERGENCIES*

10.4.1 In emergencies affecting safety of persons or property, Contractor shall act at Contractor's discretion to prevent imminent damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by Contractor because of emergencies are determined as provided in Article 7.

ARTICLE 11 - INSURANCE AND BONDS

11.1 *GENERAL INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS*

11.1.1 With no intent to limit Contractor's liability under indemnification provisions set forth in Paragraphs 3.25 and 3.26, Contractor shall provide and maintain in full force and effect during term of the Contract and all extensions and amendments thereto, at least the following insurance and available limits of liability.

11.1.2 If any of the following insurance is written as "claims made" coverage and the City is required to be carried as additional insured, then Contractor's insurance shall include a two-year extended discovery period after last date that Contractor provides any work under the Contract.

11.1.3 Aggregate amounts of coverage, for purposes of the Contract, are agreed to be amounts of coverage available during fixed 12-month policy period.

11.2 *INSURANCE TO BE PROVIDED BY CONTRACTOR*

11.2.1 *Risks and Limits of Liability:* Contractor shall maintain the insurance coverages in the listed amounts, as set out in Table 1.

11.2.2 If Limit of Liability for Excess Coverage is $2,000,000 or more, Limit of Liability for Employer's Liability may be reduced to $500,000.

11.2.3 *Insurance Coverage*: At all times during the term of this Contract and any extensions or renewals, Contractor shall provide and maintain insurance coverage that meets the Contract requirements. Prior to beginning performance under the Contract, at any time upon the Director's request, or each time coverage is renewed or updated, Contractor shall furnish to the Director current certificates of insurance, endorsements, all policies, or other policy documents evidencing adequate coverage, as necessary. Contractor shall be responsible for and pay (a) all premiums and (b) any claims or losses to the extent of any deductible amounts. Contractor waives any claim it may have for premiums or deductibles against the City, its officers, agents, or employees. Contractor shall also require all subcontractors or consultants whose subcontracts exceed $100,000 to provide proof of insurance coverage meeting all requirements stated above except amount. The amount must be commensurate with the amount of the subcontract, but no less than $500,000 per claim.

11.2.4 *Form of insurance*: The form of the insurance shall be approved by the Director and the City Attorney; such approval (or lack thereof) shall never (a) excuse non-compliance with the terms of this Section, or (b) waive or estop the City from asserting its rights to terminate this Contract. The policy issuer shall (1) have a Certificate of Authority to transact insurance business in Texas, or (2) be an eligible non-admitted insurer in the State of Texas and have a Best's rating of at least B+, and a Best's Financial Size Category of Class VI or better, according to the most current Best's Key Rating Guide. Each insurer is subject to approval by City Engineer in City Engineer's sole discretion as to conformance with these requirements.

11.2.5 *Required Coverage*: The City shall be an Additional Insured under this Contract, and all policies except Professional Liability and Worker's Compensation must name the City as an Additional Insured. Contactor waives any claim or right of subrogation to recover against the City, its officers, agents, or employees, and each of Contractor's insurance policies except professional liability must contain coverage waiving such claim. Each policy, except Workers' Compensation and Professional Liability, must also contain an endorsement that the policy is primary to any other insurance available to the Additional Insured with respect to claims arising under this Contract. If professional liability coverage is written on a "claims made" basis, Contractor shall also provide proof of renewal each year for two years after substantial completion of the Project, or in the alternative: evidence of extended reporting period coverage for a period of two years after substantial completion, or a project liability policy for the Project covered by this Contract with a duration of two years after substantial completion.

11.2.6 *Deductibles:* Contractor assumes and bears any claims or losses to extent of deductible amounts and waives any claim it may ever have for same against the City, its officers, agents, or employees.

11.2.7 *Notice*: **CONTRACTOR SHALL GIVE 30 DAYS' ADVANCE WRITTEN NOTICE TO THE DIRECTOR IF ANY OF ITS INSURANCE POLICIES ARE CANCELED OR NON-RENEWED**. Within the 30-day period, Contractor shall provide other suitable policies in order to maintain the required coverage. If Contractor does not comply with this requirement, the Director, at his or her sole discretion, may immediately suspend Contractor from any further performance under this Agreement and begin procedures to terminate for default.

11.2.8 *Subrogation:* Contractor waives any claim or right of subrogation to recover against the City, its officers, agents, or employees. Each policy,

except professional liability, must contain an endorsement waiving such claim.

11.2.9 *Endorsement of Primary Insurance:* Each policy, except Workers' Compensation policies, must contain an endorsement that the policy is primary insurance to any other insurance available to additional insured with respect to claims arising hereunder.

11.2.10 *Liability for Premium:* Contractor is solely responsible for payment of all insurance premium requirements hereunder and the City is not obligated to pay any premiums.

11.2.11 *Additional Requirements for Workers' Compensation Insurance Coverage:* Contractor shall, in addition to meeting the obligations set forth in Table 1, maintain throughout the term of the Contract Workers' Compensation coverage as required by statute, and Contractor shall specifically comply with requirements set forth in Paragraph 11.2.10. The definitions set out below shall apply only for purposes of this Paragraph 11.2.10.

11.2.12 Definitions:

11.2.12.1 *Certificate of Coverage:* A copy of certificate of insurance, or coverage agreement (TWCC-81, TWCC-82, TWCC-83, or TWCC-84), showing statutory Workers' Compensation insurance coverage for Contractor's, Subcontractor's, or Supplier's employees providing services for the duration of the Contract.

11.2.12.2 *Duration of the Work:* Includes the time from Date of Commencement of the Work until Contractor's work under the Contract has been completed and accepted by City Council.

11.2.12.3 *Persons providing services for the Work (Subcontractor in Texas Labor Code § 406.096):* includes all persons or entities performing all or part of services Contractor has undertaken to perform on the Work, regardless of whether that person contracted directly with Contractor and regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of the entity, or employees of entity which furnishes persons to provide services on the Work. Services include, without limitation, providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to the Work. Services do not include activities unrelated to the Work, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.

11.2.13 Contractor shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of TEX. LAB. CODE ANN., Section 401.011(44) for employees of Contractor providing services on the Work, for duration of the Work.

11.2.14 Contractor shall provide a Certificate of Coverage to the City prior to being awarded the Contract.

11.2.15 If coverage period shown on Contractor's original Certificate of Coverage ends during duration of the Work, Contractor shall file new Certificate of Coverage with the City showing that coverage has been extended.

11.2.16 Contractor shall obtain from each person providing services on the Work, and provide to City Engineer:

11.2.16.1 Certificate of Coverage, prior to that person beginning work on the Work, so the City will have on file Certificates of Coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on the Work; and

11.2.16.2 no later than seven days after receipt by Contractor, new Certificate of Coverage showing extension of coverage, if coverage period shown on current Certificate of Coverage ends during the duration of the Work.

11.2.17 Contractor shall retain all required Certificates of Coverage for the duration of the Work and for one year thereafter.

11.2.18 Contractor shall notify City Engineer in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within 10 days after Contractor knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Work.

11.2.19 Contractor shall post on-site a notice, in text, form and manner prescribed by Texas Workers'

Compensation Commission, informing all persons providing services on the Work that they are required to be covered, and stating how person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.

11.2.20 Contractor shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on the Work to:

11.2.20.1 provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes, payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets statutory requirements of TEX. LAB. CODE ANN., Section 401.011(44) for all its employees providing services on the Work, for the duration of the Work;

11.2.20.2 provide to Contractor, prior to that person's beginning work on the Work, a Certificate of Coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the Work, for the duration of the Work;

11.2.20.3 provide Contractor, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new Certificate of Coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current Certificate of Coverage ends during the duration of the Work;

11.2.20.4 obtain from each other person with whom it contracts, and provide to Contractor: (1) Certificate of Coverage, prior to other person's beginning work on the Work; and (2) new Certificate of Coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to end of coverage period, if coverage period shown on the current Certificate of Coverage ends during duration of the Work.

11.2.20.5 retain all required Certificates of Coverage on file for the duration of the Work and for one year thereafter;

11.2.20.6 notify City Engineer in writing by certified mail or personal delivery within 10 days after person knew, or should have known, of change that materially affects provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Work; and

11.2.20.7 contractually require each person with whom it contracts to perform as required by Paragraphs 11.2.10.1 through 11.2.10.7, with Certificates of Coverage to be provided to person for whom they are providing services.

11.2.21 By signing the Contract or providing or causing to be provided a Certificate of Coverage, Contractor is representing to the City that all employees of Contractor who will provide services on the Work will be covered by Workers' Compensation coverage for the duration of the Work, that coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with appropriate insurance carrier. Contractor is not allowed to self-insure Workers' Compensation. Contractor may be subject to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions for providing false or misleading information.

11.2.22 Contractor's failure to comply with Paragraph 11.2.10 is a breach of the Contract by Contractor, which entitles the City to declare the Contract void if Contractor does not remedy breach within 10 days after receipt of notice of breach from City Engineer.

11.2.23 *Subcontractor Insurance Requirements:* Contractor shall require Subcontractors and Suppliers to obtain Commercial General Liability, Workers' Compensation, Employer's Liability and Automobile Liability coverage that meets all the requirements of Paragraph 11.2. The amount must be commensurate with the amount of the subcontract, but not less than $500,000 per occurrence. Contractor shall require all Subcontractors with whom it contracts directly, whose subcontracts exceed $100,000, to provide proof of Commercial General Liability and Automobile Liability insurance coverage meeting the above requirements. Contractor shall comply with all requirements set out under Paragraph 11.2.10 as to Workers' Compensation Insurance for all Subcontractors and Suppliers.

REQUIRED COVERAGE

(Coverage)	(Limit of Liability)
.1 Workers' Compensation	• Statutory Limits for Workers' Compensation
.2 Employer's Liability	• Bodily Injury by Accident $1,000,000 (each accident) • Bodily Injury by Disease $1,000,000 (policy limit) • Bodily Injury by Disease $1,000,000 (each employee)
.3 Commercial General Liability: Including Contractor's Protective, Broad Form Property Damage, Contractual Liability, Explosion, Underground and Collapse, Bodily Injury, Personal Injury, Products, and Completed Operations (for a period of one year following completion of the Work).	• Combined single limit of $1,000,000 (each occurrence), subject to general aggregate of $1,000,000; • Products and Completed Operations $1,000,000 aggregate.
.4 Owner's and Contractor's Protective Liability	• $1,000,000 combined single limit each Occurrence/ aggregate
.5 Installation Floater (Unless alternative coverage approved by City Attorney)	• Value of stored material or equipment, listed on Certificates of Payments, but not yet incorporated into the Work
.6 Automobile Liability Insurance: (For automobiles furnished by Contractor in course of his performance under the Contract, including Owned, Non-owned, and Hired Auto coverage)	• $1,000,000 combined single limit each occurrence for (1) Any Auto or (2) All Owned, Hired, and Non-Owned Autos
.7 Excess Coverage	• $1,000,000 each occurrence/combined aggregate in excess of limits specified for Employer's Liability, Commercial General Liability, and Automobile Liability
Aggregate Limits are per 12-month policy period unless otherwise indicated.	

11.3 *PROOF OF INSURANCE*

11.3.1 Prior to commencing services and at time during the term of the Contract, Contractor shall furnish City Engineer with Certificates of Insurance, along with Affidavit from Contractor confirming that Certificate accurately reflects insurance coverage that is available during term of the Contract. If requested in writing by City Engineer, Contractor shall furnish City Engineer with certified copies of Contractor's actual insurance policies. Failure of Contractor to provide certified copies, as requested, may be deemed, at City Engineer's or City Attorney's discretion, a material breach of the Contract.

11.3.2 Notwithstanding the proof of insurance requirements, Contractor shall continuously maintain in effect required insurance coverage set forth in Paragraph 11.2. Failure of Contractor to comply with this requirement does constitute a material breach by Contractor allowing the City, at its option, to immediately suspend or terminate work, or exercise any other remedy allowed under the Contract. Contractor agrees that the City has not waived or is not estopped to assert a material breach of the Contract because of any acts or omissions by the City regarding its review or non-review of insurance documents provided by Contractor, its agents, employees, or assigns.

11.3.3 Contractor shall provide updated certificates of insurance to the Director upon request. The Contractor shall be responsible for delivering a current certificate of insurance in the proper form to the Director as long as Contractor is required to furnish insurance coverage under Paragraph 11.2.

11.3.4 Every certificate of insurance Contractor delivers in connection with this Contract shall

11.3.4.1 be less than 12 months old;

11.3.4.2 include all pertinent identification information for the Insurer, including the company name and address, policy

number, NAIC number or AMB number, and authorized signature;

11.3.4.3 include in the Certificate Holder Box the Project name and reference numbers, contractor's email address, and indicates the name and address of the Project Manager;

11.3.4.4 include the Contractor's email address in the Certificate Holder Box;

11.3.4.5 include the Project reference numbers on the City address so the Project reference number is visible in the envelope window; and

11.3.4.6 be appropriately marked to accurately identify all coverages and limits of the policy, effective and expiration dates, and waivers of subrogation in favor of the City for Commercial General Liability, Automobile Liability, and Worker's Compensation/Employers' Liability.

11.4 *PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS*

11.4.1 For Contracts over the value of $25,000, Contractor shall provide Bonds on the City's standard forms covering faithful performance of the Contract and payment of obligations arising thereunder as required in the Contract pursuant to Chapter 2253 of the Government Code. The Bonds must be for 100 percent of Original Contract Price and in accordance with conditions stated on standard City Performance and Payment Bond and Statutory Payment Bond forms. Bonds may be obtained from Contractor's usual source and cost for the Bonds are included in Contract Price.

11.5 *MAINTENANCE BONDS*

11.5.1 *One-year Maintenance Bond:* Contractor shall provide Bond on standard City One-year Maintenance Bond form, providing for Contractor's correction, replacement, or restoration of any portion of the Work which is found to be not in compliance with requirements of the Contract during one-year correction period required in Paragraph 12.2. The Maintenance Bond must be for 100 percent of the Original Contract Price.

11.6 *SURETY*

11.6.1 A Bond that is given or tendered to the City pursuant to the Contract must be executed by a surety company that is authorized and admitted to write surety Bonds in the State of Texas.

11.6.2 If a Bond is given or tendered to the City pursuant to the Contract in an amount greater than 10 percent of Surety's capital and surplus, Surety shall provide certification that Surety has reinsured that portion of the risk that exceeds 10 percent of Surety's capital and surplus. The reinsurance must be with one or more reinsurers who are duly authorized, accredited, or trusted to do business in the State of Texas. The amount reinsured by reinsurer may not exceed 10 percent of reinsurer's capital and surplus. The amount of allowed capital and surplus must be based on information received from State Board of Insurance.

11.6.3 If the amount of a Bond is greater than $100,000, Surety shall:

11.6.3.1 also hold certificate of authority from the United States Secretary of Treasury to qualify as surety on obligations permitted or required under federal law; or,

11.6.3.2 Surety may obtain reinsurance for any liability in excess of $100,000 from reinsurer that is authorized and admitted as a reinsurer in the State of Texas and is the holder of a certificate of authority from the United States Secretary of the Treasury to qualify as surety or reinsurer on obligations permitted or required under federal law.

11.6.4 Determination of whether Surety on the Bond or the reinsurer holds a certificate of authority from the United States Secretary of the Treasury is based on information published in Federal Register covering the date on which Bond was executed.

11.6.5 Each Bond given or tendered to the City pursuant to the Contract must be on City forms with no changes made by Contractor or Surety, and must be dated, executed, and accompanied by power of attorney stating that the attorney in fact executing such the bond has requisite authority to execute such Bond. The Bonds must be dated and must be no more than 30 days old.

11.6.6 Surety shall designate in its Bond, power of attorney, or written notice to the City, an agent resident in Harris County to whom any requisite notices may be delivered and on whom service of process may be had in matters arising out of the suretyship.

11.6.7 Contractor shall furnish information to a payment bond beneficiary as required by TEX. GOV'T CODE ANN. CH. 2253.

11.7 *DELIVERY OF BONDS*

11.7.1 Contractor shall deliver required Bonds to the City within time limits stated in Notice of Intent to Award and prior to Date of Commencement of the Work.

ARTICLE 12 - UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF THE WORK

12.1 *UNCOVERING OF THE WORK*

12.1.1 If a portion of the Work has been covered which City Engineer has not specifically requested to observe prior to its being covered, City Engineer may request to see such work and it must be uncovered by Contractor. If such work is in accordance with the Contract, the costs of uncovering and covering such work are charged to the City by Change Order. If such work is not in accordance with the Contract, Contractor shall pay for uncovering and shall correct the nonconforming Work promptly after receipt of Notice of Noncompliance to do so.

12.2 *CORRECTION OF THE WORK*

12.2.1 Contractor shall promptly correct or remove work rejected by City Engineer or work failing to conform to requirements of the Contract, whether observed before or after Date of Substantial Completion and whether fabricated, Installed, or completed.

12.2.2 Contractor bears costs of correcting the rejected or nonconforming work including additional testing and inspections, and compensation for Design Consultant's services and expenses made necessary thereby.

12.2.3 If within one year after Date of Substantial Completion, or after date for commencement of warranties established under Paragraph 9.9.5 or by other applicable special warranty required by the Contract, whichever is later in time, any of the Work is found not to be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract, Contractor shall correct such work promptly after receipt of Notice of Noncompliance to do so.

12.2.4 One-year correction period for portions of the Work completed after Date of Substantial Completion will begin on the date of acceptance of that portion of the Work. This obligation under this Paragraph survives acceptance of the Work under the Contract and termination of the Contract.

12.2.5 The one-year correction period does not establish a duration for the Contractor's general warranty under Paragraph 3.12. The City retains the right to recover damages from the Contractor as long as may be permitted by the applicable statute of limitations.

12.2.6 If Contractor does not proceed with correction of the nonconforming work within time fixed by Notice of Noncompliance, the City may correct nonconforming work or remove nonconforming work and store salvageable Products at Contractor's expense. Contractor shall pay the costs of correction of nonconforming work and removal and storage of salvageable Products to the City. If Contractor does not pay costs of the correction or removal and storage within 10 days after written notice, the City may sell the Products at auction or at private sale. The City will account for proceeds thereof after deducting costs and damages that would have been borne by Contractor, including compensation for services of Design Consultant and necessary expenses. If the proceeds of sale do not cover costs which Contractor should have borne, Contractor shall pay the value of the deficiency to the City.

12.2.7 Contractor bears cost of correcting work originally installed by Contractor, the City, or by separate contractors and damaged by Contractor's correction or removal of Contractor's work.

12.3 *ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK*

12.3.1 If City Engineer prefers to accept work which is not in accordance with requirements of the Contract, City Engineer may do so only by issuance of Change Order, instead of requiring its removal and correction. City Engineer will determine Contract Price reduction. The reduction will become effective even if final payment has been made.

ARTICLE 13 - MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

13.1 *GOVERNING LAWS*

13.1.1 The Contract is subject to the laws of the State of Texas, the City Charter and Ordinances, the laws of the federal government of the United States, and all rules and regulations of any regulatory body or officer having jurisdiction.

13.1.2 Venue for any litigation relating to the Contract is Harris County, Texas.

13.2 *SUCCESSORS*

13.2.1 The Contract binds and benefits the Parties and their legal successors and permitted assigns; however, this Paragraph 13.2.1 does not alter the restrictions on assignment and disposal of assets set out in Paragraph 13.3.1. The Contract does not create any personal liability on the part of any officer or agent of the City.

13.3 *BUSINESS STRUCTURE AND ASSIGNMENTS*

13.3.1 Contractor may not assign the Contract at law or otherwise, or dispose of all or substantially all of its assets without City Engineer's prior written consent. Nothing in this Section, however, prevents the assignment of accounts receivable or the creation of a security interest as described in §9.406 of the Texas Business & Commerce Code. In the case of such an assignment, Contractor shall immediately furnish the City with proof of the assignment and the name, telephone number, and address of the assignee and a clear identification of the fees to be paid to the assignee.

13.3.2 Any series, as defined by the TEX. BUS. ORG. CODE ANN., affiliate, subsidiary, or successor to which Contractor assigns or transfers assets shall join in privity and be jointly and severally liable under this Contract.

13.4 *WRITTEN NOTICE*

13.4.1 All notices required or permitted by the Contract must be in writing and must be effected by hand delivery; registered or certified mail, return receipt requested; or facsimile with confirmation copy mailed to receiving Party. Notice is sufficient if made or addressed with proper postage to the address stated in the Agreement for each Party ("Notice Address") or faxed to the facsimile number stated in the Agreement for each Party. The notice is deemed delivered on the earlier of:

- 13.4.1.1 the date the Notice is actually received;
- 13.4.1.2 the third day following deposit in a United States Postal Service post office or receptacle; or
- 13.4.1.3 the date the facsimile is sent unless the facsimile is sent after 5:00 p.m. local time of the recipient and then it is deemed received on the following day.

Any Party may change its Notice Address or facsimile number at any time by giving written notice of the change to the other Party in the manner provided for in this Paragraph at least 15 days prior to the date the change is affected.

13.5 *RIGHTS AND REMEDIES*

13.5.1 Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract and rights and remedies available thereunder are in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

13.5.2 No act or failure to act by the City or Contractor is a waiver of rights or duties afforded them under the Contract, nor is the act or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach of the Contract. No waiver, approval or acquiescence is binding unless in writing and, in the case of the City, signed by City Engineer.

13.6 *TESTS AND INSPECTIONS*

13.6.1 Contractor shall give City Engineer, Construction Manager, and Design Consultant timely notice of the time and place where tests and inspections are to be made. Contractor shall cooperate with inspection and testing personnel to facilitate required inspections or tests.

13.6.2 The City will employ and pay for services of an independent testing laboratory to perform inspections or acceptance tests required by the Contract except:

- 13.6.2.1 inspections or tests covered by Paragraph 13.6.3;
- 13.6.2.2 those otherwise specifically provided in the Contract; or
- 13.6.2.3 costs incurred in connection with tests or inspections conducted pursuant to Paragraph 12.2.2.

13.6.3 Contractor is responsible for and shall pay all costs in connection with inspection or testing required in connection with City Engineer's acceptance of a Product to be incorporated into the Work, or of materials, mix designs, or equipment submitted for approval prior to Contractor's purchase thereof for incorporation into the Work.

13.6.4 Neither observations by the City, Construction Manager, or Design Consultant, nor inspections, tests, or approvals by others, relieves Contractor from Contractor's obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract.

13.7 *INTEREST*

13.7.1 No interest will accrue on late payments by the City except as provided under Chapter 2251 of the Government Code.

13.8 *PARTIES IN INTEREST*

13.8.1 The Contract does not bestow any rights upon any third party, but binds and benefits the Parties only.

13.9 *ENTIRE CONTRACT*

13.9.1 The Contract merges the prior negotiations and understandings of the Parties and embodies the entire agreement of the Parties. No other agreements, assurances, conditions, covenants, express or implied, or other terms of any kind, exist between the Parties regarding the Contract.

13.10 *WRITTEN AMENDMENT*

13.10.1 Changes to the Contract that cannot be effected by Modifications, must be made by written amendment, which will not be effective until approved by City Council.

13.11 *COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS*

13.11.1 Contractor shall comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 as amended (ADA) and Texas Architectural Barriers Act and all regulations relating to either statute.

13.11.2 Contractor shall comply with all applicable federal, state, and city laws, rules and regulations.

13.12 *SEVERABILITY*

13.12.1 If any part of the Contract is for any reason found to be unenforceable, all other parts remain enforceable to the extent permitted by law.

ARTICLE 14 - TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

14.1 *TERMINATION BY THE CITY FOR CAUSE*

14.1.1 Each of the following acts or omissions of Contractor or occurrences shall constitute an "Event of Default" under the Contract:

14.1.1.1 Contractor refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper Products;

14.1.1.2 Contractor disregards laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, or orders of a public authority having jurisdiction;

14.1.1.3 Contractor is guilty of material breach of any duty or obligation of Contractor under the Contract, including, but not limited to, failure to submit certified payrolls electronically;

14.1.1.4 Contractor has had any other contract with the City terminated for cause at any time subsequent to the effective date of the Contract as set out in the Agreement; or

14.1.1.5 Contractor fails to utilize Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel, as required in Paragraph 3.9.1.1.

14.1.2 If an Event of Default occurs, City Engineer may, at his option and without prejudice to any other rights or remedies which the City may have, deliver a written notice to Contractor and Surety describing the Event of Default and giving the Contractor 10 days to cure the Event of Default. If after the cure period, Contractor has failed or refused to cure the Event of Default, then City Engineer may deliver a second written notice to Contractor giving notice of the termination of the Contract or of the termination of Contractor's performance under the Contract ("Notice of Termination"). If City Engineer issues a Notice of Termination, then City Engineer may, subject to any prior rights of Surety and any other rights of the City under the Contract or at law:

14.1.2.1 request that Surety complete the Work; or

14.1.2.2 take possession of the site and all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery on the site owned by Contractor; and

14.1.2.3 finish the Work by whatever reasonable method City Engineer may deem expedient.

14.1.3 After Contractor's receipt of a Notice of Termination, and except as otherwise directed in writing by City Engineer, Contractor shall:

14.1.3.1 stop the Work on the date and to the extent specified in the Notice of Termination;

14.1.3.2 place no further orders or subcontracts for Products or services;

14.1.3.3 terminate all orders and subcontracts to the extent that they relate to performance of work terminated;

14.1.3.4 assign to the City, in the manner, at the times, and to the extent directed by City Engineer, all rights, title, and interest of Contractor, under the terminated supply orders and subcontracts. The City may settle or pay claims arising out of termination of the orders and subcontracts;

14.1.3.5 settle all outstanding liabilities and all claims arising out of the termination of

supply orders and subcontracts with approval of City Engineer;

14.1.3.6 take action as may be necessary, or as City Engineer may direct, for protection and preservation of property related to the Work that is in possession of Contractor, and in which the City has or may acquire an interest; and

14.1.3.7 secure the Work in a safe state before leaving the site, providing any necessary safety measures, shoring, or other devices.

14.1.4 If the City terminates the Contract or terminates Contractor's performance under the Contract for any one or more of the reasons stated in Paragraph 14.1.1, Contractor may not receive any further payment until the Work is complete, subject to Paragraph 14.1.5.

14.1.5 If the unpaid balance of Contract Price exceeds the costs of finishing the Work, including liquidated damages and other amounts due under the Contract, the balance will be paid to Contractor. If the costs of finishing the Work exceed the unpaid balance, Contractor shall, within 10 days of receipt of written notice setting out the amount of the excess costs, pay the difference to the City. The amount to be paid to Contractor or the City will be certified by City Engineer in writing, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract or termination of Contractor's performance under the Contract. Termination of the Contractor for cause shall not relieve the Surety from its obligation to complete the project.

14.2 *TERMINATION BY THE CITY FOR CONVENIENCE*

14.2.1 City Engineer may, without cause and without prejudice to other rights or remedies of the City, give Contractor and Surety a Notice of Termination with a seven days written notice.

14.2.2 After receipt of the Notice of Termination, and except as otherwise approved by City Engineer, Contractor shall conform to requirements of Paragraph 14.1.3.

14.2.3 After receipt of the Notice of Termination, Contractor shall submit to the City its termination Claim, in forms required by City Engineer. The Claim will be submitted to the City promptly, but no later than six months from the effective date of termination, unless one or more extensions are granted by City Engineer in writing. If Contractor fails to submit its termination Claim within the time allowed, in accordance with Paragraph 14.2.4, City Engineer will determine, on the basis of available information, the amount, if any, due to Contractor because of termination, and City Engineer's determination is final and binding on the Parties. The City will then pay to Contractor the amount so determined.

14.2.4 City Engineer will determine, on the basis of information available to City Engineer, the amount due, if any, to Contractor for the termination as follows:

14.2.4.1 Contract Price for all work performed in accordance with the Contract up to the date of termination determined in the manner prescribed for monthly payments in Article 9, except no retainage is withheld by the City either for payment determined by percentage of completion or for materials and equipment delivered to the site, in storage or in transit.

14.2.4.2 Reasonable termination expenses, including costs for settling and paying Subcontractor and Supplier claims arising out of termination of the Work, reasonable cost of preservation and protection of the City's property after termination, if required, and the cost of Claim preparation. Termination expenses do not include field or central office overhead, salaries of employees of Contractor, or litigation costs, including attorneys' fees.

No amount is allowed for anticipated profit or central office overhead on uncompleted work, or any cost or lost profit for other business of Contractor alleged to be damaged by the termination.

14.2.5 Contractor shall promptly remove from the site any construction equipment, tools, and temporary facilities, except the temporary facilities which City Engineer may wish to purchase and retain.

14.2.6 Contractor shall cooperate with City Engineer during the transition period.

14.2.7 The City will take possession of the Work and materials delivered to the site, in storage, or in transit, as of date or dates specified in the Notice of Termination, and is responsible for maintenance, utilities, security, and insurance, as stated in Notice of Termination.

14.3 *SUSPENSION BY THE CITY FOR CONVENIENCE*

14.3.1 City Engineer may, without cause, after giving Contractor and Surety 24-hour prior written notice, order Contractor to suspend, delay, or interrupt the Work in whole or in part for a period of time as City Engineer may determine.

14.3.2 An adjustment will be made in Contract Time equivalent to the time of suspension.

14.3.3 Adjustment will be made to Contract Price for increases in the cost of performance of the Work, including profit on increased cost of performance caused by suspension, delay, or interruption of the Work in accordance with Paragraph 7.3. No adjustment will be made to the extent that:

14.3.3.1 performance was, or would have been, suspended, delayed, or interrupted by another cause for which Contractor is responsible; or

14.3.3.2 adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

14.4 *TERMINATION BY CONTRACTOR*

14.4.1 Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 days through no act or fault of Contractor, directly related to one of these events:

14.4.1.1 issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction;

14.4.1.2 act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency which makes material unavailable; or

14.4.1.3 if repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions by the City as described in Paragraph 14.3 constitute, in the aggregate, more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less;

No termination will be effective for the above reasons if Contractor delivers written notice to City Engineer describing the reason for termination, giving the proposed termination date, and granting the City a reasonable opportunity to respond and cure any City default before termination is effective.

14.4.2 If the Contract is terminated pursuant to this Paragraph 14.4, Contractor shall comply with the requirements of Paragraphs 14.2.2 through 14.2.7.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00800

SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS

The following Paragraphs amend and supplement the August 15, 2015 edition of General Conditions. Unaltered portions of General Conditions remain in effect.

ARTICLE 1 - GENERAL PROVISIONS:

1.1 *DEFINITIONS: Insert the following Paragraphs 1.1.23, and 1.1.25 reorder the remaining definitions accordingly. Please insert the amended definition of "Specifications".*

1.1.23 *Good Faith Efforts.* Steps taken to achieve an MBE, WBE, SBE, or PDBE goal or other requirements which, by their scope, intensity, and usefulness, demonstrate the bidder's responsiveness to fulfill the business opportunity objective, as well as the Contractor's responsibility to put forth measures to meet or exceed the MBE, WBE, SBE, or PDBE goal (Contract Goal). These steps apply from before a contract's award, through its duration, and after its conclusion, in the event the Contractor has been unsuccessful in meeting the Contract Goal. These efforts are required whether a Goal Oriented Contract or a Regulated Contract, as defined in the Office of Business Opportunity's Policy & Procedures Manual, available at http://www.houstontx.gov/obo.

1.1.25 *Incidental Work.* Work described as incidental shall be work defined in Document 01110 - Summary of Work, that do not have a direct pay item listed in the Document 00410B - Bid Form Part B, or less than 1% of the Contract Price and not capable of being measured. If Work is identified as Incidental Work and also covered by Bid Form Part B quantities, then the unit price item quantities in the Bid Form Part B shall govern.

1.1.45 *Specifications.* Divisions 01 through 16 of the documents that are incorporated into the Agreement, consisting of written General Requirements and requirements for Products, standards, and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services. All specifications are amended to include, under the Measurement and Payment Section, the following sentence: "Work described as Incidental Work shall not be paid as a separate unit price item."

ARTICLE 3 - THE CONTRACTOR

3.5 *LABOR: Insert the following Paragraphs, 3.5.3.1.1, 3.5.3.1.2 and3.5.3.1.3.*

3.5.3.1.1 If the Original Contract Price is greater than One Million Dollars, Contractor shall make Good Faith Efforts to comply with the City ordinances regarding Minority Business Enterprises (MBE), Women Business Enterprises (WBE), Persons with Disabilities Business

Enterprises (PDBE) and Small Business Enterprise (SBE) participation goals which are as follows:

.1 the MBE goal is 13% percent,

.2 the WBE goal is 7% percent, and

.3 the PDBE goal is 0% percent.

.4 The bidder may substitute SBE participation of no more than four percent of the MBE goal, the WBE goal, or portions of the MBE Goal and WBE Goal.

3.5.3.1.2 The MBE, WBE, PDBE, and SBE goals are specific to this Agreement. The Contractor shall make reasonable efforts to achieve these goals.

3.5.3.1.3 Failure by Contractor to comply with the goals for MBE, WBE, SBE, or PDBE is a material breach of the Agreement, which may result in termination of the Agreement, or such other remedy permitted as the City deems appropriate.

ARTICLE 8 - TIME

8.1 *PROGRESS AND COMPLETION: Add the following Paragraph 8.1.6.1.*

8.1.6.1 Contractor shall credit the City by Change Order for inspection services for overtime work or work performed on Sundays or Legal Holidays. The amount Contractor credits the City will be [$50.00 per hour per inspector for inspection services.

ARTICLE 9 - PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

9.12 *LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: Insert the following Paragraph 9.12.1.1.*

9.12.1.1 The amount of liquidated damages payable by Contractor or Surety for each and every day of delay beyond Contract Time, are $1,200.00 per day.

ARTICLE 11 - INSURANCE AND BONDS

11.2 INSURANCE TO BE PROVIDED BY CONTRACTOR: Insert the following Paragraph 11.2.1.2.

11.2.1.2 Contractor shall purchase for the duration of the Contract the insurance set out in Table 2 in addition to the minimum insurance coverage set out in section 11.2.1.

TABLE 2
ADDITIONAL REQUIRED COVERAGE
DEFENSE COSTS EXCLUDED FROM FACE AMOUNT OF POLICY.

(Coverage)	(Limit of Liability)
Property and Casualty Coverage:	100% of Contract Price,

"All Causes of Loss" Builder's Risk Form for directing physical change to building or plant construction on the Work site and/or all land improvements including all work. (Including but not limited to earthquake, flood, boiler, and machinery including testing, damage to existing or adjoining property, time element coverage, collapse, soft costs (management, architecture, financial costs, pre-opening costs, etc.), transit coverage, off-site storage).	including change orders

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00805

EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS
(City of Houston Information Requirements
for the Successful Bidder on All Construction Contracts)

DOCUMENTS THAT MUST BE SIGNED AND RETURNED TO THE CITY OF HOUSTON PRIOR TO FINAL EXECUTION OF CONTRACT

Certification by Bidder Regarding Equal Employment Opportunity EEO-3

Total Work Force Composition of the Company,..... EEO-6
or in lieu thereof, a copy of the latest Equal Employment Opportunity Commission's EEO-1 form (This information is required only if the Contractor has a work force of 50 or more people and the Contract is $50,000 or more.)

Company's Equal Employment Opportunity Compliance Program EEO-7

INFORMATION THAT MUST BE SUPPLIED DURING THE COURSE OF THE WORK

Certification By Proposed Subcontractor Regarding
Equal Employment Opportunity EEO-26

Certification by Proposed Material Suppliers, Lessors,and
Professional Service Providers Regarding Equal Employment Opportunity..... EEO-29

PLEASE COMPLETE PAGES EEO-3 THROUGH EEO-7 AND MAIL TO:

City of Houston
Mayor's Office of Business Opportunity
Contract Compliance Section
611 Walker, 7th Floor
Houston, Texas 77002
Attention: Director

The remainder of the reports can be mailed at the appropriate time.

EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

The following are Equal Employment Opportunity requirements to be met and documents to be submitted to:

Mayor's Office of Business Opportunity
Contract Compliance Section
611 Walker, 7th Floor
Houston, Texas 77002

Under the conditions and terms of all City construction contracts, the prime contractor is responsible for all Equal Employment Opportunity compliance, including subcontractor compliance.

EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY FORMS (EEO Forms)

These forms are submitted by the prime contractors at the beginning of the Project and as requested:

- EEO Forms 3, 6, and 7, by prime contractors

This form is submitted by all subcontractors before they begin work on the project:

- EEO Form 26 by subcontractors

This form is submitted by all suppliers, lessors, or professional services providers before they begin work on the project:

- EEO Form 29

POSTING

The following poster should be clearly displayed on each job site, or in case of annual service agreements, in the Contractor's office:

Equal Employment Opportunity is the Law Poster

JOB SITE VISITS

Site visits will be made by a Contract Compliance Officer, who will make their presence known to the Project Manager, Supervisor, or Foreman, and will conduct interviews with employees on site.

PAYMENT AND EVALUATION

Upon completion of the Project, as part of the contract-awarding department's total clearance process, the Office of Business Opportunity's Contract Compliance Section must certify to the department that all EEO compliance requirements have been met.

CERTIFICATION BY BIDDER REGARDING
EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY

GENERAL

In accordance with Executive Order 11246 (30 F.R. 12319-25), the implementing rules and regulations thereof, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, a certification regarding Equal Opportunity is required of bidders or prospective contractors and their proposed subcontractors prior to the award of contracts or subcontracts.

CERTIFICATION OF BIDDER

Bidder's Name:_____

Address:_____

Telephone Number:_____ Fax :_____

Name of the Company's EEO Officer: _____

E-mail Address:_____

Web Page/URL Address:_____

IRS Employer Identification Number:_____

Work to be performed:_____

Project No: _____

1. Participation in a previous contract or subcontract.

   a. Bidder has participated in a previous contract or subcontract subject to the Equal Opportunity Clause. ☐ YES ☐NO

   b. Compliance reports were required to be filed in connection with such contract or subcontract. ☐YES ☐NO

   c. Bidder has filed all compliance reports required by Executive Orders 10925, 11114, 11246, or by regulations of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission issued pursuant to Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964. ☐ YES ☐NO

   d. If answer of Item c. is "No", please explain in detail on reverse side of this certification.

2. Dollar amount of bid:$ _____

3. Anticipated performance period in days: _____

4. Expected total number of employees to perform the proposed construction: _____

5. Nonsegregated facilities.

   a. Notice to prospective federally-assisted construction contractors

      (1) A Certification of Nonsegregated Facilities, as required by the May 9, 1967, Order (32 F.R. 7439, May 19, 1967) on Elimination of Segregated Facilities, by the Secretary of Labor, must be submitted to the recipient prior to the award of a federally-assisted construction contract exceeding $10,000 which is not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause.

      (2) Contractors receiving federally-assisted construction contract awards exceeding $10,000 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause will be required to provide the forwarding of the following notice to prospective subcontractors for supplies and construction contracts where the subcontracts exceed $10,000 and are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause.

      The federally-assisted construction Contractor certifies that he/she does not maintain or provide any segregated facilities at any of his/her establishments, and does not permit employees to perform their services at any location, under his/her control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The federally-assisted construction Contractor certifies further that he/she will not maintain or provide segregated facilities at any of his/her establishments, and will not permit employees to perform their services at any location, under his/her control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The federally-assisted construction Contractor agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause in this Contract. As used in this certification, the term "segregated facilities" means any waiting rooms, work areas, restrooms and washrooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated by explicit directive or are in fact segregated on the basis of race, creed, color, or national origin because of habit, local custom, or otherwise. The federally-assisted construction Contractor agrees that (except where he/she has obtained identical certifications from proposed Subcontractors for specific time periods) he/she will obtain identical certifications in duplicate from proposed Subcontractors prior to the award of subcontracts exceeding $10,000 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause, and that he/she will retain the duplicate of such certifications in his/her files. The Subcontractor will include the original in his/her bid package.

6. Race or ethnic group designation of bidder. Enter race or ethnic group in appropriate box:

☐ White ☐ Black ☐ Hispanic

☐ Pacific Islander, Asian ☐ American Indian, Aleut.

7. Gender of Owner ☐ Male ☐ Female

REMARKS: _____

Certification - The information above is true and complete to the best of my knowledge and belief.

_____
Company Officer (Please Type)

_____ _____
Signature Date

NOTE: The penalty for making false statements in offers is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.

Total Work Force Composition of the Company

City of Houston, Affirmative Action Requirements for All Construction Contracts

	White		Black		Hispanic		Pacific Islander/ Asian		Alaska Native/ Amer Ind.		Total Persons		Total Minority		Total Female	
	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F
Officials and Administrators																
Professionals																
Paraprofessionals																
Technicians																
Protective Service Workers																
Sales Workers																
Office and Clerical																
Skilled Craft Workers																
Operatives (Semi-skilled)																
Laborers (Unskilled)																
Service / Maintenance Workers																
Others																
Total																

This report includes all of the company's permanent work force. For description of job categories, see Pages CC-27 through CC-29.

Check One: [ ] **Contractor** [ ] **Subcontractor**

COMPANY: _____ **DATE:** _____

EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY COMPLIANCE PROGRAM FOR

_____

Name of Company

The Company's Office of Business Opportunity Program shall consist of documented good faith efforts to comply with the goals, timetables, and objectives set forth in the following Affirmative Action steps:

A. City of Houston's Specific Equal Employment Opportunity Policy and Clause as contained in City Council Ordinance No. 78-1538, passed August 9, 1978.

B. Notice of Requirement for Office of Business Opportunity to ensure Equal Employment Opportunity (Executive Order 11246).

C. Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications (Executive Order 11246).

Project: _____

_____
Company Officer (Please Type)

_____ _____
Signature Date

NOTE: The penalty for making false statements in offers is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.

SPECIAL PROVISIONS
SPECIFIC EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY POLICY

1. GENERAL

   a. Equal employment opportunity requirements not to discriminate and to take affirmative action to assure equal employment opportunity are required by Executive Order 11246, as amended. The requirements set forth in these Special Provisions shall constitute the specific affirmative action requirements for Project activities under this Contract and shall supplement the notice of requirement for affirmative action to ensure equal employment opportunity and standard federal equal employment opportunity construction contract specifications.
   b. The Contractor shall work with the City and the Federal Government in carrying out equal employment opportunity obligations and in their review of his/her activities under the Contract.
   c. The prime Contractor and all Subcontractors holding subcontracts of $10,000 or more shall comply with the following minimum specific requirement activities of equal employment opportunity. The Contractor shall include these requirements in every subcontract of $10,000 or more with such modification of language as is necessary to make them binding on the Subcontractor.

2. EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY POLICY

   The Contractor shall accept as his/her operating policy the following statement which is designed to further the provision of equal employment opportunity to all persons without regard to their race, age, color, religion, sex, or national origin, and to promote the full realization of equal employment opportunity through a positive continuing program:

   It is the policy of this Company to assure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, religion, color, sex, or national origin. Such action shall include: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship.

3. EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY OFFICER

   The Contractor shall designate and make known to the City contracting officers an equal employment opportunity officer (hereinafter referred to as the EEO Officer) who must be capable of effectively administering and promoting an active Contractor program of equal employment opportunity and who must be assigned adequate authority and responsibilities to do so.

4. DISSEMINATION OF POLICY

a. All members of the Contractor's staff who are authorized to hire, supervise, promote, and discharge employees, or who recommend such action, or who are substantially involved in such action, will be made fully cognizant of, and will implement the Contractor's equal employment opportunity policy and contractual responsibilities to provide equal employment opportunity in each grade and classification of employment. To ensure that the above agreement will be met, the following actions shall be taken as a minimum:

(1) Periodic meetings of supervisory and personnel office employees shall be conducted before the start of work and then not less often than once every six months, at which time the Contractor's equal employment opportunity policy and its implementation will be reviewed and explained. The meetings shall be conducted by the EEO Officer or other knowledgeable company official.

(2) All new supervisory or personnel office employees will be given a thorough indoctrination by the EEO Officer, or other knowledgeable company official, covering all major aspects of the Contractor's equal employment opportunity obligations, within 30 days following their reporting for duty with the Contractor.

(3) The EEO Officer or appropriate company official shall instruct all employees engaged in the direct recruitment of employees for the Project relative to the methods followed by the Contractor in locating and hiring minorities and females.

b. In order to make the Contractor's equal employment opportunity policy known to all employees, prospective employees, and potential sources of employees, i.e., schools, employment agencies, labor unions (where appropriate), college placement officers, etc., the Contractor shall take the following actions:

(1) Notices and posters setting forth the Contractor's equal employment opportunity policy shall be placed in areas readily accessible to employees, applicants for employment, and potential employees.

(2) The Contractor's equal employment opportunity policy and the procedures to implement such policy shall be brought to the attention of employees by means of meetings, employee handbooks, or other appropriate means.

5. RECRUITMENT

a. When advertising for employees, the Contractor shall include in all advertisements for employees the notation "An Equal Opportunity Employer". All such advertisements will be published in newspapers, or

other publications, having a large circulation among minority groups in the area from which the Project work force would normally be derived.

b. The Contractor shall, unless precluded by a valid bargaining agreement, conduct systematic and direct recruitment through public and private employee-referral sources likely to yield qualified minority-group applicants, including, but not limited to, State employment agencies, schools, colleges, minority-group organizations, and female recruitment agencies. To meet this requirement, the Contractor shall, through his/her EEO Officer, identify sources of potential minority and female employees, and establish with such identified sources procedures whereby such group applicants may be referred to the Contractor for employment consideration.

In the event the Contractor has a valid bargaining agreement providing for exclusive hiring hall referrals, he/she is expected to observe the provisions of that agreement to the extent that the system permits the Contractor's compliance with equal employment opportunity Contract provisions. (The U. S. Department of Labor has held that where implementation of such agreements has the effect of discriminating against minorities or women, or obligates the Contractor to do the same, such implementation violates Executive Order 11246 as amended).

c. The Contractor shall encourage his/her present employees to refer female or minority-group applicants for employment by posting appropriate notices or bulletins in areas accessible to all such employees. In addition, information and procedures with regard to referring such applicants will be discussed with employees.

6. PERSONNEL ACTIONS

a. Wage, working conditions, and employee benefits shall be established and administered, and personnel actions of every type, including hiring, upgrading, promotion, transfer, demotion, layoff and termination, shall be taken without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, or age. The following procedures shall be followed:

(1) The Contractor shall conduct periodic inspections of Project sites to ensure that working conditions and employee facilities do not indicate discriminatory treatment of Project-site personnel.

(2) The Contractor shall periodically evaluate the spread of wages paid within each classification to determine any evidence of discriminatory wage practices.

(3) The Contractor shall periodically review selected personnel actions in depth to determine whether there is evidence of discrimination. Where evidence is found, the Contractor shall promptly take corrective action. If the review indicates that the discrimination may extend beyond the actions reviewed, such corrective action shall include all affected persons.

(4) The Contractor shall promptly investigate all complaints of alleged discrimination made in connection with his/her obligations under this Contract, shall attempt to resolve such complaints, and shall take appropriate corrective action. If the investigation indicates that the discrimination may affect persons other than the complainant, such corrective action shall include such other persons. Upon completion of each investigation, the Contractor shall inform every complainant of all avenues of appeal.

7. TRAINING AND PROMOTION

a. The Contractor shall assist in locating, qualifying, and increasing the skills of minority-group and women employees and applicants for employment.

b. Consistent with the Contractor's work force requirements and as permissible under Federal and State regulations, the Contractor shall make full use of training programs, i.e., apprenticeship and on-the-job training programs, for the geographical area of Contract performance.

c. The Contractor shall advise employees and applicants for employment of available training programs and entrance requirements for each.

d. The Contractor shall periodically review the training and promotion potential of minority-group and women employees and shall encourage eligible employees to apply for such training and promotion.

8. UNIONS

If the Contractor relies in whole or in part upon unions as a source of employees, he/she shall use his/her best efforts to obtain the cooperation of such unions to increase minority groups and women within the unions, and to effect referrals by such unions of minority and female employees. Actions by the Contractor, either directly or through a contractor's association acting as his/her agent, will include the procedures set forth below:

a. The Contractor shall use best efforts to develop, in cooperation with the unions, joint training programs aimed toward qualifying more minority-group members and women for membership in the unions and increasing the skills of minority-group employees and women so that they may qualify for higher-paying employment.

b. The Contractor shall use best efforts to incorporate an equal employment opportunity clause into all union agreements to the end that such unions will be contractually bound to refer applicants without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, national origin, or age.

c. The Contractor is to obtain information as to the referral practices and policies of the labor union, except that to the extent such information is within the exclusive possession of the labor union, and such labor union refuses to furnish such information to the Contractor, the Contractor shall so certify to the City and shall set forth what efforts have been made to obtain such information.

d. In the event the union is unable to provide the Contractor with a reasonable flow of minority and women referrals within the time limit set forth in the collective bargaining agreement, the Contractor shall, through independent recruitment efforts, fill the employment vacancies without regard to race, color, religion, age, sex, or national origin, making full efforts to obtain qualified and/or qualifiable minority group persons and women. (The U. S. Department of Labor has held that it shall be no excuse that the union with which the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement providing for exclusive referral failed to refer minority employees.) In the event the union referral practice prevents the Contractor from meeting the obligations pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and these special provisions, such Contractor shall immediately notify the City.

9. SUBCONTRACTING

a. The Contractor shall use his/her best efforts to solicit bids from and to utilize minority-group and female subcontractors or subcontractors with meaningful minority-group and/or female representation among their employees.

b. The Contractor shall use his/her best efforts to assure Subcontractors' compliance with their equal employment opportunity obligations.

10. RECORDS AND REPORTS

a. The Contractor shall keep such records as are necessary to determine compliance with the Contractor's equal employment opportunity obligations. The records kept by the Contractor will be designed to indicate:

(1) The number of minority and non-minority group members and women employed in each work classification on the Project.

(2) The progress and efforts being made in cooperation with unions to increase employment opportunities for minorities and women (applicable only to contractors who rely in whole or in part on unions as a source of their work force).

(3) The progress and efforts being made in locating, hiring, training, qualifying, and upgrading minority and female employees.

(4) The progress and efforts being made in securing the services of female and minority subcontractors.

b. All records, including payrolls, must be retained for a period of three years following completion of the Contract work and shall be available at reasonable times and places for inspection by authorized representatives of the City and/or the appropriate federal agency.

CITY OF HOUSTON, TEXAS

EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY CLAUSE

Pursuant to City Council Ordinance No. 78-1538, passed August 9, 1978, all contracts entered into by the City of Houston involving the expenditure of $10,000 or more, shall incorporate the following Equal Employment Opportunity Clause:

1. The Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, color, sex, national origin, or age. The Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee shall take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, religion, color, sex, national origin, or age. Such action will include, but not be limited to, the following: employment; upgrading; demotion or transfer; recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee agrees to post in conspicuous places available to employees, and applicants for employment, notices to be provided by the City setting forth the provisions of this Equal Employment Opportunity Clause.

2. The Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee states that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, religion, color, sex, national origin, or age.

3. The Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee shall send to each labor union or representatives of workers with which it has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, a notice to be provided by the agency contracting officer advising the said labor union or workers' representative of the Contractor's and Subcontractor's commitments under Section 202 of Executive Order No. 11246, and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment.

4. The Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee will comply with all provisions of Executive Order No. 11246 and the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor or other Federal Agency responsible for enforcement of the equal opportunity and affirmative action provisions applicable, and shall likewise furnish all information and reports required by the Mayor and/or Contractor Compliance Officers for purposes of investigation to ascertain and effect compliance with this program.

5. The Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee shall furnish all information and reports required by Executive Order No. 11246, and by the rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, or pursuant thereto, and shall permit access to all books, records, and accounts by the appropriate City and Federal officials for purposes of investigation to ascertain compliance with such rules, regulations, and orders. Compliance reports filed at such times as directed shall contain information as to the employment practice policies, program, and work force statistics of the Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee.

6. In the event of a Contractor's, Subcontractor's, vendor's, Supplier's, or lessee's non-compliance with the non-discrimination clause of this Contract or with any of such rules, regulations, or orders, this Contract may be canceled, terminated, or suspended in whole or in part, and the Contractor, Subcontractor, vendor, Supplier, or lessee may be declared ineligible for further City contracts in accordance with procedures provided in Executive Order No. 11246, and such other sanctions may be imposed and remedies invoked as provided in said Executive Order, or by rule, regulation, or order of the Secretary of Labor, or as may otherwise be provided by law.

7. The Contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs 1 through 8 of this Equal Employment Opportunity Clause in every subcontract or purchase order unless exempted by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor issued pursuant to Section 204 of Executive Order No. 11246 of September 24, 1965 so that such provisions will be binding upon each Subcontractor or vendor. The Contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontractor or purchase order as the contracting agency may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions, including sanctions for noncompliance; provided, however, that in the event the Contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation with a Subcontractor or vendor as a result of such direction by the contracting agency, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

8. The Contractor shall file and shall cause each of his Subcontractors, if any, to file compliance reports with the City in the form and to the extent as may be prescribed by the Mayor's Office of Business Opportunity. Compliance reports filed at such times as directed shall contain information as to the practices, policies, programs, employment policies, and employment statistics of the Contractor and each Subcontractor.

NOTICE OF REQUIREMENT FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION
TO ENSURE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY
(EXECUTIVE ORDER 11246)

1. The Offeror's or Bidder's attention is called to the "Equal Opportunity Clause" and the "Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications" set forth herein.

2. The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate work force in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, are as follows:

Timetable	Goals for Minority Participation for Each Trade	Goals for Female Participation for Each Trade
	26.2% - 27.3%	6.9%

These goals are applicable to all the Contractor's construction work (whether or not it is Federal or Federally-assisted) performed in the covered area.

The Contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4 shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action obligations required by the specifications set forth in 41 CFR 60-4.3(a), and its efforts to meet the goals established for the geographical area where the Contract resulting from this solicitation is to be performed. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the Contract, and in each trade, and the Contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the Contract, the Executive Order, and regulations in 41 CFR part 60-4. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

3. The Contractor shall provide written notification to the Director of the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs within 10 working days of award of any construction subcontract in excess of $10,000 at any tier for construction work under the Contract resulting from this solicitation. The notification shall list the name, address, and telephone number of the Subcontractor; employer identification number; estimated dollar amount of the subcontract; estimated starting and completion dates of the subcontract; and the geographical area in which the Contract is to be performed.

4. As used in this Notice, and in the Contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is The Houston, Texas Standard Metropolitan Statistical Area.

STANDARD FEDERAL EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT SPECIFICATIONS
(EXECUTIVE ORDER 11246)

1. As used in these specifications:

   a. "Covered area" means the geographical area described in the solicitation from which this Contract resulted;

   b. "Director" means Director, Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, United States Department of Labor, or any person to whom the Director delegates authority;

   c. "Employer identification number" means the Federal Social Security number used on the Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return, U. S. Treasury Department Form 941.

   d. "Minority" includes:

      (i) Black (all persons having origins in any of the Black African racial groups not of Hispanic origin);

      (ii) Hispanic (all persons of Mexican, Puerto Rican, Cuban, Central or South American, or other Spanish culture or origin regardless of race);

      (iii) Asian and Pacific Islander (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia, the Indian Subcontinent, or the Pacific Islands); and

      (iv) American Indian or Alaskan Native (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of North America and maintaining identifiable tribal affiliations through membership and participation or community identification).

2. Whenever the Contractor, or any Subcontractor at any tier, subcontracts a portion of the work involving any construction trade, it shall physically include in each subcontract in excess of $10,000 the provisions of these specifications and the Notice which contains the applicable goals for minority and female participation and which is set forth in the solicitations from which this Contract resulted.

3. If the Contractor is participating (pursuant to 41 CFR 60-4.5) in a Hometown Plan approved by the U. S. Department of Labor in the covered area either individually or through an association, its affirmative action obligations on all work in the Plan area (including goals and timetables) shall be in accordance with that Plan for

those trades which have unions participating in the Plan. Contractors must be able to demonstrate their participation in and compliance with the provisions of any such Hometown Plan. Each Contractor or Subcontractor participating in an approved Plan is individually required to comply with its obligations under the EEO clause, and to make a good faith effort to achieve each goal under the Plan in each trade in which it has employees. The overall good faith performance by other Contractors or Subcontractors toward a goal in an approved Plan does not excuse any covered Contractor's or Subcontractor's failure to take good efforts to achieve the Plan goals and timetables.

4. The Contractor shall implement the specific affirmative action standards provided in Paragraphs 7a through p of these specifications. The goals set forth in the solicitation from which this Contract resulted are expressed as percentages of the total hours of employment and training of minority and female utilization the Contractor should reasonably be able to achieve in each construction trade in which it has employees in the covered area. The Contractor is expected to make substantially uniform progress toward its goals in each craft during the period specified.

5. Neither the provisions of any collective bargaining agreement, nor the failure by a union with whom the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement to refer either minorities or women, shall excuse the Contractor's obligations under these specifications, Executive Order 11246, or the regulations promulgated pursuant thereto.

6. In order for the non-working training hours of apprentices and trainees to be counted in meeting the goals, such apprentices and trainees must be employed by the Contractor during the training period, and the Contractor must have made a commitment to employ the apprentices and trainees at the completion of their training, subject to the availability of employment opportunities. Trainees must be trained pursuant to training programs approved by the U. S. Department of Labor.

7. The Contractor shall take specific affirmative actions to ensure equal employment opportunity. The evaluation of the Contractor's compliance with these specifications shall be based upon its effort to achieve maximum results from its actions. The Contractor shall document these efforts fully, and shall implement affirmative action steps at least as extensive as the following:

   a. Ensure and maintain a working environment free of harassment, intimidation, and coercion at all sites, and in all facilities at which Contractor's employees are assigned to work. The Contractor, where possible, shall assign two or more women to each construction project. The Contractor shall specifically ensure that all foremen, superintendents, and other on-site supervisory personnel are aware of and carry out the Contractor's obligation to maintain such a working environment, with specific attention to minority or female individuals working at such sites or in such facilities.

b. Establish and maintain a current list of minority and female recruitment sources; provide written notification to minority and female recruitment sources and to community organizations when the Contractor or its unions have employment opportunities available, and maintain a record of the organizations' responses.

c. Maintain a current file of the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of each minority and female off-the-street applicant and minority or female referral from a union, a recruitment source, or community organization and of what action was taken with respect to each such individual. If such individual was sent to the union hiring hall for referral and was not referred back to the Contractor by the union or, if referred, not employed by the Contractor, this shall be documented in the file with the reason therefor, along with whatever additional actions the Contractor may have taken.

d. Provide immediate written notification to the Director when the union or unions with which the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement has not referred to the Contractor a minority person or woman sent by the Contractor, or when the Contractor has other information that the union referral process has impeded the Contractor's efforts to meet its obligations.

e. Develop on-the-job training opportunities and/or participate in training programs for the area which expressly include minorities and women, including upgrading programs and apprenticeship and trainee programs relevant to the Contractor's employment needs, especially those programs funded or approved by the Department of Labor. The Contractor shall provide notice of these programs to the sources compiled under 7b above.

f. Disseminate the Contractor's EEO policy by providing notice of the policy to unions and training programs and requesting their cooperation in assisting the Contractor in meeting its EEO obligations by including it in any policy manual and collective bargaining agreement; by publicizing it in the company newspaper, annual report, etc.; by specific review of the policy with all management personnel and with all minority and female employees at least once a year; and by posting the company EEO policy on bulletin boards accessible to all employees at each location where construction work is performed.

g. Review, at least annually, the company's EEO policy and affirmative action obligations under these specifications with all employees having any responsibility for hiring, assignment, layoff, termination, or other employment decisions, including specific review of these items with on-site supervisory personnel such as superintendents, general foremen, etc., prior to the initiation of construction work at any job site. A written record shall be made and maintained identifying the time and place of

these meetings, persons attending, subject matter discussed, and disposition of the subject matter.

h. Disseminate the Contractor's EEO policy externally by including it in any advertising in the news media, specifically including minority and female news media, and providing written notification to and discussing the Contractor's EEO policy with other contractors and subcontractors with whom the Contractor does or anticipates doing business.

i. Direct its recruitment efforts, both oral and written, to minority, female and community organizations, to schools with minority and female students, and to minority and female recruitment and training organizations serving the Contractor's recruitment area and employment needs. Not later than one month prior to the date for the acceptance of applications for apprenticeship or other training by any recruitment source, the Contractor shall send written notification to organizations such as the above, describing the openings, screening procedures, and tests to be used in the selection process.

j. Encourage present minority and female employees to recruit other minority persons and women and, where reasonable, provide after school, summer, and vacation employment to minority and female youth both on the site and in other areas of a Contractor's work force.

k. Validate all tests and other selection requirements where there is an obligation to do so under 41 CFR Part 60-3.

l. Conduct, at least annually, an inventory and evaluation at least of all minority and female personnel for promotional opportunities and encourage these employees to seek or to prepare, through appropriate training, etc., for such opportunities.

m. Ensure that seniority practices, job classifications, work assignments, and other personnel practices do not have a discriminatory effect by continually monitoring all personnel and employment-related activities to ensure that the EEO policy and the Contractor's obligations under these specifications are being carried out.

n. Ensure that all facilities and company activities are nonsegregated except that separate or single-user toilet and necessary changing facilities shall be provided to assure privacy between the sexes.

o. Document and maintain a record of all solicitations of offers for subcontracts from minority and female construction contractors and suppliers, including circulation of solicitations to minority and female contractor associations and other business associations.

p. Conduct a review, at least annually, of all supervisors' adherence to and performance under the Contractor's EEO policies and affirmative action obligations.

8. Contractors are encouraged to participate in voluntary associations which assist in fulfilling one or more of their affirmative action obligations (7a through p). The efforts of a contractor association, joint contractor union, contractor-community, or other similar group of which the Contractor is a member and participant, may be asserted as fulfilling any one or more of its obligations under 7a through p of these Specifications provided that the Contractor actively participates in the group, makes every effort to assure that the group has a positive impact on the employment of minorities and women in the industry, ensures that the concrete benefits of the program are reflected in the Contractor's minority and female work force participation, makes a good faith effort to meet its individual goals and timetables, and can provide access to documentation which demonstrates the effectiveness of actions taken on behalf of the Contractor. The obligation to comply, however, is the Contractor's and failure of such a group to fulfill an obligation shall not be a defense for the Contractor's noncompliance.

9. A single goal for minorities and a separate single goal for women have been established. The Contractor, however, is required to provide equal employment opportunity and to take affirmative action for all minority groups, both male and female, and all women, both minority and non-minority. Consequently, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a particular group is employed in a substantially disparate manner (for example, even though the Contractor has achieved its goals for women generally, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a specific minority group of women is under utilized).

10. The Contractor shall not use the goals and timetables or affirmative action standards to discriminate against any person because of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin.

11. The Contractor shall not enter into any subcontract with any person or firm debarred from Government contracts pursuant to Executive Order 11246.

12. The Contractor shall carry out such sanctions and penalties for violation of these specifications and of the Equal Opportunity Clause, including suspension, termination, and cancellation of existing subcontracts as may be imposed or ordered pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and its implementing regulations, by the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs. Any Contractor who fails to carry out such sanctions and penalties shall be in violation of these specifications and Executive Order 11246, as amended.

13. The Contractor, in fulfilling its obligations under these specifications, shall implement specific affirmative action steps, at least as extensive as those standards prescribed in Paragraph 7 of these specifications, so as to achieve maximum results from its efforts to ensure equal employment opportunity. If the

Contractor fails to comply with the requirements of the Executive Order, the implementing regulations, or these specifications, the Director shall proceed in accordance with 41 CFR 60-4.B.

14. The Contractor shall designate a responsible official to monitor all employment-related activity to ensure that the company EEO policy is being carried out, to submit reports relating to the provisions hereof as may be required by the Government, and to keep records. Records shall at least include for each employee the name, address, telephone number, construction trade, union affiliation, if any, employee identification number when assigned, social security number, race, sex, status (e.g., mechanic, apprentice, trainee, helper, or laborer), dates of changes in status, hours worked per week in the indicated trade, rate of pay, and locations at which the work was performed. Records shall be maintained in an easily-understandable and retrievable form; however to the degree that existing records satisfy this requirement, contractors shall not be required to maintain separate records.

15. Nothing herein provided shall be construed as a limitation upon the application of other laws which establish different standards of compliance or upon the application of requirements for the hiring of local or other area residents (e.g., those under the Public Works Employment Act of 1977 and the Community Development Block Grant Program).

DESCRIPTION OF JOB CATEGORIES

Officials, Managers, and Administrators

Occupations requiring administrative personnel who set board policies, exercise overall responsibility for the execution of these policies, or provide specialized consultation on a regional, district, area basis, or direct individual departments or special phases of a firm's operations.

Includes: Officials, executives, middle management, plant managers, department managers, superintendents, salaried foremen who are members of management, purchasing agents, buyers, bureau chiefs, directors, deputy directors, wardens, examiners, sheriffs, police and fire chiefs, and kindred workers.

Professionals

Occupations which require specialized and theoretical knowledge which is usually acquired through college or experience of such kind and amount as to provide a comparable background.

Includes: Accountants, auditors, airplane pilots and navigators, architects, artists, chemists, designers, dieticians, editors, engineers, lawyers, librarians, mathematicians, natural scientists, registered professional nurses, personnel and labor relations workers, physical scientists, teachers, social workers, doctors, psychologists, economists, systems analysts, employment and vocational rehabilitation counselors, instructors, police and fire captains and lieutenants, and kindred workers.

Paraprofessionals

Occupations in which workers perform some of the duties of a professional or technician in a supportive role, which usually requires less formal training and/or experience normally required for professional or technical status. Such positions may fall within an identified pattern of a "New Careers" concept.

Includes: Library assistants, medical aides, child support workers, police auxiliary, welfare service aides, recreation assistants, homemakers aides, home health aides, and kindred workers.

Technicians

Occupations requiring a combination of basic scientific knowledge and manual skill which can be obtained through about two (2) years of post high school education, such as is offered in many technical institutes and junior colleges, or through equivalent on-the-job training.

Includes: Computer programmers and operators, draftsmen, engineering aides, junior engineers, mathematical aides, licensed practical or vocational nurses, photographers, radio operators, scientific assistants, surveyors, technical illustrators, technicians (medical, dental, electronics, physical sciences), police and fire sergeants, and kindred workers.

Protective Service Workers

Occupations in which workers are entrusted with public safety, security, and protection from destructive forces.

Includes: Police patrol officers, fire fighters, guards, deputy sheriffs, bailiffs, correctional officers, detectives, marshals, harbor patrol officers, and kindred workers.

Sales Workers

Occupations engaging wholly or primarily in direct selling.

Includes: Advertising agents and salespersons, insurance agents and brokers, real estate agents and brokers, stock and bond salespersons, demonstrators, salespersons and sales clerks, grocery clerks, cashiers, and kindred workers.

Office and Clerical

Occupations in which workers are responsible for internal and external communications, recording and retrieval of data and/or information and other paper work required in an office predominantly non-manual, though some manual work not directly involved with altering or transporting the products is included.

Includes: Bookkeepers, cashiers, collectors (bills and accounts), messengers and office helpers, office machine operators, shipping and receiving clerks, stenographers, typists and secretaries, telegraph and telephone operators, court transcribers, hearing reporters, statistical clerks, dispatchers, license distributors, payroll clerks, and kindred workers.

Skilled Craft Workers

Occupations in which workers perform jobs which require special manual skill through on-the-job training and experience, or through apprenticeship or other formal training programs. These workers exercise considerable independent judgment and usually receive an extensive period of training.

Includes: The building trades, hourly paid foremen and leadmen who are not members of management, mechanics and repairmen, skilled machining occupations, compositors and typesetters, electricians, engravers, job setters

(metal), motion picture projectionists, pattern and model makers, stationary engineers, tailors, heavy equipment operators, carpenters, and kindred workers.

Operatives (semi-skilled)

Workers who operate machine or processing equipment or perform other factory-type duties of intermediate skill level which can be mastered in a few weeks and require only limited training.

Includes: Apprentices (auto mechanics), plumbers, bricklayers, carpenters, electricians, mechanics, building trades, metal workers, machinists, printing trades, operatives, attendants (auto service and parking), blasters, chauffeurs, deliverymen, dressmakers and seamstresses (except factory), dryers, furnacemen, heaters (metal), laundry and dry cleaning operatives, milliners, miners, motormen, oilers, greasers, etc. (except auto), painters (except construction and maintenance), photographic process workers, stationary firemen, truck and tractor drivers, weavers (textile), welders and flame cutters, and kindred workers.

Laborers (unskilled)

Workers in manual occupations which generally require no special training. These workers perform elementary duties that may be learned in a few days and require the application of little or no independent judgment.

Includes: Garage workers, car washers and greasers, gardeners (except farm) and groundskeepers, longshoremen and stevedores, lumbermen, craftsmen, and wood choppers, laborers performing lifting, digging, mixing, loading, and pulling operations, and kindred workers.

Service/Maintenance Workers

Occupations in which workers perform duties which result in or contribute to the comfort, convenience, hygiene or safety for the general public or which contribute to the upkeep and care of buildings, facilities or grounds, or public property. Workers in this group may operate machinery.

Includes: Chauffeurs, laundry and dry cleaning operatives, truck drivers, trash collectors, custodial personnel, gardeners and groundskeepers, construction laborers, attendants (hospital and other institutions), professional and personal service, counter and fountain workers, elevator operators, firemen and fire protection, guards, watchmen and doorkeepers, stewards, porters, waiters, and kindred workers.

CERTIFICATION BY PROPOSED SUBCONTRACTOR REGARDING
EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY

_____
Name of Prime Contractor

_____
Address

GENERAL

In accordance with Executive Order 11246 (30 F.R. 12319-25), the implementing rules and regulations thereof, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, a certification regarding Equal Opportunity is required of bidders or prospective contractors and their proposed subcontractors prior to the award of contracts or subcontracts.

SUBCONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATION

Subcontractor's Name: _____

Address: _____

IRS Employer Identification Number: _____

Job Description : _____

1. Participation in a previous contract or subcontract.

   a. Subcontractor has participated in a previous contract or subcontract subject to the Equal Opportunity Clause. ____YES ____NO

   b. Compliance reports were required to be filed in connection with such contract or subcontract. ____YES ____NO

   c. Subcontractor has filed all compliance reports required by Executive Orders 10925, 11114, 11246, or by regulations of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission issued pursuant to Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964. ____YES ____NO

   d. If answer of Item c. is "No", please explain in detail on reverse side of this certification.

2. Dollar amount of proposed subcontract: $ _____

3. Anticipated performance period in days: _____

4. Expected total number of employees to perform the proposed subcontract: _____

5. Nonsegregated facilities.

   a. Notice to prospective federally-assisted construction contractors
      (1) A Certification of Nonsegregated Facilities, as required by the May 9, 1967, order (32 F.R. 7439, May 19, 1967) on Elimination of Segregated Facilities, by the Secretary of Labor, must be submitted to the Contractor prior to the award of a subcontract exceeding $10,000 which is not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause.
      (2) Contractors receiving subcontract awards exceeding $10,000 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause will be required to provide for the forwarding of this notice to prospective subcontractors for supplies and construction contracts where the subcontracts exceed $10,000 and are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity clause.

   b. Certification of non-segregated facilities

      The federally-assisted construction contractor certified that he/she does not maintain or provide any segregated facilities at any of his/her establishments, and does not permit employees to perform their services at any location, under his/her control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The federally-assisted construction Contractor certifies further that he/she will not maintain or provide any segregated facilities at any of his/her establishments, and will not permit employees to perform their services at any location, under his/her control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The federally-assisted construction Contractor agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause in this Contract. As used in this certification, the term "segregated facilities" means any waiting rooms, work areas, restrooms and washrooms, restaurants, and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated by explicit directive or are in fact segregated on the basis of race, creed, color, or national origin because of habit, local custom, or otherwise. The federally-assisted construction Contractor agrees that (except where he/she has obtained identical certifications from proposed Subcontractors for specific time periods) he/she will obtain identical certifications in duplicate from proposed Subcontractors prior to the award of subcontracts exceeding $10,000 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause, and that he/she will retain the duplicate of such certifications in his/her files. The Contractor will include the original in his/her Bid Package.

6. Race or ethnic group designation of bidder. Enter race or ethnic group in appropriate box:

☐ White ☐ Black ☐ Hispanic

☐ Pacific Islander, Asian ☐ American Indian, Aleut.

7. Gender

☐ Male ☐ Female

REMARKS: _

Certification - The information above is true and complete to the best of my knowledge and belief.

_____
Company Officer (Please Type)

_____ _____
Signature Date

NOTE: The penalty for making false statements in offers is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.

Certification by Proposed Material Suppliers, Lessors, and Professional Service Providers Regarding Equal Employment Opportunity

Company Name: _____ $_____
(Supplier, Lessor, Professional Service Provider) (Amount of Contract)

Company Address: _____

Company Telephone Number:_____ Fax:_____

E-mail Address: _____

Web Page/URL Address:_____

Company Tax Identification Number: _____

Project No.: [*WBS/CIP/AIP/File No.*]_____

Project Name: [*Legal Project Name*]_____

In accordance with the City of Houston Ordinance 78-1538, Supplier/Lessor/Professional Service Provider represents to be an equal opportunity employer and agrees to abide by the terms of the Ordinance. This certification is required of all Suppliers/Lessors/Professional Service Providers (herein Supplier) with contracts in the amount of $10,000.00 or more.

[ ] Yes [ ] No Supplier agrees not to discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, color, sex, national origin, or age.

[ ] Yes [ ] No Supplier agrees that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, religion, color, sex, national origin, or age.

[ ] Yes [ ] No Supplier will comply with all provisions of Executive Order No. 11246 and rules, regulations and applicable orders of the Department of Labor or other Federal Agency responsible for enforcement of applicable equal opportunity and affirmative action provisions and will likewise furnish all information and reports required by the Mayor or Contract Compliance Officers for the purpose of investigation to ascertain and effect compliance with the City of Houston's Office of Affirmative Action and Contract Compliance.

[ ] Yes [ ] No The Supplier shall file and cause their sub-tier contractors to file compliance reports with the City in the form and to the extent as may be prescribed by the Mayor or Contract Compliance Officers. Compliance reports filed at such times as directed shall contain information including, but not limited to, the practices, policies, programs, and employment policies.

I hereby certify that the above information is true and correct.

_____ _____
COMPANY OFFICER (Signature) DATE

_____
NAME AND TITLE (Print or type)

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00808

REQUIREMENTS FOR THE CITY OF HOUSTON PROGRAM FOR MINORITY, WOMEN, AND SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISES (MWSBE) AND PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES ENTERPRISES (PDBE)

CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS

I. GENERAL

A. CITY AUTHORITIES

1. The "OBO Director" is the City of Houston's Office of Business Opportunity Director, or his or her designee.

City of Houston
611 Walker Street, 7th Floor
Houston, Texas 77002

2. The "Contracting Department" for this Project is the City of Houston Department specified in Document 00520 – Agreement.

3. The "Project Manager" for this Project is specified in Document 00550, Contract Approval Notification.

II. REOCCURRING REPORTS THAT MUST BE SUBMITTED DURING THE COURSE OF THE CONTRACT:

A. MWSBE MONTHLY REPORT PROCESS

The Contractor shall complete the MWSBE Monthly Utilization Report in the Contract Compliance and Monitoring System (available at https://houston.mwdbe.com/).

B. The Contractor shall comply with further, applicable instructions regarding reporting and compliance as provided in Sections III.E and III.I below.

III. BUSINESS ENTERPRISE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS:

A. PURPOSE

This Document facilitates implementation of City of Houston, Tex. Code of Ordinances Chapter 15, Article V, § 15-81 *et seq.,* relating to MWSBE contract participation, and Code of Ordinances Chapter 15,

Article VI, § 15-90 *et seq.,* relating to PDBE contract participation (collectively, the "Business Enterprise Program or "MWSBE"). City of Houston, Tex. Ordinance 2013-0428, May 8, 2013.

B. POLICY

It is the policy of the City to encourage the full participation of Minority and Women-owned Business Enterprises, Small Business Enterprises, and Persons with Disabilities Business Enterprises in all phases of its procurement activities and to afford them a full and fair opportunity to compete for City contracts at all levels.

C. POLICY ELEMENTS

1. The Contractor agrees to ensure that MWSBE firms have a full and fair opportunity to participate in the performance of City contracts. In this regard the Contractor shall make all reasonable Good Faith Efforts to meet the Contract Goals for this Contract.

2. The Contractor and any Subcontractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, religion, national origin, or sex in the performance of City contracts.

3. Contractor's performance in meeting the Participation Plan Percentage will be monitored during the construction phase of the Contract by the Office of Business Opportunity ("OBO") and the Contracting Department (the "Department").

D. PERCENTAGE GOALS

The MWSBE goals and PDBE goals, if any, for the Work are specified in Document 00800 – Supplementary Conditions Goals.

E. CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

1. Prior to Award:
The Bidder shall submit MWSBE documents in accordance with the requirements of Document 00410 – Bid Form Part A.

a. In accordance with the Code of Ordinances and the OBO Good Faith Efforts Policy (Attachment A), the Department shall approve an Apparent Low Bidder's MWSBE Participation Plan, Document 00470 (the

"Bidder's Plan" or "Plan"), within three business days of the Bid Opening only if the Department representative determines that Bidder's Plan meets the advertised Contract Goal and is administratively complete.

b. If the Department cannot approve the Bidder's Plan, it shall forward the Plan to OBO, who shall review the Bidder's Plan, and if applicable, the Bidder's Document 00471 (Record of Good Faith Efforts) and Document 00472 (Pre-Award Deviation Request) and determine whether the Bidder has made Good Faith Efforts to meet the Contract Goals within 10 business days of the Bid Opening.

c. If OBO determines that the Bidder has failed to provide a valid participation plan or make Good Faith Efforts or if the Bidder fails to provide documents and associated information required by this Document 00808 or reasonably requested in writing by OBO, OBO may declare the Bidder to be non-responsible.

d. If OBO determines that the Bidder has made Good Faith Efforts, OBO may approve the Bidder's Contract Goal Deviation request. Thereafter, the Bidder/Contractor shall be bound by the Plan, as approved or modified by OBO.

e. The Contractor shall:

(1) ensure that all MWSBE firms listed in the Plan are certified by the Office of Business Opportunity prior to bid date. Qualified, non-certified firms may obtain priority consideration for certification if no more than two firms are certified with the same capability as the non-certified firm.

(2) execute written contracts with all certified Subcontractors and Suppliers. All such contracts must be executed and sent to OBO and Contracting Department within 30 days after the date of the Notice to Proceed and must include provisions set forth in Articles 3 and 5 of Document 00700, General Conditions; and

(3) designate an MWSBE liaison officer who will administer the Contractor's MWSBE program and who shall document and maintain records of Good Faith Efforts to subcontract with MWSBE Subcontractors and Suppliers.

2. After Award:

a. The Contractor shall submit MWSBE Monthly Utilization Reports, as requested in Article II above.

b. The Contractor shall complete and submit to OBO a deviation request if the Contractor reasonably believes that it will not achieve the Business Enterprise Program Participation Plan Percentage documented in the Plan. The Contractors shall also submit to OBO, with a copy to the Contracting Department, a Record of Post-Award Good Faith Efforts (Document 00571) for each Certified Firm that the Contractor does not use in accordance with the Approved Plan before the Contractor uses another firm to perform the work.

c. The Contractor shall conform to the Plan unless OBO approves a deviation request. OBO shall approve or reject a request for deviation within five business days of receipt of the request.

d. OBO shall approve a deviation request if:

(1) for a reason beyond the Contractor's control, the Contractor is unable to use the certified MWSBE firm in the Plan to perform the specified work. In such cases, the Contractor shall use and document Good Faith Efforts to find a similarly qualified, certified MWSBE firm to perform such specified work; or

(2) the Contractor reasonably believes that, due to a change of scope, execution of the work in accordance with the directions from the Contracting Department is unlikely to meet the terms of the Plan. In such cases, the Contractor shall use and document Good Faith efforts to achieve a reasonable amount of MWSBE participation on the remaining work on the Contract.

(3) OBO shall not unreasonably withhold approval of a deviation request.

e. After the Date of Substantial Completion, OBO shall evaluate the Contractor's Good Faith Efforts towards meeting the Plan, as it may be amended.

f. If the Contractor fails to conform to the Plan and fails to submit a Post-Award Deviation Request or provide documents and associated information required by the Good Faith Efforts Policy or reasonably requested in writing by OBO, OBO may impose sanctions in accordance with Article VI of this Document 00808.

F. ELIGIBILITY OF MWSBE FIRMS FOR SUBCONTRACTING

1. To ensure that the City's Business Enterprise Program benefits only those firms that are owned and controlled by a minority person(s), a woman (women), a person(s) with a disability, or a small business enterprise, the Office of Business Opportunity will certify the eligibility of MWSBE and PDBE Contractors, Subcontractors, and Suppliers. Contact the OBO Certification Division at 832-393-0600 for information regarding certification.

2. Firms must be certified by OBO at the time of bid in order to be counted towards meeting MWSBE goals. OBO maintains a Certified Minority, Women and Small Business Enterprises and Persons with Disabilities Business Enterprises Directory on the City's website. This Directory also lists federally-designated Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs).

G. DETERMINATION OF MWSBE PARTICIPATION

MWSBE participation shall be counted toward meeting the Contract Goals in response to the following:

1. Contractor may count toward its Contract Goals only those MWSBE Subcontractors/ Suppliers performing a Commercially Usefully Function.

a. **COMMERCIALLY USEFUL FUNCTION** means a discrete task or group of tasks, the responsibility for performance of which shall be discharged by the MWSBE firm by using its own forces or by actively supervising on-site the execution of the tasks by another entity for whose work the MWSBE firm is responsible. In determining whether a certified firm is performing a commercially useful function, factors including but not limited to the following shall be considered: (1) whether the firm has the skill and expertise to perform the work for which it is being utilized and possesses all necessary licenses; (2) whether the firm is in the business of performing, managing, or supervising the work for which it has been certified and is being utilized; and (3) whether it is performing a real and actual service that is a distinct and verifiable element of the work called for in a contract. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, a MWSBE will not be considered to be performing a commercially useful function, if it subcontracts more than 50 percent of a contract being counted toward the

applicable Contract Goals, unless such subcontracting in excess of 50 percent has been expressly approved by OBO either pre-bid or post award.

b. OBO shall approve a Plan Deviation Request if the Contractor demonstrates that the industry standard for the type of work involved is to subcontract over 50 percent of the work.

2. Once a firm is certified as a MWSBE firm, the total dollar value of the subcontract awarded to the MWSBE firm is counted toward the Contract Goals, counting only the work in which the MWSBE has performed a Commercially Useful Function. The use of one MWSBE certified firm to meet multiple goals (e.g. MBE, WBE, SBE goals) on a contract is prohibited, unless expressly approved by OBO. Safety and Participation goals do not count as a single goal concerning MWSBE/DBE requirements.

3. The dollar value of the work performed by a certified Prime Contractor may not be counted toward the MWSBE goal unless the certified Prime Contractor is a part of a joint venture. When the Contractor or Subcontractor is in a joint venture with one or more MWSBE firms, OBO shall determine the percent of participation resulting from such joint venture to be counted toward the Contract Goals. The City may count towards the Contractor's MWSBE contract goal that portion of the total value of the contract amount paid to an MWSBE joint venturer equal to the distinct, clearly defined portion of the contract work performed by the MWSBE.

4. A MWSBE Supplier's participation will be counted towards the MWSBE goals if all of the following criteria are met. The MWSBE Supplier must:
(a) negotiate price;
(b) determine quality and quantity;
(c) order the materials;
(d) show that the invoice is in the certified firm's name;
(e) pay for the material itself;
(f) control delivery; <u>and</u>
(g) be certified to provide the supplies in the appropriate NAICS code.

If the listed criteria above are not met, only the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the supplies and materials, or fees or transportation charges for the

delivery of supplies or materials required on a job site will be counted towards the MWSBE goal. To be counted, proof must be provided of the fees paid and the fees must be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees customarily allowed for similar services. MWSBE Supplier participation may account for no more than 50% of the MWSBE participation plan.

5. The OBO Policy and Procedures Manual, as amended from time to time, shall apply to the Contract for other determinations regarding counting MWSBE participation not explicitly provided for in the Contract.

H. CONTRACTOR COMPLIANCE

To ensure compliance with MWSBE requirements, OBO and the Department will monitor Contractor's efforts regarding MWSBE Subcontractors/Suppliers during the performance of this Contract. This may be accomplished through the following: job site visits; reviewing of records and reports; and interviews of randomly selected personnel.

I. RECORDS AND REPORTS

1. In accordance with II.A of this Document, the Contractor shall submit an initial report outlining MWSBE participation 40 days after the Notice to Proceed date, and on or before the 15th day of each month thereafter until all MWSBE subcontracting or material supply activity is completed. Each report shall cover the preceding month's activity. The Contractor shall use the MWSBE Contract Compliance and Monitoring System (B2G Now) to meet this requirement.

2. Contractor shall maintain the following records for review upon request by OBO or the Department:

a. Copies of executed Subcontractor agreements and purchase orders;

b. Documentation of payments and other transactions with MWSBE Subcontractors/ Suppliers; and

c. Appropriate explanations of any changes or replacements of MWSBE Subcontractors/Suppliers. All replacement MWSBE Subcontractors/Suppliers must be certified by OBO.

d. Any other records required by OBO or Contracting Department.

3. If a Participation Plan Percentage is not being met, the monthly report shall include a narrative description of the progress being made in MWSBE participation. If sufficient MWSBE Subcontractors or Suppliers to meet the Participation Plan Percentage are being utilized, they should be identified by name and the dollar amount paid to date for work performed or materials furnished by each MWSBE during the monthly period. Reports are required when no activity has occurred in a monthly period.

4. Contractor shall retain all such records for a period of four years following completion of the Work and shall be available at reasonable times and places for inspection by authorized representatives of the City including the City Controller.

IV. SANCTIONS:

A. SUSPENSION PERIOD AND WAIVER

Pursuant to Section 15-86 of the Code of Ordinances, OBO is authorized to suspend any Contractor who has failed to make Good Faith Efforts for a period of up to, but not to exceed, five years.

B. GUIDELINES FOR IMPOSITION OF SANCTIONS

1. **General:**
   - **a.** OBO shall not impose any sanction except upon evidence of specific conduct on the part of a MWSBE or Contractor that is inconsistent with, or in direct contravention of, specific applicable requirements for Good Faith Efforts.
   - **b.** Imposition and enforcement of suspensions shall be consistent with applicable state law.

2. **Severity of Sanctions:**
   - **a.** In determining the length of any suspension, OBO shall consider the following factors:
     - **(1)** Whether the failure to comply with applicable requirements involved intentional conduct or, alternatively, may be reasonably concluded to have resulted from a misunderstanding on the part of the Contractor or MWSBE of the duties imposed on them by Article V of Chapter 15 of the Code of Ordinances and these procedures;
     - **(2)** The number of specific incidences of failure by

Contractor or MWSBE to comply;

(3) Whether the Contractor or MWSBE has been previously suspended;

(4) Whether the Contractor or MWSBE has failed or refused to provide OBO with any information requested by OBO's Director or required to be submitted to OBO's Director pursuant to law or these procedures;

(5) Whether the Contractor or MWSBE has materially misrepresented any applicable facts in any filing or communication to OBO; and

(6) Whether any subsequent restructuring of the subject business or other action has been undertaken to cure the deficiencies in meeting applicable requirements.

b. Suspensions may be for any length of time not to exceed five years. Suspensions in excess of one year shall be reserved for cases involving intentional or fraudulent misrepresentation or concealment of material facts, multiple acts in contravention of applicable requirements, cases where the Contractor or MWSBE has been previously suspended, or other similarly egregious conduct.

C. APPEALS

A decision to implement a suspension may be taken after notice and an opportunity for an informal conciliation conference with OBO and a hearing by the Contract Compliance Commission. Commission members shall not have participated in the actions or investigations giving rise to the suspension hearing.

D. NOTICE

1. Prior to imposing any suspension, OBO shall deliver written notice to the Contractor or MWSBE setting forth the grounds for the proposed suspension and setting a date, time, and place to appear for an informal conciliation conference with OBO, in addition to information regarding the appearance before the Contract Compliance Commission for a hearing on the matter.

2. Any notice required or permitted to be given hereunder to any Contractor or MWSBE may be given either by personal delivery or by certified United States mail, postage prepaid, return receipt requested, addressed to their most recent address as specified

in the records of the Office of Business Opportunity or in the Contract if no address is on file with the Office of Business Opportunity.

E. HEARING PROCEDURES

Proceedings before the Contract Compliance Commission shall be conducted in accordance with Section 15-23 of the Code of Ordinances. If the Commission, in a written decision, finds that a suspension is supported by the evidence presented, the Commission shall submit its recommendation to the Mayor and City Council.

ATTACHMENT A

City of Houston
Office of Business Opportunity Good Faith Efforts Policy

General Policy.

Good Faith Efforts are steps taken to achieve an Contract Goal or other requirements which, by their scope, intensity and usefulness demonstrates the bidder's responsiveness to fulfill the business opportunity objective prior to the award of a contract, as well as the contractor's responsibility to put forth measures to meet or exceed the Contract Goal throughout the duration of the contract.

Good Faith Efforts are required to be made and demonstrated by an apparent successful bidder on goal oriented contracts or proposer on a regulated contract prior to award of a contract. Good Faith Efforts are required on professional services and construction contracts and on procurement of goods and non-professional service contracts with goals. If a bidder, when submitting a participation plan at the time of bid or proposal submission, anticipates it cannot or will not meet the Contract Goal prior to the award, the bidder must demonstrate to Office of Business Opportunity ("OBO") it has made Good Faith Efforts to meet the Contract Goal, to be eligible for the contract award.

Good Faith Efforts shall be evaluated on a case-by-case basis in making a determination whether a bidder or contractor is in compliance with this policy. The efforts employed by a bidder or contractor should be those that one could reasonably expect a bidder or contractor to take if the bidder were actively and aggressively attempting to obtain MWSBE participation sufficient to meet the Contract Goal. Efforts taken that are mere formalities or other perfunctory acts shall not be considered Good Faith Efforts to meet Contract Goals.

The factors provided herein are representative of the types of actions OBO will consider in determining whether the bidder or contractor made Good Faith Efforts to obtain MWSBE participation to meet the Contract Goal. The factors prescribed below are not intended to be a mandatory checklist, nor is it intended to be exhaustive or exclusive. OBO may consider other factors or types of efforts that may be relevant in appropriate cases.

If a contractor fails to submit Good Faith Efforts documentation as provided in this

Policy, it waives the right to appeal OBO decisions related to this Policy. OBO will review all the efforts made by the contractor, including the quality and quantity of those efforts.

Pre–Award.

A bidder must submit a participation plan (Document 00470) to OBO at the time the bidder submits the bid. If the participation by certified MWSBE subcontractors documented on the participation plan ("participation") is less than the Contract Goal, a bidder should submit a Record of Good Faith Efforts (Document 00471) with the bid. A bidder should also submit a request for a deviation (Document 00472) if the bidder, having used Good Faith Efforts, reasonably believes that it cannot meet the Contract Goal or a commercially useful deviation.

In making a determination that the bidder has made a good faith effort to meet the Contract Goals, OBO shall consider specific documentation[1] concerning the steps taken to obtain MWSBE participation, with a consideration of, by way of illustration and not limitation, whether the bidder demonstrated a genuine effort to comply with the following factors.

1. Attended any pre-bid or pre-proposal meetings scheduled by the City Department;

2. Followed up with MWSBEs that attended the pre-bid or pre-proposal meetings to discuss subcontracting and supplier opportunities and contacted MWSBEs listed in the City's online directory;

3. Conducted outreach with minority and women focused organizations and associations far in advance of solicitation due date (no less than 10 business days);

4. Identified and designated portions of the work to be performed by MWSBEs to increase the likelihood of meeting the Contract Goals (including where appropriate breaking down the contract into reasonably sized subcontracts to ensure participation);

5. Advertised subcontracting opportunities in news media focused towards minority and women persons far in advance of solicitation due date;

6. Provided MWSBEs with a point of contact that was knowledgeable about the project and possessed decision-making authority to answer questions from interested MWSBEs;

[1] A list of common supporting documentation that may allow Contractors to support their good faith efforts can be found on the Office of Business Opportunity website at www.houstontx.gov/obo.

7. Provided a reasonable number of MWSBEs certified with timely written notices via email, mail, and/or fax and/or with documented contact regarding the subcontracting/supplier opportunities. A "reasonable number of MWSBEs" shall be based on the number of MWSBEs available in the directory;

8. Solicited the MWSBEs within a reasonable amount of time (no less than seven business days) before bid submission, as well as followed up with the MWSBEs solicited to determine if they were interested in submitting a bid or proposal or participating on a team.

9. Provided interested MWSBEs certified to perform the solicited work with prompt access to the plans, specifications, scope of work and requirements of the contract;

10. Negotiated in good faith with interested MWSBEs, and not rejecting MWSBEs as unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of their capabilities;

11. Entered into a formal contract, or signing enforceable letters of intent with MWSBEs;

12. Provided an explanation to any MWSBE whose bid or price quotation is rejected, unless another MWSBE is accepted for the same work, as follows:

a. Where price competitiveness is not the reason for rejection, a written rejection notice including the reason for rejection will be sent to the rejected MWSBE firm;

b. Where price competitiveness is the reason for rejection, a – meeting must be held with the price-rejected MWSBE, if requested, to discuss the rejection;

13. Made efforts to assist interested MWSBEs in obtaining bonding, lines of credit, insurance required for the contract, and documenting MWSBE denied by bona fide surety agents;

14. Ensured that the conditions and requirements for subcontracts are commensurate with industry standards and would not cause an economic hardship on MWSBEs, such as unnecessary insurance or coupling bid bonds with retainage;

15. Incorporated efforts not attempted earlier or on previous bids that appear more likely to lead to attaining the Contract Goal. Past

performance on similar contracts with similar scopes will also be taken in consideration when determining Good Faith Efforts. A bidder that continues to make same efforts without any significant change in the level of participation may not be making Good Faith Efforts.

Post–Award.

The contractor must sign the approved participation plan (Document 00470 or Document 00570) prior to starting work on the Project. A contractor should submit a request for deviation (Document 00572) from OBO if the contractor, having made Good Faith Efforts, reasonably believes that it will not achieve the Participation Plan Percentage documented in the approved participation plan. Unless OBO approves a deviation, a contractor must submit to OBO a Participation Summary (Document 00660) prior to City Council's consideration of any close-out, term extension, or change order. If participation is less than anticipated in the approved participation plan, the contractor must submit a Record of Good Faith Efforts (Document 00571) along with the Participation Summary. A contractor that fails to submit a deviation request and Good Faith Efforts documentation waives the right to appeal OBO decisions related to this Policy.

If the contractor is awarded the contract and fails to achieve the established Participation Plan Percentage, the contractor must demonstrate to OBO its efforts to meet the Participation Plan Percentage and failure to do so based on circumstances that the contractor could not reasonably control. In determining whether the contractor made Good Faith Efforts to ensure full participation and achievement of the Participation Plan Percentage, OBO shall consider the following factors:

1. Whether the contractor designated an MWSBE liaison officer to administer the Contractor's MWSBE programs and to be responsible for maintenance of records of Good Faith Efforts.

2. Whether the contractor furnished prompt MWSBE Utilization Reports in a timely and accurate manner through the online Contract Monitoring System or via hard copy.

3. Whether the contractor responded to efforts to resolve disputes with MWSBEs, and genuinely attempted to resolve these issues.

4. Whether the contractor disclosed payment discrepancies timely and within the monthly reporting period;

5. Whether the contractor complied with the participation plan, unless the contractor received a deviation from the OBO Director and whether upon approval, the contractor made Good Faith Efforts to replace a removed MWSBE with another certified firm;

6. Whether the contractor furnished prompt written responses to written inquiries from the Director or any employee of OBO regarding the MWSBE's performance or information germane to the MWSBE's certification;

7. Whether the contractor ensured that at all times during the performance of any contract or subcontract the MWSBE firm is engaging in a commercially useful function as that term is defined in Chapter 15 of the City of Houston Code of Ordinances;

8. Whether the contractor provided the OBO information, or other material, that was factually accurate and free of material misrepresentation; and

9. Whether the contractor furnished prompt responses to requests for information, books and records needed to verify compliance from the department administering the Contract, the City Attorney and the City Controller;

10. Whether the contractor attended all meetings and mediation hearings as requested by the Director or his/her designee; and

11. How the contractor may be affected by change orders, with consideration given to the size of the change orders.

Change Orders.

The requirement to make Good Faith Efforts to achieve the approved Participation Plan Percentage is applicable to change orders. Contractors should make Good Faith Efforts to ensure that the Participation Plan Percentage remains substantially the same after the issuance of change orders. If a contractor cannot maintain substantially the same level of participation provided in the latest approved Participation Plan (Document 00470 or Document 00570) due to a change order, the contractor shall submit to the OBO Director and Contracting Department a Document 00571 (Post-Award Record of Good Faith Efforts) and Document 00572 (Post-Award Plan Deviation Request) in a timely manner that does not cause disruption to the project. In addition to other relevant factors, in evaluating whether Good Faith Efforts were made by the contractor to meet the Participation Plan Percentage despite change orders, the OBO Director shall consider the contractor's efforts to timely and efficiently deliver the project.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00820

WAGE SCALE AND PAYROLL REQUIREMENTS FOR ENGINEERING CONSTRUCTION

Wage Scale Requirements

1.1 Contractor and its Subcontractors must pay the general prevailing wage rates for building construction for each craft or type of worker or mechanic employed in the execution of any building construction or repair under the Contract in accordance with Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code and City of Houston, Texas Ordinance Nos. 85-2070, 2000-1114, 2001-152, 2006-91 and 2006-168, and 2009- 247 all as amended from time to time. City Council has determined the prevailing wage rate in the locality in which the work is being performed, which is set forth in Exhibit "A".

1.2 This prevailing wage rate does not prohibit the payment of more than the rates stated.

1.3 In bidding, Contractor warrants and represents that it has carefully examined the classifications for each craft or type of worker needed to execute the Contract and determined that such classifications in Exhibit "A" include all necessary categories to perform the work under the Contract.

1.4 The wage scale for engineering construction is to be applied to all site work greater than five feet from an exterior wall of new building under construction or from an exterior wall of an existing building.

1.5 If Contractor believes that an additional classification for a particular craft or type of worker is necessary to perform work under the Contract, it must submit with its bid a request to the Contract Compliance Division of the Office Of Business Opportunity ("OBO") to use an additional labor classification not listed in Exhibit "A" and specify the proposed new classification. OBO shall determine whether a proposed classification is already covered in Exhibit "A", and, if it is, specify which classification is appropriate. OBO's decision is conclusive. If OBO decides that a new classification is necessary, it will determine the appropriate prevailing wage rate for any resurveyed, amended, new, or additional craft or type of worker not covered by Exhibit "A". Such determination must be decided in accordance with procedures established by OBO, and in compliance with Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code and City of Houston, Texas Ordinance Nos. 85-2070, 2000-1114, 2001-152, 2006-91, 2006-168 and 2009-247 subject to City Council approval.

1.6 Contractor must not use any labor classification not covered by Exhibit "A" until such classification is established and approved for use by OBO.

1.7 A Contractor or Subcontractor who violates Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code must pay to the City, $60 per each worker employed for each calendar day or part of the day that the worker is paid less than the wage rates set forth in Exhibit "A".

1.8 The City may withhold money required to be withheld under Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code from the final payment to Contractor or earlier payments if City Council makes a determination that there is good cause to believe that Contractor has not complied with these provisions and Chapter 2258 of the Government Code, in which case the City may withhold the money at any time subsequent to the finding by City Council.

1.9 Contractor and Subcontractors must keep records specifying:

(1) the name and classification of each worker employed under the Contract; and

(2) the actual per diem wages paid to each worker, and the applicable hourly rate.

The records must be open at all reasonable hours for inspection by the officers and agents of the City.

1.10 The hourly cost of salary for non-exempt workers for labor in excess of 40 hours per worker per week, shall be calculated at 1.5 times the worker's base pay, plus 1.0 times fringe benefits, for the applicable craft and level.

Certified Payroll Requirements

2.1 Employees are paid weekly and payrolls are submitted weekly using the City of Houston's electronic payroll submission module, unless the prime Contractor has been instructed to do otherwise by the Office of Business Opportunity. When no work is done after a Contractor has started work, the Contractor is required to submit a weekly compliance statement indicating no work was performed. The payrolls must reflect the exact work and classification of the workers, the exact amount that they were paid. Workers must be paid the contracted amount (prevailing wage rates). The Contractor will be penalized $60.00 a day for each employee who is underpaid per Texas Government Code §2258-023 for all contracts.

2.2 Payrolls must be submitted electronically & indicate whether the worker worked inside or outside the building area when both wage rates are applicable to the contract.

2.3 Payrolls must be submitted each week until all work by the contractor is complete and the electronic payroll submission is marked as final in the system.

2.4 Payrolls must cover a seven day period from the start of the work week and must be consecutive seven day periods until all work is complete.

2.5 Payrolls must have employees' names, addresses, last four digits of the social security numbers, and job classifications. The job classifications must be the same as the classifications on the prevailing wage rate schedule.

2.6 A payroll deduction authorization form must be submitted for each employee for any deductions other than Federal and FICA taxes.

2.7 Employees must be paid overtime (time and a half) for all hours worked over 40 hours a week on both federally and City-funded contracts.

2.8 The Contractor has the responsibility to comply with all Internal Revenue Service rules and regulations. Contractors who submit certified payrolls with **Owner Operators (truckers)** must submit a signed tax liability statement from Owner Operator acknowledging their responsibility for Federal Income Tax and FICA reporting obligations.

2.9 If the Contractor wants to use the apprentice wage rates for an employee, the apprenticeship certificates must be submitted to the Office of Business Opportunity in advance of the employee working on the project and appearing on the payroll. You must comply with the listed number of journeymen to apprentices as listed.

2.10 A poster of the Prevailing Wage Rate Schedule should be clearly displayed on each job site from the time the project starts until the work is completed, or in case of annual service agreements, in the Contractor's office.

2.11 The Contractor shall submit the "Certificate from Contractor Appointing Officer or Employee to Supervise Payment of Employees" (Exhibit "B") to the Monitoring Authority listed in Document 00495 prior to final execution of the contract.

2.12 During the course of the work, ALL Subcontractors shall submit the "Certificate from Subcontractor Appointing Officer or Employee to Supervise Payment of Employees" (Exhibit "C") to the Monitoring Authority listed in Document 00495.

2.13 Upon completion of the Project, as part of the contract-awarding department's total clearance process, the Office of Business Opportunity's Contract Compliance Section must review whether the Wage Rate and Payroll Requirements were met and report the results to the department.

REST OF PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

EXHIBIT "A"

LABOR CLASSIFICATIONS AND PREVAILING WAGE RATES FOR ENGINEERING CONSTRUCTION 2015

CLASSIFICATION	RATE	CLASSIFICATION	RATE
Asphalt Distributor Operator	$14.06	Milling Machine Operator - Fine Grade	$13.53
Asphalt Paving Machine Operator	$14.32	Mixer Operator	$10.33
Asphalt Raker	$12.36	Motor Grader Operator- Rough	$14.23
Asphalt. Shoveler	$11.68	Motor Grader Operator	$15.69
Broom or Sweeper Operator	$12.68	Oiler	$12.12
Bulldozer Operator	$11.81	Painter-Structures	$18.62
Carpenter- Rough	$12.49	Pavement Marking Machine Operator	$11.18
Concrete Finisher- Paving	$12.98	Pile Driverman	$14.95
Concrete Finisher- Structures	$12.98	Pipe Layer	$12.12
Concrete Paving Curbing Machine Operator	$11.71	Reinforcing Steel Setter - Paving	$15.15
Concrete Paving Finishing Machine Operator	$13.07	Reinforcing Steel Setter - Structure	$14.39
Concrete Paving Joint Sealer Operator	$11.00	Roller Operator, Pneumatic - Self-propelled	$11.57
Concrete Paving. Saw Operator	$13.99	Roller Operator, Steel Wheel, Flat Wheel/Tamping	$11.57
Concrete Paving Spreader Operator.	$10.44	Roller Operator, Steel Wheel, Plant Mix Pavement	$11.92
Concrete Rubber . . .	$9.00	Scraper Operator	$13.47
Crane Clamshell Backhoe Derrick, Dragline, Shovel Operator	$12.71	Servicer	$13.97
Crusher and Screening Plant Operator	$11.29	Sign Installer - PGM	$8.54
Electrician * 3 Journeyman 2 Apprentice Allowed	$27.11	Slip Form Machine Operator	$11.07
Flagger	$10.33	Spreader Box Operator	$13.58
Form Builder/Setter- Structures	$12.23	Structural Steel Worker	$14.39
Form Liner- Paving and Curb	$12.34	Tractor Operator - Crawler Type	$13.68
Form Setter- Paving and Curb	$12.34	Tractor Operator- Pneumatic	$10.07
Foundation Drill Operator - Crawler Mounted	$17.43	Transit Mixer Truck Driver	$11.00
Foundation Drill Operator - Truck Mounted	$15.89	Truck Driver, Lowboy-float	$16.03
Front Loader Operator	$13.17	Truck Driver, Single-Axle - Heavy	$11.46
Laborer Common	$11.02	Truck Driver, Single-Axle - Light	$11.48
Laborer- Utility	$11.73	Truck Driver, Tandem Axle Semi-Trailer	$12.27
Manhole Builder	$9.00	Work Zone Barricade Servicer	$11.67
Mechanic	$16.96	eceive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental	

* Apprentices- must be in an approved USDOL Program and cannot exceed ratios

Engineering Prevailing Wages Classification Definitions

Asphalt Distributor Operator
Drives distributor truck, sets spray bars and operates valves and levers to control distribution of bituminous material for highway surfacing. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Asphalt Paving Machine Operator
Operates paving machine that spreads and levels asphaltic concrete on highway subgrade. Controls movement of machine, raises and lowers screed, regulates width of screed. May, oil, grease, service and make adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Asphalt Raker
Distributes asphaltic materials evenly over road surface by raking and brushing material to correct thickness; directs Laborers when to add or take away material to fill low spots or to reduce high spots. Performs other related duties.

Asphalt Shoveler
A general term used on construction work covering many unskilled classifications requiring work of a physical nature. A laborer works with all crews doing everything from pick and shovel work to cleaning up lumber with hammer, shoveling and placing concrete, uses air tools, cleans concrete joints and fills joints with sealing compound from bucket or with hose and nozzle from a central source, applies coating of oil to inside face of forms, may help set and strip forms, unloads and transports reinforcing steel, cures newly poured concrete, helps lower pipe into ditch for pipelayers, builds fences, works with dirt crew keeping construction layout stakes out of the way of dirt moving equipment.

Broom or Sweeper Operator
Operates a self-propelled machine to sweep and clean roadway surfaces. May oil grease, service and make adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Bulldozer Operator
Operates a crawler tractor with a bulldozer mounted in front of chassis to level, distribute and push earth or other material. May operate a ripper attachment to break up rock or other hard material. May use a push block on front of tractor to push load scrapers. May oil, grease, or otherwise service and make minor repairs to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Carpenter, Rough
Works from plans to build, assemble, fit together, align, plum, and set in place forms for molding concrete structures. Forms may be wood, steel, aluminum, fiberglass or any other type of material. Checks form while concrete is placed. May install miscellaneous materials integral to concrete structures. May set precast concrete elements. Prepares for slipforming traffic rail and median barrier. May install permanent metal deck forms. May work with power tools Performs other related duties.

Concrete Finisher, Paving
Finishes the exposed surfaces of fresh concrete paving, median barrier and every element of concrete structures to the final grade and contour structures to the final grade and contour with the use of straight edges and steel trowels. Operates bridge deck finishing machine. Finishes concrete curbs and gutters. Finishes exposed surface of concrete after forms have been removed by patching imperfections with fresh concrete, rubbing surface with abrasive stone, and directing others in removing excess or defective concrete with power tools. Performs other related duties.

Concrete Finisher, Structures
A worker semi-skilled in concrete finishing who assists Concrete finisher by performing specific or general duties of lesser skill and keeping Concrete Finisher supplied with materials, tools, and supplies; cleaning working area an equipment; and holding materials and tools. Performs other related duties.

Concrete Paving Curbing Machine Operator
Operates self - propelled machine(s) which may or may not travel on concrete paving forms, spreading and leveling fresh concrete to grade by use of augers and screeds. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make adjustments to equipment as necessary. Performs other related duties.

Concrete Paving Finishing Machine Operator
Operates self - propelled machine(s) which may or may not travel on concrete paving forms, spreading and leveling fresh

concrete to grade by use of augers and screeds. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make adjustments to equipment as necessary. Performs other related duties.

Concrete Paving Joint Sealer Operator
Cleans and seals joints requiring a hot or cold sealing compound in concrete paving, sidewalks, driveway and approach slabs. May oil, grease or make necessary repairs adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Concrete Paving Saw Operator
Operates a water-cooled power saw with either or an abrasive blade to saw expansion and contraction joints in concrete paving. May also be used to saw asphaltic pavements. May oil grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Concrete Paving Spreader Operator
Operates self - propelled machine(s) which may or may not travel on concrete paving forms, spreading and leveling fresh concrete to grade by use of augers and screeds. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make adjustments to equipment as necessary. Performs other related duties.

Concrete Rubber
Finishes the exposed surface of concrete masonry after the forms have been removed by patching holes and broken corners with fresh concrete, rubbing surface with abrasive stone to remove rough spots, and removing high spots and defective concrete with hand chisel and hammer or pneumatic chisel and powered abrasive stone. Performs other related duties.

Crane, Clamshell, Backhoe, Derrick, Dragline, Shovel Operator
A worker who operates a lattice boom type crane can hoist and move materials, raise and lower heavy weights and perform other related operations. May be crawler type or rubber tired. May include placement of rock riprap, clamshell, dragline, pipe and pile driving operations. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Crusher and Screed Plant Operator
Operates a crusher or screening plant through which rock is run to break it into crushed stone for construction or to control flow of materials not needed. May include minor repairs and may service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Electrician *3 Journeyman 2 Apprentice
Plans and directs the layout of metal electrical conduit, installs wiring systems, switch-panels, buss bars, works on overhead distribution systems and underground distribution systems. Performs other related duties.

Flagger
A worker who directs traffic in or around a construction site. May use signs or devices to direct traffic. May help assemble, position and clean devices or equipment used to direct traffic. Must be able to effectively communicate with the public. May require certain level of training by TXDOT specifications. Performs other related duties.

Form Builder/Setter, Structures
Fits together, aligns and sets to grade metal and wooden forms for placement of concrete. Forms may be wood, steel, aluminum, fiberglass or any other type of material. Checks forms while concrete is placed. May install miscellaneous materials integral to concrete structures. May set precast concrete elements. Prepares for slipforming traffic rail and median barrier. May install permanent metal deck forms. May work with power tools. Performs other related duties.

Form Liner, Paving & Curb
Fits together, panels align and sets to grade metal and wooden forms for placement of concrete. Works with survey crew to set stringline for panels or moles. Performs other related duties.

Form Setter, Paving & Curb
Fits together, align and set to grade metal and wooden forms for placement of concrete paving and curbs. Works with survey crew to set stringline for paving, curb and gutter curb. Performs other related duties.

Foundation Drill Operator, Crawler Mounted
Operates a hole-drilling machine that is crawler mounted. May include geotechnical operations such as soils nails, rock nails, tiebacks, anchors and jet grouting. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Foundation Drill Operator, Truck Mounted
Operates a hole drilling machine that is mounted on the rear of a rubber tired vehicle or truck. May include soils nails, rock nails, tiebacks, anchors and jet grouting. Drive truck from location to location or may have laborer who drives truck. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Front End Loader Operator
Operates a rubber tired, skid steer or crawler type tractor with an attached scoop type bucket on front end. Machine is used to load materials from stockpiles, excavation, charging batch plants, loading and unloading trucks. May be used with attachments in lieu of the bucket. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Laborer, Common
A general term used on construction work covering many unskilled classifications requiring work of a physical nature. A laborer works with all crews doing everything from pick and shovel work to cleaning up lumber with hammer, shoveling and placing concrete, uses air tools, cleans concrete joints and fills joints with sealing compound from bucket or with hose and nozzle from a central source, applies coating of oil to inside face of forms, may help set and strip forms, unloads and transports reinforcing steel, cures newly poured concrete, helps lower pipe into ditch for pipelayers, builds fences, works with dirt crew keeping construction layout stakes out of the way of dirt moving equipment.

Laborer, Utility
Performs a variety of manual duties, usually working in a utility capacity by working on multiple projects and tasks where demands require workmen with varied experience and ability to work without close direction. Unloads and transports reinforcing steel. May occasionally place and tie reinforcing steel. Directs common laborers in pouring concrete. Erects shoring and bracing. Assists in installation of pipe. Installs, operate and maintains dewatering systems. May assist equipment operators in positioning machines, verifying grades and signaling operators. Directs truck drivers and scraper operators to dumping positions to maintain grades as directed. Uses power tools and air tools. May work as lead man in a labor crew. His performance of a wide variety of construction jobs distinguishes him from a helper assigned to a specific craft. Installs and maintains erosion control. Is more or less a general utility construction worker. May be second step in learning a skill, and may later become a helper in a specific classification. Performs other related duties.

Manhole Builder
Constructs a means of permanent access to water and sewer lines for maintenance purposes. This work consists of laying brick or concrete slab at bottom of ditch up to an approximate grade line near the surface of the ground. Brick or block is normally laid to form a nearly circular manhole. Brick or block is laid in by eyesight and is normally to a plumb line. Chipped or culled brick can be used quite often is. No effort may be made to keep mortar off the face of the brick and joints are not pointed. May apply coating of concrete to interior and exterior surface. Performs other related duties.

Mechanic
Assembles, set up, adjusts and maintains and repairs all types of construction equipment and trucks. He may perform the duties of a welder in repair of equipment. Performs other related duties.

Milling Machine Operator, Fine Grade
Operates a power-driven milling machine that planes material of the to roadbed and discharges the material into a hauling unit or a windrow. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Mixer Operator
Performs a variety of manual duties, usually working in a utility capacity by working on multiple projects and tasks where demands require workmen with varied experience and ability to work without close direction. Unloads and transports reinforcing steel. May occasionally place and tie reinforcing steel. Directs common laborers in pouring concrete. Erects shoring and bracing. Assists in installation of pipe. Installs, operate and maintains dewatering systems. May assist equipment operators in positioning machines, verifying grades and signaling operators. Directs truck drivers and scraper operators to dumping positions to maintain grades as directed. Uses power tools and air tools. May work as lead man in a labor crew. His performance of a wide variety of construction jobs distinguishes him from a helper assigned to a specific craft. Installs and maintains erosion control. Is more or less a general utility construction worker. May be second step in learning a skill, and may later become a helper in a specific classification. Performs other related duties.

Motor Grader Operator, Rough
Operates a motor grader. Equipment is used to grade excavation and embankment and to lay asphalt, base and other materials. May blade haul roads and do other general motor grader work, but does not perform finish grade work to close

specification tolerances. This operator may be a learner in the first phase of learning the skills of motor grader work. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Motor Grader Operator
Operates a motor grader. Equipment is used to grade excavation and embankment and to lay asphalt, base and other materials. May blade haul roads and do other general motor grader work, but does not perform finish grade work to close specification tolerances. This operator may be a learner in the first phase of learning the skills of motor grader work. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Oiler
A learner or semi-skilled worker who under the direction of the watch engineer. May oil and grease or otherwise service all engines and necessary equipment as needed. He may clean and paint engine room as needed. Performs other related duties.

Painter, Structures
Paints and stains structural steel and concrete surfaces of bridges, retaining walls, or other structures. Directs cleaning and abrasive blasting of surfaces prior to painting or staining. Performs other related duties.

Pavement Marking Machine Operator
Operates machine used in laying paint stripes or markers on all types of paving. Loads machine with appropriate materials and may walk or ride on machine. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Piledriverman
Sets in place, aligns, plumbs directs driving of timber, concrete, steel, pipe and any other type of piling. Sets, drives and pulls steel, concrete and other types of sheet piling. Rigs pile and leads and bracing. Signals operator. Splices piles before and after driving. Directs pile cutoff. May direct jetting or drilling equipment in connection with installing piles to grade. Performs other related duties.

Pipelayer
Installs concrete, clay, steel, ductile iron, plastic, corrugated pipe and any other type of pipe for storm drainage, water lines, gas lines and sanitary sewer lines. Lays underground communication and electrical ducts. May install and set electrical ground boxes, hand holes, manholes, inlets and other structures. Caulks joints, makes threaded and flanged connections. Installs valves and other accessories. Performs other related duties.

Reinforcing Steel Setter, Paving
Works from plans to lay out and install reinforcing steel within forms or in mats of concrete paving. May direct unloading of material. Determines rigging required to complete work. Gives direction to reinforcing steel worker (helper) or common or utility laborers. May install miscellaneous materials integral to concrete structure or paving. May work with power tools. Performs other related duties.

Reinforcing Steel Setter, Structure
Works from plans to lay out and install reinforcing steel within forms or in mats of concrete paving. May direct unloading of material. Determines rigging required to complete work. Gives direction to reinforcing steel worker (helper) or common or utility laborers. May install miscellaneous materials integral to concrete structure or paving. May work with power tools. Performs other related duties.

Roller Operator, Pneumatic, Self-Propelled
Operates a self-propelled machine with either steel wheels pneumatic tires, which is used to compact and smooth all bituminous materials. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Roller Operator, Steel Wheel, Flat Wheel/Tamping
Operates a self-propelled machine with either steel wheels or pneumatic tires which is used to compact earth fills, subgrade, flexible base and all other types of materials except bituminous. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Roller Operator, Steel Wheel, Plant Mix Pavement
Operates a self-propelled machine with either steel wheels pneumatic tires, which is used to compact and smooth all bituminous materials. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Scraper Operator
Operates a self-contained wheeled tractor scraper both self loading or assisted by crawler tractors or other scrapers. Used to excavate and transport earth or other materials. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Servicer
Drives a truck, which carries various fuels, oils, greases and filters. Must have knowledge of and is responsible for the correct oiling and greasing and changing of filters on equipment according to the manufacturers' specifications. Uses compressed air grease guns, wrenches and other tools. May make adjustments to clutches, brakes and other mechanical items. Keeps record of service preventive maintenance records. May have laborer assisting him. May require CDL if driving truck on public highways. Performs other related duties.

Sign Installer (PGM)
Sets forms, reinforcing steel, anchor bolts and pours concrete for Sign foundations. Fabricates and erects pipe and angle Frameworks by bolting, welding or other means prior to installation of signs that are normally prefabricated. Works from plans in location and drilling holes for proper location and alignment of signs. May direct hoisting of signs into place. Fastens signs to framework by bolting and other means. Locates and sets lighting brackets. May perform other work associated with signing projects. Supervises sign erector helper. Performs other related duties.

Slip Form Machine Operator
Cleans and seals joints requiring a hot or cold sealing compound in concrete paving, sidewalks, driveway and approach slabs. May oil, grease or make necessary repairs adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Spreader Box operator
Operates spreader box by adjusting hopper and strike off blade so that the gravel, stone or other material may be spread to a specific depth on road surface during seal coat and surface treatment operations. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Structural Steel Worker
Works from plans to lay out and install reinforcing steel within forms or in mats of concrete paving. May direct unloading of material. Determines rigging required to complete work. Gives direction to reinforcing steel worker (helper) or common or utility laborers. May install miscellaneous materials integral to concrete structure or paving. May work with power tools. Performs other related duties.

Tractor operator, Crawler Type
Operates a crawler tractor with a bulldozer mounted in front of chassis to level, distribute and push earth or other material. May operate a ripper attachment to break up rock or other hard material. May use a push block on front of tractor to push load scrapers. May oil, grease, or otherwise service and make minor repairs to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Tractor Operator, Pneumatic
Operates a gasoline or diesel powered agricultural tractor that tows compaction rollers, plow, disc. water tanks, scrapers and other similar operations. May use other miscellaneous attachments. May oil, grease or otherwise service and make necessary adjustments to equipment as needed. Performs other related duties.

Traveling Mixer Operator
Drives a gasoline or diesel truck upon which is mounted a concrete mixer. Operates concrete mixer and dumps concrete on the grade, into forms or into concrete pumps or buckets. Cleans mixer drum. May require CDL license for on highway use. May service and make necessary adjustments for proper operation of equipment. Performs other related duties.

Truck driver, lowboy-Float
Drives a heavy-duty diesel powered truck to which is attached a trailer upon which heavy equipment is hauled. Driver is often required to operate heavy equipment to load or unload the lowboy. May require CDL license for on highway use. May service and make necessary adjustments for proper operation of equipment. Performs other related duties.

Truck driver, Single Axle, Heavy
Drive a light capacity truck for transporting loads of construction material. The truck is of single rear axle type, may have various kinds of beds attached, such as dump, flat bed, tank, etc. May require CDL license for driving on highway. May services and make necessary adjustments for proper operation equipment. Performs other related duties.

Truck driver, Single Axle-Light
Drive a light capacity truck for transporting loads of construction material. The truck is of single rear axle type, may have

various kinds of beds attached, such as dump, flat bed, tank, etc. May require CDL license for driving on highway. May services and make necessary adjustments for proper operation equipment. Performs other related duties.

Truck Driver, Tandem Axle, Semi-Trailer
Drives a diesel-powered tractor pulling a semi trailer hauling materials. Hauls dirt, rock, aggregates or other material. May require CDL license for driving on highway. May service and make necessary adjustments for proper operation of equipment. Performs other related duties.

Work Zone Barricade Servicer
Fabricates, erects and maintains temporary traffic control devices, including arrow boards, signs, barricades, channelizing devices, barrels and all message boards. May operates a truck during traffic control operations.

WELDERS - Receives rate for craft being performed to which welding is incidental.

EXHIBIT "B"

CERTIFICATE FROM CONTRACTOR APPOINTING OFFICER OR EMPLOYEE TO SUPERVISE PAYMENT OF EMPLOYEES

Project Name _____

_____

Project WBS#:_____Date_____

(I) (We) hereby certify that (I am) (we are) the **Prime Contractor** for _____

_____
(specify type of job)

in connection with construction of the above-mentioned Project, and that (I) (we) have appointed_____, whose signature appears below, to supervise the payment of (my) (our) employees beginning_____, 20___; that he/she is in a position to have full knowledge of the facts set forth in the payroll documents and in the statement of compliance required by the Copeland Act and the City of Houston, which he/she is to execute with (my) (our) full authority and approval until such time as (I) (we) submit to the City of Houston a new certificate appointing some other person for the purposes hereinabove stated.

_____ Phone:_____
(Identifying Signature of Appointee)

Attest: _____
(Name of Firm or Corporation)

By:_____ By:_____
(Signature) (Signature)

_____ _____
(Title) (Title)

NOTE: This certificate must be executed by an authorized officer of a corporation or by a member of a partnership, and shall be executed prior to and be submitted with the first payroll. Should the appointee be changed, a new certificate must accompany the first payroll for which the new appointee executes a statement of compliance required by the Copeland Act and the City of Houston.

EXHIBIT "C"

CERTIFICATE FROM SUBCONTRACTOR APPOINTING OFFICER OR EMPLOYEE TO SUPERVISE PAYMENT OF EMPLOYEES

Project Name _____

_____

Project WBS#:_____Date_____

(I) (We) hereby certify that (I am) (we are) the **Sub Contractor** for _____

_____
(specify type of job)

in connection with construction of the above-mentioned Project, and that (I) (we) have appointed_____, whose signature appears below, to supervise the payment of (my) (our) employees beginning_____, 20___; that he/she is in a position to have full knowledge of the facts set forth in the payroll documents and in the statement of compliance required by the Copeland Act and the City of Houston, which he/she is to execute with (my) (our) full authority and approval until such time as (I) (we) submit to the City of Houston a new certificate appointing some other person for the purposes hereinabove stated.

_____ Phone:_____
(Identifying Signature of Appointee)

Attest: _____
(Name of Firm or Corporation)

By:_____ By:_____
(Signature) (Signature)

_____ _____
(Title) (Title)

NOTE: This certificate must be executed by an authorized officer of a corporation or by a member of a partnership, and shall be executed prior to and be submitted with the first payroll. Should the appointee be changed, a new certificate must accompany the first payroll for which the new appointee executes a statement of compliance required by the Copeland Act and the City of Houston.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00821

WAGE SCALE AND PAYROLL REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING CONSTRUCTION

Wage Scale Requirements

1.1 Contractor and its Subcontractors must pay the general prevailing wage rates for building construction for each craft or type of worker or mechanic employed in the execution of any building construction or repair under the Contract in accordance with Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code and City of Houston, Texas Ordinance Nos. 85-2070, 2000-1114, 2001-152, 2006-91 and 2006-168, and 2009-247 all as amended from time to time. City Council has determined the prevailing wage rate in the locality in which the work is being performed, which is set forth in Exhibit "A".

1.2 This prevailing wage rate does not prohibit the payment of more than the rates stated.

1.3 In bidding, Contractor warrants and represents that it has carefully examined the classifications for each craft or type of worker needed to execute the Contract and determined that such classifications in Exhibit "A" include all necessary categories to perform the work under the Contract.

1.4 The wage scale for building construction is to be applied to work on a building including an area within 5 feet of the exterior wall.

1.5 If Contractor believes that an additional classification for a particular craft or type of worker is necessary to perform work under the Contract, it must submit with its bid a request to the Contract Compliance Division of the Office of Business Opportunity ("OBO") to use an additional labor classification not listed in Exhibit "A" and specify the proposed new classification. OBO shall determine whether a proposed classification is already covered in Exhibit "A", and, if it is, specify which classification is appropriate. OBO's decision is conclusive. If OBO decides that a new classification is necessary, it will determine the appropriate prevailing wage rate for any resurveyed, amended, new, or additional craft or type of worker not covered by Exhibit "A". Such determination must be decided in accordance with procedures established by OBO, and in compliance with Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code and City of Houston, Texas Ordinance Nos. 85-2070, 2000-1114, 2001-152, 2006-91, 2006-168, and 2009-247 subject to City Council approval.

1.6 Contractor must not use any labor classification not covered by Exhibit "A" until such classification is established and approved for use by OBO.

1.7 A Contractor or Subcontractor who violates Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code must pay to the City, $60 per each worker employed for each calendar day or part of the day that the worker is paid less than the wage rates set forth in Exhibit "A".

1.8 The City may withhold money required to be withheld under Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code from the final payment to Contractor or earlier payments if City Council makes a determination that there is good cause to believe that Contractor has not complied with these provisions and Chapter 2258 of the Government Code, in which case the City may withhold the money at any time subsequent to the finding by City Council.

1.9 Contractor and Subcontractors must keep records specifying:

(1) the name and classification of each worker employed under the Contract; and

(2) the actual per diem wages paid to each worker, and the applicable hourly rate.

The records must be open at all reasonable hours for inspection by the officers and agents of the City.

1.10 The hourly cost of salary for non-exempt workers for labor in excess of 40 hours per worker per week, shall be calculated at 1.5 times the worker's base pay, plus 1.0 times fringe benefits, for the applicable craft and level.

Certified Payroll Requirements

2.1 Employees are paid weekly and payrolls are submitted weekly using the City of Houston's electronic payroll submission module, unless the prime Contractor has been instructed to do otherwise by the Office of Business Opportunity. When no work is done after a Contractor has started work, the Contractor is required to submit a weekly compliance statement indicating no work was performed. The payrolls must reflect the exact work and classification of the workers, the exact amount that they were paid. Workers must be paid the contracted amount (prevailing wage rates). The Contractor will be penalized $60.00 a day for each employee who is underpaid per Texas Government Code §2258-023 for all contracts.

2.2 Payrolls must be submitted electronically & indicate whether the worker worked inside or outside the building area when both wage rates are applicable to the project.

2.3 Payrolls must be submitted each week until all work by the contractor is complete and the electronic payroll submission is marked as final in the system.

2.4 Payrolls must cover a seven day period from the start of the work week and must be consecutive seven day periods until all work is complete.

2.5 Payrolls must have employees' names, addresses, last four digits of the social security numbers, and job classifications. The job classifications must be the same as the classifications on the prevailing wage rate schedule.

2.6 A payroll deduction authorization form must be submitted for each employee for

any deductions other than Federal and FICA taxes and court ordered child support.

2.7 Employees must be paid overtime (time and a half) for all hours worked over 40 hours a week on both federally and City-funded contracts.

2.8 The Contractor has the responsibility to comply with all Internal Revenue Service rules and regulations. Contractors who submit certified payrolls with **Owner Operators (truckers)** must submit a signed tax liability statement from each Owner Operator acknowledging their responsibility for Federal Income Tax and FICA reporting obligations.

2.9 If the Contractor wants to use the apprentice wage rates for an employee, the apprenticeship certificates must be submitted to the Office of Business Opportunity in advance of the employee working on the project and appearing on the payroll. Contractor must comply with posted number of journeymen to apprentices or helpers as listed on the wage rate.

2.10 A poster of the Prevailing Wage Rate Schedule should be clearly displayed on each job site from the time the project starts until the work is completed, or in case of annual service agreements, in the Contractor's office.

2.11 The Contractor shall submit the "Certificate from Contractor Appointing Officer or Employee to Supervise Payment of Employees" (Exhibit "B") to the Monitoring Authority listed in Document 00495 prior to final execution of the contract.

2.12 During the course of the work, Subcontractors shall submit the "Certificate from Subcontractor Appointing Officer or Employee to Supervise Payment of Employees" (Exhibit "C") to the Monitoring Authority listed in Document 00495.

2.13 Upon completion of the Project, as part of the contract-awarding department's total clearance process, the Office of Business Opportunity's Contract Compliance Section must review whether the Wage Rate and Payroll Requirements were met and report the results to the department.

REST OF PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

EXHIBIT "A"

CITY OF HOUSTON, TEXAS
LABOR CLASSIFICATIONS AND PREVAILING WAGE RATES
FOR BUILDING CONSTRUCTION 2015

Worker Classification	Ratio	Base Rate	Fringe Benefit	Wage Total
Asbestos Worker/Insulator *	Ratio 1/1 - Apprentice	$20.75	$9.85	$30.60
Asbestos Abatement Worker (ceilings, walls ,floors only)	Ratio 1/3 – Helpers $9.10	$14.00	$0.00	$14.00
Boilermaker *	Ratio 5/1 - Apprentice	$23.14	$21.55	$44.69
Brick Layer * (see Mason Tender Brick)	Ratio 1/3 – Mason Tender Brick	$18.87	$0.00	$18.87
Carpenter * (including acoustical ceiling work)	Ratio 2/1 - Apprentice	$21.97	$7.98	$29.95
Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher *	Ratio 1/3 Mason Tender	$13.93	$0.00	$13.93
Drywall Finisher/Taper *	Ratio 1/3 – Helpers $8.54	$16.27	$3.66	$19.93
Drywall Hanger, * incl. metal studs installation	Ratio 1/3 – Helpers $9.46	$17.44	$3.93	$21.37
Electrician *	Ratio 3/2 - Apprentice	$27.65	$7.70	$35.35
Elevator Mechanic *	Ratio 1/1 - Apprentice	$38.00	$26.79	$64.79
Formbuilder/ Formsetter *	Ratio 1/3 – Helpers $7.67	$12.77	$0.00	$12.77
Glazier *	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $11.51	$14.92	$2.78	$17.70
Insulator * (Batt and Foam)	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $6.50	$14.87	$0.73	$15.60
Ironworker *(Reinforcing)	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $7.83	$12.14	$0.00	$12.14
Ironworker *(Structural)	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $10.19	$22.02	$6.35	$28.37
Lather *	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $13.38	$19.73	$0.00	$19.73
Painter * (Brush, Roller, and Spray)	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $7.42	$17.24	$4.41	$21.65
Pipe Fitter *(**HVAC Pipe only**)	Ratio 1/1 - Apprentice	$29.63	$10.31	$39.94
Pipe Fitter *(**Excluding HVAC**)	Ratio 1/3 – Apprentice $12.40	$29.39	$10.31	$39.70
Plasterer *	Ratio 1/3 Plaster Tenders	$19.42	$1.00	$20.42
Plumber *	Ratio 3/2 - Apprentice	$30.29	$9.50	$39.79
Roofer *	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $7.85	$15.40	$0.00	$15.40
Sheet Metal Worker *(incl. HVAC duct and system install.)	Ratio 2/1 - Apprentice	$25.37	$12.39	$37.76
Sprinkler Fitter * (Fire sprinklers)	Ratio 1/1 – Apprentice	$26.36	$16.52	$42.88
Tile Finisher *	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $8.08	$12.00	$0.43	$12.43
Tile Setter *	Ratio 1/3 – Helper $10.91	$16.17	$0.00	$16.17
Truck Driver		$14.18	$0.00	$14.18
Laborers:				
Common Laborer		$9.29	$0.00	$9.29
Mason Tender (Bricklayer's Helper)		$10.13	$0.00	$10.13
Mason Tender (Cement /Concrete Finisher's Helper)		$9.86	$0.00	$9.86
Pipe Layer		$12.35	$0.00	$12.35
Plaster Tender (Plasterer's helper)		$12.90	$2.51	$15.41
Power Equipment Operator:				
Asphalt Paver		$13.50	$0.25	$13.75
Backhoe – Power Equipment Operator		$12.54	$0.00	$12.54
Crane – Power Equipment Operator		$34.85	$9.85	$44.70
Forklift – Power Equipment Operator		$16.00	$0.00	$16.00
Slab and Wall Saw – Power Equipment Operator		$15.54	$3.83	$19.37
Welders - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation in which welding is incidental				

*** When Apprentices are shown, Helpers cannot be utilized. See Definitions for allowable journeymen to apprentice /helpers.**

Building Construction Prevailing Wages Classification Definitions

Asbestos Worker/Insulator * - Ratio 1Journeyman /1 Apprentice (1 Journeyman / 1 Apprentice) (Including application of all insulating materials, protective coverings, coatings and finishing to all type of mechanical systems). Applies insulating material to exposed surfaces of structures, such as air ducts, hot and cold pipes, storage tanks, and cold storage rooms: Reads blueprints and selects required insulation material (in sheet, tubular, or roll form), such as fiberglass, foam rubber, styrofoam, cork, or urethane, based on material's heat retaining or excluding characteristics. Brushes adhesives on or attaches metal adhesive-backed pins to flat surfaces as necessary to facilitate application of insulation material. Measures and cuts insulation material to specified size and shape for covering flat or round surfaces, using tape measure, knife, or scissors. Fits, wraps, or attaches required insulation material around or to structure, following blueprint specifications. Covers or seals insulation with preformed plastic covers, canvas strips, sealant, or tape to secure insulation to structure, according to type of insulation used and structure covered, using staple gun, trowel, paintbrush, or caulking gun.

Asbestos Abatement Worker * (Ceilings, Floors, & Walls only) Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Helpers
Removes asbestos from ceilings, walls, beams, boilers, and other structures, following hazardous waste handling guidelines: Assembles scaffolding and seals off work area, using plastic sheeting and duct tape. Positions mobile decontamination unit or portable showers at entrance of work area. Builds connecting walkway between mobile unit or portable showers and work area, using hand tools, lumber, nails, plastic sheeting, and duct tape. Positions portable air evacuation and filtration system inside work area. Sprays chemical solution over asbestos covered surfaces, using tank with attached hose and nozzle, to soften asbestos. Cuts and scrapes asbestos from surfaces, using knife and scraper. Shovels asbestos into plastic disposal bags and seals bags, using duct tape. Cleans work area of loose asbestos, using vacuum, broom, and dustpan. Places asbestos in disposal bags and seals bags, using duct tape. Dismantles scaffolding and temporary walkway, using hand tools, and places plastic sheeting and disposal bags into transport bags. Seals bags, using duct tape, and loads bags into truck.

Boilermaker * - Ratio 5 Journeymen /1 Apprentice
Assembles, analyzes defects in, and repairs boilers, pressure vessels, tanks, and vats in field, following blueprints and using hand tools and portable power tools and equipment: Locates and marks reference points for columns or plates on foundation, using master straightedge, squares, transit, and measuring tape, and applying knowledge of geometry. Attaches rigging or signals crane operator to lift parts to specified position. Aligns structures or plate sections to assemble boiler frame, tanks, or vats, using plumb bobs, levels, wedges, dogs, or turnbuckles. Hammers, flame cuts, files, or grinds irregular edges of sections or structural parts to facilitate fitting edges together. Bolts or arc-welds structures and sections together. Positions drums and headers into supports and bolts or welds supports to frame. Aligns water tubes and connects and expands ends to drums and headers, using tube expander. Bells, beads with power hammer, or welds tube ends to ensure leak proof joints. Bolts or welds casing sections, uptakes, stacks, baffles, and such fabricated parts as chutes, air heaters, fan stands, feeding tube, catwalks, ladders, coal hoppers, and safety hatch to frame, using wrench. Installs manholes, hand holes, valves, gauges, and feed water connection in drums to complete assembly of water tube boilers. Assists in testing assembled vessels by pumping water or gas under specified pressure into vessel and observing instruments for evidence of leakage. Repairs boilers or tanks in field by unbolting or flame cutting defective sections or tubes, straightening plates, using torch or jacks, installing new tubes, fitting

and welding new sections and replacing worn lugs on bolts. May rivet and caulk sections of vessels, using pneumatic riveting and caulking hammers.

Bricklayer * (See Mason Tender) - Ratio 1Journeyman /3 Mason Tender Brick
Lays building materials, such as brick, structural tile, and concrete cinder, glass, gypsum, and terra cotta block (except stone) to construct or repair walls, partitions, arches, sewers, and other structures: Measures distance from reference points and marks guidelines on working surface to lay out work. Spreads soft bed (layer) of mortar that serves as base and binder for block, using trowel. Applies mortar to end of block and positions block in mortar bed. Taps block with trowel to level, align, and embed in mortar, allowing specified thickness of joint. Removes excess mortar from face of block, using trowel. Finishes mortar between brick with pointing tool or trowel. Breaks bricks to fit spaces too small for whole brick, using edge of trowel or brick hammer. Determines vertical and horizontal alignment of courses, using plumb bob, gauge line (tightly stretched cord), and level. Fastens brick or terra cotta veneer to face of structures, with tie wires embedded in mortar between bricks, or in anchor holes in veneer brick. May weld metal parts to steel structural members. May apply plaster to walls and ceiling, using trowel, to complete repair work.

Carpenter * (Including Acoustical Ceiling Work) - Ratio 2 Journeymen /1 Apprentice
Constructs, erects, installs, and repairs structures and fixtures of wood, plywood, and wallboard, using carpenter's hand tools and power tools, and conforming to local building codes: Studies blueprints, sketches, or building plans for information pertaining to type of material required, such as lumber or fiberboard, and dimensions of structure or fixture to be fabricated. Selects specified type of lumber or other materials. Prepares layout, using rule, framing square, and calipers. Marks cutting and assembly lines on materials, using pencil, chalk, and marking gauge. Shapes materials to prescribed measurements, using saws, chisels, and planes. Assembles cut and shaped materials and fastens them together with nails, dowel pins, or glue. Verifies trueness of structure with plumb bob and carpenter's level. Erects framework for structures and lays subflooring. Builds stairs and lays out and installs partitions and cabinetwork. Covers sub floor with building paper to keep out moisture and lays hardwood, parquet, and wood-strip-block floors by nailing floors to sub floor or cementing them to mastic or asphalt base. Applies shock-absorbing, sound-deadening, and decorative paneling to ceilings and walls. Fits and installs prefabricated window frames, doors, doorframes, weather stripping, interior and exterior trim, and finish hardware, such as locks, letter drops, and kick plates. Constructs forms and chutes for pouring concrete. Erects scaffolding and ladders for assembling structures above ground level. May weld metal parts to steel structural members.

Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher *(Mason Tender Cement/Concrete) - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Mason Tender Cement
Finisher; concrete floater Smooths and finishes surfaces of poured concrete floors, walls, sidewalks, or curbs to specified textures, using hand tools or power tools, including floats, trowels, and screeds: Signals concrete deliverer to position truck to facilitate pouring concrete. Moves discharge chute of truck to direct concrete into forms. Spreads concrete into inaccessible sections of forms, using rake or shovel. Levels concrete to specified depth and workable consistency, using hand held screed and floats to bring water to surface and produce soft topping. Smooths, and shapes surfaces of freshly poured concrete, using straightedge and float or power screed. Finishes concrete surfaces, using power trowel, or wets and rubs concrete with abrasive stone to impart finish. Removes rough or defective spots from concrete surfaces, using power grinder or chisel and hammer, and patches holes with fresh concrete or epoxy compound. Molds expansion joints and edges, using edging tools, jointers, and straightedge. May sprinkle colored stone chips, powdered steel, or coloring powder on concrete to produce prescribed finish. May produce rough concrete surface, using broom. May mix cement, using hoe or concrete-mixing machine. May direct sub

grade work, mixing of concrete, and setting of forms.

Drywall Finisher/Taper - Ratio 1Journeyman /3 Helpers
Wallboard and plasterboard; sheetrock taper; taper and bedder; taper and floater. Seals joints between plasterboard or other wallboards to prepare wall surface for painting or papering; Mixes sealing compound by hand or with portable electric mixer, and spreads compound over joints between boards, using trowel, broad knife, or spatula. Presses paper tape over joint to embed tape into compound and seal joint, or tapes joint, using mechanical applicator that spreads compound and embeds tape in one operation. Spreads and smooth's cementing material over tape, using trowel or floating machine to blend joint with wall surface. Sands rough spots after cement has dried. Fills cracks and holes in walls and ceiling with sealing compound. Installs metal molding at corners in lieu of sealant and tape. Usually works as member of crew. May apply texturing compound and primer to walls and ceiling preparatory to final finishing, using brushes, roller, or spray gun. May countersink nails or screws below surface of wall prior to applying sealing compound, using hammer or screwdriver.

Drywall Hanger - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Helpers
Dry-wall installer; gypsum dry-wall systems installer. Plans gypsum drywall installations, erects metal framing and furring channels for fastening drywall, and installs drywall to cover walls, ceilings, soffits, shafts, and movable partitions in residential, commercial, and industrial buildings: Reads blueprints and other specifications to determine method of installation, work procedures, and material, tool, and work aid requirements. Lays out reference lines and points for use in computing location and position of metal framing and furring channels and marks position for erecting metalwork, using chalk line. Measures, marks, and cuts metal runners, studs, and furring channels to specified size, using tape measure, straightedge and hand and portable power cutting tools. Secures metal framing to walls and furring channels to ceilings, using hand and portable power tools.
Measures and marks cutting lines on drywall, using square, tape measure, and marking devices. Scribes cutting lines on drywall, using straightedge and utility knife and breaks board along cut lines. Fits and fastens board into specified position on wall, using screws, hand tools, portable power tools, or adhesive. Cuts openings into board for electrical outlets, vents, or fixtures, using keyhole saw or other cutting tools. Measures, cuts, assembles, and installs metal framing and decorative trim for windows, doorways, and vents. Fits, aligns, and hangs doors and installs hardware, such as locks and kick plates (Includes Installing Metal Studs).

Electrician * Ratio 3 Journeymen /2 Apprentice
Plans layout, installs, and repairs wiring, electrical fixtures, apparatus, and control equipment: Plans new or modified installations to minimize waste of materials, provide access for future maintenance, and avoid unsightly, hazardous, and unreliable wiring, consistent with specifications and local electrical codes. Prepares sketches showing location of wiring and equipment, or follows diagrams or blueprints, ensuring that concealed wiring is installed before completion of future walls, ceilings, and flooring. Measures, cuts, bends, threads, assembles, and installs electrical conduit, using tools, such as hacksaw, pipe threader, and conduit bender. Pulls wiring through conduit. Splices wires by stripping insulation from terminal leads, using knife or pliers, twisting or soldering wires together, and applying tape or terminal caps. Connects wiring to lighting fixtures and power equipment, using hand tools. Installs control and distribution apparatus, such as switches, relays, and circuit-breaker panels, fastening in place with screws or bolts, using hand tools and power tools. Connects power cables to equipment, such as electric range or motor, and installs grounding leads. Tests continuity of circuit to ensure electrical compatibility and safety of components, using testing instruments, such as ohmmeter, battery and buzzer, and oscilloscope. Observes functioning of installed equipment or system to detect hazards and need for adjustments, relocation,

or replacement (Including Pulling Wire and Low Voltage Wiring and Installation of Fire Alarms, Security Systems, Telephones, and Computers).

Elevator Mechanic * - Ratio 1 Journeyman /1 Apprentice
FOOTNOTES: a. - Employer contributes 8% of basic hourly rate for over 5 years' service and 6% of basic hourly rate for 6 months to 5 years' service as Vacation Pay Credit. Paid Holidays: New Year's Day; Memorial Day; Independence Day Labor Day; Thanksgiving Day; Friday after Thanksgiving Day; Christmas Day.

Erector; elevator installer; elevator mechanic. Assembles and installs electric and hydraulic freight and passenger elevators, escalators, and dumbwaiters, determining layout and electrical connections from blueprints: Studies blueprints and lays out location of framework, counterbalance rails, motor pump, cylinder, and plunger foundations. Drills holes in concrete or structural steel members with portable electric drill. Secures anchor bolts or welds brackets to support rails and framework, and verifies alignment with plumb bob and level. Cuts prefabricated sections of framework, rails, and other elevator components to specified dimensions, using acetylene torch, power saw, and disk grinder. Installs cables, counterweights, pumps, motor foundations, escalator drives, guide rails, elevator cars, and control panels, using hand tools. Connects electrical wiring to control panels and electric motors. Installs safety and control devices. Positions electric motor and equipment on top of elevator shaft, using hoists and cable slings.

Formbuilder/Formsetter - Ratio 1Journeyman /3 Helpers
Constructs built-in-place or prefabricated wooden forms, according to specifications, for molding concrete structures: Studies blueprints and diagrams to determine type and dimension of forms to be constructed. Saws lumber to blueprint dimensions, using handsaw or power saw, and nails lumber together to make form panels. Erects built-in-place forms or assembles and installs prefabricated forms on construction site according to blueprint specifications, using hand tools, plumb rule, and level. Inserts spreaders and tie rods between opposite faces of form to maintain specified dimensions. Anchors and braces forms to fixed objects, using nails, bolts, anchor rods, steel cables, planks, and timbers.

Glazier - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Helpers
Installs glass in windows, skylights, store fronts, and display cases, or on surfaces, such as building fronts, interior walls, ceilings, and tabletops: Marks outline or pattern on glass, and cuts glass, using glasscutter. Breaks off excess glass by hand or with notched tool. Fastens glass panes into wood sash with glaziers points, and spreads and smoothes putty around edge of panes with knife to seal joints. Installs mirrors or structural glass on building fronts, walls, ceilings, or tables, using mastic, screws, or decorative molding. Bolts metal hinges, handles, locks, and other hardware to prefabricated glass doors. Sets glass doors into frame and fits hinges. May install metal window and doorframes into which glass panels are to be fitted. May press plastic adhesive film to glass or spray glass with tinting solution to prevent light glare. May install stained glass windows.

Insulator (Batt and Foam) - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Helpers
Applies batt and form insulation to walls, ceilings and other surfaces according to manufacturers specifications and blue print instructions. May use sealants such as cement plaster or asphalt compound to seal insulation; may spread concrete over floor slabs to form wearing floor: brushes adhesives, cuts insulating materials to specified shape to cover surfaces; uses tape or other sealants to adhere insulation to surfaces. May use staple gun, towel, paintbrushes and caulking guns.

Ironworker (Reinforcing) - Ratio 1 Journeyman/3 Helpers
Positions and secures steel bars in concrete forms to reinforce concrete; places rods in forms, spacing and fastening together with wire and pliers. Cuts bars using hacksaw, bar cutters or acetylene torch. Bends steel rods with hand tools or rod bending machine; reinforces concrete with wire mesh; welds reinforcing bars together.

Ironworker (Structural) - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Helpers
Erector; ironworker; steel erector; structural-iron erector; structural-iron worker; structural steel erector. Performs any combination of following duties to raise, place, and unite girders, columns, and other structural-steel members to form completed structures or structure frameworks, working as member of crew: Sets up hoisting equipment for raising and placing structural-steel members. Fastens steel members to cable of hoist, using chain, cable, or rope. Signals worker operating hoisting equipment to lift and place steel member. Guides member, using tab line (rope) or rides on member in order to guide it into position. Pulls, pushes, or pries steel members into approximate position while member is supported by hoisting device. Forces members into final position, using turnbuckles, crowbars, jacks, and hand tools. Aligns rivet holes in member with corresponding holes in previously placed member by driving drift pins or handle of wrench through holes. Verifies vertical and horizontal alignment of members, using plumb bob and level.

Lather - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Helpers
Fastens wooden, metal, or rockboard lath to walls, ceilings, and partitions of buildings to provide supporting base for plaster, fireproofing, or acoustical material, using hand tools and portable power tools: Erects horizontal metal framework to which laths are fastened, using nails, bolts, and studgun. Drills holes in floor and ceiling, using portable electric tool, and drives ends of wooden or metal studs into holes to provide anchor for furring or rockboard lath. Wires horizontal strips to furring to stiffen framework. Cuts lath to fit openings and projections, using hand tools or portable power tools. Wires, nails, clips, or staples lath to framework, ceiling joists, and flat concrete surfaces. Bends metal lath to fit corners, or attaches preformed corner reinforcements. Wires plasterer's channels to overhead structural framework to provide support for plaster or acoustical ceiling tile.

Painter (Brush, Roller, and Spray) - Ratio 1Journeyman /3 Helpers
Applies coats of paint, varnish, stain, enamel, or lacquer to decorate and protect interior or exterior surfaces, trimmings, and fixtures of buildings and other structures: Reads work order or receives instructions from supervisor or homeowner regarding painting. Smoothes surfaces, using sandpaper, brushes, or steel wool, and removes old paint from surfaces, using paint remover, scraper, wire brush, or blowtorch to prepare surfaces for painting. Fills nail holes, cracks, and joints with caulk, putty, plaster, or other filler, using caulking gun and putty knife. Selects premixed paints, or mixes required portions of pigment, oil, and thinning and drying substances to prepare paint that matches specified colors. Removes fixtures, such as pictures and electric switchcovers, from walls prior to painting, using screwdriver. Spreads dropcloths over floors and room furnishings, and covers surfaces, such as baseboards, doorframes, and windows with masking tape and paper to protect surfaces during painting. Paints surfaces, using brushes, spray gun, or paint rollers. Simulates wood grain, marble, brick, or tile effects. Applies paint with cloth, brush, sponge, or fingers to create special effects. Erects scaffolding or sets up ladders to perform tasks above ground level.

Pipe fitter * (HVAC Pipe Only) - Ratio 1Journeymen /1 Apprentice (See Schedule induded)
Lays out, assembles, installs, and maintains pipe systems, pipe supports, and related hydraulic and pneumatic equipment for steam, hot water, heating, cooling, lubricating, sprinkling, and industrial production and processing systems, applying knowledge of system operation, and following

blueprints: Selects type and size of pipe, and related materials and equipment, such as supports, hangers, and hydraulic cylinders, according to specifications. Inspects work site to determine presence of obstructions and to ascertain that holes cut for pipe will not cause structural weakness. Plans installation or repair to avoid obstructions and to avoid interfering with activities of other workers. Cuts pipe, using saws, pipe cutter, hammer and chisel, cutting torch, and pipe cutting machine. Threads pipe, using pipe threading machine. Bends pipe, using pipe bending tools and pipe bending machine. Assembles and installs variety of metal and nonmetal pipes, tubes, and fittings, including iron, steel, copper, and plastic. Connects pipes, using threaded, caulked, soldered, brazed, fused, or cemented joints, and hand tools. Secures pipes to structure with brackets, clamps, and hangers, using hand tools and power tools. Installs and maintains hydraulic and pneumatic components of machines and equipment, such as pumps and cylinders, using hand tools. Installs and maintains refrigeration and air conditioning systems, including compressors, pumps, meters, pneumatic and hydraulic controls, and piping, using hand tools and power tools, and following specifications and blueprints. Increases pressure in pipe system and observes connected pressure gauge to test system for leaks.

Pipe Fitter * (Excluding HVAC Pipe) – Ratio 1Journeymen /3 Helpers
Lays out, assembles, installs, and maintains pipe systems, pipe supports, and related hydraulic and pneumatic equipment for steam, hot water, heating, cooling, lubricating, sprinkling, and industrial production and processing systems, applying knowledge of system operation, and following blueprints: Selects type and size of pipe, and related materials and equipment, such as supports, hangers, and hydraulic cylinders, according to specifications. Inspects work site to determine presence of obstructions and to ascertain that holes cut for pipe will not cause structural weakness. Plans installation or repair to avoid obstructions and to avoid interfering with activities of other workers. Cuts pipe, using saws, pipe cutter, hammer and chisel, cutting torch, and pipe cutting machine. Threads pipe, using pipe-threading machine. Bends pipe, using pipe bending tools and pipe bending machine. Assembles and installs variety of metal and nonmetal pipes, tubes, and fittings, including iron, steel, copper, and plastic. Connects pipes, using threaded, caulked, soldered, brazed, fused, or cemented joints, and hand tools. Secures pipes to structure with brackets, clamps, and hangers, using hand tools and power tools. Installs and maintains hydraulic and pneumatic components of machines and equipment, such as pumps and cylinders, using hand tools. Installs and maintains refrigeration and air conditioning systems, including compressors, pumps, meters, pneumatic and hydraulic controls, and piping, using hand tools and power tools, and following specifications and blueprints. Increases pressure in pipe system and observes connected pressure gauge to test system for leaks. May weld pipe supports to structural steel members. May observe production machines in assigned area of manufacturing facility to detect machinery malfunctions. May operate machinery to verify repair. May modify programs of automated machinery, such as robots and conveyors, to change motion and speed of machine, using teach pendant, control panel, or keyboard and display screen of robot controller and programmable controller. May be designated Steam Fitter (construction) when installing piping systems that must withstand high pressure

Plasterer * See Plaster Tender - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Plaster Tenders
Applies coats of plaster to interior walls, ceilings, and partitions of buildings, to produce finished surface, according to blueprints, architect's drawings, or oral instructions, using hand tools and portable power tools: Directs workers to mix plaster to desired consistency and to erect scaffolds. Spreads plaster over lath or masonry base, using trowel, and smoothes plaster with darby and float to attain uniform thickness. Applies scratch, brown, or finish coats of plaster to wood, metal, or board lath successively. Roughens undercoat with scratcher (wire or metal scraper) to provide bond for succeeding coats of plaster.

Plumber * (Excluding HVAC Pipe) - Ratio 3 Journeymen /2 Apprentice
Assembles, installs, and repairs pipes, fittings, and fixtures of heating, water, and drainage systems, according to specifications and plumbing codes: Studies building plans and working drawings to determine work aids required and sequence of installations. Inspects structure to ascertain obstructions to be avoided to prevent weakening of structure resulting from installation of pipe. Locates and marks position of pipe and pipe connections and passage holes for pipes in walls and floors, using ruler, spirit level, and plumb bob. Cuts openings in walls and floors to accommodate pipe and pipe fittings, using hand tools and power tools. Cuts and threads pipe, using pipe cutters, cutting torch, and pipe-threading machine. Bends pipe to required angle by use of pipe-bending machine or by placing pipe over block and bending it by hand. Assembles and installs valves, pipe fittings, and pipes composed of metals, such as iron, steel, brass, and lead, and nonmetals, such as glass, vitrified clay, and plastic, using hand tools and power tools. Joins pipes by use of screws, bolts, fittings, solder, plastic solvent, and caulks joints. Fills pipe system with water or air and reads pressure gauges to determine whether system is leaking. Installs and repairs plumbing fixtures, such as sinks, commodes, bathtubs, water heaters, hot water tanks, garbage disposal units, dishwashers, and water softeners. Repairs and maintains plumbing by replacing washers in leaky faucets, mending burst pipes, and opening clogged drains.

Roofer - Ratio 1 Journeyman/3 Helpers
Covers roofs with roofing materials other than sheet metal, such as composition shingles or sheets, wood shingles, or asphalt and gravel, to waterproof roofs: Cuts roofing paper to size, using knife, and nails or staples it to roof in overlapping strips to form base for roofing materials. Installs gutters and downs spouts. Aligns roofing material with edge of roof, and overlaps successive layers, gauging distance of overlap with chalk line, gauge on shingling hatchet, or by lines on shingles. Fastens composition shingles or sheets to roof with asphalt, cement, or nails. Punches holes in slate, tile, terra cotta, or wooden shingles, using punch and hammer. Cuts strips of flashing and fits them into angles formed by walls, vents, and intersecting roof surfaces. When applying asphalt or tar and gravel to roof, mops or pours hot asphalt or tar onto roof base. Applies alternate layers of hot asphalt or tar and roofing paper until roof covering is as specified. Applies gravel or pebbles over top layer, using rake or stiff bristled broom.

Sheet metal worker * Ratio 2 Journeymen /1 Apprentice (Including Setting HVAC Duct & System Installs)
Fabricates, assembles, installs and repairs sheet metal products, including sheet metal roof (also see Roofer). Operates soldering and welding equipment to join together sheet metal parts. Seals seams and joints with sealant. Installs roof sheets, trims, flashing, gutters down spouts and other related items. Performs other related duties.

Sprinkler Fitter (Fire) * - Ratio 1 Journeyman /1 Apprentice
Lays out, assembles, installs, and maintains pipe systems, pipe supports, and related hydraulic and pneumatic equipment for steam, hot water, heating, cooling, lubricating, sprinkling, and industrial production and processing systems, applying knowledge of system operation, and following blueprints: Selects type and size of pipe, and related materials and equipment, such as supports, hangers, and hydraulic cylinders, according to specifications. Inspects work site to determine presence of obstructions and to ascertain that holes cut for pipe will not cause structural weakness. Plans installation or repair to avoid obstructions and to avoid interfering with activities of other workers. Cuts pipe, using saws, pipe cutter, hammer and chisel, cutting torch, and pipe cutting machine. Threads pipe, using pipe-threading machine. Bends pipe, using pipe bending tools and pipe bending machine. Assembles and installs variety of metal and nonmetal pipes, tubes, and fittings, including iron, steel, copper, and plastic. Connects pipes, using threaded, caulked, soldered, brazed, fused, or cemented joints, and hand tools. Secures pipes to structure with

brackets, clamps, and hangers, using hand tools and power tools. Installs and maintains hydraulic and pneumatic components of machines and equipment, such as pumps and cylinders, using hand tools. Installs and maintains refrigeration and air conditioning systems, including compressors, pumps, meters, pneumatic and hydraulic controls, and piping, using hand tools and power tools, and following specifications and blueprints. Increases pressure in pipe system and observes connected pressure gauge to test system for leaks. May weld pipe supports to structural steel members. May observe production machines in assigned area of manufacturing facility to detect machinery malfunctions.
May operate machinery to verify repair. May modify programs of automated machinery, such as robots and conveyors, to change motion and speed of machine, using teach pendant, control panel, or keyboard and display screen of robot controller and programmable controller.

Tile Finisher - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Helpers
Supplies and mixes construction materials for TILE SETTER (construction) 861.381-054, applies grout, and cleans installed tile: Moves tiles, tile setting tools, and work devices from storage area to installation site manually or using wheelbarrow. Mixes mortar and grout according to standard formulas and request from TILE SETTER (construction), using bucket, water hose, spatula, and portable mixer. Supplies TILE SETTER (construction) with mortar, using wheelbarrow and shovel. Applies grout between joints of installed tile, using grouting trowel. Removes excess grout from tile joints with wet sponge and scrapes corners and crevices with trowel. Wipes surface of tile after grout has set to remove grout residue and polish tile, using nonabrasive materials. Cleans installation site, mixing and storage areas, and installation machines, tools, and equipment, using water and various cleaning tools. Stores tile setting materials, machines, tools, and equipment. May apply caulk, sealers, acid, steam, or related agents to caulk, seal, or clean installed tile, using various application devices and equipment. May modify mixing, grouting, grinding, and cleaning procedures according to type of installation or material used. May assist TILE SETTER (construction) to position and secure metal lath, wire mesh, or felt paper prior to installation of tile. May cut marked tiles to size, using power saw or tile cutter.

Tile Setter - Ratio 1 Journeyman /3 Helpers
Applies tile to walls, floors, ceilings, and promenade roof decks, following design specifications: Examines blueprints, measures and marks surfaces to be covered, and lays out work. Measures and cuts metal lath to size for walls and ceilings with tin snips. Tacks lath to wall and ceiling surfaces with staple gun or hammer. Spreads plaster base over lath with trowel and levels plaster to specified thickness, using screed. Spreads concrete on sub floor, with trowel and levels it with screed.
Spreads mastic or other adhesive base on roof deck, using serrated spreader to form base for promenade tile. Cuts and shapes tile with tile cutters and biters. Positions tile and taps it with trowel handle to affix tile to plaster or adhesive base.

Truck Driver
Drives truck with capacity of more than 3 tons, to transport materials to and from specified destinations: Drives truck to destination, applying knowledge of commercial driving regulations and area roads. Prepares receipts for load picked up. Collects payment for goods delivered and for delivery charges. May maintain truck log, according to state and federal regulations. May maintain telephone or radio contact with supervisor to receive delivery instructions. May load and unload truck. May inspect truck equipment and supplies, such as tires, lights, brakes, gas, oil, and water. May perform emergency roadside repairs, such as changing tires, installing light bulbs, tire chains, and spark plugs. May position blocks and tie rope around items to secure cargo during transit.

Laborers

Common Laborer
Performs any combination of the following tasks in erecting, repairing and wrecking buildings; dig, spread and level dirt and gravel; lift carry and hold building materials, tools and supplies; clean tools, equipment, materials and work areas; mix, pour and spread concrete, asphalt, gravel and other materials; join, wrap and seal sections of pipe; routine non-machine tasks such as removing forms from set concrete, filling expansion joints with asphalt, and placing culverts in trench. May also signal construction equipment operators; measure distances from grade stakes, drive stakes and stretch lines; bolt, nail align and block up under forms; mix and finish poured concrete, erect scaffolding; spread paint or coating to seal surfaces; caulking compounds to seal surfaces; remove projections from concrete, and mount pipe hangers.

Mason Tender Brick (Bricklayer's Helper)

Mason Tender Cement (Concrete Mason's / Concrete Finisher's Helper)

Pipe layer
Lay pipe for storm or sanitation sewers, drains, and water mains. Perform any combination of the following tasks: grade trenches or culverts, position pipe, or seal joints.

Plaster Tender (Plaster's Helper)
Tends machine that pumps plaster or stucco through spray gun for application to ceilings, walls, and partitions of buildings: Starts and stops machine on signals from PLASTERER (construction). Fills hopper of machine with plaster. Turns valves to regulate pump and compressor. Assists in erecting scaffolds.

Power Equipment Operator:

Asphalt Paver (operator)
Operator; bituminous-paving-machine operator; blacktop-paver operator; blacktop spreader; mechanical-spreader operator; paving-machine operator, asphalt or bituminous. Operates machine that spreads and levels hot-mix bituminous paving material on sub grade of highways and streets: Bolts extensions to screed to adjust width, using wrenches. Lights burners to heat screed. Starts engine and controls paving machine to push dump truck and maintain constant flow of asphalt into hopper. Observes distribution of paving material along screed and controls direction of screed to eliminate voids at curbs and joints. Turns valves to regulate temperature of asphalt flowing from hopper when asphalt begins to harden on screed.

Backhoe (operator)
Operates power-driven machine, equipped with movable shovel, to excavate or move coal, dirt, rock, sand, and other materials: Receives written or oral instructions from supervisor regarding material to move or excavate. Pushes levers and depresses pedals to move machine, to lower and push shovel into stockpiled material, to lower and dig shovel into surface of ground, and to lift, swing, and dump contents of shovel into truck, car, or onto conveyor, hopper, or stockpile. Observes markings on ground, hand signals, or grade stakes to remove material, when operating machine at excavation site.

Crane (operator)
Operates electric-, diesel-, gasoline-, or steam-powered guy-derrick or stiff-leg derrick (mast

supported by fixed legs or tripod), to move products, equipment, or materials to and from quarries, storage areas, and processes, or to load and unload trucks or railroad cars: Pushes and pulls levers and depresses pedals to raise, lower, and rotate boom and to raise and lower load line in response to signals.

Forklift (operator)
Drives gasoline-, liquefied gas-, or electric-powered industrial truck equipped with lifting devices, such as forklift, boom, scoop, lift beam and swivel-hook, fork-grapple, clamps, elevating platform, or trailer hitch, to push, pull, lift, stack, tier, or move products, equipment, or materials in warehouse, storage yard, or factory: Moves levers and presses pedals to drive truck and control movement of lifting apparatus. Positions forks, lifting platform, or other lifting device under, over, or around loaded pallets, skids, boxes, products, or materials or hooks tow trucks to trailer hitch, and transports load to designated area. Unloads and stacks material by raising and lowering lifting device.

Slab & Wall Saw (See Related Power Equipment Operator Above)
Use associated power equipment operators already defined.

Apprentices
Apprentices may be used in any of the crafts listed above where noted, if they are currently certified in a program recognized by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, U.S. Department of Labor, providing the proper ratio between journeyman and apprentice is observed. Apprentice certification certificates must be supplied with the first weekly payroll upon which the apprentice's name appears.

Helper (65% of the journeyman classification)
(Must not exceed 3 helpers to 1 journeyman)
A Helper is a semi-skilled worker (rather than a skilled journeyman) who works under the direction of and assists a journeyman. Under the journeyman's direction and supervision, the helper performs a variety of duties to assist the journeyman such as preparing, carrying, and furnishing equipment, supplies and maintaining them in order; cleaning and preparing work areas; lifting, positioning, and holding materials or tools; and other related semi-skilled tasks as directed by the journeyman. A helper may use the tools of the trade at and under the direction of the journeyman. The particular duties performed by a helper vary according to area practice. The journeyman must work in close proximity to the location of the helpers work area. The helpers wage rate shall be calculated at no less than 65% of the prevailing wage for that journeyman's classification.

Helper who assists more than one journeyman craft should be listed with the notation indicating each journeyman craft classification they assist.

WELDERS - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

Pipe fitters * Apprentice Schedule (Excluding HVAC Pipe)

Journeyma	Indentured Apprentice	Apprentice Applicant	Total
1	1	0	1 to 1
3	2	1	3 to 3
5	3	2	5 to 5
8	4	3	8 to 7
12	5	4	12 to 9
16	6	5	16 to 11
20	7	6	20 to 13
25	8	7	25 to 15
30	9	8	30 to 17
40	10	9	40 to 19
50	11	10	50 to 21

NOTE: Continue after 50 Journeyman — ONE (1) Indentured Apprentice and one (1) Apprentice Applicant for every ten (10) Journeyman

---

*** When Apprentices are shown, Helpers cannot be utilized**

APPRENTICES (see definitions)

Registered Apprenticeship Ratios

For All Apprentices

Apprentice duties consist but are not limited to reading blue prints, lay out, fabrication, installation, and assembly. Other duties are the setting up and operation of fabrication machines, using hand tools, power tools, lifting/handling devices, sealing if necessary according to their particular craft. Apprentices also are trained in the preparation process of a job that include but not limited to staging, planning, distribution, and sectioning of materials. Apprentices may be used in any of the crafts listed where noted on the Prevailing Wage Rate Schedule, if they are currently certified in a program recognized by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, U.S. Department of Labor, providing the proper ratio between journeyman and apprentice is observed. Apprentice certification certificates must be supplied with the first weekly payroll upon which the apprentice's name appears. Helpers or Laborers cannot be utilized when Apprentices are shown

Asbestos Worker / Insulator

City of Houston allows the use of 1 Journeyman and 1 Apprentice, the Apprentice can be used with the first Journeyman. No other Apprentices can be added until the 2th Journeyman is added. All Apprentices are to be under the direct supervision of a Journeyman.
1 Journeyman w/ 1 Apprentice
2 Journeymen w/ 2 Apprentices

Boilermakers

City of Houston allows the use of 5 Journeymen and 1 Apprentice, the Apprentice can be used with the first Journeyman. No other Apprentices can be added until the 6th Journeyman is added. All Apprentices are to be under the direct supervision of a Journeyman.
1-5 Journeymen w/ 1 Apprentice
6-10 Journeymen w/ 2 Apprentices

Carpenter

City of Houston allows the use of 2 Journeymen and 1 Apprentice, the Apprentice can be used with the first Journeyman. No other Apprentices can be added until the 4th Journeyman is added. All Apprentices are to be under the direct supervision of a Journeyman.
1-2 Journeymen w/ 1 Apprentice
3-4 Journeymen w/ 2 Apprentices
5-6 Journeymen w/ 3 Apprentices

Electrician

City of Houston allows the use of 3 Journeymen and 2 Apprentices, the Apprentice can be used with the first Journeyman. No other Apprentices can be added until the 3rd Journeyman is added. All Apprentices are to be under the direct supervision of a Journeyman. All Journeymen and Apprentices must hold a current license from the State of Texas.

1 Journeyman w/ 1 Apprentice
2 Journeymen w/ 1 Apprentice
3 Journeymen w/ 2 Apprentices
4 Journeymen w/ 3 Apprentices
5 Journeymen w/ 3 Apprentices
6 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
7 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
8 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
9 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
10 Journeymen w/ 5 Apprentices

Plumbers

City of Houston allows the use of 3 Journeymen and 2 Apprentices, the Apprentice can be used with the first Journeyman. No other Apprentices can be added until the 3rd Journeyman is added. All Apprentices are to be under the direct supervision of a Journeyman. All Journeymen and Apprentices must hold a current license from the State of Texas.

1 Journeyman w/ 1 Apprentice
2 Journeymen w/ 1 Apprentice
3 Journeymen w/ 2 Apprentices
4 Journeymen w/ 3 Apprentices
5 Journeymen w/ 3 Apprentices
6 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
7 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
8 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
9 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
10 Journeymen w/ 5 Apprentices

Sprinkler Fitter

City of Houston allows the use of 1 Journeyman and 1 Apprentice, the Apprentice can be used with the first Journeyman. No other Apprentices can be added until the 2th Journeyman is added. All Apprentices are to be under the direct supervision of a Journeyman.

1 Journeyman w/ 1 Apprentice
2 Journeymen w/ 2 Apprentices
Sheetmetal Worker

City of Houston allows the use of 2 Journeymen and 1 Apprentice, the Apprentice can be used with the first Journeyman. No other Apprentices can be added until the 4th Journeyman is added. All Apprentices are to be under the direct supervision of a Journeyman.

1-2 Journeymen w/ 1 Apprentice
3-4 Journeymen w/ 2 Apprentices
5-6 Journeymen w/ 3 Apprentices

Pipefitter

City of Houston allows the use of 1 Journeymen and 1 Apprentice, the Apprentice can be used with the first Journeyman. No other Apprentices can be added until the 4th Journeyman is added. All Apprentices are to be under the direct supervision of a Journeyman.

1 Journeyman w/ 1 Apprentice
2 Journeymen w/ 1 Apprentice
3 Journeymen w/ 2 Apprentices
4 Journeymen w/ 3 Apprentices
5 Journeymen w/ 3 Apprentices
6 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
7 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
8 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
9 Journeymen w/ 4 Apprentices
10 Journeymen w/ 5 Apprentices

HELPER (see definitions)

(Must not exceed 3 helpers to 1 journeyman)
A Helper is a semi-skilled laborer (rather than a skilled journeyman) who works under the direction of and assists a journeyman. Under the journeyman's direction and supervision, the helper

performs a variety of duties to assist the journeyman such as preparing, carrying, and furnishing equipment, supplies and maintaining them in order; cleaning and preparing work areas; lifting, positioning, and holding materials or tools; and other related semi-skilled tasks as directed by the journeyman. A helper may use the tools of the trade at and under the direction of the journeyman. The particular duties performed by a helper vary according to area practice. The journeyman must work in close proximity to the location of the helpers work area. The helper's wage rate shall be calculated at no less than 65% of the prevailing wage for that journeyman's classification. Helper who assists more than one journeyman craft should be listed with the notation indicating each journeyman craft classification they assist.

Welders
Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation is which welding is incidental

Pipefitters * Apprentice Schedule (Excluding HVAC Pipe)

NOTE: Continue after 50 Journeyman - ONE (1) Indentured Apprentice and one (1) Apprentice Applicant for every ten (10) Journeyman

	Indentured	Apprentice	
Journeyman	Apprentice	Applicant	Total
1	1	0	1 to 1
3	2	1	3to 3
5	3	2	5 to 5
8	4	3	8 to 7
12	5	4	12 to 9
16	6	5	16 to 11
20	7	6	20 to 13
25	8	7	25 to 15
30	9	8	30 to 17
40	10	9	40 to 19
50	11	10	50 to 21

When Apprentices are shown, Helpers cannot be utilized

If there are questions as to the classification of a worker, contact the Contract Compliance Officer in writing with a description of the work to be performed. After review the Contract Compliance Officer will respond in writing with the classification and wage rate to be paid the worker in question.

Fringe Benefits

If the worker is not receiving fringe benefits, they must be paid in cash if noted on the prevailing wage schedule along with the base rate. The term wages means the basic hourly rate of pay; any contribution irrevocably made by a contractor or subcontractor to a trustee or to a third person pursuant to a bona fide fringe benefit fund, plan, or program; and the rate of costs to the

contractor or subcontractor which may be reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits to laborers and mechanics pursuant to an enforceable commitment to carry out a financially responsible plan of program, which was communicated in writing to the laborers and mechanics affected. The fringe benefits enumerated in the Davis-Bacon Act include medical or hospital care, pensions on retirement or death, compensation for injuries or illness resulting from occupational activity, or insurance to provide any of the foregoing; unemployment benefits; life insurance, disability insurance, sickness insurance, or accident insurance; vacation or holiday pay; defraying costs of apprenticeship or other similar programs; or other bona fide fringe benefits. Fringe benefits do not include benefits required by other Federal, State, or local law. The prevailing wages (including fringe benefits) as adopted for this contract are based upon a survey performed under the Davis-Bacon Act. Thus determinations in regard to fringe benefits, to the extent practicable, will be based upon the standards set forth in the following federal regulations.

Title 29, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 4
Labor Standards for Federal Service Contracts

(29 CFR 4.169-4.171)

29 CFR 4.170 - Furnishing fringe benefits or equivalents.

(a) General. Fringe benefits required under the Act shall be furnished, separate from and in addition to the specified monetary wages, by the contractor or subcontractor to the employees engaged in performance of the contract, as specified in the determination of the Secretary or his authorized representative and prescribed in the contract documents. Section 2(a)(2) of the Act provides that the obligation to furnish the specified benefits "may be discharged by furnishing any equivalent combinations of fringe benefits or by making equivalent or differential payments in cash under rules and regulations established by the Secretary." The governing rules and regulations for furnishing such equivalents are set forth in Sec. 4.177 of this subpart. An employer cannot offset an amount of monetary wages paid in excess of the wages required under the determination in order to satisfy his fringe benefit obligations under the Act, and must keep appropriate records separately showing amounts paid for wages and amounts paid for fringe benefits.
(b) Meeting the requirement, in general. The various fringe benefits listed in the Act and in Sec. 4.162(a) are illustrative of those which may be found to be prevailing for service employees in a particular locality. The benefits which an employer will be required to furnish employees performing on a particular contract will be specified in the contract documents. A contractor may dispose of certain of the fringe benefit obligations which may be required by an applicable fringe benefit determination, such as pension, retirement, or health insurance, by irrevocably paying the specified contributions for fringe benefits to an independent trustee or other third person pursuant to an existing "bona fide" fund, plan, or program on behalf of employees engaged in work subject to the Act's provisions. Where such a plan or fund does not exist, a contractor must discharge his obligation relating to fringe benefits by furnishing either an equivalent combination of "bona fide" fringe benefits or by making equivalent payments in cash to the employee, in accordance with the regulations in Sec. 4.177.

29 CFR 4.171 – "Bona fide" fringe benefits.

(a) To be considered a ``bona fide" fringe benefit for purposes of the Act, a fringe benefit plan, fund, or program must constitute a legally enforceable obligation, which meets the following criteria:

(1) The provisions of a plan, fund, or program adopted by the contractor, or by contract as a result of collective bargaining, must be specified in writing, and must be communicated in writing to the affected employees. Contributions must be made pursuant to the terms of such plan, fund, or program. The plan may be either contractor-financed or a joint contractor employee contributory plan. For example, employer contributions to Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) approved by IRS are permissible. However, any contributions made by employees must be voluntary, and if such contributions are made through payroll deductions, such deductions must be made in accordance with Sec. 4.168. No contribution toward fringe benefits made by the employees themselves, or fringe benefits provided from monies deducted from the employee's wages may be included or used by an employer in satisfying any part of any fringe benefit obligation under the Act.

(2) The primary purpose of the plan must be to provide systematically for the payment of benefits to employees on account of death, disability, advanced age, retirement, illness, medical expenses, hospitalization, supplemental unemployment benefits, and the like.

(3) The plan must contain a definite formula for determining the amount to be contributed by the contractor and a definite formula for determining the benefits for each of the employees participating in the plan.

(4) Except as provided in paragraph (b), the contractor's contributions must be paid irrevocably to a trustee or third person pursuant to an insurance agreement, trust or other funded arrangement. The trustee must assume the usual fiduciary responsibilities imposed upon trustees by applicable law. The trust or fund must be set up in such a way that the contractor will not be able to recapture any of the contributions paid in nor in any way divert the funds to its own use or benefit.

(5) Benefit plans or trusts of the types listed in 26 U.S.C. 401(a) which are disapproved by the Internal Revenue Service as not satisfying the requirements of section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code or which do not meet the requirements of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, 29 U.S.C. 1001, et seq. and regulations thereunder, are not deemed to be ``bona fide" plans for purposes of the Service Contract Act.

(6) It should also be noted that such plans must meet certain other criteria as set forth in Sec. 778.215 of 29 CFR part 778 in order for any contributions to be excluded from computation of the regular rate of pay for overtime purposes under the Fair Labor Standards Act (Secs. 4.180-4.182).

(b)(1) Unfunded self-insured fringe benefit plans (other than fringe benefits such as vacations and holidays which by their nature are normally unfunded) under which contractors allegedly make "out of pocket" payments to provide benefits as expenses may arise, rather than making irrevocable contributions to a trust or other funded arrangement as required under Sec. 4.171(a)(4), are not normally considered "bona fide" plans or equivalent benefits for purposes of the Act.

(2) A contractor may request approval by the Administrator of an unfunded self-insured plan in order to allow credit for payments under the plan to meet the fringe benefit requirements of the Act. In considering whether such a plan is bona fide, the Administrator will consider such factors as whether it could be reasonably anticipated to provide the prescribed benefits, whether it represents a legally enforceable commitment to provide such benefits, whether it is carried out under a financially responsible program, and whether the plan has been communicated to the employees in writing. The Administrator in his/her discretion may

direct that assets be set aside and preserved in an escrow account or that other protections be afforded to meet the plan's future obligation.

(c) No benefit required by any other Federal law or by any State or local law, such as unemployment compensation, workers' compensation, or social security, is a fringe benefit for purposes of the Act.

(d) The furnishing to an employee of board, lodging, or other facilities under the circumstances described in Sec. 4.167, the cost or value of which is creditable toward the monetary wages specified under the Act, may not be used to offset any fringe benefit obligations, as such items and facilities are not fringe benefits or equivalent benefits for purposes of the Act.

(e) The furnishing of facilities which are primarily for the benefit or convenience of the contractor or the cost of which is properly a business expense of the contractor is not the furnishing of a "bona fide" fringe benefit or equivalent benefit or the payment of wages. This would be true of such items, for example, as relocation expenses, travel and transportation expenses incident to employment, incentive or suggestion awards, and recruitment bonuses, as well as tools and other materials and services incidental to the employer's performance of the contract and the carrying on of his business, and the cost of furnishing, laundering, and maintaining uniforms and/or related apparel or equipment where employees are required by the contractor, by the contractor's Government contract, by law, or by the nature of the work to wear such items. See also Sec. 4.168.

(f) Contributions by contractors for such items as social functions or parties for employees, flowers, cards, or gifts on employee birthdays, anniversaries, etc. (sunshine funds), employee rest or recreation rooms, paid coffee breaks, magazine subscriptions, and professional association or club dues, may not be used to offset any wages or fringe benefits specified in the contract, as such items are not ``bona fide" wages or fringe benefits or equivalent benefits for purposes of the Act.

EXHIBIT "B"

CERTIFICATE FROM CONTRACTOR APPOINTING OFFICER OR EMPLOYEE TO SUPERVISE PAYMENT OF EMPLOYEES

Project Name _____

_____

Project WBS#:_____Date_____

(I) (We) hereby certify that (I am) (we are) the **Prime Contractor** for _____

_____
(specify type of job)

in connection with construction of the above-mentioned Project, and that (I) (we) have appointed_____, whose signature appears below, to supervise the payment of (my) (our) employees beginning_____, 20___; that he/she is in a position to have full knowledge of the facts set forth in the payroll documents and in the statement of compliance required by the Copeland Act and the City of Houston, which he/she is to execute with (my) (our) full authority and approval until such time as (I) (we) submit to the City of Houston a new certificate appointing some other person for the purposes hereinabove stated.

_____ Phone:_____
(Identifying Signature of Appointee)

Attest: _____
(Name of Firm or Corporation)

By:_____ By:_____
(Signature) (Signature)

_____ _____
(Title) (Title)

NOTE: This certificate must be executed by an authorized officer of a corporation or by a member of a partnership, and shall be executed prior to and be submitted with the first payroll. Should the appointee be changed, a new certificate must accompany the first payroll for which the new appointee executes a statement of compliance required by the Copeland Act and the City of Houston.

EXHIBIT "C"

CERTIFICATE FROM SUBCONTRACTOR APPOINTING OFFICER OR EMPLOYEE TO SUPERVISE PAYMENT OF EMPLOYEES

Project Name _____

_____

Project WBS#:_____Date_____

(I) (We) hereby certify that (I am) (we are) the **Sub Contractor** for _____

_____
(specify type of job)

in connection with construction of the above-mentioned Project, and that (I) (we) have appointed_____, whose signature appears below, to supervise the payment of (my) (our) employees beginning_____, 20___; that he/she is in a position to have full knowledge of the facts set forth in the payroll documents and in the statement of compliance required by the Copeland Act and the City of Houston, which he/she is to execute with (my) (our) full authority and approval until such time as (I) (we) submit to the City of Houston a new certificate appointing some other person for the purposes hereinabove stated.

_____ Phone:_____
(Identifying Signature of Appointee)

Attest: _____
(Name of Firm or Corporation)

By:_____ By:_____
(Signature) (Signature)

_____ _____
(Title) (Title)

NOTE: This certificate must be executed by an authorized officer of a corporation or by a member of a partnership, and shall be executed prior to and be submitted with the first payroll. Should the appointee be changed, a new certificate must accompany the first payroll for which the new appointee executes a statement of compliance required by the Copeland Act and the City of Houston.

END OF DOCUMENT

Document 00830

TRENCH SAFETY GEOTECHNICAL INFORMATION

1.0 DOCUMENT INCLUDES

A. Trench Safety Geotechnical Information: Geotechnical information obtained for use in design of the trench safety system is included as an attachment to this document.

2.0 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems.

END OF DOCUMENT

City of Houston
Pay or Play Program Requirements

I. Pay or Play Program Overview

A. Purpose

The Pay or Play Program was established with Ordinance 2007-534 on July 1, 2007 and is governed by Executive Order 1-7. The Pay or Play Program (POP Program) creates a more level playing field and enhances fairness in the bid process between competing contractors that choose to offer health benefits to their workforce and those who do not. The program also recognizes and accounts for the fact that there are cost associated with health care of the uninsured citizens of the Houston and Harris County area.

B. Program Elements

1. <u>Covered contracts</u>:

I.) Advertised after July 1, 2007 or which is executed on or after the effective date of this Executive Order.
II.) Contracts valued at or above $100,000.00 (contract) and $200,000.00 (sub-contract) including contingencies, amendments, supplemental terms and/or change orders.
III.) Professional Service, Construction, and Service type contracts.

2. <u>Contracts not covered</u>:

I.) Any contract in which the primary purpose is procurement of property, goods, supplies, and or equipment.
II.) An inter-governmental contract, inter-governmental agreement or purchasing cooperative.

3. <u>Covered employees</u>: This program applies to employees of a covered contractor or subcontractor, including contract labor, who are over age 18, work at least 30 hours per week <u>and</u> work any amount of time under a covered city contract or subcontract.

4. <u>Pay or Play Option</u>:

I.) "Pays" by contributing $1.00 per covered employee per regular hour for work performed under the contract with the City; or
II.) "Plays" by providing health benefits to covered employees. Health benefits must meet or exceed the following standards:

- The **employer will contribute no less than $150 per covered employee per month** toward the total premium cost.
- The **employee contribution, if any amount, will be no greater than 50% of the monthly premium cost and no more than $150 per month.**

Note: (1)A contractor is deemed to have complied with section 5.4 of E.O. 1-7 with respect to a covered employee who is not provided health benefits if the employee refuses the benefits and the employee's contribution to the premium is no more than $40 per month. (2) If applicable the contractor has the option to both Pay and Play.

5. **Exemptions/Waivers**: The City of Houston will award a contract to a contractor that neither Pays nor Plays only if the contractor has received an approved waiver (Form POP-4 requested by City departments only).

6. **Administration**: Contractor performance in meeting Pay or Play program requirements will be managed by the contracting department. The Office of Business Opportunity (OBO) has administrative oversight of the program, including audit responsibilities (department compliance). Questions about the program should be referred to the Department POP Liaison an updated contact list is available on http://www.houstontx.gov/obo/popforms.html or call Gracie Orr with the Office of Business Opportunity at 832-393-0633.

II. Documentation and Reporting Requirements

A. Document that must be signed and returned to administering department with the bid/proposal.

1.) City of Houston Pay or Play Program Acknowledgment Form (Form POP-1) acknowledges bidder/proposers' knowledge of the program and its requirements, and the intention to comply.

B. Documents that must be signed and returned to administering department within a period designated by the department's Contract Administrator, upon notification of low bidder or successful proposer status:

1.) Certification of Compliance with Pay or Play Program (Form POP-2)

Note - Contractors that opt to "play" must provide proof of coverage, including document from insurance provider, and names of covered employees.

2.) List of Subcontractors (Form POP-3)

Note- Review the affidavit statement at the bottom of this form for further important POP Compliance information.

C. Contractors reporting requirements:

1.) Contractors that opt to Pay
Provide monthly reports to administering department, detailing names of employees, hours worked, exemptions (if any) and amount owed. (Form POP-5)

2.) Contractors that opt to Play
Provide periodic reports to the contract administrator showing proof of coverage (insurance premium invoice or insurance card) reporting schedule will be determined by administering department based on length of contract. (Form POP-7)

3.) Employee Waiver Request
Contractor may request POP program waiver by submitting the request on POP-8 if the employee is less than 18 years old, employee has other health coverage such as through spouse or parents, or Medicare/Medicaid.

Note proof of coverage must be provided in the form of a copy of the employee's insurance card. (Remove social security numbers if applicable)

4.) Contractors shall submit an initial report with the second invoice to the department. Payments based on monthly reports are due to the contracting department with submission of the following month's invoice. Payments may be made out to the City of Houston preferably via cashier check or business check.

III. Compliance and Enforcement

The Office of Business Opportunity will audit program compliance. Contractors willfully violating or misrepresenting POP program compliance will be subject to corrective and/or punitive action, including but not limited to the assessment of fines and penalties and/or debarment. The Pay or Play Program Requirements Form and all other POP Forms are available for downloading from the City of Houston's Website at http://www.houstontx.gov/obo/popforms.html

Document 00931

REQUEST FOR INFORMATION

1. PROJECT No.: S-001000-0052-4
2. RFI No.: _____
3. PROJECT NAME: Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex & Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building
4. CONTRACTOR: [Contractor Name]
5. CONTRACT No.: _____
6. SPECIFICATION Nos.: _____
7. DRAWING Nos.: _____
8. RESPONSE CODE: [_] CRITICAL [_] ROUTINE 9.DATE RESPONSE REQUIRED: _____
10. INFORMATION REQUIRED:

11. _____ _____
CONTRACTOR (Signature) TITLE DATE

12. RESPONSE:

13. _____ _____
PROJECT MANAGER (Signature) DATE

14. If Contractor believes the response given in Item 12 requires an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Time, Contractor shall submit a timely proposal so as not to delay Contractor's Work in accordance with General Conditions, Article 7 - Changes in the Work.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 01110

SUMMARY OF WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Summary of the Work including Work Covered by the Contract Documents, Cash Allowances, City-Furnished Products, Work Sequence, Contract Use of Premises, Warranty, Minimum Conditions for Substantial Completion, General Construction Notes and Confidentiality of Contract Documents

B. Work related to this Section is found in:

1. Section 01325 – Construction Schedule

1.02 PROJECT INFORMATION

Project Locations: Northeast Water Production Plant
. 12121 N. Sam Houston Parkway East
Humble, Texas 77396

4200 Leeland Annex
4200 Leeland
Houston, Texas 77023

A. Owner: City of Houston.

1. Owner's Representative at NEWPP: Drew Molly, Operations Manager.

2. Owner's Representative at 4200 Leeland Annex: Fabian Heaney, Lab Operations Manager.

B. Architect: Huitt-Zollars, Inc.
1500 Dairy Ashford, Suite 200
Houston, Texas 77077-3858
Attn: Will Krasner, P.E., Project Manager

C. Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation (TDLR) ADA project numbers are as follows:

1. Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex – EABPRJ #B6800268.

2. Improvements at the NEWPP Administration Building – EABPRJ #B6800271.

1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:

Renovation of 4200 Leeland Annex

BASE UNIT PRICE

1. Mobilization - The work shall include, but not be limited to, mobilization, demobilization, clean up, site restoration, bonds, insurance, closeout procedures, training, commissioning and requirements in Division 1 – General Requirements.

2. Traffic Control and Regulation - The work shall include, but not be limited to, requirements in Sections 01554 – Traffic Control and Street Signs and Section 01562 – Traffic Control and Regulation.

3. Selective Demolition - The work shall include, but not be limited to, demolition and repair of existing building infrastructure to complete project work identified in the drawings and the requirements of Section 01731 – Cutting and Patching, Section 01576 – Waste Material Disposal and Section 02411 – Selective Demolition.

4. Water Quality Laboratory - The work shall include, but not be limited to, all interior and exterior renovations to building, restrooms and exterior walls; floorings, ceilings, windows, partitions, finishes, millwork, casework, doors and hardware; electrical service and lighting; HVAC equipment, ductwork, exhausts, fans and roof penetrations; structural work; fire pump, piping and room; fire alarms and fire suppression; and plumbing, fixtures, sinks, gas piping and eyewashes as required in the drawings and specifications.

5. Laboratory Equipment and Appliances – The work shall include, but not be limited to, providing, and relocating Owner-provided, laboratory equipment and appliances to include installation as required in the drawings and Section 11600 – Lab Equipment and Section 12566 – Appliances.

6. Furniture - The work shall include, but not be limited to, requirements in Section 12360 – Laboratory Casework and Section 12500 Furniture Systems.

7. Acid Neutralization Sump - The work shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, acid neutralization sump, PVC connections, bedding, backfill and turf establishment as required in drawings and Division 2 – Site Work.

8. Sample Well - The work shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, sample well, PVC connections, bedding, backfill and turf establishment as required in drawings and Division 2 – Site Work.

9. 4” PVC Pipe - The work shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, PVC pipe and connections, bedding, backfill, turf establishment and testing as required in the drawings, Section 02531 – Gravity Sanitary Sewers and Section 02533 – Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

10. 4” PVC Clean Out - The work shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, PVC Clean Out and connections, bedding, backfill and turf establishment as required in drawings and Division 2 – Site Work.

11. Sanitary Sewer Connection to existing sewer line – The work shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, PVC pipe and connections, bedding, backfill and turf establishment as required in drawings and Division 2 – Site Work.

12. 8” Water Line for Fire Pump - The work shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, ductile iron pipe and connections, wall penetration, bedding, backfill, turf establishment, disinfection and testing as required in drawings and Division 2 – Site Work.

13. 8” x 8” Tapping Sleeve and Valve - The work shall include, but not be limited to, providing and installing 8” x 8” tapping sleeve and valve as required in the drawings and in Section 02525 – Tapping Sleeves and Valves.

14. 6” Fire Service Turbine Meter, Vault and Post Indicator Valve - The work shall include, but not be limited to, excavation; 6” fire service turbine meter, vault and post indicator valve; connections to ductile iron pipe; and bedding, backfill and turf establishment as required in the drawings and Division 2 – Site Work.

15. Wet Connection to 8” Water Line - The work shall include, but not be limited to, wet connection to existing 8” water line as required in the drawings and in Section 02513 – Wet Connections.

16. Remove and Replace Roofing – The work shall include, but not be limited to, demolition of existing roofing to complete project work identified in Section 01731 – Cutting and Patching, Section 01576 – Waste Material Disposal and Section 02411 – Selective Demolition and installation of plywood, insulation panels, mechanical fasteners, penetrations, roofing and flashing as required in the drawings and specifications.

17. Security Equipment, Controls and Conductors – The work shall include, but not be limited to, providing and installing security cameras (interior and exterior), security system control equipment, conduit and conductors as required in the drawings and specifications.

18. IT/Communications - The work shall include, but not be limited to, providing and installing conduit, cabling, receptacles, twenty eight (28) Office/VOIP phones, one (1) conference phone and two (2) wall mounted phones with wall-mount adapter as required in the drawings, specifications and the City of Houston’s Houston Information Technology Systems “Telecommunications Cabling Systems Standards”, Revision 2.0 dated June 25, 2015.

19. Provide electronically completed Technical Asset Data forms in accordance with specification 01650 using electronic Microsoft Excel format template provided by CM. Submit hard copies of all electronic files.

EXTRA UNIT PRICE WORK

Includes Unit Price Work bid items numbered 20-27 as shown in Section 00410B.

CASH ALLOWANCE

28. City of Houston Building Permit Fee for Renovation of 4200 Leeland Annex

29. Contractor to use Mueller Water Conditioning, Inc. for relocation and installation of the equipment for two De-ionized Water Systems and components.

Improvements at the Northeast Water Purification Plant Administration Building

BASE UNIT PRICE

30. Mobilization - The work shall include, but not be limited to, mobilization, demobilization, clean up, site restoration, bonds, insurance, closeout procedures, training, commissioning and requirements in Division 1 – General Requirements.

31. Selective Demolition - The work shall include, but not be limited to, demolition and repair of existing building infrastructure to complete project work identified in the drawings and the requirements of Section 01731 – Cutting and Patching, Section 01576 – Waste Material Disposal and Section 02411 – Selective Demolition.

32. Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan – The work shall include, but not limited to, installation of inlet protection barriers and best management practices as required in the drawings and Section 01410 – TPDES Requirements.

33. Water Quality Laboratory - The work shall include, but not be limited to, all interior and exterior renovations to new laboratory area in the building; floorings, ceilings, windows, finishes, millwork, casework, doors and hardware; specialty items; electrical service and lighting; HVAC equipment, ductwork, exhausts, fans and wall penetrations; fire alarms and fire suppression; plumbing, fixtures, sinks, piping and eyewashes as required in the drawings and specifications.

34. Laboratory Equipment and Appliances – The work shall include, but not be limited to, providing laboratory equipment and appliances to include installation as required in the drawings and Section 11600 – Lab Equipment and Section 12566 – Appliances.

35. Furniture - The work shall include, but not be limited to, requirements in Section 12360 – Laboratory Casework and Section 12500 Furniture Systems.

36. Storage Building to include lighting and HVAC - The work shall include, but not limited to, excavation, fill, reinforced concrete foundation and slab, walls, masonry, reinforcement, roof and roofing, electrical service, lighting, doors and hardware as required in the drawings and specifications.

37. Interior Renovations - The work shall include, but not be limited to, all interior renovations in the building; floorings, ceilings, windows, finishes, doors and hardware;

electrical service and lighting; HVAC equipment, ductwork, exhausts, fans and wall penetrations; plumbing, fixtures, sinks, piping and eyewashes as required in the drawings and specifications.

38. Acoustical Insulation/Panel Installation in Conference Room - The work shall include, but not limited to, providing and installing acoustical insulation and panels in conference room as required in the drawings and in Section 09511 – Acoustical Panel Ceilings and Section 09521 – Acoustical Wall Panes.

39. Reinforced Concrete Sidewalk, 4-1/2" thick - The work shall include, but not limited to, excavation, fill, placement of 4-1/2" reinforced concrete sidewalk as required in the drawings and Section 02775 – Concrete Sidewalks.

40. Aluminum Canopy - The work shall include, but not limited to, providing and installing a manufacturer's aluminum canopy over new and existing sidewalk and pavement to include connection to building as required in the drawings and Section 10730 – Walkway Covers.

41. 4" Influent Line - The work shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, pipe and connections, bedding, backfill, turf establishment and testing as required in the drawings, Section 02531 – Gravity Sanitary Sewers and Section 02533 – Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

42. Sample Pump to include pressure gauge, switch, valves, fittings, pipe supports, reducers, stainless steel bolts and nuts and concrete pad and electrical service connection - The work shall include, but not limited to, providing and installing sample pump to include pressure gauge, switch, valves, fittings, pipe supports, reducers, stainless steel bolts and nuts and concrete pad and electrical service connection as required in the drawings, Section 11420 – Peristaltic Sampling Pumps, Piping and Equipment.

43. ¾" Diameter Stainless Steel Sample Lines to include trench wall mount supports - The work shall include, but not limited to, providing and installing ¾" Diameter Stainless Steel Sample Lines to include trench wall mount supports as required in the drawings and specifications.

44. Connection of ¾" diameter Stainless Steel Sample Lines to Sample Points to include Valves and Fittings - The work shall include, but not limited to, connection of ¾" diameter stainless steel sample lines to sample points and sample sink to include valves and fittings as required in the drawings and specifications.

45. Sample Water Recycle Lift Station to include discharge sump pump with wet well, 3" discharge pipes, valves and valve vault and electrical service connection - The work shall include, but not limited to, sample water recycle lift station to include discharge sump pump with wet well, 3" discharge pipes, valves and valve vault and electrical service connection as required in the drawings, Section 11315 – Package Pump Station and other specifications.

46. 3” Force Main, underground installation and connection to basin - The work shall include, but not limited to, excavation, 3” force main, connections, bedding, backfill, turf establishment and testing as required in drawings and Section 02532 – Sanitary Sewer Force Mains and Section 02533 – Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

47. Bollard - The work shall include, but not limited to, installation of reinforced concrete, painted pipe bollard with foundation as required in the drawings and specifications.

48. Provide electronically completed Technical Asset Data forms in accordance with specification 01650 using electronic Microsoft Excel format template provided by CM. Submit hard copies of all electronic files.

EXTRA UNIT PRICE WORK

Includes Unit Price Work bid items numbered 49 – 57 as shown in Section 00410B.

CASH ALLOWANCE

58. City of Houston Building Permit Fee

1.21 Contractor shall submit cost proposals to the City Project Manager for approval prior to beginning work on any work item covered by Cash Allowances. Contractor shall be entitled to payment for costs approved by the City Project Manager only. The Cash Allowances provide an upper limit for payment for the work covered, and do not guarantee payment to the Contractor of any portion, or all, of the stated Cash Allowances.

1.3 CONSTRUCTION PHASING

Work associated with the Renovation of the 4200 Leeland Annex shall start first and be substantially complete within 270 calendar days after Date of Commencement of the Work. Work for “Improvements at the NEWPP administration building” cannot start before November 2016. The contractor shall submit the submittals and obtain the approval for ordering materials for both locations. The contractor shall order and obtain the equipment which has a long time delivery schedule and store the material as stated in the contract documents.

1.4 ALTERNATES

There are no alternates included in this project

1.5 CITY-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

Owner will furnish products indicated. The work includes relocation, handling, storing, protecting, and installing owner –furnished products.

1. Refer to: “Lab Equipment Schedules” in drawings.

1.6 CONTRACTOR’S USE OF PREMISES

1. Comply with procedures for access to the site and Contractor’s use of rights-of-way as specified in section 01145 – Use of Premises with security requirements specified in section 01560 – Site Security.

2. Space within the existing plant site is limited. Contractor shall have use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.

3. The contractor may determine that additional work area, storage sites, access to plant sites or temporary right-of-way, are required for proper completion of the work. If the above mentioned items are necessary, the Contractor shall be solely responsible for obtaining such items and shall pay all costs in connection with such items.

4. It shall be understood that the responsibility for protection and safekeeping of equipment and materials on or near the site will be entirely that of the Contractor and that no claim shall be made against the Owner by reason of any act of any employee or trespasser. It shall be further understood that should any occasion arise necessitating access to the sites occupied by these stored materials and equipment, Contractor owning or responsible for the stored materials and/or equipment shall immediately move same. No materials or equipment may be placed upon the property of the Owner unless the Owner has agreed to the location contemplated by the Contractor to be used for storage.

5. Any and all grass or earth disturbed as a result of the construction shall be re-graded, with new sod placed and maintained by the Contractor until healthy growth is established. Grass areas of the plant inside the agreed construction areas shall be mowed regularly and watered sufficiently by the contractor to maintain the vegetation.

6. In no case shall the contractor affect the existing treatment process in any manner and shall not degrade the existing stream quality. Any fine levied against the Owner, by TCEQ or other regulatory agency having jurisdiction resulting from an action and/or inaction of the Contractor shall be paid by the Contractor.

7. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy both sites, Leeland and the NEWPP Administration Building during entire construction period. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's day-to-day operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.

8. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and approval of authorities having jurisdiction.

9. City of Houston Project Manager will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied prior to Owner acceptance of the completed Work.

1.7 WARRANTY

Comply with warranty requirements in accordance with Document 00700 – General Conditions and Document 00800 – Supplementary Conditions.

1.8 ADDITIONAL CONDITIONS FOR SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

In addition to requirements outlined in Document 00700 – General Conditions, for Contractor to be substantially complete with the work and call for inspection by Project Manager to confirm, the following special conditions must be met or completed:

A. Hydrostatic testing and disinfection shall be completed and accepted by the Project Manager.

B. Complete report of all pay items.

C. "As-built mark-ups" of the construction drawings of all work performed shall be provided to the Project Manager as part of the project close-out procedures.

1.9 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION NOTES

A. Contractor shall keep the plans confidential as provided in this agreement and shall not make copies of the plans. Contractor understands that the plans are confidential information under the Texas Homeland Security Act, Chapter 421 of the Texas Government Code.

B. Contractor shall keep the Plans in a locked secure location. The company shall keep this location confidential and share this information only with its personnel, subcontractors and designated City Staff for the purpose of performing the work.

The contractor shall require all sub-contractors who use the plans to sign a confidentiality agreement acceptable to the owner

2.0 PROJECT NOTICE/JUSTIFICATION

This project is part of the City's Capital Improvement Program to increase the safety, reliability and the efficiency of operations at the Northeast Water Purification Plant and consolidate DWO water testing laboratories at one location and to provide additional storage.

3.0 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

4.0 EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

Section 01145

USE OF PREMISES

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. General use of the site including properties inside and outside of rights-of-way, work affecting road, ramps, streets and driveways and notification to adjacent occupants.

1.02 RIGHTS-OF-WAY

A. Confine access, and operations and storage areas to rights-of-way provided by the City as stipulated in Document 00700 - General Conditions; trespassing on abutting lands or other lands in the area is not allowed.

B. Make arrangements, at no cost to the City, for temporary use of private properties. Contractor and Surety shall indemnify and hold harmless the City against claims or demands arising from such use of properties outside of rights-of-way. Submit a copy of agreements between private property owners and Contractor prior to use of the area. Agreements between private property owners and Contractor shall be notarized or bear the signatures of two witnesses.

C. Obtain written permission from City of Houston Parks and Recreation Department for storage of materials on esplanades and other areas within rights-of-way under that department's jurisdiction. Submit copies of written permission prior to use of the area.

D. Restrict total length of distributed materials along the route of construction to 1,000 linear feet unless otherwise approved in writing by City Engineer.

1.03 PROPERTIES OUTSIDE OF RIGHTS-OF-WAY

A. Do not alter the condition of properties adjacent to and along rights-of-way.

B. Do not use ways, means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures that result in damage to properties or improvements.

C. Restore damaged properties outside of rights-of-ways at no cost to the city

1.04 USE OF SITE

A. Obtain approvals from governing authorities prior to impeding or closing public roads and streets. Do not close more than two consecutive intersections at one time.

B. Notify Project Manager and Public Works and Engineering Traffic Management Branch at least five working days prior to closing a street or street crossing. Obtain permits for street closures in advance.

C. Maintain 10-foot-wide minimum access lanes for emergency vehicles including access to fire hydrants.

D. Avoid obstructing drainage ditches or inlets. When obstruction is unavoidable due to requirements of the Work, provide grading and temporary drainage structures to maintain unimpeded flow.

E. Locate and protect private lawn sprinkler systems that may exist within the site. Repair or replace damaged systems to condition existing at start of the Work, or better. Test irrigation system prior to construction.

F. Conform to daily clean-up requirements of Article 3 of Document 00700 - General Conditions.

G. Beware of overhead power lines existing in area and in close proximity of the Project. When 10 feet of clearance between energized overhead power line and construction-related activity cannot be maintained, request Center Point Energy (CPE) de-energize or move conflicting overhead power line. Contact CPE representatives at (713) 207-2222. Schedule, coordinate and pay costs associated with de-energizing or moving conflicting overhead power lines. When there is no separate pay item for this effort, include these costs in various items of bid that make such work necessary.

1.05 NOTIFICATION TO ADJACENT OCCUPANTS

A. Notify individual occupants in areas to be effected by the Work of proposed construction and time schedule. Notify not less than 72 hours or more than two weeks prior to work performed within 200 feet of homes or businesses. Follow form and content of sample door hanger provided by Project Manager.

B. Include in notification nature of the Work, and names and telephone numbers of two company representatives for resident contact available on 24-hour call.

C. Submit proposed notification to Project Manager for approval. Consider ethnicity of the neighborhood where English is not the dominant language. Provide notice in an understandable language.

1.06 PUBLIC, TEMPORARY, AND CONSTRUCTION ROADS AND RAMPS

A. Construct and maintain temporary detours, ramps, and roads to provide for normal public traffic flow when it is necessary to close public roads or streets.

B. Provide mats or other means to prevent overloading or damage to existing roadways from tracked equipment, large tandem axle trucks or equipment that will damage the existing roadway surfaces.

C. Construct and maintain access roads and parking areas as specified in Section 01504 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.

1.07 EXCAVATION IN STREETS AND DRIVEWAYS

A. Avoid hindering or inconveniencing public travel on streets or intersecting alleys for more than two blocks at any one time, except by permission of City Engineer.

B. Obtain Traffic Management Branch and City Engineer's approval when nature of the Work requires closure of an entire street. Permits required for street closure are Contractor's responsibility. Avoid unnecessary inconvenience to abutting property owners.

C. Remove surplus materials and debris and open each block for public use, as work in that block is complete.

D. Acceptance of any portion of the Work will not be based on return of street to public use.

E. Avoid obstructing driveways or entrances to private property.

F. Provide temporary crossings or complete excavation and backfill in one continuous operation to minimize duration of obstruction when excavation is required across drives or entrances.

G. Provide barricades and signs in accordance with Section VI of the State of Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices.

1.08 TRAFFIC CONTROL

A. Comply with traffic regulation as specified in Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation.

1.09 SURFACE RESTORATION

A. Restore the site including landscaping to the condition existing before construction, or better.

B. Repair paved areas per the requirements of Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and restoration.

C. Repair damaged turf areas, level with bank run sand conforming to Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities, or topsoil conforming to Section 02911 - Topsoil, and re-sod in accordance with Section 02922 - Sodding. Water and level newly sodded areas with adjoining turf using appropriate steel wheel rollers for sodding. Do not use spot sodding or sprigging.

1.10 LIMITS OF CONSTRUCTION

A. Confine operations to lands within construction work limits shown on Drawings. Unless otherwise noted on Drawings adhere to the following:

1. Where utility alignment is within esplanade, and construction limits are shown on Drawings to extend to edge of esplanade, keep equipment, materials, stockpiles a minimum of five feet from back of curb.

2. Where construction limits shown on Drawings extend to property line, keep sidewalks free of equipment, materials, and stockpiles.

1.11 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL SALVAGE

A. Upon completion of the Work, carefully remove salvageable equipment and material. Deliver them to City of Houston as directed by Project Manager. Dispose of equipment offsite at no additional cost to the City when Project Manager deems equipment unfit for further use.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

SECTION 012200

UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for general testing and inspecting requirements.
3. Section 013233 Photographic Documentation

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Unit price is an amount incorporated in the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.4 PROCEDURES

A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, overhead, and profit.

B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.

C. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

A. Unit Price No. 1 : Additional Photographs

1. Description: Additional photographs according to Section 013233 “Photographic Documentation”.
2. Unit of Measurement: Per single photograph.
3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 012100 "Allowances."

END OF SECTION 012200

Section 01255

CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Procedures for processing Change Orders, including:

1. Assignment of a responsible individual for approval and communication of changes in the Work;

2. Documentation of change in Contract Price and Contract Time;

3. Change procedures, using proposals and Modifications;

4. Execution of Change Orders;

5. Correlation of Contractor submittals.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Blue Book is defined as the Rental Rate Blue Book for Construction Equipment (a.k.a. Data Quest Blue Book).

B. Rental Rate is defined as the full-unadjusted base rental rate for the appropriate item of construction equipment.

1.03 RESPONSIBLE INDIVIDUAL

A. Provide a letter indicating the name and address of the individual authorized to execute Modifications, and who will be responsible for informing others in Contractor's employ and Subcontractors of changes to the Work. Provide this information at the pre-construction meeting.

1.04 DOCUMENTATION OF CHANGE IN CONTRACT PRICE AND CONTRACT TIME

A. Maintain detailed records of changes in the Work. Provide full information required for identification and evaluation of proposed changes, and substantiate costs of changes in the Work.

B. Document each proposal for change in Contract Price or Contract Time with sufficient data to allow evaluation of proposal.

C. Include the following minimum information on proposals:

1. Quantities of items in original Document 00410 – Bid Form with additions, reductions, deletions, and substitutions.

2. Quantities and cost of items in original Schedule of Values with additions, reductions, deletions and substitutions.

3. Provide Unit Prices for new items, with supporting information, for inclusion in Schedule of Unit Price Work.

4. Justification for changes in Contract Time.

5. Additional data upon request.

D. For changes in the Work performed on a time-and-material basis, provide the following additional information:

1. Quantities and description of Products.

2. Taxes, insurance and Bonds.

3. Overhead and profit as noted in Document 00700 - General Conditions.

4. Dates, times and by who work was performed.

5. Time records and certified copies of applicable payrolls.

6. Invoices and receipts for Products, rental equipment, and subcontracts, similarly documented.

E. For changes in the Work performed on a time-and-materials basis, rental equipment is paid as follows:

1. Actual invoice cost for duration of time required to complete extra work without markup for overhead and profit. When extra work comprises only a portion of a rental invoice where equipment would otherwise be on site, compute hourly equipment rate by dividing the actual monthly invoice by 176. One day equals eight hours and one week equals 40 hours.

2. Do not exceed estimated operating costs given in Blue Book for items of equipment. Overhead and profit will be allowed on the operating cost.

F. For changes in the Work performed on a time-and-materials basis using Contractor-owned equipment, use Blue Book rates as follows:

1. Contractor-owned equipment will be paid at the Blue Book Rental Rate for the duration of time required to complete extra work without markup for overhead and profit. Utilize lowest cost combination of hourly, daily, weekly or monthly rates. Use 150 percent of Rental Rate for double shifts, one extra shift per day, and 200 percent of Rental Rate for more than two shifts per day. Standby rates shall be 50 percent of the appropriate Rental Rate shown in Blue Book. No other rate adjustments apply.

2. Do not exceed estimated operating costs given in Blue Book. Overhead and profit will be allowed on operating costs. Operating costs will not be allowed for equipment on standby.

1.05 CHANGE PROCEDURES

A. Changes to Contract Price or Contract Time can only be made by issuance of Document 00941 - Change Order. Issuance of Document 00940 - Work Change Directive will be formalized into a Change Order. Changes will be in accordance with requirements of Document 00700 - General Conditions.

B. City Engineer will advise of Minor Changes in the Work as authorized by the Document 00700 - General Conditions by issuing Document 00942 – Minor Change.

C. Request clarification of Drawings, Specifications, Contract documents or other information by using Document 00931- Request for Information. Response by Project Manager to Requests for Information does not authorize Contractor to perform tasks outside scope of the Work. Changes must be authorized as described in this Section.

1.06 PROPOSALS AND CONTRACT MODIFICATIONS

A. Project Manager may issue Document 00932- Request for Proposal, which includes a detailed description of the proposed change with supplementary or revised Drawings and Specifications. Project Manager may also request a proposal in response to a Request for Information. Prepare and submit the proposal within seven days or as specified in request.

B. Submit requests for Contract changes to City Engineer describing proposed change and its full effect on the Work, with a statement describing reason for change and effect on Contract Price and Contract Time including full documentation.

C. Design Consultant may review Change Orders.

1.07 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. City Engineer may issue a signed Work Change Directive instructing Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work. Work Change Directive will subsequently be incorporated into a Change Order.

B. Work Change Directives will describe changes in the Work and designate the method of determining change in Contract Price or Contract Time.

C. Proceed promptly to execute changes in the Work in accordance with the Work Change Directive.

1.08 STIPULATED PRICE CHANGE ORDER

A. A Stipulated Price Change Order will be based on an accepted proposal.

1.09 UNIT PRICE CHANGE ORDER

A. Where Unit Prices for affected items of the Work are included in Document 00410 – Bid Form, the Change Order will be based on Unit Prices, subject to Articles 7 and 9 of Document 00700 - General Conditions.

B. Where Unit Prices of the Work are not pre-determined in Document 00410-Bid Form, the Work Change Directive or accepted proposal will specify the Unit Prices to be used.

1.10 TIME-AND-MATERIAL CHANGE ORDER

A. Provide itemized account and supporting data after completion of change, within time limits indicated for claims in Document 00700 - General Conditions.

B. City Engineer will determine the change allowable in Contract Price and Contract Time as provided in Document 00700 - General Conditions.

C. Maintain detailed records for work done on time-and-material basis as specified in Paragraph 1.04 above.

D. Provide full information required for evaluation of changes and substantiate costs for changes in the Work.

1.11 EXECUTION OF CHANGE DOCUMENTATION

A. City Engineer will issue Change Orders, Work Change Directives, or Minor Change in the Work for signatures of Parties as described in Document 00700 - General Conditions.

1.12 CORRELATION OF CONTRACTOR SUBMITTALS

A. For Stipulated Price Contracts, promptly revise Schedule of Values and Application for Payment forms to record authorized Change Orders as separate line item.

B. For Unit Price Contracts, the next monthly estimate of the Work after acceptance of a Change Order will be revised to include new items not previously included with appropriate Unit Prices.

C. Promptly revise progress schedules to reflect change in Contract Time, and to adjust time for other items of work affected by the change, and resubmit for review.

D. Promptly enter changes to on-site and record copies of Drawings, Specifications or Contract documents as required in Section 01785 - Project Record Documents.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01270

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Procedures for measurement and payment plus conditions for nonconformance assessment and nonpayment for rejected Products.

1.02 AUTHORITY

A. Measurement methods delineated in Specification sections are intended to complement criteria of this Section. In event of conflict, requirements of the Specification section shall govern.

B. Project Manager will take all measurements and compute quantities accordingly.

C. Assist by providing necessary equipment, workers, and survey personnel.

D. Measurement and Payment paragraphs are included only in those Specification sections of Division 01 where direct payment will be made. Include costs in the total bid price for those Specification sections in Division 01 that do not contain Measurement and Payment paragraphs,

1.03 UNIT QUANTITIES SPECIFIED

A. Quantity and measurement estimates stated in the Agreement are for contract purposes only. Quantities and measurements supplied or placed in the Work and verified by Project Manager will determine payment as stated in Article 9 of Document 00700 - General Conditions.

B. When actual work requires greater or lesser quantities than those quantities indicated in Document 00410 – Bid Form, provide required quantities at Unit Prices contracted, except as otherwise stated in Article 9 of Document 00700 - General Conditions.

1.04 MEASUREMENT OF QUANTITIES

A. Measurement by Weight: Reinforcing steel, rolled or formed steel or other metal shapes are measured by CRSI or AISC Manual of Steel Construction weights. Welded assemblies are measured by CRSI or AISC Manual of Steel Construction or scale weights.

B. Measurement by Volume:

1. Stockpiles: Measured by cubic dimension using mean length, width, and height or thickness.

2. Excavation and Embankment Materials: Measured by cubic dimension using average end area method.

C. Measurement by Area: Measured by square dimension using mean length and width or radius.

D. Linear Measurement: Measured by linear dimension, at item centerline or mean chord.

E. Stipulated Price Measurement: By unit designated in the Agreement.

F. Other: Items measured by weight, volume, area, or linear means or combination, as appropriate, as completed item or unit of the Work.

G. Measurement by Each: Measured by each instance or item provided.

H. Measurement by Lump Sum: Measure includes all associated work.

1.05 PAYMENT

A. Payment includes full compensation for all required supervision, labor, Products, tools, equipment, plant, transportation, services, and incidentals; and erection, application or Installation of an item of the Work; and Contractor's overhead and profit.

B. Total compensation for required Unit Price work shall be included in Unit Price bid in Document 00410 – Bid Form. Claims for payment as Unit Price work, but not specifically covered in the list of Unit Prices contained in Document 00410 – Bid Form, will not be accepted.

C. Interim payments for stored materials will be made only for materials to be incorporated under items covered in Unit Prices, unless disallowed in Document 00800 - Supplementary Conditions.

D. Progress payments will be based on Project Manager's observations and evaluations of quantities incorporated in the Work multiplied by Unit Price.

E. Final payment for work governed by Unit Prices will be made on the basis of actual measurements and quantities determined by Project Manager multiplied by the Unit Price for work which is incorporated in or made necessary by the Work.

1.06 NONCONFORMANCE ASSESSMENT

A. Remove and replace work, or portions of the Work, not conforming to the Contract documents.

B. When not practical to remove and replace work, City Engineer will direct one of the following remedies:

1. Nonconforming work will remain as is, but Unit Price will be adjusted lower at discretion of City Engineer.

2. Nonconforming work will be modified as authorized by City Engineer, and the Unit Price will be adjusted lower at the discretion of City Engineer, when modified work is deemed less suitable than specified.

C. Specification sections may modify the above remedies or may identify a specific formula or percentage price reduction.

D. Authority of City Engineer to assess nonconforming work and identify payment adjustment is final.

1.07 NONPAYMENT FOR REJECTED PRODUCTS

A. Payment will not be made for any of the following:

1. Products wasted or disposed of in an unacceptable manner.

2. Products determined as nonconforming before or after placement.

3. Products not completely unloaded from transporting vehicles.

4. Products placed beyond lines and levels of required work.

5. Products remaining on hand after completion of the Work, unless specified otherwise.

6. Loading, hauling, and disposing of rejected Products.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01292

SCHEDULE OF VALUES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Preparation and submittal of Schedule of Values for Stipulated Price Contracts or for Major Unit Price Work on Unit Price Contracts.

1.02 PREPARATION

A. For Stipulated Price Contracts, subdivide the Schedule of Values into logical portions of the Work, such as major work items or work in contiguous construction areas. Use Section 01325 - Construction Schedule as a guide to subdivision of work items. Directly correlate Items in the Schedule of Values with tasks in the Construction Schedule. Organize each portion using the Project Manual Table of Contents as an outline for listing value of the Work by Sections. A pro rata share of mobilization, Bonds, and insurance may be listed as separate items for each portion of the Work.

B. For Unit Price Contracts, items should include a proportional share of Contractor's overhead and profit so that total of all items will equal Contract Price.

C. For lump sum equipment items, where submittal of operation and maintenance data and testing are required, include separate items for equipment operation and maintenance data where:

1. submittal of maintenance data is valued at five percent of the lump sum amount for each equipment item and

2. submittal for testing and adjusting is valued at five percent of the lump sum amount for each equipment item.

Round off figures for each item listed to the nearest $100. Set the value of one item, when necessary, to make total of all values equal the Contract Price for Stipulated Price Contracts or the lump sum amount for Unit Price Work.

1.03 SUBMITTAL

A. Submit the Schedule of Values, in accordance with requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures, at least 10 days prior to processing of the first Certificate for Payment.

B Submit the Schedule of Values in an approved electronic spreadsheet file and an 81/2-inch by 11-inch print on white bond paper.

C. Revise Schedule of Values for items affected by Contract Modifications. After City Engineer has reviewed changes, resubmit at least 10 days prior to the next scheduled Certificate for Payment date.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01312

COORDINATION AND MEETINGS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. General coordination including pre-construction meeting, site mobilization conference, and progress meetings.

1.02 COORDINATION OF DOCUMENTS

A. Coordination is required throughout documents. Refer to Contract documents and coordinate as necessary.

1.03 CONTRACTOR COORDINATION

A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and work of various Specification sections to assure efficient and orderly sequence of Installation of interdependent construction elements.

B. Coordinate completion and clean up of the Work prior to the Date of Substantial Completion and for portions of the Work designated for City's partial occupancy.

C. Coordinate access to the site for correction of nonconforming work to minimize disruption of the City's activities where the City is in partial occupancy.

1.04 PRE-CONSTRUCTION MEETING

A. Project Manager will schedule pre-construction meeting.

B. Attendance Required: City representatives, Design Consultant, special consultants as required by Project Manager, Contractor, and major Subcontractors and Suppliers.

C. Agenda:

1. Distribution of Contract documents.

2. Designation of personnel representing the Parties and Design Consultant.

3. Review of insurance.

4. Discussion of formats for Schedule of Values and Construction Schedule.

5. Procedures and processing of Shop Drawings, substitutions, pay estimates or Applications for Payment, Requests for Information, Requests for Proposal, Modifications, and the Contract closeout, other submittals.

6. Scheduling of the Work and coordination with other contractors.

7. Review of Subcontractors and Suppliers.

8. Appropriate agenda items listed for the site mobilization conference, Paragraph 1.05.C, when pre-construction meeting and site mobilization conference are combined.

9. Procedures for testing.

10. Procedures for maintaining record documents.

1.05 SITE MOBILIZATION CONFERENCE

A. When required by Contract documents, Project Manager will schedule a conference at the Project site prior to Contractor mobilization.

B. Attendance Required: City representatives, Design Consultant, special consultants, Superintendent, and major Subcontractors.

C. Agenda:

1. Use of premises by the City and Contractor.

2. Safety and first aid procedures.

3. Construction controls provided by the City.

4. Temporary utilities.

5. Survey and layout.

6. Security and housekeeping procedures.

7. Field office requirements.

1.06 PROGRESS MEETINGS

A. Hold meetings at Project field office or other location designated by Project Manager. Hold meetings at monthly intervals, or more frequently when directed by Project Manager.

B. Attendance Required: Superintendent, major Subcontractors and Suppliers, City representatives, Design Consultant and its subconsultants as appropriate for agenda topics for each meeting.

C. Project Manager will make arrangements for meetings, and for recording minutes.

D. Project Manager will prepare the agenda and preside at meetings.

E. Provide required information and be prepared to discuss each agenda item.

F. Agenda:

1. Review minutes of previous meetings.

2. Review of construction schedule, pay estimates, cash flow curve, payroll and compliance submittals.

3. Field observations, problems, and necessary decisions.

4. Identification of problems that impede planned progress.

5. Review of submittal schedule and status of submittals.

6. Review of RFI and RFP status.

7. Modification status.

8. Review of off-site fabrication and delivery schedules.

9. Maintenance of Construction Schedule.

10. Corrective measures to regain Construction Schedule.

11. Planned progress during the succeeding work period.

12. Coordination of projected progress.

13. Maintenance of quality and work standards.

14. Effect of proposed Modifications on Construction Schedule and coordination.

15. Review Project Record Contract Drawings.

16. Other item relating to the Work.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01321

CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Photographic requirements for construction photographs and submittals.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

A. Pre-construction Photographs: Photographs taken, in sufficient numbers and detail, prior to Date of Commencement of the Work, to show original construction site conditions.

B. Progress Photographs: Photographs, taken throughout the duration of construction at regular intervals and from fixed vantage points, pre-approved by the City, that document progress of the Work.

C. Finished Photographs: Photographs, taken by a professional photographer near Date of Substantial Completion and before City Council's acceptance of the Work, that are suitable for framing and for use in brochures or on the Internet

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to Section 01330, Submittal Procedures, for submittal requirements.

B. Format and Media. Film or digital photography may be used. Submit color photographs, unless otherwise specified.

1. Prints. Submit each Progress or Pre-construction Photograph print in a three-hole plastic pocket or sleeve, bound in a three-ring notebook. Produce prints on photographic-quality paper approved by Project Manager. Minimum size for Pre-construction Photograph prints shall be 3-inches by 5-inches. Progress Photograph prints shall be 8-inches by 10-inches.

2. Film. Use 35mm or larger color film. Submit negatives used to make submitted photographs, in 3-hole 8-1/2 inch by 11-inch plastic sheets with sleeves for negatives.

3. Digital Photography. Use 2.1 megapixel density or greater for photographs. Scanned photographs must equal or exceed 400 dots

per inch when scanned from 8-inch by 10-inch prints. Submit digital photographic files on computer disks. Format disks for MS-DOS (Microsoft Disk Operating System) filing system and in JPEG (Joint Photographic Experts Group) format.

C. Submittal Quantities and Frequencies.

1. Pre-construction Photographs:
   a. For Stipulated Price Contracts, submit two sets of Pre-construction Photographs, if required, prior to first Application for Payment.
   b. For Unit Price Contracts, submit two sets of Pre-construction Photographs prior to start of construction operations.

2. Progress Photographs:
   a. For Stipulated Price Contracts, submit three sets of Progress Photographs with each Application for Payment at the times established for submittal of Applications for Payment. Monthly Applications for Payment shall be deemed incomplete if not accompanied by the required Progress Photographs. Contractor's failure or election to not submit a monthly Application for Payment shall not affect the requirement for monthly Progress Photographs.
   b. Progress Photographs are not required for Unit Price Contracts unless otherwise specified.

3. Finished Photographs: For Stipulated Price Contracts submit two sets of Finished Photographs, if required, after Date of Substantial Completion and prior to final payment. Each set shall contain one 11-inch by 14-inch matte finish color photographic print from each of the two vantage points pre-approved by the City. Vantage points for Finished Photographs will be approved separately from vantage points approved for Progress Photographs. Finished Photographs are not required for Unit Price Contracts unless otherwise specified.

D. Labeling. Place a label on the back of each photographic print, applied so as to not to show through on the front. Labels shall contain the following information:

1. Name of Project, address of Project and GFS Number.

2. Name and address of Contractor.

3. Date photograph was taken.

4. Location photo was taken from and short description of photo subject.

5. Name and address of professional photographer who took the photograph, if applicable.

E. Hand-deliver or transmit prints in standard photographic mailers marked "Photographs - Do Not Bend".

F. Photographic prints, negatives, photographic files and disks become the property of the City. Do not be publish photographs without written consent by the City.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor shall be responsible for the quality of and timely execution and submittal of photographs.

B. For Finished Photographs, Contractor shall use a professional photographer, with five years minimum professional experience in the Houston area. Contractor shall submit name, address and credentials of professional photographer for Project Manager's review and approval.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PRE-CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

A. Prior to commencement of construction operations, photograph the site to include initial construction corridor, detour routes, and staging or storage areas.

1. For Stipulated Price Contracts, unless specified as a requirement in other Sections, these photographs are optional for Contractor, but are highly recommended for areas bounded by other property owners.

2. Pre-construction photographs are required for Unit Price Contracts. For line projects with scheduled construction segments, take Pre-construction Photographs prior to commencement of work on each segment.

B. Prepare Pre-construction Photographs as follows:

1. Show the following information on a non-reflective chalkboard placed within the picture frame:
   a. Job number.
   b. Project Number.
   c. Date and time photographs were taken (Automatic date/time in negative is acceptable).
   d. Baseline station, direction of view (i.e. N, S, NW, etc.) and house number or street address and street name.

2. Pre-construction Photographs shall indicate condition of the following:
   a. Esplanades and boulevards.
   b. Yards (near side and far side of street).
   c. House walks and sidewalks.
   d. Curbs.
   e. Areas between walks and curbs.
   f. Particular features (e.g. yard lights, shrubs, fences, trees).

3. Show date photographs were taken on negatives.

C. Show the location of vantage points and direction of shots on a key plan of the site.

3.02 PROGRESS PHOTOGRAPHS

A. Progress Photographs document monthly advancement of the Work. Select vantage points for each shot so as to best show status of construction and progress since last photograph submittal. Select camera stations that will require little or no movement or adjustment over the duration of construction.

B. Take monthly Progress Photographs at regular intervals to coincide with cutoff dates associated with each Application for Payment.

3.03 FINISHED PHOTOGRAPHS

A. Finished Photographs shall be "staged" and taken by a professional photographer to depict the most flattering images of a finished facility. Two vantage points, from which Finished Photographs will be taken, shall be agreed to in advance by the City. Photographer shall consider lighting, time of day, height of eye, landscaping and placement of vehicles, people and other props in each picture. Filters and post-photography processing may be utilized to achieve a finished product acceptable to the City.

3.04 LOCATION

A. Vantage points, times and conditions for camera stations and photography for Progress and Finished Photographs shall be mutually agreed upon by the City, Contractor and Photographer. Progress Photograph vantage points may be changed by mutual agreement as the Work progresses, at no additional cost to the City.

END OF SECTION

Section 01325

CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 GENERAL

A. Provide Construction Schedules for the Work included in this Contract in accordance with requirements in this Section. Create Construction Schedule using Critical Path Method (CPM) computer software capable of mathematical analysis of Precedence Diagramming Method (PDM) plan. Provide printed activity listings and bar charts in formats described in this Section.

B. Combine activity listings and bar charts with narrative report to form Construction Schedule submittal for Project Manager.

1.02 SCHEDULING STAFF

A. Employ or retain services of individual experienced in CPM scheduling for duration of the Contract. Individual shall cooperate with Project Manager and update schedule monthly as required to indicate current status of the Work.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. During preconstruction meeting, as described in Section 01312 - Coordination and Meetings, provide sample bar charts and activity listings produced from scheduling software proposed. Scheduling software is subject to review by Project Manager and must meet requirements provided in this Section. Project Manager will provide review of samples within seven days of submittal.

C. Within 21 days of receipt of approval of Contractor's format, or 30 days of Notice to Proceed, whichever is later, submit proposed Construction Schedule for review. Base Construction Schedule submittal on the following:

1. Level of detail and number of activities required in schedule are dependent on project type.
   a. For wastewater projects, categorize work type and area code in schedule.
      1) For wastewater rehabilitation projects, there are six work-type categories. An area code will be assigned for each

Meter Service Area or Basin. Include at least one activity for each unique combination of work type and area code. Normal schedules of wastewater rehabilitation projects contain between 35 and 100 activities, depending on number of basins and work types involved in each basin.

2) For wastewater relief projects (line work), area codes will be assigned geographically.

3) For wastewater plant or facility work, other criteria may apply to assignment of area codes, such as a combination of geographical and craft categories.

b. For projects with multiple types of tasks within scope, indicate types of work separately within schedule.

c. For projects with work at different physical locations or service areas, or different facilities within a site, indicate each location or facility separately within schedule. Show work on each floor of multi-story building as separate tasks.

d. For projects with multiple crafts or significant Subcontractor components, indicate elements separately within schedule. Unless permitted by Project Manager, tasks shall consist of work covered by only one division of Project Manual.

2. Unless permitted by Project Manager, each scheduled task shall be same as Schedule of Values line item, and vice versa.

3. For projects with Major Unit Price Work, indicate Shop Drawing submittal and review, purchase, delivery, and Installation dates on Project schedule. Include activities for testing, adjustment, and delivering O&M manuals.

4. No task except the acquisition of Major Unit Price Work shall represent more than one percent of Original Contract Price for facility projects and three percent of Original Contract Price for other projects. Duration of tasks may not exceed 40 calendar days.

5. For projects where operating facilities are involved, identify each period of work that will impact any process or operation in the schedule and that must be agreed to by Project Manager and facility operator prior to starting work in the area.

D. Construction Schedule submittals shall include:

1. printed bar charts that meet criteria outlined in this Section and are produced by Contractor's approved scheduling software;

2. activity listings that meet criteria outlined in this Section and are produced by Contractor's approved scheduling software; and

3. a predecessor/successor listing sorted by Activity ID that meets criteria outlined in this Section and is produced by Contractor's scheduling software.

4. A logic network diagram is required with the first Construction Schedule submittal for facilities projects.

5. Prepare and submit graphic or tabular display of estimated monthly billings (i.e. a cash flow curve for the Work) with the first schedule submittal. This information is not required in monthly updates, unless significant changes in work require re-submittal of schedule for review. Display shall allocate units indicated in bid schedule or Schedule of Values to Construction Schedule activities. Weighted allocations are acceptable, where appropriate. Dollar value associated with each allocated unit will be spread across the duration of that activity on a monthly basis. Total for each month and cumulative total will be indicated. These monthly forecasts are only for Project Manager's planning purposes. Monthly payments for actual work completed will be made in accordance with Document 00700 - General Conditions.

6. Narrative Report that provides the information outlined in this Section.

E. No payment will be made until Project Manager approves Construction Schedule and billing forecast.

F. If Contractor desires to make changes in its method of operating and scheduling, after Project Manager has reviewed original schedule, notify Project Manager in writing, stating reasons for changes. When Project Manager considers these changes to be significant, Contractor may be required to revise and resubmit for review all or affected portion of Contractor's Construction Schedule to show effect on the Work.

G. Upon written request from Project Manager, revise and submit for review all or any part of Construction Schedule submittal to reflect changed conditions in the Work or deviations made from original schedule.

H. Updated Construction Schedule with actual start and actual finish dates, percent complete, and remaining duration of each activity shall be submitted monthly. Data date used in updating monthly Construction Schedule shall be the same date as used in monthly Payment Application. Monthly update of Construction Schedule is required for monthly Payment Application to be processed for payment.

1.04 SCHEDULING COMPUTER SOFTWARE REQUIREMENTS

A. Contractor's scheduling software shall be capable of creating bar charts and activity listings, which can be sorted by various fields (i.e. Activity ID, Early Start, Total Float, Area Code, Specification Section number, and Subcontractor). Use software capable of producing logic network diagram.

B. Use scheduling software capable of producing activity listings and bar charts with the following information for each activity in the schedule:

1. Activity ID
2. Activity Description
3. Estimated (Original) Duration
4. Remaining Duration
5. Actual Duration
6. Early Start Date
7. Late Start Date
8. Early Finish Date
9. Late Finish Date
10. Free Float
11. Total Float
12. Activity Codes (such as Area Code, Work Type, Specification Section, Subcontractor)

C. Use scheduling software capable of printing calendars using mathematical analysis of schedule, indicating standard workdays of week and scheduled holidays.

D. Use scheduling software capable of printing activity listing that indicates predecessors and successors, lag factors and lag relationships used in creating logic of the schedule.

E. Use scheduling software to provide monthly time in Bar Chart format and scale with 12-month scale not to exceed one page width. Bar charts may be

printed or plotted on 8-1/2 by 11-inch, 8-1/2 by 14-inch or 11 by 17-inch sheet sizes. Over-size plots are not acceptable.

1.05 NARRATIVE SCHEDULE REPORT

A. Narrative schedule report shall list activities started this month, activities completed this month, activities continued this month, activities scheduled to start or complete next month, problems encountered this month, and actions taken to solve these problems.

B. Narrative schedule report shall describe changes made to Construction Schedule logic (i.e. changes in predecessors and lags), activities added to schedule, activities deleted from schedule, any other changes made to the schedule other than addition of actual start dates and actual finish dates and changes of data date and remaining durations for re-calculation of mathematical analysis.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01326

CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (BAR CHART)

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Provide an initial Construction Schedule as required by this section for the Work. Do not start construction until Project Manager reviews the schedule.

1.02 FORM AND CONTENT OF INITIAL CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Bar Chart:

1. Show major construction activities such as pipe laying, by traffic control phases or other approved key areas; tunnel construction, pavement removal, pavement replacement, pressure testing, chlorination, clean up and punch list as separate activities on the schedule.

2. Show week duration for each activity.

3. Show separate activities for each Shop Drawing and Product Data submittal critical to timely completion. Show submittal dates and dates Project Manager needs to provide approved submittals.

4. Provide separate horizontal bar for each activity. List start and finish date for each activity at left side of diagram.

5. Horizontal Time Scale: Identify first work day of each week.

6. Scale and Spacing: Notes must be legible. Allow space for notations and future revisions.

7. Order of Listings: Order bar chart listings by phases or other approved groups of activities that are contiguous. List activities in chronological order within each phase or group.

B. Narrative Description:

1. Submit narrative descriptions of anticipated work sequences as indicated by the sequence of activities presented in the schedule.

2. Discuss any activity that affects the public (such as phases of traffic control), interaction with specific forces of the City (such as valve operation, chlorination and testing) or other associated contractors.

1.03 PROGRESS REVISIONS

A. Submit progress revisions or necessary information to complete and process Payment Applications. When required, re-submittals for rejected revisions must be submitted and reviewed prior to the following month's processing of a Payment Application. The following month's Payment Application will not be processed until the re-submittal is reviewed and required progress revisions are received.

B. Provide a narrative report to describe:

1. Major changes in scope.

2. Revised projections in progress, completion, or changes in activity duration.

3. Other identifiable changes.

4. Problem areas, anticipated delays, and the impact on schedule.

5. Corrective action recommended and its effect.

6. Effect of changes on schedules or other contractors.

7. Product delivery lead times.

C. Include additional data with Bar Chart described in Paragraph 1.03A of this Section:

1. Show original dates for each activity in the approved initial progress schedule by narrow bar next to a wider bar for the current schedule.

2. Show date each activity actually started or finished when an event has occurred. Clearly identify actual dates in two right-most columns in left portion of an 11 by 17-inch chart.

3. Indicate the percentage progress to the date of submittal for each activity.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the initial progress schedule within 15 days after award of contract. Project Manager will review the schedule and return a reviewed copy within 21 days after receipt.

B. Cut-off dates for progress revisions may be as early as the 20th of the month to avoid delaying processing of Payment Applications. Use the cut-off date for the first approved revision for further revisions.

C. When required, re-submit within seven days after return of review copy.

D. Include connecting lines between bars in the schedule to indicate the sequence that activities will be accomplished. Connecting lines when the activity's start or finish is modified will identify impact of preceding or succeeding activities. Submit a minimum of six copies of the bar chart on 11 by 17-inch opaque reproductions. Project Manager will retain five copies and return the remaining copy.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01330

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Submittal procedures for:

1. Schedule of Values
2. Construction Schedules and Cash Flow Curve (billing forecast).
3. Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples
4. Operations and Maintenance (O&M) Data
5. Manufacturer's Certificates
6. Construction Photographs
7. Project Record Documents and monthly certification.
8. Video Tapes
9. Design Mixes

1.02 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. Scheduling and Handling:

1. Submit Shop Drawings, data and Samples for related components as required by Specifications and Project Manager.
2. Schedule submittals well in advance of need for construction Products. Allow time for delivery of Products after submittal approval.
3. Develop submittal schedule that allows sufficient time for initial review, correction, resubmission and final review of all submittals. Allow a minimum of 30 days for initial review. Project Manager will review and return submittals to Contractor as expeditiously as possible but time required for review will vary depending on complexity and quantity of data submitted.

4. Project Manager's review of submittals covers only general conformity to Drawings, Specifications and dimensions that affect layout. Contractor is responsible for quantity determination. No quantities will be verified by Project Manager. Contractor is responsible for errors, omissions or deviations from Contract requirements; review of submittals does not relieve Contractor from the obligation to furnish required items in accordance with Drawings and Specifications.

5. Submit five copies of documents unless otherwise specified.

6. Revise and resubmit submittals as required. Identify all changes made since previous submittal.

7. Assume risk for fabricated Products delivered prior to approval. Do not incorporate Products into the Work, or include payment for Products in periodic progress payments, until approved by Project Manager.

B. Transmittal Form and Numbering:

1. Transmit each submittal to Project Manager with Transmittal letter which includes:
   a. Date and submittal number
   b. Project title and number
   c. Names of Contractor, Subcontractor, Supplier and manufacturer
   d. Identification of Product being supplied
   e. Location of where Product is to be Installed
   f. Applicable Specification section number

2. Identify deviations from Contract documents clouding submittal drawings. Itemize and detail on separate 8-1/2 by 11-inch sheets entitled "DEVIATIONS FOR _____." When no deviations exist, submit a sheet stating no deviations exist.

3. Have design deviations signed and sealed by an appropriate design professional, registered in the State of Texas.

4. Sequentially number transmittal letters beginning with number one. Use original number for resubmittals with an alphabetic suffix (i.e., 2A for the first resubmittal of submittal 2, or 15C for third resubmittal of submittal 15, etc.). Show only one type of work or Product on each submittal. Mixed submittals will not be accepted.

C. Contractor's Stamp:

1. Apply Contractor's Stamp certifying that the items have been reviewed in detail by Contractor and that they comply with Contract requirements, except as noted by requested variances.

2. As a minimum, Contractor's Stamp shall include:
   a. Contractor's name
   b. Job number
   c. Submittal number
   d. Certification statement Contractor has reviewed submittal and it is in compliance with the Contract
   e. Signature line for Contractor

D. Submittals will be returned with one of the following Responses:

1. "ACKNOWLEDGE RECEIPT" when no response and resubmittal is required.

2. "NO EXCEPTION" when sufficient information has supplied to determine that item described is accepted and that no resubmittal is required.

3. "EXCEPTIONS AS NOTED" when sufficient information has been supplied to determine that item will be acceptable subject to changes, or exceptions, which will be clearly stated. When exceptions require additional changes, the changes must be submitted for approval. Resubmittal is not required when exceptions require no further changes.

4. "REJECTED-RESUBMIT" when submittal does not contain sufficient information, or when information provided does not meet Contract requirements. Additional data or details requested by Project Manager must be submitted to obtain approval.

1.03 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATES

A. When required by Specification sections, submit manufacturers' certificate of compliance for review by Project Manager.

B. Place Contractor's Stamp on front of certification.

C. Submit supporting reference data, affidavits, and certifications as appropriate.

D. Product certificates may be recent or from previous test results, but must be acceptable to Project Manager.

1.04 DESIGN MIXES

A. When required by Specification sections, submit design mixes for review.

B. Place Contractor's Stamp, as specified in this section, on the front of each design mix.

C. Mark each mix to identify proportions, gradations, and additives for each class and type of mix submitted. Include applicable test results from samples for each mix. Perform tests and certifications within 12 months of the date of the submittal.

D. Maintain copies of approved mixes at mixing plant.

1.05 CHANGES TO CONTRACT

A. Changes to Contract may be initiated by completing a Request for Information form. Project Manager will provide a response to Contractor by completing the form and returning it to Contractor.

1. If Contractor agrees that the response will result in no increase in cost or time, a Minor Change in the Work will be issued by City Engineer.

2. If Contractor and Project Manager agree that an increase in time or cost is warranted, Project Manager will forward the Request for Proposal for negotiation of a Change Order.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01340

SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Methods, schedules, and processes to be followed for Shop Drawings, Product Data and Sample submittals.

1.02 REQUIREMENT

A. Submit Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples as required by Document 00700 - General Conditions and Specification sections, using procedures specified in Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures and the requirements of this Section.

B. Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples are not considered Contract documents.

1.03 SHOP DRAWING/SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. Submit a separate Shop Drawing submittal schedule at same time the Construction Schedule is submitted. List Products for which Shop Drawings and other submittals are required in the order that they appear in Specifications. Include Product Data and Sample submittals in the schedule. Payment Applications or Certificates for Payment will not be processed until Project Manager has approved the Shop Drawing submittal schedule.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Submit a minimum of seven sets of Shop Drawings and Product Data in a form and quality suitable for microfilming. Review and sign Shop Drawings indicating compliance with the Contract.

B. Place Contractor's Stamp on each drawing as described in Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

C. Show the following accurately and distinctly:

1. Field and erection dimensions;

2. Arrangement and section views;

3. Relation to adjacent materials or structure, including complete information for making connections between the Work and work under other contracts;

4. Types of Products and finishes;

5. Parts list and descriptions;

6. Assembly drawings of equipment components and accessories showing respective positions and relationships to the complete equipment package;

7. Identify details by referencing drawing sheet and detail numbers, schedule or room numbers as shown on the Contract drawings, where necessary for clarity.

D. Scale drawings to provide a true representation of the specific equipment or item Furnished.

E. Coordinate and submit components, necessary for Project Manager to adequately review submittal, as a complete package. Reproduction of the Drawings for use in Shop Drawings is not allowed.

F. For major changes to original documents, submit Computer-Aided Design (CAD) drawings on a media acceptable to Project Manager.

1.05 PRODUCT DATA

A. Submit Product Data for review as required in Specifications.

B. Place Contractor's stamp, on each data item submitted, as described in Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

C. Mark each copy to identify applicable Products, models, and options to be used in the Work. Where required by Specifications, supplement manufacturers' standard data to provide information unique to the Work.

D. Give manufacturers, trade name, model or catalog designation and applicable reference standard for Products specified only by reference standards.

E. Pre-approved and Pre-qualified Products.

1. For "pre-approved", "pre-qualified" and "approved" Products named in the City standard products list, provide an appropriate list designation,

as described in Section 01630 - Product Substitution Procedures, within 30 days after Notice to Proceed.

2. For Products proposed as alternates to "approved" products, provide information required to demonstrate that the proposed Products meet the level of quality and performance criteria of the "approved" product.

1.06 SAMPLES

A. Submit Samples for review as required by Specifications. Have Samples reviewed and signed by a Registered Professional.

B. Place Contractor's stamp on each Sample or firmly attach a sheet of paper with Contractor's stamp, as described in Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

C. Submit the number of Samples specified in Specifications; Project Manager will retain one.

D. Reviewed Samples that may be used in the Work are identified in Specifications.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01351

ENVIRONMENTAL SAFETY AND WORKER PROTECTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

Environmental Safety and Worker Protection including monitoring emissions and exposure to workers and providing an appropriate response. The role of the Certified Industrial Hygienist (CIH) is also defined.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate measurement and payment for work performed under this Section. The Contractor shall include the cost for this work in the contract bid price for work of which this is a component part.

1.03 REFERENCES

The following is a list of applicable requirements to this project. It is not intended to be a complete listing of all laws and regulations to which the Contractor must comply.

A. Code of Federal Regulations

1. 29 CFR 1910, "Occupational Safety and Health Standards".

   a. 29 CFR 1910.146 "Permit-required confined spaces".

2. 29 CFR 1926, "Safety and Health Regulations for Construction" (Construction Industry Standards).

   a. 29 CFR 1926.33 "Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records".

   b. 29 CFR 1926.51, "Sanitation Standard".

   c. 29 CFR 1926.59, "Hazard Communication".

   d. 29 CFR 1926.62, "Lead".

   e. 29 CFR 1926.103 "Respiratory Protection".

3. 40 CFR 50, "National Primary and Secondary Ambient Air Quality

Standards"

a. 40 CFR 50 Appendix B, "Reference Method for the Determination of Suspended Particulate Matter in the Atmosphere (High Volume Method)".

b. 40 CFR 50 Appendix G, "Reference Method for the Determination of Lead in Suspended Particulate Matter Collected from Ambient Air".

4. 40 CFR 58, "Ambient Air Quality Surveillance".

5. 40 CFR 60 Appendix A, "Visual Determination of Fugitive Emissions from Material Sources and Smoke Emissions from Fires".

6. 40 CFR 117, "Determination of Reportable Quantities for Hazardous Substances".

7. 40 CFR 122, "Administered Permit Program: The National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System".

B. National Institute for Occupational Health and Safety

NIOSH Method 7082, "Lead" (or equivalent).

C. American Society for Testing and Materials

ASTM D3335, "Test Method for Low Concentrations for Lead, Cadmium, and Cobalt in Paint by Atomic Absorption Spectroscopy."

D. EPA (Environmental Protection Agency) Publications

1. SW-846, "Test Methods for Evaluating Solid Waste - Physical/Chemical Methods".

2. EPA Method 3050, "Acid Digestion of Sediments, Sludges, and Soils".

E. SSPC Guide 6, "Guide for Containing Debris Generated During Paint Removal Operations".

F. SSPC Guide 7, "Guide for the Disposal of Lead Contaminated Surface Preparation Debris".

G. SSPC Publication 91-18, "Industrial Lead Paint Removal Handbook".

H. Texas Commission on Environmental Quality

1. Texas Administrative Code (TAC) 30, Chapter 101, "General Rules".

2. Texas Administrative Code (TAC) 30, Chapter 111, "Control of Air Pollution from Visible Emissions and Particulate Matter".

3. Texas Administrative Code (TAC) 30, Chapter 290, "Water Hygiene".

4. Texas Administrative Code (TAC) 30, Chapter 307, "Surface Water Quality Standards".

5. Texas Administrative Code (TAC) 30, Chapter 309, "Effluent Limitations".

6. Texas Administrative Code (TAC) 30, Chapter 335, "Industrial Solid Waste and Municipal Hazardous Waste".

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall conform to requirements of Section 01330 – Submittal Procedures.

B. Submittals shall conform to appropriate codes for regulatory requirements.

1.05 DEFINITION

A. Acceptance Criteria: Minimum standards for the content of programs, plans, procedures, and designs required by this specification for the performance of this project. Acceptance criteria will be the basis for judging the responsiveness of Contractors' programs and will also be used as a basis for suspending work, if necessary.

B. Action Level: Employee exposure, without regard to the use of respirators, to an airborne concentration of lead of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air (µg/m3) calculated as an eight hour time-weighted average (TWA).

C. CERCLA: Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act; commonly called Superfund. Federal laws addressing the clean up of hazardous waste sites. Amended in 1986 by Superfund Amendments and Re-Authorization Act (SARA). EPA implementing regulations are contained in 40 CFR 300-373.

D. Competent Person: One who is capable of identifying existing and predictable lead hazards in the surroundings or working conditions and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them.

E. Containment System: An enclosure built around lead paint removal areas designed to contain lead paint debris and prevent emissions to the environment.

F. Dust Collection: Mechanical ventilation system designed specifically for the containment, capture, and removal of airborne particulate from the containment. Dust collection systems shall include ductwork, plenums and/or hoppers, and dust collector(s) for the removal of leaded paint dust from the air stream prior to discharging to the atmosphere.

G. Emission: A release of material to the air, water, or ground.

H. Entry/Exit Airlock: An isolated enclosure located at the entrance of the containment in which the workers remove contaminated dust and debris from their work clothes.

I. EPA: The US. Environmental Protection Agency. Regulations are contained in Title 40 of the Code of Federal Regulations (40 CFR).

J. Hazardous Waste (lead paint debris): Waste that is classified as hazardous due to its concentrations of regulated hazardous substances. Paint debris is classified as hazardous waste if, after testing by the Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure (TCLP), the leachate contains any of the 8 metals or other substances in concentrations at or above limits established in 40 CFR 261.

K. HEPA: A high efficiency particulate filter (HEPA) that is 99.97% efficient against particles of 0.3 microns in size or larger.

L. Lead Containing Dust and Debris: Dust and debris generated during the project which contains lead in any amount, including but not limited to pulverized paint, spent abrasive, filters (wet and dry), and containment materials upon which lead is still present.

M. NIOSH: National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health.

N. OSHA: Occupational Safety and Health Administration. Standards are contained in Title 29 of the Code of Federal Regulations, Parts 1910 and 1926 (29 CFR 1910 and 29 CFR 1926).

O. Owner: The City of Houston

P. PEL: Permissible Exposure Limit. An employee exposure, without regard to the use of respirators, to an airborne concentration of lead of 50 µg/m3 over an 8 hour TWA.

Q. POTW: Publicly Owned Treatment Works

R. RCRA: Resource Conservation and Recovery Act. Federal law pertaining to hazardous waste management. EPA implementing regulations are contained in 40 CFR 240-280.

S. Regulated Area: Area established by the Contractor to demarcate the zone(s) beyond which airborne concentrations of lead do not exceed the Action Level.

T. SSPC: Society for Protective Coatings. An independent, non-profit organization of engineers, technical specialists, and Contractors whose goal is research and development of new coatings and methods for removal, application, and disposal of existing coatings on industrial structures.

U. Tarpaulins: Flexible fabric, vinyl, plastic or canvas cover sheets, impenetrable to dust, wind, and water, used to enclose the cable and/or scaffold support system comprising the containment enclosure.

V. TCLP: Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure. Laboratory tests conducted on wastes that determine the amount of hazardous materials that leach out into a test solution. The test is intended to simulate the properties of water as it leaches through a solid waste landfill. TCLP testing is defined in 40 CFR 261, Appendix II.

W. TSP: Total Suspended Particulate

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT

A. The Contractor is to supply materials and equipment to insure the safety and protection of workers and the environment in accordance with these specifications.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AND MONITORING

NOTE: Section 09971 "Painting and Protective Coatings", 2.04 "Containment System" specifically identifies containment system requirements.

A. Protection of Ambient Air: Visible emissions are to be controlled to meet, as a minimum, TAC 30 Chapter 111," Control of Air Pollution from Visible Emissions and Particulate Matter" requirements and SSPC-Guide 6I (CON), Level 1 Emissions. Air monitoring and analysis may be performed by the City during abrasive blast cleaning operations. Such monitoring will be in accordance with 40

CFR 50, Appendix B, "Reference Method for the Determination of Suspended Particulate Matter in the Atmosphere" and/or 40 CFR 50, Appendix G, "Reference Method for the Determination of Lead in Suspended Particulate Matter Collected from Ambient Air". The limits for down wind pollutant concentrations allowed during blasting operations are as follows:

PM-10: 450 micrograms/cubic meter/ 8 hr.. (40 CFR 50.6)

Lead (Pb): 13.5 micrograms/cubic meter/8 hr.. (40 CFR 50.12)

Visible emissions and/or monitored emissions for PM-10 and TSP lead in excess of the above levels shall be cause for shut down of the project until corrections to control/ containment system or paint removal/ surface preparation operations are made to comply with these requirements.

B. Protection of Surface and Storm Water: The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to ensure lead contaminants do not enter surface waters or storm water drainage systems.

1. The Contractor shall protect the area around ditches and drainage inlets. Daily verification of proper protection to minimize the potential contaminants reaching the drainage system shall be performed.

2. The Contractor shall collect all potentially contaminated process waters for testing and, as appropriate, treatment. Process water from pressure washing, wet abrasive blast cleaning or hygiene facilities shall not be discharged to drainage systems or surface waters.

3. The Contractor may remove lead or other heavy metals from such waters through filtration, ion exchange or other approved means. Following treatment, water samples must be tested prior to disposal. Discharge to sanitary sewer lines requires authorization, in writing, from a POTW.

C. Protection of Soil and Grounds: The Contractor shall protect the soil around the structure to ensure that the soil does not become contaminated. Where lead is present in the coatings to be removed, as indicated in Section 02136 "Waste Material Handling and Disposal", the Contractor shall provide for the sampling and analysis of soil samples for total lead content.

1. Sampling and analysis shall be performed prior to commencement of paint removal operations to establish a background "base level". Soil samples shall be taken 3 feet from the base of the tank(s), at a distance of 6-10 feet beyond the proposed containment structure and at the property line.

2. Samples from each area shall be taken in a minimum of four directions, at

circular increments of 90^0, one of which shall include the direction of prevailing wind. Samples shall also be obtained, at the direction of the engineer, at the closest points of public access (i.e. housing, park, school).

3. The soil sampling procedure shall be as outlined in SSPC Guide 6 Section 5.5.5. Each sampling point shall be sufficiently identified on a site map to allow return to the exact location upon project completion.

4. Each sample shall be split in two portions, one for immediate analysis and the other sealed, preserved and furnished to the Engineer. The samples shall be analyzed in accordance with EPA Method 3050, "Acid Digestion of Sediments, Sludges and Soils", and shall be performed by a qualified laboratory approved by the Engineer.

5. Samples shall be obtained at the completion of work (post-construction samples) from all locations from which pre-construction samples were obtained. Samples shall be collected, handled and tested in the same manner as described above.

6. Upon completion of the work, soils found to be contaminated with lead in greater quantity than found in the background "base level", established at the start of the work, shall be removed by the Contractor to the depth necessary to achieve a lead content equivalent to, or below, the pre-construction back ground levels. Disposal shall be in accordance with applicable regulations.

7. The Contractor shall replace in-kind (i.e., topsoil, structural fill, etc.) with an equivalent amount of non-contaminated soil, compact in place and grade to pre-existing conditions. The Contractor shall also replace in-kind any surface improvements, such as grass, shrubs, etc. that were damaged or destroyed by the work. The soil removal, replacement and related work is to be performed by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.02 WORKER PROTECTION

A. The Contractor shall develop a written Compliance Program to establish and implement practices and procedures for assuring that no employee is exposed to lead at concentrations greater than 50 micrograms per cubic meter of air ($\mu g/m^3$), the OSHA permissible exposure limit (PEL). This program is in addition to other OSHA hazard communication and safety and health requirements of the project, and shall be revised and updated at least every six months.

1. The program shall establish methods for complying with this specification and the OSHA Construction Industry Lead Standard, 29 CFR 1926.62(e)(2)(ii). The Federal regulation is referred to as the "Lead

Standard" for the purpose of this specification.

2. The program shall apply to all Contractor employees associated with lead on the project, and to subcontractors working under the direct control of the Contractor who are associated with lead on the project.

3. The program shall assign the specific responsibility for implementation and enforcement of the program to the Contractors' company management. The Contractor's Competent Person(s) shall be identified, by name, and qualifications submitted. The Competent Person shall be on-site during any operations which involve the removal, handling or disturbing of lead containing materials.

4. The program shall contain a description of each activity in which lead is emitted (e.g. equipment used, material involved, controls in place, crew size, employee job responsibilities, operating procedures and maintenance practices).

5. The program shall contain a report of the technology considered in meeting the PEL and air monitoring data which documents the source of lead emissions.

6. The program shall contain a work practice program which includes items required in the lead standard such as protective clothing and equipment, housekeeping, and hygiene facilities and practices.

B. Exposure Monitoring: The Contractor shall be responsible for conducting and reporting worker exposure assessments in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.

1. Representative personal air samples shall be collected at the beginning of the lead removal work to determine employee lead exposures. Tasks involving potential lead exposure include, but are not limited to, paint removal operations, clean-up, and debris handling operations. Full shift (at least 7 hours) air samples shall be collected for each job classification in the exposure area. The range of exposures for lead removal and cleanup activities shall be determined.

2. During the initial monitoring, workers performing the following activities (or equivalent) shall be protected to the anticipated exposure levels which are dictated by the lead standard:

   a. 500 $\mu g/m^3$: Manual demolition of structures containing lead-containing coatings or paint (e.g., dry wall), manual scraping, manual sanding, heat gun applications, power tool cleaning with dust collection systems, and spray painting with lead paint.

b. 2,500 $\mu g/m^3$: Using lead-containing mortar, lead burning, or conducting the following activities where lead-containing coatings or paint are present: rivet busting, power tool cleaning without dust collection systems, clean-up activities where dry expendable abrasives are used, and the movement and removal of abrasive blasting enclosures.

c. More than 2,500 $\mu g/m^3$: Activities involving lead containing coatings or paint on structures disturbed by abrasive blasting, welding, cutting, and torch burning.

3. Protection requires compliance with the necessary respiratory protection, personal protective clothing and equipment, change areas and washing facilities, blood lead and zinc protoporphyrin monitoring, and employee training. The protection measures shall be modified, as necessary, after the exposure results are received.

4. Where initial monitoring indicates that lead exposures are below the Action Level, and where work activities and conditions remain the same as at the time of initial sampling, additional monitoring need not be repeated for that work activity.

5. Where the initial monitoring of a given work activity indicates that lead exposures are at or above the Action Level, additional exposure monitoring shall be conducted monthly. The monthly monitoring is more frequent than frequencies established in the lead standard which are at least every 6 months if above the Action Level, but below the PEL, or every 3 months if above the PEL.

6. All air samples shall be collected and analyzed according to NIOSH Method 7082, or equivalent. All samples shall be analyzed by laboratories accredited by the American Industrial Hygiene Association for metals analysis.

7. All exposed employees shall be notified in writing of the monitoring results within five (5) days after receiving the results.

8. The Action Level for airborne lead exposure is 30 $\mu g/m^3$, as an 8-hour time weighted average (TWA) concentration, without regard to the use of respirators. Whenever workers' airborne lead exposures exceed the Action Level, the Contractor shall implement the following:

   a. Periodic Exposure Monitoring
   b. Employee Information and Training

c. Employee Medical Surveillance and Medical Removal Protection
d. Housekeeping
e. Record keeping
f. Signs and Regulated Areas

9. The Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) for airborne lead exposure is 50 $\mu g/m^3$, as an 8-hour TWA concentration. When the work area contains airborne lead levels above the PEL the Contractor shall implement the following in addition to those items listed in 3.02.B.8 of this section:

a. Compliance Program
b. Respiratory Protection
c. Protective Clothing and Equipment
d. Hygiene Facilities and Practices

C. Respiratory Protection: After feasible engineering controls and work practices have been implemented, respiratory protection shall be used to maintain employees' lead exposures below the PEL.

1. Respirators shall be worn by all employees, other Contractors, inspectors, or observers who enter regulated areas.

2. The Contractor shall develop a written Respiratory Protection Program in compliance with 29 CFR 1910.134, paragraphs (b), (d), (e), and (f), and the lead standard. The program shall address the selection, use, maintenance, and inspection of respirators, and qualifications for respirator users.

D. Protective Clothing and Equipment: The Contractor shall provide protective clothing and equipment and ensure they are worn by all employees whose lead exposures exceed the PEL, or who enter regulated areas.

1. Protective clothing shall include washable and/or disposable full body coveralls, gloves, foot coverings, and hoods. Other protective equipment shall include face shields, hard hats, eye protection, and hearing protection as appropriate.

2. Disposable protective clothing shall be used for no more than one work day. Such clothing may have to be disposed of as hazardous waste.

3. Reusable protective equipment shall be cleaned or replaced weekly if exposure levels are less than 200 $\mu g/m^3$, or daily if the exposure levels are greater than or equal to 200 $\mu g/m^3$.

4. Clothing shall not be removed or "cleaned" by any means which could reintroduce the lead dust into the ambient air. This includes brushing,

shaking, and blowing. Vacuums equipped with HEPA filters shall be used for this purpose.

5. Reusable coveralls shall be collected at the end of each work day in closed containers. The containers shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62(g)(2)(vii). Contaminated clothing shall be cleaned in accordance with all applicable Federal, State, or local regulations pertaining to lead-contaminated laundry and water discharge. Laundries shall be informed that the clothing contains lead. If the clothing is washed on site, the discharge water shall be filtered, containerized, and arrangements made with the local POTW or other approved means of proper disposal.

6. Protective clothing and equipment shall be removed in the contaminated section of the change area and shall not be worn into any clean areas.

7. The Contractor shall provide the necessary clothing and equipment for use by the Owner and its designated representatives.

E. Housekeeping: Accumulations of lead-containing dust and debris generated by work activities shall be removed and cleaned daily.

1. All persons doing the cleanup shall be trained in performing lead activities, respirator qualified, and participate in the medical surveillance program. Respirators and protective clothing shall be worn by all persons doing the cleanup.

2. Compressed air may be used for housekeeping if used within containment and in conjunction with a ventilation system designed to capture the dust. Otherwise, HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaners shall be employed.

3. All lead-containing dust and debris shall be collected in sealed containers. The waste shall be tested to determine whether it will be disposed of as hazardous waste.

F. Personal Hygiene Facilities and Practices

1. Clean change areas shall be provided when employees' lead exposures exceed the PEL. The change areas shall be equipped with storage facilities for street clothing and a separate area for the removal and storage of lead-contaminated clothing and equipment. They shall be designed and used so that contamination of street clothing does not occur. Employees shall not leave the project site wearing any clothing worn while performing lead activities. Airborne lead exposures in the change area shall be maintained below the Action Level.

2. Shower facilities shall be provided whenever employees' lead exposures exceed the PEL. Shower facilities shall comply with OSHA Sanitation Standard, 29 CFR 1929.51. All employees whose lead exposures exceed the PEL shall shower at the end of each work shift or before leaving the project area. The shower facilities shall be made available for use by the Owner and its representatives, such as inspectors or observers.

3. Arrangements shall be made with the local POTW for the proper disposal of the shower and wash water after filtration (e.g., through a three stage 100, 50, and 5 micron filtering system), ion exchange, or other approved treatment technology.

4. Clean lunch areas shall be provided for all employees whose lead exposures exceed the PEL. Employees shall remove or clean (by vacuuming) their protective clothing and wash their hands and face before entering the lunch area. Lead exposures in the lunch area shall be maintained as free as practicable from lead contamination.

5. An adequate number of clean lavatory and hand washing facilities shall be provided. These shall comply with the OSHA Sanitation Standard, 29 CFR 1929.51.

6. Eating, drinking, smoking, chewing of food or tobacco products, or the application of cosmetics shall not be permitted in any areas where the lead exposures exceed the PEL. Thorough washing of hands and face is required prior to undertaking any of these activities.

G. Medical Surveillance and Medical Removal Protection

1. All employees who are exposed to lead above the Action Level in a single day during this project shall be provided with initial and periodic medical examinations and blood lead tests as required by the lead standard. A final blood lead test shall be provided for each worker upon completion of the project, or at any time a worker's employment at the project ceases.

2. When blood lead levels over 50 µg/dl are encountered, the Contractor shall provide for the temporary removal of employees from lead exposure above the Action Level. The required medical surveillance and periodic blood lead tests shall be provided in strict accordance with the lead standard throughout the removal.

3. Employees who will be required to wear a respirator or who request one shall be provided with a respirator and the necessary medical examinations to determine their ability to wear a respirator.

4. All examinations shall be provided by the Contractor and shall be performed by or under the direct supervision of a licensed physician.

H. Employee Information and Training

1. The Contractor shall provide lead training for all employees who are exposed to lead above the Action Level for this project.

2. The content of lead training shall include, as a minimum, those items listed in the lead standard.

3. Training shall also include hazard communication in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.59.

4. The Contractor shall notify other employers at the project site of the nature of the lead exposure work, the need to remain out of exposure areas, the warning sign and labeling system in effect, and the potential need for them to take measures to protect their employees.

I. Signs and Regulated Areas

1. The Contractor shall establish a regulated area surrounding activities where lead exposures exceed the Action Level. This includes locations where lead-containing debris is handled or transferred to storage containers.

2. The regulated area shall be demarcated by ropes, tape, walls, or containment's with caution signs posted at all accessible sides. Signs shall contain the legend:

WARNING
LEAD WORK AREA
POISON
NO SMOKING OR EATING

3. The Contractor shall control access of persons into regulated areas. Access shall be limited to individuals with proper training and personal protective equipment, and medical surveillance testing.

4. All persons entering regulated areas shall wear protective clothing and respirators.

5. Eating, drinking, smoking, and chewing of food or tobacco products shall be prohibited in regulated areas and in any area where lead exposures exceed the Action Level.

J. Record keeping: All records relating to training, medical examinations, blood lead monitoring, and exposure monitoring shall be maintained by the Contractor as required by the lead standard. All records shall be available for review by the Owner or its representative upon request.

3.03 CERTIFIED INDUSTRIAL HYGIENIST (CIH)

A. The Contractor shall provide for the services of a Certified Industrial Hygienist (CIH) who must be certified by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene in comprehensive practice.

B. Duties of the CIH shall be as follows:

1. Conduct and/or verify training for contractor employees in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 (l).

2. Review and approve Contractor's Written Compliance Plan for conformance to 29 CFR 1926.62(e)(2)(ii) and this Specification.
3. Monitor and evaluate work weekly to assure conformance with the approved plan and that hazardous exposure is adequately controlled in accordance with worker safety and health requirements of these specifications

4. Provide monthly reports of work compliance with control requirements in regards to working in a lead environment.

C. Activities of the CIH shall include:

1. Meet with City to discuss details of Contractor's Written Compliance Plan for lead paint removal.

2. Ensure worker and area air monitoring, testing and reporting are conducted by or under the direction of the CIH.

3. Furnish a detailed worker and area air monitoring schedule coordinated with Contractor's proposed production schedule.

4. Directing, monitoring and inspecting lead paint removal work to ensure that the requirements of the Contract have been satisfied during the entire lead paint removal operation.

5. Report results of air monitoring samples to the Engineer, signed by the CIH within 48 hours after the air samples are taken.

6. The CIH shall review sampling data, collected on a day when lead paint

removal operations occur, to determine if conditions require any change in work methods. Removal work shall not continue until approval is given by the CIH.

7. The CIH shall verify in writing and submit monitoring data to verify that:

   a. Air borne lead levels at and beyond the lead control (regulated) area were and remained less than 30 mg/m^3 of air

   b. Contractor conformance to 29 CFR 1926.62 and Item 3.02, above

   c. There were no visible accumulations of lead contaminated paint, dust or debris on the work site. Adjacent areas that may have become contaminated were properly cleaned and inspected.

   d. The CIH shall verify that the work area and contractor's equipment have been adequately cleaned of lead contamination prior to demobilization from the work site.

3.04 DEMOBILIZATION

The Contractor shall not remove the lead control area, boundaries, warning signs, etc. prior to proper removal of all hazardous wastes, debris and materials from the site and the City's receipt and acceptance of the CIH's verification.

END OF SECTION

Section 01410

TPDES REQUIREMENTS

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Documentation to be prepared and signed by Contractor/Operator before conducting construction operations, in accordance with the Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) Construction General Permit Number TXR 150000 issued February 15, 2008 (the Construction General Permit).

B. Implementation, maintenance inspection, and termination of storm water pollution prevention control measures including, but not limited to, erosion and sediment controls, storm water management plans, waste collection and disposal, off-site vehicle tracking, and other appropriate practices shown on the Drawings or specified elsewhere in the Contract.

C. Review of the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWP3) implementation in a meeting with Project Manager prior to start of construction.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

A. Commencement of Construction Activities: The exposure of soil resulting from activities such as clearing, grading, and excavation activities, as well as other construction related activities (e.g., stock piling of fill material, demolition).

B. Large Construction Activity: Project that:o

1. disturbs five acres or more, or

2. disturbs less than five acres but is part of a larger common plan of development that will disturb five acres or more of land.

C. Small Construction Activity: Project that:

1. disturbs one or more acres but less than five acres, or

2. disturbs less than one acre but is part of a larger common plan of development that will ultimately disturb one or more acres but less than five acres.

D. TPDES Operator:

Operator - The person or persons associated with a large or small construction activity that is either a primary or secondary as defined below:

Primary Operator – the person or persons associated with a large or small construction activity that meets either of the following two criteria:

(a) the persons have operational control over construction plans and specifications, including the ability to make modifications to those plans and specifications; or

(b) the person or persons have day-to-day operational control of those activities at a construction site that are necessary to ensure compliance with a storm water pollution prevention plan (SWP3) for the site or other permit conditions (e.g., they are authorized to direct workers at a site to carry out activities required by the SWP3 or comply with other permit conditions).

Secondary Operator – The person whose operational control is limited to the employment of other operators or to the ability to approve or disapprove changes to plans and specifications. A secondary operator is also defined as a primary operators if there are no other operators if there are no other operators at the construction site.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 SITE SPECIFIC STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWP3)

A. Prepare a SWP3 following Part III of the Construction General Permit and the Storm Water Management Handbook for Construction Activities issued under City Ordinance Section 47-695(b). If conflicts exist between the Construction General Permit and the handbook, the more stringent requirements will apply.

B. Update or revise the SWP3 as needed during the construction following Part III, Section E of the Construction General Permit.

C. Submit the SWP3 and any updates or revisions to Project Manager for review and address comments prior to commencing, or continuing, construction activities.

3.02 NOTICE OF INTENT For Large Construction Activity

A. Fill out, sign, and date TCEQ Form 20022 (03/05/2008) Notice of Intent (NOI) for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity under the TPDES Construction General Permit (TXR 150000), **ATTACHMENT 1** of this Section 01410.

B. Transmit the signed Contractor's copy of TCEQ Form 20022 (03/05/2008), along with a $325.00 check, made out to Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, and the completed Payment Submittal Form to Project Manager.

C. Project Manager will complete a separate TCEQ Form 20022 (03/05/2008) for City's Notice of Intent, and will submit both Notices, along with checks for application fees, to the TCEQ.

D. Submission of the Notice of Intent form by both the City and Contractor to TCEQ if mailing is required a minimum of seven days before Commencement of Construction Activities.

3.03 CONSTRUCTION SITE NOTICE FOR SMALL CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY

A. Fill out, sign, and date the Construction Site Notice, Attachment 2 to TPDES General Permit TXR 150000, "Construction Site Notice", **ATTACHMENT 2** of this Section 01410.

B. Transmit the signed Construction Site Notice to Project Manager at least seven days prior to Commencement of Construction Activity.

3.04 CERTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Fill out TPDES Operator's Information form, **ATTACHMENT 3** of this Section 01410, including Contractor's name, address, and telephone number, and the names of persons or firms responsible for maintenance and inspection of erosion and sediment control measures. Use multiple copies as required to document full information.

B. Contractor and Subcontractors shall sign and date the Contractor's / Subcontractor's Certification for TPDES Permitting, **ATTACHMENT 4** of this Section 01410. Include this certification with other Project certification forms.

C. Submit properly completed certification forms to Project Manager for review before beginning construction operations.

D. Conduct inspections in accordance with TCEQ requirements. Ensure persons or firms responsible for maintenance and inspection of erosion and sediment control measures read, fill out, sign, and date the Erosion Control Contractor's Certification for Inspection and Maintenance. Use the City of Houston Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan, Construction Site Inspection Report, **ATTACHMENT 5** of this Section 01410 to record maintenance inspections and repairs.

3.05 RETENTION OF RECORDS

A. Keep a copy of this document and the SWP3 in a readily accessible location at the construction site from Commencement of Construction Activity until submission of the Notice of Termination (NOT) for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity under TPDES Construction General Permit (TXR 150000). Contractors with day-to-day operational control over SWP3 implementation shall have a copy of the SWP3 available at a central location, on-site, for the use of all operators and those identified as having responsibilities under the SWP3. Upon submission of the NOT, submit all required forms and a copy of the SWP3 with all revisions to Project Manager.

3.06 REQUIRED NOTICES

A. Post the following notices from effective date of the SWP3 until date of final site stabilization as defined in the Construction General Permit:

1. Post the TPDES permit number for Large Construction Activity, with a signed TCEQ Construction Site Notice for large or Small Construction Activity. Signed copies of the City's and Contractor's NOI must also be posted.

2. Post notices near the main entrance of the construction site in a prominent place where it is safely and readily available for viewing by General Public, Local, State, and Federal Authorities. Post name and telephone number of Contractor's local contact person, brief project description and location of the SWP3.

    a. If posting near a main entrance is not feasible due to safety concerns, coordinate posting of notice with Project Manager to conform to requirements of the Construction General Permit.

    b. If Project is a linear construction project (e.g.: road, utilities, etc.), post notice in a publicly accessible location near active construction. Move notice as necessary.

3. Post a notice to equipment and vehicles operators, instructing them to stop, check, and clean tires of debris and mud before driving onto traffic lanes. Post at each stabilized construction access area.

4. Post a notice of waste disposal procedures in a readily visible location on site.

3.07 ON-SITE WASTE MATERIAL STORAGE

A. On-site waste material storage shall be self-contained and shall satisfy appropriate local, state, and federal rules and regulations.

B. Prepare list of waste material to be stored on-site. Update list as necessary to include up-to-date information. Keep a copy of updated list with the SWP3.

C. Prepare description of controls to reduce pollutants generated from on-site storage. Include storage practices necessary to minimize exposure of materials to storm water, and spill prevention and response measures consistent with best management practices. Keep a copy of the description with the SWP3.

3.08 NOTICE OF TERMINATION

A. Submit a NOT, **ATTACHMENT 7** of this Section 01410, to Project Manager within 30 days after:

1. Final stabilization has been achieved on all portions of the site that are the responsibility of the Contractor; or

2. Another operator has assumed control over all areas of the site that have not been stabilized; and

3. All silt fences and other temporary erosion controls have either been removed, scheduled to be removed as defined in the SWP3, or transferred to a new operator if the new operator has sought permit coverage.

B. Project Manager will complete City's NOT and submit Contractor and City's notices to the TCEQ and MS4 entities.

END OF SECTION

PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

ATTACHMENT 1

Notice of Intent (NOI) for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity under the TPDES Construction General Permit (TXR150000)

For help completing this application, read the TXR150000 NOI Instructions (TCEQ-20022-Instructions).

TCEQ Office Use Only
TPDES Permit Number: TXR15|__|__|__|__| - NO
GIN Number: |__|__|__|__|__|__|__|__|

A. Construction Site Operator ☐ New ☐ No Change Customer Reference Number: CN_____
Name: _____
Mailing Address: _____ City: _____ State: ____ Zip Code: _____
Country Mailing Information (*if outside USA*) Territory: _____ Country Code: _____ Postal Code: _____
Phone Number: _____ Extension: _____ Fax Number: _____
E-mail Address: _____
Type of Operator: ☐ Individual ☐ Sole Proprietorship - D.B.A. ☐ Partnership ☐ Corporation ☐ Federal Government
☐ State Government ☐ County Government ☐ City Government ☐ Other: _____
Independent Operator? ☐ Yes ☐ No Number of Employees: ☐ 0-20 ☐ 21-100 ☐ 101-250 ☐ 251-500 ☐ 501 or higher
Federal Tax ID: _____ State Franchise Tax ID Number: _____ DUNS Number: _____

B. Billing Address
Name: _____
Mailing Address: _____ City: _____ State: ____ Zip Code: _____
Country Mailing Information (*if outside USA*) Territory: _____ Country Code: _____ Postal Code: _____

C. Project / Site Information ☐ New ☐ No Change Regulated Entity Reference Number: RN_____
Name: _____
Mailing Address: _____ City: _____ State: ____ Zip Code: _____
Physical Address: _____ City: _____ County: _____ Zip Code: _____
Location Access Description: _____
Latitude: ___ ° ___ ' ___ " N Longitude: ___ ° ___ ' ___ " W Degrees (°), Minutes ('), and Seconds (")
Latitude: _____ Longitude: – _____ Decimal Form
Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) code: _____ Also, describe the construction activity at this site *(do not repeat the SIC code)*:
_____
Has a storm water pollution prevention plan been prepared as specified in the general permit (TXR150000)? ☐ Yes ☐ No
Estimated area of land disturbed (to the nearest acre): _____ Is the project / site located on Indian Country Lands? ☐ Yes ☐ No
Does this project / site discharge storm water into a municipal separate storm sewer system (MS4)? ☐ Yes ☐ No
If yes, provide the name of the MS4 operator: _____
Provide the name or segment number of the water body that receives storm water from this project / site: _____

D. Contact - If the TCEQ needs additional information regarding this application, who should be contacted?
Name: _____ Title: _____
Phone Number: _____ Extension: _____ Fax Number: _____
E-mail Address: _____

E. Payment Information - Check / Money Order Number: _____ Name on Check / Money Order: _____

F. Certification
I certify under penalty of law that this document was prepared under my direction or supervision in accordance with a system designed to assure that qualified personnel properly gather and evaluate the information submitted. Based on my inquiry of the person or persons who manage the system, or those persons directly responsible for gathering the information, the information submitted is, to the best of my knowledge and belief, true, accurate, and complete. I am aware there are significant penalties for submitting false information, including the possibility of fine and imprisonment for knowing violations.
Construction Site Operator:
Prefix: _____ First: _____ Middle: _____
Last: _____ Suffix: _____ Title: _____
Signature: _____ Date: _____

If you have questions on how to fill out this form or about the storm water program, please contact us at (512) 239-4671.
Individuals are entitled to request and review their personal information that the agency gathers on its forms. They may also have any errors in their information corrected. To review such information, contact us at (512) 239-3282.

The completed NOI must be mailed to the following address. Use the attached document to submit the $100 application fee. Please note that the NOI and application fee are submitted separately to different addresses.

Texas Commission on Environmental Quality
Storm Water & General Permits Team; MC - 228
P.O. Box 13087
Austin, Texas 78711-3087

TCEQ-20022 (05/03) **Page 1 of 2**

ATTACHMENT 1

Texas Commission on Environmental Quality
Payment Submittal Form

The storm water application fee shall be sent under separate cover to the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality.

This form must be used to submit your Storm Water Application Fee. Please complete the following information, staple your check in the space provided at the bottom of this document, and mail it to:

BY REGULAR U.S. MAIL

Texas Commission on Environmental Quality
Financial Administration Division
Cashier's Office, MC-214
P.O. Box 13088
Austin, TX 78711-3088

BY OVERNIGHT/EXPRESS MAIL

Texas Commission on Environmental Quality
Financial Administration Division
Cashier's Office, MC-214
12100 Park 35 Circle
Austin, TX 78753

Fee Code: GPA

Storm Water General Permit: TXR150000

Check / Money Order No: _____ Amount of Check/Money Order: _____

Date of Check or Money Order: _____

Name on Check or Money Order: _____

Facility / Site Name: _____

Facility / Site Physical Address: _____

City: _____ Zip Code: _____

Staple Check In This Space

ATTACHMENT 1

Completing the Notice of Intent for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity under the TPDES Construction General Permit (TXR150000)

A. Construction Site Operator Information

Check boxes and Customer Reference Number

These boxes designate the operator's status as a TCEQ "customer"—in other words, an individual or business that is involved in an activity that we regulate. We assign each customer a number that begins with "CN," followed by nine digits. ***This is not a permit number, registration number, or license number.*** In the remainder of this section, we will use "this customer" to mean the operator for Part A of the form.

- If this customer has not been assigned a Customer Reference Number or if this number is unknown, check "New" and leave the space for the Customer Reference Number blank.
- If this customer has already been assigned this number, enter the operator's Customer Reference Number and:
  - Check "No Change" if all the remaining customer information is the same as previously reported. However, you must still complete most blanks in this form for this notice of intent to be valid.
  - If this customer's information has changed since the last time it was reported to the TCEQ, check neither box and complete the remainder of this notice of intent.
- ***Do not enter a permit number, registration number, or license number in place of the Customer Reference Number.***

Name

Enter the legal name of this customer as authorized to do business in Texas. Include any abbreviations (LLC, Inc., etc.).

Mailing Address

Enter a central and general mailing address for this customer to receive mail from the TCEQ. For example, if this customer is a large company, this address might be the corporate or regional headquarters. On the other hand, for a smaller business, this address could be the same as the site address.

If this is a street address, please follow US Postal Service standards. In brief, these standards require this information in this order:

- the "house" number—for example, the 1401 in 1401 Main St
- if there is a direction before the street name, the one- or two-letter abbreviation of that direction (N, S, E, W, NE, SE, SW, or NW)
- the street name (if a numbered street, do not spell out the number—for example, 6th St, not Sixth St)
- an appropriate abbreviation of the type of street—for example, St, Ave, Blvd, Fwy, Exwy, Hwy, Cr, Ct, Ln
- if there is a direction after the street name, the one- or two-letter abbreviation of that direction (N, S, E, W, NE, SE, SW, or NW)
- if there is a room number, suite number, or company mail code

City, State, *and* ZIP Code

Enter the name of the city, the two-letter USPS abbreviation for the state (for example, TX), and the ZIP Code. (Enter the full ZIP+4 if you know it.)

Country Mailing Information

If this address is ***outside*** the United States, enter the territory name, country code, and any non-ZIP mailing codes or other non–U.S. Postal Service features here. If this address is ***inside*** the United States, leave these spaces blank.

Phone Number *and* Extension

This number should correspond to this customer's mailing address given earlier. Enter the area code and phone number here. Leave "Extension" blank if this customer's phone system lacks this feature.

Fax Number

This number should correspond to this customer's mailing address given earlier. Enter the area code and fax number here.

E-mail Address

As with the mailing address, this should be a general address that is appropriate for e-mail to this customer's central or regional headquarters, if applicable.

If "No Change" was checked for this customer, you may skip the rest of the fields in this part of the form and continue to the next part of the NOI.

Type of Operator

Check ***only one*** box.

Check ...	*if this customer ...*
Individual	is a person and has not established a business to do whatever causes them to be regulated by us.
Sole Proprietorship—D.B.A.	is a business that is owned by only one person and has not been incorporated. This business may: • be under the person's name • have its own name ("doing business as," or d.b.a.) • have any number of employees
Partnership	is a business that is established as a partnership as defined by the Texas Secretary of State's Office.
Corporation	meets all of these conditions: • is a legally incorporated entity under the laws of any state or country • is recognized as a corporation by the Texas Secretary of State • has proper operating authority to operate in Texas
Federal, state, county, or city government (as appropriate)	is either an agency of one of these levels of government or the governmental body itself (If a utility district, water district, tribal government, college district, council of governments, or river authority, check "Other" and write in the specific type of government.)
Other	fits none of the above descriptions. Enter a short description of the type of customer in the blank provided.

Independent Operator?

Check "No" if this customer is a subsidiary or part of a larger company. Otherwise, check "Yes."

Number of Employees

Check one box to show the number of employees for this customer's entire company, at all locations. ***This is not necessarily the number of employees at the site named in this NOI.***

Federal Tax ID

All businesses, except for some small sole proprietors, should have a federal taxpayer identification number (TIN). Enter this number here. Use no prefixes, dashes, or hyphens. Individuals and sole proprietors do not need to provide a federal tax ID.

State Franchise Tax ID

Corporations and limited liability companies that operate in Texas are issued a franchise tax identification number. If this customer is a corporation or limited liability company, enter this number here.

DUNS Number

Most businesses have a DUNS (Data Universal Numbering System) number issued by Dun and Bradstreet Corp. If this customer has one, enter it here.

B. Billing Address

We will mail the annual fee invoice for this site to the address entered in this section.

Name

Enter the legal name of the person or business to which we should mail this site's fee invoice each year.

Mailing Address

Enter the specific mailing address to which we should mail this site's fee invoice each year. If this is a street address, please follow the US Postal Service standards as described under "A. Construction Site Operator Information" on page 1 of these instructions.

City, State, *and* ZIP Code

Enter the name of the city, the two-letter USPS abbreviation for the state (for example, TX), and the ZIP Code. (Enter the full ZIP+4 if you know it.)

Country Mailing Information

If this address is ***outside*** the United States, enter the territory name, country code, and any non-ZIP mailing codes or other non–U.S. Postal

ATTACHMENT 1

Service features here. If this address is ***inside*** the United States, leave these spaces blank.

C. Project / Site Information

Check boxes *and* Regulated Entity Reference Number
These boxes designate this site's status as a TCEQ "regulated entity"—in other words, a location where an activity that we regulate occurs. We assign each regulated entity a number that begins with "RN," followed by nine digits. ***This is not a permit number, registration number, or license number.***

- If this site has not been assigned a Regulated Entity Reference Number or if this number is unknown, check "New" and leave the space for the Regulated Entity Reference Number blank.
- If this site has already been assigned this number, enter the Regulated Entity Reference Number and:
  - Check "No Change" if all the remaining information is the same as previously reported. However, even if there has been no change, you must complete this section at least through "E-mail Address" for this NOI to be valid.
  - If this site's information has changed since the last time it was reported to the TCEQ, check neither box and complete the remainder of this notice of intent.
- ***Do not enter a permit number, registration number, or license number in place of the Regulated Entity Reference Number.***

Name
Enter the name by which you want this site to be known to the TCEQ.

Mailing Address
Enter the specific mailing address for this site. If this is a street address, please follow the US Postal Service standards as described under "A. Construction Site Operator Information" on page 1 of these instructions. If the project / site's mailing address is the same as what is provided in Section A, you may enter "Same as Section A".

City, State, *and* ZIP Code
Enter the name of the city, the two-letter USPS abbreviation for the state (for example, TX), and the ZIP Code. (Enter the full ZIP+4 if you know it.)

Physical Address
Enter the physical address of the site itself. TCEQ staff should be able to use this address to find the site. Please follow the US Postal Service standards as described under "A. Construction Site Operator Information" on page 1 of these instructions. If the project / site does not have a physical address, enter "No Address".

City, County, *and* ZIP Code
Enter the name of the city, the county, and the ZIP Code. (Enter the full ZIP+4 if you know it.) This information must be provided even if you have entered "No Address" in the previous field.

Location Access Description
Enter a physical description of the location of the site based on highway intersections and/or permanent landmarks.

Latitude *and* Longitude
Enter the latitude and longitude of the site in ***either*** degrees, minutes, and seconds ***or*** decimal form.

For help obtaining the latitude and longitude, go to:
http://www.tnrcc.state.tx.us/gis/drgview.html

Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) Code and Activity Description

Provide the SIC code that best describes the construction activity being conducted at the site.

For help with SIC codes, go to:
http://www.osha.gov/oshstats/sicser.html

In addition to the SIC code, you must also provide a description of the construction activity being conducted at the site. This may include such descriptions as: "Apartment Building Construction" or "Shopping Center Construction."

Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan
This plan identifies the areas and activities that could produce contaminated runoff at your site and then tells how you will ensure that this contamination is mitigated. For example, in describing your mitigation measures, your site's plan might identify the devices that collect and filter storm water, tell how those devices are to be maintained, and tell how frequently that maintenance is to be carried out. ***You must develop this plan before you complete this NOI.*** This plan must be available for a TCEQ investigator to review on request. Specific requirements for the development of the plan can be found in the *Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System Construction General Permit (TXR150000)*.

Estimated Area of Land Disturbed
Provide the approximate number of acres that the construction site will disturb. It is appropriate to enter a value less than 5, only if the project is part of a larger common plan that disturbs five or more acres. If the acreage is less than 1, enter 1. "Disturb" means any clearing, grading, excavating, or other similar activities.

Is the site located on Indian Country Lands?
Check "Yes" only if the site is on a reservation or other areas designated by the federal government as Indian Country Lands. If not, check "No."

Destination of Storm Water Discharge
The storm water from your site eventually reaches a receiving water body such as a local stream or lake, possibly via a drainage ditch. The discharge may initially be into a municipal separate storm sewer system (MS4). Check the appropriate boxes for whether storm water is discharged into an MS4. If you checked "Yes" to "An MS4?", then enter the name of the entity that operates the storm sewer—often a city, town, or utility district, but possibly another form of government.

You must also provide the name of the water body that receives the discharge from the construction site (a local stream or lake). Storm water may be discharged directly to a receiving stream or via a storm sewer system. If known, please include the segment number if the discharge is to a classified water body.

For a map that includes segment numbers, go to:
http://www.tnrcc.state.tx.us/water/quality/data/index.html

D. Contact

Give all the relevant information for the person whom TCEQ can contact if there are questions about any of the information on this form—perhaps the same person who completed the form.

E. Payment Information

Provide the number and account holder name from the check or money order used to pay the $100 application fee.

F. Certification

The operator must sign and date this statement to validate this NOI. Be sure to enter the full legal name of the person signing the form and the relevant title—for example, "Operator," "Vice-President," or "Partner." Use the "Prefix" blank for such titles as Dr., Mr., or Ms., as desired. Use the "Suffix" blank for such designations as Ph.D., Jr., Sr., III, or J.D., if applicable.

For a corporation, the application shall be signed by a responsible corporate officer. A responsible corporate officer means a president, secretary, treasurer, or vice-president of the corporation in charge of a principal business function, or any other person who performs similar policy or decision-making functions for the corporation; or the manager of one or more manufacturing, production, or operating facilities employing more than 250 persons or having gross annual sales or expenditures exceeding $25 million (in second-quarter 1980 dollars). If authority to sign documents has been assigned or delegated to the manager in accordance with corporate procedures. Corporate procedures governing authority to sign permit applications may provide for assignment or delegation to applicable corporate positions rather than to specific individuals.

For a partnership or sole proprietorship, the application shall be signed by a general partner or the proprietor, respectively.

For a municipality, state, federal, or other public agency, the application shall be signed by either a principal executive officer or a ranking elected official. For purposes of this application, a principal executive officer of a federal agency includes the chief executive officer of the agency, or a senior executive officer having responsibility for the overall operations of a principal geographic unit of the agency (e.g. regional administrator of the United States Environmental Protection Agency).

Questions?

If you have questions about any of the information on this form, contact our Storm Water Program at 512/239-4671 or look for "Storm Water" on our Web site:

www.tceq.state.tx.us

ATTACHMENT 2

CONSTRUCTION SITE NOTICE

FOR THE
Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ)
Storm Water Program

TPDES GENERAL PERMIT TXR150000

The following information is posted in compliance with **Part II.D.2.** of the TCEQ General Permit Number TXR150000 for discharges of storm water runoff from construction sites. Additional information regarding the TCEQ storm water permit program may be found on the internet at:
www.tnrcc.state.tx.us/permitting/waterperm/wwperm/tpdestorm

Contact Name and Phone Number:	
Project Description: (Physical address or description of the site's location, estimated start date and projected end date, or date that disturbed soils will be stabilized)	
Location of Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan :	

For Construction Sites Authorized Under Part II.D.2. (Obtaining Authorization to Discharge) the following certification must be completed:

I _____ (Typed or Printed Name Person Completing This Certification) certify under penalty of law that I have read and understand the eligibility requirements for claiming an authorization under Part II.D.2. of TPDES General Permit TXR150000 and agree to comply with the terms of this permit. A storm water pollution prevention plan has been developed and implemented according to permit requirements. A copy of this signed notice is supplied to the operator of the MS4 if discharges enter an MS4 system. I am aware there are significant penalties for providing false information or for conducting unauthorized discharges, including the possibility of fine and imprisonment for knowing violations.

_____ _____
Signature and Title Date

PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

ATTACHMENT 3

TPDES OPERATOR'S INFORMATION

Owner's Name and Address: City of Houston

Mr. _____
(City Official)

_____
(Department)
P. O. Box 1562
Houston, Texas 77251-1562
(713) 247-1000

Contractors' Names and Addresses:

General Contractor: _____
_____
_____
_____
Telephone: _____

Site Superintendent: _____
_____
_____
_____
Telephone: _____

Erosion Control and Maintenance Inspection: _____
_____
_____
_____
Telephone: _____

Subcontractors' Names and Addresses:

_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
Phone: _____ Phone: _____

Note: Insert name, address, and telephone number of person or firms

PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

ATTACHMENT 4

CONTRACTOR'S / SUBCONTRACTOR'S

CERTIFICATION FOR TPDES PERMITTING

I certify under penalty of law that I understand the terms and conditions of TPDES General Permit No. TXR150000 and the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan for the construction site identified as part of this certification.

Signature: _____

Name: (printed or typed) _____

Title: _____

Company: _____

Address: _____

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Name: (printed or typed) _____

Title: _____

Company: _____

Address: _____

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Name: (printed or typed) _____

Title: _____

Company: _____

Address: _____

Date: _____

PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

ATTACHMENT 5

EPA NPDES Construction Inspection Form

The following inspection is being performed in compliance with Part IV.D.4. of the NPDES Region 6 Storm Water Construction General Permit [63 Fed. Reg. 36502] and being retained in accordance with Part V of the Permit. Qualified personnel (provided by the permittee or cooperatively by multiple permittees) shall inspect disturbed areas of the construction site that have not been finally stabilized, areas used for storage of materials that are exposed to precipitation, placement and effectiveness of structural control measures, and locations where vehicles enter or exit the site. Inspections shall be performed at least once every 14 days and within 24 hours of the end of a storm event of 0.5 inches or greater. Where sites have been temporarily stabilized, runoff is unlikely due to winter conditions, or during seasonal arid periods in arid areas (0-10 inches of rainfall annually) and semi-arid areas (10-20 inches annually) such inspections shall be conducted at least once every month. This form is primarily intended for use with construction projects in Texas and New Mexico. Permittees on Indian Country lands in Oklahoma, Louisiana and Arkansas and some oil and gas facilities in Oklahoma may use this form if they are eligible for this permit. Other facilities need to check with their NPDES authority before using this form.

If you do not know your NPDES Permit Number, contact the NOI Processing Center at (301)495-4145. This form was prepared as an example and it is not a required form for use with the permit. Alternative forms may be used if they contain all of the required information as set forth in the permit. This form and additional information regarding the NPDES Region 6 storm water program may be found on the Internet at http://www.epa.gov/region6/sw/. Any person with a complaint about the operation of this facility in regards to this permit should contact EPA Region 6 at (214)665-7112.

Permit Number(s) covered by this inspection (e.g. owners, developers, general contractor, builders)	
Signature and Certification in accordance with Part VI.G of the permit:	I certify under penalty of law that this document and all attachments were prepared under my direction or supervision in accordance with a system designed to assure that qualified personnel properly gathered and evaluated the information submitted. Based on my inquiry of the person or persons who manage the system, or those persons directly responsible for gathering the information, the information submitted is, to the best of my knowledge and belief, true, accurate, and complete. I am aware that there are significant penalties for submitting false information, including the possibility of fine and imprisonment for knowing violations. Signature_____Date_____
Date of Inspection	
Inspector Name	
Is there a copy of the permit language with the SWPPP?	❒ YES ❒ NO
Is the inspector qualified and are the qualifications documented in the SWPPP?	❒ YES ❒ NO
Is an NPDES storm water construction sign posted at the entrance for all permittees?	❒ YES ❒ NO

You may want to use EPA Region 6 construction checklist to assure components of the SWPPP are complete. This form, the construction sign, and the checklist are available on the Region 6 NPDES Storm Water Forms and Documents web page which may be found on the internet at http://www.epa.gov/earth1r6/6en/w/formsw.htm In addition to the checklist, you should provide a narrative (see next page) on the existing Best Management Practices and Structural Controls found during each inspection. Any problems identified in an inspection should be corrected within 7 days. The inspection should cover all components of the SWPPP and all potential pollutants. While eroded soil is the primary pollutant of concern, do not forget to inspect for other pollutant sources such as fuel tanks, paints, solvents, stabilization materials, concrete hardner, batch plants, and construction debris. The inspector will need to update the SWPPP to reflect findings of the inspection. The site map should be updated after an inspection to show controls that have been added or removed, to ensure the site map is kept current in accordance with Part IV.C. of the permit.

Revision 4, March 1, 2000

ATTACHMENT 5

Narrative Findings of the inspection:

Observations should include any findings of Best Management Practices or controls that are not in accordance with the SWPPP. If a control is not in place or failed, observe the reason why. A control removed temporarily for work is not necessarily a violation if properly recorded in the SWPPP. If it has been removed, record why it was removed and, if applicable, when it will be reinstalled. If the control has failed, observe the conditions so a conclusion may be made as to wether the control failed for improper maintenance or improper design. The qualified inspector will know when a failed control is inadequate and should be replaced by an improved control mechanism. Qualified inspectors are to have authority to make changes to the SWPPP to assure compliance. Controls that have not been installed should be given a reason why they are not installed and/or a scheduled date for installation if they are designed for a later phase of construction. After the inspection, the SWPPP and its site map should be updated to reflect current conditions of controls and Best Management Practices at the time of the inspection. This includes removing uninstalled controls from the site map or otherwise denoting on the site map if they are no longer installed if the controls have been removed because they are no longer necessary (e.g. stabilization has been achieved in that area).

ATTACHMENT 6

City of Houston

Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan
Construction Site Inspection Report

TPDES/EPA Permit Number _____

COH Storm Water Quality Permit Number _____

DATE _____

No exceptions noted.

The following must be corrected prior to continuing work:

Public Notice improperly posted

Initial Construction Site Inspection Report information requires updating

Copy of NOI not on site

Storm water pollution prevention plan not on site

Erosion and sediment controls improperly installed

Erosion and sediment control devices improperly maintained

Fueling or washout areas not properly protected

Portocan or other sanitary facilities not properly protected

Self-inspection and maintenance records incomplete

Sediment from site outside area of construction

Other (see description below)

_____

_____

Please contact the Storm Water Quality Engineer at
611 Walker, RA-257, Houston TX 77002
713-837-7383 fax 713-837-0570

Once the above items have been corrected, call to arrange for reinspection. No further inspections for any construction related activity shall be made until the above items have been corrected.

Inspector's Signature	Contractor's Signature
Inspector's Name	Contractor's Name

not present

Distribution Stormwater Quality Engineer, Code Enforcement, Inspector, Operator
(Operator is Contractor)

Form _____ (10-01-01)

PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

ATTACHMENT 7

Notice of Termination (NOT) for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity under the TPDES Construction General Permit (TXR150000)

TCEQ Office Use Only
TPDES Permit Number: TXR15__|__|__|__| - NO
GIN Number: __|__ __|__ __|__|__|

For help completing this application, read the TXR150000 NOI Instructions (TCEQ-20023-Instructions).

A. TPDES Permit Number: TXR15_____

B. Construction Site Operator Customer Reference Number: CN_____
Name:_____
Mailing Address:_____
City:_____ State: --_____ Zip Code:_____
Country Mailing Information (*if outside USA*) Territory:_____ Country Code:_____ Postal Code:_____
Phone Number:_____ Extension:_____ Fax Number:_____
E-mail Address:_____

C. Project / Site Information Regulated Entity Reference Number: RN_____
Name:_____
Physical Address:_____
Location Access Description:_____
City:_____ County: --_____ Zip Code:_____

D. Contact - If the TCEQ needs additional information regarding this termination, who should be contacted?
Name:_____ Title:_____
Phone Number:_____ Extension:_____ Fax Number:_____
E-mail Address:_____

E. Certification
I certify under penalty of law that authorization under the TPDES Construction General Permit (TXR150000) is no longer necessary based on the provisions of the general permit. I understand that by submitting this Notice of Termination, I am no longer authorized to discharge storm water associated with construction activity under the general permit TXR150000, and that discharging pollutants in storm water associated with construction activity to waters of the U.S. is unlawful under the Clean Water Act where the discharge is not authorized by a TPDES permit. I also understand that the submittal of this Notice of Termination does not release an operator from liability for any violations of this permit or the Clean Water Act.

Construction Site Operator Representative:

Prefix:_____ First:_____ Middle:_____
Last:_____ Suffix:_____
Title:_____

Signature:_____ Date:_____

If you have questions on how to fill out this form or about the storm water program, please contact us at (512) 239-4671. Individuals are entitled to request and review their personal information that the agency gathers on its forms. They may also have any errors in their information corrected. To review such information, contact us at (512) 239-3282.

The completed NOT must be mailed to the following address:

Texas Commission on Environmental Quality
Storm Water & General Permits Team; MC - 228
P.O. Box 13087
Austin, Texas 78711-3087

TCEQ - 20023 (02/03) **Page 1 of 1**

PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

ATTACHMENT 7

Completing the Notice of Termination for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity under the TPDES Construction General Permit (TXR150000)

Who May File a Notice of Termination (NOT) Form
Permittees disturbing 5 acres or more (or part of a larger common plan of development or sale disturbing 5 acres or more) who are presently covered under the Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) Construction General Permit must submit a Notice of Termination (NOT) when final stabilization has been achieved on all portions of the site that is the responsibility of the permittee; or another permitted operator has assumed control over all areas of the site that have not been finally stabilized and all silt fences and other temporary erosion controls have either been removed, scheduled for removal as defined in the SWP3, or transferred to a new operator if the new operator has sought permit coverage. Erosion controls that are designed to remain in place for an indefinite period, such as mulches and fiber mats, are not required to be removed or scheduled for removal.

Final Stabilization occurs when either of the following conditions are met:

(a) All soil disturbing activities at the site have been completed and a uniform (e.g, evenly distributed, without large bare areas) perennial vegetative cover with a density of 70% of the native background vegetative cover for the area has been established on all unpaved areas and areas not covered by permanent structures, or equivalent permanent stabilization measures (such as the use of riprap, gabions, or goetextiles) have been employed.

(b) For individual lots in a residential construction site by either:

(1) the homebuilder completing final stabilization as specified in condition (a) above; or

(2) the homebuilder establishing temporary stabilization for an individual lot prior to the time of transfer of the ownership of the home to the buyer and after informing the homeowner of the need for, and benefits of, final stabilization.

(c) For construction activities on land used for agricultural purposes (e.g. pipelines across crop or range land), final stabilization may be accomplished by returning the disturbed land to its preconstruction agricultural use. Areas disturbed that were not previously used for agricultural activities, such as buffer strips immediately adjacent to a surface water and areas which are not being returned to their preconstruction agricultural use must meet the final stabilization conditions of condition (a) above.

A. TPDES Permit Number
Provide the TPDES permit number assigned to the operator of the construction site.

B. Construction Site Operator Information
Customer Reference Number
This number designates the operator's status as a TCEQ "customer"—in other words, an individual or business that is involved in an activity that we regulate. We assign each customer a number that begins with "CN," followed by nine digits. ***This is not a permit number, registration number, or license number.*** In the remainder of this section, we will use "this customer" to mean the operator for Part B of the form.

- If this customer has not been assigned a Customer Reference Number, leave the space for the Customer Reference Number blank.
- If this customer has already been assigned this number, enter the operator's Customer Reference Number.
- ***Do not enter a permit number, registration number, or license number in place of the Customer Reference Number.***

Name
Enter the legal name of this customer as authorized to do business in Texas. Include any abbreviations (LLC, Inc., etc.).

Mailing Address
Enter a central and general mailing address for this customer to receive mail from the TCEQ. For example, if this customer is a large company, this address might be the corporate or regional headquarters. On the other hand, for a smaller business, this address could be the same as the site address.

If this is a street address, please follow US Postal Service standards. In brief, these standards require this information in this order:

- the "house" number—for example, the 1401 in 1401 Main St
- if there is a direction before the street name, the one- or two-letter abbreviation of that direction (N, S, E, W, NE, SE, SW, or NW)
- the street name (if a numbered street, do not spell out the number—for example, 6th St, not Sixth St)
- an appropriate abbreviation of the type of street—for example, St, Ave, Blvd, Fwy, Exwy, Hwy, Cr, Ct, Ln
- if there is a direction after the street name, the one- or two-letter abbreviation of that direction (N, S, E, W, NE, SE, SW, or NW)
- if there is a room number, suite number, or company mail code

City, State, *and* ZIP Code
Enter the name of the city, the two-letter USPS abbreviation for the state (for example, TX), and the ZIP Code. (Enter the full ZIP+4 if you know it.)

ATTACHMENT 7

Country Mailing Information
If this address is ***outside*** the United States, enter the territory name, country code, and any non-ZIP mailing codes or other non–U.S. Postal Service features here. If this address is ***inside*** the United States, leave these spaces blank.

Phone Number *and* Extension
This number should correspond to this customer's mailing address given earlier. Enter the area code and phone number here. Leave "Extension" blank if this customer's phone system lacks this feature.

Fax Number
This number should correspond to this customer's mailing address given earlier. Enter the area code and fax number here.

E-mail Address
As with the mailing address, this should be a general address that is appropriate for e-mail to this customer's central or regional headquarters, if applicable.

C. Project / Site Information

Regulated Entity Reference Number
This number designates this site's status as a TCEQ "regulated entity"—in other words, a location where an activity that we regulate occurs. We assign each regulated entity a number that begins with "RN," followed by nine digits. ***This is not a permit number, registration number, or license number.***

- If this site has not been assigned a Regulated Entity Reference Number, leave the space for the Regulated Entity Reference Number blank.
- If this site has already been assigned this number, enter the Regulated Entity Reference Number.
- ***Do not enter a permit number, registration number, or license number in place of the Regulated Entity Reference Number.***

Name
Enter the name by which you want this site to be known to the TCEQ.

Physical Address
Enter the physical address of the site itself. TCEQ staff should be able to use this address to find the site.

Location Description
Enter a physical description of the location of the site based on highway intersections and/or permanent landmarks.

City, County, *and* ZIP Code
Enter the name of the city, the county, and the ZIP Code. (Enter the full ZIP+4 if you know it.)

D. Contact

Give all the relevant information for the person whom TCEQ can contact if there are questions about any of the information on this form—perhaps the same person who completed the form.

E. Certification

The operator must sign and date this statement to validate this NOI. Be sure to enter the full legal name of the person signing the form and the relevant title—for example, "Operator," "Operator's attorney," or "Senior Site Manager." Use the "Prefix" blank for such titles as Dr., Mr., or Ms., as desired. Use the "Suffix" blank for such designations as Ph.D., Jr., Sr., III, or J.D., if applicable.

For a corporation, the application shall be signed by a responsible corporate officer. A responsible corporate officer means a president, secretary, treasurer, or vice-president of the corporation in charge of a principal business function, or any other person who performs similar policy or decision-making functions for the corporation; or the manager of one or more manufacturing, production, or operating facilities employing more than 250 persons or having gross annual sales or expenditures exceeding $25 million (in second-quarter 1980 dollars), if authority to sign documents has been assigned or delegated to the manager in accordance with corporate procedures. Corporate procedures governing authority to sign permit applications may provide for assignment or delegation to applicable corporate positions rather than to specific individuals.

For a partnership or sole proprietorship, the application shall be signed by a general partner or the proprietor, respectively.

For a municipality, state, federal, or other public agency, the application shall be signed by either a principal executive officer or a ranking elected official. For purposes of this application, a principal executive officer of a federal agency includes the chief executive officer of the agency, or a senior executive officer having responsibility for the overall operations of a principal geographic unit of the agency (e.g. regional administrator of the United States Environmental Protection Agency).

Questions?

If you have questions about any of the information on this form, contact our Storm Water Program at 512/239-4671 or look for "Storm Water" on our Web site:

www.tceq.state.tx.us

Section 01422

REFERENCE STANDARDS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Section includes general quality assurance as related to Reference Standards and a list of references.

1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. For Products or workmanship specified by association, trade, or Federal Standards, comply with requirements of the standard, except when more rigid requirements are specified or are required by applicable codes.

B. Conform to reference standard by date of issue current on the date as stated in the General Conditions.

C. Request clarification from Project Manager before proceeding should specified reference standards conflict with Contract documents.

1.03 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCES

AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials 444 North Capitol Street, N.W. Washington, DC 20001
ACI	American Concrete Institute P.O. Box 9094 Farmington Hills, MI 48333-9094
AGC	Associated General Contractors of America 333 John Carlyle Street Alexandria, VA 22314
AI	Asphalt Institute Research Park Drive P.O. Box 14052 Lexington, KY 40512

AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction 7012 S. Revere Parkway, Suite 140 Englewood, CO 80112
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction One East Wacker Dr. Chicago, IL 60601
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute 1101 17th Street NW, Suite 1300 Washington, DC 20036
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers Three Park Avenue New York, NY 10016
ANSI	American National Standards Institute 1819 L Street NW Sixth Floor Washington, D.C. 20036
APA	American Plywood Association Box 11700 Tacoma, WA 98411
API	American Petroleum Institute 1220 L Street, N.W. Washington, DC 20005
AREA	American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way-Association 8201 Corporate Drive, Suite 1125 Landover, Maryland 20785
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials 100 Barr Harbor Drive West Conshohocken, PA 19428
AWPA	American Wood-Preservers' Association P.O. Box 5690 Granbury, TX 76049
AWS	American Welding Society 550 NW 42nd Avenue Miami, FL 33126

AWWA	American Water Works Association 6666 West Quincy Avenue Denver, CO 80235
COH	City of Houston P.O. Box 1562 Houston, TX 77251-1562
CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute 9891 Broken Land Parkway, Suite 300 Columbia, MD 21046
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute 933 Plum Grove Road Schaumburg, IL 60173-4758
EJMA	Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association 25 North Broadway Tarrytown, NY 10591
FS	Federal Standardization Documents General Services Administration Specifications Unit (WFSIS) 7th and D Streets, S.W. Washington, DC 20406
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineer Association P.O. Box 440 S. Yarmouth, MA 02664
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers 445 Hoes Lane P.O. Box 440 Piscataway, NJ 08855-459
ISA	International Society of Arboriculture P.O. Box 3129 Champaign, IL 61826-3129
MIL	Military Specifications General Services Administration Specifications Unit (WFSIS) 7th and D Streets, S.W. Washington, DC 20406

NACE	National Association of Corrosion Engineers 1440 South Creek Drive Houston, TX 77084-4906
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers' Association 1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1847 Rosslyn, VA 22209
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association 1 Batterymarch Park P.O. Box 9101 Quincy, MA 02269-9101
OSHA	Occupational Safety Health Administration U.S. Department of Labor Office of Public Affairs – Room N3647 Washington, DC 20210
PCA	Portland Cement Association 5420 Old Orchard Road Skokie, IL 60077-1083
PCI	Prestressed Concrete Institute 209 W. Jackson Blvd. Chicago, IL 60606
SDI	Steel Deck Institute P.O. Box 25 Fox River Grove, IL 60021
SSPC	Society for Protective Coatings (Steel Structures Painting Council) 40 24th Street, Sixth Floor Pittsburgh, PA 15222
TAC	Texas Administrative Code Texas Water Resources Conservation Commission P. O. Box 13087 Library MC-196 Austin, TX 78711-3087
TxDOT	Texas Department of Transportation 125 East 11th Street Austin, TX 78701-2483

UL	Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. 333 Pfingston Road Northbrook, IL 60062
UNI-BELL	UNI-BELL Pipe Association 2655 Villa Creek Drive, Suite 155 Dallas, TX 75234

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01450

CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY CONTROL

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Quality assurance and control of Installation and manufacturers' field services and reports.

1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE AND CONTROL OF INSTALLATION

A. Monitor quality control over Suppliers, manufacturers, Products, services, site conditions and workmanship, to produce work of specified quality at no additional cost to the City.

B. Comply fully with manufacturers' Installation instructions, including each step in sequence.

C. Request clarification from Project Manager before proceeding when manufacturers' instructions conflict with the Contract.

D. Comply with specified standards as minimum requirements for the Work except when more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.

E. Perform the Work by persons qualified to produce a specified level of workmanship.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. Obtain copies of standards and maintain at job site when required by individual Specification sections.

1.04 MANUFACTURERS' FIELD SERVICES AND REPORTS

A. When specified in individual Specification sections, or as required by Project Manager, provide Product suppliers' or manufacturers' technical representative to observe site conditions, conditions of surfaces and Installation, quality of workmanship, start-up of equipment, operator training, testing, adjusting and balancing of equipment as applicable and to initiate required operation. Conform to minimum time requirements for start-up operations and operator training when provided in Specification sections.

B. At Project Manager's request, submit qualifications of manufacturers' representative to Project Manager 15 days in advance of required representatives' services. Representative is subject to approval by Project Manager.

C. Manufacturer's representatives shall report observations and site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to a manufacturer's written instructions. Submit report within 14 days of observation to Project Manager for review.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01452

INSPECTION SERVICES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Inspection services and references

1.02 INSPECTION

A. City Engineer will appoint an Inspector to represent the City and perform inspections, tests, and other services specified in individual Specification sections.

B. City Engineer may also appoint, employ, and pay an independent firm to provide additional inspection or construction management services as indicated in Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

C. The independent firm will submit reports to Project Manager, indicating observations and results of tests and indicating compliance or noncompliance with Contract requirements.

D. Contractor shall assist and cooperate with the Inspector; furnish samples of materials, design mix, equipment, tools, and storage.

E. Contractor shall notify Project Manager 24 hours prior to expected time for operations requiring services.

F. Contractor shall sign and acknowledge reports for Inspector.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01454

TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Testing laboratory services and Contractor responsibilities related to those services.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 1077 - Standard Practice for Laboratories Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Laboratory Evaluation.

B. ASTM D 3666 - Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Bituminous Paving Materials.

C. ASTM D 3740 - Standard Practice for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction.

D. ASTM E 329 - Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Materials Used in Construction.

E. ISO/TEC Guide 25 - General Requirements for the Competence of Calibration and Testing Laboratories.

1.03 SELECTION AND PAYMENT

A. The City will select, employ, and pay for services of an independent testing laboratory to perform inspection and testing identified in Part 3 of individual Specification sections.

B. Contractor shall employ and pay for services of an independent testing laboratory or laboratories to perform inspection and testing identified in Part 2 of individual Specification sections.

C. Employment of a testing laboratory by the City shall not relieve Contractor of its obligation to perform work in accordance with requirements of Contract documents.

D. The City will deduct a minimum two-hour charge for testing laboratory time from periodic progress payment when operations requiring testing or inspection are canceled without prior notification.

E. The City will deduct cost of retesting from periodic progress payment whenever failed work is removed, replaced and retested.

1.04 QUALIFICATION OF LABORATORY

A. Meet laboratory requirements of ASTM E 329 and applicable requirements of ASTM C 1077, ASTM D 3666, and ASTM D 3740.

B. Meet ISO/TEC Guide 17025 conditions for accreditation by the American Association for Laboratory Accreditation (A2LA) in specific fields of testing required in individual Specification sections.

C. If laboratory subcontracts are part of the testing services, such work will be placed with a laboratory complying with the requirements of this Section.

1.05 LABORATORY REPORTS

A. Testing laboratory shall provide and distribute copies of laboratory reports to the distribution list Project Manager provides at the pre-construction conference.

B. Keep one copy of each laboratory report distributed or faxed at the site field office for duration of the Work.

C. Laboratory will fax material supplier, Contractor and Project Manager reports that indicate failing test results by no later than close of business on the working day following test completion and review.

1.06 LIMITS ON TESTING LABORATORY AUTHORITY

A. Laboratory may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge requirements of the Contract.

B. Laboratory may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.

C. Laboratory may not assume Contractor duties.

D. Laboratory has no authority to stop the Work.

1.07 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Provide safe access to the Work and to manufacturer's facilities for Project Manager and for testing laboratory personnel.

B. Provide testing laboratory with a copy of the Construction Schedule and a copy of each update to Construction Schedule.

C. Notify Project Manager and testing laboratory during normal working hours of the day previous to expected time for operations requiring inspection and testing services. When Contractor fails to make timely prior notification, do not proceed with the operations requiring inspection and testing services.

D. Notify Design Consultant 24 hours in advance when Specification requires presence of Design Consultant for sampling or testing.

E. Request and monitor testing as required to provide timely results and to avoid delays to the Work. Provide samples to laboratory in sufficient time to allow required test to be performed in accordance with specified test methods before intended use of the Product.

F. Cooperate with laboratory personnel in collecting samples on site. Provide incidental labor and facilities for safe access to the Work to be tested, to obtain and handle samples at site or at source of Products to be tested, and to facilitate tests and inspections including storage and curing of test samples.

G. Make arrangements with laboratory through Project Manager. Payment for additional testing will be made in accordance with Document 00700 - General Conditions:

1. Re-testing required for failed tests.

2. Re-testing for nonconforming work.

3. Additional sampling and tests requested beyond specified requirements.

4. Insufficient notification of cancellation of tests for work scheduled but not performed.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 CONDUCTING TESTING

A Conform to laboratory sampling and testing methods specified in individual Specification sections to the latest issues of ASTM standards, TxDOT methods, or other recognized test standards as approved by Project Manager.

B Requirements of this Section shall also apply to those tests for approval of materials, for mix designs, and for quality control of materials as performed by employed testing laboratories.

END OF SECTION

Section 01502

MOBILIZATION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Mobilization of construction equipment and facilities onto the site.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Price Contracts. If Contract is Unit Price Contract, measurement for mobilization is on a lump sum basis.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum) Contract. If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

C. Mobilization payments will be included in monthly payment estimates upon written application by Contractor subject to the following provisions:

1. Authorization for payment of 50 percent of that portion of Contract Price designated for mobilization will be made upon receipt and approval by Project Manager of the following items, as applicable:

a. Safety Program (Document 00700, Paragraph 10.1.1).

b. Site Utilization Plan (Section 01145).

c. Schedule of Values (Section 01292), if any.

d. Initial Construction Photographs (Section 01321), if needed.

e. Preliminary Construction Schedule and Billing Forecast (Section 01325).

f. Construction Schedule (Section 01325 or Section 01326, as applicable).

g. Submittal Schedule (Section 01330).

h. Site specific Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and Notice of Intent (NOI) along with storm water application fee (Section 01410), if required.

i. Contractor’s Quality Control Plan (Section 01450), if required.

j. Establishment of a Field Office for Project Manager meeting requirements of Section 01520 - Temporary Field Office.

k. Traffic Control Plan (Section 01555), if required.

l. Plan for Control of Ground and Surface Water (Section 01578), if required.

m. Project Signs Submittal (Section 01580).

n. Trench Safety Program (Section 02260), if required.

o. Dewatering plan, when required.

2. Authorization for payment of the balance of that portion of Contract Price designated for mobilization will be made upon completion of the Work amounting to five percent of Original Contract Price. The amount of Contract Price designated for mobilization may not be applied in computing whether or not five percent of the Original Contract Price has been obtained.

3. Mobilization payments will be subject to retainage amounts stipulated in Document 00700 – General Conditions.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S -Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N -Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01504

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Temporary facilities and necessary controls for the Project, including utilities, telephone, sanitary facilities, storage sheds and building, safety requirements, first aid equipment, fire protection, security measures, protection of the Work and property, access roads and parking, environmental controls, pest and rodent control and disposal of trash, debris and excavated material.

B. Facilities and controls specified in this section are considered minimum for the Project. Provide additional facilities and controls for proper execution of the Work and to meet Contractor's responsibilities for protection of persons and property.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. UNIT PRICES

1. No separate payment will be made for any temporary facilities and controls required under this section. Include cost of such work in contract price listed for mobilization.

1.03 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

A. Comply with applicable requirements specified in other sections of Specifications.

1. Maintain and operate temporary facilities and systems to assure continuous service.

2. Modify and extend systems as the Work progress requires.

3. Completely remove temporary materials and equipment when no longer required.

4. Restore existing facilities used for temporary services to specified or original condition.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - NOT USED

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 TEMPORARY UTILITIES

A. Obtaining Temporary Service:

1. Make arrangements with utility service companies for temporary services.

2. Abide by rules and regulations of the utility service companies or authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Be responsible for utility service costs until Date of Substantial Completion. Included are fuel, power, light, heat, and other utility services necessary for execution, completion, testing, and initial operation of work.

B. Water:

1. Provide water required for and in connection with work to be performed and for specified tests of piping, equipment, devices, or for other use as required for proper completion of the Work.

2. Water to be drawn from public fire hydrants. Obtain transit meter from City of Houston, Department of Public Works and Engineering, Taps and Meters Section. Pay required deposit based on rates established by latest ordinance.

3. Provide and maintain an adequate supply of potable water for domestic consumption by Contractor personnel, Project Manager and representatives of the City.

C. Electricity and lighting:

1. Provide electric power service required for the Work including required testing, lighting, operation of equipment, and other Contractor use.

2. Electric power service includes temporary power or generators required to maintain plant operations during scheduled shutdowns.

3. Minimum lighting level shall be 10 foot-candles for open areas; 20-foot-candles for stairs and shops. Provide a minimum of one 300-watt lamp for each 200 square feet of work area.

D. Temporary Heat and Ventilation:

1. Provide temporary heat necessary for protection or completion of the Work.

2. Provide temporary heat and ventilation to assure safe working conditions; maintain enclosed areas at a minimum of 50 degrees F.

E. Telephone:

1. Provide emergency telephone service at Project site for use by Contractor personnel and others performing work or furnishing services at the site.

2. Provide Houston-Metro lines, allowing unlimited calls, without charge in Greater Houston Metropolitan area with "call waiting" and "call forwarding" options. Provide one telephone answering machine with beeperless remote message retrieval capability.

F. Sanitary Facilities:

1. Provide and maintain sanitary facilities for persons on the site; comply with regulations of State and local departments of health.

2. Enforce use of sanitary facilities by construction personnel at site. Enclose sanitary facilities. Pit-type toilets are not permitted. No discharge will be allowed from these facilities. Collect and store sewage and waste so as not to cause nuisance or health problems. Haul sewage and waste off-site and properly dispose in accordance with applicable regulations.

3. Locate toilets near the Work site and secluded from view insofar as possible. Keep toilets clean and supplied throughout the course of the Work.

3.02 STORAGE SHEDS AND BUILDINGS

A. Provide adequately ventilated, watertight storage facilities with floor above ground level for Products susceptible to weather damage.

B. Storage of Products not susceptible to weather damage may be on blocks off the ground.

C. Store Products in a neat and orderly manner. Place Products to permit easy access for identification, inspection and inventory.

D. Fill and grade site for temporary structures to provide drainage away from temporary and existing buildings.

3.03 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

A. Submit a safety program at the pre-construction meeting and follow the program in accordance with Document 00700 – General Conditions. Include documented response to trench safety requirements of Section 02260 - Trench Safety System.

B. Conduct operations in strict accordance with applicable Federal, State and local safety codes and statutes and with good construction practice. Establish and maintain procedures for safety of all work, personnel and equipment involved in the Work.

C. Observe and comply with Texas Occupational Safety Act (Art. 5182a, V.C.S.) and with all safety and health standards promulgated by Secretary of Labor under Section 107 of Contract Work Hours and Standards Act, published in 29 CFR Part 1926 and adopted by Secretary of Labor as occupational safety and health standards under Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, and to other legislation enacted for safety and health of Contractor employees. Safety and health standards apply to Subcontractors and Suppliers as well as to the Contractor.

D. Observance of and compliance with safety regulations is Contractor's responsibility without reliance or superintendence of or direction by Project Manager. Immediately advise Project Manager of investigation or inspection by Federal Safety and Health inspectors of Contractor's or Subcontractor's work or place of work on site under the Contract, and after investigation or inspection, advise Project Manager of results. Submit one copy of accident reports to Project Manager within 10 days of occurrence.

E. Protect areas occupied by workmen using the best available devices for detection of lethal and combustible gases. Test devices frequently to assure functional capability. Constantly observe infiltration of liquids into the Work area for visual or odor evidence of contamination, and immediately take appropriate steps to seal off entry of contaminated liquids to the Work area.

F. Implement safety measures, including but not limited to safety personnel, first-aid equipment, ventilating equipment and other safety equipment specified or detailed on Drawings.

G. Maintain required coordination with City Police and Fire Departments during entire period covered by the Contract.

H. Include Project safety analysis in safety plan. Itemize major tasks and potential safety hazards. Plan to eliminate hazards or protect workers and public from each hazard.

3.04 FIRST AID EQUIPMENT

A. Provide a first aid kit throughout the construction period. List telephone numbers for physicians, hospitals, and ambulance services in each first aid kit.

B. Have at least one person thoroughly trained in first aid and CPR procedures present on the site when work is in progress. Contractor to conform to protocols and requirements for training and protection against “blood borne pathogens”.

3.05 FIRE PROTECTION

A. Conform to specified fire protection and prevention requirements established by Federal, State, or local governmental agencies and as provided in Safety Program.

3.06 SECURITY MEASURES

A. Protect the Work, materials, equipment, and property from loss, theft, damage, or vandalism. Protect City property used in performance of the Contract.

B. If existing fencing or barriers are breached or removed for purposes of construction, provide and maintain temporary security fencing equal to existing.

3.07 PROTECTION OF UTILITIES AND PIPELINES

A. Prevent damage to existing public utilities during construction. Approximate locations of known utilities are shown on Drawings, but all lines may not be shown. Excavate with caution and repair lines damaged by construction operations.

B. Use the Utility Coordinating Committee One Call System, telephone number, (713) 223-4567, which must be called 48 hours in advance. The toll free telephone number is 1-800-669-8344, Texas One Call System.

C. Before excavating, locate underground utilities by appropriate means including the use of metal detection equipment, and probes, or by excavation or surveys. Repair damage caused by investigative work and by failure to locate or to preserve underground utilities.

D. Give utility owners a minimum five days notice before commencing excavation to allow time to locate utilities and make adjustments or

relocations when they conflict with the Work. Include cost for temporary relocation of water, wastewater, and storm drainage lines, necessary to accommodate construction, in unit prices for utility construction unless otherwise noted. Bypassing of sanitary waste to storm drainage facilities is not allowed.

E. Prior to excavation near pipelines, request a representative of the pipeline company to meet with Contractor and Project Manager at the site to discuss procedures to be used. Request pipeline company's representative to locate the pipelines in at least three locations: at each side and at centerline of proposed excavation of proposed utility. Also request representative and Project Manager to be present to observe Contractor operations when excavation is conducted within 15 feet of pipeline.

F. Utility service lines are not shown on the construction document drawings. Contractor should anticipate that such service lines exit and should exercise extreme caution during construction. The utility service lines should be repaired and restored immediately as per the specification, if damaged due to any construction activities. No separate payment will be made for this repair and restoration work. Include payment in unit price for work in appropriate sections.

G. Prior to abandonment of utility, make appropriate arrangements with City and owner of utility to terminate service, remove meters, tranformers, and poles as may be required by site conditions.

3.08 PROTECTION OF THE WORK AND PROPERTY

A. Preventive Actions

1. Take necessary precautions and actions to prevent damage, injury, or loss to the Work or public and private property, including:

a. Storage of apparatus, supplies, and Products in an orderly, safe manner to limit interference with progress of the Work or work of other contractors, utility service companies, or the City's operations.

b. Suitable storage for Products subject to damage by exposure to weather, theft, breakage, etc.

c. Limitation of loading pressures imposed upon portions of the Work.

d. Frequent clean up of refuse, scrap materials, and debris from construction operations, necessary to maintain the site in a safe and orderly condition.

e. Provision of barricades and guard rails to protect pedestrian and traffic around openings, scaffolding, temporary stairs and ramps, excavations, elevated walkways, and other hazardous areas.

2. Protect public and private property adjacent to the site. Obtain written consent before entering or occupying privately-owned land except on easements provided for construction. Restore property damaged by construction operations to condition equal to or better than that existing before the damage.

B. Barricades and Warning Systems

1. Where work is performed on or adjacent to roadways, rights-of-ways, or public land, provide barricades, fences, lights, warning signs, danger signals, and other precautionary measures necessary for protection of persons or property and for protection of the Work.

a. Erect sufficient barricades to keep vehicles and pedestrians from entering the Work. Paint barricades to be visible at night. From sunset to sunrise, provide at least one light at each barricade.

b. Maintain barricades, signs, lights, and provide watchmen until Project Manager approves removal. Whenever work creates encroachment onto public roadways, station flagmen to manage traffic flow in accordance with approved traffic control plan.

c. Conform to requirements of section 01555 – Traffic Control and regulation.

C. PROTECTION OF EXISTING STRUCTURES

1. Underground Facilities

a. Known Underground Facilities are shown on the Drawings but all Facilities may not be shown. Explore sufficiently ahead of trenching and excavation work to locate Underground Facilities in order to prevent damage to them and to prevent interruption of utility services. Restore damage to Underground Facilities to original condition at no additional cost to the City.

b. If necessary to avoid unanticipated Underground Facilities, Project Manager may make changes in location of the Work.

c. If permanent relocation of an Underground Facility is required

and not provided for in the Contract documents, City Engineer will direct Contractor in writing to perform the Work under Modification provisions in Document 00700 - General Conditions.

2. Surface Structures include buildings, tanks, walls, bridges, roads, dams, channels, open drainage, piping, poles, wires, posts, signs, markers, curbs, walks, guard cables, fencing, and other facilities that are visible above the ground level.

3. Protection of Underground Facilities and Surface Structures:

   a. Support in place and protect Underground Facilities and Surface Structures located within or adjacent to the limits of the Work from damage. Install supports as required by the owner of the structure. Satisfy Project Manager that the owner of the facility or structure has approved methods and procedures before installing structure supports.

   b. Avoid moving or changing public utility or private corporation property without prior written consent of a responsible official of the facility or structure. Allow representatives of utilities to enter the construction site for maintenance and repair purposes or to make necessary changes.

   c. Notify utility and pipeline owners and operators of the nature of construction operations and dates when operations will be performed. When construction operations are required in immediate vicinity of existing structures, pipelines, or utilities, give a minimum of five working days advance notice. Probe and flag location of Underground Facilities prior to commencement of excavation. Keep flags in place until construction operations uncover the facility.

   d. Assume risk for damages and expenses to Underground Facilities and Surface Structures within or adjacent to the Work.

D. Employ a structural engineer to ensure protection measures are adequate for the safety and integrity of structures and facilities.

E. PROTECTION OF INSTALLED PRODUCTS:

1. Provide protection of Installed Products to prevent damage from subsequent operations. Remove protection facilities when no longer needed, prior to completion of the Work.

2. Control traffic to prevent damage to Products and surfaces.

3. Provide coverings to protect Products from damage. Cover projections, wall corners, jambs, sills, and exposed sides of openings in areas used for traffic and passage of materials in subsequent work.

3.09 ROADS AND PARKING

A. Prevent interference with traffic and operations of the City on existing roads.

B. Designate temporary parking areas to accommodate construction and City personnel. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking. Locate as approved by Project Manager.

C. Minimize use by construction traffic on existing streets and driveways.

D. Do not allow heavy vehicles or construction equipment in existing parking areas.

3.10 ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

A. Use methods, equipment, and temporary construction necessary for control of environmental conditions at the site and adjacent areas.

B. Comply with statutes, regulations, and ordinances relating to prevention of environmental pollution and preservation of natural resources including National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, PL 91-190, Executive Order 11514.

C. Minimize impact to the surrounding environment. Do not use construction procedures that cause unnecessary excavation and filling of terrain, indiscriminate destruction of vegetation, air or stream pollution, or harassment or destruction of wildlife.

D. Limit disturbed areas to boundaries established by the Contract. Do not pollute on-site streams, sewers, wells, or other water sources.

E. Do not burn rubbish, debris or waste materials.

3.11 POLLUTION CONTROL

A. Provide methods, means, and facilities necessary to prevent contamination of soil, water or the atmosphere by discharge of Pollutants from construction operations.

B. Provide equipment and personnel to perform emergency measures to contain spillage, and to remove contaminated soils or liquids. Excavate and dispose of contaminated earth off-site in accordance with laws and regulations, and

replace with suitable compacted fill and topsoil.

C. Provide systems necessary for control of Pollutants.

1. Prevent toxic concentrations of chemicals.

2. Prevent harmful dispersal of Pollutants into the environment.

D. Use equipment that conforms to current Federal, State, and local laws and regulations.

3.12 PEST AND RODENT CONTROL

A. Provide rodent and pest control as necessary to prevent infestation of construction or storage areas.

B. Employ methods and use materials that will not adversely affect conditions at site or on adjoining properties.

3.13 NOISE CONTROL

A. Provide vehicles, equipment, and use construction activities that minimize noise to the greatest degree practicable. Conform to noise levels of Chapter 30 –Noise and Sound Level Regulation, City Code of Ordinances, and latest OSHA standards. Do not permit noise levels to interfere with the Work or create a nuisance to surrounding areas.

B. Conduct construction operations during daylight hours except as approved by Project Manager.

C. Select construction equipment that operates with minimum noise and vibration. When directed by Project Manager, correct objectionable noise or vibration produced by operation of equipment at no additional cost to the City. Sound Power Level (PWL) of equipment shall not exceed 85 dbA (re: 10^{-12} watts) measured five feet from the equipment, or at a lower level if prescribed by City Ordinances. Equipment noise requirements are contained in equipment specifications.

3.14 DUST CONTROL

A. Use water or other methods approved by Project Manager to control amount of dust generated by vehicle and equipment operations.

3.15 WATER RUNOFF AND EROSION CONTROL

A. Comply with requirements of section 01410 – TPDES Requirements.

B. Conduct fill, grading and ditching operations and provide adequate methods necessary to control surface water, runoff, subsurface water, and water from excavations and structures in order to prevent damage to the Work, the site, or adjoining properties.

1. Plan and execute construction and earthwork by methods that control surface drainage from cuts and fills, and from borrow and waste disposal areas.

2. Minimize area of bare soil exposed at one time.

3. Provide temporary control measures, such as berms, dikes, and drains.

4. Provide, operate, and maintain equipment and facilities of adequate size to control surface water.

5. Construct fill and waste areas by selective placement of materials to eliminate erosion of surface silts or clays that may erode.

6. Direct water away from excavations, pits, tunnels, and other construction areas to prevent erosion, sedimentation or damage.

7. Maintain existing drainage patterns adjacent to the site by constructing temporary earth berms, sedimentation basins, retaining areas, and temporary ground cover.

8. Dispose of drainage water in a manner to prevent flooding, erosion, or other damage to the site or adjoining areas, in conformance with environmental requirements.

9. Inspect earthwork periodically to detect any evidence of erosion. Take corrective measures as required to control erosion.

END OF SECTION

Section 01506

DIVERSION PUMPING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 DEFINITIONS

A. Diversion-pumping: Installation and operation of bulkheads, plugs, hoses, piping, and pumps required to maintain sewer flow and prevent backups and overflows.

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Provides continuous sewer service to users of sewer systems while maintenance or construction operations are in progress, by diverting flow around construction locations. Maintain sewer flow to prevent backup or overflow onto streets, yards and unpaved areas or into buildings, adjacent ditches, storm sewers, and waterways. Do not divert sewage outside of sanitary sewer system.

B When pumps are operating, have an experienced operator on site to monitor operation, adjust pumps, make minor repairs to system, and report problems.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittals Procedures.

B. For systems that bypass sanitary sewer line segments of 42-inch diameter or larger, submit a Diversion Pumping Plan prior to installation. Show location, number and size of pumps, number, location, size and type of hoses or rigid piping, and location of downstream discharge; and special features where pipes or hoses cross roadways, temporary trenches, support bridges.

1.04 SCHEDULING

A. When the City operates or maintains diversion pumping in construction areas, coordinate construction activities with Project Manager.

B. Cease operation of diversion pumping when approved by Project Manager.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Design piping, joints and accessories to withstand at least twice maximum system pressure or 50 psi, whichever is greater.

B. Use self-priming type or submersible electric pumps, with a working pressure gauge on the discharge. Pumps shall meet requirements of City of Houston Noise and Sound Level Regulations.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During diversion pumping, do not allow sewage to leak, dump, or spill into or onto areas outside of existing sanitary sewer systems.

B. In the event of an accidental spill or overflow, immediately stop discharge and take action to clean up and disinfect spill. Promptly notify Project Manager so required reporting can be made to the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

3.02 CLEANING

A. When diversion-pumping operations are complete, drain sewage within piping into sanitary sewers prior to disassembly.

END OF SECTION

Section 01520

TEMPORARY FIELD OFFICE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A Temporary field office building and associated parking area.

1.02 FACILITY DESCRIPTION

A Temporary field office to be utilized by authorized representatives of the City to coordinate and monitor daily construction activities performed by Contractor.

B. Field office shall be a non-smoking facility.

PART 2 P R O DUCTS

2.01 FIELD OFFICE

A General:

1. Locate office in vicinity of the Work at a location approved by Project Manager or where indicated on Drawings.

2. Furnish, Install and maintain field office for exclusive use of authorized representatives of the City. Provide sufficient room for Project meetings and Inspector's office.

3. Provide office within 10 days of Date of Commencement of the Work.

4. Construct two all-weather, hard surfaced parking spaces for exclusive use of authorized representatives of the City. Provide all-weather surfaced walk between parking spaces and field office.

B. Minimum Construction:

1 Structurally sound foundation and superstructure.

Weather tight with insulated roof, walls and 7-foot ceiling (minimum).

3. Stairs or walkway with handrail and covered entrance platform (minimum 4 feet by 4 feet) with mud scraper at door.

4. Resilient floor covering.

5. Screened windows with area equal to approximately 10 percent of floor area sufficient for light, view of the site, and ventilation. Provide each window with operable sash and burglar bars.

6. Secure exterior doors with dead-bolt cylinder locks and burglar bars.

C. Minimum Services:

1. Exterior entrance light.

2. Interior lighting of 75 foot-candles minimum at desktop height

3. Automatic heating to maintain 65 degrees F in winter.

4. Automatic cooling to maintain 75 degrees F in summer.

5. Electric power service.

6. Three telephone service lines one for voice, one for data, and one for fax, for exclusive use of authorized representatives of the City.

7. Sanitary facilities in field office with one water closet, one lavatory, and one medicine cabinet for exclusive use of authorized representatives of the City.

D. Minimum Furnishings:

1. One 5-drawer desk

2. Two swivel desk chairs with casters.

3. One plan table.

4. One drawing plan rack.

5. One 4-drawer legal file cabinet complete with fifty legal-size hanging folders and two full-sized carriers.

6. One marker board with cleaner and markers.

7. Two waste baskets.

8. One 30-inch by 36-inch tack board.

9. One all-purpose fire extinguisher.

10. Six protective helmets (hard hats) with ratchet adjustment for exclusive use of authorized representatives of the City.

11. Conference table and chairs to accommodate 10 persons.

12. All in one printer, copier, plain paper fax machine.

13. Telephone instrument separate from fax machine.

E. Provide adequate space for one set of Contract documents for ready reference.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 MAINTENANCE

A Maintain all-weather surface driveway and parking areas, buildings, walkways, stairs and required furnishings and equipment for duration of the Contract.

B. Provide janitorial services for duration of the Contract consisting of twice weekly sweeping and mopping floors, trash removal, weekly restroom cleaning, and weekly dusting of furniture and equipment.

C. Provide soap, paper towels, toilet paper, cleansers and other necessary consumables.

D. Immediately repair damage, leaks or defective service.

3.02 PROJECT CLOSEOUT

A Remove temporary field office and signs and restore site as specified in Section 01770 - Closeout Procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01554

TRAFFIC CONTROL AND STREET SIGNS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Materials, hardware and installation of Traffic Signs.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor shall submit a list of intended suppliers and products to be used for all signs, posts, and associated hardware. City reserves the right to request actual product samples prior to approval.

1.03 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Signs installed or replaced will be measured by the each sign. Signs refurbished will be measured by each sign.

B. Payment for installation of traffic signs will be on the basis of each sign installed.

C. The price is full compensation for furnishing and installing new signs and hardware. Cost of associated posts, footings, and miscellaneous mounting hardware will not be paid for directly but is to be included in the unit price bid for installation of each traffic sign.

D. Non-standard signs installed or replaced will be measured by the square foot of the sign face. Non-standard signs shall not be installed without prior approval from the City.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. The following ASTM Standards and documents, of the issue in effect on the date of Invitation for Bid, form a part of this specification to the extent herein.

1. ASTM B 209 Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate

2. ASTM D 523 Standard Method for Test for Specular Gloss

3. ASTM D 4956 Standard Specification for Retroreflective Sheeting for Traffic Control

4. ASTM E 284 Standard Definition of Terms Relating to Appearance of Materials

5. ASTM E 308 Computing the Colors of Objects by Using the CIE System

6. ASTM E 810 Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Retroreflection of Retroreflective Sheeting

7. ASTM E 1164 Standard Practice for Obtaining Spectrophotometric Data for Object-Color Evaluation

B. Substrate (Sign Blanks). This shall be aluminum alloy 5052-H38 and otherwise in conformance with ASTM B-209 and have gold chromate finish. The size, shape and thickness of the sign blanks are as indicated on the standard detail sheet in the plans or as specified by the Engineer.

1. Metal working. The aluminum shall be free of burrs and pits on both sides, including
edges and holes, and shall be made ready for applications of the sheeting.

2. Surface Preparation. The aluminum shall be thoroughly cleaned and degreased with solvent and alkaline emulsions cleaner by immersion, spray, or vapor degreasing and dried prior to application of the gold chromate sheeting coat. The aluminum shall be new and corrosion-free with holes drilled or punched, corners rounded to the radii shown in the standard detail sheet, and all edges smoothed prior to application of sheeting. The heavy or medium chromate coating shall conform in color and corrosion resistance to that imparted by the Alodine 1200F treatment.

3. Size. The dimensions of substrate applications for regulatory, warning, and guide signs shall be as specified by the Engineer and as shown on the plans.

C. Sign Face (Background, Legends, Symbols, and Colors). These shall be in accordance with the Standard Highway Sign Designs (SHSD) for Texas and with the Texas Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD).

1. The sign face, made of electronic film and retro-reflective sheeting shall comply with the appearance, specification, and good workmanship designated by the using agency for sign faces constructed of screen processed retro-reflective sheeting of the same type.

2. All sign blanks shall be covered with appropriate retro-reflective sheeting.

   a. All ground mounted stop signs, warning signs, and other regulatory signs, shall use at a minimum High Intensity Prismatic Reflective Sheeting.

   b. All overhead signs shall use Diamond Grade Reflective Sheeting.

   c. All other signs shall use Super Engineer Grade Sheeting

3. Application Methods. The method of application of sheeting, letters, numbers, and symbols shall be precisely as prescribed in writing by the manufacturer.

   a. Legend Spacing and Layout. Spacing and layout for all traffic control signs shall conform to the SHSD.

   b. Tolerance for Horizontal Alignment. Letters, numerals, and symbols shall be horizontally aligned to a tolerance of 1/16 inch.

   c. Tolerance for Vertical Alignment. Letters, numerals, and symbols shall be vertically aligned to a tolerance of 1/16 on each letter in each line.

D. Sign Posts**.** Steel post shall conform to the standard specification for hot rolled carbon sheet steel, structural quality, ASTM designation A570, Grade 50. Average minimum yield strength after cold forming is 60,000 psi. The cross section of the post shall be square tube formed steel, carefully rolled to size and shall be welded directly in the corner by high frequency resistance welding or equivalent process and externally scarified to agree with corner radii. Sign posts shall be hot dipped galvanized conforming to ASTM A653, G90.

1. Installation. The square end of the post shall not be modified or pointed.

   a. Flange. When sign post installation is required over building basements, bridges and cavities, a galvanized cast iron pipe flange shall be used. The base shall be 8 inches in diameter with six 5/16 inch holes drilled equidistant around the circumference, ⅝ inch from the outer edge. The neck of the flange shall be 3inches in diameter, drilled and threaded to receive a 2 inch diameter galvanized post.

   b. Hardware. All ground mounted signs shall be attached to posts using 5/16” nut and bolt assembly, the bolt being 2 ½” in length. Stainless steel banding material, brackets and clips will be used for signs installed on light standards or mast arms.

c. Construction. Anchors shall be anchored in a minimum of one cubic foot of class “C” concrete, 28 inches deep, with a 6 inch long, ⅜ inch diameter pin inserted through the pre-drilled hole 3 inches from the bottom of the pole. Where the pole installation requires surface mounting, an 8 inch flange with a 2 inch threaded collar shall be used. The pole shall be galvanized, two inches in diameter and threaded to fit the flange. Sign placement and orientation shall be as specified in the construction plans.

E. Each finished sign shall have the following sticker affixed to the back in a location where it will be visible when the sign is installed:

The sticker shall be Zebra Technologies Z-Ultimate 3000 White or approved equal. Finished product shall be weather and fade resistant for the expected life of the sign.

F. Warranty. The Contractor shall warrant the materials and workmanship of each sign in accordance with the maximum limits of material warranties extended by manufacturers of raw materials, subject to the conditions they specify. The retro-reflective sheeting will be considered unsatisfactory if it has deteriorated due to natural causes to the extent that: (1) the sign is ineffective for its intended purpose when viewed from a moving vehicle under normal day and night driving conditions; or (2) the coefficient of retro-reflection is less than the minimum specified for that sheeting. When sign failure occurs prior to the minimum years indicated and an inspection demonstrates that the failure is caused by materials warranted to contractor to endure at least that long, the sign will be replaced or repaired free of materials charges. When failure occurs and inspection demonstrates that such failure is due to poor workmanship, the sign will be replaced or repaired at Contractor's expense, including shipping charges.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01.1 EQUIPMENT

A. The contractor shall provide machinery, tools, and equipment necessary for proper execution of the work.

3.01.2 CONSTRUCTION

A. Construction shall be high quality with no visible defects in the finished product. Fabrication shall be in accordance with these specifications. Street name signs shall always be supplied and installed at each project intersection whether signs previously existed at the location or not.

B. The removal of existing signs shall be coordinated with the Traffic Operations Section of the Public Works Department (713-803-3054) and arrangements made for a convenient time to deliver City signs and poles. All salvaged traffic signs shall be delivered to the Traffic Operations Center located at 2200 Patterson Street. All deliveries to the Traffic Operations Center requires a minimum notice of two (2) working days prior to returning or delivering any sign and/or sign related material.

3.03 RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The contractor is responsible for providing and supplying aluminum traffic signs covered with retro-reflective sheeting, applying standard legends (or special legends if shown in the plans) to the covered sign blanks, galvanized steel sign poles, pole anchors, all hardware for installing the signs and poles, and for installing traffic signs, poles and anchors as shown in the plans or call for in the contract documents, complete and ready for field installations.

END OF SECTION

Section 01555

TRAFFIC CONTROL AND REGULATION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Requirements for signs, signals, control devices, traffic barriers, flares, lights and traffic signals; construction parking control, designated haul routes, and bridging of trenches and excavations.

B. Qualifications and requirements for use of flagmen.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Price Contracts.

1. Traffic control and regulation. Payment for traffic control and regulation is on a lump sum basis. Include preparation and submittal of traffic control plan if different than shown on Drawings, and provision of traffic control devices, equipment, and personnel necessary to protect the Work and public. Payment will be based on Contractor's Schedule of Values for traffic control and regulation.

2. Payment for traffic control will be authorized by Project Manager in three (3) parts. Partial payment will be made according to following schedule:

a. Payment of 25 percent of traffic control amount will be authorized when permanent control devices and necessary temporary markings, sufficiently deployed along job site as required to maintain progress of work, are installed at job site and approved. This limiting percentage will be prorated based upon extent of Contractor's setup.

b. A payment of 50 percent of traffic control amount will be authorized when pavement replacement commences. This limiting percentage will be prorated based upon linear footage, as measured along centerline axis of water main, of pavement replaced.

c. A payment of 25 percent of traffic control amount will be authorized when permanent pavement markings are restored and all unnecessary permanent and temporary control devices removed. This limiting percentage will be prorated based upon the extent of restoration.

3. Flagmen: Measurement is on a lump sum basis for flagmen as required for the project. The amount invoiced shall be determined based on the schedule of value submitted for flagmen.

4. New Portable Concrete Low Profile Traffic Barrier Provided. Payment is on a unit price basis for each linear foot of low profile traffic barrier provided, installed with hardware assemblies and connected together in accordance with the approved traffic control plan.

5. Portable Concrete Low Profile Traffic Barrier picked up from City of Houston Stockpile. Payment is on a unit price basis for each linear foot of low profile traffic barrier picked up from designated stockpile, moved onto the project, set at location and connected together.

6. Portable Concrete Low Profile Traffic Barrier Installed. Payment is on a unit price basis for each linear foot of low profile traffic barrier delivered to the project location, installed with hardware assemblies and connected together in accordance with the approved traffic control plan.

7. Portable Concrete Low Profile Traffic Barrier Moved and Reset. Payment is on a unit price basis for each linear foot of low profile traffic barrier disassembled, moved on the project, reset at the new locations and connected together. Include cost to repair roadway in the unit price.

8. Portable Concrete Low Profile Traffic Barrier Removed. Payment is on a unit price basis for each linear foot of low profile traffic barrier removed from the project, including hardware assemblies, and stockpiling at location listed in Section 01110 – Summary of Work. Include cost to repair roadway in the unit price.

9. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price Contracts. Include payment for work under this section in the total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD)

B. Article 4413 (29bb), commonly referred to as Private Investigators and Private Security Agencies Act, and Article 2.12, Texas Code of Criminal Procedure.

C. Code of Ordinances, City of Houston, Texas.

1. Chapter 10 Buildings And Neighborhood Protection, Article X Cleanup After Demolition Or Removal Of Structures

2. Chapter 40 Streets and Sidewalks, Article XVII Pedestrian Way Impairments

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Traffic control plan:

1. If using traffic control plan contained in the Contract without modification, submit a letter confirming use of the plan.

2. If using a different traffic control plan, submit the plan for approval. The plan must conform to TMUTCD requirements and be sealed by a Registered Texas Professional Engineer.

C. Submit copies of approved lane closure permits issued by City Traffic Engineering Branch.

D. Submit Schedules of Values for traffic control plan and flagmen within 30 days following Notice to Proceed.

E. Submit records verifying qualifications of Uniformed Peace Officers and Certified Flagmen proposed for use on the Work.

F. When working in the central business district, submit copies of approved Pedestrian Way permits issued by the City's Traffic Engineering Branch.

1.05 FLAGMEN

A. Use Uniformed Peace Officers and Certified Flagmen to control movement of vehicular and pedestrian traffic when construction operations encroach on public traffic lanes. Unless otherwise approved by Project Manager, use Uniformed Peace Officer for work along major thoroughfares, schools, churches, hospitals and Work at signalized intersections.

B. Uniformed Peace Officer: Individual employed full-time as a peace officer who receives separate compensation as a privately employed flagman. Private employment may be an employee-employer relationship or on an individual basis. Flagman may not be in the employ of another peace officer nor be a reserve peace officer.

1. Uniformed Peace Officers may be:

   a. sheriffs and their deputies;

   b. constables and deputy constables;

   c. marshals or police officers of an incorporated city, town or village; or

   d. as otherwise provided by Article 2.12, Code of Criminal Procedure.

2. The Uniformed Peace Officer must be a full-time peace officer, must work a minimum average of 32 paid hours per week, and must be paid a rate not less than the prevailing minimum hourly wage rate set by the federal Wage and Hour Act. The individual must be entitled to vacation, holidays, and insurance and retirement benefits.

C. Certified Flagman: Individual who receives compensation as a flagman and meets the following qualifications:

1. Formally trained and certified in traffic control procedures by the City s E. B. Cape Center.

2. Speaks English. Ability to speak Spanish is desirable but not required.

3. Paid for flagman duty at an hourly rate not less than the wage rate set for Rough Carpenter under the City's Wage Scale for Engineering Construction.

D. Certified Flagmen must wear a distinctive uniform, bright-colored vest, and be equipped with appropriate flagging and communication devices while at the Work site. They must also have in their possession while on duty, a proof of training identification card issued by the appropriate training institute.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 SIGNS, SIGNALS, AND DEVICES

A. Comply with TMUTCD requirements.

B. Traffic cones and drums, flares and lights: Conform to local jurisdictions' requirements.

C. When working in the Central business district, provide pedestrian pathway

signage approved by the City's Traffic Engineering Branch.

2.02 PORTABLE LOW PROFILE CONCRETE BARRIERS

A. The low profile concrete barrier is a patented design. Information concerning this barrier may be obtained from Texas Transportation Institute, Texas A&M University System, College Station, Texas 77843-3135, (409) 845-1712.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PUBLIC ROADS

A. Submit requests forms for lane closure and sidewalk closure to the City's Traffic Engineering Branch at least three working days prior to need for blocking vehicular lanes or sidewalks. Do not block lanes or sidewalks without approved permits. Obtain application from the City's Traffic Engineering Branch at 611 Walker, 5th floor or at the following internet address: http://www.ci.houston.tx.us/pwe/mrow/laneclosure.htm.

B. Follow laws and regulations of governing jurisdictions when using public roads. Pay for and obtain permits from jurisdiction before impeding traffic or closing lanes. Coordinate activities with Project Manager.

C. Give Project Manager one-week notice before implementing approved traffic control phases. Inform local businesses of impending traffic control activities.

D. Notified police department, fire department, METRO, and local schools, churches, and businesses in writing a minimum of five business days prior to beginning work.

E. Maintain 10-foot wide all-weather lanes adjacent to the Work for emergency vehicle use. Keep all-weather lanes free of construction equipment and debris.

F. Do not to obstruct normal flow of traffic from 7:00 a.m. to 9:00 a.m. and 4:00 p.m. to 6:00 p.m. on designated major arterials or as directed by Project Manager.

G. Maintain local driveway access to residential and commercial properties adjacent to work areas at all times. Use all-weather materials approved by Project Manager to maintain temporary driveway access to commercial and residential driveways.

H. Keep streets entering and leaving job site free of excavated material, debris, and foreign material resulting from construction operations in compliance with

applicable ordinances.

I. Remove existing signage and striping that conflict with construction activities or that may cause driver confusion.

J. Provide safe access for pedestrians along major cross streets.

K. Alternate closures of cross streets so that two adjacent cross streets are not closed simultaneously.

L. Do not close more than two consecutive esplanade openings at a time without prior approval from Project Manager.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION PARKING CONTROL

A. Control vehicular parking to prevent interference with public traffic and parking, access by emergency vehicles, and the City's operations.

B. Monitor parking of construction personnel's vehicles in existing facilities. Maintain vehicular access to and through parking areas.

C. Prevent parking on or adjacent to access roads or in non-designated areas.

3.03 FLARES AND LIGHTS

A. Provide flares and lights during hours of low visibility to delineate traffic lanes and to guide traffic.

3.04 HAUL ROUTS

A. Utilize haul routes designated by authorities or shown on drawings for construction traffic.

B. Confine construction traffic to designated haul routes.

C. Provide traffic control at critical areas of haul routes to regulate traffic and minimize interference with public traffic.

3.05 TRAFFIC SIGNS AND SIGNALS

A. Construct necessary traffic control devices for temporary signals required to complete the Work including loop detectors, traffic signal conduits, traffic signal wiring and crosswalk signals. Notify the City's Traffic Engineering Branch a minimum of 60 days in advance of need for control boxes and switchgear. The City will perform necessary service, programming or adjustments, to signal boxes and switchgear if required during construction.

B. Install and operate traffic control signals to direct and maintain orderly traffic flow in areas under Contractor's control affected by Contractor's operations. Post notices, signs and traffic controls before moving into next phase of traffic control.

C. Relocate traffic signs and signals as the Work progresses to maintain effective traffic control.

D. Unless otherwise approved by Project Manager, provide driveway signs with name of business that can be accessed from each crossover. Use two signs for each crossover.

E. Replace existing traffic control devices in Project area.

F. Project Manager may direct Contractor to make minor adjustments to traffic control signage to eliminate driver confusion and maintain orderly traffic flow during construction at no additional cost to the City.

3.06 BRIDGING TRENCHES AND EXCAVATIONS

A. When necessary, construct bridges over trenches and excavation to permit an unobstructed flow of traffic across construction areas and major drives. Use steel plates of sufficient thickness to support H-20 loading and install to operate with minimum noise.

B. Shore trench or excavation to support bridge and traffic.

C. Secure bridging against displacement with adjustable cleats, angles, bolts or other devices when:

1. bridging is placed over existing bus routes,

2. more than five percent of daily traffic is comprised of commercial or truck traffic,

3. more than two separate plates are used for bridging, and

4. when bridge is to be used for more than five consecutive days.

D. Extend steel plates used for bridging a minimum of 1 foot beyond edges of trench or excavation. Use temporary paving materials such as premix to feather edges of plates to minimize wheel impact on secured bridging.

3.07 REMOVAL

A. Remove equipment and devices when no longer required.

B. Repair damage caused by installation.

C. Remove post settings to a depth of 2 feet.

3.08 TRAFFIC CONTROL, REGULATION AND DIRECTION

A. Use Flagmen to control, regulate and direct an even flow and movement of vehicular and pedestrian traffic, for periods of time as may be required to provide for public safety and convenience, where:

1. multi-lane vehicular traffic must be diverted into single lane vehicular traffic,

2. vehicular traffic must change lanes abruptly,

3. construction equipment must enter or cross vehicular traffic lanes and walks,

4. construction equipment may intermittently encroach on vehicular traffic lanes and unprotected walks and crosswalk,

5. traffic regulation is needed due to rerouting of vehicular traffic around the Work site, and

6. where construction activities might affect public safety and convenience.

B. Use of Flagmen to assist in the regulation of traffic flow and movement does not relieve Contractor of responsibility to take other means necessary to protect the Work and public.

3.09 INSTALLATION STANDARDS

A. Place temporary pavement for single lane closures, in accordance with TMUTCD.

B. Reinstall temporary and permanent pavement markings as approved by Project Manager. When weather conditions do not allow application according to manufacturer's requirements, alternate markings may be considered. Submit proposed alternate to Project Manager for approval prior to installation. No additional payment will be made for use of alternate markings.

3.10 MAINTENANCE OF EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL

A. Submit name, address and telephone number of individual designated to be

responsible for maintenance of traffic handling at construction site to Project Manager. Individual must be accessible at all times to immediately correct deficiencies in equipment and materials used to handle traffic including missing, damaged, or obscured signs, drums, barricades, or pavement markings.

B. Inspect signs, barricades, drums, lamps and temporary pavement markings daily to verify that they are visible, in good working order, and conform with traffic handling plans as approved by Project Manager. Immediately repair, clean, relocate, realign, or replace equipment or materials that are not in compliance.

C. Keep equipment and materials, signs and pavement markings, clean and free of dust, dirt, grime, oil, mud, or debris.

D. Obtain approval of Project Manager to reuse damaged or vandalized signs, drums, and barricades.

END OF SECTION

Section 01560

SITE SECURITY

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Contractor shall be responsible for protection of the site, and all Work, materials, equipment, and existing facilities hereon, from actions of the Contractor, and his employees, including all sub-contractors and suppliers, whether engaged in the execution of the Work under this Contract, or engaged in any other activity while present on the site.

B. Contractor shall also be responsible for loss protection and protecting all of the Contractor's property, equipment, assets and employees while on the work site.

C. No claim shall be made against Owner by reason of any act of an employee or trespasser.

D. Contractor shall comply with all security measures required by the Owner, including access badging requirements, background security checks, vehicle searches, and all other security measures, either required in this Section or as appropriate on the job site. Owner reserves the right to permanently exclude from the site, at any time, any personnel proposed by the Contractor for security reasons, including, but not limited to, failure to comply with City security measures.

E. Contractor shall be solely responsible for all security and loss prevention within the Temporary Field Office Area and Work Area throughout the duration of the Contract.

1.02 PAYMENT BY CONTRACTOR TO CITY FOR OVERTIME SITE SECURITY

A. Contractor shall reimburse the City for overtime site security for personnel and equipment that are required beyond the normal working hours as defined in this Section.

1.03 MANDATORY BACKGROUND CHECKS AND CITY OF HOUSTON BADGING REQUIREMENTS

A. All Contractor employees and subcontractors must be a U.S. Citizen or have a legal work permit. Each person must also present a valid unexpired U.S. state driver's license or photo identification card. A U.S. issued resident alien card, with photo, passport, or other U.S. state or U.S. federal photo documentation is acceptable to present for identification purposes.

B. Contractor shall conduct background security checks, to include criminal records and driving records, on all employees at time of hiring and periodically thereafter and provide copies to PUD Security prior to first day of work for each employee.

C. The City of Houston/PUD Security Group will also conduct a criminal background check on all Contractor and subcontractor employees assigned to work on the site. Attachment A to this Section is a copy of the City's "Disclosure and Consent for Release of Information" form which must be completed and submitted to the City for each employee of the Contractor and its subcontractors before they are granted access to the work site.

D. Each employee of the Contractor and its subcontractors will be required to apply for, and receive, a City of Houston identification card/access badge before being granted access to the work site. Attachment B to this Section is a copy of the City's "Badging/ Access Information Sheet" which must be completed and submitted to the City at the time the Contractor or subcontractor employee is photographed for the identification card/access badge. The City of Houston photo identification office is located at 611 Walker Street in Houston, Texas on the 3rd floor of the annex (832-395-5175 phone 832-395-5187 fax). The badge office hours are Tuesday and Thursday from 8:30 am to 4:00 pm.

E. Equipment vendors or manufacturer's representatives who will be required to be on-site for more than four (4) consecutive working days, or cumulatively more than eight (8) working days will be required to comply with background check and badging requirements in Paragraphs C. and D. of this Section.

F. Identification cards/access badges will only be issued by the City once a background check has been completed for the Contractor of subcontractor employee, and clearance has been granted by the City.

G. All construction employees must show a valid identification card upon request while working on site.

H. The Contractor shall provide City of Houston/PUD Security a weekly list of current contractor and subcontractor employees. This list shall be updated immediately by the Contractor as changes occur.

I. Lost cards are disabled and replacement cost is $50.00.

1.04 CONTRACTOR / SUBCONTRACTOR HARDHAT IDENTIFICATION

A. Each Contractor employee, including subcontractors, must wear a hard hat with proper identification. Each hardhat shall display a distinctive corporate logo to identify the responsible company.

1.05 VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION/PARKING PASS

A. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with a list of the following information for their vehicles: year, make, model, color, state, license plate number, company that employs the driver, and the driver's name. Any changes shall be forwarded to the Owner within 24 hours of becoming aware of the need for a change.

B. Contractor personal vehicles may be parked only in the areas designated for such parking. Any vehicle found to be in violation of parking requirements is subject to being towed from the site at the risk and expense of the vehicle owner.

C. Contract company-owned and/or leased vehicles entering City of Houston/PUD facilities must have company logos displayed on both sides of the vehicle. Company logos must be displayed on the body of the vehicle.

D. Contract personnel utilizing their personal vehicles for company business inside a City of Houston/PUD facility must also display company logos. They may display their company logo on each side of their rear side windows. If the vehicle is a pickup truck the logo may be placed in the back glass. The logo must not be smaller than 5" X 8" in size and must be easily read from a distance of not less than 100 feet. Logos must remain on the vehicle while inside the City of Houston/PUD facility and may not be removed until the vehicle exits the gate.

E. All equipment on rubber tires, such as mobile cranes, backhoes, air compressors, welding machines, etc must also display company logos while being operated inside a City of Houston/PUD facility.

F. All deliveries are subject to random inspections by security personnel.

1.06 DELIVERIES

A. All Contractor deliveries shall occur only during scheduled Contractor working hours, including work time scheduled on Sundays, legal holidays and/or outside of the normal working hours specified in the Supplementary Conditions. No unscheduled, after-hour deliveries are permitted without prior approval of the Construction Manager. No deliveries shall be permitted at any time that the Contractor is not scheduled to work and on-site.

B. The Contractor shall provide a list of all anticipated deliveries to the Construction Manager each Monday morning and/or Friday afternoon with updates provided each day in the morning if required due to scheduling changes.

1.07 VISITOR ACCESS

A. The Contractor shall provide a list of all anticipated, un-badged site visitors, including drivers license number, to the Construction Manager and the City's Security Contractor each Monday morning and/or Friday afternoon with updates provided each day in the morning if required due to scheduling changes.

B. Contractor shall provide the Construction Manager with twenty-four (24) hours advance notice of the scheduled arrival of any un-badged visitor, including drivers license number, who is requesting access to Work Site Area.

C. Only un-badged visitors with a material interest in the Work may be granted authorized access to the site, at the discretion of the Construction Manager and the City's Security Contractor.

D. In addition to delivery vehicles described in Paragraph 1.6 above, visitors with a material interest in the Work may include manufacturer's representatives, equipment vendors, testing laboratory personnel, and other personnel whom the Construction Manager and the City's Security Contractor determine have a material interest in the Work.

E. No visitor shall be allowed into Work Site without a temporary badge issued by the City's Security Contractor.

F. Visitors who are expected to be on-site for more than four (4) consecutive work days, or eight (8) cumulative work days shall comply with the background check and badging requirements listed in Paragraph 1.03 above. The Construction Manager and the City's Security Contractor may require repeat visitors who exceed eight (8) cumulative work days on-site to comply with background check and badging requirements prior to granting further authorization to access Work Site.

1.08 CONTRACTOR'S WORK SITE SECURITY

A. The Contractor must store all equipment and materials only in those areas designated by the Owner for this purpose. The Owner is neither responsible nor liable for any equipment, materials, or other property of the Contractor.

B. The Contractor may choose, at his expense, to provide additional security elements as desired to adequately protect his assets on the job site.

1.09 INTERVIEWING

A. Contractor shall not conduct any interviews of potential employees on the plant site. All interviews must be conducted off-site.

1.10 INSPECTIONS AND SUPERVISION

A. The Construction Manager and/or the City of Houston/PUD Security Section will, at their discretion, inspect the security facilities and review operations and will report, in writing, to the Contractor the results of such inspections. Upon request of the Construction Manager and/or the City of Houston/PUD Security Section, the Contractor shall, within two working days of receipt of the report, identify, in writing, the corrective actions to be taken to address any deficiencies or problems with the work noted in the report. The corrective actions shall be implemented by the Contractor immediately upon direction of the Construction Manager.

1.11 DOCUMENTATION AND REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall maintain copies of records, including but not limited to, each of the following items using forms provided by or approved by the Construction Manager.

1. A regularly maintained and updated list of all authorized Contractor and Subcontractor personnel and all Contractor and Subcontractor vehicles authorized by the City for use on the site.

2. A list of all scheduled site visitors and deliveries associated with the Contractor's Work.

3. A complete record of all reported incidents of injury, fire, or emergency.

4. A complete record of all reported incidents of theft or vandalism.

5. A complete record of all infractions of the Project Rules and Regulations.

1.12 VEHICLES AND/OR MOBILE EQUIPMENT

A. Entry on site for vehicles and mobile equipment and drivers shall be entirely at risk of Contractor, Subcontractors and/or individual seeking such entry.

B. All vehicles and equipment requested to be site permitted shall be duly inspected, licensed and covered by insurance as required by the Contract Documents, before Contractor and Subcontractors request permission for their entry on site.

C. Drivers/operators shall be fully and currently licensed and/or certified to drive the type of vehicle or to operate the type of equipment brought on-site.

D. Drivers shall observe and obey all Texas Laws at all times.

E. The maximum permissible speed on site is 20 MPH, however, speeds much lower than this may be the maximum safe speeds and it is the direct responsibility of the diver to

drive at a safe speed in any area at any given time according to the circumstances existing at that time and place.

F. The movement and parking of vehicles and equipment on site shall be kept to the minimum necessary to meet construction requirements.

G. Vehicles not directly associated with the performance of the Work shall not be granted entry to site.

H. All vehicles and loads shall be subject to search by City security personnel, CM, or other authorized personnel at any location on site at any time.

I. Vehicles may only be driven or parked in construction areas, or access roads only when directly engaged in deliveries to that area and subject to regulations stated herein. No vehicle or mobile equipment shall be left unattended when in construction areas or access roads or in operating plant areas.

J. No vehicle or equipment shall be parked or placed on any road on site as to hinder or prevent clear passage of other vehicles thereof, unless the requirements of the Work so necessitate, in which case the prior written approval of CM for such hindrance shall have been obtained. Comply with Section 01555.

K. Movement of heavy mobile equipment on plant paved roads shall be performed in a manner which precludes damage to the pavement and related structures. The Contractor shall be wholly responsible for the protection and safety of life and property including roadways, structures and other equipment while such movement is in progress and shall repair all damage caused thereby at no additional cost to the City.

PART 2: PRODUCTS – NOT USED

PART 3: EXECUTION – NOT USED

END OF SECTION

Section 01562

TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Tree and plant protection.

B. Minimum qualifications of Arborist and Urban Forester.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Payment for Tree Protection, including tree pruning or tree removal, shall be paid as a Lump Sum basis that shall include all items specified in this section unless payment is specified otherwise in this section

B Payment for Zero Curb Cutback will be on a per linear foot basis.

C. Payment for Checker Plate will be on a square foot basis.

D. Refer to Section 01270-Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 – Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit name and experience of qualified Arborist, proposed for use on the Work, to Project Manager.

1.04 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Preserve and protect existing trees and plants to remain from foliage, branch, trunk, or root damage that could result from construction operations.

B. Prevent following types of damage:

1. Compaction of root zone by foot or vehicular traffic, or material storage.

2. Trunk damage from equipment operations, material storage, or from nailing or bolting.

3. Trunk and branch damage caused by ropes or guy wires.

4. Root or soil contamination from spilled solvents, gasoline, paint, lime slurry, and other noxious materials.

5. Branch damage due to improper pruning or trimming.

6. Damage from lack of water due to:

   a. Cutting or altering natural water migration patterns near root zones.

   b. Failure to provide adequate watering

7. Damage from alteration of soil pH factor caused by depositing lime, concrete, plaster, or other base materials near roots zones.

8. Cutting of roots larger than one inch in diameter.

1.05 DAMAGE ASSESSMENT

A. When trees other than those designated for removal are destroyed or damaged as result of construction operations, remove and replace with same size, species, and variety up to and including 8 inches in trunk diameter. Trees larger than 8 inches in diameter shall be replaced with an 8 inch diameter tree of the same species and variety and total contract amount will be reduced by an amount determined from the following formula and paid to Tree Fund 0.7854 x D2 x $13.25 where D is diameter in inches of tree or shrub trunk measured 12 inches above grade for that portion of the tree which is greater than 8 inches in diameter. A permit must be applied for and approved by the City of Houston, Urban Forestry Division prior to removal of any tree not scheduled for removal in the tree treatment schedule. Contractor shall contact City of Houston, Urban Forestry, at 832-395-8459 to apply for tree removal permit when needed.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Pruning Paint: Black latex, water based paint, free of all petroleum products.

B. Fertilizer: Fertilizer shall be a root stimulant that contains at a minimum the following ingredients: Ectomycorrhizal Fungi, VA Mycorrhizal (VAM) Fungi, Rhizosphere Bacillus spp., Kelp Meal Humic Acid, and Soluble Yucca.

C. Tree Protection Fencing: Orange, plastic mesh fenching, 4 feet in height with 6 feet high “t” bar posts installed 10 feet on centers as per drawings.

D. Plastic Root/Soil Protection: Clear polyethylene sheeting, minimum 6 mil, thickness.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PROTECTION OF EXISTING TREES AND SHRUBS

A. Site preparation work and/or construction work shall not begin in any area where tree preservation measures have not been completed and approved.

B. Protect exposed roots and root zone areas from contamination from stabilization materials and concrete using polyethylene.

C. Cover exposed roots within 4 hours to reduce damage caused by desiccation. Roots may be covered with soil, mulch, polyethylene, or wet burlap to help protect them from drying.

D. Designate limited areas as concrete washout areas. Locate concrete washout areas away from root zones.

E. Install root pruning trenching where designated in tree treatment schedule and shown on the tree protection drawings. Trees scheduled for root pruning are called out specifically in the treatment schedule. Trench shall be located 2 ft. from the edge of proposed waterline or sanitary sewer for trees called out for root pruning for water or fittings, or sanitary sewer in the treatment schedule, 2 ft. from edge of proposed storm sewer pipe for trees called out for root pruning for storm in the treatment schedule, 30” back of proposed curb for trees called out for root pruning for street, and at edge of sidewalk for trees called out for root pruning for sidewalk. Root pruning shall not be performed where there is not adequate space to be located sufficiently away from tree to prevent damage. All pruning must be evaluated by Contractor’s Certified Arborist and reviewed and approved by City Forester before being performed. Trench locations shown on tree preservation plan are drawn to scale and should be located in field as drawn on plan. Exact locations shall be approved in the field by engineer and/or project urban forester prior to installation. Trenching depth shall be a minimum of 2 ft. deep and a maximum of 6 inches wide for water, fittings, sanitary sewer, storm, and street. Trenching depth shall be to the anticipated bottom of sidewalk and base material for sidewalk root pruning, roots lower than sidewalk shall not be pruned. All roots shall be cut by trencher, chainsaw, or handsaw to the specified depth. Roots shall be cut cleanly, and or not ripped, torn, or chopped. Trench shall be backfilled and compacted immediately after trenching. Trench shall be installed prior to any clearing and grubbing, excavation for underground, or any other site work.

F. Install tree protection fencing around each tree to be preserved as indicated in the tree treatment schedule and on the tree protection plan.

1. Each tree to be preserved shall be protected with a tree protection fence. The fencing shall be continuous between posts, shall be pulled taut prior to securing to posts, and shall be firmly attached to the posts with a minimum of 4 wire ties.

2. All tree protection fencing shall be installed prior to site work or construction activity. The fence shall be placed in a continuous alignment as shown on the tree protection plan. Fences shown on tree protection plan are drawn to scale and shall be installed as drawn, in the field. In general fences shall be placed 30” back of existing curb or edge of pavement where root pruning or zero curb cutback is not specified, and 6” back of root pruning trench where root pruning is specified and immediately back of curb where zero curb cutback is specified. Exact locations shall be approved by the project urban forester and/or engineer in the field. The Fences shall be placed to protect roots, trunks, and foliage. The contractor shall not remove or relocate tree protection fencing and shall not operate within the limits shown without direct approval of the project urban forester. In areas where the proposed waterline is located in the existing road side ditch and where tree protection fencing can not be installed across the ditch, the fencing shall be installed at the top of outside ditch bank and no bore pits, peep holes, service taps, or any excavation should occur in the area immediately in front of the tree protection fencing for trees called out with “bore” in the Tree Treatment Schedule. The “bore” limits shall be the same as the limits of the tree protection fencing.

3. Storage of equipment or materials will not be allowed inside a fence. Entryways and access into a protected area shall not be provided unless approved by the project urban forester.

4. Damage to tree fences occurring during the progress of the work shall be repaired immediately at no additional cost to owner. Workmen shall be clearly instructed to exercise caution in performance of work near trees being preserved.

5. Tree protection fencing shall be removed by contractor, at no additional costs, upon completion of all construction activity in each work zone area. Tree protection fencing materials used in the first two work zone areas shall be removed and utilized in subsequent work zone areas. Materials and labor shall be paid for each linear foot of fencing installed in first two work areas. All fencing installed in subsequent work zone areas shall be paid for labor only.

G. Boring/Auguring of water lines or sanitary sewer lines

1. Water line or sanitary sewer line shall be bored/augured/ horizontally drilled under

critical root zones areas of trees designated with auger or bore in the tree treatment schedule. The entire area protected with tree protection fencing shall be bored. No bore pits, come through holes, peep holes, push pits, or long or short side service taps shall be allowed in the areas protected by tree protection fencing. The tree protection plan takes into consideration the limits of augering equipment, there should be room for adequately spaced bore pits, peep holes, come through holes, and push pits. Any changes to the location of the tree protection fencing shall be authorized by the project Urban Forester and City Engineer.

H. Hand digging of Service taps and leads

1. Trees called out for Hand dig short side service tap are located in very close proximity to existing short side water meters. Excavating the service tap with machinery would significantly impact the tree and be in violation of the City of Houston's Street Tree Ordinance. These short side service taps shall be excavated with manual labor to expose any roots 1" in diameter and larger. The first 24" of excavation shall be completed manually to expose the roots. Any root 1" in diameter and larger shall remain undamaged, the roots shall not be cut , nor shall the bark and cambium layer be scraped or damaged. Once the roots are exposed, if there is adequate room to utilize a mini-excavator without damaging the roots, the mini-excavator can be utilized to complete the excavation down to the water line. 1" plywood shall be placed on grade to provide root protection in the area of access of the mini-excavator. If roots 1" diameter or larger are cut or damaged, responsible party will be subject to a citation under the Street Tree Ordinance, and may also be required to incur the cost of tree removal and replacement of damaged tree on an inch for inch basis, if required by City of Houston Urban Forestry Division.

2. Trees called out for Hand dig short side or long side service lead are located in very close proximity to existing water meters. Excavating the service lead with machinery would significantly impact the tree and be in violation of the City of Houston's Street Tree Ordinance. Short side leads shall be excavated with manual labor to expose any roots 1" in diameter and larger from the service tap of the meter. Come out hole and excavation required for long service leads shall be excavated with manual labor to expose roots 1" in diameter and larger, from the come out hole to the meter. In each case, all roots 1" in diameter and larger shall remain undamaged, the roots shall not be cut, nor shall the bark and cambium layer be scraped or damaged. If roots 1" diameter or larger are cut or damaged, responsible party will be subject to a citation under the cost of tree removal and replacement of damaged tree on an inch by inch basis, if required by City of Houston Urban Forestry Division.

3. Trees called out for Hand dig sanitary stub up are located in very close proximity to proposed service lead. Excavating the service lead with machinery would significantly impact the tree and be in violation of the City of Houston's Street Tree

Ordinance. Excavation for sanitary stub up shall be completed with manual labor to expose any roots 1” in diameter and larger. The lead shall be bored from face of curb to stub up hole when called out in the tree treatment schedule. Come out and stub up holes shall be excavated with manual labor to expose roots 1” in diameter and larger. In case, all roots 1” in diameter and larger shall remain undamaged, the roots shall not be cut, nor shall the bark and cambium layer be scraped or damaged. If roots 1” diameter or larger are cut or damaged, responsible party will be subject to a citation under the Street Tree Ordinance, and may be required to incur the cost of tree removal and replacement of damaged tree on an inch by inch basis, if required by City of Houston Urban Forestry Division.

4. Long side service taps shall not be located in an area specified to be bored in the tree treatment schedule. Should it be absolutely necessary to locate a long side service tap in an area specified to be bored, the excavation shall be completed as specified in paragraph 1 of this section-Hand digging short side service taps.
5. All water meters and sanitary service leads called out on P&P drawings and visible in the field have been addressed in the Tree Protection Plan. Should any additional meters or lead be found during construction, or in any new meters or leads installed beneath the canopy of any tree, fenced for tree protection, the excavation shall be completed as specified in paragraph 1 and/or 2 of this section and paid for at the unit cost for each included in contract.

I. Pruning of Trees

1. Trees shall be pruned in accordance with the American National Standard for tree pruning, ANSI A300 (Part 1) – 2001 Pruning Revision of ANSI A300-1995 Tree, Shrub and Other Woody Plant Maintenance – Standard Practices. Pruning shall be completed by professional arborists who has received training in proper pruning techniques.

2. Clearance prune designated trees for public streets, sidewalks, and construction areas. Provide minimum 14 feet and maximum of 18 feet of vertical clearance over proposed water trunk lines. Provide minimum of 14 feet and maximum of 16 feet of vertical clearance over proposed street construction, from 24” back of curb on one side to 24” back of curb on the other side. Provide 20’ of vertical clearance over proposed storm sewer up to 38” in size, and 30’ of vertical clearance for storm sewer larger than 38” in size. Pruning to be installed prior to any construction activity. Contractor shall notify property owner prior to trimming or pruning any trees with trunks located on private property. Exceptions will be made for trees determined to be arboriculturally significant by City of Houston Urban Forestry. Pruning of trees identified will be completed with approval and supervision of City of Houston Urban Forestry.

3. All cuts should be made sufficiently close to the parent limb or trunk without cutting into the branch collar or leaving a protruding stub, so that closure can readily start under normal conditions. All lateral cuts shall be made to a lateral that is least 1/3 the diameter of the parent limb. Clean cuts shall be made at all times.

4. Trees shall be pruned in a manner that will not destroy or alter the natural shape and character of the tree. Apply black latex paint to all fresh wounds on Oak (Quercus) species immediately after each cut is made.

5. Crown cleaning prune designated trees shall include selective removal of dead, diseased, and/or broken limbs.

J. Tree Removal

1. Trees scheduled for removal shall be sawed down and debris hauled from the site the same day. The stump shall be ground to 6” below grade and excess grindings shall be hauled from the site the same day, so that a pile of grindings is not left where the stump was ground. Enough grindings should be left so that an open hole does not remain.

2. Only those trees called out for removal in the Tree Treatment Schedule shall be removed, or otherwise damaged. Should it be determined that any additional trees must be removed, a permit must be applied for and approved from the City of Houston Urban Forestry Division prior to removal. Contractor shall contact Urban Forestry at 832-395-8459.

K. Root Stimulation

1. Deep root stimulate designated trees. Mix fertilizer with wetting agent per label instructions.

2. Stimulate entire root zone area within the dripline of the tree and continue 10 feet beyond the dripline, leaving out areas of anticipated root loss (construction areas).

3. Mixture shall be injected into the top 10 inches of soil under pressure of 150 to 200 psi as soil conditions warrant.

4. Mix in a tank with agitation capability per label instructions. Inject the mixture on a 2.5 ft. square grid at 4 lbs, actual nitrogen per 1,000 sq. ft.

L. Regularly water trees which have received root damage, to eliminate additional stress caused by lack of moisture. Water during periods without adequate rainfall. For example, should 1.0” of rain not be received within a week period, the trees should be thoroughly watered.

March through September, water once every two weeks. October through February, water every three weeks. Water thoroughly to saturate the entire root zone area.

M. Chemically treat tree trunks with evidence of borer activity with the appropriate approved insecticide mixed and applied per the manufacturer's product application recommendations. Trees shall be sprayed within 24 hours after observance of borer activity.

N. Grading and filling around trees.

1. Maintain existing grade within the dripline of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Where existing grade around trees is above new finish grade, under supervision of project urban forester, carefully hand excavate within the dripline to make transition to new finish grade.

3. Where existing grade is below new finish grade, place clean bank sand in a single layer to make the transition to new grade. Do not compact; hand grade to required elevation. Specifically to areas where proposed curb is higher than existing and backfill will be required.

O. Demolition, Forming and Pouring Sidewalks (Sidewalk on Grade)

1. Demolition of existing sidewalks, located in or adjacent to the limits of tree protection fencing, shall be completed without disturbing, cutting, or otherwise damaging tree roots and soil located beneath them.

2. The new sidewalk shall be formed at or above the elevation of the existing sidewalk, without disturbing, cutting or otherwise damaging tree roots. Every effort has been made to address tree root and sidewalk elevation issues with information available in the field and on plan and profile sheets. The elevation of every tree root was not available, if tree roots are found to be in conflict with proposed sidewalk, project engineer and urban forester shall be consulted as to how to install sidewalks with minimal impacts to adjacent trees.

3. Checkerplate shall be installed in areas called out only if tree root elevations prohibit construction of ADA compliant sloped concrete sidewalks. Checkerplate shall be installed per detail.

P. Zero curb cutback

1. Disturbance of tree roots or soil behind the existing and/or proposed curb within root zones of trees designated for zero curb cutback shall be prohibited. If the curb can not be removed without disturbing soil or damaging roots back of curb when using

equipment for demolition, the curb shall be broken using a hand held jackhammer and removed by hand.

2. The exposed roots and soil shall be covered immediately after demolition with 6 mil polyethylene in order to avoid desiccation, and contamination by the lime used for road bed stabilization. The polyethylene shall be placed so that it covers the vertical face of soil back of curb and laid back onto the grade 12 inches back of curb. The polyethylene should remain in place, across the entire area specified for zero curb cutback, from the time the existing curb is demolished until the time when the new curb is formed and backfilled. The polyethylene can be pulled up from the vertical face while the road bed is being graded or mixed, to avoid catching the plastic with machinery, but shall be replaced immediately after equipment has completed. The vertical face shall not be exposed for more than 8 hours in any 24 hour period.

3. There shall be no stabilization back of curb in the zero curb cutback areas, or forming with steel forms. The existing grade and roots back of existing curb shall not be disturbed. This may require forming of the new street with wooden forms with stakes inside forms, which may require leaving the forms in place after the street is poured. Should wooden forms be utilized, the wood shall be at minimum a 2x6. The new curb may require hand finishing, as a slip curb machine may not have adequate clearance without disturbing the roots that are to be protected with the zero curb cutback.

4. Roots extending into the street, or on top of the existing curb, in areas to paved shall be cut and removed by hand prior to disturbance or removal with equipment. Roots shall be pruned flush with the proposed back of curb. Roots one inch in diameter and larger shall be cut in a manner to provide a smooth, clean cut surface. Cuts shall be made with the appropriate pruning shears or pruning saws. Roots shall not be chopped or broken.

5. In areas where proposed curb will be may be lower than existing top of curb and tree roots 2” diameter or larger are present, the soil and roots shall not be graded or laid back. The existing elevation shall be maintained and the curb formed to meet elevation or a short elevation difference roots and top of curb maintained.

Q. Demolition, Forming and Pouring of Drive Way Approaches

1. Demolition of existing driveway approaches located beneath the dripline of any tree shall be completed without disturbing, cutting, or otherwise damaging tree roots and soil located beneath them.

2. The new approach shall be formed at or above the elevation of the existing approach where tree roots 2” diameter or larger are present, without disturbing, cutting or

otherwise damaging tree roots. Maximum drive slopes may be needed at bottom of apron to allow forming of drive over tree roots at top of drive. As with sidewalks, the elevation of every tree roots was not available in design. If tree roots are found to be in conflict with proposed approach, project engineer and urban forester shall be consulted as to how to install drive way with minimal impacts to adjacent trees.

R. Replacement Trees for Tree Removals under Ordinance

1. Location, species, and size of replacement trees are indicated on the drawings. Contractor shall layout individual trees at locations shown on drawings. Contractor shall layout individual trees at locations shown on drawings and be responsible for utility locate requirements. In case of conflicts, notify City Engineer and City Urban Forestry before proceeding with work. Trees shall be laid out and locations approved by City Engineer prior to planting.

2. Trees shall meet and be planted according to City of Houston Standard Specification 02915.

S. Arborist and Urban Forester Qualifications

1. Arborist – Employ qualified arborist acceptable to City's Parks and Recreation Department to complete all tree treatments. Arborist shall be normally engaged in the field and have a minimum of 5 years experience. Qualifications of the selected arborist shall be submitted for review and approval by the project engineer and City of Houston.

2. Urban Forester – An Urban forester shall be hired to monitor and assist with field layout (exact locations of fencing, root pruning, and zero curb cutback) of the tree preservation program during demolition and construction to ensure tree protection procedures and techniques are practiced as specified to address concerns and conditions which occur in the field. At a minimum, the individual responsible for monitoring and field layout of the tree protection shall have a minimum of 5 years of experience as a consultant, and shall not be affiliated with a tree care contractor in the Houston area. Qualifications of the selected urban forester shall be submitted for review and approval by the project engineer and City of Houston Urban Forestry Department.

END OF SECTION

Section 01570

STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION CONTROL

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Implementation of Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plans (SWP3) described in Section 01410 – TPDES Requirement.

B. Installation, maintenance and removal, of storm water pollution prevention structures: diversion dikes, interceptor dikes, diversion swales, interceptor swales, down spout extenders, pipe slope drains, paved flumes and level spreaders. Structures are used during construction and prior to final development of the site.

C. Filter Fabric Barriers:

1. Type 1: Temporary filter fabric barrier for erosion and sediment control in non-channelized flow areas.

2. Type 2: Temporary reinforced filter fabric barrier for erosion and sediment control in channelized flow areas.

D. Hay Bale Fence.

E. Drop Inlet Basket

F. Inlet Sediment Traps

G. Brush Berm

H. Sand Bag Barrier

I. Bagged Gravel Barrier

J. Sediment Basin

K. Inlet Protection Barrier

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. UNIT PRICES

1. Payment for filter fabric barrier is on a linear foot basis measured between limits of beginning and ending of stakes.

2. Payment for reinforced filter fabric barrier is on a linear foot basis measured between limits of beginning and ending of stakes.

3. Payment for drop inlet baskets is on a unit price basis for each drop inlet basket.

4. Payment for storm inlet sediment traps is on a unit price basis for each storm inlet sediment trap.

5. Payment for storm water pollution prevention structures is on a lump sum basis for the project. Earthen structures with outlet and piping include diversion dikes, interceptor dikes, diversion swales, interceptor swales, and excavated earth-outlet sediment trap, embankment earth-outlet sediment trap, down spout extenders, pipe slope drains, paved flumes, stone outlet sediment trap, and level spreaders.

6. Payment for hay bale barrier, if included in Document 00410 - Bid Form, is on a linear foot of accepted bale barriers, if not include in cost of storm water pollution prevention structures.

7. Payment for brush berm, if included in Document 00410 - Bid Form, is on a linear foot of accepted brush berm, if not include in cost of storm water pollution prevention structures.

8. Payment for sandbag barrier, if included in Document 00410 - Bid Form, is on a linear foot basis measured between limits of beginning and ending of sandbags, if not include in cost of storm water pollution prevention structures.

9. Payment for bagged gravel barrier, if included in Document 00410 - Bid Form, is on a linear foot basis measured between limits of beginning and ending of bagged gravel barrier, if not include in cost of storm water pollution prevention controls.

10. Payment for inlet protection barriers, if included in Document 00410 - Bid Form, is on a linear foot basis measured along outside face of inlet protection barrier, if not include in cost of storm water pollution prevention structures.

11. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum) Contract. If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM

1. A 36 – Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.

2. D698 – Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft3 (600kN-m/m3)).

3. D3786 – Standard Test Method for Hydraulic Bursting Strength for knitted Goods and Nonwoven Fabrics.

4. D 4355 - Standard Test Method for Deterioration of Geotextiles from Exposure to Ultraviolet Light and Water (Xenon-Arc Type Apparatus).

5. D 4491 - Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity.

6. D 4632 - Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles.

7. D 4833 - Standard Test Method for Index Puncture Resistance of Geotextiles, Geomembranes, and Related Products.

8. D 6382 - Standard Practice for Dynamic Mechanical Analysis and Thermogravimetry of Roofing and Waterproofing Membrane Material.

B. Storm Water Management Handbook for Construction Activities prepared by City of Houston, Harris County and Harris County Flood Control District.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Filter Fabric Barrier Type 1 and Type 2: Install to allow surface or channel runoff percolation through fabric in sheet-flow manner and to retain and accumulate sediment. Maintain Filter Fabric Barriers to remain in proper position and configuration at all times.

B. Hay Bale Fence: Install to allow surface runoff percolation through hay in sheet-flow manner and to retain and accumulate sediment. Maintain Hay Bale Fence to remain in proper position and configuration at all times.

C. Interceptor Dikes and Swales: Construct to direct surface or channel runoff around the project area or runoff from project area into sediment traps.

D. Drop Inlet Baskets: Install to allow runoff percolation through the basket and to retain and accumulate sediment. Clean accumulation of sediment to prevent clogging and backups.

E. Sediment Traps: Construct to pool surface runoff from construction area to allow sediment to settle onto the bottom of trap.

F. Sand Bags: Are used during construction activities in unstabilized minor swales, ditches, or streambeds when the contributing drainage area is no greater than 2 acres. It is also sediment barrier for stage one Inlet.

G. Bagged Gravel Barrier: Are used during construction activities in unstabilized minor swales, ditches, or streambeds when the contributing drainage area is no greater than 2 acres. It is also sediment barrier for stage two Inlet.

H. Drop Inlet Insert Basket: Is a temporary barrier placed within a storm drain inlet (Lower Portion of Stage I and Upper Portion of Stage II Inlets) consisting of a filter fabric supported by a metal frame work to prevent sediment and other pollutants from entering convey system.

I. Brush Berm: Brush Berm is constructed at the perimeter of a distribute site within the developing area.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's literature for product specifications and installation instructions.

C. Submit manufacturer=s catalog sheets and other product data on geotextile or filter fabrics, outlet pipe, perforated riser and connectors.

D. Submit proposed methods, equipment, materials, and sequence of operations for storm-water pollution prevention structures.

E. Submit shop drawings for Drop Inlet Baskets.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CONCRETE

A. Concrete: Class B in accordance with Section 03315 – Concrete for Utility Construction or as shown on the Drawings.

2.02 AGREGATE MATERIALS

A. Use poorly graded cobbles with diameter greater than 3 inches and less than 5 inches.

B. Provide gravel lining in accordance with Section 2320 – Utility Backfill Materials or as shown on the drawings.

C. Provide clean cobbles and gravel consisting of crushed concrete or stone. Use clean, hard crushed concrete or stone free from adherent coatings, salt, alkali, dirt, clay, loam, shale, soft or flaky materials, or organic matter.

D. Sediment Pump Pit Aggregate: Use nominal 2-inch diameter river gravel.

2.03 PIPE

A. Polyethylene culvert pipe or PVC sewer pipe in accordance with Section 02505- High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Solid and Profile Wall Pipe and Section 02506 Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe or as shown on the Drawings.

B. Inlet Pipes: Galvanized steel pipe in accordance with Section 02642 Corrugated Metal Pipe or as shown on the Drawings.

C. Standpipe for Sediment Pump Pits: Galvanized round culvert pipe or round PVC pipe, minimum of 12-inch and a maximum of 24-inch diameter, perforate at 6 to 12 inch centers around circumference.

2.04 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRIC

A. Woven or nonwoven geotextile filter fabric made of either polypropylene, polyethylene, ethylene, or polyamide material, in continuous rolls of longest practical length.

B. Grab Strength: 100 psi in any principal direction (ASTM D-4632), Mullen burst strength >200 psi (ASTM D-3786), and equivalent opening size between 50 and 140.

C. Furnish ultraviolet inhibitors and stabilizers for minimum 6 months of expected usable construction life at temperature range of 0 degrees F to 120 degrees F.

D. Mirafi, Inc., Synthetic Industries, or equivalent

2.05 BARRIER

A. Wire Barrier: Woven galvanized steel wire, 14 gauge by 6-inch square mesh spacing, minimum 24 inch roll or sheet width of longest practical length.

B. Barrier Stakes: Nominal 2 by 2 inch moisture-resistant treated wood or steel posts (min. of 1.25 lbs. per linear foot and Brinell Hardness greater than 140) with safety caps on top; length as required for minimum 8 inch bury and full

height of filter fabric.

2.06 SANDBAGS

A. Provide woven material made of polypropylene, polyethylene, or polyamide material.

1. Minimum unit weight of four ounces per square yard.

2. Minimum grab strength of 100 lbs in any principal direction (ASTM D4632)

3. Mullen burst strength exceeding 300 lbs (ASTM D4833).

4. Ultraviolet stability exceeding 70 percent. After 500 hours of exposure (ASTM 4355).

5. Size: Length:18 to 24 inches. Width: 12 to 18 inches. Thickness: 6 to 8 inches. Weight: Approximately 40 to 50 pounds not to exceed 75 pounds.

2.07 Bagged gravel Barrier

1. Minimum unit weight of four ounces per square yard.

2. Minimum grab strength of 100 lbs in any principal direction (ASTM D4632)

3. Mullen burst strength exceeding 300 lbs (ASTM D4833).

4. Ultraviolet stability exceeding 70 percent. After 500 hours of exposure (ASTM 4355).

5. Size: Length:18 to 24 inches. Width: 12 to 18 inches. Thickness: 6 to 8 inches. Weight: Approximately 40 to 50 pounds not to exceed 75 pounds.

2.08 DROP INLET BASKET

A. Provide steel frame members in accordance with ASTM A36.

B. Construct top frame of basket with two short sides of 2 inch by 2 inch and single long side of 1 inch by 1 inch, 1/8 inch angle iron. Construct basket hangers of 2 inch by 1/4 inch iron bars. Construct bottom frame of 1 inch by 1/4 inch iron bar or 1/4 inch plate with center 3 inches removed. Use minimum 1/4 inch diameter iron rods or equivalent for sides of inlet basket.

Weld minimum of 14 rods in place between top frame/basket hanger and bottom frame. Exact dimensions for top frame and insert basket will be determined based on dimensions of type of inlet being protected.

2.09 HAY BALE

A. Hay: Standard-baled agricultural hay bound by wire, nylon, or polypropylene rope. Do not use jute or cotton binding.

B. Hay Bale Stakes (applicable where bales are on soil): No. 3 (3/8 diameter) reinforcing bars, deformed or smooth at Contractor's option, length as required for minimum 18 inch bury and full height bales.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION, INSTALLATION AND MAINTEINANCE

A. Provide erosion and sediment control structures at locations shown on the Drawings.

B. Do not clear, grub or rough cut until erosion and sediment control systems are in place unless approved by Project Manger to allow installation of erosion and sediment control systems, soil testing and surveying.

C. Maintain existing erosion and sediment control systems located within project site until acceptance of Project or until directed by Project Manger to remove and discard existing system.

D. Regularly inspect and repair or replace damaged components of erosion and sediment control structures. Unless otherwise directed, maintain erosion and sediment control structure until project area stabilization is accepted. . Redress and replace granular fill at outlets as needed to replenish depleted granular fill. Remove erosion and sediment control structures promptly when directed by Project Manger. Dispose of materials in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

E. Remove and dispose sediment deposits at the designated spoil site for the Project. If a project spoil site is not designated on Drawings, dispose of sediment off site at approved location in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

F. Unless otherwise shown on the Drawings, compact embankments, excavations, and trenches in accordance with Section 02315 Roadway

Excavation or Section 2317 Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

G. Prohibit equipment and vehicles from maneuvering on areas outside of dedicated right of way and easements for construction. Immediately repair damage caused by construction traffic to erosion and sediment control structures.

H. Protect existing trees and plants in accordance with Section 1562 – Tree and Plant Protection.

3.02 SEDIMENT TRAPS

A. Install sediment traps so that surface runoff shall percolate through system in sheet flow fashion and allow retention and accumulation of sediment.

B. Inspect sediment traps after each rainfall, daily during periods of prolonged rainfall, and at a minimum once each week. Repair or replace damaged sections immediately.

C. Use fill material for embankment in accordance with Section 02320 – Utility Backfill Materials.

D. Excavation length and height shall be as specified on Drawings. Use side slopes of 2:1 or flatter.

E. Stone outlet sediment traps:

1. Maintain minimum of 6 inches between top of core material and top of stone outlet, minimum of 4 inches between bottom of core material and existing ground and minimum of 1 foot between top of stone outlet and top of embankment.

2. Embed cobbles minimum of 4 inches into existing ground for stone outlet. Core shall be minimum of 1 foot in height and in width and wrapped in triple layer of geotextile filter fabric.

F. Sediment Basin with Pipe Outlet Construction Methods: Install outlet pipe and riser as shown on the Drawings.

G. Remove sediment deposits when design basin volume is reduced by one-third or sediment level is one foot below principal spillway crest, whichever is less.

3.03 FILTER FABRIC BARRIER CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Fence Type 1: Filter Fabric: Barrier

1. Install stakes 3 feet on center maximum and firmly embed minimum 8 inches in soil. If filter fabric is factory preassembled with support netting, then maximum support spacing is 8 feet. Install wood stakes at a slight angle toward the source of anticipated runoff.

2. Trench in the toe of the fence lines so the downward face of the trenches is flat and perpendicular to direction of flow. V-trench configuration as shown on Drawings may also be used.

3. Lay fabric along edges of trenches in longest practical continuous runs to minimize joints. Make joints only at a support post. Splice with minimum 6-inch overlap and seal securely.

4. Staple filter fabric to stakes at maximum 3 inches on center. Extend fabric minimum 18 inches and maximum 36 inches above natural ground.

5. Backfill and compact trench.

B. Barrier Type 2: Reinforced Filter Fabric Barrier

1. Layout barrier same as for Type 1.

2. Install stakes at 6 feet on center maximum and at each joint in wire fence, firmly embedded 1-foot minimum, and inclined it as for Type 1.

3. Tie wire fence to stakes with wire at 6 inches on center maximum. Overlap joints minimum one bay of mesh.

4. Install trench same as for Type 1.

5. Fasten filter fabric wire fence with tie wires at 3 inches on center maximum.

6. Layout fabric same as for Type 1. Fasten to wire fence with wire ties at 3 inches on center maximum and, if applicable, to stakes above top of wire fence it as for Type 1.

7. Backfill and compact trench.

8. Attach filter fabric to wooden fence stakes spaced a maximum of 6 feet apart or steel fence stakes spaced a maximum of 8 feet apart and embedded a minimum of 12 inches. Install stakes at a slight angle toward source of anticipated runoff.

9. Trench in toe of filter fabric barrier with spade or mechanical trencher so that downward face of trench is flat and perpendicular to direction of flow. A V-trench configuration may also be used. Lay filter fabric along edges of trench. Backfill and compact trench upon completion of Construction.

10. Filter fabric fence shall have a minimum height of 18 inches and a maximum height of 36 inches above natural ground.

11. Cut length of fence to minimize use of joints. When joints are necessary, splice fabric together only at support post with minimum 6 inch overlap and seal securely.

12. When used in swales, ditches or diversions, elevation of barrier at top of filter fabric at flow line location in channel shall be lower than bottom elevation of filter fabric at ends of barrier or top of bank, whichever is less, in order to keep storm water discharge in channel from overtopping bank.

C. Triangular Filter Fabric Barrier Construction Methods

1. Attach filter fabric to wire fencing, 18 inches on each side. Provide a fabric cover and skirt with continuous wrapping of fabric. Skirt should form continuous extension of fabric on upstream side of fence.

2. Secure triangular fabric filter barrier in place using one of the following methods:
   a. Toe-in skirt 6 inches with mechanically compacted material;
   b. Weight down skirt with continuous layer of 3-inch to 5-inch graded rock; or
   c. Trench-in entire structure 4 inches.

3. Anchor triangular fabric filter barrier structure and skirt securely in place using 6-inch wire staples on 2-foot centers on both edges and on skirt, or staked using 18-inch by 3/8-inch diameter re-bar with tee ends.

4. Lap fabric filter material by 6 inches to cover segment joints. Fasten joints with galvanized shoat rings.

3.04 DIKE AND SWALE

A. Unless otherwise indicated, maintain minimum dike height of 18 inches, measured from cleared ground at up slope toe to top of dike. Maintain side slopes of 2:1 or flatter.

B. Dike and Swale Stabilization: When shown on the Drawings, place gravel lining 3 inches thick and compacted into the soil or 6 inches thick if truck crossing is expected. Extend gravel lining across bottom and up both sides of swale minimum height of 8 inches vertically, above bottom. Gravel lining on dike side shall extend up the up slope side of dike a minimum height of 8 inches, measured vertically from interface of existing or graded ground and up slope toe of dike, as shown on Drawings.

C. Divert flow from dikes and swales to sediment basins, stabilized outlets, or sediment trapping devices of types and at locations shown on Drawings. Grade dikes and swales as shown on Drawings, or, if not specified, provide positive drainage with maximum grade of 1 percent to outlet or basin.

D. Clear in accordance with Section 2233 – Clearing and Grubbing Compact embankments in accordance with Section 2315 – Roadway Excavation.

E. Carry out excavation for swale construction so that erosion and water pollution is minimal. Minimum depth shall be 1 foot and bottom width shall be 4 feet, with level swale bottom. Excavation slopes shall be 2:1 or flatter. Clear, grub and strip excavation area of vegetation and root material.

3.05 DOWN SPOUT EXTENDER

A. Down spout extender shall have slope of approximately 1 percent. Use pipe diameter of 4 inches or as shown on the Drawings. Place pipe in accordance with Section 2317 - Bedding and Backfill for Utilities.

3.06 PIPE SLOPE DRAIN

A. Compact soil around and under drain entrance section to top of embankment in lifts appropriately sized for method of compaction utilized.

B. Inlet pipe shall have slope of 1 percent or greater. Use pipe diameter as shown on the Drawings.

C. Top of embankment over inlet pipe and embankments directing water to pipe shall be at least 1 foot higher at all points than top of inlet pipe.

D. Pipe shall be secured with hold-down grommets spaced 10 feet on centers.

E. Place riprap apron with a depth equal to pipe diameter with 2:1 side slopes.

3.07 PAVED FLUME

A. Compact soil around and under the entrance section to top of the embankment in lifts appropriately sized for method of compaction utilized.

B. Construct subgrade to required elevations. Remove and replace soft sections and unsuitable material. Compact subgrade thoroughly and shape to a smooth, uniform surface.

C. Construct permanent paved flumes in accordance with Drawings.

D. Remove sediment from riprap apron when sediment has accumulated to depth of one foot.

3.08 LEVEL SPREADER

A. Construct level spreader on undisturbed soil and not on fill. Ensure that spreader lip is level for uniform spreading of storm runoff.

B. Maintain at required depth, grade, and cross section as specified on Drawings. Remove sediment deposits as well as projections or other irregularities which will impede normal flow.

3.09 INLET PROTECTION BARRIER

A. Place sandbags for Stage I, Bagged gravel for Stage II and filter fabric barriers at locations shown on the SWP3. Maintain to allow minimal inlet in flow restrictions / blockage during storm event.

3.10 DROP INLET BASKET CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Fit inlet insert basket into inlet without gaps around insert at locations shown on the SWP3.

B. Support for inlet insert basket shall consist of fabricated metal as shown on Drawings.

C. Push down and form filter fabric to shape of basket. Use sheet of fabric large enough to be supported by basket frame when holding sediment and extend at least 6 inches past frame. Place inlet grates over basket/frame to serve as fabric anchor.

D. Remove sediment deposit after each storm event and whenever accumulation exceeds 1-inch depth during weekly inspections.

3.11 HAY BALE FENCE CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Place bales in row with ends tightly abutting adjacent bales. Place bales with bindings parallel to ground surface.

B. Embed bale in soil a minimum of 4 inches.

C. Securely anchor bales in place with Hay Bale Stakes driven through bales a minimum of 18-inches into ground. Angle first stake in each bale toward previously laid bale to force bales together.

D. Fill gaps between bales with straw to prevent water from channeling between bales. Wedge carefully in order not to separate bales.

E. Replace with new hay bale fence every two months or as required by Project Manager.

3.12 BRUSH BERM CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Construct brush berm along contour lines by hand placing method. Do not use machine placement of brush berm.

B. Use woody brush and branches having diameter less than 2-inches with 6-inches overlap. Avoid incorporation of annual weeds and soil into brush berm.

C. Use minimum height of 18-inches measured from top of existing ground at upslope toe to top of berm. Top width shall be 24 inches minimum and side slopes shall be 2:1 or flatter.

D. Embed brush berm into soil a minimum of 4-inches and anchor using wire, nylon or polypropylene rope across berm with a minimum tension of 50 pounds. Tie rope securely to 18-inch x 3/8-inch diameter rebar stakes driven into ground on 4-foot centers on both sides of berm.

3.13 STREET AND SIDEWALK CLEANING

A. Keep areas clean of construction debris and mud carried by construction vehicles and equipment. If necessary, install stabilized construction exits at construction, staging, storage, and disposal areas, following Section 01575-Stabilized Construction Exit.

B. In lieu of or in addition to stabilized construction exits, shovel or sweep pavements as required to keep areas clean. Do not waterhose or sweep debris and mud off street into adjacent areas, except, hose sidewalks during off-peak hours, after sweeping.

3.14 WASTE COLLECTION AREAS

A. Prevent water runoff from passing through waste collection areas, and prevent water runoff from waste collection areas migrating outside collection areas.

3.15 EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR

A. Confine maintenance and repair of construction machinery and equipment to areas specifically designated for that purpose, so fuels, lubricants, solvents, and other potential pollutants are not washed directly into receiving streams or storm water conveyance systems. Provide these areas with adequate waste disposal receptacles for liquid and solid waste. Clean and inspect maintenance areas daily.

B. Where designated equipment maintenance areas are not feasible, take precautions during each individual repair or maintenance operation to prevent potential pollutants from washing into streams or conveyance systems. Provide temporary waste disposal receptacles.

3.16 VEHICLE/ EQUIPMENT WASHING AREAS

A. Install wash area (stabilized with coarse aggregate) adjacent to stabilized construction access, as required to prevent mud and dirt run-off. Release wash water into drainage swales or inlets protected by erosion and sediment controls. Build wash areas following Section 01575- Stabilized Construction access. Install gravel or rock base beneath wash areas.

B. Wash vehicles only at designated wash areas. Do not wash vehicles such as concrete delivery trucks or dump trucks and other construction equipment at locations where runoff flows directly into waterways or storm water conveyance systems.

C. Locate wash areas to spread out and evaporate or infiltrate wash water directly into ground, or collect runoff in temporary holding or seepage basins.

3.17 WATER RUNOFF AND EROSION CONTROL

A. Control surface water, runoff, subsurface water, and water from excavations and structures to prevent damage to the Work, the site, or adjoining properties. Follow environment requirements.

B. Control fill, grading and ditching to direct water away from excavations, pits, tunnels, and other construction areas, and to direct drainage to proper runoff courses to prevent erosion, sedimentation or damage.

C. Provide, operate, and maintain equipment and facilities of adequate size to control surface water.

D. Retain existing drainage patterns external to the site by constructing temporary earth berms, sedimentation basins, retaining areas, and temporary ground cover as required to control conditions.

E. Plan and execute construction and earth work to control surface drainage from cuts and fills, and from borrow and waste disposal areas, to prevent erosion and sedimentation.

1. Hold area of bare soil exposed at one time to a minimum.

2. Provide temporary controls such as berms, dikes, and drains.

F. Construct fill and waste areas by selective placement to eliminate surface silts or clays which will erode.

G. Inspect earthwork periodically to detect start of erosion. Immediately apply corrective measures as required to control erosion.

H. Dispose of sediments offsite, not in or adjacent to waterways or floodplains, nor allow sediments to flush into streams or drainage ways. Assume responsibility for offsite disposal location.

I. Unless otherwise indicated, compact embankments, excavations, and trenches by mechanically blading, tamping, and rolling soil in maximum of 8-inch layers. Provide compaction density at minimum 90 percent Standard Proctor ASTM D-698-78 density. Make at least one test per 500 cubic yards of embankment.

J. Prohibit equipment and vehicles from maneuver on areas outside of dedicated rights-of-way and easements for construction. Immediately repair damage to erosion and sedimentation control systems caused by construction traffic.

K. Do not damage existing trees intended to remain.

3.18 REMOVAL OF CONTROLS

A. Remove erosion and sediment controls when the site is finally stabilized or as directed by Project Manager.

B. Dispose of sediments and waste products following Section 01505-Temporary Facilities.

END OF SECTION

Section 01575

STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ACCESS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Installation and removal of erosion and sediment control for stabilized construction access used during construction and prior to final development of site, as shown in City of Houston Standard Construction details, DWG No. 01571-01.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Price Contracts. If Contract is Unit Price Contract, payment for work in this Section will be based on the following:

1. Stabilized construction roads, parking areas, access and wash areas: per square yard of aggregate/recycled concrete without reinforcing placed in 8-inch layers. No separate payment will be made for street cleaning necessary to meet TPDES requirements. Include cost of work for street cleaning under related Specification section.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum) Contracts. If the Contract is a Stipulated Price Contract, include payment for work under this Section in the total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer-s catalog sheets and other Product Data on geotextile fabric.

C. Submit sieve analysis of aggregates conforming to requirements of this Specification.

1.04 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 4632 - Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles.

B. Storm Water Quality Management Handbook For Construction Activities prepared by the City of Houston, Harris County and Harris County Flood Control District.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 GEOTEXTILE FABRIC

A. Provide woven or non-woven geotextile fabric made of polypropylene, polyethylene, ethylene, or polyamide material.

B. Geotextile fabric: Minimum grab strength of 200 lbs in any principal direction (ASTM D-4632) and equivalent opening size between 50 and 140.

C. Geotextile and threads: Resistant to chemical attack, mildew, and rot and contain ultraviolet ray inhibitors and stabilizers to provide minimum of six months of expected usable life at temperature range of 0 to 120 degrees F.

D. Representative Manufacturers: Mirafi, Inc. or equal.

2.02 COARSE AGGREGATES

A. Coarse aggregate: Crushed stone, gravel, crushed blast furnace slag, or combination of these materials. Aggregate shall be composed of clean, hard, durable materials free from adherent coatings of, salt, alkali, dirt, clay, loam, shale, soft or flaky materials, or organic and injurious matter.

B. Coarse aggregates to consist of open graded rock 2” to 8” in size.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION AND INSTALLATION

A. Provide stabilized construction roads and access at construction, staging, parking, storage,
and disposal areas to keep street clean of mud carried by construction vehicles and equipment. Construct erosion and sediment controls in accordance with Drawings and Specification requirements.

B. Do not clear grub or rough cut until erosion and sediment control systems are in place, unless approved by Project Manager to allow soil testing and surveying.

C. Maintain existing construction site erosion and sediment control systems until acceptance of the Work or until removal of existing systems is approved by Project Manager.

D. Regularly inspect, repair or replace components of stabilized construction access. Unless otherwise directed, maintain stabilized construction roads and

access until the City accepts the Work. Remove stabilized construction roads and access promptly when directed by Project Manager. Discard removed materials off-site.

E. Remove and dispose of sediment deposits at designated spoil site for Project. If a spoil site is not designated on Drawings, dispose of sediment off-site at a location not in or adjacent to stream or flood plain. Assume responsibility for off-site disposal.

F. Spread compacted and stabilized sediment evenly throughout site. Do not allow sediment to flush into streams or drainage ways. Dispose of contaminated sediment in accordance with existing federal, state, and local rules and regulations.

G. Prohibit equipment and vehicles from maneuvering on areas outside of dedicated rights-of-way and easements for construction. Immediately repair damage to erosion and sediment control systems caused by construction traffic.

H. Conduct construction operations in conformance with erosion control requirements of Specification 01570 – Storm Water Pollution Control.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION MAINTENANCE

A. Provide stabilized access roads, subdivision roads, parking areas, and other on-site vehicle transportation routes where shown on Drawings.

B. Provide stabilized construction access and vehicle washing areas, when approved by Project Manager, of sizes and at locations shown on Drawings or as specified in this Section.

C. Clean tires to remove sediment on vehicles leaving construction areas prior to entering public right-of-ways. Construct wash areas needed to remove sediment. Release wash water into drainage swales or inlets protected by erosion and sediment control measures.

D. Details for stabilized construction access are shown on Drawings. Construct other stabilized areas to same requirements. Maintain minimum roadway widths of 14 feet for one-way traffic and 20 feet for two-way traffic and of sufficient width to allow ingress and egress. Place geotextile fabric as a permeable separator to prevent mixing of coarse aggregate with underlaying soil. Limit exposure of geotextile fabric to elements between laydown and cover to a maximum 14 days to minimize potential damage.

E. Grade roads and parking areas to provide sufficient drainage away from stabilized areas. Use sandbags, gravel, boards, or similar materials to prevent sediment from entering public right-of-ways, waterways or

storm water conveyance systems.

F. Inspect and maintain stabilized areas daily. Provide periodic top dressing with additional coarse aggregates to maintain required depth. Repair and clean out damaged control systems used to trap sediment. Immediately remove spilled, dropped, washed, or tracked sediment from public right-of-ways.

G. Maintain lengths of stabilized areas as shown on Drawings or a minimum of 50 feet. Maintain a minimum thickness of 8 inches. Maintain minimum widths at all points of ingress or egress.

H. Stabilize other areas with the same thickness, and width of coarse aggregate required for stabilized construction access, except where shown otherwise on Drawings.

I. Stabilized areas may be widened or lengthened to accommodate truck washing areas when authorized by Project Manager.

J. Clean street daily before end of workday. When excess sediments have tracked onto streets, Project Manager may direct Contractor to clean street as often as necessary. Remove and legally dispose of sediments.

K. Use other erosion and sediment control measures to prevent sediment runoff during rain periods and non-working hours and when storm discharges are expected.

END OF SECTION

Section 01576

WASTE MATERIAL DISPOSAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Disposal of waste material and salvageable material.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit copy of approved "Development Permit", as defined in Chapter 19 of Flood Plain Ordinance (City Ordinance Number 81-914 and Number 85-1705), prior to disposal of excess material in areas designated as being in "100-year Flood Hazard Area" within the City. Contact the City of Houston Flood Plain Manager, 3300 Main Street, at (713) 525-7605 for flood plain information.

C. Obtain and submit disposal permits for proposed disposal sites, if required by local ordinances.

D. Submit copy of written permission from property owner, with description of property, prior to disposal of excess material adjacent to Project. Submit written and signed release from property owner upon completion of disposal work.

E. Describe waste materials expected to be stored on-site and a description of controls to reduce Pollutants from these materials, including storage practices to minimize exposure of materials to storm water; and spill prevention and response measures in the Project's Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP). Refer to Section 01410 – TPDES Requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 SALVAGEABLE MATERIAL

A. Excavated Material: When indicated on Drawings, load, haul, and deposit excavated material at location or locations shown on Drawings outside limits of Project.

B. Base, Surface, and Bedding Material: Load shell, gravel, bituminous, or other base and surfacing material designated for salvage into City trucks.

C. Pipe Culvert: Load culverts designated for salvage into City trucks.

D. Other Salvageable Materials: Conform to requirements of individual Specification Sections.

E. Coordinate loading of salvageable material on City trucks with Project Manager.

3.02 EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Remove and legally dispose of vegetation, rubble, broken concrete, debris, asphaltic concrete pavement, excess soil, and other materials not designated for salvage from job site.

B. Excess soil may be deposited on private property adjacent to Project when written permission is obtained from property owner. See Paragraph 1.02 D above.

C. Verify flood plain status of any proposed disposal site. Do not dispose of excavated materials in area designated as within 100-year Flood Hazard Area unless "Development Permit" has been obtained. Remove excess material placed in "100-year Flood Hazard Area" within the City, without "Development Permit", at no additional cost to the City.

D. Remove waste materials from site daily, in order to maintain site in neat and orderly condition.

END OF SECTION

Section 01578

CONTROL OF GROUND AND SURFACE WATER

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Dewatering, depressurizing, draining, and maintaining trenches, shaft excavations, structural excavations and foundation beds in stable condition, and controlling ground water conditions for tunnel excavations.

B. Protecting work against surface runoff and rising floodwaters.

C. Trapping suspended sediment in the discharge form the surface and ground water control systems.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. UNIT PRICES

1. When noted, dewatering of trench or excavation during course of project shall be measured per linear foot and paid for at contract unit prices for dewatering, when directed to perform such work by Project Manager. Dewatering must be fully detailed in submittal and submittal must be approved prior to performing dewatering work before payment will be made for dewatering. No payment will be made for work unless directed to perform work by Project Manager.

2. Presence of a pump on project does not constitute dewatering for payment under bid item "Ground Water Control for Open Cut Construction."

3. Dewatering required during course of project to lower water table for other utility installation less than 24 inches in diameter, construction of structures, removal of standing water, surface drainage seepage, or to protect against rising waters or floods shall be considered incidental to Work unless otherwise noted.

4. No separate payment will be made for groundwater control associated with augering, tunnels or casing. Include cost in unit price for augering.

5. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum) Contract. If the Contract is a Stipulated Price Contract, include payment for work under this section in the total Stipulated

Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction of Soils Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft3 (600kN-m/m3)

B. Federal Regulations, 29 CFR Part 1926, Standards-Excavation, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)

C. Storm Water Management Handbook for Construction Activities prepared by City of Houston, Harris County and Harris County Flood Control District.

1.04 DEFINITIONS

A. Ground water control system: system used to dewater and depressurize water-bearing soil layers.

1. Dewatering: lowering the water table and intercepting seepage that would otherwise emerge from slopes or bottoms of excavations, or into tunnels and shafts; and disposing of removed water. Intent of dewatering is to increase stability of tunnel excavations and excavated slopes, prevent dislocation of material from slopes or bottoms of excavations, reduce lateral loads on sheeting and bracing, improve excavating and hauling characteristics of excavated material, prevent failure or heaving of bottom of excavations, and to provide suitable conditions for placement of backfill materials and construction of structures and other installations.

2. Depressurization: includes reduction in piezometric pressure within strata not controlled by dewatering alone, necessary to prevent failure or heaving of excavation bottom or instability of tunnel excavations.

B. Excavation drainage: includes keeping excavations free of surface and seepage water.

C. Surface drainage: includes use of temporary drainage ditches and dikes and installation of temporary culverts and sump pumps with discharge lines necessary to protect Work from any source of surface water.

D. Monitoring facilities for ground water control system: includes piezometers, monitoring wells and flow meters for observing and recording flow rates.

1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Conduct subsurface investigations to identify groundwater conditions and to

provide parameters for design, installation, and operation of groundwater control systems. Submit proposed method and spacing of readings for review prior to obtaining water level readings.

B. Design ground water control system, compatible with requirements of Federal Regulations 29 CFR Part 1926 and Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems, to produce following results:

1. Effectively reduce hydrostatic pressure affecting:

   a. Excavations

   b. Tunnel excavation, face stability or seepage into tunnels

2. Develop substantially dry and stable subgrade for subsequent construction operations

3. Preclude damage to adjacent properties, buildings, structures, utilities, installed facilities and other work

4. Prevent loss of fines, seepage, boils, quick condition, or softening of foundation strata

5. Maintain stability of sides and bottom of excavations

C. Provide ground water control systems that include single-stage or multiple-stage well point systems, eductor and ejector-type systems, deep wells, or combinations of these equipment types.

D. Provide drainage of seepage water and surface water, as well as water from other sources entering excavation. Excavation drainage may include placement of drainage materials, crushed stone and filter fabric, together with sump pumping.

E. Provide ditches, berms, pumps and other methods necessary to divert and drain surface water from excavation and other work areas.

F. Locate ground water control and drainage systems so as not to interfere with utilities, construction operations, adjacent properties, or adjacent water wells.

G. Assume sole responsibility for ground water control systems and for any loss or damage resulting from partial or complete failure of protective measures and settlement or resultant damage caused by ground water control operations. Modify ground water control systems or operations if they cause or threaten to cause damage to new construction, existing site improvements, adjacent property, adjacent water wells, or potentially contaminated areas. Repair damage caused by ground water control systems or resulting from

failure of system to protect property as required.

H. Install an adequate number of piezometers installed at proper locations and depths, necessary to provide meaningful observations of conditions affecting excavation, adjacent structures and water wells.

I. Install environmental monitoring wells at proper locations and depths necessary to provide adequate observations of hydrostatic conditions and possible contaminant transport from contamination sources into work area or ground water control system.

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittals Procedures.

B. Submit Ground Water and Surface Water Control Plan for review by Project Manager prior to start of excavation work. Include the following:

1. Results of subsurface investigations and description of extent and characteristics of water bearing layers subject to ground water control

2. Names of equipment Suppliers and installation Subcontractors

3. Description of proposed ground water control systems indicating arrangement, location, depth and capacities of system components, installation details and criteria and operation and maintenance procedures

4. Description of proposed monitoring facilities indicating depths and locations of piezometers and monitoring wells, monitoring installation details and criteria, type of equipment and instrumentation with pertinent data and characteristics

5. Description of proposed filters including types, sizes, capacities and manufacturer's application recommendations

6. Design calculations demonstrating adequacy of proposed systems for intended applications. Define potential area of influence of ground water control operation near contaminated areas.

7. Operating requirements, including piezometric control elevations for dewatering and depressurization

8. Excavation drainage methods including typical drainage layers, sump pump application and other means

9. Surface water control and drainage installations

10. Proposed methods and locations for disposing of removed water

C. Submit following records upon completion of initial installation:

1. Installation and development reports for well points, eductors, and deep wells

2. Installation reports and baseline readings for piezometers and monitoring wells

3. Baseline analytical test data of water from monitoring wells

4. Initial flow rates

D. Submit the following records weekly during control of ground and surface water operations:

1. Records of flow rates and piezometric elevations obtained during monitoring of dewatering and depressurization. Refer to Paragraph 3.02, Requirements for Eductor, Well Points, or Deep Wells.

2. Maintenance records for ground water control installations, piezometers and monitoring wells

1.07 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements of agencies having jurisdiction.

B. Comply with Texas Commission on Environmental Quality regulations and Texas Water Well Drillers Association for development, drilling, and abandonment of wells used in dewatering system.

C. Obtain necessary permits from agencies with jurisdiction over use of groundwater and matters affecting well installation, water discharge, and use of existing storm drains and natural water sources. Since review and permitting process may be lengthy, take early action to obtain required approvals.

D. Monitor ground water discharge for contamination while performing pumping in vicinity of potentially contaminated sites.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

A. Select equipment and materials necessary to achieve desired results for dewatering. Selected equipment and materials are subject to review by Project Manager through submittals required in Paragraph 1.06, Submittals.

B. Use experienced contractors, regularly engaged in ground water control system design, installation, and operation, to furnish and install and operate educators, well points, or deep wells, when needed

C. Maintain equipment in good repair and operating condition.

D. Keep sufficient standby equipment and materials available to ensure continuous operation, where required.

E. Portable Sediment Tank System: Standard 55-gallon steel or plastic drums, free of hazardous material contamination.

1. Shop or field fabricate tanks in series with main inlet pipe, inter-tank pipes and discharge pipes, using quantities sufficient to collect sediments from discharge water.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 GROUND WATER CONTROL

A. Perform necessary subsurface investigation to identify water bearing layers, piezometric pressures and soil parameters for design and installation of ground water control systems. Perform pump tests, if necessary to determine draw down characteristics. Present results in the Ground Water and Surface Water Control Plan. submittal

B. Provide labor, material, equipment, techniques and methods to lower, control and handle ground water in manner compatible with construction methods and site conditions. Monitor effectiveness of installed system and its effect on adjacent property.

C. Install, operate, and maintain ground water control systems in accordance with the Ground Water and Surface Water Control Plan. Notify Project Manager in writing of changes made to accommodate field conditions and changes to Work. Provide revised drawings and calculations with notification.

D. Provide continuous system operation, including nights, weekends, and holidays. Arrange appropriate backup if electrical power is primary energy source for dewatering system.

E. Monitor operations to verify systems lower ground water piezometric levels at rate required to maintain dry excavation resulting in stable subgrade for

subsequent construction operations.

F. Depressurize zones where hydrostatic pressures in confined water bearing layers exist below excavations to eliminate risk of uplift or other instability of excavation or installed works. Define allowable piezometric elevations in the Ground Water and Surface Water Control Plan.

G. Removal of ground water control installations.

1. Remove pumping system components and piping when ground water control is no longer required.

2. Remove piezometers, including piezometers installed during design phase investigations and left for Contractor's use, upon completion of testing, as required in accordance with Part 3 of applicable specification.

3. Remove monitoring wells when directed by Project Manager.

4. Grout abandoned well and piezometer holes. Fill piping that is not removed with cement-bentonite grout or cement-sand grout.

H. During backfilling, maintain water level a minimum of 5 feet below prevailing level of backfill. Do not allow the water level to cause uplift pressures in excess of 80 percent of downward pressure produced by weight of structure or backfill in place. Do not allow water levels to rise into cement-stabilized sand until at least 48 hour after placement.

I. Provide uniform pipe diameter for each pipe drain run constructed for dewatering. Remove pipe drains when no longer required. If pipe removal is impractical, grout connections at 50-foot intervals and fill pipe with cement-bentonite grout or cement-sand grout after removal from service.

J. The extent of ground water control for structures with permanent perforated underground drainage systems may be reduced, for units designed to withstand hydrostatic uplift pressure. Provide a means to drain affected portions of underground systems, including standby equipment. Maintain drainage systems during construction operations.

K. Remove systems upon completion of construction or when dewatering and control of surface or ground water is no longer required.

L. Compact backfill to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density in accordance with ASTM D 698.

M. Foundation Slab: Maintain saturation line at least 3 feet below lowest elevations where concrete is to be placed. Drain foundations in areas where

concrete is to be placed before placing reinforcing steel. Keep free from water for 3 days after concrete is placed.

3.02 REQUIREMENTS FOR EDUCTOR, WELL POINTS, OR DEEP WELLS

A. For aboveground piping in ground water control system, include a 12-inch minimum length of clear, transparent piping between each eductor well or well point and discharge header to allow visual monitoring of discharge from each installation.

B. Install sufficient piezometers or monitoring wells to show that trench or shaft excavations in water bearing materials are pre-drained prior to excavation. Provide separate piezometers for monitoring of dewatering and for monitoring of depressurization. Install piezometers and monitoring wells for tunneling as appropriate for selected method of work.

C. Install piezometers or monitoring wells at least one week in advance of the start of associated excavation.

D. Dewatering may be omitted for portions of under drains or other excavations, where auger borings and piezometers or monitoring wells show that soil is pre-drained by existing systems and that ground water control plan criteria are satisfied.

E. Replace installations that produce noticeable amounts of sediments after development.

F. Provide additional ground water control installations, or change method of control if, ground water control plan does not provide satisfactory results based on performance criteria defined by plan and by specifications. Submit revised plan according to Paragraph 1.06B.

3.03 SEDIMENT TRAPS

A. Install sediment tank as shown on approved plan.

B. Inspect daily and clean out tank when one-third of sediment tank is filled with sediment.

3.04 SEDIMENT SUMP PIT

A. Install sediment sump pits as shown on approved plan.

B. Construct standpipe by perforating 12 inch to 24-inch diameter corrugated metal or PVC pipe.

C. Extend standpipe 12 inches to 18 inches above lip of pit.

D. Convey discharge of water pumped from standpipe to sediment trapping device.

E. Fill sites of sump pits, compact to density of surrounding soil and stabilize surface when construction is complete.

3.05 EXCAVATION DRAINAGE

A. Use excavation drainage methods if well-drained conditions can be achieved. Excavation drainage may consist of layers of crushed stone and filter fabric, and sump pumping, in combination with sufficient ground water control wells to maintain stable excavation and backfill conditions.

3.06 MAINTENANCE AND OBSERVATION

A. Conduct daily maintenance and observation of piezometers or monitoring wells while ground water control installations or excavation drainage is operating at the site, or water is seeping into tunnels, and maintain systems in good operating condition.

B. Replace damaged and destroyed piezometers or monitoring wells with new piezometers or wells as necessary to meet observation schedules.

C. Cut off piezometers or monitoring wells in excavation areas where piping is exposed, only as necessary to perform observation as excavation proceeds. Continue to maintain and make specified observations

D. Remove and grout piezometers inside or outside of excavation area when ground water control operations are complete. Remove and grout monitoring wells when directed by Project Manager.

3.07 MONITORING AND RECORDING

A. Monitor and record average flow rate of operation for each deep well, or for each wellpoint or eductor header used in dewatering system. Also, monitor and record water level and ground water recovery. Record observations daily until steady conditions are achieved and twice weekly thereafter.

B. Observe and record elevation of water level daily as long as ground water control system is in operation, and weekly thereafter until Work is completed or piezometers or wells are removed, except when Project Manager determines more frequent monitoring and recording are required. Comply with Project Manager's direction for increased monitoring and recording and

take measures necessary to ensure effective dewatering for intended purpose.

3.08 SURFACE WATER CONTROL

A. Intercept surface water and divert it away from excavations through use of dikes, ditches, curb walls, pipes, sumps or other approved means. Requirement includes temporary works required to protect adjoining properties from surface drainage caused by construction operations.

B. Divert surface water and seepage water into sumps and pump it into drainage channels or storm drains, when approved by agencies having jurisdiction. Provide settling basins when required by agencies.

END OF SECTION

Section 01580

PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Project identification sign description.

B. Project sign installation.

C. Maintenance and removal of Project sign.

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Sign Construction: Construct signs of new materials in accordance with Standard Detail provided at the Pre-construction Conference.

B. Appearance: Maintain signs to present a clean and neat look throughout contract duration.

C. Sign Manufacturer: Experienced professional sign company.

D. Sign Placement: At locations shown in Drawings unless otherwise specified by Project Manager at pre-construction meeting.

1. Provide one sign at each end of a linear Project involving paving, overlay, sewer line, storm drainage, or water main construction located in rights-of-ways.

2. Provide one sign for site or building construction Contracts

3. Provide one sign at each site for Contracts with multiple sites.

4. Sign Relocation: As work progresses, relocate signs if directed by Project Manager in writing. Include cost for one relocation of post-mounted signs in Contract Price. Subsequent relocations, if directed by Project Manager in writing, will be subject to Change Order.

E. Skid-mounted signs: Use for projects with noncontiguous locations where work progresses from one location to another. Design skid structure to withstand a 60 mile-per-hour wind load to the face or back of sign using stakes, straps, or ballast. Contractor shall be responsible for security of signs at each site.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit Shop Drawings under provisions of Section 01330 - Submittal procedures.

B. Show content, layout, lettering style, lettering size, and colors. Make sign and lettering to scale, clearly indicating condensed lettering, if used.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 SIGN MATERIALS

A. Structure and Framing: Use new sign materials.

1. Sign Posts: 4-inch by 4-inch pressure treated wood posts, 9 feet long for skid mounting and 12 feet long minimum for in-ground mounting.

2. Skid Bracing: 2-inch by 4-inch wood framing material.

3. Skid Members: 2-inch by 6-inch wood framing material.

4. Fasteners:
   a. Galvanized steel.
   b. Attach sign to posts with 1/2-inch by 5-1/2 inch button head carriage bolts and secure with nuts and flat head washers.
   c. Cover button heads with white reflective film or paint to match sign background.
   d. Use metal brackets and braces and 3/4-inch wood screws to attach sign header.

B. Sign and Sign Header: 3/4-inch thick marine plywood. Use 4-foot by 8 -foot sheet for the sign and a single piece for the header to minimize joints. Do not piece wood sheets to fabricate sign face.

C. Paint and Primers: White industrial grade, fast-drying, oil-based paint with gloss finish for structural and framing members, sign, and sign header material surfaces. Paint all sign surfaces prior to adding adhesive applications.

D. Colors:

1. Sign Background: Reflective white 3M Scotchlite Engineer Grade, Pressure Sensitive Sheeting (White), or approved equal.

2. Border: For red border around area, which designates project name and project amount, use reflective red 3M Scotchlite Engineer Grade, Pressure Sensitive Sheeting (Red), or approved equal.

3. Sign Film: 3M Scotchcal Pressure Sensitive Films, or approved equal for legends, symbols, lettering, and artwork. Match colors to 3M Scotchcal Pressure Sensitive Films.

a.	Lettering Below Seal:	Black
b.	Lettering Above Project Name:	Vivid Blue
c.	Lettering on Blue Background:	White
d.	Background Behind Project Name:	Vivid Blue

E. City Seal: Project Manager will provide City seals to Contractor, as needed.

2.02 SIGN LAYOUT

A. Lettering:

1. Style, Size, and Spacing: Helvetica Regular lettering.

2. Condensed Style: Text may be condensed if needed to maintain sign composition.

B. Composition:

1. Lines with Standard Text
   a. Top line shall read “BUILDING TOGETHER FOR THE FUTURE”.
   b. Use lower left below City Seal to list names and titles for Mayor, Controller and Council Members. Place as shown on Drawings with indicated size and spacing.
   c. Center telephone number of the Customer Response Center, “311”, near the bottom of the area with the blue background.

2. Lines with Variable Text. Use blue background space for Project name and dollar amount.
   a. Project Manager will provide Project name and dollar amount of Project for preparation of sign. Center name on one or two lines, and dollar amount immediately below Project name, in area with blue background. Use condensed lettering if necessary.

2.03 LAYOUT AND COMPOSITION FOR HEADER

A. City of Houston Seal:
1. A space of approximately 24 inches in diameter is provided for the City seal, the top 6 inches of which extends above the sign on the sign header.

2. Construct sign header of same material as sign face. Cut material to match curve of the City seal.

3. Project Manager will provide the seal to be affixed to the sign by sign maker.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install Project identification signs within seven days after Date of Commencement of the Work.

B. Erect signs at locations shown in Drawings unless otherwise designated by Project Manager at pre-construction meeting. Position sign so it is fully visible and readable to general public.

C. Erect sign level and plumb.

D. If mounted on posts, sink posts 3 to 4 feet below grade and stabilize posts to minimize lateral motion. Leave a minimum of 8 feet of post above existing grade for mounting of sign.

E. Erect sign so that top edge of sign is at a nominal 8 feet above existing grade.

3.02 MAINTENANCE AND REMOVAL

A. Keep signs and supports clean. Repair deterioration and damage.

B. Remove signs, framing, supports, and foundations to a depth of at least 2 feet upon completion of Project. Restore area to a condition equal to or better than before construction.

PROJECT No.: **(FILE NO:)**	**CONTRACT No.:**	**REVIEWED BY:**

***INSTRUCTIONS TO SIGN MAKER** (LIST COMPANY NAME)**:**

QTY.	ACTION ITEMS:
	Make new sign(s)
	Follow City standards attached
	Provide submittal (drawing) to the City for project sign showing content, layout, lettering style, lettering size, and colors

VARIABLE TEXT

Line 1	Project Name:	
Line 2	Project Amount (rounded to nearest $1000):	

ATTACHMENTS INCLUDED

QTY.	SEALS / LOGOS
	City of Houston - 24" diameter
	STANDARDS
	Standard Specification Section 01580 - Project Identification Signs
	Standard Detail 01580-03 Construction Sign

(*Instructions on reverse.)*

INSTRUCTIONS

Contractor produces this form. Contractor shall insert the information and provide the form to the sign maker with Contractor's purchase order.

List PROJECT No., (FILE No.), CONTRACT No., and name of City's Project Manager REVIEWED BY.

INSTRUCTIONS TO SIGN MAKER:

- Give COMPANY NAME of sign maker.
- Indicate QUANTITY of new signs to be made.
- Direction for sign maker to follow City Standards in making signs.
- Require submittals from sign maker, who provides Shop Drawing of Project sign showing content, layout, lettering style, lettering size, and colors.

VARIABLE TEXT:

- Give PROJECT NAME. Write it out in all caps and suggest line break. Lines are required.
- Give Project amount to be listed on sign. Round off to nearest $1000.

ATTACHMENTS INCLUDED:

- **Seals**

  City provides the quantity of City seals required one for each Project sign.

- **Standards**

  Contractor provides set of Standards to sign maker, including (Specification Section 01580 - Project Identification Signs, and Standard Detail No. 01580-03 - Construction Sign.

Section 01581

EXCAVATION IN PUBLIC WAY PERMIT SIGNS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Project sign installation.

B. Maintenance and removal of Project sign.

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Sign Construction: Construct signs of new materials.

B. Appearance: Maintain signs to present a clean and neat look throughout the Contract duration.

C. Sign Placement: Place signs at each street entrance to street cut excavation.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit Shop Drawings under provisions of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Show content, layout, lettering style, lettering size and colors. Make sign and lettering to scale, clearly indicating condensed lettering, if used.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 SIGN LAYOUT

A. Conform to Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices. Minimum size: 36 inches by 36 inches.

B. Lettering: Uppercase Helvetica Regular lettering.

C. Composition: Include on sign copy of street cut permit, title "City of Houston", contracting department's name, address, and emergency telephone number and Contractor's name. Project Manager will provide department name, address, and emergency telephone number for preparation of sign.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install Project signs before commencement of pavement excavation in Public Way.

B. Position sign so it is fully visible and readable to general public.

C. Erect sign level and plumb.

D. Erect sign so that top edge of sign is at a nominal 8 feet above existing grade.

3.02 MAINTENANCE AND REMOVAL

A. Keep signs and supports clean. Repair deterioration and damage.

B. Remove signs, framing, supports and foundations to depth of at least 2 feet upon completion of the Work. Restore area to condition equal to or better than before construction.

END OF SECTION

Section 01610

BASIC PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Requirements for transportation, delivery, handling, and storage of Products.

1.02 PRODUCTS

A. Products: Defined in Document 00700 – General Conditions. Does not include machinery and equipment used for preparation, fabrication, conveying and erection of the Work. Products may also include existing materials or components designated for reuse.

B. For material and equipment specifically indicated or specified to be reused in the work:

1. Use special care in removal, handling, storage and reinstallation, to assure proper function in completed work.

2. Arrange for transportation, storage and handling of products which require off-site storage, restoration or renovation. Include cost in unit price for related items.

C. When contract documents require that installation of work comply with manufacturer's printed Instructions, obtain and distribute copies of such instructions to parties involved in installation, including two copies to Project Manager. Maintain one set of complete instructions at job site during installation until completion.

D. Provide Products from the fewest number of manufacturers as practical, in order to simplify spare parts inventory and to allow for maximum interchangeability of components. For multiple components of the same size, type or application, use the same make and model of component throughout the Work.

1.03 TRANSPORTATION

A. Make arrangements for transportation, delivery, and handling of Products required for timely completion of the Work.

B. Transport and handle Products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Consign and address shipping documents to proper party giving name of the Project and its complete street address. Shipments shall be delivered to

Contractor.

1.04 DELIVERY

A. Arrange deliveries of Products to accommodate short-term site completion schedules and in ample time to facilitate inspection prior to Installation. Avoid deliveries that cause lengthy storage or overburden of limit storage space.

B. Coordinate deliveries to avoid conflict with the Work and conditions at the site and to accommodate the following:

1. Work of other contractors or the City.

2. Limitations of storage space.

3. Availability of equipment and personnel for handling Products.

4. The City's use of premises.

C. Have Products delivered to the site in manufacturer's original, unopened, labeled containers.

D. Immediately upon delivery, inspect shipment to assure:

1. Product complies with requirements of the Contract.

2. Quantities are correct.

3. Containers and packages are intact; labels are legible.

4. Products are properly protected and undamaged.

1.05 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Coordinate off-loading of Products delivered to the site. If necessary during construction, move and relocate stored Products at no additional cost to the City.

B. Provide equipment and personnel necessary to handle Products, including those provided by the City, by methods to prevent damage to Products or packaging.

C. Provide additional protection during handling as necessary to prevent breaking, scraping, marring, or otherwise damaging Products or surrounding areas.

D. Handle Products by methods to prevent over-bending or overstressing.

E. Lift heavy components only at designated lifting points.

F. Handle Products in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Do not drop, roll, or skid Products off delivery vehicles. Hand-carry or use Suitable materials handling equipment.

1.06 STORAGAE OF PRODUCTS

A. Store and protect Products in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and requirements of these Specifications.

B. Make necessary provisions for safe storage of Products. Place Products so as to prevent damage to any part of the Work or existing facilities and to maintain free access at all times to all parts of the Work and to utility service company installations in the vicinity of the Work. Keep Products neatly and compactly stored in locations that will cause minimum inconvenience to other contractors, public travel, adjoining owners, tenants, and occupants. Arrange storage in a manner so as to provide easy access for inspection.

C. Restrict storage to areas available on the site for storage of Products as shown on Drawings or approved by Project Manager.

D. Provide off-site storage and protection when on-site storage is not adequate. Provide addresses of, and access to, off-site storage locations for inspection by Project Manager.

E. Do not use lawns, grass plots, or other private property for storage purposes without written permission of owner or other person in possession or control of premises.

F. Protect stored Products against loss or damage.

G. Store in manufacturers' unopened containers.

H. Neatly, safely, and compactly stack Products delivered and stored along the line of the Work to avoid inconvenience and damage to property owners and general public, and maintain at least 3 feet clearance around fire hydrants. Keep public, private driveways and street crossings open.

I. Repair or replace damaged lawns, sidewalks, streets or other improvements to satisfaction of Project Manager. Total length that Products may be distributed along route of construction at one time is 1000 linear feet, unless otherwise approved in writing by Project Manager.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01630

PRODUCT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Options for making Product or process selections.

B. Procedures for proposing equivalent Products or processes, including pre-approved, pre-qualified, and approved Products or processes.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

A. Product: As defined in Document 00700 – General Conditions. Product does not include machinery and equipment used for production, fabrication, conveying, and erection of the Work. Products may also include existing materials or components designated for reuse.

B. Process: Any proprietary system or method for installing system components resulting in an integral, functioning part of the Work. For this Section, the word Products includes Processes.

1.03 SELECTION OPTIONS

A. Pre-approved Products: Construction products of certain manufacturers or Suppliers designated in Specifications as "pre-approved." The City maintains a list of pre-approved products. Pre-approved Products for this Project are designated as pre-approved in Specifications. Products of other manufacturers or suppliers are not acceptable for this Project and will not be considered under the submittal process for approving alternate products.

B. Pre-qualified Products: Construction products of certain manufacturers or Suppliers designated in Specifications as "pre-qualified." Pre-qualified Products for this Project are designated as pre-qualified in Specifications. Products of other manufacturers or suppliers are not acceptable for this Project and will not be considered under the submittal process for approving alternate products.

C. Approved Products: Construction products of certain manufacturers or Suppliers designated in Specifications followed by words "or approved equal." Approval of alternate products not listed in Specifications may be obtained through provisions for product options and substitutions in Document 00700 - General Conditions, and by following submittal procedures specified in

Section 01330- Submittal Procedures. The procedure for approval of alternate products is not applicable to pre-approved or pre-qualified products.

D. Product Compatibility: To the maximum extent possible, provide Products that are of the same type or function from a single manufacturer, make, or source. Where more than one choice is available, select Product that is compatible with other Products already selected, specified, or in use by the City.

1.04 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

A. Responsibility related to Product options and substitutions is defined in Document 00700 - General Conditions.

B. Furnish information Project Manager deems necessary to judge equivalency of alternate Product.

C. Pay for laboratory testing, as well as any other review or examination costs, needed to establish equivalency between products in order to obtain information upon which Project Manager can base a decision.

D. If Project Manager determines alternate product is not equal to that named in Specifications, Furnish one of the specified Products.

1.05 CITY REVIEW

A. Use alternate Products only when approved in writing by Project Manager. Project Manager's determination regarding acceptance of proposed alternate Product is final.

B. Alternate Products shall be accepted if Products are judged by Project Manager to be equivalent to specified Product or to offer substantial benefit to the City.

C. The City retains the right to accept any Product deemed advantageous to the City, and similarly, to reject any product deemed not beneficial to City.

1.06 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURE

A. Collect and assemble technical information applicable to the proposed Product to aid in determining equivalency as related to the approved Product specified.

B. Submit a written request for a construction Product to be considered as an alternate Product.

C. Submit Product information after the effective date of the Contract and within the time period allowed for substitution submittals given in Document 00700 - General Conditions. After the submittal period has expired, requests for alternate Products shall be considered only when specified Product becomes unavailable because of conditions beyond Contractor's control.

D. Submit five copies of each request for alternate Product approval. Include the following information:

1. Complete data substantiating compliance of proposed substitution with the Contract.

2. For Products:
   a. Product identification, including manufacturer's name and address.
   b. Manufacturer's literature with Product description, performance and test data, and reference standards.
   c. Samples, as applicable.
   d. Name and address of similar projects on which Product was used and date of installation. Include names of Owner, design consultant, and installing contractor.

3. For construction methods:
   a. Detailed description of proposed method.
   b. Drawings illustrating methods.

4. Itemized comparison of proposed substitution with Product or method specified.

5. Data relating to changes in Construction Schedule.

6. Relation to separate contracts, if any.

7. Accurate cost data on proposed substitution in comparison with Product or method specified.

8. Other information requested by Project Manager.

E. Approved alternate Products will be subject to the same review process as the specified Product would have been for Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01650

EQUIPMENT NOMENCLATURE, DATA IDENTIFICATION AND DATA INPUT

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION

A. Nomenclature labels shall be as indicated or specified in Paragraph 1.06 below, and as shown on the Drawings. Nomenclature for facilities, systems, equipment and valves shall be used on all correspondence, submittals, and nameplates as described below.

B. Use the nomenclature labels indicated or specified in all transactions, including correspondences and submittals. If a nomenclature label is not specified or indicated, notify the CM. The CM will assign additional nomenclature labels, where appropriate. Contractor will provide non-specified labels at no additional cost to the City.

C. Labels for painted piping and painted equipment provided under Section 09905 are not part of this Section.

D. Nomenclature and tagging for items provided under Division 13 are part of this section and shall be in accordance with the requirements specified in this Section.

Nomenclature and tagging for valves provided under Division 15 are part of this section and shall be in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

E. Nomenclature and tagging for electrical items provided under Division 16 are part of this section and shall be in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

F. In addition to the numbering system specified, the City maintains a Computerized Maintenance Management System (CMMS) that utilizes an Asset Identification and Tagging System nomenclature. The Asset Identification and Tagging System nomenclature is to be used ONLY on Technical Data Forms and should NOT appear on any tags specified under Paragraph 1.06 ·

G. Fill out and submit completed Technical Data Forms.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment will be made for work provided under this section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Stipulated Price, in Section 00410, Part B, Paragraph 1.0 B1 and B2.

1.03 RELATED WORK

A. Submittals are included in Section 01330.

B. Contractor Quality Control is included in Section 01450.

C. Equipment Checkout, Field Testing and Functional Testing are included in Section 01665.

D. Closeout Procedures are included in Section 01770.

E. Vendor Training is included in Section 01735.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data is included in Section 01782.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit, in accordance with Section 01330, the following:

1. Technical Data Forms for equipment and systems requiring such forms, as specified.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide in accordance with Section 01450.

B. Documents (letters, Requests for Information, submittals, O&M manuals, vendor training manuals, shop drawings) which use nomenclature other than as indicated or specified will be rejected by the CM, and corrected and resubmitted by the Contractor at no additional cost to the City.

C. Technical Data Forms not completed in accordance with the specification will be rejected by the CM and corrected and resubmitted by the Contractor at no additional cost to the City.

D. Provide equipment and valve tagging prior to field and hands-on training as defined in Section 01735.

1.06 NOMENCLATURE

A. All process equipment, pumps, gates, valves and access hatches shall be identified and numbered in accordance with any Surface Water Plant's numbering system as established by the City.

B. Process equipment, pumps, gates, valves and access hatches shall be identified as shown on the Drawings and as indicated in individual specification sections.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 TAGS

A. For each item assigned a nomenclature label as specified or indicated, provide a tag with the corresponding nomenclature label.

B. For equipment, provide corrosion resistant, 0.125-in thick plastic tags with equipment nomenclature, in white 1/2-in lettering, engraved in black enamel background, with a minimum of 1/8-in border around the engraved print, and with extra length to provide for fastening device.

C. Provide materials specified below for attaching tags to equipment:

1. Provide 1/8-in by 3/8-in, Type 316 stainless steel machine screws.

2. Provide one-piece self-locking nylon tag fasteners for tags that cannot be attached with screws.

a. Provide nylon fasteners to attach tags only on non-moving parts of stationary equipment.

b. Fasteners longer than 8-in are not

acceptable. c. Provide no more than one

fastener per tag.

3. Provide 5-mil solvent-activated permanent adhesive.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. It is essential to the construction, operation, and maintenance of the Project that the nomenclature and tagging system is correctly implemented. Therefore, all correspondence, requests for information, submittals, operations and maintenance data, tags, spare parts and all other items shall
incorporate the correct nomenclature label. Replace or repair items not using the correct nomenclature label, at no additional cost to the City.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF TAGGING

A. Provide all material, equipment, and labor to install identification systems as specified and indicated.

B. Prepare and clean surfaces on which signs and tags will be mounted prior to installation.

C. Tags

1. Attach tags to be accessible and readable without disassembly, removal, or disruption *of* operation of any equipment.

2. Do not install tags in path of operation of moving or moveable equipment.

3. Tighten nylon tag fasteners such that tags do not hang more than 1-in from equipment in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

4. Drilling for Machine Screws

a. For fluid handling equipment including pipes, valves and pumps, and electric motors do not drill directly into wall containing the fluid or machinery; drill into flanges or support elements for attaching tags.

D. Install tags as specified with the specified or indicated nomenclature label incorporated as the text for these tags.

3.03 ASSET IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

A. The Contractor shall use the Asset Identification System to fill out the Technical Data Forms. This nomenclature is ONLY to be used on the Technical Data Forms.

B. The Contractor shall obtain the most recent version of the Technical Data Form from the Construction Manager. An example Technical Data Form is included in Attachment A. The nomenclature shall be designated as follows:

1. The Contractor shall assign each piece *of* equipment, as specified in this Section, a unique number in accordance with the Asset Identification and Tagging Numbering System. The nomenclature is an alpha-numeric code required for each asset, according to the following structure.

XXXX XX XXXX XXXX

Location System Position Asset

2. Code values must be designated on the Technical Data Form for each new mechanical or electrical piece of equipment. The Technical Data Form is to be submitted for all new mechanical and electrical equipment (including instrumentation) added under this Contract.

3. The first code is the "Location" code. The "Location" Code for this project will be provided by the City.

4. The second code value is the "System" code. The two digit numeric "System" code identifies assets by its functional position. The currently established system codes are shown as follows:

System Code	System Description
01	Raw Water (RWI
02	Bulk Storage and Chemical Feed (CHEMI
03	Flocculation (FLOC)
04	Sedimentation (SEDIM)
05	Filtration (FLT)
06	Distribution (DIST)
07	Process Waste Treatment (PWT)
08	Facilities (FAG)
09	Grounds (GRNDS)

5. The third code value is the "Position" code. The "Position" code is an alpha-numeric code which combines processes and functions. The currently established position codes are shown in Attachment B.

6. The fourth code value is "Asset" code. The four digit "Asset" code is a numeric code that describes the asset position or station number. The plant asset identification numbers will be assigned by the City of Houston.

3.04 TECHNICAL DATA FORMS

A. Obtain most recent Technical Data Form from CM.

B. Completely fill out Technical Data Form using the nomenclature specified in Paragraph 3.03.

C. General Form Requirements

1. Provide completed forms electronically using template provided by CM. Template will be a Windows-based program.

2. Submit hard copy of all electronic files.

3. Completely check all forms so that the information provided exactly matches the data for the equipment supplied.

D. Use electronic file for the Technical Data Form provided by CM. Form shall be submitted electronically in Microsoft Excel format and hardcopy.

E. Complete the Technical Data Form as specified.

3.05 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

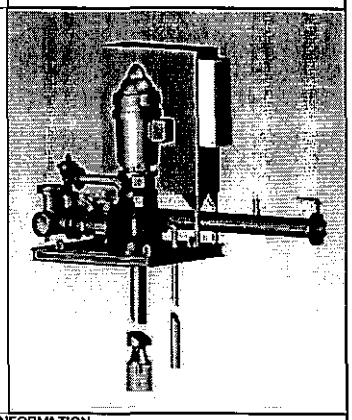
A. Provide in accordance with Section 01770.

B. Compare tags and signs with equipment and areas referenced. Replace tags and signs that do not reference equipment or area to which attached, located, or giving direction to, at no additional cost to the City.

Attachment A – Sample Technical Data Forms...

Attachment B – Position Code to be used on Technical Data Forms.

ATTACHMENT A

GENERAL INFORMATION			
FACILITY NAME			
FACILITY NUMBER			
EQUIPMENT ID NUMBER			
EQUIPMENT DESIGNATION			
LOCATION			
PART #			
EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER			
REMARKS:			
DRIVE INFORMATION			
EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER			
MODEL #			
SERIAL #			
MAX FLOW:		OUTPUT RPM:	
DRIVER:		MAX PRESS:	
INPUT HP:		COUPLING SIZE:	
GEAR RATIO:		SERVICE FACTOR	
MOTOR INFORMATION			
MANAFACTURED BY			
MODEL #			
SERIAL #			
NEMA FRAME		NEMA DESIGN	
VOLTS:		RPM:	
AMPS:		PHASES:	
HP:		SF:	
HZ:		AMB:	
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION			
WEIGHT		POLES	
GPM		LRA (Load-Rated Amps)	
MANU. WARR. START		MANU. WARR. END	
LUBE SYSTEM TYPE (Seal Water, Grease, Oil)			
GEAR-PINION			
MOUNTING POSITION (H-Horz, V-Ver, O-Other)			
TAG #		CAPACITY	
YEAR BUILT		DESIGN PRESS.	
SHAFT RIGID COUPLING		SHAFT SEAL	
IMPELLER TYPE		IMPELLER DIAMETER	
PISTON DIAMETER		SHAFT SIZE	
MAX SPEC GRAVITY		DESIGN TEMP	
KW		KVA	
FREQUENCY		PF	
FULL LOAD		INSULATION CLASS	
WIRE		PHASES:	
TEMP RISE		TEMP AMB	
MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION			
STRUCTURE			
LINER			
O/M REFERENCE MANUAL			
MAINTENANCE			
PUMP CURVES			

ATTACHMENT B
ESTABLISHED CITY OF HOUSTON POSITION CODES

Position Code	Position Description
ACB	Activated Carbon Transfer Blower
ACC	Hydraulic Accumulator
ACD	Activated Carbon Rotodip
ACP	Activated Carbon Feed Pump
ACT	Activated Carbon Feed Tank
AFP	Alum Feed Pump
AFT	Alum Feed Tank
AMFP	Ammonia Feed Pump
AMFT	Ammonia Feed Tank
AMST	Ammonia Storage Tank
AMTP	Ammonia Transfer Pump
ANLZ	Analyzer
AST	Alum Storage Tank
ATP	Alum Transfer Pump
BLDG	Building
BLWR	Blower
BP	Belt Press
BSN	Basin
BWC	Backwash Clarifier
BWP	Backwash Pump
BWT	Backwash Tank
BWW	Backwash Waste Pump
BWWPS	Backwash Waste Pump Station
CAS	Chemical Application Station
CBT	Carbon Slurry Batching Tank
CENT	Centrifuge
CFP	Caustic Feed Pump
CFT	Caustic Feed Tank
CHL	Chlorinator
CLE	Cl2 Evaporator
CLF	Clarifier
CLM	Collector Mechanism
CLS	Classifier
CLW	Clearwell
CMPR	Compressor
CNL	Canal
CONV	Conveyor
CPEQ	Computer Equipment
CRN	Crane
CSS	Carbon Storage Silo

ATTACHMENT B
ESTABLISHED CITY OF HOUSTON POSITION CODES cont'd

Position Code	Position Description
CST	Caustic Storage Tank
CTP	Caustic Transfer Pump
CYC	Cyclone
ELEV	Elevators
FBAY	Forebay
FBM	Flocculator Basin Motor
FBN	Flocculator Basin
FBNA	Flocculator Basin Area
FEN	Fence
FFP	Flouride Feed Pump
FFT	Flouride Feed Tank
FLT	Filter
FLTA	Filter Area
FST	Flouride Acid Tank
FTP	Fluoride Transfer Pump
GRNDS	Grounds
GST	Ground Storage Tank
HSP	High Service Pump
HSPS	High Service Pump Station
HST	Hoist
HVAC	HVAC Equipment
LCP	Local Control Panel
LFST	Lift Station
LSB	Lime Storage Bin
LSFP	Lime Slurry Feed Pump
LSP	Low Service Pump
LSPA	Low Service Pump Area
LST	Lime Slurry Tank
LVLSYS	Level System
MBP	Manual Backup Panel
MCC	MCC/Switchgear
MCC	Motor Control Center
MR	Meter
MTR	Motor
MXR	Mixer
PBP	Polymer Batching Pump
PFP	Polymer Feed Pump
PIP	Piping
PMP	Pump
PMT	Polymer Mixing Tank

ATTACHMENT B
ESTABLISHED CITY OF HOUSTON POSITION CODES cont'd

Position Code	Position Description
POB	Process Overflow Basin
PST	Polymer Storage Tank
PTP	Polymer Transfer Pump
RFP	Return Flow Pump
RM	Room
RSP	Raw Sludge Pump
RSPF	Return Flow Pump Station
RST	Raw Sludge Thickener
SBN	Settling Basin
SBNA	Settling Basin Area
SCADA	SCADA & Instrumentation
SCL	Scales
SCR	Screen
SLDGGR	Sludge Grinder
SLS	Sewer Lift Station
SPMPSYS	Sump Pump System
SUBSTN	Electrical Substation
SWPS	Surface Wash Pump Station
SYSAA	Systems Area
TFP	Transfer Pump
TK	Tanks
TPS	Transfer Pump Station
TRF	Transformer
TSP	Thickened Sludge Pump
TWS	Traveling Water Screen
VLV	Valve
WW	Wet Well

END OF SECTION

Section 01725

FIELD SURVEYING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Conform to State of Texas laws for surveys requiring licensed surveyors. Employ a surveyor acceptable to Project Manager if required by the Contract.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. UNIT PRICES

1. No separate payment will be made for field surveying. Include cost in unit price for related items.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit name, address, and telephone number of Surveyor to Project Manager before starting survey work.

C. Submit documentation verifying accuracy of survey work on request.

D. Submit certificate signed by Surveyor, that elevations and locations of the Work are in conformance with the Contract.

1.04 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintain a complete and accurate log of control and survey work as it progresses.

B. Prepare a certified survey setting forth dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and site work upon completion of foundation walls and major site improvements.

C. Submit record documents under provisions of Section 01785 - Project Record Documents.

1.05 EXAMINATION

A. Verify locations of survey control points prior to starting the Work.

B. Notify Project Manager immediately if any discrepancies are discovered.

1.06 SURVEY REFERENCE POINTS

A. The City will establish survey control datum as provided in Document 00700 - General Conditions and as indicated on Drawings. Inform Project Manager in Advance of time horizontal and vertical control points will be established so

verification deemed necessary by Project Manager may be done with minimum inconvenience to the City or Contractor.

B. Locate and protect survey control points prior to starting site work; preserve permanent reference points during construction.

C. Notify Project Manager a minimum of 48 hours before relocation of reference points is needed due to changes in grades or other reasons.

D. Promptly report loss or destruction of reference points to Project Manager.

E. Reimburse the City for cost of reestablishment of permanent reference points disturbed by construction operations.

1.07 SURVEY REQUIREMENTS

A. Utilize recognized engineering survey practices.

B. Establish a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on site, referenced to established control points. Record horizontal and vertical location data on Project record documents.

C. Establish elevations, lines and levels to provide quantities required for measurement and payment and for appropriate controls for the Work. Locate and lay out the following with appropriate instruments:

1. Site improvements including grading, fill and topsoil placement, utilities, and footings and slabs

2. Grid or axis for structures

3. Building foundation, column locations, and ground floor elevations

D. Periodically verify layouts.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01731

CUTTING AND PATCHING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Cutting, patching and fitting of the Work or work under construction. Coordinating Installation or connection of the Work to existing facilities, or uncovering work for access, inspection or testing and related submittals.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. UNIT PRICES

1. No separate payment will be made for cutting and patching. Include cost in unit price for related items.

1.03 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Perform activities to avoid interference with facility operations and work of others in accordance with Document 00700 - General Conditions of Contract.

B. Execute cutting and patching, including excavation, backfill and fitting to:

1. Remove and replace defective work or work not conforming to Drawings and Specifications;

2. Take samples of installed work as required for testing;

3. Remove construction required to provide for specified alterations or additions to existing work;

4. Uncover work to allow inspection or reinspection by Project Manager or regulatory agencies having jurisdiction;

5. Connect uninstalled work to completed work in proper sequence;

6. Remove or relocate existing utilities and pipes that obstruct work;

7. Make connections or alterations to existing or new facilities;

8. Provide openings, channels, chases and flues and cut, patch, and finish; if required; or

9. Provide protection for other portions of the Work.

C. Restore existing work to a condition equal to or better than that which existed Prior to cutting and patching, and to standards required by Specifications.

D. Support, anchor, attach, match, trim and seal materials to work of others. Unless otherwise specified, Furnish and Install sleeves, inserts, and hangers required for execution of the Work.

E. Provide shoring, bracing and support necessary to maintain structural integrity and to protect adjacent work from damage during cutting and patching. Request written approval from Project Manager, before cutting structural members such as beams, anchors, lintels, or other supports. Follow approved submittals, as applicable.

F. Match new materials to existing materials by bonding, lapping, mechanically tying, anchoring or other effective means in order to prevent cracks and to minimize evidence of patching. Conceal effects of demolition and patching by blending new construction to existing surfaces. Avoid obvious breaks, joints or changes of surface appearance unless shown on Drawings or authorized by Project Manager.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit a written request to Project Manager for consent to proceed, before conducting cutting operations that might affect structural integrity, design function, City operations, or work of another contractor.

C. Include the following in submittal:

1. Identification of Project

2. Description of affected work

3. Necessity for cutting

4. Effect on other work and on structural integrity

5. Describe the proposed work including:
   a. Scope of cutting and patching
   b. Contractor, Subcontractor or Supplier who will execute the work
   c. Proposed Products
   d. Extent of refinishing
   e. Schedule of operations

6. Alternatives to cutting and patching

D. When work conditions or schedules dictate the need for change of materials or methods, submit a written recommendation to Project Manager that includes:

1. conditions necessitating the change;

2. recommendations for alternative materials or methods; and

3. submittals required for proposed substitutions

E. Notify Project Manager in writing when work will be uncovered for observation. Do not begin cutting or patching operations until authorized by Project Manager.

1.05 CONNECTIONS TO EXISTING FACILITIES

A. Perform construction operations necessary to complete connections and tie-ins to existing facilities. Keep existing facilities in continuous operation unless otherwise permitted in the Specifications or approved in writing by Project Manager.

B. Coordinate interruption of service requiring connection to existing facilities with Project Manager. Do not bypass wastewater or sludge to waterways. Provide temporary pumping facilities to handle wastewater if necessary. Use temporary bulkheads to minimize disruption. Provide temporary power and piping to facilitate construction where necessary.

C. Submit a detailed schedule of proposed connections, including shut-downs and tie-ins. Include proposed time and date as well as anticipated duration of work. Coordinate the connection schedule with the construction schedule.

1. Submit specific times and dates to Project Manager at least 48 hours in advance of proposed work.

D. Procedures and Operations:

1. Operate existing pumps, valves and gates in required sequence under supervision of Project Manager. Do not operate valves, gates or other items of equipment without Project Manager's knowledge.

2. If possible, test equipment under operating conditions before making final tie-ins to connect equipment to existing facility.

3. Coordinate work and schedules. Notify Project Manger at least 48 Hours before shutdowns or bypasses are required.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01732

PROCEDURE FOR WATER VALVE ASSISTANCE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Operation of valves. City of Houston employees will operate existing valves. Contractor's employees may operate new valves included in the Project prior to acceptance by the City.

1.02 PROCEDURE

A. Perform activities listed in Exhibit A attached to this Section.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit request for work order planning meetings in accordance with Exhibit A. Include information listed in Step 1 of Exhibit A, attached to this Section.

1.04 CANCELLATION

A. Contractor, Project Manager, or Public Utilities Division may cancel a scheduled valve assistance appointment at no extra cost or payment to Contractor. Contractor shall notify City's appointed Project Inspector ("Inspector") 24 hours in advance of cancellation. Inspector shall notify Central Operation Service (COS) immediately upon receipt of cancellation notice. Cancellation may be caused by bad weather, preparation work taking longer than anticipated, or unforeseen delays by one or more of the three parties.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

EXHIBIT A

PROCEDURE FOR VALVE ASSISTANCE

The following procedure will be used by Utility Maintenance Branch personnel when completing a service request from individual Contractors, through Inspector, for operation of existing water valves.

ROUTINE VALVE ASSISTANCE REQUEST (NON-EMERGENCY JOBS):

Step 1. a. When notified by Contractor, Inspector will schedule a work order planning meeting by calling Central Operation Service (COS) at **(713) 295-5521** and providing information shown below. The work order planning meeting shall be conducted a minimum of three days after the request; excluding weekends, holidays, inclement weather days, and the day of the call.

Location of Work (Street Intersection)	Project #
Project Description	Contractor (Company Name)
Job Superintendent's Name	Superintendent's Office #/Mobile #/Pager #
Contractor's Emergency Information	Name and Phone #/Mobile #/Pager #
Inspector/Senior Inspector	Name, Phone #/Mobile #/Pager #
Date & Time assistance is requested	

b. COS will create a work order for each wet connection, cut and plug, etc. that will be designated as a "Code 40" (Private Contractor).

c. COS will give Inspector the work order number. This work order number must be used as a reference in all communications regarding this request for Valve Assistance.

d. Valve personnel must have the work order number on their route sheet. When valve personnel arrive at the job site for the Work Order Planning Meeting between Inspector, Contractor, and Utility Maintenance valve personnel, they will verify the street intersection and work order number with the Inspector before beginning Work Order Planning Meeting.

e. During Work Order Planning Meeting, the work to be performed will be outlined and the actual date work will be performed will be mutually determined by Inspector, Contractor and City's Utility Maintenance Division valve personnel, based upon relevant factors such as preparatory work needed, customer requirements, etc.

f. Valve personnel will perform work specifically outlined in the work order requested. Also, Utility Maintenance Branch valve personnel will only operate existing water valves. Inspector must contact COS and request a new work order for additional work.

g. Valve personnel will contact the dispatcher and advise when the job is complete. Valve personnel will list all appropriate information on the Crew Activity Report.

Step 2. Should valve personnel not be able to keep an appointment to provide valve assistance, Utility Maintenance Branch will provide notification to appropriate Inspector by phone at least 24 hours prior, with that fact and rescheduling information, if available.

Step 3. Inspector will notify COS if valve personnel have not arrived at the site within 30 minutes of scheduled appointment. If Contractor is not ready when valve operator arrives to provide valve assistance, the City shall charge Contractor $50.00 per hour, starting 15 minutes after the scheduled appointment time, minimum one hour charge.

Step 4. Contractor will not be due delay claims or downtime if Utility Maintenance Branch has notified Inspector that they will not be able to provide valve assistance as scheduled.

Step 5. Test installed new valves in the presence of Inspector before substantial completion inspection is scheduled. Place new valves in open position on or before the Date of Substantial Completion.

Step 6. Project Manager will notify, in writing, Utility Maintenance Branch two months before the warranty expires to report any problems they have with new water lines. Project Manager will notify Contractor about these problems.

EMERGENCY REQUEST FOR VALVE ASSISTANCE PROCEDURE:

Step 1. When notified by Contractor, Inspector will request emergency Valve Assistance due to a broken line/service, etc. by calling COS at **(713) 295-5521** and providing the following information:

Location of Work (Street Intersection)	Project #
Project Description	Superintendent's Office #/Mobile #/Pager #
Contractor (Company Name)	Name and Phone #/Mobile #/Pager #
Job Superintendent's Name	Name, Phone #/Mobile #/Pager #
Contractor's Emergency Information	
Inspector/Senior Inspector	
Date & Time assistance is requested	

Step 2. COS will create an emergency work order number and describe the work to be performed.

Step 3. COS will give Inspector the emergency work order number. Reference work order number in all communications regarding request for Valve Assistance.

Step 4. COS will contact designated valve personnel and assign emergency work order. Dispatcher will follow standard COS procedures if this situation occurs after normal working hours.

Step 5. Valve personnel must have the emergency work order number on the route sheet. When valve personnel arrive at the job site for emergency work, they will verify the street intersection and emergency work order number with Inspector prior to beginning work requested for operating existing water valves. Valve personnel will coordinate verification of street intersection and work order number with Inspector prior to performing work.

Section 01740

SITE RESTORATION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Restoration of site affected by the Work in public or private property, including pavement, esplanades, sidewalks, driveways, fences, lawns and landscaping.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for restoration of Project site disturbed by utility construction operations is on a linear foot basis. Measurement will be as provided for corresponding utility in each Specification section. No separate payment made for branch pipe, valves and, other associated work for utilities. Measurement for restoration with multiple utilities within the same right-of-way will be on a linear foot basis for only one utility.

2. No separate payment made for facility or roadway projects. Include cost in the surface improvements associated with the facility or roadway construction.

3. Payment includes required site restoration within the right-of-way or easement regardless of size or type of pipe, method of construction, paved or unpaved areas or thickness and width of pavement.

4. No separate payment made for site restoration for service connections under this Section. Include cost in appropriate utility section.

5. Refer to Section 01270 – Measurement and Payment for Unit Price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum) Contracts. If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, include payment for work under this section in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Phase: Locations identified on the plans and listed in Section 1110 – Summary of Work under Work Sequence.

B. Site Restoration: Replacement or reconstruction of Site Improvements located in rights-of-way, easements, public property, and private property affected or altered by the Work.

C. Site Improvement: Includes pavement, curbs and gutters, esplanades, sidewalks, driveways, fences, lawns, irrigation systems, landscaping, and other improvements in existence at the Project site before commencement of construction operations.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Schedule of testing, service connections, abandonment, backfill, and site restoration.

C. Sample of notices to residents outlining their responsibility for maintenance of site improvements adjacent to the Project that are not disturbed by construction operations

1.05 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule testing, service connections, abandonment, backfill and site restoration immediately following completion of pipe laying work or paving within each block or line segment.

B. Phased Construction:

1. Commencement of subsequent Phase will follow scheduling of site restoration of prior Phase. Limit work to a maximum of two Phases of the project.

C. Construction of Projects with no Phases listed in Section 01110- Summary of Work:

1. Complete site restoration prior to disturbing over 50% of total project linear feet or 2,000 linear feet, whichever is greater, of right-of-way or easement.

2. Limit work to a maximum of 50% of total project linear feet or 2,000 linear feet, whichever is greater, of right-of-way and easement. Commence work in additional right-of-way or easement after completion of site restoration.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Pavement, Sidewalks and Driveways: Materials specified in Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and Resurfacing.

B. Seeding and Sodding: Sod specified in Section 02922 - Sodding and Seed specified in Section 02921 - Hydromulch Seeding.

C. Trees, Shrubs and Plantings: Conform to requirements of Section 01562 – Tree and Plant Protection.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 Preparatory Work

A. Provide cleanup and restoration crews to work closely behind pipe laying and roadway construction crews, and where necessary, during testing, service restoration, abandonment, backfill and surface restoration.

B. Water Lines: Unless otherwise approved by Project Manager, comply with the following:

1. Once Project Manager approves work within a Phase, immediately begin preparatory work for disinfection effort.

2. No later than three days after completing disinfection preparatory work, submit to City appropriate request for disinfection.

3. If City fails to perform initial disinfection of lines in accordance with Section 2514 - Disinfection of Water Lines, within seven days from submission of appropriate request, and if approved by Project Manager, pipe laying operations may continue beyond approved limits until the City responds.

4. Immediately after transfer of services, begin abandonment of old water lines and site restoration.

C. Wastewater Lines:

1. Once Project Manager approves work within a Line Segment, immediately begin preparatory work for testing effort.

2. No later than three days after completing preparatory work for testing, initiate testing work.

3. Immediately after transfer of service connections, begin abandonment of old wastewater lines, and site restoration.

D. Street Construction and Paving Projects

1. Once Project Manager approves work within a Line Segment or block, immediately begin preparatory work for testing effort.

2. No later than three days after completing preparatory work for testing, initiate testing work.

3. Immediately after testing begin site restoration.

E. Street Construction and Paving Projects

1. Once Project Manager approves work within a block, immediately begin preparatory work for sidewalk construction, sodding and hydromulching and tree planting.

2. No later than seven days after completing preparatory work, initiate construction.

3.02 CLEANING

A. Remove debris and trash to maintain a clean and orderly site in accordance with requirements of General Conditions and Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

3.03 LANDSCAPING AND FENCES

A. Seeding and Sodding.

1. Remove construction debris and level area with bank sand so that new grass surface matches level of existing grass and maintains pre-construction drainage patterns. Level and fill minor ruts or depressions caused by construction operations with bank sand, where grass is still viable.

2. Restore previously existing turfed areas with sod and fertilize in accordance with Section 02922 - Sodding. Sod to match existing turf.

3. Restore unpaved areas not requiring sodding with hydromulch seeding conforming to Section 02921 - Hydromulch Seeding.

B. Trees, Shrubbery and Plants.

1. Remove and replant trees, shrubs, and plants in accordance with requirements of Section 01562 – Tree and Plant Protection.

C. Fence Replacement.

1. Replace removed or damaged fencing to equal or better condition than existed prior to construction, including concrete footings and mow strips. Provide new wood posts, top and bottom railing and panels. Metal fencing material, not damaged by the Work, may be reused.

2. Remove and dispose of damaged or substandard material.

3.04 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain shrubs, plantings, sodded areas and seeded areas.

B. Replace shrubs, plantings and seeded or sodded areas that fail to become established.

C. Refer to Section 01562 - Tree and Plant Protection, Section 02921 - Hydromulch Seeding and Section 02922 - Sodding for maintenance requirements.

END OF SECTION

Section 01755

STARTING SYSTEMS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Starting systems.

B. Demonstration and instructions.

C. Testing, adjusting and balancing.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems.

B. Notify Project Manager seven days prior to startup of each item.

C. Verify each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, or other damage-causing conditions.

D. Verify tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by equipment or system manufacturer.

E. Verify wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.

F. Execute start-up under supervision in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

G. When specified in individual Specification sections, require manufacturer to provide an authorized representative to be present at the site to inspect, check and approve equipment or system installation prior to start-up, and to supervise placing equipment or system in operation.

H. Submit written report indicating that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

3.02 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

A. Demonstrate operation and maintenance of Products to Project Manager two weeks prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

B. Utilize O&M Manuals as the basis for instruction. Review contents of manual with Project Manager in detail to explain aspects of operation and maintenance.

C. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, trouble-shooting, servicing, maintenance, and shutdown of each item of equipment at agreed-upon times, at the equipment location.

D. Prepare and insert additional data in O&M Manuals when the need for additional data becomes apparent during instruction.

E. At a minimum, Contractor will demonstrate the following:

1. Products and procedures to be used in maintaining various surfaces, e.g., counter tops, toilet partitions, tile floors and carpeting;

2. procedures to set and maintain landscape irrigation system;

3. procedures to set and maintain security and fire alarm systems; and

4. procedures to set and maintain HVAC systems.

3.03 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING

A. Contractor shall appoint, employ and pay for the services of an independent firm to perform testing, adjusting and balancing.

B. Submit reports by the independent firm to Project Manager describing observations and results of tests and signifying compliance or non-compliance with specified requirements and requirements of the Contract.

END OF SECTION

Section 01770

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Procedures to establish Date of Substantial Completion.

B. Closeout procedures for final submittals, O&M data, warranties, spare parts and maintenance materials.

C. Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation (TDLR) inspection for Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS) compliance.

1.02 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

A. Comply with Document 00700 - General Conditions regarding Date of Substantial Completion when Contractor considers the Work, or portion thereof designated by Project Manager, to be substantially complete.

B. Insure the following items have been completed when included in the Work, prior to presenting a list of items to be inspected by Project Manager for issuance of a Certificate of Substantial Completion:

1. cutting, plugging, and abandoning of water, wastewater, and storm sewer lines, as required by Contract documents for each item;

2. construction of, and repairs to, pavement, driveways, sidewalks, and curbs and gutters;

3. sodding and hydromulch seeding, unless waived by Project Manager in writing;

4. general clean up including pavement markings, transfer of services, successful testing and landscape;

5. additional requirements contained in Section 01110 - Summary of Work.

C. Assist Project Manager with inspection of Contractor's list of items and complete or correct the items, including items added by Project Manager, within specified time period.

D. Should Project Manager's inspection show failure of Contractor to comply with requirements to obtain Date of Substantial Completion, including those items in Paragraph 1.02 B. of this section, Contractor shall complete or correct the items, before requesting another inspection by Project Manager.

1.03 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

A. Comply with Document 00700 - General Conditions regarding final completion and final payment when the Work is complete and ready for Project Manager's final inspection.

B. Provide Project Record Documents in accordance with Section 01785 - Project Record Documents.

C. Complete or correct items on punch list, with no new items added. Address new items during warranty period.

D. The City will occupy portions of the Work as specified in other sections.

1.04 FINAL CLEANING

A. Execute final cleaning prior to final inspection.

B. For facilities, clean interior and exterior glass and surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances, polish transparent and glossy surfaces, vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces.

C. Clean equipment and fixtures to sanitary condition.

D. Clean or replace filters of operating equipment.

E. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, down spouts, and drainage systems.

F. Clean site; sweep paved areas, and rake clean landscaped surfaces.

G. Remove waste and surplus materials, rubbish, and temporary construction facilities from site following final test of utilities and completion of the Work.

1.05 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust operating equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation. Value of this testing and adjusting is five percent of Lump Sum Price in the Schedule of Values for item being tested.

1.06 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

A. Submit O&M data as noted in Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Five percent of lump sum amount of each piece of equipment as indicated in Schedule of Unit Price Work or Schedule of Values will be paid after the required O&M data submittals are received and approved by Project Manager.

1.07 WARRANTIES

A. Provide one original of each warranty from Subcontractors, Suppliers, and manufacturers.

B. Provide Table of Contents and assemble warranties in a 3-ring/D binder with durable plastic cover.

C. Submit warranties prior to final progress payment.

D. Warranties shall commence in accordance with the requirements in Document 00700 - General Conditions.

1.08 SPARE PARTS AND MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

A. Provide Products, spare parts, maintenance and extra materials in quantities specified in individual Specification sections.

B. Deliver to a location within the City limits as directed by Project Manager. Applicable items must be delivered prior to issuance of a final Certificate for Payment.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01782

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Submittal requirements for equipment and facility Operations and Maintenance (O&M) Manuals

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Measurement for equipment O&M Manuals is on a lump sum basis equal to five percent of the individual equipment value contained in Schedule of Unit Prices or Schedule of Values. The lump sum amount may be included in the first Progress Payment following approval of the O&M Manuals by Project Manager.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures. Submit a list of O&M Manuals and parts manuals for equipment to be incorporated into the Work.

B. Submit documents with 8-1/2 x 11-inch text pages, bound in 3-ring/D binders with durable plastic covers.

C. Print "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS", Project name, and subject matter of binder on covers when multiple binders are required.

D. Subdivide contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized according to the Table of Contents, with tab titling clearly printed under reinforced laminated plastic tabs.

E. O&M Manual contents: Prepare a Table of Contents for each volume, with each Product or system description identified.

1. Part 1 - Directory: Listing of names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Design Consultant, Contractor, Subcontractors, and major equipment Suppliers.

2. Part 2 - O&M instructions arranged by system. For each category, identify names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and Suppliers and include the following:
   a. Significant design criteria.
   b. List of equipment.
   c. Parts list for each component.
   d. Operating instructions.
   e. Maintenance instructions for equipment and systems.
   f. Maintenance instructions for special finishes, including recommended cleaning methods and materials and special precautions identifying detrimental agents.

3. Part 3 - Project documents and certificates including:
   a. Shop Drawings and relevant data.
   b. Air and water balance reports.
   c. Certificates.
   d. Photocopies of warranties.

F. Submit two copies of O&M Manuals and parts manuals, for review, within one month prior to placing the equipment or facility in service.

G. Submit one copy of completed volumes in final form 10 days prior to final inspection. One copy with Project Manager comments will be returned after final inspection. Revise content of documents based on Project Manager's comments prior to final submittal.

H. Revise and resubmit three final volumes within 10 days after final inspection.

1.04 EQUIPMENT O&M DATA

A. Furnish O&M Manuals, prepared by manufacturers for all equipment. Manuals must contain, as a minimum, the following:

1. Equipment functions, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.

2. Assembly, Installation, alignment, adjustment, and checking instructions.

3. Operating instructions for start-up, normal operation, regulation and control, normal shutdown, and emergency shutdown.

4. Detailed drawings showing the location of each maintainable part and lubrication point with detailed instructions on disassembly and reassembly of the equipment.

5. Troubleshooting guide.

6. Spare parts list, predicted life of parts subject to wear, lists of spare parts recommended to be on hand for both initial start-up and for normal operating inventory, and local or nearest source of spare parts availability.

7. Outline, cross-section, and assembly drawings with engineering data and wiring diagrams.

8. Test data and performance curves.

B. Furnish parts manuals for all equipment, prepared by the equipment manufacturer, which contain, as a minimum, the following:

1. Detailed drawings giving the location of each maintainable part.

2. Spare parts list with predicted life of parts subject to wear, lists of spare parts recommended on hand for both initial start-up and for normal operating inventory, and local or nearest source of spare parts availability.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 01785

PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Maintenance and submittal of record documents and Samples.

1.02 MAINTENANCE OF DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES

A. Maintain one record copy of documents at the site in accordance with Document 00700 - General Conditions.

B. Store record documents and Samples in field office, if a field office is required by the Contract, or in a secure location. Provide files, racks, and secure storage for record documents and Samples.

C. Label each document "PROJECT RECORD" in neat, large, printed letters.

D. Maintain record documents in a clean, dry, and legible condition. Do not use record documents for construction purposes. Do not use permit drawings to record Modifications to the Work.

E. Keep record documents and Samples available for inspection by Project Manager.

F. Bring record documents to progress review meetings for viewing by Project Manager and, if applicable, Design Consultant.

1.03 RECORDING

A. Record information legibly with red ink pen on a set of blueline opaque drawings, concurrently with construction progress. Maintain an instrument on site at all times for measuring elevations accurately. Do not conceal work until required information is recorded

B. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings: Mark each item to record completed Modifications, or when minor deviations exist, the actual construction including:

1. Measured depths of elements of foundation in relation to finish first floor datum.
2. Measured horizontal locations and elevations of Underground Facilities and appurtenances, referenced to permanent surface improvements.

3. Elevations of Underground Facilities referenced to City of Houston benchmark utilized for the Work.

4. Measured locations of internal utilities and appurtenances concealed in construction, referenced to visible and accessible features of the Work.

5. Dimensions and details of field changes

6. Changes made by Modifications.

7. Details not on original Drawings.

8. References to related Shop Drawings and Modifications.

C. Survey all joints of water mains at the time of construction. Record on Drawings, water main invert elevation, elevation top of manway, and centerline horizontal location relative to baseline.

D. For large diameter water mains, mark specifications and addenda to record:

1. Manufacturer, trade name, catalog number and Supplier of each Product actually Installed.

2. Changes made by Modification or field order.

3. Other matters not originally specified.

E. Annotate Shop Drawings to record changes made after review.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. At closeout of the Contract, deliver Project record documents to Project Manager.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01820

DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:

1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
3. Demonstration and training videotapes.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for preinstruction conferences.
2. Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific requirements for demonstration and training for products in those Sections.

C. Demonstration and Training Schedule: No demonstration and training sessions shall be scheduled by Contractor until the Operations and Maintenance Manuals have been reviewed by Architect. Six copies of the reviewed O & M Manuals shall be available for study and reference at the training sessions.

D. Demonstration Training Sessions shall include all subcontractors and/or suppliers related to the specific system(s) being demonstrated and trained upon.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Instruction Program: Submit two copies of outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.

1. At completion of training, submit one complete training manual(s) for Owner's use.

B. Qualification Data: For facilitator.

C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.

D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

E. Demonstration and Training Videotapes: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.

1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:

a. Name of Project.
b. Name and address of photographer.
c. Name of Architect.
d. Name of Contractor.
e. Date videotape was recorded.
f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.

2. Transcript: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper, punched and bound in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered binders. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding videotape. Include name of Project and date of videotape on each page.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.

B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

C. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
3. Review required content of instruction.
4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations.

B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.

C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections, and as follows:

1. Motorized doors, including overhead coiling doors and automatic entrance doors.
2. Equipment, including projection screens and food-service equipment.
3. Fire-protection systems, including fire alarm, fire pumps and fire-extinguishing systems.
4. Intrusion detection systems.
5. HVAC systems, including air-handling equipment air distribution systems and terminal equipment and devices.
6. HVAC instrumentation and controls.
7. Electrical service and distribution, including transformers switchboards panelboards uninterruptible power supplies and motor controls.
8. Packaged engine generators, including transfer switches.
9. Lighting equipment and controls.
10. Communication systems, including intercommunication, surveillance voice and data, and television equipment.

B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following:

1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:

a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
c. Operating standards.
d. Regulatory requirements.
e. Equipment function.
f. Operating characteristics.
g. Limiting conditions.
h. Performance curves.

2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:

    a. Emergency manuals.
    b. Operations manuals.
    c. Maintenance manuals.
    d. Project Record Documents.
    e. Identification systems.
    f. Warranties and bonds.
    g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.

3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:

    a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    b. Instructions on stopping.
    c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    f. Special operating instructions and procedures.

4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:

    a. Startup procedures.
    b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
    c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
    d. Regulation and control procedures.
    e. Control sequences.
    f. Safety procedures.
    g. Instructions on stopping.
    h. Normal shutdown instructions.
    i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
    j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
    k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
    l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    m. Special operating instructions and procedures.

5. Adjustments: Include the following:

    a. Alignments.
    b. Checking adjustments.
    c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
    d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.

6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:

    a. Diagnostic instructions.
    b. Test and inspection procedures.

7. Maintenance: Include the following:

    a. Inspection procedures.

b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
d. Procedures for routine cleaning
e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
g. Instruction on use of special tools.

8. Repairs: Include the following:

a. Diagnosis instructions.
b. Repair instructions.
c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a combined training manual.

B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

3.2 INSTRUCTION

A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.

B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.

1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.

C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.

1. Schedule training with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.

D. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration performance-based test.

E. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEOTAPES

A. General: Engage a qualified commercial photographer to record demonstration and training videotapes. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.

1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.

B. Videotape Format: Provide high-quality VHS color videotape in full-size cassettes.

C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to show area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.

D. Narration: Describe scenes on videotape by audio narration by microphone while videotape is recorded. Include description of items being viewed. Describe vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.

E. Transcript: Provide a typewritten transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.

END OF SECTION 01820

SECTION 01951

COMMISSIONING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Commissioning description.
2. Submittals.
3. Commissioning services.
4. Commissioning responsibilities.
5. Commissioning meetings.
6. Commissioning reports.
7. Test equipment.
8. Verification check and startup procedures.
9. Functional performance test procedures.
10. Function performance test methods.
11. Deficiencies and test approvals.
12. Demonstration.

1.2 COMMISSIONING DESCRIPTION

A. Commissioning: Systematic process of ensuring systems perform interactively according to design intent and Owner's project requirements. Commissioning process encompasses and coordinates system documentation, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing and balancing, performance testing and training, and verification of actual performance.

B. Equipment and Systems to Be Commissioned are listed in Specification Sections 15951 and 16951.

C. Commissioning does not relieve Contractor of responsibility to provide finished and fully functioning Project.

1.3 COMMISSIONING SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish one electronic copy of Design Development Documents, Contract Documents including addenda, change orders, requests for interpretation, and meeting minutes, to Commissioning Authority.

B. Furnish one electrtonic copy of submittals directly to Commissioning Authority for review and approval.
1. Make submittals for each piece of equipment or system indicated to be commissioned.
2. Make submittals to Commissioning Authority concurrent with submittals to Architect/Engineer.
3. Distribute one electronic copy of approved submittals to Commissioning Authority.

C. Furnish one electronic copy of preliminary operation and maintenance data manuals to Commissioning Authority for each piece of equipment or system indicated to be commissioned.
   1. Submit required manuals within 30 days after submittals for each piece of equipment or system are approved.

D. Make additional submittals requested by Commissioning Authority. Incorporate requested submittal information into related operation and maintenance manuals.

E. Furnish one electronic copy of verification check and startup plan to Commissioning Authority for review and approval.

F. Electronically submit written training plan to Commissioning Authority for review and approval prior to conducting training.

G. Commissioning Authority will review and approve submittals for conformance to Contract Documents as related to commissioning process for primary purpose of aiding development of functional testing procedures and secondarily to verify compliance with equipment specifications.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Commissioning Record: Commissioning Authority will submit an electronic copy of commissioning record for inclusion in operation and maintenance manuals.

B. Final Commissioning Report: Commissioning Authority will submit electronic copy of final commissioning report.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work in accordance with ASHRAE Guideline 1.

1.6 COMMISSIONING SERVICES

A. Owner will employ and pay for specified services of an independent firm as Commissioning Authority.

1.7 COMMISSIONING RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Commissioning Authority Responsibilities:
   1. Basic Responsibilities:
      a. Coordinate, direct, and approve commissioning work.
      b. Develop and coordinate execution of commissioning plan. Revise commissioning plan to suit Project conditions.
      c. Schedule commissioning work with Contractor for inclusion in Project schedule.
      d. Plan and conduct commissioning meetings.
      e. Request and review commissioning submittals required to perform commissioning tasks.
      f. Write and distribute verification tests and checklists.
      g. Develop verification check and startup plan in cooperation with Contractor and equipment and system installers.
      h. Write functional performance test procedures in cooperation with Contractor and equipment and system installers.

i. Review test and balance execution plan.
j. Attend selected Project progress and preinstallation meetings. Review meeting minutes. Resolve potential conflicts with commissioning activities.
k. Observe equipment and system installations.
l. Document equipment and systems are installed and perform in accordance with design intent and Contract Documents.
m. Provide System Performance Testing. This will be accomplished through microprocessor-based controllers on each piece of equipment to verify that each sequence of operation is included in system programming for both central and packaged equipment. This will include the following:

1) Startup
2) Shutdown
3) Capacity Modulation
4) Emergency and Failure Modes
5) Alarms
6) Interlocks to other equipment

n. Notify Owner and Architect/Engineer of deficiencies.
o. Coordinate and supervise required seasonal or deferred testing and deficiency corrections.
p. Oversee and approve content and adequacy of Owner's personnel training.
q. Review and approve operation and maintenance manuals.
r. Compile commissioning record and testing data manual.
s. Provide final commissioning report.

2. Commissioning Authority may not:
a. Release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
b. Approve or accept any portion of the Work.
c. Assume duties of Contractor or Architect/Engineer.
d. Stop the Work.

B. Contractor Responsibilities:
1. Include requirements for commissioning submittal data, operation and maintenance data, commissioning tasks and training in each purchase order and subcontract for equipment and systems indicated to be commissioned.
2. Facilitate coordination of commissioning work by Commissioning Authority.
3. Attend commissioning meetings.
4. Cooperate with Commissioning Authority, and provide access to the Work and to manufacturers' facilities.
5. Require equipment and system installers to execute test to review and provide comments on functional test procedures.
6. Require manufacturers to review commissioning test procedures for equipment installed by manufacturer.
7. Furnish proprietary test equipment required by manufacturers to complete equipment and system tests.
8. Provide temporary facilities for Commissioning Authority's exclusive use for documentation and instrument storage and preparation of reports.
9. Furnish qualified personnel to assist in completing commissioning.
10. Furnish manufacturer's qualified field representatives to assist in completing commissioning.

11. Ensure equipment and system installers execute commissioning responsibilities according to Contract Documents and schedule.
12. Coordinate Owner's personnel training.
13. Prepare operation and maintenance manuals. Update original sequences of operation reflecting actual installation.
14. Ensure equipment and system installers execute seasonal and deferred functional performance testing, witnessed by Commissioning Authority.
15. Ensure equipment and system installers correct deficiencies and make necessary adjustments to operation and maintenance manuals and Record Documents for issues identified in seasonal testing.

1.8 COMMISSIONING MEETINGS

A. Commissioning Authority will make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, and preside at meetings.

B. Initial Commissioning Meeting:
1. Commissioning Authority will schedule meeting within 60 days after start of construction.

C. Progress Commissioning Meetings:
1. Commissioning Authority will schedule meetings throughout progress of the Work at maximum monthly intervals.

D. Commissioning Authority will record meeting minutes and distribute copies within five days after meeting to participants and those affected by decisions made.

1.9 COMMISSIONING REPORTS

A. Commissioning Authority Reports: Submit reports regularly to Owner, Architect/Engineer, and Contractor.

B. Commissioning Authority Functional Performance Test Procedures: Develop test procedures including forms to be completed during commissioning. Include completed documentation in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

A. Testing Equipment: Calibrated within last year; of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and measure system performance within the following tolerances unless otherwise specified for individual equipment or systems.

B. Recalibrate test equipment according to manufacturer’s recommended intervals and when dropped or damaged.

C. Furnish one set of manufacturer's proprietary test equipment, tools, and instruments required to complete commissioning.
1. Deliver test equipment to Owner after completion of functional performance test. Obtain signed receipt.

D. Equipment Furnished by Contractor and Remaining Property of Contractor:

1. Standard testing equipment required to perform verification check and startup and required functional performance testing.
2. Two way radios for personnel performing commissioning.

E. Equipment furnished by Commissioning Authority and remaining property of Commissioning Authority:
1. Data logging equipment and software.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify equipment and systems are installed in accordance with individual specification sections.

B. Verify utility and power connections are complete and services operational.

3.2 VERIFICATION CHECK AND STARTUP PROCEDURES

A. Notify Commissioning Authority and schedule verification check and startup activities with each party required to complete verification check and startup minimum 4 weeks in advance.

B. Allow Commissioning Authority to witness verification check and startup.
1. Primary Equipment: Commissioning Authority will witness procedures for each piece of equipment.
2. Secondary Equipment: Commissioning Authority will witness sampling of each type unit as specified in Commissioning Plan.

C. Verification Check and Startup:
1. Perform verification check and startup in accordance with approved verification check and startup plan.
2. Complete each procedure in sequence performed by party assigned to each procedure.
3. Record completion of each procedure. Indicate results of procedure where required. Sign and date plan by individual performing procedure.
4. Submit executed plan to Commissioning Authority within 2 days of completion.

D. Deficiencies and Approvals:
1. Commissioning Authority will review verification check and startup reports and issue deficiency report or approval.
2. Correct deficiencies and resubmit updated verification check and startup report with statement indicating corrections made for Commissioning Authority approval.

3.3 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST PROCEDURES

A. Notify Commissioning Authority of completion of verification check and startup activities.

B. Commissioning Authority will direct, witness, and document results of functional performance tests.

C. Conduct functional performance tests as specified in Division 23 – Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning.

D. Demonstrate each piece of equipment and system is operating according to documented design intent and Contract Documents.

E. Operate each piece of equipment and system through each specified mode of operation including seasonal, occupied, unoccupied, warm up, cool down, partial load and full load conditions.

3.4 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST METHODS

A. Perform testing and verification by using manual testing or by monitoring performance and analyzing results using control system trend log capabilities or by stand-alone data loggers as specified for each piece of equipment or system.

B. Simulated Conditions: Simulating conditions, not by overwritten values, is permitted. Timing tests to use real conditions is encouraged wherever practical.

C. Overwritten Values: Overwriting sensor values to simulate conditions may be used with caution and avoided when possible.

D. Simulated Signals: Using signal generator to create simulated signals to test and calibrate transducers automatic temperature controls is generally recommended over using sensors as signal generators with simulated conditions or overwritten values.

E. Altering Setpoints: Rather than overwriting sensor values, and when simulating conditions is difficult, altering setpoints to test specific sequence is acceptable. Reset setpoint after completing test.

F. Indirect Indicators: Using indirect indicators for responses or performance is permitted only after visually and directly verifying and documenting indirect readings through control system representing actual conditions and responses over tested parameter range.

G. Perform each function and test under conditions simulating actual conditions as close as is practically possible.

H. Sampling: Multiple identical pieces of equipment or equipment with only small size or capacity differences may be functionally tested using sampling strategy when permitted by other sections.

3.5 DEFICIENCIES AND TEST APPROVALS

A. Deficiencies:
1. Commissioning Authority will record and report deficiencies to Owner.
2. Minor deficiencies may be corrected during tests at Commissioning Authority's discretion. Deficiency and resolution will be documented on procedure form.
3. Failure to attend scheduled verification check, startup, or functional performance test will be considered deficiency.
4. When deficiency is identified, Commissioning Authority will discuss issue with party executing test.

a. When party executing test accepts responsibility to correct deficiency:
   1) Commissioning Authority submits deficiency report to Owner, Contractor, and party executing test.
   2) Party executing test corrects deficiency, signs statement of correction on deficiency form certifying equipment is ready retesting and submits form to Commissioning Authority.
   3) Commissioning Authority reschedules test and test is repeated until satisfactory performance is achieved.

b. When party executing test disputes deficiency or responsibility for deficiency:
   1) Commissioning Authority submits deficiency report to Owner, Contractor, and party executing test and party believed to be responsible for deficiency.
   2) Commissioning Authority negotiates resolution with parties involved and refers continuing disputes to Architect/Engineer for resolution in accordance with Contract Documents.
   3) Commissioning Authority documents resolution process.
   4) When resolution is decided, appropriate party corrects deficiency, signs statement of correction on deficiency form certifying equipment is ready for retesting and submits form to Commissioning Authority.
   5) Commissioning Authority reschedules test and test is repeated until satisfactory performance is achieved.

B. Retesting Costs:
   1. When verification check and startup or functional performance test deficiency is discovered requiring rescheduling or retesting:
      a. Owner will compensate Commissioning Authority, and Architect/Engineer for attending and directing additional testing. Owner will deduct additional testing compensation from final payment due to Contractor.

C. Manufacturing Defects: When 10 percent, but not less than 3 identical pieces of equipment or equipment with only small size or capacity differences fail to perform to Contract Document requirements due to manufacturing defect, all identical units may be considered defective by Owner.

D. Test Approval: Commissioning Authority notes each satisfactorily demonstrated function on functional performance test form.
   1. Commissioning Authority recommends acceptance of each test to Owner using standard form.
   2. Owner gives final approval for each test using same form, providing signed copy to Commissioning Authority and Contractor.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate equipment and systems and train Owner's personnel as specified in individual equipment and system specifications.

B. Commissioning Authority will develop criteria for determining training was satisfactorily completed, including attending some training sessions.

C. Initial Mechanical Electrical Equipment Training Session:
   1. Architect/Engineer will make presentation of overall system design concept and design concept of each equipment section.

D. For primary mechanical electrical equipment training:
   1. Require controls contractor to provide short discussion of equipment control as part of training session.

E. At one training session, Commissioning Authority will make presentation discussing use of blank functional test forms for re-commissioning equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02411

SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01110 "Summary" for restrictions on the use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
2. Section 01731 for cutting and patching procedures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.

B. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be permanently removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent, prepare for reuse and reinstall where indicated.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project sites.

1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.

3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.

B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.

C. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:

1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's representative(s) on-site operations are uninterrupted.
2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
4. Use of stairs
5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.

D. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to Owner prior to start of demolition.

E. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Submit before Work begins.

F. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

G. Warranties: Documentation indicated that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

B. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.

B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.

1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:

a. Furniture

b. Office Equipment

c. Telephones/Communications Equipment

C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.

D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.

1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.

E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.

F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties. Notify warrantor before proceeding. Existing warranties include the following:

1. Owner will provide if any items are under warranty.

B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PEFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.

B. Review record documents of existing construction provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in record documents.

C. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.

D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.

E. Engage a professional engineer to perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.

1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.
2. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.

F. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of measured drawings, preconstruction photographs, preconstruction videotapes, and or templates.

1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."
2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
3. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.

1. Comply with requirements for existing services/systems interruptions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."

B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.

1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
2. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.

C. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment to be selectively demolished according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.

1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
4. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.

9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

B. Reuse of Building Elements: Project has been designed to result in end-of-Project rates for reuse of building elements as follows. Do not demolish building elements beyond what is indicated on Drawings without Architect's approval.

1. Building Structure and Shell: 100 percent.
2. Nonshell Elements: 50 percent.
3. Nonshell Elements: 60 percent.

C. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.

B. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.

C. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.

D. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.

E. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings." Do not use methods requiring solvent-based adhesive strippers.

F. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than what can be covered or is required for installation of new construction in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight.

1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.

2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

3.8 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION SCHEDULE

A. Existing Items Construction to Be Removed: As indicated on the Drawings.

B. Existing Items to Be Removed: As indicated on the Drawings.

C. Existing Items to Remain: As indicated on the Drawings.

END OF SECTION 02411

Section 2752S

The following supplement modifies Section 02752 Standard Specification. Where a portion of the Specification is modified or deleted by this Supplementary Specification, the unaltered portions of the Specification shall remain in effect.

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES.

Add Part C as follows.
C. Full depth saw cutting of concrete pavement as required by other agency.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Add item 6.
6. Full depth Saw cutting for concrete pavement will be paid on linear foot base, if required by other agency for joining with existing roadway.

Renumber item 6 as 7

END OF SUPPLEMENT

Approved:

John H Kuo, P.E.
Assistant Director
Engineering and Construction Division

12/29/09
Date

Section 03100

CONCRETE FORMWORK

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and design, install and remove formwork for cast in place concrete complete as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

B. Secure to forms or set for embedment all miscellaneous metal items, sleeves, reglets, anchor bolts, inserts, waterstops, and other items furnished under other Sections and required to be cast into concrete.

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Concrete reinforcement is included in Section 03200.

B. Concrete joints and joint accessories are included in Section 03250.

C. Cast in place concrete is included in Section 03300.

D. Structural lightweight aggregate concrete is included in Section 03313).

E. Concrete finishes are included in Section 03350.

F. Grout is included in Section 03600.

G. Modifications to existing concrete are included in Section 03740).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit, in accordance with Section (01 3000) (01300), shop drawings and product data showing materials of construction and details of installation for:

1. Form release agent

2. Form ties

3. Location and sequence of concrete placement. Indicate locations of form joints, panel sizes and patterns.

B. Sample

1. Demonstrate to the Engineer on a designated area of the concrete substructure exterior surface that the form release agent will not impair the bond of paint, sealant, waterproofing, dampproofing, or other coatings and will not affect the forming materials.

C. Certificates

1. Certify form release agent is made for use in contact with potable water (non toxic and free of taste and odor after 30 days).

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Concrete Institute (ACI)

1. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete

2. ACI 303R - Guide to Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete Practice.

3. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

4. ACI 347 - Guide to Formwork for Concrete

B. APA - The Engineered Wood Association (APA)

1. Material grades and designations as specified

C. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The form liner manufacturer's representative shall be on site during the initial installation of the form liner to instruct the Contractor on the proper methods of application and use of the liner. The representative shall be available to answer any questions on the liner that the Engineer may have.

1.06 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General: Architectural Concrete is wall, slab, beam or column concrete which will have surfaces exposed to view in the finished work. It includes similar exposed surfaces in water containment structures from the top of walls to 2-ft. below the normal water surface in open tanks and basins.

B. Structural design responsibility: All forms and shoring shall be designed at the Contractor's expense by a professional engineer registered in the State of Texas. Formwork shall be designed and erected in accordance with the requirements of ACI 301 and ACI 318 and as recommended in ACI 347 and shall comply with all applicable regulations and codes. The design shall consider any special requirements due to the use of plasticized and/or retarded set concrete.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. The usage of a manufacturer's name and model or catalog number is for the purpose of establishing the standard of quality and general configurations desired.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Forms for cast-in-place concrete shall be made of wood, metal, or other approved material. Construct wood forms of sound lumber or plywood of suitable dimensions and free from knotholes and loose knots. Where used for exposed surfaces, dress and match boards. Sand plywood smooth and fit adjacent panels with tight joints. Metal forms may be used when approved by the Engineer and shall be of an appropriate type for the class of work involved. All forms shall be designed and constructed to provide a flat, uniform concrete surface requiring minimal finishing or repairs.

B. Wall Forms

1. Forms for all exposed exterior and interior concrete walls shall be "Plyform" exterior grade plywood panels manufactured in compliance with the APA and bearing the trademark of that group, or equal acceptable to the Engineer. Provide B grade or better veneer on all faces to be placed against concrete during forming. The class of material and grades of interior plies shall be of sufficient strength and stiffness to provide a flat, uniform concrete surface requiring minimal finishing and grinding.

2. All joints or gaps in forms shall be taped, gasketed, plugged, and/or caulked with an approved material so that the joint will remain watertight and will withstand placing pressures without bulging outward or creating surface patterns.

3. Forms for circular structures shall conform to the circular shape of the structure. Straight panels may be substituted for circular panels if the straight panels do not exceed 2-ft in width nor deflect more than 3-1/2 degrees per joint, nor conflict with specific notes on the Drawings.

C. Column Forms

1. Rectangular columns shall be formed as specified for wall forms. All corners shall have a 3/4-in chamfer unless otherwise noted on the Drawings.

2. Circular columns shall be formed with steel, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or seamless cardboard column forms. The forms shall be continuous for the height of the column between construction joints indicated on the Drawings unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

D. Rustications shall be at the location and shall conform to the details shown on the Drawings. Moldings for chamfers and rustications shall be milled and planed smooth. Rustications and corner strips shall be of a nonabsorbent material, compatible with the form surface and fully sealed on all sides to prohibit the loss of paste or water between the two surfaces.

E. Form Release Agent

1. Coat all forming surfaces in contact with concrete using an effective, non-staining, non residual, water based, bond breaking form coating unless otherwise noted. Form release agents used in potable water containment structures shall be suitable for use in contact with potable water and shall be non toxic and free of taste or odor.

2. Concrete surfaces which are to be painted shall be formed with hard plastic finished plywood or a similar material which does not require a form release agent unless the Contractor can substantiate to the satisfaction of the Engineer that the form release agent will not remain on the formed surface after it is stripped.

F. Form Ties

1. Form ties encased in concrete other than those specified in the following paragraphs shall be designed so that, after removal of the projecting part, no metal shall remain within 1-1/2-in of the face of the concrete. The part of the tie to be removed shall be provided with a removable cone at least 1-in diameter and 1-1/2-in deep. Form ties in concrete exposed to view shall be the cone washer type.

2. Flat bar ties for panel forms shall have plastic or rubber inserts having a minimum depth of 1-1/2-in and sufficient dimensions to permit proper patching of the tie hole.

3. Provide ties for liquid retaining structures and exterior below grade basement walls that have a steel waterstop tightly attached to each strut or that have a neoprene rubber washer on each strut.

4. Common wire shall not be used for form ties.

5. In the construction of basement or water bearing walls, the portion of a single rod tie that is to remain in the concrete shall be provided with a tightly fitted washer at midpoint to control seepage. Multi-rod ties do not require washers. The use of form ties which are tapered on encased in paper or other material to allow the removal of complete tie, and which leave a hole through the concrete structure, shall not be permitted.

6. Alternate form ties consisting of tapered through bolts at least 1-in in diameter at smallest end or through bolts that utilize a removable tapered sleeve of the same minimum size may be used except for basement and water bearing walls at the Contractor's option. Obtain Engineer's acceptance of system and spacing of ties prior to ordering or purchase of forming. Clean, fill and seal form tie hole with non shrink cement grout. The Contractor shall be responsible for watertightness of the form ties and any repairs needed.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. Provide forms for all cast in place concrete including sides of footings. Construct and place forms to provide concrete of the shape, lines, dimensions and appearance indicated.

B. Provide removable panels at the bottom of forms for walls and columns to allow cleaning, inspection and joint surface preparation. Provide closable intermediate inspection ports in forms for walls. Provide tremies and hoppers for placing concrete and to allow concrete sampling, prevent segregation and prevent the accumulation of hardened concrete on the forms and reinforcement above the fresh concrete.

C. Place molding, bevels, or other types of chamfer strips to produce blockouts, rustications, or chamfers as indicated on the Drawings or as specified herein. Provide chamfer strips at horizontal and vertical projecting corners to produce a 3/4 in chamfer. Provide rectangular moldings at locations requiring sealants where shown on the Drawings or specified herein.

D. Provide rigid forms to withstand construction loads and vibration and meeting specified deflection limits and tolerances. Construct forms so that the concrete will not be damaged by form removal.

E. Accessories which remain embedded in the concrete after formwork removal will be subject to the approval of the Engineer. Permanent embedments shall have sufficient concrete cover or be of suitable materials for the exposure condition as approved by the Engineer. Remove unsatisfactory embedded items at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.02 FORM TOLERANCES

A. Design, construct and surface forms in accordance with ACI 347 and meet the following additional requirements for the specified finishes.

B. Forms for Exposed Concrete: Edges of all form panels in contact with concrete flush within 1/8-in and forms for plane surfaces plane within 1/8-in in 4-ft. Maximum deviation of the finished surface at any point not to exceed 1/4-in from the intended surface indicated. Arrange form panels symmetrically and orderly to minimize the number of seams. Provide tight forms to prevent the passage of mortar, water, and grout.

C. Formed Surface Not Exposed to View or Buried: Class "C" Surface per ACI 347.

D. Formed Surface Including Mass Concrete, Pipe Encasement, [Electrical Raceway Encasement] and Other Similar Installations: No minimum requirements for surface irregularities and surface alignment. The overall dimensions of the concrete shall be plus or minus 1-in from the intended surface indicated.

3.03 FORM PREPARATION

A. Clean, repair, remove projecting nails and fill holes, and smooth protrusions on all form surfaces to be in contact with concrete before reuse. Do not reuse forms for exposed concrete unless a "like new" condition of the form is maintained that will produce surfaces equivalent in smoothness and appearance to those produced by new plywood panels.

B. Coat wood forms in contact with concrete using form release agent prior to form installation.

C. Clean steel forms by sandblasting or other method to remove mill scale and other ferrous deposits from the contact surface of all forms. Coat steel forms in contact with concrete using form release agent prior to form installation.

3.04 REMOVAL OF FORMS

A. Be responsible for all damage resulting from removal of forms and make repairs at no additional cost to the Owner. Leave in place forms and shoring for horizontal structural members in accordance with ACI 301 and ACI 347. Conform to the requirements for form removal specified in Section 03300.

3.05 INSPECTION

A. Notify the Engineer when the forms are complete and ready for inspection, at least six working hours prior to the proposed concrete placement. The Engineer will inspect the forms to ensure overall conformance with the contract documents.

B. Failure of the forms to comply with the requirements specified, or to produce concrete complying with requirements specified shall be grounds for rejection of that portion of the concrete work. Repair or replace rejected work as directed by the Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner. Such repair or replacement shall be subject to the requirements of these Specifications and approval of the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03200

CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
315, Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement
318, Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
A 615, Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

C. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI):
Placing Reinforcing Bars

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Show reinforcing bar configuration, bar numbers, spacing, and location, and splicing details.

B. Test Reports: Submit copies of mill test reports.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Tolerances:

1. Fabricating tolerances:

a. Sheared length: Plus or minus 1-in.
b. Depth of truss bars: Plus 0, minus 1/2-in.
c. Overall dimensions of stirrups and ties: Plus or minus 1/2-in.
d. Other bends: Plus or minus 1-in.

2. Placing tolerances:

a. Clear distance to formed surfaces: Plus or minus 1/4-in.
b. Minimum spacing between bars: Plus or minus 1/4-in.
c. Top bars in slabs and beams:

(1) Members 8-in. deep or less: Plus or minus 1/4-in.
(2) Members more than 8-in. but not over 2 ft. deep: Plus or minus 1-in.

d. Crosswise of members: Spaced evenly within 2-in.
e. Lengthwise of member: Plus or minus 2-in.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Reinforcing Bars:

1. ASTM A 615, Grade 60.
2. Bend test requirements: For bars size No. 3 through No. 6, base on 180 deg. bends of full size bars around pins with diameters as follows:

   a. Bar Nos. 3, 4, and 5: 3-1/2 bar diameters.
   b. Bar No. 6: 5 bar diameters.

2.2 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate details of concrete reinforcement and accessories complying with ACI 315.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANDLING AND PLACING

A. Place reinforcing bars in accordance with CRSI "Placing Reinforcing Bars" and ACI 318, with provisions of ACI 318 governing.

B. Move bars as necessary to avoid interference with other reinforcing steel, conduits, or embedded items.

C. If bars are moved more than one bar diameter or enough to exceed tolerances, submit resulting arrangement of bars to Engineer for review.

D. After fabrication, reinforcing bars shall be delivered to the Work properly identified in accordance with the approved shop drawings.

E. Place reinforcement, at time of concrete placing, free of mud, oil, or other materials that adversely affect or reduce bond.

F. Reinforcement with rust, mill scale, or both shall be considered satisfactory, provided minimum dimensions, including height of deformation, and weight of hand-wire-brushed test specimen are not less than ASTM A 615 requirements.

G. Support reinforcement and fasten together to prevent displacement by construction loads of placing concrete.

H. Use metal or plastic bar chairs and spacers to support reinforcement.

I. Where concrete surface will be exposed to weather in finished structure, use noncorrosive or corrosion protected accessories within 1/2-in. of concrete surface.

J. Bars having splices not shown on shop drawings will be rejected.

K. Do not bend reinforcement after being embedded in hardened concrete.

END OF SECTION 03200

Section 03250

CONCRETE JOINTS AND JOINT ACCESSORIES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and install accessories for concrete joints complete as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Concrete formwork is included in Section 03100.

B. Concrete reinforcement is included in Section 03200.

C. Cast in place concrete is included in Section 03300.

D. Concrete finishes are included in Section 03350.

E. Grout is included in Section 03600.

F. Modifications to existing concrete are included in Section 03740.

G. Miscellaneous metals are included in Section 05500.

H. Sealant and caulking are included in Section 07900.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit, in accordance with Section 01300, shop drawings and product data for:

1. Standard Waterstops: Product data including sample, catalogue cut, technical data, storage requirements, splicing methods and conformity to ASTM standards.

2. Special Waterstops: Product data including location of use, sample, catalogue cut, technical data, storage requirements, splicing methods, installation instructions, and conformity to ASTMstandards.

3. Premolded joint fillers: Product data including location of use, sample, catalogue cut, technical data, storage requirements, installation instructions, and conformity to ASTM standards.

4. Compressible joint filler: Product data including location of use, catalogue cut, technical data, storage requirements, installation instructions, and conformity to ASTM standards.

5. Bond breaker: Product data including location of use, catalogue cut, technical data, storage requirements, and application instructions.

6. Expansion joint dowels: Product data on the complete assembly including dowels, coatings, expansion dowel caps, installation instructions and conformity to ASTM standards.

7. Bonding agents: Product data including catalogue cut, technical data, storage requirements, product life, application requirements and conformity to ASTM standards.

B. Certifications

1. Certify that all materials used within the joint system are compatible with each other.

2. Certify that all materials used in the construction of jointsare suitable for use in contact with potable water 30 days after installation (non-toxic and free of taste and odor).

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM A675 - Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical Properties.

2. ASTM C881 - Standard Specification for Epoxy Resin Base Bonding Systems for Concrete.

3. ASTM C1059 - Standard Specification for Latex Agents for Bonding Fresh to Hardened Concrete.

4. ASTM D1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction. (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).

5. ASTM D1752 - Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction.

B. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (CRD)

1. CRD C572 - Specification for Polyvinylchloride Waterstops.

C. Federal Specifications (FS)

1. FS SS-S-210A - Sealing Compound for Expansion Joints.

D. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. The use of manufacturer's name and model or catalog number is for the purpose of establishing the standard of quality and general configuration desired.

B. All materials used together in a given joint shall be compatible with one another. Coordinate selection of suppliers and products to provide compatibility. Do not use asphaltic bond breakers or asphaltic joint fillers in joints receiving sealant.

C. All chemical sealant type waterstops shall be products specifically manufactured for the purpose for which they will be used and the products shall have been successfully used in similar applications for more than five years.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Standard Waterstops

1. PVC Waterstops - The PVC waterstops shall be made by extruding elastomeric plastic compound with virgin polyvinylchloride as the basic resins. The compound shall contain no reprocessed materials. Minimum tensile strength of waterstop shall be 1750 psi. The waterstop shall conform to CRD C572. Waterstops for expansion joints shall be 9-in wide and be the ribbed type with a center bulb. Expansion joint waterstops shall be style 696 by Greenstreak Plastic Products, St. Louis, MO; style RLB9-38 by Vinylex Corp., Knoxville, TN, or equal. Waterstops for non-expansion joints shall be 6-in wide and be the flat ribbed type. Non-expansion joint waterstops shall be style 679 by Greenstreak Plastic Products, St. Louis, MO; style R6-38 by Vinylex Corp., Knoxville, TN, or equal. Equal waterstops may have an integral fastening system.

B. Special Waterstops

1. PVC Special Waterstop – The special type waterstop shall be made by extruding elastomeric plastic compound with virgin polyvinylchloride as the basic resins. The compound shall contain no reprocessed materials. Minimum tensile strength of waterstop shall be 1750 psi. The waterstop shall conform to CRD C572. Waterstop shall be Style 792, by Greenstreak Plastic Products, St. Louis, MO or equal.

2. Type A Expansive Waterstops for construction joints where shown on the Drawings: A preformed bentonite/butyl rubber based system. Installation adhesives used with the expansive waterstops shall be as recommended by the waterstop manufacturer. The waterstop shall be Volclay Waterstop-RX101 as manufactured by Colloid Environmental Technologies Company, Arlington Heights, IL; ¾-in by 1-in Swellstop by Greenstreak Plastic Products, St. Louis, MO, or equal.

3. Type B Expansive Waterstops for construction joints where shown on the Drawings: Preformed hydrophilic rubber seals. Installation adhesives used with the expansive waterstops shall be as recommended by the waterstop manufacturer. The waterstop shall be Adeka Ultraseal MC-2010MN as distributed by Mitsubishi of Houston, TX; Hydrotite CJ-1020-2K by Greenstreak Plastic Products, St. Louis, MO, or equal.

4. Preformed Adhesive Waterstops for construction joints where shown on the Drawings: A rope type preformed plastic waterstop meeting the requirements of Federal Specification SS-S-210A. The rope shall have a cross-sectional area of approximately one square inch unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings. The waterstop shall be Synko-Flex Waterstop SF-302 as manufactured by Henry Company, El Segundo, CA or equal. Primer for the material shall be as recommended by the waterstop manufacturer.

C. Premolded Joint Filler

1. Premolded Joint Filler – Structures: Self expanding cork premolded joint filler conforming to ASTM D1752, Type III. Provide 1 in thickness unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

D. Bond Breaker

1. Bond breaker tape shall be an adhesive backed glazed butyl or polyethylene tape which will satisfactorily adhere to the premolded joint filler or concrete surface as required. The tape shall be the same width as the joint unless otherwise noted.

2. Except where tape is specifically called for on the drawings, bond breaker for concrete shall be either bond breaker tape or a non-staining type bond prevention coating such as Williams Tilt up Compound by Williams Distributors Inc.; Silcoseal 2000F, by SCA Construction Supply Division, Superior Concrete Accessories or equal.

E. Compressible Joint Filler

1. A non extrudable watertight strip material used to fill expansion joints between structures. The material shall be capable of being compressed at least 40 percent for 70 hours at 68 degrees F and subsequently recovering at least 20 percent of its original thickness in the first 1/2 hour after unloading. Compressible joint filler shall be Evazote 380 E.S.P, by E Poxy Industries, Inc., Ravena, NY or equal.

F. Expansion Joint Dowels

1. Smooth undeformed steel bars conforming toASTM A615, Grade 60. Provide dowels straight and clean, free of loose flaky rust and loose scale. Dowels may be sheared to length provided deformation from true shape caused by shearing does not exceed 0.04-in on the diameter of the dowel and extends no more than 0.04-in from the end. Coat bars with a bond breaker on the expansion end of the dowel. Provide expansion dowel caps on the expansion end.

2. Expansion Dowel Caps: No. 87 Dowel Caps by Heckmann Building Products, Inc.; Style K-11 Dowel Caps by the Dayton Superior Corporation; Style 3070 Expansion Tube by Meadow Steel Products, Inc., or equal.

G. Bonding Agent

1. Epoxy bonding agent shall be a two component, solvent free, moisture insensitive, epoxy resin material conforming to ASTM C881 (2002), Type V. The bonding agent shall be Sikadur 32 Hi Mod by Sika Corporation of Lyndhurst, N.J.; Concresive Liquid (LPL) by Master Builders of Cleveland, OH or equal.

2. Latex bonding agent shall be a non reemulsifiable acrylic polymer latex conforming to ASTM C1059, Type II.

H. Joint Sealant

1. Joint sealants shall be two-part urethane sealant as specified in Section 07920. Minimum sealant thickness at concrete joints shall be 3/8-in.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. PVC Waterstops

1. Install PVC waterstops for all joints where waterstops are indicated on the Drawings, unless specifically noted otherwise. Waterstops shall be continuous around all corners and intersections so that a continuous seal is provided. Splices shall be made by welding.

2. PVC splices shall be made by welding in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, subject to acceptance of the Engineer. Only manufacturer's special approved tools shall be used for welding. The finished splices shall provide a cross section that is dense and free of porosity.

3. To properly secure PVC waterstops in wall joints before concrete is placed, drill holes in waterstops is not allowed. Tie both edges of the waterstop and fasten to reinforcing steel with hog rings so that the waterstop will be perpendicular to the joint and remain in the required

position during concrete placement. The spacing of the waterstop ties shall match the spacing of the adjacent reinforcing, but need not be spaced closer than 12-in on center.

4. Horizontal PVC waterstops in slabs shall have the edge of the waterstop lifted while placing concrete below the waterstop. Then the waterstop shall be manually forced against and into the placed concrete and covered with fresh concrete, to ensure adequate encasement of the waterstop in concrete.

5. Waterstops shall be installed so that half of the width will be embedded on each side of the joint. Care shall be exercised to ensure that the waterstop is completely embedded in void free concrete.

6. Waterstops shall be terminated 3-in below the exposed top of walls. Expansion joint waterstop center bulbs shall be plugged with foam rubber, 1-in deep, at point of termination.

B. Special Waterstops

1. Install special waterstops at joints only where specifically shown on the Drawings. Provide waterstops continuous around all corners and intersections so that a continuous seal is provided.

2. Each piece of the waterstop shall be of maximum practicable length to provide a minimum number of connections or splices. Connections and splices shall conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and as specified herein.

3. Terminate waterstops 3-in below the exposed top of walls.

4. Clean and prepare joint surfaces, install primers or adhesives, and install expansivewaterstops on dry surfaces in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions including concrete cure, temperature conditions, and splices. Protect installed waterstops from moisture and keep dry until subsequent placement of concrete.

C. Construction Joints

1. Make construction joints only at locations shown on the Drawings or as approved by the Engineer. Any additional or relocation of construction joints proposed by the Contractor must be submitted to the Engineer for written approval. Do not eliminate construction joints.

2. Locate additional or relocated joints where they least impair strength of the member. In general, locate joints within the middle third of spans of slabs, beams and girders. However, if a beam intersects a girder at the joint, offset the joint a distance equal to twice the width of the member being connected. Locate joints in walls and columns at the underside of floors, slabs, beams or girders and at tops of footings or floor slabs. Do not locate joints between beams, girders, column capitals, or drop panels and the slabs above them. Do not locate joints between brackets or haunches and walls or columns supporting them.

3. Unless indicated otherwise, provide joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcing steel through the joint as indicated on the Drawings. When joints in beams are allowed, provide a shear key and inclined dowels as approved by the Engineer.

4. At all construction joints and at concrete joints indicated on the Drawings to be "roughened", uniformly roughen the surface of the concrete to a full amplitude (distance between high and low points and side to side) of 1/4 in with chipping tools to expose a fresh face. Thoroughly clean joint surfaces of loose or weakened materials by waterblasting or sandblasting and prepare for bonding. At least two hours before and again shortly before the new concrete is deposited, saturate the joints with water. After glistening water disappears, coat joints with

neat cement slurry mixed to the consistency of very heavy paste. The surfaces shall receive a coating at least 1/8 in thick, scrubbed in by means of stiff bristle brushes. Deposit new concrete before the neat cement dries.

5. In lieu of the above method for bonding plastic concrete to hardened concrete, the following optional method may be used. Concrete must be allowed to set a minimum of 28 days. Use an epoxy bonding agent applied to roughened and cleaned surfaces of set concrete in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as specified in Section 03740 with respect to preparation of surfaces and applications of bonding agent.

6. Provide waterstops in wall and slab construction joints in liquid retaining structures and at other locations shown on the Drawings.

7. Do not use keyways in construction joints unless specifically shown on the Drawings or approved by the Engineer.

D. Expansion Joints

1. Make expansion joints at locations indicated on the Drawings. Do not eliminate or relocate expansion joints.

2. Do not extend through expansion joints, reinforcement or other embedded metal items that are continuously bonded to concrete on each side of joint.

3. Position premolded joint filler material parallel to finished surfaces. Secure the joint filler against displacement during concrete placement and consolidation. Place joint filler over the face of the joint, allowing for sealant grooves as indicated. Tape all joint filler splices to prevent intrusion of mortar. Seal expansion joints as indicated on the Drawings.

4. Provide expansion joints 1 in in thickness unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

5. Where indicated on the Drawings install smooth dowels at right angles to expansion joints. Align dowels with finished surface. Rigidly hold in place and support during concrete placement. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings apply a bond breaker to one end of all dowels through expansion joints. Provide expansion dowel caps on the lubricated ends of expansion dowels.

6. Provide center bulb type waterstops, sealant grooves, and sealants in wall and slab expansion joints in liquid retaining structures and at other locations shown on the Drawings.

E. Control Joints

1. Make control joints at locations shown on the Drawings. Do not eliminate or relocate control joints.

2. Provide waterstops, sealant grooves, and sealants in wall and slab control joints in liquid retaining structures and at other locations shown on the Drawings.

3. Extend every other bar of reinforcing steel through control joints or as indicated on the Drawings. Coat the concrete surface with a bond breaker prior to placing new concrete against it as shown on the Drawings. Do not coat reinforcement or waterstops with bond breaker.

F. Compressible Joint Filler

1. Install compressible joint filler in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations; including surface preparation, adhesive installation, heat welding and set time.

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03300

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
212.1R, Admixtures for Concrete
212.2R, Use of Admixtures in Concrete
302.1R, Concrete Floor and Slab Construction
204R, Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete
305R, Hot Weather Concreting
306R, Cold Weather Concreting
308, Standard Practice for Curing Concrete
309R, Consolidation of Concrete

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
A 307, Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs 60,000 psi Tensile Strength
A 36, Structural Steel
C 138, Unit Weight, Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete
C 143, Slump of Portland Cement Concrete
C 150, Portland Cement
C 172, Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
C 173, Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
C 192, Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory
C 231, Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
C 260, Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
C 293, Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Center-Point Loading)
C 309, Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
C 31, Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
C 33, Concrete Aggregates
C 387, Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Mortar and Concrete
C 39, Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
C 494, Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
C 78, Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Third-Point Loading)
C 920, Joint Sealant
C 94, Ready-Mixed Concrete
D 1751, Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
D 1752, Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction
D 994, Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous Type)

C. Concrete Plant Manufacturers Bureau (CPMB):
Concrete Plant Mixer Standards of Plant Mixer Manufacturers Division

D. Corps of Engineers (COE):
CRD-C300, Handbook for Concrete and Cement
CRD-C621, Handbook for Concrete and Cement

E. Federal Specifications (FS):
FF-S-325, Shield, Expansion; Nail Expansion; and Nail, Drive Screw (Devices, Anchoring, Masonry)

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit literature of proposed materials certifying compliance with specification requirements and curing procedures.

B. Mill Reports: Furnish mill certificate with each shipment of cement showing chemistry and physical tests for autoclave soundness, heat of hydration, normal consistency false set, and time of set.

C. Design Mix:

1. Submit proposed design mix from job materials prepared by approved testing laboratory when concrete proportioning Method No. 1 is used (See Paragraph 2.3, C.,1).
2. Submit test records when concrete proportioning Method No. 2 is used (See Paragraph 2.3, C., 2).
3. Include following information in concrete mix design submittal:

a. Concrete supplier.
b. Design mix designation and location of concrete in work.
c. Method of proportioning.
d. Type and brand of cement.
e. Source of aggregate.
f. Sieve analysis of aggregate.
g. Type and brand of admixtures.
h. Strength curve relationship to water-cement ratios established by at least three points of curve with each point established by average of three cylinder breaks using job materials.
i. Coarse Aggregate Factor (C.A.F.)
j. Batch weights of ingredients.
k. Water-Cement ratio and cement content.
l. Air content.
m. Slump.
n. Seven day and 28 day strengths.

D. Samples: Secure in accordance with ASTM C 172.

E. Shop Drawings:

1. Indicate location of control, construction, and expansion joints.
2. Indicate location and size of anchor bolts, anchor plates and other similar concrete-embedded items on anchor bolt setting plan.
3. Indicate placement sequence of concrete.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Owner's Quality Control Laboratory:

1. Sample and test concrete ingredients.
2. Mixes shall meet or exceed mix design strength requirements and use and finish requirements.
3. Review proposed mix design or design mix to meet or exceed mix design strength and consistency requirements as specified in "Concrete Mix Requirements" and "Concrete Proportioning".
4. Test production samples of materials at plants and stockpiles and at job site during course of work for compliance with specifications.
5. Conduct tests of concrete during construction in compliance with following procedures:

   a. Strength test:

      (1) Make specimens in field.
      (2) Each test shall consist of four cylinders; two tested at seven days and two tested at 28 days.
      (3) For each class of concrete, one test for each pour of 100 cubic yards shall be made; however, not less than one test for each day of concreting shall be made.
      (4) When this schedule of testing proves less than five tests for given class of concrete, at least five randomly selected batches shall be tested; if fewer than five batches are used, each batch shall be tested.
      (5) Additional tests may be required to justify removal of formwork.
      (6) Specimens shall be secured in compliance with ASTM C 172, made and cured in compliance with ASTM C 31, and tested in compliance with ASTM C 39.

   b. Slump test: Make one test for each strength test in compliance with ASTM C 143.
   c. Air Content test: Make one test for each strength test in compliance with ASTM C 173 or ASTM C 231.
   d. Report test results: Report test results to Owner and Contractor.
   e. Maintain records: Maintain complete record of specimens; records shall include detailed location of each pour represented.
   f. Determine temperature of concrete sample for each strength test.
   g. Inspect concrete batching, mixing, and delivery operations.
   h. Sample concrete at point of placement.
   i. Indicate in report location specimens were taken, method stored and curing procedures.
6. Determine slump in accordance with ASTM C 143 of concrete sample for each strength test and when consistency of concrete appears to vary.
7. Determine air content of normal weight concrete for each strength test in accordance with ASTM C 138, ASTM C 173, or ASTM C 231.
8. Patching Core Holes:

   a. Fill core holes with SikaSet Roadway Patch, Sika Corporation, as per manufacturer's specification or approved equal.

1.4 HANDLING

A. Storage:

1. Store materials in accordance with ACI 304R.
2. Store admixtures to avoid contamination, evaporation, or damage.

B. Protection:

1. During curing period, protect concrete from damaging mechanical disturbances, load stresses, shock, and vibration.
2. Protect finished concrete surfaces from damage by construction equipment or materials.
3. Protect from rain or running water.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. General:

1. Flyash may be used to replace a portion of cement. The ratio of flyash to the total of the flyash and cement in a mix shall not exceed 20%. Flyash shall conform to ASTM C618, Type C or F.
2. Admixtures, other than air-entraining admixtures and water-reducing admixtures in compliance with ASTM C 494, shall not be used in concrete mixtures without prior review of material and proportioning by Owner.

B. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.

C. Concrete Admixtures:

1. Acceptable manufacturers:

a. Master Builder.
b. Gifford-Hill and Company, Inc.
c. Sika Chemical Corp.

2. Air-entraining admixtures: ASTM C 260.
3. Water-reducing, normal set, retarding, and accelerating admixtures:

a. Concrete temperatures 80 deg. F. and below: ASTM C 494, Type A.
b. Concrete temperatures greater than 80 deg. F.: ASTM C 494, Type D.
c. Concrete temperatures 60 deg. F. and below: ASTM C 494, Type E, accelerating.

4. Other admixtures: ASTM C 494.

D. Water: Fresh, clean, and potable.

E. Aggregates for Normal Weight Concrete: ASTM C 33.

F. Anchor Bolts: ASTM A 307.

G. Anchor Plates: ASTM A 36.

H. Nonshrink Grout:

1. Non-metallic, pre-mixed nonshrink grout complying with COE CRD-C621.
2. Bleed-free at 25 sec. flow cone fluidity, COE CRD-C621.

I. Stud Anchors:

1. Acceptable manufacturers:

   a. Nelson Stud Welding Co.
   b. Erico Products, Inc.

2. Type with ceramic ferrules; compatible with arc-welding process.

J. Expansion Bolts:

1. Acceptable manufacturers:

   a. Hilti Fastener Company.
   b. Simpson or equal.

2. Wedge type stainless steel, FS FF-S-325, Group II, Type 4, Class 1.

K. Curing Compound:

1. Comply with COE CRD-C300.
2. Application rate shall not exceed 150 square feet per gallon.
3. Unit moisture loss, g. per sq. cm. at 72 hr. shall not exceed 0.039.
4. Acceptable products:

   a. "Sealco 309", Gifford-Hill.
   b. "Masterseal", Master Builders.
   c. "Dress and Seal", L and M Construction Chemicals, Inc.

L. Joint Sealant:

1. Two – component elastomeric chemical – cure polyurethane
2. ASTM C920, Type M, Grade P

2.2 CONCRETE MIX REQUIREMENTS

A. Strength: Base strength requirements on 28-day compressive strength.
Also see specification 02751 – Concrete Paving

B. Mixture Limits:

1. Air-entrainment of normal-weight concrete shall conform to content limits of Table I, as measured by ASTM C 138, ASTM C 173, and ASTM C 231:

TABLE I
TOTAL AIR CONTENT FOR VARIOUS SIZES OF COARSE
AGGREGATE FOR NORMAL WEIGHT CONCRETE

Nominal Max. Size of Coarse Aggregate	Size No. (ASTM C 33)	Total Air Content Percent by Volume
1”	57	3.5-6.5

2. Grading for coarse aggregate shall not exceed limits for various size number designation in compliance with ASTM C 33 for various maximum nominal sizes.
3. Water used for mixing concrete, including water absorbed by aggregates and admixture, shall not contain more than 150 ppm of chloride ion.

C. Slump:

1. Slump shall be 4 inches to 5 inches in accordance with ASTM C 143.

D. Admixtures:

1. Comply with ACI 212.1R and ACI 212.2R.
2. Do not use calcium chloride.
3. Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.
4. Use only admixtures in work used in establishing design mix.
5. Water-reducing admixtures, or other admixtures accepted by Owner, may be used to produce quality of concrete specified under prevailing placing conditions.

2.3 CONCRETE PROPORTIONING

A. General:

1. Proportion ingredients to produce mixture which will work readily into corners and angles of forms and around reinforcement under conditions of placement to be employed without excessive segregation of materials or excessive collection of free water on surface or excessive bleeding out of free water.
2. Proportion ingredients to produce mixture of required workability, placeability, durability, strength, and other specified properties.

B. Required Strength:

TABLE IA

Type of Construction	Minimum Compressive Strength psi. (28 days)	Total Air Factor* (Percent)	Minimum Cement Ratio* (Bags/cu.yd.)	Maximum W/C (Gals/bg)
Sidewalks and Curbs	See Specification 02775 – Concrete Sidewalks	4.5	5.5	.57
Pavement	See Specification 02751 – Concrete Paving	4.5	5.5	.57
Floor Slabs/ Grade Beams	4000	4.0	6.0	.40
Drilled Piers/ Footings	3000	4.0	6.0	.40
All Other Concrete	4000 or greater (see plans)	4.0-5.0	6.0	.40

* In some instances, maximum water-cement ratios and minimum cement factors may not be compatible due to aggregate characteristics or weather conditions. Under these conditions, water reducing admixture may be introduced into mix. In hot weather, retarding admixture may be added to mix in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

NOTE: Do not add air into concrete for slab-on-grade.

C. Normal Weight Concrete: Establish mixture proportions to provide required properties for each class of concrete using one of the methods described below.

1. Method No. 1:

   a. Using materials proposed for work, establish concrete proportions on basis of laboratory trial mixes.
   b. Make at least three trial batches of at least three cylinders per batch at different water-cement ratios which will produce range of strengths within 1000 psi of that specified for each class of concrete for proposed work.
   c. Make trial batches to produce maximum slump within plus or minus 0.75-in. and maximum allowable air content within plus or minus 0.5 percent.
   d. Make and cure cylinders complying with ASTM C 192.
   e. Test for strength at 28 days in accordance with ASTM C 39.
   f. Use results of tests to plot curve showing relationship between water-cement ratio and compressive strength.
   g. For each class of concrete select design water- cement ratio from this curve for average compressive strength 1200 psi greater than specified compressive strength, except that water-cement ratio shall not exceed 6.6 gallons of water per sack (94 lb.) of cement.

2. Method No. 2:

   a. Field test data for concrete made with similar ingredients in previous project may be used to establish mix design for each class of concrete.
   b. Where production facility has record based on 30 consecutive strength tests that represent similar materials and conditions to those expected for each class of concrete, average compressive strength used as basis for selecting proportions shall exceed specified compressive design strength for each class by at least:

      (1) 400 psi if standard deviation is less than 300 psi.
      (2) 550 psi if standard deviation is 300 to 400 psi.
      (3) 700 psi if standard deviation is 400 to 500 psi.
      (4) 900 psi if standard deviation is 500 to 600 psi.
      (5) 1200 psi if standard deviation is above 600 or unknown.

   c. Strength test data used to determine standard deviation for each class for above requirement shall represent concrete produced to meet specified design compressive strengths within 1000 psi of that specified for proposed work.
   d. For each class of concrete, select water-cement ratio based on Method 2 except that design water- cement ratio shall not exceed 6.6 gallons of water per sack (94 lb.) of cement.

2.4 PRODUCTION OF CONCRETE

A. Ready Mixed Concrete: Batch mix and transport in accordance with ASTM C 94.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION FOR CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Inspect subgrade for conditions detrimental to work and for specified compacted density.

B. Inspect formwork and reinforcing for compliance with specified tolerances.

C. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS FOR CONCRETE

A. Placing Miscellaneous Embedded Items:

1. Place sleeves, inserts, anchors, and other embedded items prior to concreting.
2. Coordinate placing of embedded items required by other trades prior to placing concrete.
3. Position embedded items accurately and support against displacement.
4. Temporarily fill voids in sleeves, inserts, and anchor slots with removable material to prevent entry of concrete into voids.

3.3 PREPARATION FOR PLACING CONCRETE

A. Remove hardened concrete and foreign materials from inner surfaces of conveying equipment.

B. Remove snow, ice, and water from completed formwork.

C. Verify that reinforcement is secured in place.

D. Verify that expansion joint material, anchors, sleeves, and other embedded items are in place.

E. Notify Owner and Engineer minimum of 24 hours before pour. If notifications are not made, Owner may stop placement of concrete.

3.4 PLACING CONCRETE

A. Conveying:

1. Comply with ASTM C 94.
2. Handle concrete as rapidly as practicable by methods which will prevent segregation, loss of ingredient, or damage quality of concrete.
3. Do not use conveying equipment that will restrict continuous placement of concrete.
4. Use horizontal or sloped belt conveyors that will not cause segregation or loss of ingredients.
5. Protect concrete against undue drying or rise in temperature.
6. Do not allow mortar to adhere to return length of belt.
7. Discharge runs longer than 20 ft. into hopper.
8. Use metal or metal lined chutes with slope not exceeding 1 vertical to 2 horizontal and not less than 1 vertical to 3 horizontal.
9. Chute more than 20 ft. long discharging into hoppers may be used.

B. Pumping of Concrete:

1. Design mix to produce pumpable concrete.
2. Pneumatic conveying equipment shall meet requirements of ACI 304R.
3. Slump in pumping or pneumatic conveying equipment: 6-in. maximum.
4. Do not convey through pipe made of aluminum or aluminum alloy.
5. Obtain approval of A/E to use pumped concrete before placing pumped concrete.

C. Depositing:

1. Comply with ACI 304R.
2. Deposit concrete continuously without formation of seams or planes of weakness.
3. If section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints.
4. Do not start placing of concrete in supported elements until concrete previously placed is no longer plastic and has been in place two hours minimum.

D. Segregation:

1. Deposit concrete as nearly as practicable in final position to prevent segregation due to rehandling or flowing.
2. Do not subject concrete to procedures which will cause segregation.

E. Consolidation:

1. Comply with ACI 309R.
2. Consolidate concrete by vibration, spading, rodding, or forking.
3. Thoroughly work around reinforcement, embedded items, and into corners of forms.
4. Eliminate air or stone pockets which may cause honeycombing, pitting, or planes of weakness.
5. Use internal vibrators with minimum frequency of 8000 vibrations per minute and sufficient amplitude to consolidate concrete effectively.
6. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete within forms.
7. Insert and withdraw vibrators at points approximately 18-in. apart.
8. At each insertion, maintain duration from 5 to 15 sec. to consolidate concrete but not long enough to cause segregation.
9. Keep spare vibrators on job site during concrete placing operations.
10. Where concrete is to have as-cast finish, bring full surface of mortar against form by vibration process and supplemented by spading to work coarse aggregate back from formed surface.
11. Use internal vibration in beams, girders, slabs, and along bulkheads of slabs on grade.

3.5 REPAIR OF CONCRETE SURFACE DEFECTS

A. Preparation:

1. Repair tie holes and surface defects immediately after form removal.
2. Remove honeycombed and otherwise defective concrete down to sound concrete.
3. If chipping is necessary, place edges perpendicular to surface or slightly undercut.
4. No feathered edges will be permitted.
5. Dampen patch minimum of 6-in. of surrounding area.

B. Patching Mixture:

1. Mix one part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand by damp loose volume.
2. Match color of surrounding concrete as determined by trial patch.
3. Add water only as necessary for handling and placing.
4. Mix patching mortar in advance and allow to stand with frequent manipulation with trowel, without addition of water, until it has reached stiffest consistency that will permit placing.

C. Patch Application:

1. Apply patching mortar after bonding grout has lost sheen.
2. Thoroughly consolidate mortar into place and strike off to leave patch slightly higher than surrounding surface.
3. Leave undisturbed for one hour minimum before being finally finished.

D. Fill tie holes solid with patching mortar after cleaning and dampening.

3.6 FINISHING CONCRETE SLABS

A. Meet requirements of ACI 302.1R.

B. Finishing Tolerances:

1. True planes within 1/8-in. in 10 ft. as determined by 10 ft. straight edge placed on slab in any direction.

C. Trowel Finish all Concrete Slab Surfaces:

1. Float finish surface of concrete and trowel.
2. Finished surface shall be free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance, and planed to finishing tolerance.
3. On surfaces intended to support floor coverings, remove defects which show through floor covering by grinding.

D. Trowel and Broom Finish:

1. Apply a first trowel finish to surface while concrete is still plastic slightly scarify surface with fine broom.
2. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances of trowel floor surfaces.
3. Apply broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramp, and elsewhere as indicated.

3.7 CURING CONCRETE

A. General:

1. Comply with ACI 308.
2. After placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
3. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration and hardening.

B. Preservation of Moisture for Concrete Surfaces not in Contact with Forms:

1. Contractor's option:

a. Ponding or continuous sprinkling.
b. Absorptive mats or fabric kept continuously wet.
c. Sand kept continuously wet.
d. Continuous application of steam not exceeding 150 deg. F. or mist spray.
e. Curing compound:

(1) Do not use curing compound on floor slab which will receive floor covering or chemical resistant or epoxy coating.
(2) Apply in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
(3) Do not apply to surfaces to which additional concrete or resilient materials are to be bonded unless manufacturer certifies that compound will not prevent bond or positive means are taken to completely remove compound.

2. Use curing compound on concrete surfaces where floor hardener is shown on Drawings.

C. Curing Period: Continue curing for seven days minimum or when average compressive strength of job-cured cylinders has reached 70 percent of specified strength, moisture retention measures may be terminated.

END OF SECTION 03300

Section 03313

LIGHTWEIGHT STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and install lightweight structural concrete for cast-in-place roof and beams as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Reinforcing, where required, shall be welded wire fabric furnished and installed under Section 03200.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Concrete Mix Design

1. Concrete mix for each formulation of concrete proposed for use including constituent quantities per cubic yard, water-cementitious materials ratio, concrete slump, type and manufacturer of cement.

a. Compression test results for proposed mixes. Include standard deviation data for each proposed concrete mix based on statistical records where applicable.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM C94 - Standard Specification for Ready Mixed Concrete.

2. ASTM C330 - Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete.

B. American Concrete Institute (ACI)

1. ACI 213R - Guide for Structural Lightweight Aggregate Concrete.

2. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.

C. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Ready mix concrete shall comply with ASTM C94 except as modified herein.

B. Concrete shall have a compressive strength of at least 4000 psi at 28 days.

C. Maximum size aggregate shall be 3/4-in.

D. Coarse aggregate shall be expanded shale by approved manufacturer fully conforming to ASTM C330. Aggregate supplier shall design and laboratory test the concrete mix. Results of all tests shall be certified by an approved independent testing laboratory and test results shall be sent directly to the Engineer.

E. Concrete shall have dry density of 100 plus/minus 5 lbs/cu ft.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 PLACEMENT

A. Concrete placing, curing and protection shall be as specified in Section 03300.

B. All work shall conform to ACI 318 and ACI 213R.

C. Place to the minimum depth shown.

END OF SECTION

Section 03350

CONCRETE FINISHES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and finish cast in place concrete surfaces as specified herein [and as indicated on the Drawings].

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Concrete and finishing for walkway and pavements is included in Division 2.

B. Concrete formwork is included in Section 03100.

C. Cast-in-Place Concrete is included in Section 03300.

D. Grout is included in Section 03600.

E. Modifications to existing concrete are included in Section 03740).

F. Waterproofing, dampproofing and caulking are included in Division 7.

G. Painting, toppings and special surfaces are included in Division9.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit, in accordance with Section 01300, shop drawings and product data showing materials of construction and details of installation for:

1. Concrete sealer. Include catalog cuts, technical data, storage requirements, product life, working time after mixing, temperature considerations and Material Safety Data Sheet. Also submit confirmation that the sealer is compatible with additionally applied coatings.

2. Chemical hardener. Include catalog cuts, technical data, storage requirements, product life, working time after mixing, temperature considerations and Material Safety Data Sheet. Also submit confirmation that the hardener is compatible with sealer.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM C33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates

B. American Concrete Institute (ACI)

1. ACI 302 - Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.

C. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Finishes

1. The surface finish specified for concrete which will receive additional applied finishes or materials are those which are required for the proper application of the specified manufacturer's products. Where alternate products are approved for use, the Contractor shall determine if changes in finishes are required and provide the proper finishes to receive these products.

2. Changes in finishes made to accommodate products different from those specified shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner. Submit the proposed alternate finishes and their construction methods to the Engineer.

B. Services of Manufacturer's Representative

1. Make available, at no extra cost to the Owner and upon 72 hours notification, the services of a qualified field representative of the manufacturer of the sealer and the hardener to instruct the user on the proper application of the product under prevailing job conditions.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Cementitious and component materials required for finishing concrete surfaces: As specified in Section 03300.

B. Chemical hardener: Lapidolith by BASF Building Systems; Hornolith by Tamms; Surfhard by the Euclid Chemical Co. or equal fluosilicate base material.

C. Concrete sealer: "Kure N Seal", by BASF Building Systems or equal acrylic sealer.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 FORMED SURFACES

A. Form removal: Conform to Sections 03100 and 03300.

B. Do not damage edges or obliterate the lines of chamfers, rustications or corners when removing the forms or doing any other work adjacent thereto.

C. Clean all exposed concrete surfaces and adjoining work stained by leakage of concrete.

D. Off Form Finish

1. Remove fins and other projections and fill tie cones and defects as specified in Section 03300.

E. Rubbed Finish

1. Immediately upon stripping forms and before concrete changes color, carefully remove all fins with a hammer. While the surface is still damp apply a thin coat of medium consistency neat cement slurry using bristle brushes to provide a bonding coat within all pits, air holes or blemishes in the parent concrete. Do not coat large areas of the surface with this slurry.

2. Before the slurry dries or changes color, apply a dry (almost crumbly) grout consisting of one volume cement to 1-1/2 volumes of clean masonry sand having a fineness modulus of approximately 2.25 and complying with the gradation requirements of ASTM C144. Apply grout uniformly using damp (neither dripping wet nor dry) pads of coarse burlap approximately 6 in square used as a float. Scrub grout into the pits and air holes to provide a dense mortar in the imperfections to be patched.

3. Allow the mortar to partially harden for one or two hours depending upon the weather. If the air is hot and dry, keep the surface damp during this period using a fine, fog spray. When the grout has hardened sufficiently so it can be scraped from the surface with the perpendicular edge of a steel trowel without damaging the grout in the small pits or holes, cut off all grout that can be removed with a trowel. Grout allowed to remain on the surface too long will get too hard and will be difficult to remove.

4. Allow the surface to dry and rub it vigorously with clean dry burlap to completely remove any dried grout. No visible film of grout should remain after this rubbing. The entire cleaning operation for any area must be completed the day it is started. Do not leave grout on surfaces overnight. Allow grout to dry after it has been cut off with the trowel so it can be wiped off clean with the burlap.

5. On the day following the repair of pits, air holes and blemishes, the surfaces again shall be wiped off clean with dry, used pieces of burlap containing old hardened mortar which will act as a mild abrasive. After this treatment, there shall be no built up film remaining on the parent surface. If, however, a built-up film remains, use a fine abrasive stone to remove all such material without breaking through the surface film of the original concrete. Scrub lightly to remove excess material without working up a lather or mortar or changing the texture of the concrete.

6. Follow the final bagging or stoning operation with a thorough wash down with stiff bristle brushes to remove extraneous materials from the surface. Spray the surface with a fine fog spray periodically to maintain a continually damp condition for at least 3 days after the application of the repair grout.

7. The Rubbed Finish application may be deleted by the Engineer if the unfinished concrete surface is of superior quality and without surface voids.

F. Abrasive Blast Finish

1. Coordinate with Rubbed Finish application. Do not begin until materials applied during the Rubbed Finish operation have cured or before concrete has reached minimum 7 day strength. Apply the abrasive blast finish only where indicated on Drawings or specified herein.

2. Prepare a sample area of minimum 4-ft high by 16-ft wide Blast Finish as directed by Engineer on a portion of new wall construction which will not be exposed in the final work. Sample area shall contain a variety of finishes obtained with different nozzles, nozzle pressures, grit materials and blasting techniques for selection by Engineer. Final accepted sample shall remain exposed until completion of all Blast Finish operations.

3. Blast finish operation shall meet all regulatory agency requirements. Blast Finish contractor shall be responsible for obtaining all required permits and/or licenses.

4. Perform abrasive blast finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, utilizing the same work crew to maintain continuity of finish on each surface or area of work. Maintain patterns or variances in depths of blast as present on the accepted sample.

5. Use an abrasive grit of proper type and gradation as well as equipment and technique to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces as follows:

   a. Medium: Generally expose coarse aggregate - 1/4-in to 3/8-in reveal.

6. Abrasive blast corners and edge of patterns carefully, using back up boards, to maintain uniform corner or edge line. Determine type of nozzle, nozzle pressure and blasting techniques required to match the approved mock-up required in Paragraph 1.06.

7. Upon completion of the Blast Finish operation, thoroughly flush finished surfaces with clean clear water to remove residual dust and grit.]

3.02 FLOORS AND SLABS

A. Consider the potential for longer setting time in concrete containing fly ash.

B. Compact with internal vibrators as specified in Section 03300 and screed to the established grades. Provide floors and slabs level with a tolerance of 1/8 in when checked with a 10-ft straightedge, except where drains occur, in which case pitch floors to drains as indicated. Failure to meet either of above shall be cause for removal, grinding, or other correction as directed by the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. Following screeding as specified above, float the slabs as approved by the Engineer. Continue floating operation until sufficient mortar is brought to the surface to fill all voids. Test the surfaces with a straightedge to detect high and low spots which shall be eliminated. Do not overwork the concrete as evidenced by excess water and fine material on the surface.

D. Do not use "jitterbugs" or other special tools designed for the purpose of forcing the coarse aggregate away from the surface and allowing a layer of mortar to accumulate on any slab finish. Do not dust surfaces with dry materials. Round off all edges of slabs and tops of walls with a steel edging tool. Use steel edging tool with radius of 1/4-in for all slabs subject to wheeled traffic.

E. Measure floor flatness the day after a concrete floor is finished and before the shoring is removed, in order to eliminate any effects of shrinkage, curling and deflection. A 10-ft long straightedge shall be supported at each end with steel gauge blocks whose thickness are equal to tolerance specified. Floor surface shall not have crowns so high as to prevent 10-ft straightedge from resting on the two end blocks, nor low spots so low that a third block of twice the tolerance in thickness can pass under the supported straightedge. Compliance with the designated limits in four of five consecutive measurements will confirm compliance, unless obvious faults are observed. A check for adequate slope and drainage will also be made to confirm compliance.

F. Descriptions

1. Steel Trowel Finish. Finish by screeding and floating with straightedges to bring the surfaces to the elevations indicated. While the concrete is still green, but sufficiently hardened to bear a person's weight without deep imprint, the surface shall be wood floated to a true, even plane with no coarse aggregate visible. Apply sufficient pressure on the wood floats to bring moisture to the surface. After surface moisture has disappeared, hand steel trowel to produce a smooth, impervious surface, free from trowel marks. Trowel the surface again for the purpose of burnishing. The final troweling shall produce a ringing sound from the trowel. Do not use dry cement or additional water in troweling.

2. Wood Float Finish. Finish by screeding with straightedges to bring the surfaces to the elevations indicated. Use a wood float to compact and seal surface. Remove all laitance and leave a clean surface.

3. Light Broomed Finish. Steel trowel finish the concrete, as specified above but omit the final troweling and finish the surface by drawing a fine hair broom lightly across the surface. Broom in the same direction and parallel to expansion joints, or in the case of inclined slabs, perpendicular to the slope, or except as directed otherwise.

4. Broomed Finish. Steel trowel finish the concrete, as specified above but omit the final troweling. While the concrete is still soft enough, finish the surface with a stiff coarse fiber broom to produce the pattern and depth of scoring as approved by the Engineer.

5. Power Machine Finish. In lieu of hand steel trowel finishing, an approved power machine for finishing concrete floors and slabs may be used in accordance with the directions of the machine manufacturer and as approved by the Engineer. Do not use a power machine until the concrete has attained the necessary set to allow finishing without introducing high and low spots in the slab. Hand steel trowel the areas of slabs not accessible to power equipment. Provide a final steel troweling done by hand over all areas.

G. Concrete Sealer

1. Prepare and seal surfaces indicated on the Drawings to receive a sealer as follows:

   a. Finish concrete as specified in the preceding paragraphs and in accordance with the Schedule of Finishes in Paragraph 3.05 below.

   b. Newly Placed Concrete: Surface must be sound and properly finished. Surface is application ready when it is damp but not wet and can no longer be marred by walking workers.

   c. Newly Cured Bare Concrete: Level any spots gouged out by trades. Remove all dirt, dust, droppage, oil, grease, asphalt and foreign matter. Cleanse with caustics and detergents as required. Rinse thoroughly and allow to dry so that surface is no more than damp, and not wet.

   d. Existing Concrete: Restore surface soundness by patching, grouting, and filling cracks and holes. Surface must also be free of any dust, dirt and other foreign matter. Use power tools and/or strippers to remove any incompatible sealers or coatings. Cleanse as required, following the procedure indicated under cured concrete.

   e. Application: Apply sealer so as to form a continuous, uniform film by spray, soft bristle pushbroom, long nap roller, lambswool applicator, or ordinary garden type sprayers.

   f. For curing only, two coats are required. Apply first coat evenly and uniformly as soon as possible after final finishing at the rate of 200 to 400 sq ft per gallon. Apply second coat when all trades are completed and structure is ready for occupancy at the rate of 400 to 600 sq ft per gallon.

   g. To seal and dustproof, two coats are required. For sealing new concrete, both coats shall be applied full strength. On aged concrete, when renovating, dustproofing and sealing, the first coat should be thinned 10 to 15 percent with reducer per manufacturer's directions.

3.03 CONCRETE RECEIVING CHEMICAL HARDENER

A. After 28 days, minimum, concrete cure, apply chemical hardener in three applications to a minimum total coverage of the undiluted chemical of 100 sq ft per gallon and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations as reviewed.

3.04 APPROVAL OF FINISHES

A. All concrete surfaces, when finished, will be inspected by the Engineer.

B. Refinish or rework unsatisfactory finishes until approved by the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. Hardened unsatisfactory finishes will require removal, grinding, or other appropriate correction approved by the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.05 SCHEDULE OF FINISHES

A. Finish concrete in the various specified manners either to remain as natural concrete or to receive an additional applied finish or material under another Section. Where products different from those specified are approved for use comply with the requirements of Paragraphs 1.06A and1.06B.

B. Finishes to the base concrete for the following conditions shall be as scheduled below and as further specified herein:

1. Exposed exterior concrete excluding slabs and walking surfaces - Rubbed finish. (Rub open tank walls above and to 1-ft below normal water line).

2. Concrete for exterior on stairs and other horizontal areas - Broomed finish, non slip.

3. Exposed interior concrete including underside slabs, beams and stairs and sides of openings, beams and stairs - Rubbed finish.

4. Concrete for interior walking surfaces excluding stairs – wood float finish.

5. Concrete for interior stairs and metal pan stairs - Light broomed finish, non-slip.

6. Walls of open topped tanks - Rubbed finish above and to 1-ft below normal water line. Off-form finish from 1-ft below normal water line to base of wall.

7. Concrete stairs, landings and platforms below normal water level in liquid retaining structures – Broomed finish, non-slip.

8. Tops of curbs and pads Steel trowel finish.

9. Concrete on which liquids flow or are contained - Steel troweled finish.

10. Ribbed Concrete - Off-form finish.

11. Concrete not exposed in the finished work and not scheduled to receive an additional applied finish or material - Off form finish at vertical surfaces, consolidate and screed to grade at horizontal surfaces.

12. Concrete tank bottoms to be covered with grout - Broom finish as approved. See Section 03600 for additional requirements.

13. Concrete to receive dampproofing - Off form finish.

14. Concrete to receive capillary waterproofing - Off form finish at vertical and overhead surfaces, light broomed finish at horizontal surfaces.

15. Concrete to receive cementitious slurry waterproofing - Off-form finish at vertical surfaces, light broomed finished horizontal surfaces.

16. Concrete to receive chemical hardener - Light broomed finish, non slip, except at electrical rooms and areas and generator room provide wood float, non-slip.

17. Concrete to receive paint - Rubbed finish.

18. Concrete to receive floor sealer - See Paragraph 3.02G above.

19. Concrete to have an abrasive blast finish - See Paragraph 3.01F above.

20. Concrete to receive seamless flooring - Once over steel trowel finish.

21. Concrete to receive ceramic and quarry tile - Broomed finish as approved.

22. Concrete to receive vinyl and rubber surfacing and carpet - Steel trowel finish.

23. Concrete to receive rubberized asphalt sheet membrane waterproofing - Wood float finish at horizontal surfaces, rubbed finish at vertical surfaces.

24. Concrete to receive roof insulation - Consolidate, screed and wood float to required grades.

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Section 03600

GROUT

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and install grout complete as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Concrete formwork is included in Section 03100.

B. Concrete reinforcement is included in Section 03200.

C. Concrete joints and joint accessories are included in Section 03250.

D. Cast in place concrete is included in Section 03300.

E. Precast, prestressed concrete is included in Sections03400 and 03410.

F. Modifications to existing concrete are included in Section 03740.

G. Masonry grout is included in Division 4.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit, in accordance with Section 01300, shop drawings and product data showing materials of construction and details of surface preparation, mixing and installation for:

1. Commercially manufactured non-shrink cementitious grout. Include catalog cuts, technical data, storage requirements, product life, working time after mixing, temperature considerations, conformity to the specified ASTM standards, and Material Safety Data Sheet.

2. Commercially manufactured non-shrink epoxy grout. Include catalog cuts, technical data, storage requirements, product life, working time after mixing, temperature considerations, conformity to the specified ASTM standards, and Material Safety Data Sheet.

3. Cement grout. Include the type and brand of cement, the gradation of fine aggregate, product data on any proposed admixtures and the proposed grout mix.

4. Concrete grout. Include data as required for concrete as delineated in Section 03300 and for fiber reinforcement as delineated in Section 03200. This includes the mix design, constituent quantities per cubic yard and the water/cement ratio.

B. Samples

1. Submit samples of commercially manufactured grout products when requested by the Engineer.

2. Submit samples of aggregates proposed for use in grout mixes when requested by the Engineer.

C. Laboratory Test Reports

1. For concrete grout, submit laboratory test data as required for concrete as delineated in Section 03300.

D. Certifications

1. Certify that commercially manufactured grout products and admixtures for cement grout and concrete grout are made for use in contact with potable water 30 days after installation (non-toxic and free of taste and odor).

E. Qualifications

1. Submit documentation that grout manufacturers have a minimum of at least 10 years experience in the production and use of the grouts proposed.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM C33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates

2. ASTM C150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement

3. ASTM C531 - Standard Test Method for Linear Shrinkage and Coefficient of Thermal Expansion of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts and Monolithic Surfacings and Polymer Concretes

4. ASTM C579 - Standard Test Methods for Compressive Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts, Monolithic Surfacings and Polymer Concretes

5. ASTM C827 - Standard Test Method for Change in Height at Early Ages of Cylindrical Specimens of Cementitious Mixtures

6. ASTM C1077 - Standard Practice for Laboratories Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Laboratory Evaluation

7. ASTM C1107 - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic Cement Grout (Non-shrink)

8. ASTM E329 - Standard specification for agencies engaged in the testing and/or inspection of materials used in construction

B. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications

1. Grout manufacturers shall have a minimum of 10 years experience in the production and use of the type of grout proposed.

B. Field Testing

1. All field testing and inspection services will be provided by the Owner. Assist in the sampling of materials, and cooperate by allowing free access to the work and permitting the use of ladders, scaffolding, and such incidental equipment as may be required. Methods of testing will comply with the applicable ASTM Standards.

2. Field testing of concrete grout will be as specified for concrete in Section 03300.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to the jobsite in original, unopened packages, clearly labeled with the manufacturer's name, product identification, batch numbers and printed instructions.

B. Store materials in full compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Limit total storage time from date of manufacture to date of installation to six months or the manufacturer's recommended storage time, whichever is less.

C. Remove immediately from the site material which becomes damp, contains lumps, or is hardened and replace with acceptable material at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. Deliver non-shrink cementitious grout [and self-leveling cementitious underlayment grout] as a pre-portioned blend in prepackaged mixes requiring only the addition of water.

E. Deliver non-shrink epoxy grout as a pre-proportioned, prepackaged, three component system requiring only mixing as directed by the manufacturer.

1.07 DEFINITIONS

A. Non-shrink Grout: A commercially manufactured product that does not shrink in either the plastic or hardened state, is dimensionally stable in the hardened state and bonds to a clean base plate.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. The use of a manufacturer's name and product or catalog number is for the purpose of establishing the standard of quality desired.

B. Like materials shall be the products of one manufacturer or supplier in order to provide standardization of appearance.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Non-shrink Cementitious Grout

1. Non-shrink cementitious grouts: Conform to ASTM C1107. Grouts shall be portland cement based, contain a pre proportioned blend of selected aggregates and shrinkage compensating agents and require only the addition of water. Non-shrink cementitious grouts shall not contain expansive cement or metallic particles. The grouts shall exhibit no shrinkage when tested in conformity with ASTM C827.

   a. General purpose non-shrink cementitious grout: Conform to the standards stated above. SikaGrout 212 by Sika Corp.; Set Grout by BASF Building Systems; NS Grout by The Euclid Chemical Co.; Five Star Grout by Five Star Products, Inc., or equal.

   b. Flowable (Precision) non-shrink cementitious grout: Conform to the standards stated above. Masterflow 928 by BASF Building Systems; Hi Flow Grout by The Euclid Chemical Co.; SikaGrout 212 by Sika Corp.; Five Star Grout by Five Star Products, Inc., or equal.

B. Non-shrink Epoxy Grout

1. Non-shrink epoxy grout: Grout shall be pre proportioned, prepackaged, three component, 100 percent solids system consisting of epoxy resin, hardener and blended aggregate. It shall have a compressive strength of 10,000 psi in 7 days when tested in conformity with ASTM C579 and have a maximum coefficient of thermal expansion of 30 x 10 6 in/in/degrees F when tested in conformity with ASTM C531. Masterflow 648 CP by BASF Building Systems; Five Star HP Epoxy Grout by Five Stars Products, Inc; Sikadur 42 Grout Pak by Sika Corp.; E3-G Epoxy Grout by the Euclid Chemical Co. or equal.

C. Cement Grout

1. A mixture of one part portland cement conforming to ASTM C150, Type I, II, or III and one to two parts sand conforming to ASTM C33 with sufficient water to place the grout. The water content shall be sufficient to impart workability to the grout but not to the degree that it will allow the grout to flow.

D. Concrete Grout

1. Conform to the requirements of Section 03300 except as specified herein. Proportion with Type II cement, coarse and fine aggregates, water, water reducing admixture and air entraining agent to produce a mix having an average strength of 3500 psi at 28 days (2500 psi nominal strength). Coarse aggregate size shall be 3/8-inmaximum. Slump shall not exceed 5-in. Minimum cement content shall be 540 lbs per cubic yard and maximum water to cement ratio shall be 0.45.

2. Add synthetic reinforcing fibers as specified in Section 03200 to the concrete grout mix at the rate of 1.5 lbs of fibers per cubic yard of grout. Add fibers from the manufacturer's pre-measured bags and according to the manufacturer's recommendations to ensure complete dispersion of the fiber bundles as single monofilaments within the concrete grout.

E. Water

1. Potable water free of oil, acid, alkali, salts, chlorides (except those attributable to drinking water), organic matter, or other deleterious substances.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Place grout where indicated or specified over existing concrete and cured concrete which has attained its specified design strength unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

B. Concrete surfaces to receive grout shall be clean and sound; free of ice, frost, dirt, dust, grease, oil, form release agent, laitance and paints and free of all loose material or foreign matter which may affect the bond or performance of the grout.

C. Roughen concrete surfaces by chipping, sandblasting, or other dry mechanical means to bond the grout to the concrete. Remove loose or broken concrete. Irregular voids or projecting coarse aggregate need not be removed if they are sound, free of laitance and firmly embedded into the parent concrete.

1. Air compressors used to clean surfaces in contact with grout shall be the oilless type or equipped with an oil trap in the airline to prevent oil from being blown onto the surface.

D. Remove all loose rust, oil or other deleterious substances which may affect the bond or performance of the grout from metal embedments or bottom of baseplates prior to the installation of the grout.

E. Wash concrete surfaces clean and then keep moist for at least 24 hours prior to the placement of non-shrink cementitious or cement grout. Saturation may be achieved by covering the concrete with saturated burlap bags, use of a soaker hose, flooding the surface or other method acceptable to the Engineer. Upon completion of the 24 hour period, remove visible water from the surface prior to grouting.

F. Non-shrink epoxy grouts do not require saturation of the concrete substrate. Do not wet concrete surfaces to receive non-shrink epoxy grout. Surfaces in contact with epoxy grout shall be completely dry before grouting.

G. Provide forms for grout. Line or coat forms with release agents recommended by the grout manufacturer. Provide forms anchored in place and shored to resist the forces imposed by the grout and its placement.

1. Forms for all grout other than concrete grout shall be designed to allow the formation of a hydraulic head and shall have chamfer strips built into forms.

H. Level and align the structural or equipment bearing plates in accordance with the structural requirements or the recommendations of the equipment manufacturer, as applicable.

I. Support equipment during alignment and installation of grout by shims, wedges, blocks or other approved means. The shims, wedges and blocking devices shall be prevented from bonding to the grout by bond breaking coatings and removed after grouting unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Grout voids created by the removal of shims, wedges and blocks.

3.02 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

A. Mix, apply and cure products in strict compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations and these specifications.

B. Provide staffing and equipment available for rapid and continuous mixing and placing. Keep all necessary tools and materials ready and close at hand.

C. Maintain temperatures of the base plate, supporting concrete, and grout between 40 and 90 degrees F during grouting and for at least 24 hours after placement, until grout compressive strength reaches 1000 psi or as recommended by the grout manufacturer, whichever is longer. Do not allow differential heating or cooling of baseplates and grout during the curing period.

D. Take special precautions for hot weather or cold weather grouting as recommended by the manufacturer when ambient temperatures and/or the temperature of the materials in contact with the grout are outside of the 40 to 90 degrees F range.

E. Install grout to preserve the isolation between the elements on either side of the joint where grout is placed in the vicinity of an expansion or control joint.

F. Reflect all existing underlying expansion, control and construction joints through the grout.

3.03 INSTALLATION - NON-SHRINK CEMENTITIOUS GROUTS AND CEMENT GROUTS

A. Mix in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Do not add cement, sand, pea gravel or admixtures without prior approval by the Engineer.

B. Do not mix by hand. Mix in a mortar mixer with moving blades. Pre-wet the mixer and empty excess water. Add pre-measured amount of water for mixing, followed by the grout. Begin with the minimum amount of water recommended by the manufacturer and then add the minimum additional water required to obtain workability. Do not exceed the manufacturer's maximum recommended water content.

C. Placements greater than 3 in in depth shall include the addition of clean, washed pea gravel to the grout mix when approved by the manufacturer. Comply with the manufacturer's recommendations for the size and amount of aggregate to be added.

D. Provide forms as specified in Paragraph 3.01G. Place grout into the designated areas and prevent segregation and entrapment of air. Do not vibrate grout to release air or to consolidate the material. Fill all spaces and provide full contact between the grout and adjoining surfaces. Provide grout holes and vent holes as necessary.

E. Place grout rapidly and continuously to avoid cold joints. Do not place grout in layers. Do not add additional water to the mix (retemper) after initial stiffening.

F. Just before the grout reaches its final set, cut back the grout to the substrate at a 45 degree angle from the lower edge of bearing plate unless otherwise ordered and approved by the Engineer. Finish this surface with a wood float or brush finish.

G. Begin curing immediately after form removal, cutback, and finishing. Keep grout moist and within its recommended placement temperature range for at least 24 hours after placement, until grout compressive strength reaches 1000 psi or as recommended by the manufacturer, whichever is longer. Saturate the grout surface by use of saturated burlap bags, soaker hoses or ponding. Provide sunshades. If drying winds inhibit the ability of a given curing method to keep grout moist, erect wind breaks until wind is no longer a problem or curing is finished.

3.04 INSTALLATION – NON-SHRINK EPOXY GROUTS

A. Mix in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Mix full batches only, to maintain proper proportions of resin, hardener and aggregate. Do not vary the ratio of components or add solvent to change the consistency of the grout mix. Do not overmix. Do not entrain air bubbles by mixing too quickly.

B. Monitor ambient weather conditions and contact the grout manufacturer for special placement procedures to be used for temperatures below 60 or above 90 degrees F.

C. Place grout rapidly and continuously to avoid cold joints. Place grout in lifts in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

D. Provide forms as specified in Paragraph 3.01G. Place grout into the designated areas and prevent entrapment of air. Fill all spaces and provide full contact between the grout and adjoining surfaces. Provide grout holes and vent holes as necessary.

E. Minimize "shoulder" length (extension of grout horizontally beyond base plate). In no case shall the shoulder length of the grout be greater than the grout thickness.

F. Finish grout by puddling to cover all aggregate and provide a smooth finish. Break bubbles and smooth the top surface of the grout in conformity with the manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Epoxy grouts are self curing and do not require the application of water. Maintain the formed grout within its recommended placement temperature range for at least 24 hours after placement, until grout compressive strength reaches 1000 psi or as recommended by the manufacturer, whichever is longer.

H. Provide grout control joints as indicated on the Drawings.

3.05 INSTALLATION - CONCRETE GROUT

A. Inspect slabs finished under Section 03350 and scheduled to receive concrete grout. Scarify existing slab surfaces to receive concrete grout. Protect and keep the surface clean until placement of concrete grout.

B. Remove debris and clean the surface by sweeping and vacuuming of all dirt and other foreign materials. Pressure wash the surface. Do not flush debris into tank drain lines.

C. Saturate the concrete surface for at least 24 hours prior to placement of the concrete grout by use of saturated burlap bags, soaker hoses or ponding. Remove excess water just prior to placement of the concrete grout. Place a cement slurry immediately ahead of the concrete grout so that the slurry is moist when the grout is placed. Work the slurry over the surface with a broom until it is coated with approximately 1/16 to 1/8-in thick cement paste.

D. Place concrete grout to final grade using the scrapers of the installed mechanical equipment as a guide for surface elevation and to eliminate high and low spots. Unless specifically approved by the equipment manufacturer, mechanical scraper mechanisms powered by their motors shall not be used as a finishing machine or screed to push grout.

E. Provide grout control joints as indicated on the Drawings.

F. Steel trowel finish as specified in Section 03350. Cure the concrete grout as specified for cast-in-place concrete in Section 03300.

3.06 GROUT SCHEDULE

A. The following list indicates where the particular types of grout are to be used:

1. General purpose non-shrink cementitious grout: Use at all locations where non-shrink grout is indicated on the Drawings, except for base plates greater in area than 3-ft wide by 3-ft long.

2. Flowable (precision) non-shrink cementitious grout: Use under all base plates greater in area than 3-ft wide by 3-ft long. Use at all locations indicated on the Drawings to receive flowable non-shrink grout. Flowable (precision), non-shrink, cementitious grout may be substituted for general purpose non-shrink cementitious grout.

3. Non-shrink epoxy grout: Use for the setting of anchor rods, anchor bolts and reinforcing steel in concrete and for all locations specifically indicated to receive epoxy groutand for all locations specifically indicated on the Drawings to receive non-shrink epoxy grout.

4. Cement grout: Cement grout may be used for grouting of incidental base plates for structural and miscellaneous steel such as post base plates for platforms, base plates for beams, etc. It shall not be used when nonshrink grout is specifically called for on the Drawings or for grouting of primary structural steel members such as columns and girders.

5. Concrete grout: Use for overlaying the base concrete to allow more control in placing the surface grade. Use for concrete grout fill within liquid-containment structures and other locations where specifically indicated on the Drawings.

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Section 03740

MODIFICATIONS TO EXISTING CONCRETE

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and cut, repair or otherwise modify parts of existing concrete structures or appurtenances as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

B. Work under this Section shall also include bonding new concrete to existing concrete.

C. In general, work under this Section will be performed as a remedy for improperly placed or poorly placed concrete. Such work shall be performed only after receiving written directions from the Engineer.

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Demolition of existing structures is included in Division 2.

B. .Grout is included in Section 03600.

C. Cast-in-place Concrete, concrete reinforcement, formworks and accessories are included in Division 3.

D. Structural and Miscellaneous steel are included in Division 5.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit, in accordance with Section 01300, a Schedule of Demolition and the detailed methods of demolition to be used at each location.

B. Submit manufacturer's technical literature on all product brands proposed for use, to the Engineer for review. The submittal shall include the manufacturer's installation and/or application instructions.

C. When substitution for acceptable brands of materials specified herein are proposed, submit brochures and technical data of the proposed substitutions to the Engineer for approval before delivery to the project.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM C881 - Standard Specification for Epoxy Resin Base Bonding Systems for Concrete.

2. ASTM C882 - Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Epoxy Resin Systems Used with Concrete by Slant Sheer.

3. ASTM C883 - Standard Test Method for Effective Shrinkage of Epoxy Resin Systems Used with Concrete.

4. ASTM D570 - Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics.

5. ASTM D638 - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics.

6. ASTM D695 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Plastics.

7. ASTM D732 - Standard Test Method for Shear Strength of Plastics by Punch Tool.

8. ASTM D790 - Standard Test Methods for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials.

B. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. No existing structure or concrete shall be shifted, cut, removed, or otherwise altered until authorization is given by the Engineer.

B. When removing materials or portions of existing structures and when making openings in existing structures, all precautions shall be taken and all necessary barriers, shoring and bracing and other protective devices shall be erected to prevent damage to the structures beyond the limits necessary for the new work, protect personnel and to prevent damage to the structures or contents by falling or flying debris. Unless otherwise permitted, shown or specified, line drilling will be required in cutting existing concrete.

C. Mannufacturer Qualification: The manufacturer of the specified products shall have a minimum of 10 years experience in the manufacture of such products and shall have an ongoing program of training, certifying and technically supporting the Contractor’s personnel.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products in original, unopened containers clearly labeled with the manufacturer's name, product identification, batch numbers and printed instructions.

B. Store and condition products as recommended by the manufacturer.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. General

1. Materials shall comply with this Section and any state or local regulations.

2. All materials used within water basins shall be approved for use in contact with potable water after 30 days (non toxic and free of taste or odor).

3. When tested following the procedure prescribed by the Environmental Control Administration of the U.S. Public Health Service, the cured material shall be in conformity with the Federal Regulation requiring water extractables of less than 18 mg/sq in of exposed surface for potable water containers.

B. Epoxy Bonding Agent

1. General

a. The epoxy bonding agent shall be a two component, solvent free, asbestos free moisture insensitive epoxy resin material used to bond plastic concrete to hardened concrete complying with the requirements of ASTM C881, Type II, Grade 2 and the additional requirements specified herein.

2. Material

a. Properties of the cured material:

(1) Compressive Strength (ASTM D695): 8500 psi minimum at 28 days.

(2) Tensile Strength (ASTM D638): 4000 psi minimum at 14 days.

(3) Flexural Strength (ASTM D790 - Modulus of Rupture): 6,300 psi minimum at 14 days.

(4) Shear Strength (ASTM D732): 5000 psi minimum at 14 days.

(5) Water Absorption (ASTM D570 - 2 hour boil): One percent maximum at 14 days.

(6) Bond Strength (ASTM C882) Hardened to Plastic: 1500 psi minimum at 14 days moist cure.

(7) Effective Shrinkage (ASTM C883): Passes Test.

(8) Color: Gray.

3. Approved products and manufacturers include: Sikadur 32, Hi Mod by Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, NJ; Epoxy Adhesive CR631 by Sto Concrete Restoration Division, Amherst, MA; Euco 452MV by Euclid Chemical Co., Cleveland, OH, or equal.

C. Epoxy Paste

1. General

a. Epoxy Paste shall be a two component, solvent free, asbestos free, moisture insensitive epoxy resin material used to bond dissimilar materials to concrete such as setting railing posts, dowels, anchor bolts and all threads into hardened concrete and shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C881, Type I, Grade 3 and the additional requirements specified herein. It may also be used to patch existing surfaces where the glue line is 1/8-in or less.

2. Material

a. Properties of the cured material:

(1) Compressive Properties (ASTM D695): 10,000 psi minimum at 28 days.

(2) Tensile Strength (ASTM D638): 3,000 psi minimum at 14 days. Elongation at Break - 0.3 percent minimum.

(3) Flexural Strength (ASTM D790 - Modulus of Rupture): 3,700 psi minimum at 14 days.

(4) Shear Strength (ASTM D732): 2,800 psi minimum at 14 days.

(5) Water Absorption (ASTM D570): 1.0 percent maximum at 7 days.

(6) Bond Strength (ASTM C882): 2,000 psi at 14 days moist cure.

(7) Color: Concrete gray.

3. Approved manufacturers include:

a. Overhead applications: Sikadur Hi mod LV 31 by Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, NJ; Concresive 1490 by BASF (formerly Master Builders, Inc.), Cleveland, OH or equal.

b. Sikadur Hi mod LV 32 by Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, N.J.; Concresive 1420 by BASF (formerly Master Builders, Inc.), Cleveland, OH or equal.

D. Non Shrink Precision Cement Grout, Non Shrink Cement Grout, Non Shrink Epoxy Grout and Polymer Modified mortar are included in Section 03600.

E. Adhesive Anchor System

1. Provide an adhesive anchor system utilizing an injection adhesive material used for the installation of drilled-in reinforcing steel dowels where indicated on the Drawings

2. Injection Adhesive Material

a. Injection adhesive material shall be a two-component system which includes a hardener and a resin, furnished in pre-measured side-by-side cartridges which keep the two components separate. Side-by-side cartridges shall be designed to accept a static mixing nozzle which thoroughly blends the two components and allows injection directly into the drilled hole. Adhesive shall be made for use in contact with potable water.

3. Adhesive anchor system shall be Hilti HIT RE 500 Epoxy Adhesive Anchor; Simpson Strong-Tie Epoxy SET; Powers Power-Fast, or equal.

F. Acrylic Latex Bonding Agent

1. See Specification 03250, Section 2.02, Paragraph F, Point 2 for description.

G. Crack Repair Epoxy Adhesive

1. General

a. Crack Repair Epoxy Adhesive shall be a two component, solvent free, moisture insensitive epoxy resin material suitable for crack grouting by injection or gravity feed. It shall be formulated for the specific size of opening or crack being injected.

b. All concrete surfaces containing potable water or water to be treated for potable use that are repaired by the epoxy adhesive injection system shall be coated with an acceptable epoxy coating approved by the FDA for use in contact with potable water.

2. Material

a. Properties of the cured material

(1) Compressive Properties (ASTM D695): 10,000 psi minimum at 28 days.

(2) Tensile Strength (ASTM D638): 5,300 psi minimum at 14 days. Elongation at Break - 2 to 5 percent.

(3) Flexural Strength (ASTM D790 - Modulus of Rupture): 12,000 psi minimum at 14 days (gravity); 4,600 psi minimum at 14 days (injection)

(4) Shear Strength (ASTM D732): 3,700 psi minimum at 14 days.

(5) Water Absorption (ASTM D570 - 2 hour boil): 1.5 percent maximum at 7 days.

(6) Bond Strength (ASTM C882): 2,400 psi at 2 days dry; 2,000 psi at 14 days dry plus 12 days moist.

(7) Effective Shrinkage (ASTM 883): Passes Test.

3. Approved manufacturers include:

a. For standard applications: Sikadur Hi Mod by Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, NJ; Concressive Standard LVI by BASF (formerly Master Builders Inc., Cleveland, OH) or equal.

b. For very thin applications; Sikadur Hi Mod LV by Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, NJ; Concressive 1360 by BASF (formerly Master Builders Inc., Cleveland, OH) or equal.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. Cut, repair, reuse, demolish, excavate or otherwise modify parts of the existing structures or appurtenances, as indicated on the Drawings, specified herein, or necessary to permit completion of the Work. Finishes, joints, reinforcements, sealants, etc, are specified in respective Sections. All work shall comply with other requirements of this of Section and as shown on the Drawings.

B. All commercial products specified in this Section shall be stored, mixed and applied in strict compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

C. In all cases where concrete is repaired in the vicinity of an expansion joint or control joint the repairs shall be made to preserve the isolation between components on either side of the joint.

D. When drilling holes for dowels/bolts at new or existing concrete, drilling shall stop if rebar is encountered. As approved by the Engineer, the hole location shall be relocated to avoid rebar. Rebar shall not be cut without prior approval by the Engineer. Where possible, rebar locations shall be identified prior to drilling using "rebar locators" so that drilled hole locations may be adjusted to avoid rebar interference.

3.02 CONCRETE REMOVAL

A. Concrete designated to be removed to specific limits as shown on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer, shall be done by line drilling at limits followed by chipping or jack hammering as appropriate in areas where concrete is to be taken out. Remove concrete in such a manner that surrounding concrete or existing reinforcing to be left in place and existing in place equipment is not damaged. Sawcutting at limits of concrete to be removed shall only be done if indicated on the Drawings, or after obtaining written approval from the Engineer.

B. Where existing reinforcing is exposed due to saw cutting/core drilling and no new material is to be placed on the sawcut surface, a coating or surface treatment of epoxy paste shall be applied to the entire cut surface to a minimum thickness of 1/4-in.

C. In all cases where the joint between new concrete or grout and existing concrete will be exposed in the finished work, except as otherwise shown or specified, the edge of concrete removal shall be a 1 in deep saw cut on each exposed surface of the existing concrete.

D. Concrete specified to be left in place which is damaged shall be repaired by approved means to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

E. The Engineer may from time to time direct the Contractor to make additional repairs to existing concrete. These repairs shall be made as specified or by such other methods as may be appropriate.

3.03 CONNECTION SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Connection surfaces shall be prepared as specified below for concrete areas requiring patching, repairs or modifications as shown on the Drawings, specified herein, or as directed by the Engineer.

B. Remove all deteriorated materials, dirt, oil, grease, and all other bond inhibiting materials from the surface by dry mechanical means, i.e. - sandblasting, grinding, etc, as approved by the Engineer. Be sure the areas are not less than 1/2-in in depth. Irregular voids or surface stones need not be removed if they are sound, free of laitance, and firmly embedded into parent concrete, subject to the Engineer's final inspection.

C. If reinforcing steel is exposed, it must be mechanically cleaned to remove all contaminants, rust, etc, as approved by the Engineer. If half of the diameter of the reinforcing steel is exposed, chip out behind the steel. The distance chipped behind the steel shall be a minimum of 1/2-in. Reinforcing to be saved shall not be damaged during the demolition operation.

D. Reinforcing from existing demolished concrete which is shown to be incorporated in new concrete shall be cleaned by mechanical means to remove all loose material and products of corrosion before proceeding with the repair. It shall be cut, bent or lapped to new reinforcing as shown on the Drawings and provided with 1-in minimum cover all around.

E. The following are specific concrete surface preparation "methods" to be used where called for on the Drawings, specified herein or as directed by the Engineer.

1. Method A: After the existing concrete surface at connection has been roughened and cleaned, thoroughly moisten the existing surface with water. Brush on a 1/16-in layer of cement and water mixed to the consistency of a heavy paste. Immediately after application of cement paste, place new concrete or grout mixture as detailed on the Drawings.

2. Method B: After the existing concrete surface has been roughened and cleaned, apply epoxy bonding agent at connection surface. The field preparation and application of the epoxy bonding agent shall comply strictly with the manufacturer's recommendations. Place new concrete or grout mixture to limits shown on the Drawings within time constraints recommended by the manufacturer to ensure bond.

3. Method C: Drill a hole 1/4-in larger than the diameter of the dowel. The hole shall be blown clear of loose particles and dust just prior to installing epoxy. The drilled hole shall first be filled with epoxy paste, then dowels/bolts shall be buttered with paste then inserted by tapping. Unless otherwise shown on the Drawings, deformed bars shall be drilled and set to a depth of ten bar diameters and smooth bars shall be drilled and set to a depth of fifteen bar

diameters. If not noted on the Drawings, the Engineer will provide details regarding the size and spacing of dowels.

4. Method D: Combination of Method B and C.

5. Method E: Adhesive anchor system shall be set in existing concrete by drilling holes to the required depth to develop the full tensile and shear strengths of the anchor material being used. The anchor bolts system shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendation in holes sized as required. The anchor stud bolt, rebar or other embedment item shall be installed per the adhesive anchor manufacturer’s recommendations. The anchor may be installed in horizontal, vertical and overhead positions.

3.04 GROUTING

A. Grouting shall be as specified in Section 03600.

3.05 CRACK REPAIR

A. Cracks on horizontal surfaces shall be repaired by gravity feeding crack sealant into cracks per manufacturer's recommendations. If cracks are less than 1/16-in in thickness they shall be pressure injected.

B. Cracks on vertical surfaces shall be repaired by pressure injecting crack sealant through valves sealed to surface with crack repair epoxy adhesive per manufacturer's recommendations.

3.06 WATERSTOPS SET INTO EXISTING CONCRETE

A. Where waterstops are required to be set into existing concrete, reglets shall be cut as shown on the Drawings. Thoroughly clean the surface of all debris and apply epoxy bonding agent to the existing surface of the reglet. Embed the waterstop in the reglet with Non Shrink Cement Grout prior to placing the new concrete. Where waterstops are called to be placed laying flat against existing concrete, the concrete surface shall be thoroughly cleaned of all debris and the waterstop bonded to the concrete using an approved epoxy bonding agent.

END OF SECTION 03740

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 04200

UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for each different masonry unit, accessory, and other manufactured product specified.

C. Samples for initial selection of the following:

1. Brick samples in small-scale.
2. CMU samples in small-scale

D. Samples for verification of the following:

1. Full-size units for each color or type different exposed brick required, showing the full range of colors, textures, and dimensions to be expected in the completed construction.

1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: During erection, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.

B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.

C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or freezing conditions. Do not work during freezing or approaching freeze conditions.

D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect unit masonry work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar and grout. Provide artificial

shade and wind breaks and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg F (38 deg C) and above.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.

1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.

B. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:

1. Masonry units.

a. Include data on material properties and material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
c. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.
d. For surface-coated brick, include test report for durability of surface appearance after 50-cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67.

2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
5. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.

C. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.

B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

C. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.

B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.

E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.

1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides of walls and hold cover securely in place.
2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.

B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/ TMS 602.

1. Cold- Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.

D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/ TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Brick: to match existing;
   a. Acme Brick
   b. Cordell Brick, Inc.

2. Concrete Masonry Units: Split face and smooth face, to match existing

   c. Cordell Brick, Inc.
   d. Eagle Lake Masonry Products.

2.2 BRICK

A. Regional Materials: Brick shall be manufactured within 500 miles (800km) of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site.

B. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units.

1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.

C. Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C 216 or hollow brick complying with ASTM C 652, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Acme Brick
   b. Cordell Brick, Inc.

2. Grade: SW
3. Type: FBX
4. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/ 30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
5. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated “not effloresced.”
6. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m) or shall have a history of successful use in Project’s area.
7. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches (92mm) wide by 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-5/8 inches (194mm) long to match existing.

8. Color: To match existing.
9. Texture: to match existing.

2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

A. ASTM C 90 and as follows:

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength indicated below:

   a. 1900 psi.

2. Weight Classification: Normal weight.
3. Aggregates: Do not use aggregates made from pumice, scoria, or tuff.
4. Provide Type I, moisture-controlled units.
5. Color: to match existing
6. Size: Manufactured to the actual dimensions indicated on Drawings within tolerances specified in the applicable referenced ASTM specification.
7. Exposed Faces: Manufacturer's standard color and texture, to match existing.

2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

B. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.

C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

E. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

F. Water: Potable.

2.5 REINFORCING STEEL

A. Steel Reinforcing Bars: Material and grade as follows:

1. Billet steel complying with ASTM A 615 (ASTM A 615M).

B. Deformed Reinforcing Wire: ASTM A 496, with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 zinc coating.

2.6 JOINT REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Provide joint reinforcement formed from the following:

1. Galvanized carbon-steel wire, coating class as follows:

   a. ASTM A 153, Class B-2, for exterior walls.

B. Description: Welded-wire units prefabricated with deformed continuous side rods and plain cross rods into straight lengths of not less than 10 feet (3 m), with prefabricated corner and tee units, and complying with requirements indicated below:

1. Wire Diameter for Side Rods: 0.1875 inch (4.8 mm).
2. Wire Diameter for Cross Rods: 0.1483 inch (3.8 mm).
3. Truss design with continuous diagonal cross rods spaced not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS, GENERAL

A. General: Provide ties and anchors specified in subsequent articles that comply with requirements for metal and size of this Article, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Steel Sheet: As follows:

1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 366 (ASTM A 366M) (commercial quality) cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 or B-3, as applicable, for sheet-metal ties and anchors.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 1; compressible up to 35 percent.

2.9 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

A. Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.

B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for job-mixed mortar; and ASTM C 1142 for ready-mixed mortar; Type S or Type M

2.10 WEEPS

A. Weep holes shall be 3/4-inch diameter nylon tubing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation conditions affecting performance of unit masonry. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cut masonry units with motor-driven saws to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units as required to provide continuous pattern and to fit adjoining construction. Use full-size units without cutting, where possible. Allow units cut with water-cooled saws to dry before placing, unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

B. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick prior to laying if the initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb the water so they are damp but not wet at the time of laying.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint widths and for accurate locating of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid the use of less-than-half-size units at corners, jambs, and where possible at other locations.

B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Lay exposed masonry in stacked bond pattern.

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay solid brick-size masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not furrow bed joints or slush head joints.

B. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 REINFORCEMENT

A. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the minimum vertical reinforcement for all masonry walls shall be one #5 bar at 48” on center and one #5 bar in cell at each corner in two full grouted cells. Bars shall be lapped a minimum of 27” with a #5 dowel embedded in the foundation.

B. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the minimum horizontal reinforcement for lintels shall be two #6 bars continuous in full grouted cells.

C. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the minimum spacing for horizontal joint reinforcement in masonry walls shall be 16” on center.

3.6 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or if units do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar or grout, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point-up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for application of sealants.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears prior to tooling joints.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Protect adjacent non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
3. Wet wall surfaces with water prior to application of cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
4. Clean brick by bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Note No. 20 Revised, using the following masonry cleaner:

    a. Job-mixed detergent solution.
    b. Proprietary acidic cleaner, applied in compliance with directions of acidic cleaner manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 04200

SECTION 05120

STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fabrication and erection of structural steel and miscellaneous steel items, as shown on the drawings.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design."

B. AISC's Manual for Steel Construction (Fourteenth Edition)

C. ASTM A 6 (ASTM A 6M) "Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Steel Plates, Shapes, Sheet Piling, and Bars for Structural Use."

D. Research Council on Structural Connections' (RCSC) "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

E. ASTM A36 - Structural Steel, Miscellaneous Sections

F. ASTM A992- Structural Steel, Wide Flange Sections

G. ASTM A53 - Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless.

H. ASTM A123 - Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

I. ASTM A143 - Recommended Practice for Safeguarding against Embrittlement of Hot-Dip Galvanized Structural Steel Products and Procedure for Detecting Embrittlement.

J. ASTM A153 - Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.

K. ASTM A194 Carbon Alloy Steel for Nuts for Bolts for High Pressure and High Temperature Service.

L. ASTM A283 - Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars.

M. ASTM A307 - Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile Strength.

N. ASTM A325 - High Strength Bolts for Structural Steel Joints.

O. ASTM A384 - Standard Recommended Practice for Safeguarding Against Warpage and Distortion during Hot-Dip Galvanizing of Steel Assemblies.

P. ASTM A385 - Standard Recommended Practice for Providing High Quality Zinc Coatings (Hot-Dip) on Assembled Products.

Q. ASTM A490 - Heat Treated Steel Structural Bolts, 150 ksi (1035 MPA) Tensile Strength.

R. ASTM A500 - Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Round and Shapes.

S. ASTM A501 - Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing.

T. ASTM F436 - Hardened Steel Washers.

U. ASTM B633 - Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel.

V. ASTM A153 - Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.

W. AWS A2.0 - Standard Welding Symbols.

X. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code.

Y. AWS A5.1 - Standard for Weld Steel Covered Arc-Welding Electrodes.

Z. AWS A5.18, latest edition - Mild Steel Electrodes for Gas Metal-Arc Welding.

AA. AWS A5.20, latest edition - Mild Steel Electrodes for Flux Cored-Arc Welding.

BB. ANSI B18.2 - Heavy Hex Structural Bolts.

CC. ANSI B27.2 - Plain Washers.

DD. ANSI B27.4 - Beveled Washers.

EE. SSPC - Steel Structures Painting Council.

FF. Federal Specifications, Standards of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01330 – Submittal Procedures and Section 01340 – Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples for submission procedures and requirements.

B. Product Data for each type of product specified to include four (4) copies of manufacturer-certified mill test reports. The mill test reports shall reflect the following as a minimum:

1. Specification to which material is produced.
2. Heat number of material.
3. Chemical and physical properties of the material required by the material specification.
4. Destructive and non-destructive test analysis conducted.
5. Grain size or statement that fine grain practice was used, when required.
6. Except as required elsewhere, mill test reports will not be required for such items as miscellaneous hardware, bolts, nuts, washers, rivets, screws, etc.

C. Shop Drawings detailing fabrication of structural steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent

data.
2. Indicate welds by standard AWS A2.0 welding symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
3. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts.
4. Erection drawings
5. Bills of material - presented on or before the date of steel delivery.
6. Include Shop Drawings signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation. Contractor shall be responsible for the correctness of submittal drawings and for shop and field fits.

D. LEED Submittal:

1. Product data for Credit MR 4.2: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Prepare Shop Drawings under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State of Texas.

B. Welders' Certificates: Submit data, under provisions of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures, certifying welders employed on the Work have AWS qualifications within the previous 12 months.

1.5 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on Drawings. Report any discrepancies to the Engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 50 percent.

B. Steel Shapes and Plate: ASTM A36.

C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500, Grade B.

D. Pipe: ASTM A53, Grade B Schedule 40.

E. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A307 and ASTM A325, all galvanized to ASTM A153.

F. Galvanizing: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel for galvanizing to ASTM A123. All exterior steel shall be galvanized.

G. Welding Materials: AWS D1.1; type required for materials being welded.

H. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds and repair painting galvanized steel, with dry film containing not less than 93 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035A or SSPC-Paint 20.

I. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, ferrous aggregate grout, complying with ASTM C 1107, of consistency suitable for application, and a 30-minute working time.

2.2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Connections: Connections shall be designed in accordance with the AISC "Specification for Steel Construction". Shop connections shall be assembled by bolting or welding. Field connections shall be bolted, unless otherwise noted on the Drawings.

B. Thickness of steel plates, if not called for on the Drawings, shall be 3/8-inch minimum.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fit and shop assemble in largest practical sections for delivery to site.

B. Fabricate items with joints tightly fitted and secured.

C. Connections made with ASTM A307 bolts shall have a plain washer in contact with the element (nut or bolt head) turned in tightening.

D. Grind exposed joints flush and smooth with adjacent finish surface. Make exposed joints butt tight, flush, and hairline. Ease exposed edges to small uniform radius.

E. Exposed Mechanical Fastenings: Flush countersunk screws or bolts; unobtrusively located; consistent with design of component, except where specifically noted otherwise.

F. Supply components required for anchorage of fabrications. Fabricate anchors and related components of same material and finish as fabrication, except where specifically noted otherwise.

2.4 FINISHES

A. Prepare surfaces to be primed in accordance with SSPC SP 2.

B. Do not prime surfaces in direct contact with concrete or where field welding is required.

C. Galvanize, after completion of welded fabrication, in accordance with ASTM A123, all exterior steel members. Provide minimum 1.25 oz/sq ft galvanized coating.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Before erection proceeds, and with the steel erector present, verify elevations of concrete bearing surfaces and locations of anchorages for compliance with requirements.

B. Beginning of installation means erector accepts existing conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean and strip primed steel items to bare metal where site welding is required.

B. Supply items required to be cast into concrete or embedded in masonry with setting templates, to appropriate sections.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install items plumb and level, accurately fitted, free from distortion or defects.

B. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Field weld components indicated on shop drawings.

D. Perform field welding in accordance with AWS D1.1.

E. Obtain Engineer’s approval prior to site cutting or making adjustments not scheduled.

F. After erection, prime all welds, abrasions, and surfaces that are not shop primed except for surfaces that are to be in contact with concrete.

3.4 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC specifications referenced in this Section.

B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.

C. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.

D. Tighten anchor bolts after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate prior to packing with grout.

E. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Finish exposed surfaces, protect installed materials, and allow to properly cure.

F. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

G. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening.

H. Splice members only where indicated.

I. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.

J. Do not enlarge holes in members by burning or by using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

3.5 FIELD COATING

A. Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05120

SECTION 05210

STEEL JOISTS AND JOIST GIRDERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Open-web steel joists.
2. Steel joist girders

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Engineer, fabricate, and erect joists and connections to withstand design loads within limits and under conditions required.

1. Design Loads: As indicated.
2. Design joists to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
   a. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.

B. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a joist manufacturer who utilizes a qualified professional engineer to prepare design calculations, shop drawings, and other structural data for steel joists.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to Section 01330 – Submittal Procedures for submittal submission procedures.

B. Product Data for each type of joist, accessory, and product specified.

C. Shop Drawings showing layout, mark, number, type, location, and spacings of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, accessories, splice and connection details, and attachments to other units of Work.

1. Indicate locations and details of anchorage devices and bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.
2. Detail moment resisting connections of joist girders to columns.

D. LEED Submittal:

1. Product data for Credit MR 4.2: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

E. Material certificates signed by joist manufacturer certifying that joists comply with SJI's "Specifications."

F. Mill certificates signed by manufacturers of bolts certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.

G. Welder certificates signed by Contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements specified under the "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Engage a firm experienced in manufacturing joists similar to those indicated for this Project and that have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Manufacturer must be certified by SJI to manufacture joists conforming to SJI standard specifications and load tables.

B. SJI Design Standard: Comply with recommendations of SJI's "Standard Specifications Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders," applicable to types of joists indicated.

C. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code--Steel" and AWS D1.3 "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

1. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."

B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 50 percent.

B. Steel: Comply with requirements of SJI's "Specifications" for chord and web section material.

C. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36 (ASTM A 36M).

D. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts, heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153, Class C.

E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

2.1 STEEL JOISTS AND JOIST GIRDERS

A. Manufacture joists according to SJI's "Specifications," with steel angle top and bottom chord members, of joist types, end arrangements, and top chord arrangements indicated.

B. Manufacture joists according to SJI's "Specifications," with steel angle top and bottom chord members, and as follows:

1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists.
2. End Arrangement: Underslung.
3. Top Chord Arrangement: Parallel.

C. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

D. Extend top chords of joists with SJI Type R top chord extensions where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications" and load tables.

E. Camber series steel joists and joist girders according to SJI's "Specifications."

F. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes when joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch in 12 inches (1:48).

2.2 JOIST ACCESSORIES

A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span.

1. Supply additional bridging to ensure stability of structure during construction period.

B. Fabricate steel bearing plates with integral anchorages as indicated and finish as follows:

1. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 123.

C. Supply ceiling extensions, either extended bottom chord elements or a separate extension unit of sufficient strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch of finished wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of joists. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.

B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's recommendations, and the requirements of this Section.

1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
3. Install temporary bracing and bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure joists are stabilized during construction.

C. Field weld joists to supporting steel framework and steel bearing plates. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placing of joists.

1. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts at columns not framed in at least two directions.

E. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords where terminating at walls or beams.

F. The top chord of the joists shall extend on the entire flange of the lateral beam to avoid eccentricity on beam flange caused by joist reaction. The joist manufacturer will design and reinforce the extension to support the uniform load indicated in the K-series Joist Load Table for the span of the joist.

G. All dead loads shall be applied to the joist girders before the bottom chord struts are welded to the stabilizer plates.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: A qualified independent testing agency employed and paid by Owner will perform field quality-control testing.

B. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

C. Testing and verification procedures will be required of high-strength bolted connections and field welds.

1. Bolted connections will be visually inspected.
2. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
3. Field welds will be visually inspected.

D. Correct deficiencies in Work that inspections and test reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.

E. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

3.4 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on exposed surfaces with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and the manufacturer's instructions.

B. Touch-up Painting: Following installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
2. Apply a compatible primer of the same type as the shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.

END OF SECTION 05210

SECTION 05311

STEEL FLOOR DECK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A . Furnish all labor, materials, equipment, and incidentals required and install steel roof deck complete as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A . No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Base Bid.

1.3 RELATED WORK

A . Structural steel is included in Section 05120.

B . Steel joists and joist girders are included in Section 05210.

C . Steel floor deck is included in Section 05310.

D . Miscellaneous metal is included in Section 05500.

E . Roofing, flashing and insulation are included in Division 7.

F . Field painting, except as specified herein, is included in Division 9.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A . Shop Drawings: Submit, in accordance with Section 01300, shop drawings showing:

1. Location and size of all members
2. Projections and openings.
3. Fastener types and layout patterns.
4. Erection marks. Mark each bundle to correspond to the shop drawings.

B . Product Data:

1. Materials, finishes, and details of construction of all members.
2. Manufacturer’s load table including design thickness in inches and section properties, gravity load carrying capability at the span used, diaphragm shear capacity and ICC Evaluation Report.

C . Quality Control:

1. Certification from the Steel Deck Institute (SDI) that the steel roof deck is designed in accordance with the SDI.
2. Certification for welders.
3. Written Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS's) in accordance with AWS DI.3 and SDI requirements for each different welded joint proposed for use whether prequalified or qualified by testing.
4. Electrode manufacturer's data for actual electrodes proposed. Data shall include manufacturer's recommended welding parameters for each electrode to be used.

1.5 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A . Steel Deck Institute (SDI)

1. SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck.

B . American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM A653 – Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron, Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot Dip Process.
2. ASTM A780 – Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot- Dip Galvanized Coatings.

C . American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI)

1. AISI SG-67303-3 – North American Specification for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members.

D . American Welding Society (AWS)

1. AWS D1.3 – Structural Welding Code – Sheet Steel.

E . International Code Council (ICC)

1. International Building Code (IBC) 2006

F . Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Steel roof deck shall conform to the requirements of the SDI.

B . Field welding shall be done by certified welders and shall be in accordance with AWS D1.3 and the AISI.

1. Qualify welders in accordance with AWS D1.3 for each process, position, and joint configuration.

2. WPS's for each joint type shall indicate proper AWS qualification and be available where welding is performed.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A . Handle material with cranes and derricks. Do not dump material off cars or trucks, or handle in any way likely to cause damage.

B . Store material off the ground with one end elevated to provide drainage. Protect from the elements with a waterproof covering, ventilated to avoid condensation.

C . Material with excessive damage, in the opinion of the Engineer, shall not be incorporated in the work. Remove and replace them with new undamaged material at no additional cost to the Owner.

1.8 PROJECT/SITE REQUIREMENTS

A . Notify the Engineer in writing of any inaccuracies in alignment or level of structural steel and steel joists. Correct inaccuracies before the deck is placed at no additional cost to the Owner.

B . Coordinate sizes and locations of HVAC openings and hatch penetrations with architectural, structural, mechanical, or HVAC drawings, using the approved curb and equipment details.

C . Coordinate size, location and details of all penetrations with the Drawings, other trades and details of approved equipment.

D . Provide reinforcement and miscellaneous framing for all penetrations as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.9 DEFINITIONS

A . Tranverse supports – supports which are perpendicular to the direction of the deck ribs.

B . Longitudinal support – supports which are parallel to the direction of the deck ribs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

2.2 MATERIALS

A . Steel roof deck shall conform to the SDI Specifications for Steel Roof Deck and to the AISI.

B . North American Specification for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members.

C . The depth, type and gage of steel roof deck shall be as shown on the Drawings. Unless otherwise noted, steel roof deck shall be vented 1” deep, 36-in wide, Type C with nestable side laps.

D . Steel roof deck and accessories shall be manufactured from steel conforming to ASTM A653, designation SS, Grade 33 or higher.

E . Steel roof deck and accessories shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A653, coating designation G90.

F . Screws shall be self drilling, self tapping hex washer head No. 10 TEKS fasteners with Climaseal coating by Buildex Division, Illinois Tool Works, Itasca, IL.

G . Provide galvanized touch-up to repair damaged surfaces. Use Endupor, zinc-rich coating by Dampney Manufacturing Co., Everett, MA; ZiRP, zinc-rich coating by Duncan Galvanizing Corp.,Everett, MA; ZRC Cold Galvanizing Compound by ZRC Chemical Products Co., Division of Norfolk Corp., Quincy, MA, or equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A . Install steel roof deck as shown on the Drawings, in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions and in accordance with approved shop drawings. Where possible, extend deck sheets over a minimum of three spans.

B . End laps of steel roof deck shall be at least 2- in long and shall occur over transverse supporting members.

C . Fasten steel roof deck to all interior and exterior transverse supports and at side laps and longitudinal supports. Deck fasteners and fastener spacings shall be as noted in the Steel Deck Schedule and Roof Deck Fastening Standard Details or as indicated on the Roof Framing Drawing.

D . Maintain contact between deck sheets and deck sheet sheets and steel supports while fastening steel roof deck to reduce burn holes at welded connections and to eliminate eccentricities between the connected parts at screwed connections.

E . Welds to supporting members at end lapsshall go through both sheets and fuse to the supporting steel.

F . Install screws using tools that prevent fracturing screws, damaging screw heads or striping threads due to overdriving.

G . Install another screw adjacent to fractured or stripped screws. Remove screws where eccentricities exist between deck sheets and deck sheets and steel supports and install another screw nearby while maintaining contact between the parts to be connected.

H . Coordinate size, location and details of all penetrations with the Drawings, other trades and details of approved equipment. Pipe and conduit openings in the steel roof deck shall be reinforced according to the manufacturer's recommendation.

1. Cutting and Fitting

a. Cut and fit steel roof deck units and accessories around projections through steel roof deck.

b. Cut openings in steel roof deck true to dimensions using metal saws or drills. Do not use cutting torches.

c. Make cuts neat, square and trim. Make cuts free of burrs.

d. Reinforce openings 6 in and larger but less than 12- in in greatest dimension with a 24-in by 24-in flat plate, 20 same gage thickness as deck, centered on the opening.

I . Weld closure strips, eave plates, ridge plates, sump pans, and reinforcing plates directly to steel deck to provide a finished surface.

1. Roof Sump Pans and Reinforcing Plates

a. Place roof sump pans and reinforcing plates over openings in steel roof deck and weld to top surface of steel roof deck.

b. Space welds not more than 6- in on center with at least one weld at each corner.

c. Cut opening in roof sump pan or reinforcing plate to accommodate drain or other fixture.

2. Ridge Plates

   a. Weld to top surface of steel roof deck at no more than 12 in on center.
   b. Lap end joints not less than 3 in.

3. Closure Strips and Eave Plates

   a. Install closure strips at all open uncovered ends and edges of steel roof deck and in voids between deck and other construction.

   b. Weld to top surface of steel roof deck at not more than 12-in on center and into position to provide complete deck installation for support of roof insulation.

J . Do not attach suspended ceilings, light fixtures, ducts, piping, conduits, or other utilities to steel roof deck.

K . Do not use deck for storage or work platforms until permanently secured into position.

L . Construction loads shall not exceed safe capacity of deck and supporting construction.

3.2 FIELD PAINTING

A . Clean and repair all steel surfaces which have become abraded or where galvanizing has been damaged due to welding and/or erection procedures.

B . Repair abraded or damaged galvanized areas using the touch-up material specified above to produce a dry film thickness of not less than 6 mils. Conduct all repairs of galvanizing in accordance with ASTM A780.

3.3 INSPECTION

A . Field welding will be inspected visually and by non-destructive testing by AWS certified welding inspectors provided by the Owner.

B . The Engineer and the certified welding inspector will inspect steel roof deck in the field for compliance with this Section and the approved shop drawings. The Engineer and the certified welding inspector may reject or require repair or refabrication of any steel roof deck or accessories not meeting these requirements.

END OF SECTION 05311

SECTION 05400

COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Interior load-bearing steel-stud walls.
2. Interior nonload-bearing steel-stud.
3. Exterior load bearing steel stud walls, columns and beams.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 5 Section 05501 - "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
2. Division 9 Section 09255" - Gypsum Board Assemblies" for gypsum board and nonload-bearing metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.
3. Division 9 Section 09255 - "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for gypsum sheathing applied to exterior steel framing.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for each type of cold-formed metal framing, accessory, and product specified.

C. Shop drawings showing layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing, fabrication, fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachments to other units of Work.

D. Mill certificates signed by manufacturers of cold-formed metal framing certifying that their products comply with requirements, including uncoated steel thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, and galvanized-coating thickness.

E. Welder certificates signed by Contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements specified under the "Quality Assurance" Article.

F. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

G. Product test reports from a qualified independent testing agency evidencing compliance with requirements of the following based on comprehensive testing:

1. Expansion anchors.
2. Powder-actuated anchors.
3. Mechanical fasteners.

H. Research reports or evaluation reports of the model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that evidence cold-formed metal framing's compliance with building code in effect for Project.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed cold-formed metal framing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: To qualify for acceptance, an independent testing agency must demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on evaluation of agency-submitted criteria conforming to ASTM E 699, that it has the experience and capability to satisfactorily conduct the testing indicated without delaying the Work.

C. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code--Steel" and AWS D1.3 "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

1. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-resistance-rated assemblies are indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that tested as part of an assembly for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As indicated by design designations listed in UL "Fire Resistance Directory," or by Warnock Hersey or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Alabama Metal Industries Corp.
2. American Studco, Inc.
3. Angeles Metal Systems.
4. California Metal Systems, Inc.
5. Clark-Cincinnati, Inc.
6. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.
7. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
8. Dale//Incor Industries of Florida.
9. Dale Industries, Inc.
10. Design Shapes in Steel.
11. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
12. Incor Plant Dale Industries.
13. Knorr Steel Framing Systems.
14. MarinoWare; Div. of Ware Industries, Inc.
15. Studco of Hawaii, Inc.
16. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
17. Unimast, Inc.
18. United Construction Supply.
19. United States Steel.
20. Western Metal Lath Co.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 446 (ASTM A 446M), zinc coated according to ASTM A 525 (ASTM A 525M), and as follows:

1. Coating Designation: G 60 (Z 180).

B. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M) or ASTM A 611, cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's baked-on, lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer conforming to the performance requirements of FS TT-P-664.

1. Grade: Grade 33 or Grade C, 33,000 psi (230 MPa) minimum yield strength.

2.3 WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs of web depths indicated, with lipped flanges, and complying with the following:

1. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1-3/8 inches (35 mm).
3. Web: Unpunched.

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, unpunched, of web depths indicated, with straight flanges, and complying with the following:

1. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: Matching steel studs.
2. Flange Width: Manufacturers standard deep flange where indicated, standard flange elsewhere.

2.4 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories of the same material and finish used for framing members, with a minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa).

B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:

1. Supplementary framing.
2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
3. Web stiffeners.
4. Gusset plates.
5. Deflection track and vertical slide clips.
6. Stud kickers and girts.
7. Joist hangers and end closures.
8. Reinforcement plates.

2.5 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36 (ASTM A 36M), zinc coated by the hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123.

B. Cast-in-Place Anchor Bolts and Studs: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568, Property Class 4.6); carbon-steel hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened-steel washers. Zinc coated by the hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153.

C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

D. Powder-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

E. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant coated, self-drilling, self-threading steel drill screws.

1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and a 30-minute working time.

D. Thermal Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I, unfaced mineral-fiber blankets produced by combining glass or slag fibers with thermosetting resins.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to manufacturer's recommendations and the requirements of this Section.

1. Fabricate framing assemblies in jig templates.
2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
4. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding or screw fastening, as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

a. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to cold-framed metal framing manufacturer's instructions with screw penetrating joined members by not less than 3 exposed screw threads.

5. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or distortion.

C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies to a maximum allowable tolerance variation from plumb, level, and true to line of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements, including installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of cold-formed metal framing. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Before sprayed-on fireproofing is applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed-on fireproofing.

B. After sprayed-on fireproofing has been applied, remove only as much fireproofing as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fireproofing below that required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fireproofing from damage.

C. Grout bearing surfaces uniform and level to ensure full contact of bearing flanges or track webs on supporting concrete or masonry construction.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

B. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to manufacturer's recommendations and the requirements of this Section.

1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding or screw fastening, as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

a. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to cold-framed metal framing manufacturer's instructions with screw penetrating joined members by not less than 3 exposed screw threads.

C. Install framing members in one-piece lengths, unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.

D. Provide temporary bracing and leave in place until framing is permanently stabilized.

E. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.

F. Install insulation in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and double studs, inaccessible upon completion of framing work.

G. Fasten reinforcement plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.

H. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing to a maximum allowable tolerance variation from plumb, level, and true to line of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings recommended by the manufacturer, but not greater than the following:

1. Spacing: 24 inches (610 mm) for nail or power-driven anchors.

B. Squarely seat studs against webs of top and bottom tracks. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: 12 inches (305 mm).

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Align studs vertically where wall-framing continuity is interrupted by floor framing. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.

E. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.

F. Install headers over wall openings wider than the stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.

1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated or required by manufacturer.
2. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.

G. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.

1. Where type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.

H. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced in rows not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, clip angle fastened to webs of punched studs.
2. Bridging: Flat, steel-sheet straps of width and thickness indicated, fastened to stud flanges.
3. Bridging: Combination of flat, steel-sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

I. Install steel-sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom track. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.

J. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 NONLOAD-BEARING INSTALLATION

A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.

B. Squarely seat studs against webs of top and bottom tracks. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches (406 mm).

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Isolate steel framing from building structure at locations indicated to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.

1. Install deflection track and anchor to building structure.
2. Connect studs with vertical slide clips to continuous angles or supplementary framing anchored to building structure.

E. Install horizontal bridging spaced in rows not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Install additional row of horizontal bridging in curtainwall stud beneath deflection track when curtainwall studs are not fastened to an additional top track.
2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, clip angle fastened to webs of punched studs.
3. Bridging: Flat, steel-sheet straps of width and thickness indicated, fastened to stud flanges.
4. Bridging: Combination of flat, steel-sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable curtainwall-framing system.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and the manufacturer's instructions.

B. Touchup Painting: Wire brush, clean, and paint scarred areas, welds, and rust spots on fabricated and installed prime-painted, cold-formed metal framing.

1. Touchup painted surfaces with same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer to ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05400

Section 05500

MISCELLANEOUS METAL

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and complete and install fabricated metal items. Furnish all supplementary items necessary for their proper installation.

B. Check Drawings carefully and furnish all anchors, sleeves, bolts, brackets, clips, inserts, angles, loose lintels, tubing, bar stock, plates and other miscellaneous metal not distinctly specified under other Sections but necessary to complete the work.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Base Bid.

1.03 RELATED WORK

A. Concrete joint accessories are included in Section 03250.

B. Masonry reinforcement, ties and accessories are included in Division 4.

C. Structural steel, steel joists and steel deck are included in Division 5.

D. Metal doors and frames are included in Section 08111 and 08114.

E. Painting is included in Division 9.

F. Louvers are included in Division 10.

G. Aluminum ladders are included in Section 05515.

H. Metal grating and cover plates are included in Section 05530.

I. Pipe hangers, supports and concrete inserts are included under Division 15.

J. Pipe sleeves, wall sleeves and wall castings are included in Division 15.

K. Anchor bolts for equipment are included in the respective Sections of Divisions 11, 14 and 15.

L. Sluice gates, slide gates, operators and appurtenances, including wall thimbles, are included in Division 11.

M. Monorail track is included in Division 14.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit, in accordance with Section 01300, shop drawings and product data showing materials of construction and details of installation for:

1. Shop drawings, showing sizes of members, method of assembly, anchorage and connection to other members.

B. Samples

1. Submit samples as requested by the Engineer during the course of construction.

C. Design Data

1. Submit manufacturer's load and deflection tables for grating.

D. Test Reports

1. Certified copy of mill test reports on each [steel] [stainless steel] [aluminum] proposed for use showing the physical properties and chemical analysis.

E. Certificates

1. Certify that welders have been qualified under A WS, within the previous 12 months, to perform the welds required under this Section.

1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. Aluminum Association (AA)

1. AA M31C22A41

a. M31: Mechanical Finish, Fine Satin

b. C22: Finish, Medium Matte

c. A41: Clear Anodic Coating, Class I

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM A36 - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.

2. ASTM A48 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings.

3. ASTM AS3 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.

4. ASTM A108 - Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Cold Finished, Standard Quality.

5. ASTM A123 - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.

6. ASTM A153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.

7. ASTM A240 - Standard Specification for Heat-Resisting Chromium and Chromium Nickel Stainless Plate, Sheet, and Strip Pressure Vessels.

8. ASTM A276- Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes.

9. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 Psi Tensile Strength.

10. ASTM A32S - Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength.

11. ASTM A500- Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.

12. ASTM A501 - Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing.

13. ASTM A536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings.

14. ASTM A570- Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Carbon, Hot-Rolled, Structural Quality.

15. ASTM A1008 - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable.

16. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.

17. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars. Rods. Wire, Profiles and Tubes.

18. ASTM B429- Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Structural Pipe and Tube.

C. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI).

1. Specification for Structural Steel Buildings.

D. American Welding Society (AWS)

1. AWS D 1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel.

2. AWS Dl.2 - Structural Welding Code - Aluminum.

3. AWS Dl.6 - Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel

E. Federal Specifications

1. FS-FF-B-575C-Bolts, Hexagonal and Square

F. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)

G. International Building Code

1. International Building Code 2006

H. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The work of this Section shall be completely coordinated with the work of other Sections. Verify, at the site, both the dimensions and work of other trades adjoining items of work in this Section before fabrication and installation of items herein specified.

B. Furnish to the pertinent trades all items included under this Section that are to be built into the work of other Sections.

C. All welding shall be performed by qualified welders and shall conform to the applicable AWS welding code. Welding of steel shall conform to A WS D 1.1 and welding of aluminum shall conform to AWS Dl.2 and welding of stainless steel shall conform to AWSDl.6.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver items to be incorporated into the work of other trades in sufficient time to be checked prior to installation.

B. Deliver anchorage devices with setting drawings, templates and instructions for installation.

C. Store delivered items off the ground and protected from dirt and weather.

D. Repair items that have become damage or corroded to the satisfaction of the Engineer prior to incorporating them into the work.

1.08 PROJECT/SITE REQUIREMENTS

A. Field measurements shall be taken at the site, prior to fabrication of items, to verify or supplement indicated dimensions and to ensure proper fitting of all items.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. The use of manufacturer's name and model or catalog number is for the purpose of establishing the standard of quality and general configuration desired.

B. Like items of materials shall be the end products of one manufacturer in order to provide standardization for appearance, maintenance and manufacturer's service.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Unless otherwise noted, materials for miscellaneous metals shall conform to the following standards:

1. Structural Steel	ASTM A36
2. Structural Steel Tubing	ASTM A500, Grade B
3. Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe	ASTM A501 or ASTM A53, Type E or S, Grade B Schedule 40. Use standard malleable iron fittings, galvanized for exterior work
4. Steel Sheets	ASTM A366
5. Gray Iron Castings	ASTM A48, Class 35
6. Ductile Iron Castings	ASTM A536,Grade 65-45-12
7. Aluminum Extruded Pipe	ASTM B429, Alloy 6063 T6
8. Aluminum Extruded Shapes	ASTM B221, Alloy 6061 T6
9. Aluminum Sheet and Plate	ASTM B209, Alloy 6061 T6
10. Stainless Steel Plates, Sheets and Structural Shapes	
a. Exterior, Submerged or Industrial Use	ASTM A240, Type 316 (Type 316L for welded)
b. Interior and Architectural Use	ASTM A240, Type 304
11. Stainless Steel Bolts, Nuts, and Washers	ASTM A276, Type 316
12. Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs	ASTM A307, Grade A (hot dip galvanized nuts and washers where noted)

13. High Strength Steel Bolts, Nuts and washers	ASTM A325 (mechanically galvanized per ASTM B695, Class 50, where noted)
a. Elevated Temperature Exposure	Type I
b. General Application	Type I or Type II
14. Galvanizing	ASTM A123, Zn w/0.05 percent minimum Ni
15. Galvanizing, hardware	ASTM A153, Zn w/0.05 percent Minimum Ni

2.03 ANCHORS, BOLTS, AND FASTENING DEVICES

A. Anchor bolt material shall be ASTM F1554 Grade 36 unless otherwise noted.

B. Unless otherwise noted, bolts for the connection of carbon steel or iron shall be steel machine bolts; bolts for the connection of galvanized steel or iron shall be galvanized steel or stainless steel machine bolts; and bolts for the connection of aluminum or stainless steel shall be stainless steel machine bolts.

C. Unless otherwise noted, expansion anchors shall be zinc plated carbon steel wedge type anchors complete with nuts and washers. Type 316 stainless steel wedge type anchors shall be used where they will be submerged or exposed to the weather or where stainless steel wedge type anchors are required. When the length or embedment of the bolt is not noted on the Drawings, provide length sufficient to place the wedge and expansion cone portion of the bolt at least 1-in behind the concrete reinforcing steel. Expansion anchors shall be Hilti, Kwik-Bolt III; Simpson Strong-Tie Wedge-All; Powers Power-Stud or equal.

D. Adhesive anchors, for fastening to concrete, shall be a two-component pre-proportioned cartridge system containing pre-measured amounts resin and hardener which are mixed and deposited in a screen tube by a dispenser. Anchor assemblies shall consist of an all thread anchor rod with nut and washer. Adhesive anchors shall be Hilti, HIT HY 150 MAX Injection Adhesive Anchors or equal.

E. Adhesive anchors, for fastening to hollow concrete block or brick, shall be a three-part stud, screen and chemical dispenser anchoring system. Adhesive cartridges shall contain premeasured amounts of resin and hardener which are mixed and deposited in a screen tube by a dispenser. Stud assemblies shall consist of an all-thread anchor rod with nut and washer. Anchors shall be Hilti, HIT HY-20 System or equal.

F. Automatic end welded headed anchor studs shall be flux ended studs made from cold drawn steel, ASTM A108 Grades C-1010 through C-1020. Headed anchor studs shall be Nelson, H4L Headed Concrete Anchors or equal.

G. Machine bolts and nuts shall conform to Federal Specification FF-B-575C. Bolts and nuts shall be hexagon type. Bolts, nuts, screws, washers and related appurtenances shall be Type 316 stainless steel.

H. Toggle bolts shall be Hilti, Toggler Bolt or equal.

2.04 ACCESS HATCHES

A. Access hatches shall have single or double leaf doors as indicated by the Drawings. The doors shall be ¼-in aluminum diamond pattern plate with welded stiffeners, as necessary, to withstand a live load of 300 lbs/sq ft with a maximum deflection of 1/150th of the span. Hatches shall have a ¼- in aluminum channel frame with a perimeter anchor flange or strap anchors for concrete embedment around the perimeter. Unless otherwise noted on the Drawings, use pivot torsion bars for counterbalance or spring operators for easy operation along with automatic door hold open. Hardware shall be durable and corrosion resistant with Type 316 stainless steel hardware used throughout. Provide removable lock handle. Finish shall be the factory mill finish for aluminum doors and frames with bituminous coating on the exterior of the frames in contact with concrete. Hatches shall be watertight and have a 1-1/2-in drainage coupling to the channel frame. Route drain to location as shown on the Drawings. Provide removable hatch safety nets or safety grating. Access hatches shall be Type JD by Bilco Company, New Haven, CT or equal by USF Fabrication or Halliday.

B. Access Hatches for Potable Water Reservoirs: The security, reservoir & roof angle frame access door shall be Model SRR-E as manufactured by U.S.F. Fabrication, Inc. with the size as shown on the Drawings.

Cover: 3/16-inch (4.8mm) aluminum diamond plate cover reinforced for 150 psf (733 kg/m2) live load. Equipped with a 316 stainless steel hold open arm with push/pull handle that automatically keeps the cover in its open/upright position.
Lift Assist: Open compression springs for lift assist.

Frame: 3/16-inch (4.8mm) aluminum angle with weather seal gasket and 7/16-inch (11 mm) diameter holes for bolting to surface (others responsible for providing effective seal between frame and the surface).

Hardware: 316 stainless steel pins hold aluminum lugs welded to frame and cover.

Security: A 316 stainless steel slamlock with fixed exterior and interior handles and interior padlock staple.

Finish: Cover and frame are mill finish aluminum.

Installation: Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Warranty: Manufacturer shall guarantee against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of ten years.

Removable exterior slarnlock handle with choice of slotted plug or tamper resistant plug.

Indicator switch to signal when cover is not fully closed.

Anodized finish

Stainless steel safety chains with aluminum support posts

Custom lettering

Provide removable hatch net

C. Access Hatch for the Raw Water Intake structure shall incorporate Type 304 stainless steel wedgewire screen elements to serve as a means to vent each intake cell. Entire access hatch shall meet on H-20 live lead condition as well as meet other requirements under 2.04.

2.05 MISCELLANEOUS ALUMINUM

A. All miscellaneous metal work shall be formed true to detail, with clean, straight, sharply defined profiles and smooth surfaces of uniform color and texture and free from defects impairing strength or durability. Holes shall be drilled or punched. Edges shall be smooth and without burrs. Fabricate supplementary pieces necessary to compete each item though such pieces are not definitely shown or specified.

B. Connections and accessories shall be of sufficient strength to safely withstand the stresses and strains to which they will be subjected. Exposed joints shall be close fitting and jointed where least conspicuous. Threaded connections shall have the threads concealed where practical. Welded connections shall have continuous welds or intermittent welds as specified or shown. The face of welds shall be dressed flush and smooth. Welding shall be on the unexposed side as much as possible in order to prevent pitting or discoloration of the aluminum exposed surface. Grind smooth continuous welds that will be exposed. Provide holes for temporary field connections and for attachment of the work of other trades.

C. Miscellaneous aluminum items shall include: beams, angles, closure angles, grates, hatches, floor plates, stop plates, stair nosings and any other miscellaneous aluminum called for on the Drawings and not otherwise specified.

D. Angle frames for hatches, beams, grates, etc, shall be complete with welded strap anchors attached.

E. Aluminum diamond plate and floor plate shall have a minimum thickness of 3/8-in. Frames and supports shall be of aluminum construction. Fastening devices and hardware shall be Type 316 stainless steel. Plates shall have a mill finish.

F. Stair treads for aluminum stairs shall have abrasive non-slip nosing as approved.

G. Aluminum nosing at concrete stairs shall be Wooster Products, Inc.; Alumogrit Treads, Type 116; similar by Barry Pattern and Foundry Co.; Andco or equal. Furnish with wing type anchors and flat head stainless steel machine screws, 12-in on center. Nosing shall also be used at concrete ladder openings. Nosing shall a single piece for each step extending to within 3-in at each side of stair or full ladder width. Set nosing flush with stair tread finish at concrete stairs. Furnish treads with heavy duty protective tape cover.

H. All miscellaneous aluminum shall have a cleaned and degreased mill finish unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or as specified herein.

2.06 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL

A. All miscellaneous metal work shall be formed true to detail, with clean, straight, sharply defined profiles and smooth surfaces of uniform color and texture and free from defects impairing strength or durability. Holes shall be drilled or punched. Edges shall be smooth and without burrs. Fabricate supplementary pieces necessary to complete each item though such pieces are not definitely shown or specified.

B. Connections and accessories shall be of sufficient strength to safely withstand the stresses and strains to which they will be subjected. Exposed joints shall be close fitting and jointed where least conspicuous. Threaded connections shall have the threads concealed where practical. Welded connections shall have continuous welds or intermittent welds as specified or shown. The face of welds shall be dressed flush and smooth. Grind smooth continuous welds that will be exposed. Provide holes for temporary field connections and for attachment of the work of other trades.

C. Miscellaneous steel items shall include: beams, angles, lintels, support brackets, base plates for other than structural steel or equipment, closure angles, bridge crane rails, monorail hoist beams, holddown straps and lugs, door frames, splice plates, subframing at roof openings and any other miscellaneous steel called for on the Drawings and not otherwise specified.

D. Bridge crane runway rails shall be 40 ASCE. Rails splices shall be staggered. Fasten rails with rail clamp plates, fillers, and pairs of anchor bolts every 2-ft. Rails supported on concrete shall have steel base plates below the filler and a continuous strip of neoprene under the rail between base plates.

E. Structural steel angle and channel door frames shall be galvanized. Frames shall be fabricated with not less than three anchors on each jamb.

F. Steel pipe pieces for sleeves, lifting attachments and other functions shall be Schedule 40 pipe unless otherwise shown on the Drawings. Wall and floor sleeves, of steel pipe, shall have welded circumferential steel waterstops at mid-length.

G. Lintels, relief angles or other steel supporting masonry or embedded in masonry shall be galvanized.

H. All steel finish work shall be thoroughly cleaned, by effective means, of all loose mill scale, rust and foreign matter and shall be given one shop coat of primer compatible with the finish coat after fabrication but before shipment. Paint shall be omitted within 3-in of proposed field welds. Paint shall be applied to dry surfaces and shall be thoroughly and evenly spread and well worked into joints and other open spaces.

I. Galvanizing, where required, shall be the hot-dip zinc process after fabrication. Coating shall be not less than 2 oz/sq ft of surface.

2.07 CASTINGS

A. Casting shall be of good quality, strong, tough, even-grained, smooth, free from scale, lumps, blisters, sand holes and defects of any kind which render them unfit for the service for which they are intended. Castings shall be thoroughly cleaned and will be subjected to a hammer inspection in the field by the Engineer. All matching surfaces shall be machined to a true plane surface to allow contact surfaces to seat at all points without rocking. Allowances shall be made in the patterns so that the thickness specified shall not be reduced in obtaining finished surfaces. Castings will not be acceptable if the actual weight is less than 95 percent of the theoretical weight computed from dimensions. The Contractor shall provide facilities for weighing castings in the presence of the Engineer.

B. Frames, covers, cast grates and trench drains for structures shall be gray iron castings except as otherwise specified or indicated on the Drawings. Sizes shall be as shown on the Drawings. Covers shall have letters "WATER," "SANITARY SEWER, or DRAIN," as applicable, embossed on top.

C. Frames and covers for installation in slabs shall be heavy duty, R-6013-R-6099 Series as manufactured by Neenah Foundry Co., or equal.

D. Electrical and telephone manhole and handhole frames and covers [for structures] shall be ductile iron castings. The covers shall be watertight. Covers shall have the word "ELECTRIC," "HIGH VOLTAGE," "LOW VOLTAGE," "SIGNAL," "TELEPHONE," as applicable, embossed on or cast into the top in letters 2-in high. The clear opening shall be 36-in unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

E. Trench drains shall be of the length shown on the Drawings and shall be heavy duty, R-4990 Series with a "Type A" cover as manufactured by Neenah Foundry Co. or equal.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install all items except those to be embedded in concrete or other masonry which shall be installed under Division 3 and Division 4 respectively. Items to be attached to concrete or masonry after such work is completed shall be installed in accordance with the details shown. Fastening to wood plugs in masonry will not be permitted.

B. Abrasions in the shop primer shall be touched up immediately after erection. Areas left unprimed for welding shall be painted with primer after welding.

C. Zinc coating which has been burned by welding, abraded, or otherwise damaged shall be cleaned and repaired after installation. The damage area shall be thoroughly cleaned by wire brushing and all traces of welding flux and loose or cracked zinc coating removed prior to painting. The cleaned area shall be painted with two coats of zinc oxide-zinc dust paint conforming to the requirements of Military Specifications MIL-P-15145. The paint shall be properly compounded with a suitable vehicle in the ratio of one part zinc oxide to four parts zinc dust by weight.

D. Specialty products shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

E. Expansion bolts shall be checked for tightness a minimum of 24 hours after initial installation.

F. Install adhesive capsule anchors using manufacturer's recommended drive units and adapters and in compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Headed anchor studs shall be welded in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

H. All railings shall be erected to line and plumb.

I. All steel surfaces that come into contact with exposed concrete or masonry shall receive a protective coating of an approved heavy bitumastic troweling mastic applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions prior to installation.

J. Where aluminum contacts a dissimilar metal, apply a heavy brush coat of zinc-chromate primer followed by two coats of aluminum metal and masonry paint to the dissimilar metal.

K. Where aluminum contacts masonry or concrete, apply a heavy coat of approved alkali resistant paint to the masonry or concrete.

L. Where aluminum contacts wood, apply two coats of aluminum metal and masonry paint to the wood.

M. Between aluminum gratings, aluminum stair treads, or aluminum handrail brackets and steel supports, insert 1/4-in thick neoprene isolator pads, 85 plus or minus 5 Shore A durometer, sized for full width and length of bracket or support.

END OF SECTION

Section 05530

METAL GRATINGS AND COVER PLATES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor materialsequipment and incidentals required and install metal gratings and floor cover plates along with embedded or attached support frames as shown on the Drawings or as specified herein

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Metal Stairs including bar grating stair treads are specified in Seciton 05511.

B. Grating or cover plate intermediate support beams and anchoring devices for attaching these supports to concrete are included in Section 05500.

1.03 SUBMITTAL

A. Submit in accordance with Section 01300 detailed shop drawings showing sizes of members, method of assembly, anchorage and connection to other members. Submittals shall include the following:

1. Manufacturer's product data for gratings and plates including span and deflection tables and details of construction.

2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Welding Society (AWS)

1. AWS D1.2 – Structural Welding Code Aluminum

B. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The work of this Section shall be completely coordinated with the work of other Sections. Verify at the site the dimensions and the work of other trades adjoining items of work in this Section before fabricating or installing the items specified.

B. Furnish to the pertinent trades all items included under this Section that are to be built into the work of other Sections.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 RECTANGULAR ALUMINUM BAR GRATING AND APPURTENANCES

A. Provide aluminum grating of the depths and bearing bar thicknesses noted on the Drawings and specified, with bearing bars spaced at 1-3/16-in on center and cross bar supports at 4-in on center. Grating material shall be aluminum alloy 6063-T6. Approved manufacturers are McNichols Co., Tampa, FL - GAL Series; or Seidelhuber Metal Products, Inc., San Carlos, CA - 19S4 Series.

   1. Grating cross bars shall be attached to the bearing bars with interlocked swaged joints having no exposed welding.

   2. Grating provided shall meet or exceed the following load and deflection criteria for the number of spans and span lengths at which it will be utilized:

      a. The span at which the grating is installed shall not exceed the fabricator's maximum recommended span.

      b. The grating shall produce a deflection of ¼ -in or less under a uniform live load of 200-lbs/sq ft.

      c. Grating shall produce a deflection of ¼-in or less under a concentrated live load of 300-lbs applied at mid span.

   3. Openings 2-in or greater in diameter/dimension and grating edges shall be banded with a bar of the same depth and thickness as the bearing bars. Cut bearing or cross bars shall be welded to the banding bar.

   4. Provide trench grating with equal "stubs".

B. Grating, frames and supports shall be all aluminum construction, as shown on the Drawings and specified, fabricated from aluminum alloy 6061-T6.

C. Grating clamps, nuts, bolts, washers and other fastening devices for grating and grating supports shall be Type 316 stainless steel.

   1. Provide saddle clip grating anchors.

D. Finishes

   1. Grating and frames - Mill finish

   2. Surface – Serrated

2.02 RECTANGULAR GALVANIZED STEEL BAR GRATING AND APPURTENANCES

A. Provide galvanized steel grating of the depths and bearing bar thicknesses noted on the Drawings and specified, with bearing bars spaced at 1-3/16-in on center and cross bar supports at 4-in on center. Grating material shall be galvanized steel. Approved manufacturers are McNichols Co., Tampa, FL - GAL Series; or Seidelhuber Metal Products, Inc., San Carlos, CA - 1984 Series.

1. Grating cross bars shall be attached to the bearing bars with interlocked welded joints.

2. Grating provided shall meet or exceed the following load and deflection criteria for the number of spans and span lengths at which it will be utilized:

a. The span at which the grating is installed shall not exceed the fabricator's maximum recommended span.

b. The grating shall produce a deflection of 1/4-in or less under a uniform live load of200-Ibs/sq ft.

c. Grating shall produce a deflection of 1/4-in or less under a concentrated live load of300-lbs applied at mid span.

3. Openings 2-in or greater in diameter/dimension and grating edges shall be banded with a bar of the same depth and thickness as the bearing bars. Cut bearing or cross bars shall be welded to the banding bar.

4. Provide trench grating with equal "stubs".

B. Grating, frames and supports shall be all steel construction, as shown on the Drawings and specified, fabricated from galvanized steel.

C. Grating clamps, nuts, bolts, washers and other fastening devices for grating and grating supports shall be Type 316 stainless steel.

1. Provide saddle clip grating anchors.

D. Finishes

1. Grating and frames – galvanized finish

2. Surface – Serrated

2.03 ALUMINUM COVER PLATES

A. Cover plates shall be aluminum tread plate, alloy 6061-T6 having a raised figure pattern on one surface to provide improved traction.

1. Unless otherwise noted, provide 3/8-in plate thickness.

B. Plate, frames and supports shall be all aluminum construction as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

C. Cover plate fastening devices and hardware shall be Type 316 stainless steel.

D. Mill Finish

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Provide work true to detail, with clean, straight, sharply defined profiles and smooth surfaces of uniform color and texture free from defects impairing strength or durability.

B. Field verify dimensions prior to fabrication.

C. Provide connections and accessories of sufficient strength to safely withstand stresses and strains to which they will be subjected. Threaded connections shall be made so that the threads are concealed by fitting.

D. Angle frames for granting and floor plates shall be welded and mitered with welded strap anchors attached.

E. Welded joints shall be rigid and continuously welded or spot welded as specified or shown. Dress the face of welds flush and smooth. Exposed joints shall be close fitting and located where least conspicuous.

F. Welding of parts shall be in compliance with the latest edition of AWS. Welding only to be done where shown, specified, or permitted by the Engineer. Welding shall be done by welders certified to perform welding in accordance with the requirements of the AWS Code. Component parts of built up members to be welded shall be adequately supported and clamped or held by other adequate means to hold the parts in proper relation for welding.

G. Weld work on the unexposed side when possible in order to prevent pitting or discoloration.

H. Apply one coat of methacrylate lacquer to all aluminum before shipment from the factory.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Verify that opening sizes and dimensional variations are acceptable for installation of grating or cover plates at the specified tolerances. Report any non-complying areas to the Engineer prior to proceeding with installation.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install all items furnished except items to be embedded in concrete which shall be installed under Division 3. Install items to be attached to concrete or masonry after such work is completed and in compliance with the details shown.

B. Field cutting of finished surfaces is not allowed unless specifically approved by the Engineer. When cutting is approved, use mechanical cutting tools; do not use flame cutting tools.

C. Secure grating with fastening devices as specified to prevent movement, except where removable grating is called for on Drawings.

D. Where aluminum contacts a dissimilar metal, field apply a heavy brush coat of zinc chromate primer followed by two coats of aluminum metal and masonry paint to the dissimilar metal.

E. Where aluminum contacts masonry or concrete, field apply a heavy brush coat of zinc chromate primer to the masonry or concrete. For embedded items, coat the embed.

F. Where aluminum contacts wood, field apply two coats of aluminum metal and masonry paint to the wood.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tolerances

1. Maximum space between adjoining or abutting sections: 1/4-in.

2. Maximum variation from top surface plane of adjoining or abutting sections or structure: 1/8-in.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06105

MISCELLANEOUS CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Wood blocking and nailers.
2. Wood furring and grounds.
3. Wood sleepers.
4. Plywood backing panels.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Termite Control" for site application of borate treatment to wood framing.
2. Division 6 Section "Sheathing."
3. Division 6 Section "Metal-Plate-Connected Wood Trusses."
4. Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry" for nonstructural carpentry items exposed to view and not specified in another Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.

B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:

1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
3. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
4. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:

1. Preservative-treated wood.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC 1.2, "Principles and Criteria":

1. Miscellaneous lumber.
2. Interior wood trim.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

B. Deliver interior wood materials that are to be exposed to view only after building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work other than painting is dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and humidity at occupancy levels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.

3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground or roof and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPA C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

D. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry, unless otherwise indicated.] [items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Wood, nailers, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood).

1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
2. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where required by codes.
3. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

1. Blocking.
2. Nailers.

3. Furring.
4. Grounds.

B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Standard, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content of any species.

C. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:

1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or 2 Common (Sterling) grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
2. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
3. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
4. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

D. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:

1. Mixed southern pine, No. 3 grade; SPIB.
2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Standard or 3 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Standard or 3 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
4. Eastern softwoods, No. 3 Common grade; NELMA.
5. Northern species, No. 3 Common grade; NLGA.
6. Western woods, Standard or No. 3 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

E. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

F. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

G. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, not less than ¾-inch nominal thickness.

2.6 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.

1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).

G. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.

1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.

1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

B. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.

C. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with

function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

D. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

E. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.

F. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63-mm actual-) size furring vertically at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06105

SECTION 06261

MINERAL PROFILE PANELING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes lightweight composite mineral profile paneling and seam finishing materials for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where these product (s) requirements are specified by reference to this Section:

B. Provide: Installation KIT (s) for areas of application, as indicated on the drawings.

C. Related sections include the following

1. Division 9 “Gypsum Board”
2. Division 9 “Painting”
3. Division 26 “Interior Lighting”

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Abbreviations and Acronyms:

1. ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials.
2. GA Gypsum Association.
3. LEED Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design.
4. USGBC United States Green Building Council.

B. Reference Standards:

1. ASTM D 256 Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics.
2. ASTM D 696 Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion of Plastics Between -30 °C and 30°C With a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer.
3. ASTM E 84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
4. GA-214 Recommended Levels of Gypsum Board Finish.
5. US Green Building Council: LEED ® Green Building Rating System ™.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Pre-installation Meetings:

1. Convene meeting at project site within one week of scheduled start of installation with representatives of the following in attendance: Owner, Architect, General Contractor, Installer, Finisher, and Painter.
2. Review substrate conditions, requirements of related work, installation instructions, seam finishing, and painting instructions, storage and handling procedures, and protection measures.

3. Keep minutes of meeting including responsibilities of various parties and deviations from specifications and installation instructions.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Each product specified.

B. Project List: Minimum 5 previous completed ModularArts, Inc. installations or 5 installations of similar materials and complexity. Include contact name and e-mail address or telephone number for each project.

C. Shop Drawings: Show standard and project specific details including termination at adjacent surfaces.

D. Samples: Minimum 15 by 15 inch panel of specified design(s).

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's installation instructions.

B. Regulatory agency sustainability submittals:

C. Qualification Statements: Proof of manufacturer, installer, and finisher qualifications.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:

B. Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer: Minimum five years experience in producing mineral profile paneling.
2. Installer: Minimum three years experience in finish carpentry/architectural woodwork installation.
3. Finisher: Minimum three years experience in executing Level 5 finish in accordance with GA-214.

C. Field Samples:

1. Provide in a location selected by Architect showing representative sample of installed product including finished seam.
2. Minimum Size 8 by 8 feet.
3. Approved field samples may remain as part of completed Work.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Storage and Handling Requirements:

1. Store panels in fully enclosed space, protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, and surface contamination.
2. Store panels vertically, in shipping crates, until ready to be installed. Loosen crate lids to allow for venting. Do not stack or lean against walls.
3. Store panels in area of installation minimum 24 hours prior to installation.

B. Packaging Waste Management: 100 percent of material used to package components of this section shall be recyclable.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Ambient Conditions:

1. HVAC: Operate HVAC system to maintain occupancy level temperature and relative humidity conditions (35 to 67 percent) in the area of installation from 24 hours prior to delivery of panels to the installation area through remainder of construction period.
2. Lighting: Permanent project lighting, including any special lighting used to highlight the profiled panels, must be operational prior to seam finishing.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard one year warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER : Basis – of – Design

A. Modular Arts, Inc. Tel: 206.788.4210
Fax: 206.788.4214

CORRESPONDENCE & BILLING ADDRESS: Email: info@modularArts.com
944 NW Leary Way
Seattle, WA 98107

SHIPPING & RECEIVING ADDRESS:
8207 S 192nd St
Kent, WA 98032

B. Substitution Limitations: None permitted.

2.2 COMPONENTS

A. Profile Panel: Smooth surface mineral composite panel with light weight plant-based foam back.

1. Size: 32 by 32 by 1.5 inch maximum profile relief.

2. Physical Properties:

a.	Izod Impact Strength: ASTM D 256	6 in* lbs
b.	Thermal Expansion: ASTM D 696	3.8 x 10-7 in/in °F.
c.	Compressive Strength: ASTM D 696	2.3 ksi.
d.	Flame Spread Index: ASTM E 84	0
e.	Smoke Development Index: ASTM E 84	50
f.	Weight	1.5 psf

3. Design: " Dune" ©; horizontal orientation.

B. Installation Kit: Item quantities in parenthesis denote quantities for (Small Kit – up to 50 panels/Large Kit- up to 100 panels).

1. Dry Mix Joint Compound: One 18 lb bag SHEETROCK ® brand EASY SAND ™ 45, or BEADEX ® brand SILVER SET™ 40.
2. Acrylic Fortifier: (One/Two) quart THORO® ACRYL 60®
3. Construction Adhesive: (12/24) 10.2 oz tubes PL ® Polyurethane Premium Construction Adhesive.
4. Primer Sealer: (3/6) gal VALSPAR ® LATEX MULTI-PURPOSE PRIMER.
5. Countersink Drill Bit with Depth Stop-Collar: (One/Two) No. 7.
6. Flexible Spreader: (One/Two) MUDTOOLS SMT-Y2
7. Sandpaper: (15/30) sheets No-Load 220G, (10/20) sheets No-Load 150G.
8. Plastic Container: One 100 oz.
9. Measuring Cup: One 8 oz.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchors: 30 lb self-drilling, drywall anchor.

B. Screws: Coarse thread, drywall type, length as required by panel design and in accordance with Manufacturer's Installation Instructions.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Fabrication Tolerances:

1.	Dimensions, length, and width:	1/16 inch.
2.	Thickness:	1/16 inch.
3.	Weight:	½ lb.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates upon which profile paneling will be installed.

1. Verify that substrate is a material listed as an acceptable substrate by the profile paneling manufacturer.

B. Verify that permanent project lighting is in place and operational prior to start of seam finishing.

C. Coordinate with responsible entity to correct unsatisfactory conditions.

D. Commencement of work by installer is acceptance of substrate conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install profile paneling in accordance with Manufacturer's Installation Instructions except that seam finishing shall be performed under Division 09 – Gypsum Board, and sealing and painting shall be performed under Division 09 – Interior Painting.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Clean all panel installations upon completion so that finish painting can occur immediately after cleaning per recommendations of the panel (s) manufacturer.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect finished work from damage during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 06261

SECTION 06402

INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Plastic-laminate cabinets.
   2. Plastic-laminate countertops.
   3. Solid-surfacing-material countertops and integral sinks.
   4. Closet and utility shelving.

B. Related Sections include the following:

   1. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
   2. Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry" for interior carpentry exposed to view that is not specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For panel products, high-pressure decorative laminate, adhesive for bonding plastic laminate, solid-surfacing material, fire-retardant-treated materials, cabinet hardware and accessories and finishing materials and processes.

   1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

1. Show details full size.
2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures, faucets, soap dispensers and other items installed in architectural woodwork.
4. Apply WI-certified compliance label to first page of Shop Drawings.

C. Samples for Verification:

1. Plastic laminates, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with 1 sample applied to core material and specified edge material applied to 1 edge.
2. Thermoset decorative-panels, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with plastic laminate edge banding on any exposed edge.
3. Solid-surfacing materials, 6 inches (150 mm) square.
4. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type and finish.

5. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.

D. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates WI-certified compliance certificates.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance. Shop is a certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program, or Shop is a licensee of WI's Certified Compliance Program.

B. Installer Qualifications: Certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program or licensee of WI's Certified Compliance Program.

C. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork.

D. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Program labels and certificates indicating that woodwork, including installation, complies with requirements of grades specified.

E. Quality Standard: Or, comply with WI's "Manual of Millwork" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1. Provide WI-certified compliance labels and certificates indicating that woodwork, including installation, complies with requirements of grades specified.
2. The Contract Documents contain selections chosen from options in the quality standard and additional requirements beyond those of the quality standard. Comply with such selections and requirements in addition to the quality standard.

F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are required, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.

G. Forest Certification: Provide interior architectural woodwork produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC 1.2, "Principles and Criteria."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

B. Hardware Coordination: Distribute copies of approved hardware schedule specified in Division 8 Section “Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)" to fabricator of architectural woodwork; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's or WI's quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Wood Products: Comply with the following:

1. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1**,** Medium Density Overlay.
2. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1**,** made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.

C. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.

1. Provide polyester edge banding on components with exposed or semiexposed edges.

D. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or, if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.

1. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide high-pressure decorative laminates by one of the following:
   a. Nevamar Company, LLC; Decorative Products Div.

E. Solid-Surfacing Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ISSFA-2.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company.

1. Type: Full range of materials
2. Colors and Patterns: As indicated on the drawings.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this Article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified.

1. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Comply with performance requirements of AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood). Use the following treatment type:

1. Exterior Type: Organic-resin-based formulation thermally set in wood by kiln drying.
2. Interior Type A: Low-hygroscopic formulation.
3. Mill lumber after treatment within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking plant certified by testing and inspecting agency.
4. Mill lumber before treatment and implement special procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.
5. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.

C. CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

D. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets.

E. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 170 degrees of opening, self-closing.

F. Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches (100 mm) long, 5/16 inch (8 mm) in diameter and "Interknobs," Family: "Post & Rail," Style: "Euro," Finish: Natural brushed stainless steel; Length: As indicated on the drawings.

G. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.

H. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081; BHMA A156.9, B04102; with shelf brackets, B04112.

I. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091.

1. Standard Duty (Grade 1, Grade 2, and Grade 3): Side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel with polymer rollers.
2. Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel ball-bearing slides.
3. Box Drawer Slides: Grade 1HD-100; for drawers not more than 6 inches (150 mm) high and 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
4. Pencil Drawer Slides: Grade 1; for drawers not more than 3 inches (75 mm) high and 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
5. Keyboard Slides: Grade 1HD-100; for computer keyboard shelves.

J. Aluminum Slides for Sliding Glass Doors: BHMA A156.9, B07063.

K. Counter Supports – By: RAKK for depth of counters indicated and uniform loading of 200 pounds per lineal foot for countertop.

L. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.

M. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.

N. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: 2-inch (51-mm) OD, brown or black, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "OG or SG series" by Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.

O. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated. Coordinate with Division 8 door hardware finish.
1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.

P. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

1. Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

B. Adhesives, General: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

C. VOC Limits for Installation Adhesives and Glues: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

1. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
2. Contact Adhesive: 250 g/L.

D. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement, Contact cement.

1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Interior Woodwork Grade: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Custom-grade interior woodwork complying with referenced quality standard.

1. Premium grade.

B. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.

C. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.

D. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for

shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

1. Notify Architect and owner's representative seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

E. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.

2.5 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Grade: Premium.

B. Wood Species and Cut: As indicated on the drawings.

C. For trim items wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

D. For rails wider or thicker than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width or thickness.

E. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.

F. Assemble casings in plant except where limitations of access to place of installation require field assembly.

G. Assemble moldings in plant to maximum extent possible. Miter corners in plant and prepare for field assembly with bolted fittings designed to pull connections together.

2.6 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Grade: Premium.

B. Wood Species: Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine.

C. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.

D. Assemble casings in plant except where limitations of access to place of installation require field assembly.

E. Assemble moldings in plant to maximum extent possible. Miter corners in plant and prepare for field assembly with bolted fittings designed to pull connections together.

2.7 PLASTIC-LAMINATE CABINETS

A. Grade: Custom.

B. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Flush overlay

C. WI Construction Style: Style A, Frameless

D. WI Construction Type: Type I, multiple self-supporting units rigidly joined together; or Type II, single-length sections to fit access openings.

E. WI Door and Drawer Front Style: Flush overlay.

F. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following requirements:

1. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: Grade HGS.
2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
4. Edges: Grade VGS.

G. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS
   a. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS or CLS.

2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber
3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood

H. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade BKL.

I. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:

1. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range in the following categories:

   a. Solid colors, gloss or matte finish.
   b. Solid colors with core same color as surface, gloss or matte finish.
   c. Wood grains, gloss or matte finish.
   d. Patterns, gloss or matte finish.

2.8 PLASTIC-LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS

A. Grade: Custom.

B. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate Grade: HGS.

C. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:

1. As indicated by manufacturer's designations, on the drawings.

D. Grain Direction: Parallel to cabinet fronts.

E. Edge Treatment: Same as laminate cladding on horizontal surfaces or Lumber edge for transparent finish**.**

F. Core Material: Particleboard made with exterior glue in dry areas, Exterior-grade plywood where wet areas are in the same room, area or space.

G. Core Material at Sinks: exterior-grade plywood.

2.9 SOLID-SURFACING-MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

A. Grade: Custom.

B. Solid-Surfacing-Material Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm) for countertops and ¼ inch for vertical wall appplications.

C. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors of solid-surfacing material complying with the following requirements:

1. As indicated on the drawings.

D. Fabricate tops in one piece, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surfacing-material manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

1. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges of materials and configuration indicated.
2. Fabricate tops with loose backsplashes for field application.

E. Drill holes in countertops for plumbing fittings and soap dispensers in shop.

F. Install integral lavatories in countertops as indicated on the drawings to comply with: ADA & TAS Requirements.

2.10 CLOSET AND UTILITY SHELVING

A. Grade: Custom.

B. Shelf Material: 3/4-inch (19-mm) veneer-faced panel product with veneer edge banding.

C. Cleats: 3/4-inch (19-mm) panel product.

D. Grade: Provide finishes of same grades as items to be finished.

E. General: Finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.

F. General: Refer to Division 9 painting Sections for finishing opaque-finished architectural woodwork.

G. Shop Priming: Shop apply the prime coat including backpriming, , for items specified to be field finished. Refer to Division 9 painting Sections for material and application requirements.

H. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate, backing paper, or thermoset decorative panels.

I. Opaque Finish:

1. Grade: Premium
2. WI Finish System 5: Catalyzed polyurethane.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Sheen: Semigloss, 46-60 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.

B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.

C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.

E. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.

F. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.

G. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible. Do not use pieces less than 36 inches (900 mm) long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.

1. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with plastic wood filler, sand smooth, and finish same as wood base if finished.
2. Install wall railings on indicated metal brackets securely fastened to wall framing.
3. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

H. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.

1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
2. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch (25-mm) penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips, toggle bolts through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

I. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.

1. Align adjacent solid-surfacing-material countertops and form seams to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations using adhesive in color to match countertop. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
2. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
3. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and to walls with adhesive.

4. Caulk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants." Set bottom of backsplash in continuous bead of non-drying sealant and wipe over spill in joint to be fresh with face.

J. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.

K. Refer to Division 9 Sections for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.

C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 06402

SECTION 064023

INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Interior standing and running trim.
2. Interior frames and jambs.
3. Stairwork[and rails].
4. Flush wood paneling[and wainscots].
5. Interior ornamental work.
6. Wood cabinets.
7. Plastic-laminate cabinets.
8. Wood countertops.
9. Plastic-laminate countertops.
10. Solid-surfacing-material countertops.
11. Laminated-plastic laboratory tops.
12. Closet and utility shelving.
13. Shop finishing of interior woodwork.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
2. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry" for interior carpentry exposed to view that is not specified in this Section.
3. Division 06 Section "Wood Paneling."
4. Division 09 Section "Stone Facing" for stone countertops.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

B. Rough carriages for stairs are a part of interior architectural woodwork. Platform framing, headers, partition framing, and other rough framing associated with stairwork are specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated[, including] [cabinet hardware and accessories] [handrail brackets] [and] [finishing materials and processes].

B. Product Data: For [panel products] [high-pressure decorative laminate] [adhesive for bonding plastic laminate] [solid-surfacing material] [fire-retardant-treated materials] [cabinet hardware and accessories] [handrail brackets] [and] [finishing materials and processes].

1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

C. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

1. Show details full size.
2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for [plumbing fixtures] [faucets] [soap dispensers] [and other items] installed in architectural woodwork.
4. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.
5. Apply WI-certified compliance label to first page of Shop Drawings.

D. Samples for Initial Selection:

1. Shop-applied transparent finishes.
2. Shop-applied opaque finishes.
3. Plastic laminates.
4. PVC edge material.
5. Thermoset decorative panels.
6. Solid-surfacing materials.

E. Samples for Verification:

1. Lumber with or for transparent finish, not less than [50 sq. in. (300 sq. cm)] [5 inches (125 mm) wide by 24 inches (600 mm) long], for each species and cut, finished on 1 side and 1 edge.
2. Veneer leaves representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished woodwork.
3. Veneer-faced panel products with or for transparent finish, [8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm)] [12 by 24 inches (300 by 600 mm)], for each species and cut. Include at least one face-veneer seam and finish as specified.
4. Lumber and panel products with shop-applied opaque finish, 50 sq. in. (300 sq. cm) for lumber and 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) for panels, for each finish system and color, with[1/2 of] exposed surface finished.
5. Plastic laminates, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish[, with 1 sample applied to core material] [and specified edge material applied to 1 edge].
6. Thermoset decorative-panels, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish[, with edge banding on 1 edge].
7. Solid-surfacing materials, 6 inches (150 mm) square.
8. Corner pieces as follows:

a. Cabinet-front frame joints between stiles and rails, as well as exposed end pieces, 18 inches (450 mm) high by 18 inches (450 mm) wide by 6 inches (150 mm) deep.
b. Miter joints for standing trim.

9. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type[and finish].

F. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For installation adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
2. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4:

a. For each composite-wood product used, documentation indicating that the bonding agent contains no urea formaldehyde.
b. For each adhesive used, documentation indicating that the adhesive contains no urea formaldehyde.

3. Product Data for Credit(s) MR 4.1[and MR 4.2]: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content

a. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

4. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

a. Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.

G. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.

H. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: [AWI Quality Certification Program certificates] [WI-certified compliance certificates].

I. Qualification Data: For [Installer] [fabricator].

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.[Shop is a certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.][Shop is a licensee of WI's Certified Compliance Program.]

B. Installer Qualifications: [Fabricator of products] [Certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program] [Licensee of WI's Certified Compliance Program].

C. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers [and wood doors with face veneers that are sequence matched with woodwork] [and transparent-finished wood doors that are required to be of same species as woodwork].

D. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Program [labels] [and] [certificates] indicating that woodwork[, including installation,] complies with requirements of grades specified.

E. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with WI's "Manual of Millwork" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1. Provide WI-certified compliance [labels] [and] [certificates] indicating that woodwork[, including installation,] complies with requirements of grades specified.
2. The Contract Documents contain selections chosen from options in the quality standard and additional requirements beyond those of the quality standard. Comply with such selections and requirements in addition to the quality standard.

F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.

G. Forest Certification: Provide interior architectural woodwork produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

H. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between [25 and 55] [43 and 70] [17 and 50] <Insert humidity range> percent during the remainder of the construction period.

C. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

B. Hardware Coordination: Distribute copies of approved hardware schedule specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)" to fabricator of architectural woodwork; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOODWORK FABRICATORS

A. Available Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, fabricators offering interior architectural woodwork that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide interior architectural woodwork by one of the following:

2.2 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of [AWI's] [WI's] quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: [Red oak, plain sawn or sliced] [White oak, rift sawn or cut] [White ash, plain sawn or sliced] [Hickory, plain sawn or sliced] <Insert species and cut>.

C. Wood Species for Opaque Finish: [Any closed-grain hardwood] [Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine] <Insert species>.

D. Wood Products: Comply with the following:

1. Recycled Content of Medium-Density Fiberboard and Particleboard: Provide products with an average recycled content so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than <Insert number> percent.
2. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
3. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD[, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde].
4. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade [M-2] [M-2-Exterior Glue].
5. Particleboard: Straw-based particleboard complying with requirements in ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, except for density.
6. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1[, Medium Density Overlay].
7. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1[, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde].

E. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.

1. Provide PVC or polyester edge banding complying with LMA EDG-1 on components with exposed or semiexposed edges.

F. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or, if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering high-pressure decorative laminates that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide high-pressure decorative laminates by one of the following:

a. Abet Laminati, Inc.
b. Arborite; Division of ITW Canada, Inc.
c. Formica Corporation.
d. Lamin-Art, Inc.
e. Nevamar Company, LLC; Decorative Products Div.
f. Panolam Industries International Incorporated.
g. Westinghouse Electric Corp.; Specialty Products Div.
h. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.
i. <Insert manufacturer's name.>

G. Chemical-Resistant, High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGP, and as follows:

1. Laminate has the following ratings when tested with indicated reagents according to NEMA LD 3, Test Procedure 3.9.5:

a. Nitric Acid (30 Percent): Moderate effect.
b. Sulfuric Acid (77 Percent): Moderate effect.
c. Hydrochloric Acid (37 Percent): Moderate effect.
d. Phosphoric Acid (75 Percent): No effect.
e. Acetic Acid (98 Percent): No effect.
f. Formaldehyde: No effect.
g. Ethyl Acetate: No effect.
h. Ethyl Ether: No effect.

i. Phenol (85 Percent): Moderate effect.
j. Benzene: No effect.
k. Xylene: No effect.
l. Butyl Alcohol: No effect.
m. Furfural: No effect.
n. Methyl Ethyl Ketone: No effect.
o. Sodium Hydroxide (25 Percent): No effect.
p. Sodium Sulfide (15 Percent): No effect.
q. Ammonium Hydroxide (28 Percent): No effect.
r. Zinc Chloride: No effect.
s. Gentian Violet: No effect.
t. Methyl Red: No effect.

2. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Formica Corporation; Lab Grade 840 Black.
b. Panolam Industries International Incorporated; Pionite Chemguard.
c. Wilsonart International, Div. of Premark International, Inc.; Chemsurf.
d. <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation.>

H. Solid-Surfacing Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ISSFA-2.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABA Industries.
b. Avonite, Inc.
c. E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company.
d. Formica Corporation.
e. LG Chemical, Ltd.
f. Meganite Inc.; a division of the Pyrochem Group.
g. Nevamar Company, LLC; Decorative Products Div.
h. Samsung; Cheil Industries Inc.
i. Swan Corporation (The).
j. Transolid, Inc.
k. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.
l. <Insert manufacturer's name.>

3. Type: Standard type[or Veneer type made from material complying with requirements for Standard type, as indicated], unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
4. Colors and Patterns: [As indicated by manufacturer's designations] [Match Architect's samples] [As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range].

I. Float Glass for Cabinet Doors: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class [1 (clear)] [2 or 3 (tinted)], Quality-Q3, [3.0 mm] [4.0 mm] [5.0 mm] [6.0 mm] thick.

1. Tint Color: [Blue-green] [Bronze] [Green] [Gray] <Insert color>.

J. Tempered Float Glass for Cabinet Doors: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class [1 (clear)] [2 or 3 (tinted)], Quality-Q3[, with exposed edges seamed before tempering], 6 mm thick, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Tint Color: [Blue-green] [Bronze] [Green] [Gray] <Insert color>.

K. Mirror Glass for Cabinet Doors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror [Select] [Glazing], Quality-Q3, [3.0 mm] [4.0 mm] [5.0 mm] [6.0 mm] thick.

L. Decorative Glass for Cabinet Doors: Provide decorative glass complying with Division 08 Section "Decorative Glass Glazing."

M. Tempered Float Glass for Cabinet Shelves: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class [1 (clear)] [2 or 3 (tinted)], Quality-Q3; with exposed edges seamed before tempering, 6 mm thick.

1. Tint Color: [Blue-green] [Bronze] [Green] [Gray] <Insert color>.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this Article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified.

1. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Comply with performance requirements of AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood). Use the following treatment type:

1. Exterior Type: Organic-resin-based formulation thermally set in wood by kiln drying.
2. Interior Type A: Low-hygroscopic formulation.
3. Mill lumber after treatment within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking plant certified by testing and inspecting agency.
4. Mill lumber before treatment and implement special procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.
5. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.

C. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Panels complying with the following requirements, made from softwood particles and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84.

1. For panels 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick and less, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-2 except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1600 psi (11 MPa); modulus of elasticity, 300,000 psi (2070 MPa); internal bond, 80 psi (550 kPa); and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 225 lbf (1100 and 1000 N), respectively.
2. For panels 13/16 to 1-1/4 inches (20 to 32 mm) thick, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-1 except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1300 psi (9 MPa); modulus of elasticity, 250,000 psi (1720 MPa); linear expansion, 0.50 percent; and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 175 lbf (1100 and 780 N), respectively.
3. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Duraflake FR" by Weyerhaeuser.

D. Fire-Retardant Fiberboard: Medium-density fiberboard panels complying with ANSI A208.2, made from softwood fibers, synthetic resins, and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 200 or less per ASTM E 84.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Medite FR" by SierraPine Ltd.; Medite Div.

2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets, except for items specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)."

B. Butt Hinges: 2-3/4-inch (70-mm), 5-knuckle steel hinges made from 0.095-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick metal, and as follows:

1. Semiconcealed Hinges for Flush Doors: BHMA A156.9, B01361.
2. Semiconcealed Hinges for Overlay Doors: BHMA A156.9, B01521.

C. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, [100] [135] [170] degrees of opening[, self-closing].

D. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.

E. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid [metal] [plastic], [4 inches (100 mm) long, 5/16 inch (8 mm) in diameter] [5 inches (127 mm) long, 2-1/2 inches (63.5 mm) deep, and 5/16 inch (8 mm) in diameter].

F. Catches: [Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141] [Push-in magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03131] [Roller catches, BHMA A156.9, B03071] [Ball friction catches, BHMA A156.9, B03013].

G. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: [BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081] [BHMA A156.9, B04102; with shelf brackets, B04112].

H. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; [metal] [plastic] [metal, two-pin type with shelf hold-down clip].

I. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091.

1. Standard Duty (Grade 1, Grade 2, and Grade 3): Side mounted[and extending under bottom edge of drawer]; [full-extension] [partial-extension] type; [zinc-plated steel] [epoxy-coated steel] with polymer rollers.
2. Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mounted; [full-extension] [full-overtravel-extension] type; zinc-plated steel ball-bearing slides.
3. Box Drawer Slides: [Grade 1] [Grade 1HD-100]; for drawers not more than 6 inches (150 mm) high and 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
4. File Drawer Slides: [Grade 1HD-100] [Grade 1HD-200]; for drawers more than 6 inches (150 mm) high or 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
5. Pencil Drawer Slides: [Grade 2] [Grade 1]; for drawers not more than 3 inches (75 mm) high and 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
6. Keyboard Slides: [Grade 1] [Grade 1HD-100]; for computer keyboard shelves.
7. Trash Bin Slides: [Grade 1HD-100] [Grade 1HD-200]; for trash bins not more than 20 inches (500 mm) high and 16 inches (400 mm) wide.

J. [Plastic] [Aluminum] Slides for Sliding Glass Doors: BHMA A156.9, B07063.

K. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.

L. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.

M. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: [1-1/4-inch (32-mm)] [2-inch (51-mm)] <Insert size> OD, [brown] [black] <Insert color>, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "[OG] [SG] series" by Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.

N. Paper Slots: [12 inches (305 mm)] [17 inches (432 mm)] long by 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) wide by 1 inch (25 mm) deep; [brown] [black] <Insert color>, molded-plastic, paper-slot liner with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) lip.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Model [CP-2] [CP-1]" by Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.

O. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.

1. Dark, Oxidized, Satin Bronze, Oil Rubbed: BHMA 613 for bronze base; BHMA 640 for steel base; match Architect's sample.
2. Bright Brass, Clear Coated: BHMA 605 for brass base; BHMA 632 for steel base.
3. Satin Brass, Blackened, Bright Relieved, Clear Coated: BHMA 610 for brass base; BHMA 636 for steel base.
4. Satin Chromium Plated: BHMA 626 for brass or bronze base; BHMA 652 for steel base.
5. Bright Chromium Plated: BHMA 625 for brass or bronze base; BHMA 651 for steel base.
6. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.

P. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

B. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

C. Rough Carriages for Stairs: [Select Structural] [No. 1] [No. 2] grade and[any of] the following species, kiln dried to 15 percent maximum moisture content:

1. Douglas fir-larch.
2. Douglas fir-south.
3. Douglas fir-larch (north).
4. Hem-fir.
5. Hem-fir (north).
6. Southern pine.
7. Spruce-pine-fir (south).
8. Spruce-pine-fir.

D. Rough Carriages for Stairs: Laminated veneer lumber, made with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559, and with the following allowable design values as determined according to ASTM D 5456:

1. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: [2850 psi (19.7 MPa)] [2600 psi (17.9 MPa)] [2500 psi (17.2 MPa)] <Insert value> for 12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-) depth members.
2. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: [2,000,000 psi (13 800 MPa)] [1,800,000 psi (12 400 MPa)] <Insert value>.

E. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

F. Handrail Brackets: [Cast] [Extruded] [Stamped] from [malleable iron] [aluminum] [bronze] [stainless steel] with wall flange drilled [for exposed anchor] [and tapped for concealed hanger bolt] and with support arm for screwing to underside of rail. Sized to provide 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance between handrail and wall.

G. Handrail/Bumper Rail Brackets: Pairs of extruded-aluminum channels; one for fastening to back of rail and one for fastening to face of wall. They are then assembled in overlapping fashion and fastened together top and bottom with self-tapping screws. Sized to provide 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance between handrail and wall.

H. Adhesives, General: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

I. VOC Limits for Installation Adhesives and Glues: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

1. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
2. Contact Adhesive: 250 g/L.

J. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: [Unpigmented contact cement] [Contact cement] [PVA] [Urea formaldehyde] [Resorcinol].

1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive[or adhesive specified above for faces].

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Interior Woodwork Grade: Unless otherwise indicated, provide [Premium] [Custom] [Economy]-grade interior woodwork complying with referenced quality standard.

B. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.

C. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.

D. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:

1. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick or Less: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
2. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members and Rails: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).

E. Complete fabrication, including assembly[, finishing,] and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

F. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.

G. Install glass to comply with applicable requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and in GANA's "Glazing Manual." For glass in wood frames, secure glass with removable stops.

2.7 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Wood Species and Cut: [Red oak, plain sawn] [Match species and cut indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building, unless otherwise indicated] <Insert species and cut>.

1. Provide split species on trim that faces areas with different wood species, matching each face of woodwork to species and cut of finish wood surfaces in areas finished.

C. For trim items wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

D. For rails wider or thicker than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width or thickness.

E. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.

F. Assemble casings in plant except where limitations of access to place of installation require field assembly.

G. Assemble moldings in plant to maximum extent possible. Miter corners in plant and prepare for field assembly with bolted fittings designed to pull connections together.

2.8 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Wood Species: [Any closed-grain hardwood] [Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine] <Insert species>.

C. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.

D. Assemble casings in plant except where limitations of access to place of installation require field assembly.

E. Assemble moldings in plant to maximum extent possible. Miter corners in plant and prepare for field assembly with bolted fittings designed to pull connections together.

2.9 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Wood Species and Cut: [Red oak, plain sawn] [Match species and cut indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building, unless otherwise indicated] <Insert species and cut>.

C. For frames or jambs wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

D. Fire-Rated Interior Frames and Jambs: Products fabricated from fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard with veneered, exposed surfaces and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.

1. Fire Rating: 20 minutes.

2.10 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Wood Species: [Any closed-grain hardwood] [Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine] <Insert species>.

2.11 STAIRWORK[AND RAILS]

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Grade:

C. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: [Red oak, quarter sawn] [Hard maple, plain sawn] [Quarter-sawn, red-oak treads; plain-sawn, hard-maple handrails] <Insert species and cut>.

D. Wood Species for Opaque Finish: [Any closed-grain hardwood] [Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine] [Any closed-grain hardwood, except that eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine may be used for risers, stringers, and moldings] <Insert species>.

E. Finishes for Stair Parts: As follows:

1. Treads: [Transparent] [Opaque].
2. Risers: [Transparent] [Opaque].
3. Stringers: [Transparent] [Opaque].
4. Balusters: [Transparent] [Opaque].
5. Handrails: [Transparent] [Opaque].
6. Scotia, Cove, and Other Moldings: [Transparent] [Opaque].

F. Cut carriages to accurately fit treads and risers. Glue treads to risers, and glue and nail treads and risers to carriages.

1. House [wall] [and] [face] stringers and glue and wedge treads and risers.
2. Fabricate stairs with treads and risers no more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from indicated position and no more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) out of position for adjacent treads and risers.

2.12 FLUSH WOOD PANELING[AND WAINSCOTS]

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Wood Species and Cut: [White oak, rift cut] [White ash, plain sliced] [Red gum, plain sliced] [Brown ash, plain sliced] [Hickory, plain sliced] [As indicated] <Insert species and cut>.

1. Lumber Trim and Edges: At fabricator's option, trim and edges indicated as solid wood (except moldings) may be either lumber or veneered construction compatible with grain and color of veneered panels.

C. Matching of Adjacent Veneer Leaves: [Book] [Slip] [Random] match.

D. Veneer Matching within Panel Face: [Running] [Balance] [Center-balance] match.

E. Panel-Matching Method: No matching between panels is required. Select and arrange panels for similarity of grain pattern and color between adjacent panels.

F. Panel-Matching Method: Match panels within each separate area by the following method:

1. Premanufactured sets used full width[as indicted].
2. Premanufactured sets selectively reduced in width[as indicated].
3. Sequence-matched, uniform-size sets[as indicated].
4. Blueprint-matched panels and components.
5. Refer to Division 01 Section "Summary" for requirements concerning flitches reserved by Architect.
6. Refer to Division 01 Section "Allowances" for allowances covering the purchase of wood face veneers for panels and components.

G. Vertical Panel-Matching Method: [Continuous match; veneer leaves of upper panels are continuations of veneer leaves of lower panels] [Vertical book match; veneer leaves are individually book matched from lower panels to upper panels] [Vertical slip match; veneer leaves are individually slip matched from lower panels to upper panels] [Panel vertical book match; panels are book matched from lower panels to upper panels] [Panel vertical slip match; panels are slip matched from lower panels to upper panels].

H. Fire-Retardant-Treated Paneling: Provide panels consisting of wood veneer and fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard. Panels shall have flame-spread index of [75] [25] or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less per ASTM E 84.

2.13 INTERIOR ORNAMENTAL WORK FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior ornamental work for transparent finish includes the following:

1. Balustrades.
2. Columns.
3. Grilles.
4. Mantels.
5. Pediment heads.
6. Pilasters.
7. <Insert description.>

B. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

C. Wood Species and Cut: [Red oak, plain sawn or cut] [Match species and cut indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building, unless otherwise indicated] <Insert species and cut>.

2.14 INTERIOR ORNAMENTAL WORK FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Interior ornamental work for opaque finish includes the following:

1. Balustrades.
2. Columns.
3. Grilles.
4. Mantels.
5. Pediment heads.
6. Pilasters.
7. <Insert description.>

B. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

C. Wood Species: [Any closed-grain hardwood] [Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine] <Insert species>.

2.15 WOOD CABINETS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy] [Laboratory].

B. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: [Flush overlay] [Reveal overlay] [Reveal overlay on face frame] [Flush inset] [Flush inset with face frame] [As indicated].

C. WI Construction Style: Style [A, Frameless] [B, Face Frame].

D. WI Construction Type: Type [I, multiple self-supporting units rigidly joined together] [II, single-length sections to fit access openings].

E. WI Door and Drawer Front Style: [Flush overlay] [Reveal overlay] [Lipped] [Flush].

F. Reveal Dimension: [1/2 inch (13 mm)] [As indicated] <Insert dimension>.

G. Wood Species and Cut for Exposed Surfaces: [Red oak, plain sawn or sliced] [White ash, plain sawn or sliced] [White birch, plain sawn or sliced] [As indicated] <Insert species and cut>.

1. Grain Direction: [Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels] [Horizontally for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels] [As indicated].
2. Matching of Veneer Leaves: [Book] [Slip] [Random] match.
3. Vertical Matching of Veneer Leaves: End match.
4. Veneer Matching within Panel Face: [Running] [Balance] [Center-balance] match.
5. Veneer Matching within Room: Provide cabinet veneers in each room or other space from a single flitch with doors, drawer fronts, and other surfaces matched in a sequenced set with continuous match where veneers are interrupted perpendicular to the grain.
6. Comply with veneer and other matching requirements indicated for blueprint-matched paneling.

H. Semiexposed Surfaces: Provide surface materials indicated below:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: [Same species and cut indicated for exposed surfaces] [Thermoset decorative panels] [Compatible species to that indicated for exposed surfaces, stained to match].

2. Drawer Sides and Backs: [Solid-hardwood lumber, same species indicated for exposed surfaces] [Solid-hardwood lumber, stained to match species indicated for exposed surfaces] [Solid-hardwood lumber] [Thermoset decorative panels].
3. Drawer Bottoms: [Hardwood plywood] [Thermoset decorative panels].

I. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

2.16 WOOD CABINETS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy] [Laboratory].

B. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: [Flush overlay] [Reveal overlay] [Reveal overlay on face frame] [Flush inset] [Flush inset with face frame] [As indicated].

C. WI Construction Style: Style [A, Frameless] [B, Face Frame].

D. WI Construction Type: Type [I, multiple self-supporting units rigidly joined together] [II, single-length sections to fit access openings].

E. WI Door and Drawer Front Style: [Flush overlay] [Reveal overlay] [Lipped] [Flush].

F. Reveal Dimension: [1/2 inch (13 mm)] [As indicated] <Insert dimension>.

G. Species for Exposed Lumber Surfaces: Any closed-grain hardwood.

H. Panel Product for Exposed Surfaces: Medium-density [fiberboard] [overlay].

I. Semiexposed Surfaces: Provide surface materials indicated below:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: [Match materials indicated for exposed surfaces] [Thermoset decorative panels].
2. Drawer Sides and Backs: [Solid-hardwood lumber] [Thermoset decorative panels].
3. Drawer Bottoms: [Hardwood plywood] [Thermoset decorative panels].

J. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

2.17 PLASTIC-LAMINATE CABINETS

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy] [Laboratory].

B. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: [Flush overlay] [Reveal overlay] [Reveal overlay on face frame] [Flush inset] [Flush inset with face frame] [As indicated].

C. WI Construction Style: Style [A, Frameless] [B, Face Frame].

D. WI Construction Type: Type [I, multiple self-supporting units rigidly joined together] [II, single-length sections to fit access openings].

E. WI Door and Drawer Front Style: [Flush overlay] [Reveal overlay] [Lipped] [Flush].

F. Reveal Dimension: [1/2 inch (13 mm)] [As indicated] <Insert dimension>.

G. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following requirements:

1. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: Grade [HGS] [HGL].
2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade [HGP].
3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade [HGS] [VGS].
4. Edges: [Grade HGS] [Grade VGS] [PVC tape, 0.018-inch (0.460-mm) minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish] [PVC T-mold matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish] [PVC edge banding,0.12 inch (3 mm) thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish].

H. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: [High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS] [High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade CLS] [Thermoset decorative panels].

a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: [PVC tape, 0.018-inch (0.460-mm) minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish] [PVC T-mold matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish] [PVC edge banding,0.12 inch (3 mm) thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish].
b. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, Grade [VGS] [CLS].

2. Drawer Sides and Backs: [Solid-hardwood lumber] [Thermoset decorative panels].
3. Drawer Bottoms: [Hardwood plywood] [Thermoset decorative panels].

I. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade BKL.

J. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:

1. As indicated by laminate manufacturer's designations.
2. Match Architect's sample.
3. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range in the following categories:

a. Solid colors, [gloss] [matte] finish.
b. Solid colors with core same color as surface, [gloss] [matte] finish.
c. Wood grains, [gloss] [matte] finish.
d. Patterns, [gloss] [matte] finish.

K. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

2.18 WOOD COUNTERTOPS

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Type of Top: Solid wood for transparent finish, edge glued, with crown direction reversed in adjacent boards, to produce widths indicated. Select boards for similarity of color and grain and arrange boards for optimum match between adjacent boards. Species and cut as follows:

1. Wood Species and Cut: [Red oak, plain sawn] [Hickory, plain sawn] [African mahogany, plain sawn] [As indicated] <Insert species and cut>.

C. Type of Top: Solid laminated for transparent finish. Narrow strips of lumber glued together with crown direction reversed in adjacent strips. Arrange strips for random mix of color and grain. Species and cut as follows:

1. Wood Species: [Red oak] [Hard maple] [Teak] [As indicated] <Insert species>.
2. Strip Thickness: [3/4 inch (19 mm)] [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [As indicated].

D. Type of Top: Panel product for transparent finish (wood veneer laminated over core) as follows:

1. Wood Species and Cut: [Red oak, rift cut] [Hickory, plain sliced] [Walnut, plain sliced] [As indicated] <Insert species and cut>.
2. Matching of Adjacent Veneer Leaves: [Book] [Slip] [Random] match.
3. Matching of Adjacent Veneer Leaves: End match.
4. Veneer Matching within Panel Face: [Running] [Balance] [Center-balance] match.
5. Edge Treatment: [Solid wood matching face for species and cut] [Wood veneer matching face for species and cut] [As indicated].
6. Core Material: [Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard] [Particleboard] [Medium-density fiberboard] [Particleboard made with exterior glue] [Medium-density fiberboard made with exterior glue] [Exterior-grade plywood] [Fire-retardant particleboard].

2.19 PLASTIC-LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate Grade: [HGS] [HGP].

C. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:

1. As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
2. Match Architect's sample.
3. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range in the following categories:

a. Solid colors, [gloss] [matte] finish.
b. Solid colors with core same color as surface, [gloss] [matte] finish.
c. Wood grains, [gloss] [matte] finish.
d. Patterns, [gloss] [matte] finish.

D. Grain Direction: Parallel to cabinet fronts.

E. Edge Treatment: [Same as laminate cladding on horizontal surfaces] [Lumber edge for transparent finish matching wood species and cut on cabinet surfaces] [As indicated].

F. Core Material: [Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard] [Particleboard] [Medium-density fiberboard] [Particleboard made with exterior glue] [Medium-density fiberboard made with exterior glue] [Exterior-grade plywood] [Fire-retardant particleboard].

G. Core Material at Sinks: [Particleboard made with exterior glue] [Medium-density fiberboard made with exterior glue] [or] [exterior-grade plywood].

H. Backer Sheet: Provide plastic-laminate backer sheet, Grade BKL, on underside of countertop substrate.

I. Paper Backing: Provide paper backing on underside of countertop substrate.

2.20 SOLID-SURFACING-MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Solid-Surfacing-Material Thickness: [1/2 inch (13 mm)] [3/4 inch (19 mm)].

C. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors of solid-surfacing material complying with the following requirements:

1. [As indicated by manufacturer's designations] [Match Architect's sample] [As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range].

D. Fabricate tops in one piece, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surfacing-material manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

1. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges of materials and configuration indicated.
2. Fabricate tops with [shop-applied backsplashes] [loose backsplashes for field application].

E. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in shop.

F. Drill holes in countertops for plumbing fittings and soap dispensers in shop.

2.21 LAMINATED-PLASTIC LABORATORY TOPS

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom].

B. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: [Grade HGS] [Grade HGP] [Chemical-resistant, Grade HGP].

C. Colors and Patterns: Provide materials and products that result in colors and patterns of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:

1. As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
2. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of [solid colors] [colors and patterns].

D. Core Material: [Particleboard] [Particleboard made with exterior glue] [Fire-retardant particleboard] [Rotary-cut lauan or closed-grain hardwood plywood] [Exterior-grade rotary-cut lauan or closed-grain hardwood plywood].

2.22 CLOSET AND UTILITY SHELVING

A. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].

B. Shelf Material: 3/4-inch (19-mm) [solid lumber] [veneer-faced panel product with solid-lumber edge] [veneer-faced panel product with veneer edge banding] [thermoset decorative panel with solid-lumber edge] [thermoset decorative panel with PVC or polyester edge banding] [medium-density fiberboard with solid-lumber edge] [particleboard with solid-lumber edge] [medium-density fiberboard with radiused edge] [particleboard with radiused and filled edge].

C. Cleats: 3/4-inch (19-mm) [solid lumber] [thermoset decorative panel] [panel product].

D. Wood Species: [Red oak] [Match species indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building, unless otherwise indicated] [Match species indicated for door to closet where shelving is located] [Any closed-grain hardwood] [Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine] <Insert species>.

2.23 SHOP FINISHING

A. Grade: Provide finishes of same grades as items to be finished.

B. General: Finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.

C. General: Shop finish transparent-finished interior architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 09 painting Sections for finishing opaque-finished architectural woodwork.

D. General: Drawings indicate items that are required to be shop finished. Finish such items at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 09 painting Sections for finishing architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.

E. Shop Priming: Shop apply the prime coat including backpriming, if any, for[transparent-finished] items specified to be field finished. Refer to Division 09 painting Sections for material and application requirements.

F. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate, backing paper, or thermoset decorative panels.

G. Transparent Finish:

1. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].
2. AWI Finish System: Synthetic penetrating oil.
3. AWI Finish System: Nitrocellulose lacquer.
4. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed lacquer.
5. AWI Finish System: Acrylic lacquer.

6. AWI Finish System: Conversion varnish.
7. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed vinyl.
8. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed polyurethane.
9. AWI Finish System: Two-component polyester.
10. WI Finish System 1a.: Nitrocellulose lacquer.
11. WI Finish System 1b.: Acrylic lacquer.
12. WI Finish System 1c.: Varnish.
13. WI Finish System 1d.: Polyurethane.
14. WI Finish System 2: Water-reducible acrylic lacquer.
15. WI Finish System 3a.: Catalyzed lacquer.
16. WI Finish System 3b.: Catalyzed vinyl lacquer.
17. WI Finish System 4: Conversion varnish.
18. WI Finish System 5: Catalyzed polyurethane.
19. WI Finish System 6: Penetrating oil.
20. Staining: [None required] [Match approved sample for color] [Match Architect's sample].
21. Wash Coat for Stained Finish: Apply wash-coat sealer to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
22. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
23. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining (if any), apply paste wood filler to open-grain woods and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.

    a. Apply wash-coat sealer after staining and before filling.

24. Sheen: [Flat, 15-30] [Satin, 31-45] [Semigloss, 46-60] [Gloss, 61-100] gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

H. Opaque Finish:

1. Grade: [Premium] [Custom] [Economy].
2. AWI Finish System: Nitrocellulose lacquer.
3. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed lacquer.
4. AWI Finish System: Acrylic lacquer.
5. AWI Finish System: Conversion varnish.
6. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed vinyl.
7. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed polyurethane.
8. AWI Finish System: Two-component polyester.
9. WI Finish System 1a.: Nitrocellulose lacquer.
10. WI Finish System 1b.: Acrylic lacquer.
11. WI Finish System 2: Water-reducible acrylic lacquer.
12. WI Finish System 3a.: Catalyzed lacquer.
13. WI Finish System 3b.: Catalyzed vinyl lacquer.
14. WI Finish System 4: Conversion varnish.
15. WI Finish System 5: Catalyzed polyurethane.
16. WI Finish System 7a.: Synthetic enamel.
17. WI Finish System 7b.: Opaque pigmented lacquer.
18. Color: [As indicated by manufacturer's designations] [Match Architect's sample] [As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range].
19. Sheen: [Flat, 15-30] [Satin, 31-45] [Semigloss, 46-60] [Gloss, 61-100] gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.

B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.

B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.

C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.

E. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.

F. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails[or finishing screws] for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.

G. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible. Do not use pieces less than [36 inches (900 mm)] [60 inches (1500 mm)] [96 inches (2400 mm)] long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary.[Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.]

1. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with plastic wood filler, sand smooth, and finish same as wood base if finished.
2. Install wall railings on indicated metal brackets securely fastened to wall framing.
3. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

H. Paneling: Anchor paneling to supporting substrate with [concealed panel-hanger clips] [splined connection strips]. Do not use face fastening, unless [covered by trim] [otherwise indicated].

1. Install flush paneling with no more than 1/16 inch in 96-inch (1.5 mm in 2400-mm) vertical cup or bow and 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) horizontal variation from a true plane.

I. Stairs: Securely anchor carriages to supporting substrates. Install stairs with treads and risers no more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from indicated position.

J. Railings:

1. General: Install rails with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) variation from a straight line.
2. Stair Rails: Glue and dowel or pin balusters to treads and railings, and railings to newel posts.
3. Wall Rails: Support rails on indicated metal brackets securely fastened to wall framing.

   a. Space rail brackets not more than <Insert dimension> o.c.

K. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.

1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
2. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. with [No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch (25-mm) penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips] [No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish] [toggle bolts through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish].

L. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.

1. Align adjacent solid-surfacing-material countertops and form seams to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations using adhesive in color to match countertop. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
2. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
3. Secure backsplashes [to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.] [and] [to walls with adhesive].
4. Calk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

M. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.

N. Refer to Division 09 Sections for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork[not indicated to be shop finished].

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.

C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 064023

SECTION 07115

BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Cold-applied, cut-back asphalt dampproofing.
2. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "LEED Requirements" for additional LEED requirements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include recommendations for method of application, primer, number of coats, coverage or thickness, and protection course.

B. Material Certificates: For each product, signed by manufacturers.

C. LEED Submittals:

1. Credit EQ 4.2: Product Data for dampproofing used on the interior of the building indicating VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers through one source from a single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

A. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 4586, Type I, Class 1, fibered.

B. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 4479, Type I, fibered

C. VOC Content: 2.5 lb/gal. (300 g/L) or less.

2.2 PROTECTION COURSE

A. Protection Course, Roll-Roofing Type: Smooth-surfaced roll roofing complying with ASTM D 6380, Class S, Type III.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Cut-Back Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.

B. Patching Compound: Manufacturer's fibered mastic of type recommended by dampproofing manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Proceed with dampproofing application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
2. Test for surface moisture according to ASTM D 4263.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protection of Other Work: Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.

B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to work; fill voids, seal joints, and apply bond breakers if any, as recommended by prime material manufacturer.

C. Apply patching compound for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections.

3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations unless more stringent requirements are indicated or required by Project conditions to ensure satisfactory performance of dampproofing.

1. Apply additional coats if recommended by manufacturer or if required to achieve coverages indicated.
2. Allow each coat of dampproofing to cure six hours before applying subsequent coats.
3. Allow 24 hours drying time prior to backfilling.

B. Apply dampproofing to precast concrete boxes, manholes, handholes, catch basins and other similar items prior to installation.

3.4 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

A. On pre-cast concrete structures, boxes, manholes, handholes, etc.: Apply 2 brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat, or 1 trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).

3.5 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTION COURSE

A. Where indicated, install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing material manufacturer's written recommendations for attaching protection course.

1. Support protection course with spot application of adhesive of type recommended by protection board manufacturer over cured coating.
2. Install protection course on the same day of installation of dampproofing (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Remove dampproofing materials from surfaces not intended to receive dampproofing.

END OF SECTION 07115

SECTION 07160

UNDERSLAB VAPOR RETARDER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Surface preparation

B. Application of underslab vapor retarder

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 3 Section- “Reinforcing” for support systems
2. Division 15 Section for Stub-ups through concrete and vapor retarder.

D. References:

1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

   a. ASTM E1745- Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil Or Granular Full Under Concrete Slabs.
   b. ASTM E154- Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth under Concrete Slabs.
   c. ASTM E96- Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
   d. ASTM E1643- Standard Practice for Installation of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth of Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.
   e. ASTM F1249-01- Standard Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission Rate Through Plastic Film and Sheeting Using a Modulated Infrared Sensor.

2. American Concrete Institute (ACI)

   a. ACI 302.1R-96 Vapor Barrier Component (plastic membrane) is not less than 10 mils thick.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for preparing substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of vapor retarder.

B. Samples: For the following products:

1. 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) square of vapor retarder.
2. 12-inch section of tape.

C. Installer Certificates: Certification that Installer complies with requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm and employees that will work on this project have a minimum of 3 years experience working on commercial installations of similar magnitude, and are familiar with the listen ASTM and AI requirements. .

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to site in manufacturer’s original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer.

B. Store materials in a clean dry area in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.

C. Stack membrane on smooth ground or wood platform to eliminate warping

D. Protect materials during handling and application to prevent damage or contamination.

E. Environmental Requirements:

1. Product not intended for uses subject to abuse or permanent exposure to the elements.
2. Do not apply on frozen ground.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET VAPOR RETARDER

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, other manufacturers and products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis of Design Product:

1. Perminator 10 mil under slab vapor mat by W.R. Meadows Inc.

C. Plastic Vapor Retarder Requirements:

1. Vapor Retarder membrane must meet of exceed all requirements of ASTM E1745 Classes A, B, & C.

a. Minimum Permeance ASTM E96: 0.024 pems.
b. Water Vapor Transmission Rate ASTM F1249 calibrated to ASTM E 96 (water method): 0.012 grains/ft^2/hr.
c. Resistance to Organisms and Substrates in Contact with Soil ASTM E154, Section 13: 0.051 Perms.
d. Tensile Strength ASTM E154, Section 9: 52 lbs force/ inch
e. Puncture Resistance ASTM D 1709, Method B: 3,770 g.
f. Water Vapor Retarder ASTM E 1745: Meets or exceeds Class A, B, & C.
g. Thickness of Retarded (plastic) ACI 302.1R-96: Not less than 10 mils.

D. Seam Tape:

1. High Density Polyethylene Tape with pressure sensitive adhesive. Minimum width 4 inches.
2. Pipe Boobs

a. Construct pipe boots from vapor barrier material and pressure sensitive tape per manufacturer's instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates to receive membrane. Notify Architect if surfaces are not acceptable. Do not begin surface preparation or application until acceptable conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Prepare surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM E 1643-98.

B. Unroll vapor barrier with the longest dimension parallel with the direction of the pour. General Superintendent and Concrete Contractors will determine this.

C. Lap vapor barrier over footings and seal with tape.

D. Overlap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's tape.

E. Seal all penetrations (including pipes) with manufacturer's pipe boot and seal with tape.

F. No penetration of the vapor barrier is allowed except for reinforcing steel and permanent utilities.

G. Repair damaged areas by cutting patches of vapor barrier, overlapping damaged area 6 inches and taping all four sides with tape.

END OF SECTION 07160

SECTION 071900

WATER REPELLENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes penetrating water-repellent treatments for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:

1. Cast-in-place concrete.
2. Natural stone.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 03 Section "Maintenance of Cast-in-Place Concrete" for penetrating polymer sealers for exterior traffic surfaces.
2. Division 04 Section "Maintenance of Stone Assemblies" for combined stone consolidation and water-repellent treatment.
3. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for integral water-repellent admixture for unit masonry assemblies.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Water repellents shall meet performance requirements indicated without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation.

1. Water Repellents: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by preconstruction testing on manufacturer's standard substrate assemblies representing those indicated for this Project.

B. Water Absorption: Minimum 90 percent reduction of water absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.

1. Cast-in Place Concrete: ASTM C 642.
2. Precast Concrete: ASTM C 642.
3. Cast Stone: ASTM C 1195.
4. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 140.
5. Natural Stone: ASTM C 97.

C. Water-Vapor Transmission: Comply with one or both of the following:

1. Maximum 10 percent reduction in rate of vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM E 96/E 96M.
2. Minimum 80 percent water-vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM D 1653.

D. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Minimum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM E 514.

E. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water-repellent properties after 2500 hours of weathering according to ASTM G 154 in comparison to water-repellent-treated specimens before weathering.

F. Chloride-Ion Intrusion in Concrete: NCHRP Report 244, Series II tests.

1. Reduction of Water Absorption: 80 percent.
2. Reduction in Chloride Content: 80 percent.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Include manufacturer's printed statement of VOC content.
2. Include manufacturer's standard colors.
3. Include manufacturer's recommended number of coats for each type of substrate and spreading rate for each separate coat.
4. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2 that specifies water repellents approved by MPI, with the proposed product highlighted.

B. Samples: For each type of water repellent and substrate indicated, 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) in size, with specified water-repellent treatment applied to half of each Sample.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified Applicator.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of water repellent, from manufacturer.

E. Preconstruction Testing Reports: For water-repellent-treated substrates.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicator Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. MPI Standards: Comply with MPI standards indicated and provide water repellents listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."

C. Mockups: Apply water repellent to each type of substrate required.

1. Locate each test application as directed by Architect.

2. Size: 10 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m) 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m).
3. Final approval by Architect of color and water-repellent application will be from test applications.

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at [Project site] <Insert location>.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:

1. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for not less than 28 days.
2. Building has been closed in for not less than 30 days before treating wall assemblies.
3. Ambient temperature is above 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below 100 deg F (37.8 deg C) and will remain so for 24 hours.
4. Substrate is not frozen and substrate-surface temperature is above 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below 100 deg F (37.8 deg C).
5. Rain or snow is not predicted within 24 hours.
6. Not less than seven days have passed since surfaces were last wet.
7. Windy conditions do not exist that might cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be treated.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which [manufacturer] [and] [Applicator] agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PENETRATING WATER REPELLENTS

A. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 400 g/L or less of VOCs.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC; Hydrozo 100 Plus.
b. Pecora Corporation; KlereSeal 940-S VOC KlereSeal 9100-S.
c. PROSOCO, Inc.; SLX100.
d. Tnemec Inc.; Dur A Pell 100.

B. Siliconate, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, methyl siliconate water repellent with 400 g/L or less of VOCs.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following:

    a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC; Thoroclear Special.
    b. PROSOCO, Inc.; Natural Stone Treatment WB.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to water-repellent manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
2. Inspect for previously applied treatments that may inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents.
3. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water repellent.
4. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying water repellent.

B. Test pH level according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions to ensure chemical bond to silica-containing or siliceous minerals.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Cleaning: Before application of water repellent, clean substrate of substances that could impair penetration or performance of product according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Cast-in-Place Concrete: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents according to ASTM E 1857.
2. Natural Stone: ASTM C 1515. ASTM D 5107. Division 04 Section "Maintenance of Stone Assemblies."

B. Protect adjoining work, including mortar and sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live vegetation.

C. Coordination with Mortar Joints: Do not apply water repellent until pointing mortar for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment has been installed and cured.

D. Coordination with Sealant Joints: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.

1. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those required.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.

B. Apply a heavy-saturation coating of water repellent, on surfaces indicated for treatment, using 15 psi- (103 kPa-) pressure spray with a fan-type spray nozzle, roller or brush to the point of saturation. Apply coating in dual passes of uniform, overlapping strokes. Remove excess material; do not allow material to puddle beyond saturation. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure unless otherwise indicated.

C. Apply a second saturation coating, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Water-Repellent Material: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when water repellent is being applied:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample water-repellent material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance of water-repellent material with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying water repellents if test results show material being used does not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying material from Project site, pay for testing, and correct deficiency of surfaces treated with rejected materials, as approved by Architect.

B. Coverage Test: In the presence of Architect, hose down a dry, repellent-treated surface to verify complete and uniform product application. A change in surface color will indicate incomplete application.

1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when surfaces will be tested.
2. Reapply water repellent until coverage test indicates complete coverage.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Correct damage to work of other trades caused by water-repellent application, as approved by Architect.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

END OF SECTION 071900

SECTION 07210

BUILDING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Cavity-wall insulation.
   2. Concealed building insulation.
   3. Exposed building insulation.
   4. Vapor retarders.
   5. Sound attenuation insulation.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 7 Sections for “Thermoplastic Membrane Roofing” for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
   2. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies” for installation in metal-framed assemblies of insulation specified by referencing this Section.
   3. Division 15 Section "Mechanical Insulation."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Plenum Rating: Provide glass fiber insulation where required in ceiling plenums whose test performance is rated as follows for use in plenums as determined by testing identical products per "Erosion Test" and "Mold Growth and Humidity Test" described in UL 181, or on comparable tests from another standard acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

   1. Erosion Test Results: Insulation shows no visible evidence of cracking, flaking, peeling, or delamination of interior surface of duct assembly, after testing for 4 hours at 2500-fpm (13-m/s) air velocity.
   2. Mold Growth and Humidity Test Results: Insulation shows no evidence of mold growth, delamination, or other deterioration due to the effects of high humidity, after inoculation with Chaetomium globosium on all surfaces and storing for 60 days at 100 percent relative humidity in the dark.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples for Verification: Full-size units for each type of exposed insulation indicated.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency for insulation products.

D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

B. Protect plastic insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.

2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

A. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I, Class 1 or 2, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, based on tests performed on un-faced core on thicknesses up to 4 inches (101 mm) with ½ inch exterior plywood laminated on the top surface.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
b. Dow Chemical Company.
c. Rmax, Inc.

2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. CertainTeed Corporation.
2. Guardian Fiberglass, Inc.
3. Johns Manville.
4. Knauf Fiber Glass.
5. Owens Corning.

B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

C. Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face.

D. Where glass-fiber blanket insulation is indicated by the following thicknesses, provide blankets in batt or roll form with thermal resistances indicated:

1. 2-1/2 inches (63 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 11 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C)
2. 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 11 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
3. 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 21 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.7 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
4. 6-1/2 inches (165 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 19 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).

2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 25 lb/1000 sq. ft. (12 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.0507 perm (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).

1. Available Products:

a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 6WW.
b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-65.

B. Fire-Retardant, Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nonwoven grid of nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 22 lb/1000 sq. ft. (10 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.1317 perm (7.56 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 5 and 60, respectively.

1. Available Products:

a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 2FR.
b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-55 FR.

C. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

D. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.

E. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type I, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT related to exposure, and Use O related to vapor-barrier-related substrates.

F. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and with demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.

2.5 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by insulation manufacturers for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor-retarder facings.

B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

2.6 INSULATION FASTENERS

A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:

1. Available Products:

a. AGM Industries, Inc.; Series T TACTOO Insul-Hangers.
b. Eckel Industries of Canada; Stic-Klip Type N Fasteners.
c. Gemco; Spindle Type.

2. Plate: Perforated galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.762 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

B. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:

1. Available Products:

a. Gemco; 90-Degree Insulation Hangers.

2. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch- (0.762-mm-) thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches (50 mm) square.
3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

C. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanized steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) square or in diameter.

1. Available Products:

a. AGM Industries, Inc.; RC150.
b. AGM Industries, Inc.; SC150.
c. Gemco; Dome-Cap.
d. Gemco; R-150.
e. Gemco; S-150.

2. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
a. Ceiling plenums.
b. Where irequired.

D. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.

1. Available Products:

a. Gemco; Clutch Clip.

E. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.

1. Available Products:

a. AGM Industries, Inc.; TACTOO Adhesive.
b. Eckel Industries of Canada; Stic-Klip Type S Adhesive.

c. Gemco; Tuff Bond Hanger Adhesive.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.

B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.

C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.

E. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

A. On units of foam-plastic board insulation, install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates indicated.

1. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies."

B. Install units of cellular-glass insulation with closely fitting joints using method indicated:

1. Gob Method: Apply 4 gobs of adhesive per unit and set units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown. Apply gobs at each corner; spread gobs to form pads 4 inches (101 mm) in diameter by 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
2. Serrated-Trowel Method: Apply adhesive to entire surface of each cellular-glass insulation unit with serrated trowel complying with insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Coat edges of insulation units with full bed of adhesive to seal joints between insulation and between insulation and adjoining construction.
4. Coat exterior face (cold face) of installed cellular-glass block insulation course with asphalt coating.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

B. Seal joints between foam-plastic insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.

C. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder to warm side of construction, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.

D. Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:

1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application indicated.
2. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated between concrete substrate and insulation.
3. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation below indicated thickness.
4. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.

E. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m).

3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN CEILINGS FOR SOUND ATTENUATION

A. Install 3-inch- (76-mm) thick, unfaced glass blanket insulation over suspended ceilings at partitions in a width that extends insulation 48 inches (1219 mm) on either side of partition.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

A. General: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.

B. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping not less than two wall studs. Fasten vapor retarders to wood framing at top, end, and bottom edges; at perimeter of wall openings; and at lap joints. Space fasteners 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.

C. Before installing vapor retarder, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.

D. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

E. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarder.

F. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarder.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07210

SECTION 07540

THERMOPLASTIC MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Mechanically fastened membrane roofing system.
2. Vapor retarder.
3. Roof insulation.

B. This Section includes the installation of acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips furnished under Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."

C. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Steel Deck" for furnishing acoustical deck rib insulation.
2. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
3. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for insulation beneath the roof deck.
4. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof penetration flashings, flashings, and counter flashings.
5. Division 7 Section "Roof Expansion Assemblies."
6. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
7. Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for roof drains.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

B. Design Uplift Pressure: The uplift pressure, calculated according to procedures in SPRI's "Wind Load Design Guide for Fully Adhered and Mechanically Fastened Roofing Systems," before multiplication by a safety factor.

C. Factored Design Uplift Pressure: The uplift pressure, calculated according to procedures in SPRI's "Wind Load Design Guide for Fully Adhered and Mechanically Fastened Roofing Systems," after multiplication by a safety factor.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Provide installed roofing membrane and base flashings that remain watertight; do not permit the passage of water; and resist specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure.

B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

C. Roofing System Design: Provide a membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE 7, for 120 miles per hour windspeed.

D. FMG Listing: Provide roofing membrane, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FMG 4450 and FMG 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system and that are listed in FMG's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FMG markings.

E. Roofing System Design: Provide a membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist the factored design uplift pressures calculated according to SPRI's "Wind Load Design Guide for Fully Adhered and Mechanically Fastened Roofing Systems."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.

1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
3. Insulation fastening patterns.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) square of sheet roofing, of color specified, including T-shaped side and end lap seam.
2. 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) square of roof insulation.
3. 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) square of walkway pads or rolls.
4. 12-inch (300-mm) length of metal termination bars.
5. 12-inch (300-mm) length of battens.
6. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
7. Six roof cover fasteners of each type, length, and finish.

D. Installer Certificates: Signed by roofing system manufacturer certifying that Installer is approved, authorized, or licensed by manufacturer to install roofing system.

E. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

1. Submit evidence of meeting performance requirements.

F. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of roofing system.

H. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system.

I. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

J. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

K. Inspection Report: Copy of roofing system manufacturer's inspection report of completed roofing installation.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's warranty.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that has UL listing and FMG approval for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain components for membrane roofing system from or approved by roofing membrane manufacturer.

E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide membrane roofing materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated as determined by testing identical products per test method below by UL, FMG, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A; ASTM E 108, for application and roof slopes indicated.

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to roofing system including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.

1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Failure includes roof leaks.

1. Special warranty includes roofing membrane, base flashings, roofing membrane accessories, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, vapor retarder, walkway products and other components of membrane roofing system.
2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.

2.2 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN ROOFING MEMBRANE

A. Fabric-Reinforced Thermoplastic Polyolefin Sheet: Uniform, flexible sheet formed from a thermoplastic polyolefin, internally fabric or scrim reinforced, and as follows:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Bond-Cote Corporation.
b. Duro-Last Roofing, Inc.
c. GAF Materials Corporation.

2. Thickness: 60 mils nominal.
3. Exposed Face Color: White.
4. Physical Properties:

a. Breaking Strength: 225 lbf (1 kN); ASTM D 751, grab method.
b. Elongation at Break: 15 percent; ASTM D 751.
c. Tearing Strength: 55 lbf (245 N) minimum; ASTM D 751, Procedure B.
d. Brittleness Point: Minus 22 deg F (30 deg C).
e. Ozone Resistance: No cracks after sample, wrapped around a 3-inch- (75-mm-) diameter mandrel, is exposed for 166 hours to a temperature of 104 deg F (40 deg C) and an ozone level of 100 pphm (100 mPa); ASTM D 1149.
f. Resistance to Heat Aging: 90 percent minimum retention of breaking strength, elongation at break, and tearing strength after 166 hours at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D 573.
g. Water Absorption: Less than 4 percent mass change after 166 hours' immersion at 158 deg F (70 deg C); ASTM D 471.
h. Linear Dimension Change: Plus or minus 2 percent; ASTM D 1204.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.

1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall meet VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced thermoplastic polyolefin sheet flashing, 55 mils (1.4 mm) thick, minimum, of same color as sheet membrane.

C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard bonding adhesive for membrane, and solvent-based bonding adhesive for base flashings.

D. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

E. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.

F. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch (25 mm) wide by 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) thick, prepunched.

G. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.

H. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.

2.4 VAPOR RETARDER

A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).

2.5 ROOF INSULATION

A. General: Provide preformed roof insulation boards that comply with requirements and referenced standards, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes and of thicknesses indicated.

B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, glass-fiber mat facer on underside surfaces and laminate ½" plywood on the top surface, minimum of 60 PSI compressive strength.

1. Manufacturers:
   a. GAF Materials Corporation.
   b. Rmax Operating, LLC

C. Insulation thickness: As indicated on the drawings.

D. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.

B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

C. Cold Fluid-Applied Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard cold fluid-applied adhesive formulated to adhere roof insulation to substrate.

D. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric mat, water permeable and resistant to ultraviolet degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.

E. Metal Securement System: Perimeter securement flashing and strapping fabricated from stainless steel, a minimum of 0.031 inch (0.8 mm) thick. Provide fasteners as recommended by mortar-faced insulation manufacturer.

2.7 WALKWAYS

A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:

1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and set and braced and that roof drains are securely clamped in place.
2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck comply with requirements in Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."
4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

D. Comply with roofing manufacturer's requirements.

3.3 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

A. Loosely lay polyethylene-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.

1. Seal side and end laps with tape.

B. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.

B. Comply with membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.

C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.

D. Install one or more layers of insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) or greater, install 2 or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.

E. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.

F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.

1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.

G. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.

1. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FMG's "Approval Guide" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
2. Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

H. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.

1. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FMG's "Approval Guide" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.

2. Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
3. Install subsequent layers of insulation in a cold fluid-applied adhesive.

3.5 MECHANICALLY FASTENED ROOFING MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Install roofing membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll roofing membrane and allow to relax before installing.

1. Install sheet according to ASTM D 5082.

B. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.

C. Accurately align roofing membranes and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.

D. Mechanically fasten roofing membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.

E. Apply roofing membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.

F. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roofing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.

1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roofing membrane.
2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing membrane that does not meet requirements.

G. Spread sealant over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal roofing membrane in place with clamping ring.

H. In-Splice Attachment: Secure one edge of roofing membrane using fastening plates or metal battens centered within membrane splice and mechanically fasten roofing membrane to roof deck. Field-splice seam.

I. Through-Membrane Attachment: Secure roofing membrane using fastening plates or metal battens and mechanically fasten roofing membrane to roof deck. Cover battens and fasteners with a continuous cover strip.

J. Install roofing membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing.

3.6 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Apply solvent-based bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply bonding adhesive to seam area of flashing.

C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with sheet flashing.

D. Clean seam areas and overlap and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.

E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.7 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform roof tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.

B. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion and submit report to Architect.

1. Notify Architect or Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.

C. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where test results or inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.9 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.

B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.10 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

A. WHEREAS _____of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:

1. Owner:
2. Address:
3. Building Name/Type:
4. Address:
5. Area of Work: Date of substantial completion.
6. Acceptance Date:
7. Warranty Period: 20 years.
8. Expiration Date:

B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,

C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.

D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:

1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:

   a. lightning;
   b. peak gust wind speed exceeding 120 mph (m/sec);
   c. fire;
   d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
   e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
   f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
   g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.

2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said

alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.

5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, 20___.

1. Authorized Signature: _____
2. Name:
3. Title:

END OF SECTION 07540

SECTION 07555

MODIFIED BITUMINOUS PROTECTED MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section include styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS)-modified bituminous protected membrane roofing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06100 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 07210 "Building Insulation" for insulation beneath the roof deck.
3. Section 07920 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.
4. Section 15165 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for roof drains.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review deck substrate requirements for conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.

8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

B. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including:

1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
3. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Cap sheet, of color required.
2. Flashing sheet, of color required.
3. Ballast in gradation and color indicated.
4. Roof paver, full sized, in each color and texture required.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

1. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.

C. Product Test Reports: For components of roofing system, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.

E. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed and FM Global approved for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.

1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, roofing accessories, roof pavers, and other components of roofing system.
2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as membrane roofing, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, vapor retarders, roof pavers, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. SBS-Modified Bituminous Roofing:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Flex Membranes International.
b. GAF Materials Corporation.
c. IKO.
d. Johns Manville.
e. Malarkey Roofing Company.
f. Siplast, Inc.
g. Soprema, Inc.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for roofing system from same manufacturer as roofing or manufacturer approved by roofing manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Installed roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.

1. Accelerated Weathering: Roofing system shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
2. Impact Resistance: Roofing system shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746 or ASTM D 4272.

B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

C. Roofing System Design: Tested by a qualified testing agency to resist the following uplift pressures:

1. Corner Uplift Pressure: 120 lbf/sq. ft.
2. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: 120 lbf/sq. ft.
3. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: 120 lbf/sq. ft.

D. FM Global Listing: Roofing, base flashings, and component materials shall comply with requirements in FM Global 4450 or FM Global 4470 as part of a built-up roofing system, and shall be listed in FM Global's "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Global markings.

1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-120.
2. Hail-Resistance Rating: SH.

E. Solar Reflectance Index: Not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.

F. Energy Star Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.

G. Energy Performance: Roofing system shall have an initial solar reflectance index of not less than 0.70 and an emissivity of not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

H. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

I. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.3 ROOFING SHEET MATERIALS

A. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

1. Weight: 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.9 kg/sq. m), minimum.

B. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

C. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type VI, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

D. SBS-Modified Asphalt Granule-Surface Roofing Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers); granule surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

2.4 BASE FLASHING SHEET MATERIALS

A. SBS-Modified Asphalt Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers); smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

B. SBS-Modified Asphalt Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers); granule surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

1. Granule Color: White.

C. SBS-Modified Asphalt Metal-Foil-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil-surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

1. Foil Surfacing: Stainless steel.

D. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

2.5 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.

1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content:

   a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
   b. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
   c. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
   d. Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
   e. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
   f. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
   g. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
   h. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.

3. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

B. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing and base flashings.

C. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing system manufacturer for application.

D. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen; nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.

E. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate; tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

F. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.

G. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Section 07620 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

H. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, color to match roofing.

I. Separator Sheet: Polyethylene sheet, 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, minimum.

J. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide accessories recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

2.6 ROOF INSULATION

A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Global-approved roof insulation.

1. Polyisocyanurate Insulation

a. Flat

b. Tapered

2. References:

a. ASTM C 209 Methods of Testing Insulating Board, Structural and Decorative.

b. ASTM C 1289 – Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Thermal Insulation Board.

c. ASTM D 1621 – Test Methods for Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular Plastics.

d. ASTM E 84 – Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Construction Materials.

e. FM Approval Guide – FM 4450 Approved Standard – Class “1” Insulated Steel Roof Decks.

3. Performance Requirements

a. UL 790 – Class “A” Roof System

b. FM 4450 Class “1” Insulated Steel Roof Decks (Foam Core Only).

4. Verification Samples – Two (2) for each product

a. Submit 6 inch x 6” inch samples of each board type required

b. Submit samples of each fastener type required.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance available manufactuers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include:

1. Atlas Roofing Corporation

2. GAF

3. Hunter Panels

4. Johns – Mansville

5. RMax Operating, LLC

C. Materials:

1. Flat and Tapered Foam Insulation with fiber – reinforced facers, closed – cell polyisocyanurate foam core boned to fiber-reinforced facers.

2. FM Approval – wind uplift classification: 1- 120.

3. Compressive Strength 25 psi Grade 3

4. Thickness – As indicated on the drawings

5. Slope for tapered panels – ¼” per I LO rum.

2.7 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.

B. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.

C. Metal Securement System: Perimeter securement flashing and strapping fabricated from stainless steel, a minimum of 0.031 inch (0.8 mm) thick. Provide fasteners as recommended by mortar-faced insulation manufacturer.

2.8 WALKWAY PADS

A. Basis - of - Design: Subject to compliance with requirements provide the following or comparable product:

1. General Asphalt Corporation
   Tampa, Florida 33675-5449
   www.apoc.com

2. APOC ® 5040 PEK – TOP ® walkway pads.

   a. AP – 5249

   b. Thickness – 1 inch

B. Materials – Non skid, compressed and molded asphalt, reinforcing fibers and mineral fibers. Compressed by heat between inorganic fiberglass matts, top and bottom with ceramic granule surfacing.

C. Adhesives: APOC plastic or flashing cement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work:

1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
2. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."

1. Install roofing system [**MBA**] [**MBS**]-4-C-[**T**] [**M**] [**L**]-P, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and Section requirements.

B. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:

1. Membrane: **MBS (SBS)**.
2. Deck Type: Steel.
3. Adhering Method: **L (cold-applied adhesive)**.
4. Base Sheet: One.
5. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: One.
6. Number of Modified Asphalt Sheets: Two.
7. Surfacing Type: P (protected).

C. Start installation of roofing in presence of manufacturer's technical personnel.

D. Coordinate installation of roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.

1. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed roofing sheets with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt, with joints and edges sealed.
2. Complete terminations and base flashings, and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
3. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

E. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.

3.4 BASE-SHEET INSTALLATION

A. Install lapped base-sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:

1. Adhere to substrate in a uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive.

3.5 BASE-PLY SHEET INSTALLATION

A. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend glass-fiber base-ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt, to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.

3.6 MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Install modified bituminous roofing sheet and cap sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing sheets over and terminate beyond cants.

1. Unroll roofing sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.

B. Laps: Accurately align roofing sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.

1. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
2. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.

C. Install roofing sheets so side and end laps shed water.

3.7 FLASHING AND STRIPPING INSTALLATION

A. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloping and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
2. Backer-Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing at cants in cold-applied adhesive.
3. Backer-Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive.
4. Flashing-Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive.

B. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above roofing and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of roofing.

C. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.

1. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement.

D. Install roofing cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Roof Drains: Set 30-by-30-inch (760-by-760-mm) metal flashing in bed of asphaltic adhesive on roofing. Cover metal flashing with roofing cap-sheet stripping, and extend a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing. Clamp roofing, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.

1. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 COATING INSTALLATION

A. Apply coating to base flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.

3.9 INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Loosely lay separator sheet over cooled roofing membrane, with minimum 2-inch (50-mm) side laps and 4-inch (150-mm) end laps.

B. Loosely lay board insulation units over roofing, with long joints of insulation in continuous straight lines and with end joints staggered between rows. Abut edges and ends between units.

C. Install one or more layers of insulation to achieve required thickness over roofing. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.

1. Where overall insulation thickness is 2 inches (50 mm) or more, install required thickness in two or more layers, with joints of each succeeding layer staggered over joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.

D. Install geotextile fabric over insulation, overlapping edges and ends at least 12 inches (300 mm). Do not lap ends of fabric sheets within 72 inches (1800 mm) of roof perimeter. Extend fabric 2 to 3 inches (50 to 75 mm) above ballast at perimeter and penetrations. Apply additional layer of fabric around penetrations to prevent aggregate from getting between penetration and insulation. Do not cover drains or restrict water flow to drains.

3.10 WALKWAY PAD (S) INSTALLATION

A. Chalk line walkways where pads are to be installed to insure straight and time installation.

B. Sweep clean the underside of pads.Apply plastic on flashing cement and adhere to roofing top surface. Allow 2”-4” spacing between pads, for drainage. Used a utility knife to cut and fit around roof top units.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.

1. Electric Field Vector Mapping (EFVM): Testing agency shall survey entire roof area for potential leaks using electric field vector mapping (EFVM).

B. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:

1. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
2. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
3. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Flood Testing: Flood test each roofing area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing roofing and flashing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.

1. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Maintain 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance from top of base flashing.
2. Flood each area for 48 hours.
3. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.

D. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.

1. Notify Architect and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.

E. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

F. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.12 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.

B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.13 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

A. WHEREAS _____ of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:

1. Owner: City of Houston.
2. Address: _____.
3. Building Name/Type: _____.
4. Address: _____.
5. Area of Work: _____.
6. Acceptance Date: _____.
7. Warranty Period: _____.
8. Expiration Date: _____.

B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,

C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be

made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.

D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:

1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:

   a. lightning;
   b. peak gust wind speed exceeding 120 **mph (m/s)**;
   c. fire;
   d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
   e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
   f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
   g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.

2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, _____.

1. Authorized Signature: _____.
2. Name: _____.
3. Title: _____.

END OF SECTION 07555

SECTION 07710

MANUFACTURED ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following manufactured roof specialties:

1. Copings.
2. Roof edge drainage systems.
3. Counterflashings and reglets.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing reglets.
2. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for installing reglets.
3. Division 5 Section "Architectural Joint Systems" for manufactured sheet metal expansion-joint covers.
4. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
5. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for custom- and site-fabricated sheet metal flashing and trim.
6. Division 7 Section "Roof Expansion Assemblies" for manufactured roof expansion-joint cover assemblies.
7. Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
8. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Manufacture and install manufactured roof specialties to resist thermally induced movement and exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, and fastener disengagement.

B. FMG Listing: Manufacture and install copings that are listed in FMG's "Approval Guide" and approved for Windstorm Classification, Class 1-120. Identify materials with FMG markings.

C. Manufacture and install copings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:

1. Design Wind Load: 120 mph.

D. Thermal Movements: Provide manufactured roof specialties that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Water Infiltration: Provide manufactured roof specialties that do not allow water infiltration to building interior.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts of manufactured roof specialties, including plans and elevations. Identify factory- vs. field-assembled work. Include the following:

1. Details for fastening, joining, supporting, and anchoring manufactured roof specialties including fasteners, clips, cleats, and attachments to adjoining work.
2. Details for expansion and contraction.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of manufactured roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, verifying compliance of copings with performance requirements.

E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of manufactured roof specialties with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace manufactured roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
3. Basis-of-Design Product: The designs for copings, roof edge drainage system and counterflashings and reglets are based on the products named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named products or comparable products by one of the other manufacturers specified.

2.2 EXPOSED METALS

A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for use and finish indicated, finished as follows:

1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
2. High-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

a. Fluoropolymer 3-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard 3-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 1.5 mil (0.038 mm); complying with AAMA 2605.

3. Anodic Finish: Apply the following finish:

a. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
b. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A44 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, finished as follows:

1. High-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

a. Fluoropolymer 3-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard 3-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 1.5 mil (0.038 mm); complying with AAMA 2605.

2. Anodic Finish: Apply the following finish:

a. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
b. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

C. Prepainted, Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation, structural quality, and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.

1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
2. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

a. Fluoropolymer 3-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard 3-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 1.5 mil (0.038 mm); complying with physical properties and coating performance requirements of AAMA 2605, except as modified below:

1) Humidity Resistance: 1000 hours.
2) Salt-Spray Resistance: 1000 hours.

2.3 CONCEALED METALS

A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.

B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.

C. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.

B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to withstand design loads.

1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.

C. Sealing Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealing tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape.

D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

E. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

F. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

G. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.

H. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.

1. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized paper, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).

2.5 COPINGS

A. Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of formed-metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), concealed anchorage, concealed splice plates with same finish as coping caps, mitered corner units, and end cap units.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Architectural Products Co.
b. ATAS International, Inc.
c. Castle Metal Products.

d. Cheney Flashing Company.
e. Hickman, W. P. Company.
f. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
g. Metal-Era, Inc.
h. Metal-Fab Manufacturing LLC.
i. MM Systems Corporation.
j. Perimeter Systems, a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Co.
k. Petersen Aluminum Corp.

2. Coping Caps: Snap-on, fabricated from the following exposed metal:

a. Aluminum: 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

3. Coping Cap Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Corners: Continuously welded, Mechanically clinched and sealed watertight, Soldered.
5. Special Fabrications: Radiussed sections, Arched sections, Bullnose face leg, Two-way sloped coping cap.
6. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized steel sheet, 12 inches (300 mm) wide, 0.028 inch (0.7 mm) thick, with integral cleats.

2.6 ROOF EDGE FLASHINGS

A. Roof Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) and a continuous formed- or extruded-aluminum anchor bar with integral drip edge cleat to engage fascia cover. Provide matching mitered and welded corner units.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Hickman, W. P. Company.
b. Metal-Era, Inc.
c. MM Systems Corporation.

2. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:

a. Formed Aluminum: 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

3. Fascia Cover Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
5. Special Fabrications: Radiussed sections, Arched sections, Bullnose fascia cover, Cornice fascia cover, Cove fascia cover.
6. Fascia Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats, Wall cap, Soffit trim, Overflow scuppers, Spillout scuppers, Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters.

2.7 ROOF EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Architectural Products Co.
2. ATAS International, Inc.
3. Berger Bros. Co.

4. Castle Metal Products.
5. Cheney Flashing Company.
6. Hickman, W. P. Company.
7. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
8. Metal-Era, Inc.
9. Metal-Fab Manufacturing LLC.
10. MM Systems Corporation.
11. Obdyke, Benjamin Incorporated.
12. Perimeter Systems, a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Co.
13. Petersen Aluminum Corp.

B. Gutters and Downspouts: Manufactured formed gutter in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), with mitered and welded or soldered corner units, end caps, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch (25 mm) above front gutter rim. Furnish with flat-stock gutter straps and gutter support brackets and expansion joints and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.

1. Fabricate gutter from the following exposed metal:

a. Prepainted, Zinc-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch (0.85 mm) thick.

2. Gutter Style: Box type.
3. Gutter Accessories: Bronze wire ball downspout strainer.
4. Downspouts: Rectangular closed-face or open-faced with mitered elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish wall brackets, from same material and finish as downspouts, with anchors.

a. Prepainted, Zinc-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch (0.85 mm) thick.

C. Parapet Scuppers: Manufactured scuppers with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof.

1. Manufacture parapet scuppers from the following exposed metal:

a. Prepainted, Zinc-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch (0.85 mm) thick.

D. Conductor Heads: Manufactured conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated complete with outlet tubes, exterior flange trim, and built-in overflows.

1. Fabricate conductor heads from the following exposed metal:

a. Prepainted, Zinc-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch (0.85 mm) thick.

2.8 COUNTERFLASHINGS AND REGLETS

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Castle Metal Products.
2. Cheney Flashing Company.
3. Fry Reglet Corporation.
4. Hickman, W. P. Company.

5. Keystone Flashing Company.
6. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
7. Metal-Era, Inc.
8. MM Systems Corporation.

B. Counterflashings: Manufactured units in lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) designed to snap into reglets and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal in thickness indicated:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick.

C. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashings indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions, from the following exposed metal in thickness indicated:

1. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.2 mm) thick.
2. Type: Surface-mounted with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.

D. Accessories: Counterflashing wind-restraint clips

2.9 FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for manufactured roof specialties.
2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install manufactured roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor manufactured roof specialties securely in place and capable of resisting forces specified in performance requirements. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete manufactured roof specialty systems.

1. Install manufactured roof specialties with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
2. Torch cutting of manufactured roof specialties is not permitted.

B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel manufactured roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing exposed-to-view components of manufactured roof specialties directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.
3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.

C. Install manufactured roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil-canning, buckling, or tool marks.

D. Install manufactured roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.

E. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed manufactured roof specialties. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet (3.6 m) with no unplanned joints within 18 inches (450 mm) of corners or intersections.

F. Fasteners: Use fasteners of type and size recommended by manufacturer but of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for nails and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) for wood screws.

G. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by manufacturer of roofing specialties.

3.3 COPING INSTALLATION

A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.

B. Anchor copings to resist uplift and outward forces according to performance requirements.

1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at manufacturer's recommended spacing for 120 mph wind spells.
2. Interlock face leg drip edge into continuous cleat anchored to substrate at manufacturer's recommended spacing for 120 mph wind spells. Anchor back leg of coping with screw fasteners and elastomeric washers at manufacturer's recommended spacing for 120 mph wind spells.

3.4 ROOF EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. General: Install gutters, downspouts, parapet scuppers, and conductor head to produce a complete roof drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.

B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter brackets and straps spaced not more than 36 inches (900 mm) apart. Slope gutters to downspouts.

1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet (15.2 m) apart. Install expansion joint caps.
2. Install continuous gutter screens on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, removable or hinged to swing open for cleaning gutters.

C. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. in between.

1. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.

D. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers where indicated through parapet. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.

1. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal or solder to scupper.
2. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
3. Seal or solder exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.

E. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor head rim 1 inch (25 mm) below scrupper and gutter discharge.

3.5 COUNTERFLASHING AND REGLET INSTALLATION

A. Counterflashings: Coordinate installation of counterflashings with installation of base flashings. Insert counterflashings in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashings. Extend counterflashings 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and bed with elastomeric sealant.

B. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete” and 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies."

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.

B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.

C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as manufactured roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused

fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

D. Replace manufactured roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07710

SECTION 07720

ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Roof hatches.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders for access to roof hatches.
2. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry" for wood nailers.
3. Division 7 low-slope roofing Sections for roofing accessories.
4. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-fabricated metal flashing and counterflashing, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roof accessories. Show layouts of roof accessories including plans and elevations. Indicate dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, and components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:

1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.

D. Samples: For each type of exposed factory-applied finish required and for each type of roof accessory indicated, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" details for fabrication of units, including flanges and cap flashing to coordinate with type of roofing indicated.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Pack, handle, and ship roof accessories properly labeled in heavy-duty packaging to prevent damage.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify required openings for each type of roof accessory by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1. With Architect's approval, adjust location of roof accessories that would interrupt roof drainage routes, roof expansion joints, or other.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 METAL MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coated.

B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, AZ50 (AZM150) coated.

C. Prepainted, Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Steel sheet metallic coated by hot-dip process and prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.

1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coated.
2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coated.

D. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish. Coil-coat finish as follows:

1. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: Nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

E. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use, mill finished.

F. Stainless-Steel Shapes or Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 or Type 316, No. 2D finish.

G. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube, baked-enamel finished.

I. Galvanized Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube, hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.

J. Galvanized Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Acrylic Glazing: ASTM D 4802, thermoformable, monolithic sheet, category as standard with manufacturer, Type UVA (formulated with UV absorber), Finish 1 (smooth or polished).

B. Polycarbonate Glazing: Thermoformable, monolithic polycarbonate sheets manufactured by extrusion process, burglar-resistance rated per UL 972 with an average impact strength of 12 to 16 ft-lbf/in. (640 to 854 J/m) of width when tested according to ASTM D 256, Method A (Izod).

C. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

D. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

E. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

F. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

G. Security Grilles: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M steel bars spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. in 1 direction and 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. in the other.

1. Factory Finishing:

a. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
b. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
c. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer; selected for resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.

H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

I. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.

J. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.

1. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized paper, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).

K. Fasteners: Same metal as metals being fastened, or nonmagnetic stainless steel or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners.

L. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC; or flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.

M. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

N. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant, polyisobutylene plasticized, and heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

O. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, nonasbestos, fibrated asphalt cement designed for trowel application or other adhesive compatible with roofing system.

2.4 ROOF HATCHES

A. Roof Hatches: Fabricate roof hatches with insulated double-wall lids and insulated double-wall curb frame with integral deck mounting flange and lid frame counterflashing. Fabricate with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints. Provide continuous weathertight perimeter gasketing and equip with corrosion-resistant or hot-dip galvanized hardware.

1. Available Manufacturers:

   a. Babcock-Davis; a Cierra Products Inc. Company.
   b. Bilco Company (The).
   c. Bristolite Skylights.
   d. Custom Curb, Inc.
   e. Dur-Red Products.
   f. Hi Pro International, Inc.
   g. J. L. Industries, Inc.
   h. Metallic Products Corporation.
   i. Milcor Inc.; a Gibraltar Company.
   j. Nystrom, Inc.
   k. O'Keeffe's Inc.
   l. Precision Ladders, LLC.
   m. Roof Products & Systems Corporation.
   n. ThyCurb; Div of Thybar Corporation.
   o. Wasco Products, Inc.
   p. Western Canwell.

2. Loads: Fabricate roof hatches to withstand 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.9-kPa) external and 20-lbf/sq. ft. (0.95-kPa) internal loads.
3. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 30 by 36 inches (750 by 900 mm).
4. Type and Size: Double-leaf lid, 72 by 96 inches (1830 by 2440 mm).
5. Curb and Lid Material: Galvanized or [Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.079 inch (2.0 mm) thick.
6. Curb and Lid Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
7. Curb and Lid Material: Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.

   a. Finish: Prime painted, Baked enamel, High-performance organic coating, or Powder coat.
   b. Finish: Mill, Clear anodic, or Color anodic.

8. Insulation: Cellulosic-fiber, Glass-fiber or Polyisocyanurate board.
9. Interior Lid Liner: Manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
10. Exterior Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as metal curb.
11. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
12. Fabricate units to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm) above roofing membrane, unless otherwise indicated.
13. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate hatch curbs with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

14. Hardware: Stainless-steel spring latch with turn handles, butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.

    a. Provide 2-point latch on covers larger than 84 inches (2130 mm).
    b. Provide remote-control operation.

15. Ladder Safety Post: Manufacturer's standard ladder safety post. Post to lock in place on full extension. Provide release mechanism to return post to closed position.

    a. Test Load: 280 lbs vertical.
    b. Height: 42 inches (1060 mm) above finished roof deck.
    c. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, mill finished.
    d. Diameter: Pipe with 1-5/8-inch (41-mm) OD tube.

16. Safety Railing System: Manufacturer's standard complete system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and all accessories required for a complete installation (if required by code).

    a. Test Load: 150 lbs lateral load.
    b. Height: 42 inches (1060 mm) above finished roof deck.
    c. Pipe or Tube: 1-1/4-inch (31-mm) ID galvanized pipe or 1-5/8-inch (41-mm) OD galvanized tube.
    d. Flat Bar: 2-inch- (50-mm-) high by 3/8-inch- (9-mm-) thick galvanized steel.
    e. Chain Passway Enclosure: Galvanized proof coil chain with quick link on fixed end.
    f. Self-Latching Gate: Fabricated of same materials and rail spacing as safety railing system. Provide manufacturer's standard hinges and self-latching mechanism.
    g. Pipe Ends and Tops: Covered or plugged with weather-resistant material.
    h. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members that are exposed to exterior or to moisture from condensation or other sources.
    i. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a watertight manner.
    j. Close exposed ends of handrail and railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
    k. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of work.

    1. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored and is ready to receive roof accessories.
    2. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
    3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof accessories securely in place and capable of resisting forces specified. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for completing roof accessory installation. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, and fastener disengagement.

B. Install roof accessories to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing exposed-to-view components of roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.
3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by roof accessory manufacturers for waterproof performance.

D. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.

E. Roof Hatch Installation:

1. Check roof hatch for proper operation. Adjust operating mechanism as required. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware.
2. Attach safety railing system to roof hatch curb (if required by code).
3. Attach ladder safety post according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 TOUCH UP

A. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting in accordance with Division 9 painting Sections.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07720

SECTION 07841

THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes through-penetration firestop systems for penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 7 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."
2. Division 13 Sections specifying fire-suppression piping penetrations.
3. Division 15 Sections specifying duct and piping penetrations.
4. Division 16 Sections specifying cable and conduit penetrations.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: For penetrations through the following fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items, provide through-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated.

1. Fire-resistance-rated walls including fire walls, fire partitions, fire barriers, and smoke barriers.

B. Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with the following ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479:

1. F-Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with F-ratings indicated, but not less than that equaling or exceeding fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
2. T-Rated Systems: For the following conditions, provide through-penetration firestop systems with T-ratings indicated, as well as F-ratings, where systems protect penetrating items exposed to potential contact with adjacent materials in occupiable floor areas:

a. Penetrations located outside wall cavities.
b. Penetrations located outside fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosures.

3. L-Rated Systems: Where through-penetration firestop systems are indicated in smoke barriers, provide through-penetration firestop systems with L-ratings indicated of not more than 3.0 cfm/sq. ft (0.01524cu. m/s x sq. m) at both ambient temperatures and 400 deg F (204 deg C).

C. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that, after curing, do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.

1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches (100 mm) in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved, either by installing floor plates or by other means.
3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.

D. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For each through-penetration firestop system, show each type of construction condition penetrated, relationships to adjoining construction, and type of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency that evidences compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.

1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each through-penetration firestop system configuration for construction and penetrating items.
2. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular through-penetration firestop condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

C. Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule: Indicate locations of each through-penetration firestop system, along with the following information:

1. Types of penetrating items.
2. Types of constructions penetrated, including fire-resistance ratings and, where applicable, thicknesses of construction penetrated.
3. Through-penetration firestop systems for each location identified by firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

E. Product Certificates: For through-penetration firestop system products, signed by product manufacturer.

F. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating through-penetration firestop system complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FMG according to FMG 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors."

B. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing through-penetration firestop systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its through-penetration firestop system products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.

C. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain through-penetration firestop systems, for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.

E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:

1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Part 1 Performance Requirements" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:

a. Through-penetration firestop system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
b. Through-penetration firestop systems correspond to those indicated by reference to through-penetration firestop system designations listed by the following:

1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver through-penetration firestop system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life if applicable, qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.

B. Store and handle materials for through-penetration firestop systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install through-penetration firestop systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Ventilate through-penetration firestop systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are installed according to specified requirements.

B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate through-penetration firestop systems.

C. Notify inspecting agency at least seven days in advance of through-penetration firestop system installations; confirm dates and times on days preceding each series of installations.

D. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until each installation has been examined by inspecting agency and building inspector, if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, through-penetration firestop systems that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, those systems in the Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule at the end of Part 3 on Drawings that are produced by one of the following manufacturers:

1. HILTI, Inc.
2. 3M; Fire Protection Products Division.
3. USG Corporation.

2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that are compatible with one another; with the substrates forming openings; and with the items, if any, penetrating through-penetration firestop systems, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Accessories: Provide components for each through-penetration firestop system that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestop systems indicated. Accessories include, but are not limited to, the following items:

1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:

    a. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    b. Fire-rated form board.
    c. Fillers for sealants.

2. Temporary forming materials.
3. Substrate primers.
4. Collars.
5. Steel sleeves.

2.3 FILL MATERIALS

A. General: Provide through-penetration firestop systems containing the types of fill materials indicated in the Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule at the end of Part 3 by referencing the types of materials described in this Article. Fill materials are those referred to in directories of referenced testing and inspecting agencies as "fill," "void," or "cavity" materials.

B. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.

C. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that after cure do not re-emulsify during exposure to moisture.

D. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.

E. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized steel sheet.

F. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.

G. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.

H. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.

I. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives.

J. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

K. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a nonslumping, gunnable sealant, unless indicated firestop system limits use to nonsag grade for both opening conditions.
2. Grade for Horizontal Surfaces: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces.
3. Grade for Vertical Surfaces: Nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces.

2.4 MIXING

A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing through-penetration firestop systems to comply with firestop system manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:

1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of through-penetration firestop systems.

2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with through-penetration firestop systems. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent through-penetration firestop systems from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestop system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestop system's seal with substrates.

3.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and with firestop system manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.

B. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.

1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.

C. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:

1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify through-penetration firestop systems with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches (150 mm) of edge of the firestop systems so that labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestop systems. Use mechanical fasteners for metal labels. For plastic labels, use self-adhering type with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed and, in combination with label material, will result in partial destruction of label if removal is attempted. Include the following information on labels:

1. The words "Warning - Through-Penetration Firestop System - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.

3. Through-penetration firestop system designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
4. Date of installation.
5. Through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's name.
6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified, independent inspecting agency to inspect through-penetration firestops. Independent inspecting agency shall comply with ASTM E 2174 requirements including those related to qualifications, conducting inspections, and preparing test reports.

B. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace through-penetration firestop systems so they comply with requirements.

C. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and firestop installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated through-penetration firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM SCHEDULE

A. Where UL-classified systems are selected, they refer to alpha-alpha-numeric designations listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.

B. Where OPL-classified systems are selected, they refer to alpha-numeric design numbers in OPL's "Directory of Listed Building Products, Materials, & Assemblies."

C. Where ITS-listed systems are selected, they refer to design numbers listed in ITS's "Directory of Listed Products," "Firestop Systems" Section.

D. Firestop Systems with No Penetrating Items:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:

a. Latex sealant.
b. Silicone sealant.
c. Intumescent putty.
d. Mortar.

E. Firestop Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:

   a. Latex sealant.
   b. Silicone sealant.
   c. Intumescent putty.
   d. Mortar.

F. Firestop Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:

   a. Latex sealant.
   b. Silicone sealant.
   c. Intumescent putty.
   d. Intumescent wrap strips.
   e. Firestop device.

G. Firestop Systems for Electrical Cables:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:

   a. Latex sealant.
   b. Silicone sealant.
   c. Intumescent putty.
   d. Intumescent wrap strips.
   e. Firestop device.

H. Firestop Systems for Cable Trays:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:

   a. Latex sealant.
   b. Intumescent putty.
   c. Silicone foam.
   d. Pillows/bags.
   e. Mortar.

I. Firestop Systems for Insulated Pipes:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:

   a. Latex sealant.
   b. Intumescent putty.
   c. Silicone foam.
   d. Intumescent wrap strips.

J. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:

   a. Latex sealant.
   b. Intumescent putty.
   c. Mortar.

K. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or both of the following:

   a. Latex sealant.
   b. Mortar.

L. Firestop Systems for Groupings of Penetrants:

1. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:

   a. Latex sealant.
   b. Mortar.
   c. Intumescent wrap strips.
   d. Firestop device.
   e. Intumescent composite sheet.

END OF SECTION 07841

SECTION 07842

FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes fire-resistive joint systems for the following:

1. Floor-to-floor joints.
2. Floor-to-wall joints.
3. Head-of-wall joints.
4. Wall-to-wall joints.
5. Perimeter fire-resistive joint systems consisting of floor-to-wall joints between perimeter edge of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and exterior curtain walls.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Architectural Joint Systems" for fire-resistive joint systems consisting of metal frames and covers and flexible seals.
2. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for floor-to-wall joints indicated as perimeter fire-containment systems between perimeter edge of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and back of non-fire-resistance-rated exterior curtain walls.
3. Division 7 Section "Roof Expansion Assemblies" for fire-resistive roof expansion assemblies.
4. Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for systems installed in openings in walls and floors with and without penetrating items.
5. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for non-fire-resistive joint sealants.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assembly in which fire-resistive joint systems are installed.

B. Joint Systems in and between Fire-Resistance-Rated Constructions: Provide systems with assembly ratings equaling or exceeding the fire-resistance ratings of construction that they join, and with movement capabilities and L-ratings indicated as determined by UL 2079.

1. Load-bearing capabilities as determined by evaluation during the time of test.

C. Perimeter Fire-Resistive Joint Systems: For joints between edges of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and exterior curtain walls, provide systems of type and with ratings indicated below and those indicated in the Fire-Resistive Joint System Schedule at the end of Part 3, as determined by UBC Standard 26-9 and NFPA 285 and UL 2079.

1. UL-Listed, Perimeter Fire-Containment Systems: Integrity ratings equaling or exceeding fire-resistance ratings of floor or floor/ceiling assembly forming one side of joint.

D. For fire-resistive systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For each fire-resistive joint system, show each kind of construction condition in which joints are installed; also show relationships to adjoining construction. Include fire-resistive joint system design designation of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that demonstrates compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.

1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each fire-resistive joint system configuration for construction and penetrating items.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of fire-resistive joint system, signed by product manufacturer.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Evaluation Reports: Evidence of fire-resistive joint systems' compliance with ICBO ES AC30, from the ICBO Evaluation Service.

G. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fire-resistive joint system.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FMG according to FMG 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors."

B. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-resistive joint systems, for each kind of joint and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:

1. Fire-resistance tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for fire-resistive joint systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per methods indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and comply with the following:

   a. Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
   b. Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by referencing system designations of the qualified testing and inspecting agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver fire-resistive joint system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project and with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.

B. Store and handle materials for fire-resistive joint systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fire-resistive joint systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Ventilate fire-resistive joint systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, if this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.

B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate fire-resistive joint systems.

C. Notify Owner's inspecting agency at least seven days in advance of fire-resistive joint system installations; confirm dates and times on days preceding each series of installations.

D. Do not cover up fire-resistive joint system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until Owner's inspecting agency and building inspector of authorities having jurisdiction have examined each installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, fire-resistive joint systems that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, those systems indicated in the Fire-Resistive Joint System Schedule at the end of Part 3.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the fire-resistive joint systems indicated for each application in the Fire-Resistive Joint System Schedule at the end of Part 3.

2.2 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

A. Compatibility: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are compatible with joint substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for systems indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Clean joints immediately before installing fire-resistive joint systems to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of fill materials.
2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent fill materials of fire-resistive joint system from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from fire-resistive joint system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing fire-resistive joint system's seal with substrates or damaging adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated.

B. Install forming/packing/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.

C. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:

1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings and forming/packing/backing materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspecting Agency: Engage a qualified independent inspecting agency to inspect fire-resistive joint systems and prepare inspection reports.

B. Testing Services: Inspecting of completed installations of fire-resistive joint systems shall take place in successive stages as installation of fire-resistive joint systems proceeds. Do not proceed with installation of joint systems for the next area until inspecting agency determines completed work shows compliance with requirements.

1. Inspecting agency shall state in each report whether inspected fire-resistive joint systems comply with or deviate from requirements.

C. Remove and replace fire-resistive joint systems where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

E. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and fire-resistive joint systems comply with requirements.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to joints as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure fire-resistive joint systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

3.6 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEM SCHEDULE

A. Designation System for Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Constructions: Alphanumeric systems listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under Product Category XHBN.

B. Designation System for Joints at the Intersection of Fire-Resistance-Rated Floor or Floor/Ceiling Assembly and an Exterior Curtain-Wall Assembly: Alphanumeric systems listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under Product Category XHDG:

END OF SECTION 07842

SECTION 07920

JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes joint sealants for the following applications, including those specified by reference to this Section:

1. Exterior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:

   a. Joints between different materials.
   b. Perimeter joints between materials and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
   c. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
   d. Other joints as indicated.

2. Interior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:

   a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
   b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
   c. Tile control and expansion joints.
   d. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior unit masonry, concrete, walls, and partitions.
   e. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, and windows.
   f. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
   g. Other joints as indicated.

3. Interior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:

   a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
   b. Control and expansion joints in porcelain tile flooring.
   c. Other joints as indicated.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for masonry control and expansion joint fillers and gaskets.
2. Division 7 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for sealing joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.

3. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
4. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for sealing perimeter joints of gypsum board partitions to reduce sound transmission.
5. Division 9 Section "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" and "Acoustical Tile Ceilings" for sealing edge moldings at perimeters of acoustical ceilings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that establish and maintain watertight and airtight continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

B. Provide joint sealants for interior applications that establish and maintain airtight and water-resistant continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two 6-inch- (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.

E. SWRI Validation Certificate: For each elastomeric sealant specified to be validated by SWRI's Sealant Validation Program.

F. Qualification Data: For Installer

G. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:

1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

H. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized Installer who is approved or licensed for installation of elastomeric sealants required for this Project.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Mockups: Build mockups incorporating sealant joints, as follows, to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution:

1. Joints in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive elastomeric joint sealants, which are specified by reference to this Section.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which elastomeric sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:

1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction.
2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Provide interior sealants and sealant primers that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

1. Sealants: 250 g/L.
2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.

C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.

B. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where elastomeric sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.

C. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where elastomeric sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247 and qualify for the length of exposure indicated by reference to ASTM C 920 for Class 1 or 2. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where elastomeric sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.

E. Multicomponent Nonsag Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:

1. Available Products:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; 756 H.P.

2. Type and Grade: M (multicomponent) and P (pourable).
3. Class: 50.
4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

    a. Use O Joint Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, brick, granite, limestone, marble, ceramic tile, and wood.

F. Single-Component Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:

1. Available Products:

    a. Dow Corning Corporation; 799.
    b. GE Silicones; UltraGlaze SSG4000.
    c. GE Silicones; UltraGlaze SSG4000AC.
    d. Polymeric Systems Inc.; PSI-631.
    e. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM5731 Poly-Glaze Plus.
    f. Tremco; Proglaze SG.

2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M,G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

    a. Use O Joint Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, and porcelain tile.

G. Single-Component Mildew-Resistant Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:

1. Available Products:

    a. Pecora Corporation; 898.
    b. Tremco; Tremsil 600 White.

2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

    a. Use O Joint Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, and porcelain tile.

2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

A. Latex Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 834, Type P, Grade NF.

B. Available Products:

1. Bostik Findley; Chem-Calk 600.
2. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
3. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM 8200.
4. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Sonolac.
5. Tremco; Tremflex 834.

2.5 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and the following:

1. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
2. Available Products:

a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
b. United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

B. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard, nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.

1. Available Products:

a. Pecora Corporation; BA-98.
b. Tremco; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.

2.6 PREFORMED JOINT SEALANTS

A. Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of precured low-modulus silicone extrusion, in sizes to fit joint widths indicated, combined with a neutral-curing silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.

1. Available Products:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; 123 Silicone Seal.
b. GE Silicones; UltraSpan US1100.
c. Pecora Corporation; Sil-Span.
d. Tremco; Spectrem Ez Seal.

2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), O (open-cell material), B (bicellular material with a surface skin), or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:

C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:

   a. Concrete.
   b. Masonry.
   c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:

   a. Metal.
   b. Glass.
   c. Porcelain enamel.
   d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates**,** where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Acoustical Sealant Application Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 919 for use of joint sealants in acoustical applications as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

D. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

   1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
   2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
   3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

E. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

F. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

   1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
   2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
   3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

G. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth,

uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide flush joint configuration where indicated per Figure 5B in ASTM C 1193.
5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 5C in ASTM C 1193.

    a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:

1. Extent of Testing: Test completed elastomeric sealant joints as follows:

    a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length for each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate.
    b. Perform 1 test for each 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per elevation.

2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, Method B, Exposed Surface Finish Hand Pull Tab, Method C, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Flap or Method D, Water Immersion in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193[as appropriate for type of joint-sealant application indicated.

    a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; do this by extending cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.

3. Inspect joints for complete fill, for absence of voids, and for joint configuration complying with specified requirements. Record results in a field-adhesion-test log.
4. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:

    a. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
    b. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
    c. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.

5. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.

6. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

B. Evaluation of Field Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior vertical and horizontal nontraffic construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component nonsag polysulfide sealant, Multicomponent nonsag neutral-curing silicone sealant, Single-component neutral- and basic-curing silicone sealant, Single-component neutral-curing silicone sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, Multicomponent nonsag immersible urethane sealant, or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior vertical control and expansion joints in unit masonry.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component neutral- and basic-curing silicone sealant, Single-component neutral-curing silicone sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

C. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior vertical joints between different materials listed above.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component neutral- and basic-curing silicone sealant, Single-component neutral-curing silicone sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior perimeter joints around frames of doors, windows, and louvers.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component neutral- and basic-curing silicone sealant, Single-component neutral-curing silicone sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

E. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component neutral- and basic-curing silicone sealant, Single-component neutral-curing silicone sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

F. Joint-Sealant Application: Vertical control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component neutral- and basic-curing silicone sealant, Single-component neutral-curing silicone sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant. Latex sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

G. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior perimeter joints of exterior openings.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component nonsag polysulfide sealant, Single-component neutral- and basic-curing silicone sealant, Single-component neutral-curing silicone sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant Latex sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

H. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior ceramic and dimension stone tile expansion, control, contraction, and isolation joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent pourable polysulfide sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, Multicomponent pourable urethane sealant, or Single-component pourable urethane sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

I. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.

1. Joint Sealant: Single-component mildew-resistant neutral and acid-curing silicone sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

J. Joint-Sealant Application: Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows, and elevator entrances.

1. Joint Sealant: Latex sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

K. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior control, expansion, and isolation joints in horizontal traffic surfaces of dimension stone and brick flooring and other interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.

1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent pourable polysulfide sealant, Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant, Multicomponent pourable urethane sealant, or Single-component pourable urethane sealant.
2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

END OF SECTION 07920

SECTION 08111

STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Standard hollow-metal steel doors.
2. Standard hollow-metal steel frames.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry " for building anchors into and grouting standard steel frames in masonry construction.
2. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glazed lites in standard steel doors and frames.
3. Division 8 Sections for door hardware for standard steel doors.
4. Division 9 painting Sections for field painting standard steel doors and frames.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, label compliance, fire-resistance and temperature-rise ratings, and finishes for each type of steel door and frame specified.

B. Shop Drawings: In addition to requirements below, provide a schedule of standard steel doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings:

1. Elevations of each door design.
2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles.
4. Details and locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
6. Details of anchorages, accessories, joints, and connections.
7. Details of glazing frames and stops showing glazing.
8. Details of conduit and preparations for electrified door hardware and controls.

C. Coordination Drawings: Drawings of each opening, including door and frame, drawn to scale and coordinating door hardware. Show elevations of each door design type, showing dimensions, locations of door hardware, and preparations for power, signal, and electrified control systems.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than 3 by 5 inches (75 by 125 mm).

F. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain standard steel doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Smoke-Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA 105 or UL 1784.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver doors and frames palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished doors and frames.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store doors and frames under cover at Project site. Place units in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch- (102-mm-) high wood blocking. Avoid using nonvented plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber.

1. If wrappers on doors become wet, remove cartons immediately. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating standard steel frames without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for standard steel frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Amweld Building Products, LLC.
2. Benchmark Doors; a division of General Products Co., Inc.
3. Ceco Door Products; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
4. CURRIES Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
5. Deansteel Manufacturing, Inc.
6. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
7. Kewanee Corporation (The).
8. Mesker Door Inc.
9. Pioneer Industries, Inc.
10. Republic Builders Products Company.
11. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand Company.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.

B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.

C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum A40 (ZF120) zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.

D. Electrolytic Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 591/A 591M, Commercial Steel (CS), Class B coating; mill phosphatized.

E. Supports and Anchors: After fabricating, galvanize units to be built into exterior walls according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

F. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Provide items to be built into exterior walls, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.

G. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching standard steel door frames of type indicated.

H. Grout: Comply with Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry."

I. Grout: Comply with ASTM C 476, with a slump of 4 inches (102 mm) for standard steel door frames built into concrete or masonry, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

J. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool with 6- to 12-lb/cu. ft. (96- to 192-kg/cu. m) density; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50 respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

K. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

L. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.3 STANDARD STEEL DOORS

A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI A250.8.

1. Design: Flush panel.
2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core that produces doors complying with ANSI A250.8.

   a. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
   b. Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Doors: Where indicated, provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 4.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (0.704 K x sq. m/W) when tested according to ASTM C 1363.

      1) Locations: Exterior doors and interior doors where indicated.

3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Square edge and Beveled edge unless square edge is indicated.

   a. Beveled Edge: 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).

4. Vertical Edges for Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch (54-mm) radius.
5. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
6. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI A250.4 for physical-endurance level:

1. Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) and 2 (Seamless).

C. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate reinforcement plates from same material as door face sheets to comply with the following minimum sizes:

1. Hinges: Minimum 0.123 inch (3.0 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 6 inches (152 mm) longer than hinge, secured by not less than 6 spot welds.
2. Lock Face, Flush Bolts, Closers, and Concealed Holders: Minimum 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick.
3. All Other Surface-Mounted Hardware: Minimum 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick.

D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.

2.4 STANDARD STEEL FRAMES

A. General: Comply with ANSI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.

B. Exterior Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet.

1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped and welded face corners and seamless face joints.
2. Frames for Level 2 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated to comply with exterior frame requirements.

1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped and welded face corners and seamless face joints, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Frames for Wood Doors: 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate reinforcement plates from same material as frames to comply with the following minimum sizes:

1. Hinges: Minimum 0.123 inch (3.0 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 6 inches (152 mm) longer than hinge, secured by not less than 6 spot welds.
2. Lock Face, Flush Bolts, Closers, and Concealed Holders: Minimum 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick.
3. All Other Surface-Mounted Hardware: Minimum 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick.

E. Supports and Anchors: Fabricated from electrolytic zinc-coated or metallic-coated steel sheet.

F. Jamb Anchors:

1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide by 10 inches (250 mm) long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch (4.5 mm) thick.
2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
3. Compression Type for Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.

4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.

G. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, and as follows:

1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
2. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (50-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

H. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.

I. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 3/8-inch-thick by 2-inch- (9.5-mm-thick by 50-mm-) wide steel.

2.5 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.

B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with standard steel frames, minimum 5/8 inch (16 mm) high, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, fabricated from same material as frames in which they are installed.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate standard steel doors and frames to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.

B. Standard Steel Doors:

1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.

C. Standard Steel Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.

1. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
2. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints; fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.

3. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Plaster Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames installed in concrete or masonry.
5. Where installed in masonry, leave vertical mullions in frames open at top for grouting.
6. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
7. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:

    a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:

        1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) in height.
        2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) in height.
        3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches (2286 to 3048 mm) in height.
        4) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof more than 120 inches (3048 mm) in height.

    b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:

        1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) in height.
        2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) in height.
        3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) in height.
        4) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof more than 96 inches (2438 mm) in height.
        5) Two anchors per head for frames more than 42 inches (1066 mm) wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.

    c. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each jamb.
    d. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches (660 mm) o.c.

8. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Provide plastic plugs to keep holes clear during construction.

    a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

D. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare standard steel doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping, according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."

1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
2. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for door and frame preparation for hardware. Locate hardware as indicated on Shop Drawings or, if not indicated, according to ANSI A250.8.

E. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.

1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of door or frame.
2. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
3. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of doors and frames.
4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.

2.7 STEEL FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish standard steel door and frames after assembly.

B. Metallic-Coated Steel Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing repair paint specified below to comply with ASTM A 780.

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.

C. Steel Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning"; remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel; comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

D. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Apply a smooth coat of even consistency to provide a uniform dry film thickness of not less than 0.7 mils (0.018 mm).

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated; and providing a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.

E. Factory-Applied Paint Finish: Manufacturer's standard, complying with ANSI A250.3 for performance and acceptance criteria.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of standard steel doors and frames.

1. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of standard steel frame connections before frame installation.
2. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory.

B. Prior to installation and with installation spreaders in place, adjust and securely brace standard steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:

1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.

C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Provide doors and frames of sizes, thicknesses, and designs indicated. Install standard steel doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Standard Steel Frames: Install standard steel frames for doors, sidelights, transoms, borrowed lights and other openings, of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI 105.

1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.

a. At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
b. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
c. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.

d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
f. Check plumb, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
g. Apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that are filled with mortar, grout, and plaster containing antifreezing agents.

2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.

   a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.

3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames.
4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with mortar as specified in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies."
5. Concrete Walls: Solidly fill space between frames and concrete with grout. Install grout in lifts and take precautions, including bracing frames, to ensure that frames are not deformed or damaged by grout forces.
6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
7. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
8. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to supporting construction above, unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction above. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.
9. Installation Tolerances: Adjust standard steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:

   a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
   b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
   c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
   d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.

C. Standard Steel Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.

1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:

   a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
   b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
   c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
   d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch (19 mm).

2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.

D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing" and with standard steel door and frame manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches (230 mm) o.c., and not more than 2 inches (50 mm) o.c. from each corner.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including standard steel doors or frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.

B. Clean grout and other bonding material off standard steel doors and frames immediately after installation.

C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer.

D. Galvannealed Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08111

SECTION 08114

CUSTOM STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Custom hollow-metal steel security doors.
2. Custom hollow-metal steel security frames.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for building anchors into and grouting custom steel frames in masonry construction.
2. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glazed lites in custom steel doors and frames.
3. Division 8 Sections for door hardware for custom steel doors.
4. Division 9 painting Sections for field painting custom steel doors and frames.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, label compliance, and finishes for each type of custom steel door and frame specified.

B. Shop Drawings: In addition to requirements below, provide a schedule of custom steel doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings:

1. Elevations of each door design.
2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles.
4. Details and locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
6. Details of anchorages, accessories, joints, and connections.
7. Details of glazing frames and stops showing glazing.
8. Details of conduit and preparations for electrified door hardware and controls.

C. Coordination Drawings: Drawings of each opening, including door and frame, drawn to scale and coordinating door hardware. Show elevations of each door design type, showing dimensions, locations of door hardware, and preparations for power, signal, and electrified and pneumatic control systems.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than 3 by 5 inches (75 by 125 mm).

F. Construction Samples: 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) corner section representing the specified construction of custom steel doors and frames to be furnished by manufacturer.

1. Doors: Show vertical-edge, top, and internal construction; and hinge and other door hardware reinforcement.

a. Include glazing stops, with stops applied to show corner joint.

2. Frames: Show welded corner joint at head to jamb; and hinge mortise and reinforcement.

a. Include glazing stops, with stops applied to show corner joint.

G. Qualification Data: For Installer testing agency.

H. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive fire tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of custom steel door and frame.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Performance Level: AHSI A250.8 level IV, Physical Performance Level ‘A’, Model 1.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain custom steel doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver doors and frames palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished doors and frames.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store doors and frames under cover at Project site. Place units in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch- (100-mm-) high, wood blocking. Avoid using nonvented plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber.

1. If wrappers on doors become wet, remove cartons immediately. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating custom steel frames without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for custom steel frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. American Steel Products Inc.
2. Amweld Building Products, LLC.
3. Ceco Door Products; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
4. CURRIES Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
5. Deronde Products, Inc.
6. Firedoor Corporation.
7. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
8. Habersham Metal Products Company.
9. Karpen Steel Custom Doors & Frames.
10. Kewanee Corporation (The).
11. LaForce.
12. National Custom Hollow Metal Doors & Frames.
13. Pioneer Industries, Inc.
14. Security Metal Products Corp.
15. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand Company.
16. Therma-Tru Corp.; HMF Division.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.

B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.

C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) zinc (galvanized) or A60 (ZF180) zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.

D. Supports and Anchors: After fabricating, galvanize units to be built into exterior walls according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Provide items to be built into exterior walls, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.

F. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching custom steel door frames of type indicated.

G. Grout: Comply with Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry."

H. Grout: Comply with ASTM C 476, with a slump of 4 inches (102 mm) for custom steel door frames built into concrete or masonry, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

I. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool with 6- to 12-lb/cu. ft. (96- to 192-kg/cu. m) density; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50 respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

J. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

K. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.3 CUSTOM STEEL DOORS

A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick, of seamless hollow construction, unless otherwise indicated. Construct doors with smooth surfaces without visible joints or seams on exposed faces.

1. Design: Flush panel

B. Exterior Door Face Sheets: Fabricated from minimum 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, metallic-coated steel sheet.

C. Interior Door Face Sheets: Fabricated from minimum 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated to comply with exterior door face sheet requirements.

D. Core Construction: Fabricate doors with core indicated.

1. Steel-Stiffened Core: 0.026-inch- (0.6-mm-) thick, steel vertical stiffeners extending full-door height, with vertical webs spaced not more than 6 inches (152 mm) apart, spot welded to face sheets a maximum of 5 inches (127 mm) o.c. Spaces filled between stiffeners with glass- or mineral-fiber insulation.

E. Top and Bottom Channels: Minimum 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, steel channel spot welded, not more than 6 inches (152 mm) o.c., to face sheets.

1. Tops and bottoms of doors reinforced with inverted horizontal channels, continuous across full width of door, of same material as face sheets so flanges of channels are even with bottom and top edges of face sheets.
2. Top and bottom edges of doors closed with closing channels of same material and thickness as face sheets; welded so webs of channels are flush with door edges.

F. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate reinforcement plates from same material as door face sheets to comply with the following minimum sizes:

1. Hinges Minimum 0.167 inch (4.2 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 6 inches (152 mm) longer than hinge, secured by not less than 6 spot welds.
2. Lock Face, Flush Bolts, Closers, and Concealed Holders: Minimum 0.093 inch (2.3 mm) thick.
3. All Other Surface-Mounted Hardware: Minimum 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick.

G. Hardware Enclosures: Provide enclosures and junction boxes within doors for electrically operated door hardware, interconnected with UL-approved, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) diameter conduit and connectors.

1. Where indicated for installation of wiring, provide access plates to junction boxes, fabricated from same material and thickness as face sheet and fastened with at least 4 security fasteners spaced not more than 6 inches (152 mm) o.c.

2.4 CUSTOM STEEL FRAMES

A. General: Fabricate frames of construction indicated, with faces of corners mitered and contact edges closed tight.

1. Frames for Doors: Welded.
2. Sidelight and Borrowed-Light Frames: Welded.
3. Door Frames for: Fabricated from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet.
4. Sidelight and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same material as adjacent door frame.

B. Exterior Frames: Formed from metallic-coated steel sheet.

C. Interior Frames: Formed from cold-rolled steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated to comply with exterior frame requirements.

D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate reinforcement plates from same material as frames to comply with the following minimum sizes:

1. Hinges Minimum 0.167 inch (4.2 mm) thick by 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 10 inches (254 mm) long, secured by not less than 6 spot welds.
2. Strikes, Flush Bolts, and Closers: Minimum 0.093 inch (2.3 mm) thick.
3. Surface-Mounted Hardware: Minimum 0.093 inch (2.3 mm) thick.

E. Head Reinforcement: Minimum 0.093-inch- (2.3-mm-) thick, steel channel stiffener.

F. Jamb Anchors:

1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.053 inch (1.3 mm) thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide by 10 inches (250 mm) long; or wire anchors not less than 0.156 inch (4.0 mm) thick.
2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
3. Compression Type for Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.

G. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick, and as follows:

1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
2. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (50-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

2.5 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.

B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with custom steel frames, minimum 5/8 inch (16 mm) high, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick, fabricated from same material as frames in which they are installed.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate custom steel doors and frames to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.

B. Custom Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI A250.4, Level A.

1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
3. Visible joints or seams around glazed lite inserts are permitted.
4. Single-Acting Doors: Bevel both vertical edges 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).
5. Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch (54-mm) radius.
6. Edges: Door face sheets joined at vertical edges by continuous weld extending full height of door; with edges ground and polished, providing smooth, flush surfaces with no visible seams.

7. Edges: Both vertical door edges joined by visible, continuous interlocking seam (lock seam) full height of door.

C. Custom Steel Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.

1. Mullion and Sidelight Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding according to joint designs in HMMA 820.

2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Where installed in masonry, leave vertical mullions in frames open at top for grouting.
4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
5. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:

a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:

1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) in height.
2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) in height.
3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) in height.
4) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof more than 96 inches (2438 mm) in height.

6. Head Reinforcement: For frames more than 48 inches (1219 mm) wide, provide continuous head reinforcement for full width of opening, welded to back of frame at head.
7. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Provide plastic plugs to keep holes clear during construction.

a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

D. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare custom steel doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping, according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."

1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
2. Locate door hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to HMMA 831, "Recommended Hardware Locations for Custom Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."

E. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites and solid panels where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.

1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of door or frame.
2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings such that each lite is capable of being removed independently.

3. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing or panel and type of installation indicated.

2.7 STEEL FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish custom steel door and frames after assembly.

B. Metallic-Coated Steel Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing repair paint specified below to comply with ASTM A 780.

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.

C. Steel Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning"; remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel; comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

D. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Apply a smooth coat of even consistency to provide a uniform dry film thickness of not less than 0.7 mils (0.018 mm).

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated; and providing a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of custom steel doors and frames.

1. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of custom steel frame connections before frame installation.
2. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory.

B. Prior to installation and with installation spreaders in place, adjust and securely brace custom steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:

1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.

C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Provide doors of sizes, thicknesses, and designs indicated. Install custom steel doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Custom Steel Frames: Install custom steel frames for doors, sidelights, and borrowed lights and other openings, of size and profile indicated.

1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.

    a. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
    b. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
    c. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
    d. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
    e. Check plumb, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
    f. Apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that are filled with mortar, grout, and plaster containing antifreezing agents.

2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.

    a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors, if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
3. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with mortar as specified in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies."
4. Concrete Walls: Solidly fill space between frames and concrete with grout. Install grout in lifts and take precautions, including bracing frames, to ensure that frames are not deformed or damaged by grout forces.

5. Installation Tolerances: Adjust custom steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:

   a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
   b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
   c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
   d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.

C. Custom Steel Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances indicated below. Shim as necessary.

1. Non-Fire-Rated Doors:

   a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
   b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
   c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
   d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch (19 mm).

D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing" and with custom steel door and frame manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches (230 mm) o.c., and not more than 2 inches (50 mm) o.c. from each corner.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work including custom steel doors or frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.

B. Clean grout and other bonding material off custom steel doors and frames immediately after installation.

C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer.

D. Galvannealed Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08114

SECTION 08120

INTERIOR ALUMINUM DOOR/SIDELIGHT FRAMES AND PARTITION TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Aluminum door frames for interior use.
2. Aluminum door frames with sidelight frame components for interior use.
3. Aluminum partition trim system for interior use.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 8 Section "Wood Doors" for wood door requirements.
2. Division 8 Section "Finish Hardware" for door hardware requirements.
3. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glass and glazing requirements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit for door/sidelight frames and partition trim.

1. Include information for factory finish, glazing gaskets, accessories and other required components.
2. Include color charts for finish indicating manufacturer’s standard colors available for selection.

B. Schedule: Submit schedule indicating opening identification number, frame types, dimensions, swing, label, and hardware requirements. Use same reference numbers for openings as Contract Drawings.

C. Include elevations and details indicating frame types, profiles, conditions at openings, methods and locations of anchoring, glazing requirements, hardware locations, and reinforcements for hardware, details of connections to special construction and other custom features.

D. Samples: Submit following:

1. Samples indicating quality of finish in selected colors on alloys used for Work
2. Where normal color and texture variations are expected, include additional samples to show range of such variation.

E. Informational Submittals: Submit manufacturer's instructions.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single Source Responsibility: Provide aluminum frames, aluminum and glass doors, and accessories produced by a single manufacturer for each type of product indicated.

B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Manufacturer shall demonstrate previous experience in manufacturing of interior aluminum door and OfficeFronts framing for a period of not less than 10 years on comparable sized. Project.

C. Fire and Smoke Rated Assemblies:

1. Where fire-rated openings are scheduled or required by authorities having jurisdiction, provide fire-rated aluminum frames that have been tested and certified to meet the requirements of UBC 7.2 Fire Test of Door Assemblies for specified exposure by an agency acceptable to governing authorities.
2. Provide labels permanently fastened on each fire rated frame and door that are within size limits established by NFPA and the testing authority.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver frames and doors in cartons to provide protection during transit and storage at project site.

B. Inspect frames and doors upon delivery for damage.

1. Repair minor damage to pre-finished products by means as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Replace frames and doors that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

C. Store frames and doors at project site under cover and as near as possible to final installation location. Do not use covering material that will cause discoloration of aluminum finish.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Do not begin installation of frames or doors until area of work has been completely enclosed and interior is protected from the elements.

B. Maintain temperature and humidity in areas of installation within reasonable limits, as close as possible to final occupancy. If necessary, provide temperature control and ventilation to maintain required environmental conditions.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Warrant against defects in manufacturing of materials for a period of 2 years from date of substantial completion.

B. Warrant framing finish against defects, including cracking, flaking, blistering, peeling, and excessive fading, chalking and non-uniformity in color for a period of 5 years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products that include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Basis of Design: Solutions II, by RACO Interior Products, Inc.

B. Other Manufacturers:

1. Meet or exceed standards of manufacture, appearance, performance, function, and design, of Solutions II by RACO Interior Products, Inc.
2. Substitutions: Comply with provisions of Section 01600.

C. Acceptable Products:

1. Interior Door and Sidelight Frames: RACO Solutions II fixed throat frames to accommodate wall thicknesses indicated on Drawings; ceiling height (seven feet high) height system; with applied full face trim or 1-1/2 inch width.

a. Provide fire rated frames 20,60, or 90 minute rating complying UL 10B, ASTM E152, and NFPA 252 where required.

2. Interior Partition Trim System: Fixed throat frames, matching door frames, to accommodate wall thicknesses indicated on Drawings, with applied full face trim of 1-1/2 inch width.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Meeting requirements of ASTM B221, 6063T5 alloy, and as otherwise required to assure compliance with dimensional tolerances and to maintain color uniformity. Billets shall be composed of at least 33% recycled aluminum.

B. Anchorage Devices, Clips and Fasteners: Manufacturer’s standard type, compatible with materials being secured.

C. Accessories: As necessary for complete system.

2.3 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM FRAMES, PARTITIONS CAPS AND ENDS.

A. Utilize reduced profile corner section for 90-degree corners.

B. Assemble all doorframes, sidelights, and window units with screws utilizing internal screw spline system, insert into the drywall rough opening, and then attach perimeter flanges.

C. Assemble all sidelights and windows without the use of clips.

D. Do not exceed maximum size of window or door to meet applicable code requirements.

E. Factory pre-machine door frame jambs and doors and prepare for hardware, with concealed reinforcement plates, drilled and tapped as required, and fastened within frame with concealed screws.

2.4 FINISHES

A. Factory finish extruded frame and door components so that all parts exposed to view upon completion of installation are uniform in finish and color. Exposed surfaces shall be free of scratches and other serious blemishes.

B. Factory Applied Paint Finish: Comply with AAMA (2603) 603.8 and AA-DAF-45, factory applied backed enamel coating.

1. Color: As selected by the architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine project conditions and verify that project is ready for work of this section to proceed. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Verify wall thickness does not exceed manufacturer's recommended tolerances of specified throat size.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with frame and door manufacturer's printed installation instructions and approved shop drawings. Do not attempt installation in areas where wall thickness exceeds tolerances of specified throat size.

B. Install frames plumb and square, free from warp or twist, securely anchored to substrates with fasteners recommended by frame manufacturer. Maintain dimensional tolerances and alignment with adjacent work. Ensure joints are hairline tight and surfaces flush with adjacent components.

C. Set all doors in correct locations as shown on the drawings, level, square, plumb and in alignment with other work in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and approved shop drawings.

D. Install partition caps at all gypsum board partitions that extend to bottom of ceiling and at exposed partition ends.

a. Partition cap at ceiling height and partition ends where bumper protection on ends are not required.

b. Provide matching face trim to match ceiling cap where partition continues above the ceiling, and other partitions in that room or space do not continue above ceiling. Face trim is not required where one or no partition in a room or space ends at ceiling, and others continue above the ceiling.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect exposed portions of aluminum surfaces from damage by plaster, lime, acid, cement, and other contaminants.

B. Touch up marred areas so that touch-up is not visible from a distance of 4 feet. Remove and replace frames that cannot be satisfactorily adjusted.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect as required to assure that frames and doors will be without damage until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08120

SECTION 08211

FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior solid-core doors with plastic-laminate faces.

B. Related Sections:

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of door indicated. Include details of core and edge construction, louvers, and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications**.**

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.

1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
4. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
5. Indicate fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For plastic-laminate door faces. As indicated on the drawings

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each material and finish
2. Plastic laminate, 6 inches (150 mm) square, for each color, texture, and pattern selected.
3. Frames for light openings, 6 inches (150 mm) long, for each material, type, and finish required.

E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

C. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated," WDMA I.S.1-A, or "Architectural Wood Flush Doors," or WI's "Manual of Millwork."

1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Labels or an AWI letter of licensing for Project indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified, or provide WI-Certified Compliance Certificate indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
2. Provide WI-Certified Compliance Certificate for installation.

D. Forest Certification: Provide doors made with cores or not less than 70 percent of wood products and all wood products obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

E. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure or as close to neutral pressure as possible according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B and UL 10C.

1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.

F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons or cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting.

C. Mark each door on bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and

maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section.
b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 76.2-mm) span.

2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
2. Ampco, Inc.
3. Chappell Door Co.
4. Eagle Plywood & Door Manufacturing, Inc.
5. Eggers Industries.
6. Graham; an Assa Abloy Group company.
7. Ideal Architectural Doors & Plywood.
8. Ipik Door Company.
9. Poncraft Door Company.
10. VT Industries Inc.

2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

A. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide doors made with adhesives and composite wood products that do NOT contain urea formaldehyde.

B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty

C. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade:

1. Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated.
2. Extra Heavy Duty: Toilets, janitor's closets, assembly spaces, exits, and where indicated.

D. Glued-Wood-Stave-Core Doors:

1. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in glued-wood-stave-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware and as follows:

   a. 5-inch (125-mm) top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
   b. 5-inch (125-mm) bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
   c. 5-inch (125-mm) midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.

2. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave, or structural-composite-lumber, or glued-wood-stave or structural-composite-lumber cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.

E. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:

1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.

   a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf (3100 N).
   b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf (1780 N).

2.3 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED DOORS

A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

1. Grade: Custom.
2. Plastic-Laminate Faces: High-pressure decorative laminates complying with NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS and Grade HSH.
3. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As indicated by Architect on the drawings.
4. Vertical Edges: Plastic laminate that matches faces, applied before faces.

5. Core: Glued-Wood-Stave.
6. Construction: Three plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before faces and edges are applied. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
2. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.

C. Transom and Side Panels: Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces, and finish as specified for associated doors. Finish bottom edges of transoms and top edges of rabbeted doors same as door stiles.

1. Fabricate door and transom panels with full-width, solid-lumber, rabbeted, meeting rails. Provide factory-installed spring bolts for concealed attachment into jambs of metal door frames.

D. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors in factory.

1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
2. Glazing: Factory install ¼" clear fully tempered glass in doors, with square solid wood stops in species to match faces..

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.

1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
2. Reject doors with defects.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."

B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the referenced quality standard, and as indicated.

1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.

C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.

1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.

a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 08211

SECTION 08212

STILE AND RAIL WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior stile and rail wood doors.
2. Finishing stile and rail wood doors.
3. Fitting stile and rail wood doors to frames and machining for hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 8 " Aluminum Entrances"

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include details of construction and glazing.
2. Include factory-finishing specifications.

B. Shop Drawings: For stile and rail wood doors. Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data, including those for stiles, rails, panels, and moldings (sticking); and other pertinent data**.,** including the following:

1. Dimensions of doors for factory fitting.
2. Locations and dimensions of mortises and holes for hardware.
3. Undercuts.
4. Requirements for veneer matching.
5. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.

D. Samples for Verification: Corner sections of doors, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), with door faces and edgings representing typical range of color and grain for each species of veneer and solid lumber required. Finish Sample with same materials proposed for factory-finished doors.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of door, from manufacturer.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

C. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body and is a certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.

B. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Package doors individually in opaque plastic bags or cardboard cartons.

C. Mark each door on bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during remainder of construction period.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship, or have warped (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section, within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.

2. Warranty shall be in effect during the following period of time from date of Substantial Completion:

   a. Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of stile and rail wood door from single manufacturer.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. General: Use only materials that comply with referenced standards and other requirements specified.

   1. Assemble interior doors, including components, with either dry-use or wet-use adhesives complying with ASTM D 5572 for finger joints and with ASTM D 5751 for joints other than finger joints.

B. Certified Wood: Stile and rail wood doors shall be certified as "FSC Pure" according to FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship," and to FSC STD-40-004, "FSC Standard for Chain of Custody Certification."

C. Low-Emitting Materials: Fabricate doors with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.

D. Low-Emitting Materials: Fabricate doors with adhesives that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Safety Glass: Provide products complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201, for Category II materials, unless those of Category I are expressly indicated and permitted.

   1. Glazing: As indicated (RE: Selection 08800 “Glazing”.

2.3 INTERIOR STILE AND RAIL WOOD DOORS

A. Interior Stile and Rail Wood Doors: Interior doors complying with WDMA I.S.6, "Industry Standard for Wood Stile and Rail Doors," and with other requirements specified.

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

      a. Belentry Doors LLC.
      b. International Door and Latch.
      c. JELD-WEN, Inc.
      d. Karona, Inc.

e. QSM Enterprise, Inc.
f. Simpson Door Company.

2. Finish and Grade: Clear transparent and premium grade.
3. Wood Species: Clear Maple.
4. Stile and Rail Construction: Edge-glued solid lumber.
5. Molding Profile (Sticking): Square edges..
6. Glass: Uncoated, clear, made from two lites of 3.0-mm-thick annealed glass complying with Section 08800 "Glazing."
7. Mark, label, or otherwise identify stile and rail wood doors as complying with WDMA I.S.6 and grade specified.

2.4 STILE AND RAIL WOOD DOOR FABRICATION

A. Fabricate stile and rail wood doors in sizes indicated for field fitting.

B. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances and bevels unless otherwise indicated:

1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/2 inch (13 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide not more than 3/8 inch (10 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold.

a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) on lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

C. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.

D. Glazed Openings: Trim openings indicated for glazing with solid wood moldings, with one side removable. Miter wood moldings at corner joints.

E. Glazed Openings: Factory install glazing in doors, complying with Section 08800 "Glazing." Install glass using manufacturer's standard elastomeric glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920. Secure glass in place with removable wood moldings. Miter wood moldings at corner joints.

2.5 FINISHING

A. Finish wood doors at factory that are indicated to receive transparent finish.

B. For doors indicated to be factory finished, comply with the AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards," WDMA I.S.6A, "Industry Standard for Architectural Stile and Rail Doors,**"** and with other requirements specified.

1. Finish faces and all four edges of doors, including mortises and cutouts. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.

C. Use only paints and coatings that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Transparent Finish:

1. Grade: Premium.
2. Finish: AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" System 9, UV curable, acrylated epoxy, polyester, or urethane.
3. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.

1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
2. Reject doors with defects.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 08710 "Door Hardware.

B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.

C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted with fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.

1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch (3 mm) [1/4 inch (6 mm)] [3/8 inch (10 mm)] [1/2 inch (13 mm)] from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide [1/4 inch (6 mm)] [3/8 inch (10 mm)] from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.

   a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) on lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 08212

Section 08220

FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC
DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS.

A. DRAWINGS AND GENERAL PROVISIONS OF THE Contract, including General and Supplemenaty Conditions and division 01 specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Doors.
2. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Frames.
3. Fire Rated Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Doors.
4. Fire Rated Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Frames.

B. Related Sections include but are not limited to:
1. General Conditions.
2. Section 04200 – Unit Masonry.
3. Section 08710 – Finish Hardware.
4. Section 08800 – glass and Glazing.
5. Section 09900 – Painting and Coating: Field Finishing.
.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and product technical data in accordance with Section 01300.
B. Product Data:
1. Manufacturer's detailed specification of construction and fabrication.
2. Installation instructions.
C. Shop Drawings. Indicate the following:
1. Location, size, finish and hand of each door.
2. Elevation of each door type.
3. Internal reinforcement.
4. Frame configuration, elevation, finish and anchor types.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND PROTECTION

A. Deliver door and frame assemblies packaged in manufacturer's standard containers to provide protection during transit. Store, protect and handle products at project site in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions to prevent damage to the finish of factory-finished doors and frames.
B. Inspect doors and frames on delivery for damage, and notify shipper and supplier if damage exists. Minor damages may be repaired provided refinished items match new work and are acceptable to the Architect. Remove and replace damaged items that cannot be repaired as directed.
C. Store doors and frames at building under cover. Avoid using non-vented plastic or canvas covers that could create a humidity chamber.

1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-rated door and frame construction will conform to tested products under ASTM E152, NFPA 252 & UL10C.
B. Install door and frame assembly in conformance with NFPA 80 for fire-rated class, ANSI A117.1 specifications for ADA requirements, handicap accessibility.
C. A flame spread classification of 25 or less per ASTM E84 will apply to all FRP component parts and shall be self extinguishing per ASTM D635.
D. If the application dictates, resin formulation will conform to USDA and FDA standards for incidental food contact.
E. Swinging Door Test, Doors and Frames, AAMA 920-03, ANSI A250.4-2001 (supercedes ANSI A-151.1), NWWDA TM-7: In excess of 1,000,000 cycles.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Contract documents, the following manufacturer is acceptable: Simon Door Company, LLC, PO box 4557, Brownsville, Texas 78523. Telephone (866) 894-7511 Fax (95) 831-7530 E-Mail info@simondoor.com

2.02 FIRE RATED AND NON-RATED DOORS

A. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Doors
   1. Face Panels: Standard face panels shall be chemical resistant, using a fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin system with light stabilizing additives. Thickness of panels shall be 0.090 to 0.125, with a standard of 0.120".
   2. Door thickness: 1 ¾.
   3. Finish: all surfaces shall have a smooth, or optional matte, seamless gel coat finish. Gel Coat coverage shall be 15 mil thick plus or minus 3 mils.
   4. Color: as selected by architect from manufacturer's standard, optional or custom colors. Optional primer finish for field painting.

B. Internal Construction
   1. Stiles and Rails shall be constructed of rectangular and square high moduleus pultruded fiberglass tubes.
   2. Core materials as application dictates.
      a. Honeycomb Core, Phenolic impregnated resin honeycomb.
      b. Polyurethane Foam Core, 1 1/2 " thick regid block of polyurethane with an "R" factor of 11-12 shall be laminated to the interior of the face panels.
      c. Mineral Core, fire rated up to 90 minutes.
   3. Internal reinforcements for full mortise hinges to be solid FRP blocking and for thru-bolted hardware to be high modulus pultrusions.

C. Door Accessories.
   1. Windows: Glazing support structures and window lite retainers shall be fabricated from high moduleus pultrusions and/or fiberglass compostion common to the door construction. The opening itself shall be sealed in such a manner as to prevent moisture or contaminants from penetrating the interior of the door. Polyvinyl window retainers will not be acceptable.
   2. Louvers: Door louvers shall be constructed using FRP material in an inverted "v" type design and will adhere to the same guidelines as window openings above.
   3. Transoms: All transom panels will be identical to the doors in materials, construction, thickness, finish and color.
   4. Astragals: Astragals for pairs of doors will be favricated of FRP material in the manufacturer's standard design

5. fire rated door accessories will be manufactured or supplied in compliance with the labeling agency and in accordance with UL10C.

2.03 FIRE RATED AND NON-RATED FRP FRAMES

A. General: Fabricated frames of fiberglass reinforced plastic.
   1. Head and Jamb: Pultruded fiberglass reinforced plastic, minimum ¼" wall thickness, conforming to SDI requiredments.
   2. Frame Profile: double rabbedted with 5/8" stop. Face will be 2" with a standard jamb depth of 5 3/4".
   3. Joint Connection: Jamb to Head joints will be neatly mitered at 45 degrees.
   4. Finish: 15 mil+/- 3 mil gel coat finish. Color to match door unless otherwise indicated.
   5. fire rated frames will be FRP, similar to non-rated frames in manufacture and appearance and shall be in compliance with the labeling agency and in accordance with UL10C. Fire rated frames manufactured in a material other than fiberglass will not be accepted.
B. Reinforcements
   1. Corner: Reinforcement at frame corner will be pultruded fiberglass angle, 4"x4"x5 3/8"x 1/4".
   2. Hardware: Frames will incorporate non-woven polyester fabric at mortise hinge, closer and strike locations for unparalleled screw-holding strength.
C. Anchoring Systems.
   1. Wire anchors are recommended for masonry construction
   2. New Masonry
      a. Wire Type
      b. FRP Base Anchor
   3. Existing Masonry
      a. #14-10x3-3/4" Crete Flex Masonry Screw
      b. FRP Base Anchor

2.04 FABRICATION
A. Fabricate FRP doors and frames rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects.
B. Form to sizes and profiles as indicated on drawings.
C. In compliance with the hardware manufacturer's instructions and templates, doors and frames shall be mortised and reinforced for hardware, including hinges, locks, strikes, closer, etc.
D. Bottom of frames will terminate at the indicated finished floowr level.
E. Clearances will be as follows:
   1. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16"
   2. Between Edges and Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
   3. Between Bottom of Door and Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.
   4. Between Bottom of Door and Top of finish Floor: Maximum ¾ inch.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION
Installer shall meet local building standards requirements and shall examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fiberglass doors and frames and shall submit a written report of the conditions are unacceptable. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION
A. Install doors and frames, rigid, properly aligned and securely fastened in place. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 80 standards at fire rated openings.

B. Where applicable, set frames in place prior to construction of enclosing walls and ceilings. Space between wall and frame may be solidly filled with mortar and anchors built into the joints as the walls are constructed.
C. Check plumb, squareness and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Brace securely until permanently anchored. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
D. Remove temporary braces and spreaders necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
E. Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows: 1) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches in height, 2) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches in height.
F. Protect frames during construction.
G. Align doors in frames for uniform clearances at each edge.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust doors in accordance with door manufacturer's maintenance instructions to swing open and shut without binding and to remain in place at any angle without being moved by gravitational influence.
B. Adjust door hardware to operate correctly in accordance with hadware manufacturer's maintenance instructions Contact Simon Door Co. if help is required with hardware installation instructions; do not alter doors to fit hardware without prior approval.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Clean all exposed surfaces, removing dirt and axess sealant from all exposed surfaces. Follow the manufacturer's maintenance instructions for proper techniques and produ ts to clean all surfaces.
B. Remove debris and leave work in complete and proper operating conditions.

3.05 WARRANTY

Fiberglass doors and frames shall carry a lifetime warranty against failure due to corrosion from the specific environment named at the time of purchase. Manufacturer's written warranty and conditions will apply to all products contained in this section.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08311

ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
2. Floor access doors and frames.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for blocking out openings for access doors and frames in concrete.
2. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for anchoring and grouting access door frames set in masonry construction.
3. Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories" for roof hatches.
4. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for walls and partitions.
5. Division 9 Section "Acoustical Tile Ceilings" for suspended acoustical tile ceilings.
6. Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for heating and air-conditioning duct access doors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of access door and frame indicated. Include construction details, fire ratings, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of access doors and frames for each type of substrate. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each door face material, at least 3 by 5 inches (75 by 125 mm) in size, in specified finish.

D. Access Door and Frame Schedule: Provide complete access door and frame schedule, including types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.

E. Ceiling Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted items including access doors and frames, lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, and special trim are shown and coordinated with each other.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door(s) and frame(s) through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Units complying with NFPA 80 that are identical to access door and frame assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics per the following test method and that are listed and labeled by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:

1. UL 10B for vertical access doors and frames.
2. UL 263 for horizontal access doors and frames.

C. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, or other concealed work, and indicate in the schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STAINLESS-STEEL MATERIALS

A. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793, manufacturer's standard finish.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304 or 316. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.

1. Finish: Directional Satin Finish, No. 4.

2.2 ALUMINUM MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.

1. Mill finish, AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).

B. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.

1. Mill finish, AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).

C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H15; with minimum sheet thickness indicated representing specified thickness according to ANSI H35.2 (ANSI H35.2(M)).

1. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
2. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel complying with paint manufacturer's written specifications for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.

2.3 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Acudor Products, Inc.
2. Babcock-Davis; A Cierra Products Co.
3. Bar-Co, Inc. Div.; Alfab, Inc.
4. Cendrex Inc.
5. Dur-Red Products.
6. Elmdor/Stoneman; Div. of Acorn Engineering Co.
7. Jensen Industries.
8. J. L. Industries, Inc.
9. Karp Associates, Inc.
10. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
11. MIFAB, Inc.
12. Milcor Inc.
13. Nystrom, Inc.
14. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The).

B. Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from stainless-steel sheet.

1. Locations: Wall and ceiling surfaces.
2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal, set flush with exposed face flange of frame.
3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide, surface-mounted trim.
4. Hinges: Continuous piano.
5. Latch: Cam latch operated by flush key with interior release.
6. Lock: Cylinder (At Lobby Restrooms).

    a. Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."

C. Exterior Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Weatherproof with extruded door gasket.

1. Locations: Wall surfaces.
2. Door: Minimum 0.040-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick, metallic-coated steel sheet; flush panel construction with manufacturer's standard 2-inch- (50-mm-) thick fiberglass insulation.
3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
4. Hinges: Continuous piano, zinc plated.

5. Lock: Dual-action handles with key lock.

D. Fire-Rated, Insulated, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from stainless-steel sheet.

1. Locations: Wall and ceiling surfaces.
2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
3. Temperature Rise Rating: 250 deg F (139 deg C) at the end of 30 minutes.
4. Door: Flush panel with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 0.036 inch (0.9 mm).
5. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide, surface-mounted trim.
6. Hinges: Continuous piano.
7. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
8. Latch: Self-latching device operated by knurled knob, flush key, or ring turn with interior release.

E. Fire Rated, Uninsulated, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from stainless-steel sheet.

1. Locations: Wall surfaces.
2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction .
3. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal, flush construction.
4. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide, surface-mounted trim.
5. Hinges: Continuous piano.
6. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
7. Latch: Self-latching device operated by flush key with interior release.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.

B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.

C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.

1. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal or wood framing.
2. Provide mounting holes in frame for attachment of masonry anchors. Furnish adjustable metal masonry anchors.

D. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.

1. For cylinder lock, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
2. For recessed panel doors, provide access sleeves for each locking device. Furnish plastic grommets and install in holes cut through finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

B. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.

C. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.

B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 08311

SECTION 08331

OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Base Bid.

1.3 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of manually and electric-motor-operated overhead coiling doors:

1. Electric, motor-operated, insulated service doors.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports.
2. Division 8 Section "Door Hardware" for lock cylinders and keying.
3. Division 16 Sections for electrical service and connections for powered operators and accessories.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Operation Cycle: One cycle of a door is complete when it is moved from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide overhead coiling doors capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses without evidencing permanent deformation of door components:

1. Wind Load: Uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 120 mph, acting inward and outward.
2. Impact Test for Flying Debris: Comply with ASTM E 1996, tested according to ASTM E 1886.

a. Level of Protection: Enhanced Protection.

b. Wind Zone: 120 mph (192 km/h), pressure test to 1/2 and 1-1/2 x design pressure (positive and negative).

B. Operation-Cycle Requirements: Provide overhead coiling door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 20,000 cycles and for 10 cycles per day.

1. Include tamperproof cycle counter.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of overhead coiling door and accessory. Include the following:

B. Shop Drawings: For special components and installations not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing full range of colors available for units with factory-applied finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: Of each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Curtain Slats: 12 inches (305 mm) long.
2. Guides: 6 inches (150 mm) long.
3. Brackets: 6 inches (150 mm) square. Not required if same as Guides.
4. Hood: 6 inches (150 mm) square.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain overhead coiling doors through one source from a single manufacturer.

1. Obtain operators and controls from overhead coiling door manufacturer.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpine Overhead Doors, Inc.
2. Atlas Door; Div. of Clopay Building Products Company, Inc.
3. Cookson Company.
4. Cornell Iron Works Inc.
5. Mahon Door Corporation.
6. Overhead Door Corp.
7. Raynor.
8. Windsor Door, a MAGNATRAX Corporation.

B. Location: NEWPP

2.2 DOOR CURTAIN MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

A. Door Curtains: Fabricate overhead coiling door curtain of interlocking slats, designed to withstand wind loading indicated, in a continuous length for width of door without splices. Unless otherwise indicated, provide slats of thickness and mechanical properties recommended by door manufacturer for performance, size, and type of door indicated, and as follows:

1. Steel Door Curtain Slats: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled structural steel (SS) sheet; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.

   a. Minimum Base-Metal (Uncoated) Minimum Thickness: 0.0478 inches (1.21 mm).
   b. Flat profile slats.

2. Insulation: Fill slat with manufacturer's standard rigid cellular polyisocyanurate or polyurethane-foam-type thermal insulation complying with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E 84. Enclose insulation completely within metal slat faces.

3. Inside Curtain Slat Face: To match material of outside metal curtain slat, except 24 ga., 0.0239 inches (0.61 mm) minimum thickness.

B. Endlocks and Windlocks for Service Doors: Malleable-iron casings galvanized after fabrication, secured to curtain slats with galvanized rivets or high-strength nylon. Provide locks on not less than alternate curtain slats for curtain alignment and resistance against lateral movement.

C. Bottom Bar for Service Doors: Consisting of 2 angles, each not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inch (38 by 38 by 3 mm) thick; galvanized, stainless-steel, or aluminum extrusions to suit type of curtain slats.

D. Curtain Jamb Guides for Service Doors: Fabricate curtain jamb guides of steel angles or channels and angles, with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, to allow curtain to operate smoothly, and to withstand loading. Build up units with not less than 3/16-inch- (5-mm-) thick galvanized steel sections complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and ASTM A 123/A 123M. Slot bolt holes for guide adjustment. Provide removable stops on guides to prevent overtravel of curtain, and a continuous bar for holding windlocks.

2.3 HOODS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Hood: Form to act as weatherseal and entirely enclose coiled curtain and operating mechanism at opening head. Contour to fit end brackets to which hood is attached. Roll and reinforce top and bottom edges for stiffness. Provide closed ends for surface-mounted hoods and provide fascia for any portion of between-jamb mounting projecting beyond wall face. Provide intermediate support brackets as required to prevent sagging.

1. Fabricate hoods for steel doors of minimum 24 Ga., 0.040- inch-- (1.016- mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet with G90 (Z275) zinc coating, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
2. Shape: Square

B. Integral Frame, Hood, and Fascia: Provide welded assemblies of the following sheet metal:

1. Fabricate from minimum 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet with G90 (Z275) zinc coating, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

C. Integral Sills: Fabricate sills as integral part of frame assembly of same sheet metal; 0.078-inch (2.0-mm) minimum thickness.

D. Weatherseals: Provide replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible weather-stripping gaskets fitted to bottom and top of exterior doors, unless otherwise indicated. At door head, use 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, replaceable, continuous sheet secured to inside of hood.

1. Provide motor-operated doors with combination bottom weatherseal and sensor edge.
2. In addition, provide replaceable, adjustable, continuous, flexible, 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick seals of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene at door jambs for a weathertight installation.

E. Push/Pull Handles: For push-up-operated or emergency-operated doors, provide galvanized steel lifting handles on inside of door.

1. Provide pull-down straps or pole hooks for doors more than 84 inches (2130 mm) high.

F. Fabricate locking device assembly with lock, spring-loaded dead bolt, operating handle, cam plate, and adjustable locking bar to engage through slots in tracks.

1. Locking Bars: Single-jamb side operable from inside and outside.
2. Lock cylinder; By: Door Manufacturer.

G. If door unit is power operated, provide safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.

2.4 COUNTERBALANCING MECHANISM

A. General: Counterbalance doors by means of adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to door curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for rotating members.

B. Counterbalance Barrel: Fabricate spring barrel of hot-formed, structural-quality, welded or seamless carbon-steel pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain without distortion of slats and to limit barrel deflection to not more than 0.03 in./ft. (2.5 mm/m) of span under full load.

C. Provide spring balance of one or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs. Size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Provide cast-steel barrel plugs to secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft.

D. Fabricate torsion rod for counterbalance shaft of cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.

E. Brackets: Provide mounting brackets of manufacturer's standard design, either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate.

2.5 ELECTRIC DOOR OPERATORS

A. General: Provide electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended and provided by door manufacturer for door and operation-cycle requirements specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, remote-control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Disconnect Device: Provide hand-operated disconnect or mechanism for automatically engaging chain and sprocket operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount disconnect and operator so they are accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.

D. Design operator so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency auxiliary operator.

E. Provide control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6, with NFPA 70 Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24-V, ac or dc.

F. Door-Operator Type: Provide wall-, hood-, or bracket-mounted, jackshaft-type door operator unit consisting of electric motor, enclosed gear-head-reduction and worm-gear running-in-oil drive, and chain and sprocket secondary drive.

G. Electric Motors: Provide high-starting torque, reversible, continuous-duty, Class A insulated, electric motors complying with NEMA MG 1; with overload protection; sized to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at not less than 2/3 fps (0.2 m/s) and not more than 1 fps (0.3 m/s), without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.

1. Type: Polyphase, medium-induction type.
2. Service Factor: According to NEMA MG 1, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors with building electrical system.
4. Provide open dripproof-type motor, and controller with NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.
5. Provide totally enclosed, nonventilated or fan-cooled motor, fitted with plugged drain, and controller with NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure where indicated.

H. Remote-Control Station: Provide momentary-contact, three-button control station with push-button controls labeled "Open," "Close," and "Stop."

1. Provide interior units, full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.
2. Provide exterior units, full-guarded, standard-duty, surface-mounted, weatherproof type, NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure, key operated.

I. Obstruction Detection Device: Provide each motorized door with indicated external automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. Activation of sensor immediately stops and reverses downward door travel.

1. Sensor Edge: Provide each motorized door with an automatic safety sensor edge, located within astragal or weather stripping mounted to bottom bar. Contact with sensor immediately stops and reverses downward door travel. Connect to control circuit using manufacturer's standard take-up reel or self-coiling cable.

a. Provide electrically actuated automatic bottom bar.

1) Self-Monitoring Type: Four-wire configured device.

J. Limit Switches: Provide adjustable switches, interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.

K. Provide electric operators with ADA-compliant audible alarm and visual indicator lights.

2.6 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Finish paint color: Selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range of colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install coiling doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, jamb and head molding strips, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts; adjust doors to operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion and with weathertight fit around entire perimeter.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICES

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

a. Test door closing when activated by detector or alarm-connected fire-release system. Reset door-closing mechanism after successful test.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead coiling doors. Refer to Division 1 Section “Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 08331

SECTION 08411

ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND WINDOW UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Exterior and interior aluminum-framed openings.

a. Glazing is retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
b. Glazing on exterior is secured with aluminum cap system and structural silicone system.

2. Exterior and interior manual-swing aluminum doors.
3. Exterior and interior aluminum door frames.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for installation of joint sealants installed with aluminum-framed systems and for sealants to the extent not specified in this Section.
2. Division 8 Section "Door Hardware" for hardware to the extent not specified in this Section.
3. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glazing requirements to the extent not specified in this Section.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Provide aluminum-framed systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding, without failure, the effects of the following:

1. Structural loads.
2. Thermal movements.
3. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
4. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
5. Failure includes the following:

a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
b. Thermal stresses transferred to building structure.
c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements, to glazing.

d. Glazing-to-glazing contact.
e. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
f. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
g. Sealant failure.
h. Failure of operating units to function properly.

B. Structural-Sealant Joints: Designed to produce tensile or shear stress in structural-sealant joints of less than 20 psi (138 kPa).

C. Structural Loads:

1. Wind Storm Speeds: 120 MPH, Sustained.
2. Wind Storm Speeds: 150 MPH, Gusts.

D. Deflection of Framing Members:

1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m) and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m) or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch (19 mm), whichever is less.
2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), whichever is smaller, and the amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components directly below to less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and clearance between members and operable units directly below to less than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).

E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:

1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity but not less than 10 seconds.

F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistance-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems that pass large and small missile-impact tests and cyclic-pressure tests according to testing requirements.

1. Design Displacement: Per Miami-Dade County requirements for Force 5 Hurricane wind borne debris.
2. Test Performance: Meeting criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.4 at design displacement and 1.5 times design displacement.

G. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.

    a. Test High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F (82 deg C).
    b. Test Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
    c. Test Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).

H. Air Infiltration: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.03 L/s per sq. m) of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

I. Water Penetration Under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

J. Water Penetration Under Dynamic Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

    1. Maximum Water Leakage: According to AAMA 501.1. No uncontrolled water penetrating systems or appearing on systems' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not considered water leakage.

K. Condensation Resistance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 53 when tested according to AAMA 1503.

L. Average Thermal Conductance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having average U-factor of not more than 0.69 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (3.92 W/sq. m x K) when tested according to AAMA 1503.

M. Sound Transmission: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having minimum STC 32 according to ASTM E 413 and an OITC 26 according to ASTM E 1332, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 90.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

    1. Include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    2. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the system to the exterior.

3. For entrances, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of systems, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:

1. Joinery.
2. Anchorage.
3. Expansion provisions.
4. Glazing.
5. Flashing and drainage.

F. Welding certificates.

G. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.

H. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.

I. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed systems to include in maintenance manuals.

J. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Capable of assuming engineering responsibility and performing work of this Section and who is acceptable to manufacturer.

1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for aluminum-framed systems including Shop Drawings based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project and submission of reports of tests performed on manufacturer's standard assemblies.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.

C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

D. Accessible Entrances: Comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), and Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS).

E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating aluminum-framed systems without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Assembly Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that deteriorate as defined in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
d. Adhesive or cohesive sealant failures.
e. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
f. Failure of operating components to function properly.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components on which finishes fail within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include normal weathering.

1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EFCO Corporation.
2. Kawneer.
3. United States Aluminum.
4. YKK AP America Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.

B. Steel Reinforcement: With manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00 applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.3 FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate framing members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.

B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration, use self-locking devices.
2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system only at unusual conditions.

D. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.

E. Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials. Form exposed flashing from sheet aluminum finished to match framing and of sufficient thickness to maintain a flat appearance without visible deflection.

F. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

2.4 GLAZING SYSTEMS

A. Glazing: As specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types, replaceable, molded or extruded, that maintain uniform pressure and watertight seal.

C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric types.

D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.

E. Structural Silicone: Manufacturer’s standard exterior structural silicone vertically applied system as indicated on the drawings.

2.5 DOORS

A. Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed doors, for manual swing operation.

1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch (44.5-mm) overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch-(3.2-mm) thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deep penetration and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.

a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior >.

2. Door Design: As indicated on the drawings.

a. Accessible Doors: Smooth surfaced for width of door in area within 10 inches (255 mm) above floor or ground plane.

3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.

a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

2.6 DOOR HARDWARE

A. General: Provide heavy-duty units in sizes and types recommended by entrance system and hardware manufacturers for entrances and uses indicated.

1. Opening-Force Requirements:

a. Egress Doors: Not more than 30 lbf (133 N) required to set door in motion and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to open door to minimum required width.
b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N).

B. Scheduled Door Hardware: Provide door hardware according to the Door Hardware Schedule at the end of Part 3.

1. Named Manufacturer's Products: Product designation and hardware manufacturer are listed in the Door Hardware Schedule at the end of Part 3 to establish minimum requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware.

   a. Provide named hardware manufacturer's products.
   b. Named products are basis-of-design products. Provide named hardware manufacturer's products or comparable products that are equivalent in function and quality and that are recommended and supplied by entrance system manufacturer.

2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with standards referenced in this Article and with requirements for description, quality, type, and function listed in the Door Hardware Schedule at the end of Part 3.

C. Hinges: Interior Doors

1. Basis-of-Design: “ Hager”
2. Standard: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1; Stainless Steel
3. Full mortice, ball bearing, five knuckle, heavy weight
4. Finish: US32D

D. Continuous-Gear Hinges: Exterior Single or Double Leaf Doors. Manufacturer's standard with stainless-steel bearings between knuckles; fabricated to full height of door and frame.

E. Locking Devices, General: Do not require use of key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

1. Opening-Force Requirements:

   a. Delayed-Egress Locks: Lock releases within 15 seconds after applying a force of not more than 15 lbf (67 N) for not more than 3 seconds.
   b. Latches and Exit Devices: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to release latch.

F. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.

1. Low profile, mid-rail touch bar with concealed rods to head sill, for each door leaf.

G. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.

H. Operating Trim: As selected by Contractor.

I. Closers: With accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use, and adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

1. Standard: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1. Concealed overhead closers.

J. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.

K. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.

1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC all around doors at laboratory (s) openings.

L. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.

M. Silencers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.

N. Thresholds: Raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch (13 mm).

1. Standard: BHMA A156.21.

2.7 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

2.8 FABRICATION

A. Form aluminum shapes before finishing.

B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

C. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing (without projecting stops).

E. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system, or screw-spline system, or head-and-sill-receptor system with shear blocks at intermediate horizontal members.

F. Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing hardware.

1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.

G. Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing hardware.

1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding weather stripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge.
2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.

H. Hardware Installation: Factory install hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed hardware before applying finishes.

I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

C. High-Performance Organic Finish (2-Coat Fluoropolymer): AA-C12C40R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: conversion coating; Organic Coating: manufacturer's standard 3-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with AAMA 2604 and with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Color: To be selected by: architect from manufacturer’s full range of standard or premium colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
6. Seal joints watertight, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.

D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" and to produce weathertight installation.

E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, without warp or rack.

F. Install glazing as specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

1. Structural-Sealant Glazing:

a. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
b. Install weatherseal sealant according to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

G. Entrances: Install to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Entrances: Install to produce tight fit at weather stripping and weathertight closure.
2. Field-Installed Hardware: Install surface-mounted hardware according to hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

H. Install insulation materials as specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."

I. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" and to produce weathertight installation.

J. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.7 m); 1/4 inch (6 mm) over total length.
2. Alignment:

    a. Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
    b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).

3. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurement to 1/8 inch (3 mm).

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Entrances: Adjust operating hardware for smooth operation according to hardware manufacturers' written instructions.

1. For doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch measured to the leading door edge.

3.4 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

A. Refer to: Section 08710 “Door Hardware”.

END OF SECTION 08411

Section 08710

DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Base Bid.

1.03 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Commercial door hardware for the following:

a. Swinging doors.

b. Other doors to the extent indicated.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 8 Section "Standard Steel Doors and Frames" for astragals provided as part of fire-rated labeled assemblies and for door silencers provided as part of hollow-metal frames.

2. Division 8 Section "Flush Wood Doors" for astragals and integral intumescent seals provided as part of fire-rated labeled assemblies.

3. Division 8 Section "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for entrance door hardware, except cylinders.

4. Division 13 Section "Security Access" for access control devices installed at door openings and provided as part of a security access system.

5. Division 13 Section "Fire Alarm" for connections to building fire alarm system.

6. Division 16 Sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring work.

C. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following. Coordinating, purchasing, delivering, and scheduling remain requirements of this Section.

1. Pivots, thresholds, weather stripping and cylinders for locks specified in other Sections.

2. Permanent cores to be installed by Owner.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction and installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified door hardware, indicating the following:

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Include the following:

a. System schematic.

b. Point-to-point wiring diagram.

c. Riser diagram.

d. Elevation of each door.

2. Detail interface between electrified door hardware and fire alarm, access control, security, and building control systems.

3. Operation Narrative: Describe the operation of doors controlled by electrified door hardware.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each finish, color, and texture required for each type of door hardware indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: Submit minimum 2-by-4-inch (51-by-102-mm) plate Samples of each type of finish required, except primed finish.

E. Product Certificates: For electrified door hardware, signed by product manufacturer.

1. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire doors complies with listed fire door assemblies.

F. Qualification Data: For Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.

G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for locks, latches, delayed-egress locks and closers.

H. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals. Include final hardware and keying schedule.

I. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

J. Other Action Submittals:

1. Door Hardware Sets: Prepared by or under the supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final door hardware sets with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.

a. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule." Double space entries, and number and date each page.

b. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in

the Contract Documents.

c. Content: Include the following information:

(1) Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, and material of each door and frame.

(2) Type, style, function, size, quantity, and finish of each door hardware item. Include description and function of each lockset and exit device.

(3) Complete designations of every item required for each door or opening including name and manufacturer.

(4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.

(5) Location of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.

(6) Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.

(7) Mounting locations for door hardware.

(8) Door and frame sizes and materials.

(9) Description of each electrified door hardware function, including location, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems.

a) Sequence of Operation: Include description of component functions that occur in the following situations: authorized person wants to enter; authorized person wants to exit; unauthorized person wants to enter; unauthorized person wants to exit.

(10) List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.

d. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final door hardware sets at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the door hardware sets must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the door hardware sets.

e. Submittal Sequence: Submit initial draft of final schedule along with essential Product Data to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule. Submit the final door hardware sets after Samples, Product Data, coordination with Shop Drawings of other work, delivery schedules, and similar information has been completed and accepted.

2. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer or Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by lock manufacturer.

1. Installer's responsibilities include supplying and installing door hardware and providing a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.

2. Installer shall have warehousing facilities in Project's vicinity.

3. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.

4. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

B. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A person who is currently certified by DHI as an Architectural Hardware Consultant and who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.

1. Electrified Door Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant who is experienced in providing consulting services for electrified door hardware installations.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware from a single manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.

D. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 or UBC Standard 7-2.

1. Test Pressure: Test at atmospheric pressure After 5 minutes into the test, neutral pressure level in furnace shall be established at 40 inches (1016 mm) or less above the sill.

E. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

F. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." In addition to Owner, Construction Manager, Contractor, and Architect, conference participants shall also include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant and Owner's security consultant. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.

2. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.

3. Requirements for key control system.

4. Address for delivery of keys.

G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to electrified door hardware including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in and other preparatory work performed by other trades.

2. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.

3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

4. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.

B. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final door hardware sets, and include basic installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.

C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1. Deliver keys and permanent cores to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of recessed pivots and closers with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.

B. Templates: Distribute door hardware templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing door hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

C. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies, fire alarm system and detection devices, access control system, security system, and building control system.

D. Existing Openings: Where new hardware components are scheduled for application to existing construction or where modifications to existing door hardware are required, field verify existing conditions and coordinate installation of door hardware to suit opening conditions and to provide for proper operation.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.

b. Faulty operation of operators and door hardware.

c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.

2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion, except as follows:

a. Electromagnetic and Delayed-Egress Locks: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

b. Exit Devices: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

c. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

d. Concealed Floor Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.09 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

B. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door hardware operation. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original products.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE : **4200 Leeland Only**

A. General: Provide door hardware for each door to comply with requirements in this Section and door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule, and door hardware sets indicated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Sets" Article.

1. Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and named manufacturers' products, products equivalent in function and comparable in quality to named products, and products complying with BHMA standard referenced.

2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.

B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:

1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Sets" Article.

2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and

requirements for description, quality, and function.

C. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.02 HINGES, GENERAL

A. Quantity: Provide the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Two Hinges: For doors with heights up to 60 inches (1524 mm).

2. Three Hinges: For doors with heights 61 to 90 inches (1549 to 2286 mm).

3. Four Hinges: For doors with heights 91 to 120 inches (2311 to 3048 mm).

4. For doors with heights more than 120 inches (3048 mm), provide 4 hinges, plus 1 hinge for every 30 inches (750 mm) of door height greater than 120 inches (3048 mm).

B. Template Requirements: Except for hinges and pivots to be installed entirely (both leaves) into wood doors and frames, provide only template-produced units.

C. Hinge Weight: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:

1. Entrance Doors: Continuous geared heavy-weight hinges.

2. Doors with Closers: Antifriction-bearing hinges.

3. Interior Doors: Standard-weight hinges and continuous geared heavy – weight hinges.

D. Hinge Base Metal: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:

1. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel, with stainless-steel pin or brass, with stainless-steel pin body and brass protruding heads.

2. Interior Hinges: Stainless Steel, with stainless-steel pin body and brass protruding heads, or Steel, with steel pin, or Stainless steel, with stainless-steel pin.

3. Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: Steel, with steel pin or Stainless steel, with stainless-steel pin.

E. Hinge Options: Where indicated in door hardware sets or on Drawings:

1. Maximum Security Pin: Fix pin in hinge barrel after it is inserted.

2. Nonremovable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while door is closed; for outswinging exterior doors and outswinging corridor doors with locks.

3. Corners: Square

F. Electrified Functions for Hinges: Comply with the following:

1. Power Transfer: Concealed PTFE-jacketed wires, secured at each leaf and continuous through hinge knuckle.

2. Monitoring: Concealed electrical monitoring switch.

3. Power Transfer and Monitoring: Concealed PTFE-jacketed wires, secured at each leaf and continuous through hinge knuckle, and with concealed electrical monitoring switch.

G. Fasteners: Comply with the following:

1. Machine Screws: For metal doors and frames. Install into drilled and tapped holes.

2. Wood Screws: For wood doors and frames.

3. Threaded-to-the-Head Wood Screws: For fire-rated wood doors.

4. Screws: Phillips flat-head; machine screws (drilled and tapped holes) for metal doors and wood screws for wood doors and frames. Finish screw heads to match surface of hinges.

2.03 HINGES

A. Butts and Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Listed under Category A in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

B. Template Hinge Dimensions: BHMA A156.7.

C. Available Manufacturers:

1. Ives (IVS).

2. Bommer Industries, Inc. (BI).

3. Hager Companies (HAG).

4. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works (STH).

2.04 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Standard: BHMA A156.26, Grade 1-150, Grade 1-300, Grade 1-600, Grade 2-150, Grade 2-300, Grade 2-600, Grade 3-150, Grade 3-300.

1. Listed under Category N in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

B. General: Minimum 0.120-inch- (3.0-mm-) thick, hinge leaves with minimum overall width of 4 inches (102 mm); fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete.

1. Fire Pins: Steel pins to hold labeled fire doors in place if required by tested listing.

C. Continuous, Gear-Type Hinges: Extruded-aluminum, pinless, geared hinge leaves; joined by a continuous extruded-aluminum channel cap; with concealed, self-lubricating thrust bearings.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Bommer Industries, Inc. (BI).

b. Ives (IVS).

c. Hager Companies (HAG).

d. Zero International (ZRO).

2.05 LOCKS AND LATCHES, GENERAL

A. Accessibility Requirements: Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)," and Texas Accessibility Standards.

1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf (22 N).

B. Latches and Locks for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Latches shall not require more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch. Locks shall not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

C. Electrified Locking Devices: BHMA A156.25.

D. Lock Trim:

1. Levers: Wrought.

2. Knobs: Wrought.

3. Escutcheons (Roses): Wrought.

4. Dummy Trim: Match lever lock trim and escutcheons.

5. Lockset Designs: Provide design indicated on Drawings or, if sets are provided by another manufacturer, provide designs that match those designated.

E. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:

1. Bored Locks: Minimum 1/2-inch (13-mm) latchbolt throw.

2. Mortise Locks: Minimum 3/4-inch (19-mm) latchbolt throw.

3. Deadbolts: Minimum 1-inch (25-mm) bolt throw.

F. Rabbeted Meeting Doors: Provide special rabbeted front and strike on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.

G. Backset: 2-3/4 inches (70 mm), unless otherwise indicated.

H. Strikes: Manufacturer's standard strike with strike box for each latchbolt or lock bolt, with curved lip extended to protect frame, finished to match door hardware set, and as follows:

1. Strikes for Bored Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.2.

2. Strikes for Mortise Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.13.

3. Strikes for Interconnected Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.12.

4. Strikes for Auxiliary Deadlocks: BHMA A156.5.

5. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.

6. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.

7. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.

2.06 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

A. Lock Functions: Function numbers and descriptions indicated in door hardware sets comply with the following:

1. Bored Locks: BHMA A156.2.

B. Bored Locks: BHMA A156.2, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated; Series 4000. Listed under Category F in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

1. Available Manufacturers (same manufacturer as cylinders required):

a. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (SCH).

2.07 AUXILIARY LOCKS AND LATCHES

A. Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated. Listed under Category E in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

1. Available Manufacturers (same manufacturer as cylinders required):

a. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (SCH).

2.08 ELECTROMAGNETIC LOCKS

A. General: BHMA A156.23; electrically powered, of strength and configuration indicated; with electromagnet attached to frame and armature plate attached to door. Listed under Category E in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

1. Type: Full exterior or full interior, as required by application indicated.

2. Strength Ranking: 1000 lbf (4448 N).

3. Inductive Kickback Peak Voltage: Not more than 53 V.

4. Residual Magnetism: Not more than 4 lbf (18 N) to separate door from magnet.

2.09 DOOR BOLTS

A. Bolt Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:

1. Half-Round Surface Bolts: Minimum 7/8-inch (22-mm) throw.

2. Interlocking Surface Bolts: Minimum 15/16-inch (24-mm) throw.

3. Fire-Rated Surface Bolts: Minimum 1-inch (25-mm) throw; listed and labeled for fire-rated doors.

4. Dutch-Door Bolts: Minimum 3/4-inch (19-mm) throw.

5. Mortise Flush Bolts: Minimum 3/4-inch (19-mm) throw.

B. Dustproof Strikes: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.

C. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated; designed for mortising into door edge.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Adams Rite Manufacturing Co. (ARM).

b. Glynn-Johnson; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (GJ).

c. Hager Companies (HAG).

d. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (IVS).

e. Trimco (TBM).

D. Automatic and Self-Latching Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated; designed for mortising into door edge.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Glynn-Johnson; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (GJ).

b. Hager Companies (HAG).

c. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (IVS).

d. Trimco (TBM).

2.10 EXIT DEVICES

A. Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated. Listed under Category G in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

B. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), and Texas Accessibility Standards.

1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf (22 N).

C. Exit Devices for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Exit devices shall not require

more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch. Locks shall not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

D. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.

E. Fire Exit Devices: Devices complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252.

F. Removable Mullions: BHMA A156.3.

G. Fire-Exit Removable Mullions: Provide removable mullions for use with fire exit devices complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252. Mullions shall be used only with exit devices for which they have been tested.

H. Outside Trim: Lever with cylinder; material and finish to match locksets, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Match design for locksets and latchsets, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Through Bolts: For exit devices and trim on metal doors, non-fire-rated wood doors, and fire-rated wood doors.

J. Electronic Exit Bars: Nonlatching electronic releasing device, activated by an adjustable capacitance sensor, with no moving parts; listed and labeled as panic exit hardware. Fabricate bar from extruded aluminum, and provide door and frame transfer device and 16 feet (4.9 m) of cord to route wiring off the door frame.

K. Available Manufacturers:

1. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (CR).

2. Detex Corporation (DTX).

3. Dor-O-Matic; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (DOR).

4. Locknetics; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (LSE).

5. Monarch Exit Devices & Door Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (MON).

6. Von Duprin; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (VD).

2.11 LOCK CYLINDERS

A. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1, Grade 1A, Grade 2.

B. High-Security Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.30, Grade 1, Grade 2; M, mechanical and E, electrical.

1. Key Control Level: Category A, B, or C.

2. Destructive Test Level: Category A, B, or C.

3. Surreptitious Entry Resistance Level: Category A, B or C.

C. Cylinders: Schlage Primus only (NO SUBSTITUTION), constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver, and complying with the following:

1. Number of Pins: Five, Six, or Seven.

2. Rim Type: Cylinders with back plate, flat-type vertical or horizontal tailpiece, and raised trim ring.

3. Bored-Lock Type: Cylinders with tailpieces to suit locks.

a. High-Security Grade: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1A, listed and labeled as complying with pick- and drill-resistant testing requirements in UL 437 (Suffix A).

D. Permanent Cores: Manufacturer's standard; finish face to match lockset; complying with the following:

1. Interchangeable Cores: Core insert, removable by use of a special key; usable with other manufacturers' cylinders.

2. Removable Cores: Core insert, removable by use of a special key; for use only with core manufacturer's cylinder and door hardware.

E. Construction Keying: Comply with the following:

1. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.

2. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

a. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying schedule or directed by Owner.

b. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.

F. Manufacturer: Same manufacturer as for locks and latches.

G. Available Manufacturers:

1. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (SCH).

2.12 KEYING

A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, Appendix A. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference, and as follows:

1. No Master Key System: Cylinders are operated by change keys only.

2. Master Key System: Cylinders are operated by a change key and a master key.

3. Grand Master Key System: Cylinders are operated by a change key, a master key, and a grand master key.

4. Great-Grand Master Key System: Cylinders are operated by a change key, a master key, a grand master key, and a great-grand master key.

5. Existing System: Master key or grand master key locks to Owner's existing system.

6. Existing System: Re-key Owner's existing master key system into new keying system.

7. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.

B. Keys: Nickel silver.

1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:

a. Notation: "DO NOT DUPLICATE." Information to be furnished by Owner.

2. Quantity: In addition to one extra key blank for each lock, provide the following:

a. Cylinder Change Keys: Three.

b. Master Keys: Five.

c. Grand Master Keys: Five.

d. Great-Grand Master Keys: Five.

2.13 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Key Control Cabinets: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1 or 2; metal cabinet with baked-enamel finish; containing key-holding hooks, labels, 2 sets of key tags with self-locking key holders, key-gathering envelopes, and temporary and permanent markers; with key capacity of 150 percent of the number of locks.

1. Wall-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet with hinged-panel door equipped with key-holding panels and pin-tumbler cylinder door lock.

2.14 OPERATING TRIM

A. Standard: BHMA A156.6.

B. Materials: Fabricate from aluminum, brass, bronze, or stainless steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Available Manufacturers:

1. Forms + Surfaces (FS).

2. Hager Companies (HAG).

3. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (IVS).

4. Rockwood Manufacturing Company (RM).

5. Trimco (TBM).

2.15 CLOSERS

A. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), and Texas Accessibility Standards.

1. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:

a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied perpendicular to door.

b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied parallel to door at latch.

c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Door Closers for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Door closers shall not require more than 30 lbf (133 N) to set door in motion and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to open door to minimum required width.

C. Hold-Open Closers/Detectors: Coordinate and interface integral smoke detector and closer device with fire alarm system.

D. Flush Floor Plates: Provide finish cover plates for floor closers unless thresholds are indicated. Match door hardware finish, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Recessed Floor Plates: Provide recessed floor plates with insert of floor finish material for floor closers unless thresholds are indicated. Provide extended closer spindle to accommodate thickness of floor finish.

F. Power-Assist Closers: As specified in Division 8 Section "Automatic Door Operators" for access doors for people with disabilities or where listed in the door hardware sets.

G. Size of Units: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

H. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated. Listed under Category C in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory." Provide type of arm required for closer to be located on non-public side of door, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Available Manufacturers:

   a. Dor-O-Matic; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (DOR).

   b. LCN Closers; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (LCN).

   c. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (RIX).

I. Concealed Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated. Listed under Category C in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

   1. Available Manufacturers:

      a. LCN Closers; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (LCN).

      b. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (RIX).

J. Coordinators: BHMA A156.3.

2.16 STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Stops and Bumpers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated.

   1. Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are scheduled or indicated. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic. Where floor or wall stops are not appropriate, provide overhead holders.

B. Mechanical Door Holders: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated.

C. Combination Floor and Wall Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated.

D. Combination Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1, Grade 2 , Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated.

E. Electromagnetic Door Holders: BHMA A156.15. Listed under Category C in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

   1. Coordinate with fire detectors and interface with fire alarm system for labeled fire door assemblies.

F. Silencers for Metal Door Frames: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1; neoprene or rubber, minimum diameter 1/2 inch (13 mm); fabricated for drilled-in application to frame.

G. Available Manufacturers:

   1. Dor-O-Matic; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (DOR).

   2. Glynn-Johnson; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (GJ).

3. Hager Companies (HAG).

4. HES, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (HES).

5. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (IVS).

6. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (RIX).

7. Rockwood Manufacturing Company (RM).

8. Trimco (TBM).

2.17 DOOR GASKETING

A. Standard: BHMA A156.22. Listed under Category J in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

B. General: Provide continuous weather-strip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing on interior doors where indicated or scheduled. Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.

2. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.

3. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

C. Air Leakage: Not to exceed 0.50 cfm per foot (0.000774 cu. m/s per m) of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to ASTM E 283.

D. Smoke-Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 105 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for smoke-control ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL 1784.

1. Provide smoke-labeled gasketing on 20-minute-rated doors and on smoke-labeled doors.

E. Fire-Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 and UBC Standard 7-2.

1. Test Pressure: Test at atmospheric pressure. After 5 minutes into the test, neutral pressure level in furnace shall be established at 40 inches (1016 mm) or less above the sill.

F. Sound-Rated Gasketing: Assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency, for sound ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1408.

G. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.

H. Gasketing Materials: ASTM D 2000 and AAMA 701/702.

I. Available Manufacturers:

1. Hager Companies (HAG).

2. National Guard Products (NGP).

3. Reese Enterprises (RE).

4. Zero International (ZRO).

2.18 THRESHOLDS

A. Standard: BHMA A156.21. Listed under Category J in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."

B. Accessibility Requirements: Where thresholds are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), and Texas Accessibility Standards.

1. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) high, or 3/4 inch (19 mm) high for exterior sliding doors.

C. Thresholds for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Maximum 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

D. Available Manufacturers:

1. Hager Companies (HAG).

2. National Guard Products (NGP).

3. Reese Enterprises (RE).

4. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (RIX).

5. Zero International (ZRO).

2.19 MISCELLANEOUS DOOR HARDWARE

A. Boxed Power Supplies: Modular unit in NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure; filtered and regulated; voltage rating and type matching requirements of door hardware served; and listed and labeled for use with fire alarm systems.

B. Monitor Strikes: Cast strike with toggle and Dustbox monitor for installation under standard strike.

C. Auxiliary Hardware: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, Grade 2, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated, Grade 3.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Hager Companies (HAG).

b. Rockwood Manufacturing Company (RM).

c. Trimco (TBM).

2.20 FABRICATION

A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rated labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.

1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.

B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18. Do not furnish manufacturer's standard materials or forming methods if different from specified standard.

C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.

2. Steel Machine or Wood Screws: For the following fire-rated applications:

a. Mortise hinges to doors.

b. Strike plates to frames.

c. Closers to doors and frames.

3. Steel Through Bolts: For the following fire-rated applications unless door blocking is provided:

a. Surface hinges to doors.

b. Closers to doors and frames.

c. Surface-mounted exit devices.

4. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.

5. Fasteners for Wood Doors: Comply with requirements in DHI WDHS.2, "Recommended Fasteners for Wood Doors."

2.21 FINISHES

A. Standard: BHMA A156.18, brushed stainless steel and brushed aluminum. If materials are plastic finish shall match metal finish.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Steel Doors and Frames: Comply with DHI A115 Series.

1. Surface-Applied Door Hardware: Drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI A250.6.

B. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI A115-W Series.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated on Drawings or as follows unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Builders' Hardware for Custom Steel Doors and Frames."

3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."

B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim

units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.

1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.

2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.

C. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.

D. Boxed Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings in equipment room. Verify location with Architect.

1. Configuration: Provide one power supply for each door opening.

2. Configuration: Provide the least number of power supplies required to adequately serve doors with electrified door hardware.

E. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant: Owner will engage a qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.

1. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant will inspect door hardware and state in each report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed and adjusted.

3.05 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

1. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 30 degrees.

2. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.

3. Door Closers: Unless otherwise required by authorities having jurisdiction, adjust sweep period so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.

B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust, including adjusting operating forces, each item of door hardware as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware and door hardware finishes. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

HW SET: 01
DOOR NUMBER; 100, 101A

EACH TO HAVE:

1	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	112HD	628	IVE
1	EA	PULL/PUSHBAR	9190-0-NO	630	IVE
1	EA	CONCEALED CLOSER	2030	689	LCN
1	EA	SECURITY FLOOR STOP	FS18S	BLK	IVE
1	EA	CONTROLLER	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	CARD READER	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
2	EA	DOOR POSITION SWITCH	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
2	EA	MAGNETIC LOCK	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	MOTION SENSOR	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	PUSHBUTTON	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O

HW SET: 02 RESTROOMS
DOOR NUMBERS; 122A, 123A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PUSH PLATE	8200 6" X 16"	630	IVE
1	EA	PULL PLATE	8302-0 6" X 16"	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 FC	689	LCN
1	EA	DOOR STOP	WS407CCV/FS436 AS REQD	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HW SET: 03
DOOR NUMBERS; 109, 110, 111, 120 and DOOR NUMBER 150A at the NEWPP Project

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80TD SPA	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE ONLY	20-740	626	SCH
1	EA	ANSI STRIKE BOX	K510-066		SCH
1	EA	DOOR STOP	WS407CCV/FS436 AS REQD	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HW SET: 04
DOOR NUMBERS; 102, 103, 104, 103B

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	OFFICE LOCK	ND50TD SPA	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE ONLY	20-740	626	SCH
1	EA	ANSI STRIKE BOX	K510-066		SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 FC	689	LCN
1	EA	DOOR STOP	WS407CCV/FS436 AS REQD	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HW SET: 05
DOOR NUMBERS; 106A, 106B, 106C, 106D, 107A, 107B, 107C, 107D, 107E, 108

EACH TO HAVE:

1	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	112HD	628	IVE
1	EA	ANSI STRIKE BOX	K510-066		SCH
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	ND10S SPA	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 FC	689	LCN
1	EA	DOOR STOP	WS407CCV/FS436 AS REQD	630	IVE
1	SET	SEALS	BY: FRAME MANUFACTURER	B/O	B/O
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	101 VA	AL	NGP

HW SET: 06
DOOR NUMBERS; 105A,113,113A,114

EACH TO HAVE:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ANSI STRIKE BOX	K510-066		SCH
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	ND 105 SPA	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 FC	689	LCN
1	EA	DOOR STOP	WS407CCV/FS436 AS REQD	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HW SET: 7
DOOR NUMBER; 115

EACH TO HAVE:

1	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	112 HD	628	IVE
1	EA	ANSI STRIKE BOX	K510-066	626	SCH
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80TD SPA	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 RW/PA FC	689	LCN
1	EA	DOOR STOP	WS407CCV/FS436 AS REQD	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE
1	EA	CONTROLLER	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	CARD READER	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	DOOR POSITION SWITCH	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	MAGNETIC LOCK	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	MOTION SENSOR	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O
1	EA	PUSHBUTTON	BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		B/O

HW SET: 8
DOOR NUMBERS; 106

EACH TO HAVE:

1	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	112 HD	628	IVE
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	99L 996L-17	626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	20-057-ICX	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE ONLY	20-740	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 SCUSH FC	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 12" LDW	630	IVE
1	SET	SEALS	5050B	BRN	NGP
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	200NA	AL	NGP

HW SET: 9
DOOR NUMBERS; 108A & 108A1

EACH TO HAVE:

1	EA	FLOOR CLOSER	DIXON 428 W/ PATCH FITTINGS 90 DEGREES	630	
1	EA	FLOOR STOP	HAGAR 248 F	4532D	HAG
1	EA	PUSH/PULL	HAGER 153 DVB	4532D	HAG

HW SET: 10
DOOR NUMBERS; 150 AT THE NEWPP PROJECT

EACH TO HAVE:

1	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	112 HD	628	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80TD SPA	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE	20-740	626	SCH
1	EA	ANSI STRIKE BOX	K510-066		SCH
1	SET	SEALS	BY:FRAME MANUFACTURER	B/O	B/O
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	101 VA	AL	NGP
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 FC	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 34” X 12	630	IVE
1	EA	THRESHOLD	4035	627	HGR

HW SET: 11
DOOR NUMBERS; 148 AT THE NEWPP PROJECT

EACH TO HAVE:

2	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	112 HD	628	IVE
2	EA	DOOR PULL	HIOL	630	HGR
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 SCUSH FC	689	LCN
2	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	99L 996L - 17	626	VON
1	SET	WEATHER SEALS	BY: DOOR AND FRAME MANUFACTURER	B/O	B/O
1	EA	THRESHOLD	4035	627	HGR
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	20-057-ICX	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE	20-740	626	SCH

SLIDING WINDOW HARDWARE [4200 LEELAND]

Item	**QUANTITY**
Stainless Steel Type 304 1 inch diameter guide rail: 82-11/16 inches long	1
Stainless Steel Type 304 Wall Support Attachments	4
Stainless Steel Type 304 Window trollers/rollers	2
Stainless Steel Type 304 Stops	2
Stainless Steel Type 304 Bottom Glides	4
Stainless Steel Type 304 Lockset at counter	1
Installation Tools	2
Instructions for installation	1

END OF SECTION 08710

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08800

GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Base Bid

1.3 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:

1. Windows.
2. Doors.
3. Interior lites.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 8 Section Aluminum Storefronts and Entries.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Manufacturers of Glass Products: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.

C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.

D. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.

E. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for

maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

F. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:

a. Specified Design Wind Loads: 120 mph sustained and 150 mph gusts.
b. Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour (meters per second) at 33 feet (10 m) above grade, according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.

1) Basic Wind Speed: 120 MPH
2) Importance Factor: I.
3) Exposure Category: C.

c. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For the following types of glass supported on all 4 edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/50 times the short side length or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is less, without damage.

1) For monolithic-glass lites heat treated to resist wind loads.
2) For insulating glass.
3) For laminated-glass lites.

d. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 9/16 inch.
e. Thickness of Tinted and Heat-Absorbing Glass: Provide the same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:

1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick of thickness indicated.
2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
4. Center-of-Glass Values: Based on using LBL-44789 WINDOW 5.0 computer program for the following methodologies:

a. U-Factors: NFRC 100 expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
b. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200.
c. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.

B. Samples: For the following products, in the form of 12-inch- (300-mm-) square Samples for glass.
1. Ultra-Clear float glass
2. Each color of tinted float glass.
3. Each type of laminated glass with colored interlayer.
4. Insulating glass for each designation indicated.
5. For each color (except black) of exposed glazing sealant indicated.

C. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.

D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

1. For solar-control low-e-coated glass, provide documentation demonstrating that manufacturer of coated glass is certified by coating manufacturer.

E. Qualification Data: For installers.

F. Product Test Reports: For each of the following types of glazing products:

1. Ultra-Clear float glass
2. Tinted float glass.

3. Laminated glass.
4. Insulating glass.
5. Glazing sealants.

G. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in glass installations with a record of successful in-service performance; and who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.

B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain the following through one source from a single manufacturer for each glass type: clear float glass, coated float glass, laminated glass, glass-clad polycarbonate, and insulating glass.

C. Source Limitations for Glass Sputter-Coated with Solar-Control Low-E Coatings: Where solar-control low-e coatings of a primary glass manufacturer that has established a certified fabricator program is specified, obtain sputter-coated solar-control low-e-coated glass in fabricated units from a manufacturer that is certified by coated-glass manufacturer.

D. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain glazing accessories through one source from a single manufacturer for each product and installation method indicated.

E. Glazing for Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Glazing for assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 and that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.

F. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and, for wired glass, ANSI Z97.1.

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, obtain safety glazing products permanently marked with certification label of the Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency or manufacturer acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Where glazing units, including Kind FT glass and laminated glass, are specified in Part 2 articles for glazing lites more than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m) in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category II materials, for lites 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m) or less in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category I or II materials, except for hazardous locations where Category II materials are required by 16 CFR 1201 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1. GANA Publications: GANA Laminated Division's "Laminated Glass Design Guide" and GANA's "Glazing Manual."
2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."

H. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following testing and inspecting agency:

1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.
2. Associated Laboratories, Inc.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic seal ruptures.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

1. Do not install liquid glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by laminated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each glazing product is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other manufacturers specified.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3; of class indicated:
1. Clear
2. Ultra-Clear

B. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I (transparent flat glass); Quality-Q3; of class, kind, and condition indicated.

1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed, unless otherwise indicated.
2. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
3. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other uncoated glass).
4. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) float glass in place of annealed or Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass where safety glass is indicated.

C. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with other requirements specified and with the following:

1. Interlayer: Polyvinyl butyral or cured resin of thickness indicated with a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after laminating glass lites and installation.

a. For polyvinyl butyral interlayers, laminate lites in autoclave with heat plus pressure.
b. For cured-resin interlayers, laminate lites with laminated-glass manufacturer's standard cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer.

2. Laminating Process: Fabricate laminated glass to produce glass free of foreign substances and air or glass pockets.

D. Insulating-Glass Units, General: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA units and with requirements specified in this Article and in Part 2 "Insulating-Glass Units" Article.

1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) glass lites where safety glass is indicated.

3. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated for insulating-glass units are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
4. Sealing System: Dual seal, with primary and secondary sealants as follows:

    a. Manufacturer's standard sealants.
    b. Polyisobutylene, silicone and structural silicone.

5. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
6. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction complying with the following requirements:

    a. Spacer Material: Aluminum with mill or clear anodic finish, Aluminum with black, color anodic finish, Aluminum with bronze, color anodic finish, Aluminum with powdered metal paint finish in color selected by Architect, Galvanized steel, or Stainless steel.
    b. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
    c. Corner Construction: Manufacturer's standard corner construction.

2.3 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:

1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

B. Elastomeric Glazing Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.

1. Single-Component Neutral- and Basic-Curing or Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealants:

    a. Available Products:

        1) Dow Corning Corporation; 993.
        2) GE Silicones; SilPruf SCS2000.
        3) Tremco; Spectrem 3

    b. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
    c. Class: 50.
    d. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
    e. Uses Related to Glazing Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to glazing substrates indicated, O.

1) Use O Glazing Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, and wood.

2. Class 25 Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant:

a. Available Products:

1) Dow Corning Corporation; 797.
2) GE Silicones; UltraGlaze SSG4000.
3) GE Silicones; UltraGlaze SSG4000AC.
4) Polymeric Systems Inc.; PSI-631.
5) Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM5731 Poly-Glaze Plus.
6) Tremco; Proglaze SG.
7) Tremco; Spectrem 2.
8) Tremco; Tremsil 600.

b. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
c. Class: 25.
d. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
e. Uses Related to Glazing Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to glazing substrates indicated, O.

1) Use O Glazing Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, and wood.

C. Glazing Sealants for Fire-Resistive Glazing Products: Identical to products used in test assemblies to obtain fire-protection rating.

2.4 GLAZING TAPES

A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:

1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:

1. Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
2. Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.

E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

G. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Identical to product used in test assembly to obtain fire-resistance rating.

2.6 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with outdoor and indoor faces.

C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

2.7 MONOLITHIC FLOAT-GLASS UNITS

A. Ultra – Clear Float-Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality – Q3; and with visible light transmission of 91 percent, Kind FT (fully- tempered).

1. Basis-of Design: PPG " Starfire"
2. Thicknesses: As indicated on the drawings.

B. Coated Tinted Float-Glass Units: Class 2 (tinted) Kind FT (fully tempered) float glass where required by code.

1. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
2. Tint Color: To match existing color on existing exterior window units.

2.8 LAMINATED-GLASS UNITS

A. Heat-Treated Laminated-Glass Units LG: 1 (For Interior Doors)

1. Kind LT, consisting of two lites of fully tempered float glass.
2. Lite: clear float glass.

   a. Kind FT (fully tempered).
   b. Thickness: 6.0 mm minimum.

3. Plastic Interlayer:

   a. Thickness: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm), but not less than that required to comply as a Type II safety glass material.
   b. Interlayer Color: Clear.

5. Overall Thickness: 1/4 inch

2.9 INSULATING-GLASS UNITS (For exterior wall windows and doors)

A. Solar-Control Low-E Insulating-Glass Units IG: #1

1. Overall Unit Thickness: 9/16” for exterior doors and 1 inch for exterior wall windows.
2. Interspace/ Content: ½ inch/ ARGON for exterior wall windows and 5/16” for exterior doors.
3. Outdoor Lite: (tinted) float glass complying with ceramic-coated vision-glass requirements.

   a. Tint Color: to match existing color on exterior window units.
   b. Kind FT (fully tempered).
   c. Self-Cleaning, Low-Maintenance Coating: Pyrolytic coating on first surface.
   d. Thickness: 1/8” for exterior doors and ¼” for exterior wall windows.

4. Indoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass.

   a. Kind FT (fully tempered) where required by codes.
   b. Thickness: 6mm for exterior wall windows and 3 mm for exterior doors.

5. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on third

6. Visible Light Transmittance: 40 percent minimum.
7. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.31 maximum.
8. Summer Daytime U-Factor: 0.32 maximum.
9. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.40 maximum.
10. Outdoor Visible Reflectance: 0.34 percent maximum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:

1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.

C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.

E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm) as follows:

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.

2. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.

K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.

B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.

C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.

D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.

E. Do not remove release paper from tape until just before each glazing unit is installed.

F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.

G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

A. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.

B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.

C. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.

B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.

C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 08800

SECTION 08830

MIRRORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of silvered flat glass mirrors.

1. Monolithic clear glass mirrors.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 10 Section "Toilet and Bath Accessories" for metal-framed mirrors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Deterioration of Mirrors: Defects developed from normal use that are attributable to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning mirrors contrary to mirror manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include discoloration, black spots, and clouding of the silver film.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide mirrors that will not fail under normal usage. Failure includes glass breakage and deterioration attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Mirrors. Include description of materials and process used to produce each type of silvered flat glass mirror specified that indicates sources of glass, glass coating components, edge sealer, and quality-control provisions.
2. Mirror mastic.
3. Mirror hardware.

B. Shop Drawings: Include mirror elevations, edge details, mirror hardware, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each type of mirror product required, in the form indicated below:

1. Mirrors, 12 inches (300 mm) square, including edge treatment on 2 adjoining edges.
2. Mirror clips.
3. Mirror trim, 12 inches (300 mm) long.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of mirror and mirror mastic, signed by product manufacturer.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer.

F. Mirror Mastic Compatibility Test Reports: From mirror manufacturer indicating that mirror mastic was tested for compatibility and adhesion with mirror backing film and substrates on which mirrors are installed.

G. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed mirror glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in mirror installations with a record of successful in-service performance; and who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under NGA's Glazier Certification Program as Level 2 (Senior Glaziers) or Level 3 (Master Glaziers).

B. Source Limitations for Mirrors: Obtain mirrors from one source for each type of mirror indicated.

C. Source Limitations for Mirror Glazing Accessories: Obtain mirror glazing accessories from one source for each type of accessory indicated.

D. Glazing Publications: Comply with the following published recommendations:

1. GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to this publication for definitions of glass and glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
2. GANA Mirror Division's "Mirrors, Handle with Extreme Care: Tips for the Professional on the Care and Handling of Mirrors."

E. Preconstruction Mirror Mastic Compatibility Test: Submit mirror mastic products to mirror manufacturer for testing to determine compatibility of mastic with mirror backing film and substrates on which mirrors are installed.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect mirrors according to mirror manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to mirrors from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. Comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions for shipping, storing, and handling mirrors as needed to prevent deterioration of silvering, damage to edges, and abrasion of glass surfaces and applied coatings. Store indoors, protected from moisture including condensation.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install mirrors until ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels indicated for final occupancy.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by mirror manufacturer agreeing to replace mirrors that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below:

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering mirrors that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.
2. Gardner Glass Products.
3. Gilded Mirrors, Inc.
4. Guardian Industries Corp.
5. Independent Mirror Industries, Inc.
6. Lenoir Mirror Company.
7. Messer Industries, Inc.
8. Stroupe Mirror Co., Inc.
9. Sunshine Mirror.
10. Virginia Mirror Company, Inc.
11. VVP America, Inc.; Binswanger Mirror Products.
12. Walker Glass Co., Ltd.

2.2 SILVERED FLAT GLASS MIRROR MATERIALS

A. Clear Glass Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Select Quality.

1. Nominal Thickness: 6.0 mm.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

B. Edge Sealer: Coating compatible with glass coating and approved by mirror manufacturer for use in protecting against silver deterioration at mirrored glass edges.

C. Mirror Mastic: An adhesive setting compound, produced specifically for setting mirrors and certified by both mirror manufacturer and mastic manufacturer as compatible with glass coating and substrates on which mirrors will be installed.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Gunther Mirror Mastics.
b. Palmer Products Corporation.

2.4 MIRROR HARDWARE

A. Top and Bottom Aluminum J-Channels: Aluminum extrusions with a return deep enough to produce a glazing channel to accommodate mirrors of thickness indicated and in lengths required to cover bottom and top edges of each mirror in a single piece.

1. Bottom Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 3/8 and 7/8 inch (9.5 and 22 mm) in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).
2. Top Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 5/8 and 1 inch (16 and 25 mm) in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.062 inch (1.57 mm).
3. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Bottom Trim:

1) Laurence, C. R. Co., Inc.; CRL Standard "J" Channel.
2) Sommer & Maca Industries, Inc.; Medium Gauge Aluminum Shallow Nose "J" Moulding Lower Bar.
3) Sommer & Maca Industries, Inc.; Heavy Gauge Aluminum Shallow Nose "J" Moulding Lower Bar.

b. Top Trim:

1) Laurence, C. R. Co., Inc.; CRL Deep "J" Channel.
2) Sommer & Maca Industries, Inc.; Medium Gauge Aluminum Deep Nose "J" Moulding Upper Bar.
3) Sommer & Maca Industries, Inc.; Heavy Gauge Aluminum Deep Nose "J" Moulding Lower Bar.

B. Anchors and Inserts: Provide devices as required for mirror hardware installation. Provide toothed or lead-shield expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Provide galvanized anchors and inserts for applications on inside face of exterior walls and where indicated.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Mirror Sizes: To suit Project conditions, cut mirrors to final sizes and shapes.

B. Cutouts: Fabricate cutouts for notches and holes in mirrors without marring visible surfaces. Locate and size cutouts so they fit closely around penetrations in mirrors.

C. Mirror Edge Treatment: Rounded polished edge. Seal edges to prevent damage.

D. Film-Backed Safety Mirrors: Apply film backing with pressure-sensitive adhesive coating over mirror backing paint as recommended in writing by film-backing manufacturer to produce a surface free of bubbles, blisters, and other imperfections. Use adhesives and film backing compatible with mirror backing paint as certified by mirror manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, over which mirrors are to be mounted, with Installer present, for compliance with installation tolerances, substrate preparation, and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility of mirror mastic with existing finishes or primers.
2. Proceed with mirror installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with mastic manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparation of substrates, including coating surfaces with mastic manufacturer's special bond coating where applicable.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with referenced GANA publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.

B. Provide a minimum air space of 1/8 inch (3 mm) between back of mirrors and mounting surface for air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.

C. For wall-mounted mirrors, install mirrors with mastic and mirror hardware.

1. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrors.
2. For mirror hardware in the form of continuous J-channels at bottom, provide setting blocks 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick by 4 inches (100 mm) long at quarter points. To prevent trapping water, provide, between setting blocks, 2 slotted weeps not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) wide by 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) long.
3. For mirror hardware in the form of a continuous J-channel at bottom and continuous top trim at top, fasten J-channel directly to wall and attach top trim to continuous cleat fastened directly to wall.

4. For metal or plastic clips, place a felt or plastic pad between mirror and each clip to prevent spalling of mirror edges.
5. Where indicated, install mirror hardware in the form of J-channels that are fabricated in single lengths to fit and cover top and bottom edges of mirrors.
6. Install mastic as follows:

    a. Apply barrier coat to mirror backing where approved in writing by manufacturers of mirrors and backing material.
    b. Apply mastic to comply with mastic manufacturer's written instructions for coverage and to allow air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.
    c. After mastic is applied, align mirrors and press into place while maintaining a minimum air space of 1/8 inch (3 mm) between back of mirrors and mounting surface.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect mirrors from breakage and contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.

B. Do not permit edges of mirrors to be exposed to standing water.

C. Maintain environmental conditions that will prevent mirrors from being exposed to moisture from condensation or other sources for continuous periods of time.

END OF SECTION 08830

SECTION 09260

GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Interior gypsum wallboard.
2. Tile backing panels.
3. Non-load-bearing steel framing.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for load-bearing steel framing.
2. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for insulation and vapor retarders installed in gypsum board assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Gypsum Board Terminology: Refer to ASTM C 11 for definitions of terms for gypsum board assemblies not defined in this Section or in other referenced standards.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations, fabrication, and installation of control and expansion joints including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other units of Work.

C. Samples: For the following products:

1. Trim Accessories: Full-size sample in 12-inch- (300-mm-) long length for each trim accessory indicated.
2. Textured Finishes: Manufacturer's standard size for each textured finish indicated and on same backing indicated for Work.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For gypsum board assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Indicated by design designations from FM's "Approval Guide, Building Products," UL's "Fire Resistance Directory," GA-600, "Fire Resistance Design Manual," ITS's "Directory of Listed Products."

B. Sound Transmission Characteristics: For gypsum board assemblies with STC ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. STC-Rated Assemblies: Indicated by design designations from GA-600, "Fire Resistance Design Manual."

C. Gypsum Board Finish Mockups: Before finishing gypsum board assemblies, install mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m) in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution.

1. Install mockups for the following applications:

a. Surfaces with texture finishes.
b. Surfaces indicated to receive nontextured paint finishes.
c. Surfaces indicated to receive textured paint finishes.

2. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier.

B. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack gypsum panels flat to prevent sagging.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Steel Framing and Furring:

a. Clark Steel Framing Systems.
b. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
c. Dale Industries, Inc. - Dale/Incor.
d. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
e. MarinoWare; Division of Ware Ind.
f. National Gypsum Company.
g. Scafco Corporation.
h. Unimast, Inc.
i. Western Metal Lath & Steel Framing Systems.

2. Gypsum Board and Related Products:

a. American Gypsum Co.
b. G-P Gypsum Corp.
c. National Gypsum Company.
d. United States Gypsum Co.

2.2 STEEL PARTITION AND SOFFIT FRAMING

A. Components, General: As follows:

1. Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
2. Steel Sheet Components: Complying with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal and with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.

B. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.

1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm).
2. Depth: 2 ½ inches 3-5/8 inches, 6 inches.
3. Flexible Track: at curved walls only.

C. Deep-Leg Deflection Track: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch- (50.8-mm-) deep flanges.

D. Proprietary Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of gypsum board applied to interior partitions resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

1. Available Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Delta Star, Inc., Superior Metal Trim; Superior Flex Track System (SFT).
b. Metal-Lite, Inc.; Slotted Track.

E. Proprietary Firestop Track: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Fire Trak Corp.; Fire Trak attached to studs with Fire Trak Slip Clip.
b. Metal-Lite, Inc.; The System.

F. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.

1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness 0.0312 inch (0.79 mm).

G. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: 0.0538-inch (1.37-mm) bare steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) wide flange.

1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38.1 mm).
2. Clip Angle: 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inch (38.1 by 38.1 mm), 0.068-inch- (1.73-mm-) thick, galvanized steel.

H. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.

1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm).
2. Depth: 7/8 inch (22.2 mm).

I. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (31.8 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22.2 mm), minimum bare metal thickness of 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm), and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

J. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM WALLBOARD

A. Panel Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and correspond with support system indicated.

B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 36.

1. Type X, “MMR” Panels

a. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
b. Long Edges: Tapered.
c. Location: Vertical surfaces, unless otherwise required.

C. Flexible Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 36, manufactured to bend to fit tight radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type panels of the same thickness.

1. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), “MMR” Panels.
2. Long Edges: Tapered.
3. Location: Apply in double layer at curved assemblies.

2.4 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.

2. Shapes:

a. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.
b. Bullnose Bead: Use at outside corners where indicated.
c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound; use at exposed panel edges.
d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long leg receives joint compound; use where indicated.
e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound; use at exposed panel edges where indicated.
f. Expansion (Control) Joint: Use where indicated.
g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges; use at curved openings.

B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Fry Reglet Corp.
b. Gordon, Inc.
c. MM Systems Corporation.
d. Pittcon Industries.

2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy 6063-T5.
3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475.

B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Wallboard: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound] [drying-type, all-purpose compound.

   a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.

3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound drying-type, all-purpose compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound drying-type, all-purpose compound.
5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound drying-type, all-purpose compound.

D. Joint compound for exterior gypsum wallboard applications: use setting – type taping compound and setting – type, sandable topping compound.

2.6 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:

   a. Pecora Corp.; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
   b. United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

2. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints:

   a. Ohio Sealants, Inc.; Pro-Series SC-170 Rubber Base Sound Sealant.
   b. Pecora Corp.; BA-98.
   c. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.

B. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining, latex sealant, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), complying with ASTM C 834 that effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

D. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls:

1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

E. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.

1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.

F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:

1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed-on fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.

2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of gypsum board assemblies and without reducing the fire-resistive material thickness below that which is required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLING STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

A. Installation Standards: ASTM C 754, and ASTM C 840 requirements that apply to framing installation.

B. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing at terminations in gypsum board assemblies to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction. Comply with details indicated and with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations or, if none available, with United States Gypsum's "Gypsum Construction Handbook."

C. Isolate steel framing from building structure at locations indicated to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.

1. Isolate ceiling assemblies where they abut or are penetrated by building structure.
2. Isolate partition framing and wall furring where it abuts structure, except at floor. Install slip-type joints at head of assemblies that avoid axial loading of assembly and laterally support assembly.

a. Use deep-leg deflection track where indicated.
b. Use proprietary deflection track where indicated.
c. Use proprietary firestop track where indicated.

D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with steel framing or furring members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING STEEL PARTITIONS

A. Install tracks (runners) at floors, ceilings, and structural walls and columns where gypsum board assemblies abut other construction.

1. Where studs are installed directly against exterior walls, install asphalt-felt or foam-gasket isolation strip between studs and wall.

B. Installation Tolerance: Install each steel framing and furring member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by the faces of adjacent framing.

C. Extend partition framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing over frames for doors and openings and frame around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling to provide support for gypsum board.

1. Cut studs 1/2 inch (13 mm) short of full height to provide perimeter relief.
2. For fire-resistance-rated and STC-rated partitions that extend to the underside of floor/roof slabs and decks or other continuous solid-structure surfaces to obtain ratings, install framing around structural and other members extending below floor/roof slabs and decks, as needed to support gypsum board closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.

    a. Terminate partition framing at suspended ceilings where indicated.

D. Install steel studs and furring at the following spacings:

1. Single-Layer Construction: 16 inches (406 mm o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
2. Multilayer Construction: 16 inches (406 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

E. Install steel studs so flanges point in the same direction and leading edge or end of each panel can be attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

F. Curved Partitions:

1. Cut top and bottom track (runners) through leg and web at 2-inch (50-mm) intervals for arc length. In cutting lengths of track, allow for uncut straight lengths of not less than 12 inches (300 mm) at ends of arcs.
2. Flexible track members to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
3. Support outside (cut) leg of track by clinching steel sheet strip, 1-inch- (25-mm-) high-by-thickness of track metal, to inside of cut legs using metal lock fasteners.

4. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs at stud spacing recommended in writing by gypsum board manufacturer for radii indicated. On straight lengths of not less than 2 studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

G. Frame door openings to comply with GA-600 and with gypsum board manufacturer's applicable written recommendations, unless otherwise indicated. Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.

1. Install two studs at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint.
3. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of floor or roof structure above.

H. Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings, unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.

I. Furring: Hat Channels

1. Erect insulation vertically and hold in place with furring members spaced 16 inches o.c.

2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.
4. Until gypsum board is installed, hold insulation in place with 10-inch (250-mm) staples fabricated from 0.0625-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter, tie wire and inserted through slot in web of member.

J. Polyethylene Vapor Retarder: Install to comply with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."

3.5 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

A. Gypsum Board Application and Finishing Standards: ASTM C 840 and GA-216.

B. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels, unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

C. Install ceiling board panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in the central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.

D. Install gypsum panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.

E. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

F. Attach gypsum panels to steel studs so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

G. Attach gypsum panels to framing provided at openings and cutouts.

H. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members using resilient channels, or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.

I. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

J. Cover both faces of steel stud partition framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.

1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.

3. Where partitions intersect open concrete coffers, concrete joists, and other structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by coffers, joists, and other structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.

K. Isolate perimeter of non-load-bearing gypsum board partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations, and trim edges with U-bead edge trim where edges of gypsum panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

L. Floating Construction: Where feasible, including where recommended in writing by manufacturer, install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction.

M. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control and expansion joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through gypsum board assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

N. Space fasteners in gypsum panels according to referenced gypsum board application and finishing standard and manufacturer's written recommendations.

1. Space screws a maximum of 12 inches (304.8 mm) o.c. for vertical applications.

O. Space fasteners in panels that are tile substrates a maximum of 8 inches (203.2 mm) o.c.

3.6 PANEL APPLICATION METHODS

A. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to the greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing, unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing), unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.

   a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of board.
   b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3. On furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.

B. Multilayer Application on Ceilings: Apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints 1 framing member, 16 inches (400 mm) minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.

C. Multilayer Application on Partitions/Walls: Apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.

1. Furring Members: Apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.

D. Single-Layer Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

E. Multilayer Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners.

F. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

G. Curved Partitions:

1. Install panels horizontally and unbroken, to the extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch- (300-mm-) long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.

2. Wet gypsum panels on surfaces that will become compressed where curve radius prevents using dry panels. Comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations for curve radii, wetting methods, stacking panels after wetting, and other preparations that precede installing wetted gypsum panels.
3. On convex sides of partitions, begin installation at one end of curved surface and fasten gypsum panels to studs as they are wrapped around curve. On concave side, start fastening panels to stud at center of curve and work outward to panel ends. Fasten panels to framing with screws spaced 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.
4. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.
5. Allow wetted gypsum panels to dry before applying joint treatment.

3.7 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings and according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.

3.8 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

B. Prefill open joints, rounded edges, and damaged surface areas.

C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except those with trim having flanges not intended for tape.

D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below, according to ASTM C 840, for locations indicated:

1. Level 1: Embed tape at joints in ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated, unless a higher level of finish is required for fire-resistance-rated assemblies and sound-rated assemblies.
2. Level 2: Embed tape and apply separate first coat of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges where panels are substrate for tile and where indicated.
3. Level 4: Embed tape and apply separate first, fill, and finish coats of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges at panel surfaces that will be exposed to view at typical area, unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Above-Ceiling Observation: Before Contractor installs gypsum board ceilings, Architect will conduct an above-ceiling observation and report deficiencies in the Work observed. Do not proceed with installation of gypsum board to ceiling support framing until deficiencies have been corrected.

1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of date and time when Project, or part of Project, will be ready for above-ceiling observation.
2. Before notifying Architect, complete the following in areas to receive gypsum board ceilings:

a. Installation of 80 percent of lighting fixtures, powered for operation.
b. Installation, insulation, and leak and pressure testing of water piping systems.
c. Installation of air-duct systems.
d. Installation of air devices.
e. Installation of mechanical system control-air tubing.
f. Installation of ceiling support framing.

END OF SECTION 09260

SECTION 09310

CERAMIC TILE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Recycled glass mosaic tile.
2. Polished porcelain wall tile and honed porcelain floor tile.
3. Waterproof membrane for thin-set tile installations.
4. Crack-suppression membrane for thin-set tile installations.
5. Cementitious backer units installed as part of tile installations.
6. Metal edge strips installed as part of tile installations.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "LEED Requirements" for additional LEED requirements.
2. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for monolithic slab finishes specified for tile substrates.
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
4. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for cementitious backer units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Module Size: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499) plus joint width indicated.

B. Facial Dimension: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499).

C. Facial Dimension: Nominal tile size as defined in ANSI A137.1.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:

1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.6.
2. Step Treads: Minimum 0.6.

3. Ramp Surfaces: Minimum 0.8.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of tile and grout indicated. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
2. Assembled samples with grouted joints for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required, at least 12 inches (300 mm) square and mounted on rigid panel. Use grout of type and in color or colors approved for completed work.
3. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
4. Thresholds in 6-inch (150-mm) lengths.

E. LEED Submittals:

1. Credit EQ 4.1: Manufacturers' product data for adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.

F. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.

G. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.

H. Qualification Data: For Installer.

I. Material Test Reports: For each tile-setting and -grouting product and special-purpose tile.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain all tile from one source or producer.

1. Obtain tile from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.

B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from a single manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.

C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section through one source from a single manufacturer for each product:

1. Stone thresholds.
2. Waterproofing.
3. Joint sealants.
4. Cementitious backer units.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirement in ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.

B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Store liquid latexes in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

E. Handle tile that has temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed, 1 box minimum, for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

1. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each tile type is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other manufacturers specified.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1, "Specifications for Ceramic Tile," for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.

1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements, unless otherwise indicated.
2. For facial dimensions of tile, comply with requirements relating to tile sizes specified in Part 1 "Definitions" Article.

B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI standards referenced in "Setting and Grouting Materials" Article.

C. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated for tile, grout, and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures, patterns, and other appearance characteristics, provide specific products or materials complying with the following requirements:

1. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.

E. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.

F. Factory-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating with continuous film of petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Thorntree: (Recycled Glass Tile)
2. Thorntree: (Porcelain Tile).

B. Recycled Glass Mosiac Tile

1. Pre-Consumer content: 20.0%.
2. Post Consumer content: 50.0%
3. Size: 1 inch x 1 inch x 5/32 inch thick.
4. Series: Artic Blue
5. Color: “Flicker”

C. Porcelain Tile: Honed (DURASTONE Matte)

1. Water Absorption: ASTM C373; <0.5%
2. Abrasive Wear: ASTM C501; 220.46
3. Breaking Strength: ASTM C648; 529 lbs.
4. Scratch Resistance: Mohs Scale; 6
5. Chemical Resistance: ASTM C650; Unaffected
6. Coefficient of Friction: ASTM C1028-89; >0.65 wet, > 0.80 dry
7. Colors: “STEEL GREY” and “CHARCOAL”, matt. DURASTONE. By:Thorntree
8. Size: 1’ – 0” x 2’ -0”

D. D. Porcelain Tile: DURASTONE Polished

1. Water Absorption: ASTM C373; <0.5%
2. Abrasive Wear: ASTM C501; 225.44
3. Breaking Strength: AST< C648; 361 lbs.
4. Scratch Hardness: Mohs Scale; 7
5. Chemical Resistance: ASTM C650; Unaffected
6. Coefficient of Friction: ASTM C1028-89; N/A wet, >0.90 dry
7. Style: Cultural Brick Mosaic
8. Color: “BOTTICINO” polished DURASTONE . By: Thorntree

2.4 THRESHOLDS

A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.

1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, aligning lower edge of bevel with adjacent floor finish. Limit height of bevel to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or less, and finish bevel to match face of threshold.

B. Solid Polymer Thresholds: Made from homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with material and performance requirements in ANSI Z124.3, for Type 5 or Type 6, without precoated finish.

1. Manufacturers:
   a. DuPont Polymers.

2.5 WATERPROOFING AND CRACK-SUPPRESSION MEMBRANES FOR THIN-SET TILE INSTALLATIONS

A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10, selected from the following.

B. Polyethylene-Sheet Product: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing for adhering to latex-portland cement mortar; 39 inches (1000 mm) wide by 0.008-inch (0.203-mm) nominal thickness.

1. Available Product: Schluter Systems L.P.; KERDI.

C. Corrugated-Polyethylene Product: Corrugated polyethylene with dovetail-shaped corrugations for adhering to latex-portland cement mortar and with anchoring webbing on the underside; 39 inches (1000 mm) wide by 3/16-inch (4-mm) nominal thickness.

1. Available Product: Schluter Systems L.P.; DITRA.

D. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Product: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), and fabric reinforcement.

1. Available Products:

a. Custom Building Products; Trowel & Seal Waterproofing and Anti-Fracture Membrane.
b. LATICRETE International Inc.; Laticrete 9235 Waterproof Membrane.
c. MAPEI Corporation; PRP M19.

2.6 SETTING AND GROUTING MATERIALS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Atlas Minerals & Chemicals, Inc.
2. Boiardi Products Corporation.
3. Bonsal, W. R., Company.
4. Bostik.
5. C-Cure.
6. Custom Building Products.
7. DAP, Inc.
8. LATICRETE International Inc.
9. MAPEI Corporation.
10. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
11. TEC Specialty Products Inc.

B. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, composed of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.

C. Standard Sanded Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6, color as indicated.

D. Standard Unsanded Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6, color as selected from Manufacturer's Standard and Custom Colors.

E. Polymer-Modified Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7, color as indicated.

1. Polymer Type: Ethylene vinyl acetate, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
2. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
3. Polymer Type: Either ethylene vinyl acetate, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients, or acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.

a. Unsanded grout mixture for joints 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and narrower.
b. Sanded grout mixture for joints 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and wider.

2.7 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated that comply with applicable requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

1. Use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

C. One-Part, Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C 920; Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to nonporous joint substrates indicated, O; formulated with fungicide, intended for sealing interior ceramic tile joints and other nonporous substrates that are subject to in-service exposures of high humidity and extreme temperatures.

1. Products:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; Dow Corning 786.
b. GE Silicones; Sanitary 1700.
c. Pecora Corporation; Pecora 898 Sanitary Silicone Sealant.
d. Tremco, Inc.; Tremsil 600 White.

D. Multipart, Pourable Urethane Sealant for Use T: ASTM C 920; Type M; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

1. Products:

a. Bostik; Chem-Calk 550.
b. Mameco International, Inc.; Vulkem 245.
c. Pecora Corporation; NR-200 Urexpan.
d. Tremco, Inc.; THC-900.

E. Chemical-Resistant Sealants: For chemical-resistant floors, provide chemical-resistant elastomeric sealant of type recommended and produced by chemical-resistant mortar and grout manufacturer for type of application indicated, with proven service record and compatibility with tile and other setting materials, and with chemical resistance equivalent to mortar/grout. Include primer and backer rod recommended by manufacturer.

2.8 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

A. Provide cementitious backer units complying with ANSI A118.9 in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.

1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm)
2. Width: 48 inches (1219 mm).

B. Products:

1. C-Cure; C-Cure Board 990.
2. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.

3. FinPan, Inc.; Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board.
4. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.

1. Reycled mosaic tile setting material color: “White.”

B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shape, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications, half-hard brass or stainless steel; ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.

C. Temporary Protective Coating: Either product indicated below that is formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products; and easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.

1. Petroleum paraffin wax, fully refined and odorless, containing at least 0.5 percent oil with a melting point of 120 to 140 deg F (49 to 60 deg C) per ASTM D 87.
2. Grout release in form of manufacturer's standard proprietary liquid coating that is specially formulated and recommended for use as temporary protective coating for tile.

D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

E. Grout Sealer: Manufacturer's standard silicone product for sealing grout joints that does not change color or appearance of grout.

1. Products:

a. Bonsal, W. R., Company; Grout Sealer.
b. Bostik; CeramaSeal Grout Sealer.
c. C-Cure; Penetrating Sealer 978.
d. Custom Building Products: Grout Sealer.
e. Jamo Inc.; Matte Finish or Penetrating Sealer.
f. MAPEI Corporation; KER 003, Silicone Spray Sealer for Cementitious Tile Grout.
g. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.; Silicone Grout Sealer.
h. Summitville Tiles, Inc.; SL-15, Invisible Seal Penetrating Grout and Tile Sealer.
i. TEC Specialty Products Inc.; TA-256 Penetrating Grout Sealer.

2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.

C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.

1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of oil, waxy films, and curing compounds; and within flatness tolerances required by referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards for installations indicated.
2. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed before installing tile.
3. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.

B. Provide concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thin-set mortar that comply with flatness tolerances specified in referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards.

1. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions with trowelable leveling and patching compound according to tile-setting material manufacturer's written instructions. Use product specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
2. Remove protrusions, bumps, and ridges by sanding or grinding.

C. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type or needed to prevent grout from staining or adhering to exposed tile surfaces, precoat them with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. ANSI Tile Installation Standards: Comply with parts of ANSI A108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that apply to types of setting and grouting materials and to methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.

B. TCA Installation Guidelines: TCA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation." Comply with TCA installation methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.

C. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern, unless otherwise indicated. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise indicated.

1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.

F. Lay out tile wainscots to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.

G. Expansion Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.

1. Locate joints in tile surfaces directly above joints in concrete substrates.
2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

H. Grout tile to comply with requirements of the following tile installation standards:

1. For ceramic tile grouts (sand-portland cement; dry-set, commercial portland cement; and latex-portland cement grouts), comply with ANSI A108.10.
2. For chemical-resistant epoxy grouts, comply with ANSI A108.6.

I. At cementitious backer units and treat joints to comply with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

3.4 WATERPROOFING AND CRACK-SUPPRESSION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness bonded securely to substrate.

B. Install crack-suppression membrane to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness bonded securely to substrate.

C. Do not install tile over waterproofing until waterproofing has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.

3.5 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

A. General: Install tile to comply with requirements in the Floor Tile Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCA installation methods and ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards.

1. For installations indicated below, follow procedures in ANSI A108 Series tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage.

a. Tile floors.

B. Joint Widths: Install tile on floors with the following joint widths:

1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

C. Thresholds: Install thresholds at locations indicated; set in same type of setting bed as abutting field tile, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Set thresholds in latex-portland cement mortar for locations where mortar bed would otherwise be exposed above adjacent nontile floor finish.

D. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to all cementitious grout joints according to grout-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as grout sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer that has gotten on tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.6 WALL TILE INSTALLATION

A. Install types of tile designated for wall installations to comply with requirements in the Wall Tile Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCA installation methods and ANSI setting-bed standards.

B. Install over cement backer boards.

C. Joint Widths: Install tile on walls with the following joint widths:

1. Recycled Glass Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
2. Polished Wall Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

1. Remove latex-portland cement grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions, but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent it from clogging drains.

B. When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear.

C. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.

D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.8 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Tile Installation: Interior floor installation on crack-suppression membrane over concrete; cement mortar bed (thickset); TCA F122.

1. Tile Type: Honed (Matte) Porcelain Tile..
2. Thin-Set Mortar: Dry set portland cement mortar.
3. Grout: Standard sanded cement grout.

3.9 WALL TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Tile Installation: Interior wall installation over cementitious backer units; thin-set mortar; TCA W244 and ANSI A108.5.

1. Tile Type: Glazed ceramic mosaic or Glazed wall tile.
2. Thin-Set Mortar: Dry-set or Latex- portland cement mortar.
3. Grout: Standard unsanded cement grout.
4. Color under Recycled Glass Mosaic Tile: “White.”

END OF SECTION 09310

SECTION 09511

ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.

B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete at ceilings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AC: Articulation Class.

B. CAC: Ceiling Attenuation Class.

C. LR: Light Reflectance coefficient.

D. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension system members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
4. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/8 inch = 1 foot (1:96).

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory, or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated. NVLAP-accredited laboratories must document accreditation, based on a "Certificate of Accreditation" and a "Scope of Accreditation" listing the test methods specified.

B. Source Limitations:

1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
2. Suspension System: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical panel ceilings that comply with the following requirements:

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide acoustical panels with the following surface-burning characteristics complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84:

a. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.
2. Suspension System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

C. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. BPB USA.
3. Ecophon CertainTeed, Inc.
4. USG Interiors, Inc.

B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern, Class “A” Flame Spread 25 or Under “UL” labeled as follows:

1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
2. Pattern: “CIRRUS” and “CERAMAGARD” as indicated on the drawings

C. Color: White, vinyl latex paint.

D. LR: Not less than 0.80.

E. NRC: Not less than 0.60.

F. CAC: Not less than 35.

G. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.

H. Thickness: 3/4 inch (18 mm).

I. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm).

J. Antimicrobial Treatment: Broad spectrum fungicide and bactericide based.

K. Sag Resistance: “Humiguard Plus.”

2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.

B. Finishes and Colors, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated.

C. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:

1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- (2.69-mm-) diameter wire.

D. Hanger Rods or Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide; formed with 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick, galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) diameter bolts.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. BPB USA.
3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
4. Ecophon CertainTeed, Inc.
5. USG Interiors, Inc.

B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled aluminum sheet, pre-painted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, not less than G30 (Z90) coating designation, with prefinished 15/16-inch- (24-mm-) wide metal caps on flanges.

1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Butt-edge type.
3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
4. Cap Material: Aluminum cold-rolled sheet.
5. Cap Finish: White.

2.5 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. BPB US.
3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
4. Fry Reglet Corporation.
5. Gordon, Inc.
6. USG Interiors, Inc.

B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.

1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners, unless otherwise indicated.
2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

2.6 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:

   a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
   b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

2. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints:

a. OSI Sealants, Inc.; Pro-Series SC-175 Rubber Base Sound Sealant.
b. Pecora Corporation; BA-98.
c. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.
d.

B. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

C. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 and UBC Standard 25-2 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."

B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.

2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
3. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
4. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
5. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
6. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both structure to which hangers are attached and type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
7. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
8. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
9. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs, or thin angles on bottom cord of bar joists.
10. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
11. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
12. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.

C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.

D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.

1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m). Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.

E. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.

1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:

a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
b. Install panels with pattern running in one direction parallel to short axis of space.

2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension system runners and moldings.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections and prepare reports:

1. Suspended ceiling system.
2. Hangers, anchors and fasteners.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

C. Tests and Inspections: Testing and inspecting of completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners shall take place in successive stages, in areas of extent and using methods as follows. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.

1. Extent of Each Test Area: When installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion but no panels have been installed.

a. Within each test area, testing agency will select 1 of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf (890 N) of tension; it will also select one of every 2 postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf (1957 N) of tension.
b. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.

D. Remove and replace acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components

that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09511

SECTION 09521

ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes acoustical wall panels and concealed mounting splines and edge angles.

B. Location of Project: NEWPP Administration Building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Coordination Drawings: Interior wall elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

1. Wall mounting on metal studs and gypsum board.
2. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/8 inch = 1 foot (1:96).

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory, or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated. NVLAP-accredited laboratories must document accreditation, based on a

"Certificate of Accreditation" and a "Scope of Accreditation" listing the test methods specified.

B. Source Limitations:

1. Acoustical Wall Panel: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
2. Attachment System: Obtain each type through one source from the wall panel manufacturer.

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical panel ceilings that comply with the following requirements:

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide acoustical panels with the following surface-burning characteristics complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84:

a. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid damaging units in any way.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical wall panel installations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS, GENERAL

A. Acoustical Wall Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 84 classifications as designated by types, patterns, and acoustical ratings.

B. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: As selected from manufacturer's full range of woven fabrics.

C. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis – of – Design Products by :

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. Or approved equal

B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 84 for type, form, and pattern, Class "A" Flame Spread 25 or Under "UL" labeled as follows:

1. Type Armstrong: "Soundtrack – 60 woven/ compressed panels.
2. Pattern: FR-701 Fabric

C. Color: As selected by : architect from manufacturer's full range of woven fabrics.

D. LR: Not less than 0.80.

E. NRC: Not less than 0.60.

F. Fire Rating: composite class " A" rating per IBC for fabric substrate and adhesive.

G. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.

H. Thickness: 3/4 inch (18 mm).

I. Modular Size: As indicated on the drawing.

J. Antimicrobial Treatment: Broad spectrum fungicide and bactericide based.

K. Sag Resistance: "Humiguard Plus."

2.3 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

B. Wall Attachments

1. Provide extruded aluminum shapes, by: manufacturer for a fully conceals application at edges and abutting joints at vertical and horizontal spline conditions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including existing walls to which acoustical wall panels attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect panel (s) installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical wall panels.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each wall areas and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install acoustical wall panels to comply with manufacturer’s specifications and installation guidelines for a fully plumb and level installation.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical wall panels, including trim, and edge moldings members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09521

SECTION 09651

RESILIENT FLOORING, BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Resilient wall base and accessories.
2. Resilient flooring

B. Related Sections include the following:

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Boxes containing small samples of all available colors and patterns.

C. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of resilient floor tile requested to final selection.

1. Resilient Wall Base and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches (300 mm) long, of each resilient product color and pattern required.

D. Maintenance Data: For resilient products to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products identical to those tested for fire-exposure behavior per test method indicated by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C). Store tiles on flat surfaces.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:

1. 48 hours before installation.
2. During installation.
3. 48 hours after installation.

B. After postinstallation period, maintain temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).

C. Close spaces to traffic during floor covering installation.

D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor covering installation.

E. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Floor Tile: Furnish 1 box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.
2. Resilient Wall Base and Accessories: Furnish not less than 10 linear feet (3 linear m) for every 500 linear feet (150 linear m) or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 COLORS AND PATTERNS

A. Colors and Patterns: As indicated

2.3 VINYL COMPOSITION TILE

A. Vinyl Composition Tile (VCT): ASTM F 1066.

1. Basis-of Design: Armstrong World Industries, Inc.: IMPERIAL TEXTURE, Standard “EXCELON”

B. Class: 2 (through-pattern tile).

C. Wearing Surface: Smooth.

D. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).

E. Size: 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm).

F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:

1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm per ASTM E 648.

2.4 RESILIENT WALL BASE

A. Wall Base: ASTM F 1861.

1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products.
2. Johnsonite.
3. Marley Flexco (USA), Inc.
4. Roppe Corporation.

B. Type (Material Requirement): TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset) or TP (rubber, thermoplastic).

C. Group (Manufacturing Method): I (solid, homogeneous).

D. Style: Cove (with top-set toe) or Straight (toeless).

E. Minimum Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).

F. Height: 4 inches (102 mm) or 6 inches (152 mm).

G. Lengths: Cut lengths 48 inches (1219 mm) long or coils in manufacturer's standard length.

H. Outside Corners: Premolded.

I. Inside Corners: Job formed or premolded.

J. Surface: Smooth.

K. Color: As indicated on the drawings

2.5 RESILIENT MOLDING ACCESSORY

A. Description: Carpet edge for glue-down applications. Nosing for carpet. Reducer strip for resilient floor covering. Joiner for tile and carpet.

1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products.
2. Johnsonite.
3. Marley Flexco (USA), Inc.
4. Roppe Corporation.
5. Stoler Industries.

B. Material: Rubber.

C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.

D. Color: To match Rubber base.

2.6 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Portland cement based formulation provided or approved by resilient product manufacturer for applications indicated.

B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

1. Use adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

a. VCT and Asphalt Tile Adhesives: 50 g/L.
b. Cove Base Adhesives: 50 g/L.
c. Rubber Floor Adhesives: 60 g/L.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written recommendations to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.

1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
2. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
3. Moisture Testing:

a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m) in 24 hours.
b. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.

C. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.

D. Use trowelable leveling and patching compound to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.

E. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.

1. Do not install resilient products until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.

F. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, and dust. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 TILE INSTALLATION

A. Lay out tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.

1. Lay tiles square with room axis.

B. Match tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.

1. Lay tiles with grain running in one direction.

C. Scribe, cut, and fit tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, door frames, thresholds, and nosings.

D. Extend tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.

E. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent, non-staining marking device.

F. Adhere tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

3.4 RESILIENT WALL BASE INSTALLATION

A. Apply wall base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

B. Install wall base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.

C. Tightly adhere wall base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

D. Do not stretch wall base during installation.

E. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of wall base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

F. Pre-molded Corners: Install pre-molded corners before installing straight pieces.

G. Job-Formed Corners:

1. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible. Form by cutting an inverted V-shaped notch in toe of wall base at the point where corner is formed. Shave back of base where necessary to produce a snug fit to substrate.

3.5 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor coverings that would otherwise be exposed.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:

1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.

a. Do not wash surfaces until after time period recommended by manufacturer.

B. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period. Use protection methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1. Apply protective floor polish to horizontal surfaces that are free from soil, visible adhesive, and surface blemishes if recommended in writing by manufacturer.

   a. Use commercially available product acceptable to manufacturer.
   b. Coordinate selection of floor polish with Owner's maintenance service.

2. Cover products installed on horizontal surfaces with undyed, untreated building paper until Substantial Completion.
3. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over surfaces. Place hardboard or plywood panels over flooring and under objects while they are being moved. Slide or roll objects over panels without moving panels.

END OF SECTION 09651

SECTION 09680

CARPET

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Tufted carpet modular tile

B. Related Sections include the following:

C.

1. Division 9 Section "Resilient Floor Tile" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following, including installation recommendations for each type of substrate:

1. Carpet: For each type indicated. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.

B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:

1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet.
2. Carpet type, color, and dye lot.
3. Locations where dye lot changes occur.
4. Seam locations, types, and methods.
5. Type of installation.
6. Pattern type, repeat size, location, direction, and starting point.
7. Pile direction.
8. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
9. Transition details to other flooring materials.

C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

1. Carpet: 12-inch- (300-mm-) square Sample.
2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples.

D. Product Schedule: For carpet: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer.

F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

G. Maintenance Data: For carpet to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:

1. Methods for maintaining carpet, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet.

H. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer’s Qualifications: Engage a firm whore carpet materials comply with the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development’s (HUD) “Use of Materials Bulletin UM-44D” and are currently listen on HUD’s “Certified Products Directory” and so identified by imprint on back of carpet.

B. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of carpet from one source and by a single manufacturer.

C. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the Floor Covering Installation Board or who can demonstrate compliance with its certification program requirements.

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products with the critical radiant flux classification indicated in Part 2, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 648 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with CRI 104, Section 5, "Storage and Handling."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Comply with CRI 104, Section 7.2, "Site Conditions; Temperature and Humidity" and Section 7.12, "Ventilation."

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install carpet until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

C. Do not install carpet over concrete slabs until slabs have cured, are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive, and have pH range recommended by carpet manufacturer.

D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet, install carpet before installing these items.

1.7 NON-PRORATED SPECIAL WARRANTY

A. The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Carpet Warranty: Submit a written warranty executed by carpet manufacturer and Installer agreeing to repair or replace carpet that does not meet requirements or that fails in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, runs, and delarmination.

1. Wear: lifetime of carpet. No more than 10% of face yarn loss by weight in normal use.
2. Static: Lifetime of carpet.
3. Edge Ravel: Lifetime of carpet. No edge ravel in normal use.
4. Delarmination. Lifetime of carpet. No delarmination in normal use.
5. Tuft Bind: Lifetime of carpet. Guarantee not to zipper, wet or dry.
6. Adhesive: Lifetime of carpet. Carpet will remain bonded to the substrate in normal use.
7. Buckling or Bubbling: No buckling or bubbling of carpet in normal use.
8. Stain Resistance: Lifetime of carpet. Permanent stain resistant properties, which cannot be removed by wear or commercial cleanings. Must also pass Acid Red 40 spot test AATCC-1991 after removal of any topical treatments.
9. Lifetime of Carpet: As long as remains on the floor, and in use, in the same location where originally installed no chemical welding of seams.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Carpet: Full-width rolls equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd. (8.3 sq. m).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TUFTED, TEXTURED LOOP CARPET

A. Basis-Of-Design product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

1. TAKE NOTE GT090 by Lee's Carpets.

a. Color: 337 INGENIOUS
b. Pattern: Linear

B. Carpets shall be a glued-down modular with tufted construction, performance loop pile, and integrated fused cushion, meeting the following criteria:

1. Gauge: 1/2- inch (47.2 cm).
2. Stitches: 7.8 per inch (30.71)/10cm)
3. Construction: Tufted.
4. Finish pile thickness: (.136 inch average (3.5 mm).
5. Face yarn: "duracolor" Premium Nylon with "ANTRON LEGACY NYLON"
6. Dye System: Solution dyed, stain resistant/"DuraTech.
7. ANIT-MICROBIAL treatment.
8. Face weight: 20 oz/square yard (678.2 qm/m2).
9. Backing Materials:
   a. Woven polypropylene primary backing and secondary backing.
   b. Hot melt thermoplastic.
10. Total weight: 76.40 oz./square yard, minimum.
11. Static: 3.0 KV maximum, when tested under the standard shuffle test at 70 deg. 1 (21 deg. 6) at 20% RH.
12. Flammability: Passes DOC-FF-1-70 Pill Test.
13. Smoke Density: NBS smoke chamber NFPA-258-less than 450 flaming mode.

14. VOC Limits: Provide carpet that complies with the following limits for VOC content when tested according to ASTM D 5116:

a. Total VOCs: 0.5 mg/sq. m x h.
b. 4-PC (4-Phenylcyclohexene): 0.05 mg/sq. m x h.
c. Formaldehyde: 0.05 mg/sq. m x h.
d. Styrene: 0.4 mg/sq. m x h.

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

A. Concrete-Slab Primer: Non-staining type as recommended and directed by the carpet manufacturer.

B. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Cementitous as recommended and directed by the carpet manufacturers.

C. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet and is recommended or provided by carpet manufacturer.

1. VOC Limits: Provide adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when tested according to ASTM D 5116:

a. Total VOCs: 10.00 mg/sq. m x h.
b. Formaldehyde: 0.05 mg/sq. m x h.
c. 2-Ethyl-1-Hexanol: 3.00 mg/sq. m x h.

D. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet performance. Examine carpet for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.

B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:

1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond.

2. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with carpet manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates.

B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide or wider, and protrusions more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm), unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet manufacturer.

D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with CRI 104 and carpet manufacturer's written installation instructions for the following:

1. Direct-Glue-Down Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 9, "Direct Glue-Down Installation."

B. Comply with carpet manufacturer's written recommendations and Shop Drawings for seam locations and direction of carpet; maintain uniformity of carpet direction and lay of pile. At doorways, center seams under the door in closed position.

C. Do not bridge building expansion joints with carpet.

D. Cut and fit carpet to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet manufacturer.

E. Extend carpet into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.

F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, non-staining marking device.

G. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders to comply with CRI 104, Section 15, "Patterned Carpet Installations" and with carpet manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet:

1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet manufacturer.
2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet surface.
3. Vacuum carpet using commercial machine with face-beater element.

B. Protect installed carpet to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protection of Indoor Installations."

C. Protect carpet against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet.

END OF SECTION 09680

SECTION 09705

EPOXY RESIN COMPOSITION FLOORING

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

A. Work of this Section includes all labor, material; equipment and services necessary to complete the epoxy resin composition flooring and integral base as scheduled on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 RELATED WORK

A. Concrete – Section 03300.

B. Floor drains – Division 15.

C. Moisture Vapor Barrier – Division 7.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data, application instructions and general recommendations for the epoxy resin composition flooring specified herein.

C. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2: For products having recycled content, submit documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and pre-consumer recycled content.

a. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
b. Include LEED Product Information Form for LEED Credits MR 4.1 and 4.2.

2. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.2: For field applied, interior, paints coating and primers, include printed statement of VOC content indicating compliance with Credit requirements.

a. Include LEED product Information Form for LEED Credit EQ 4.2.

3. Provide additional documentation for products as required to achieve each Credit (s).

D. Samples for initial selection purposes in form of manufacturer's color charts showing full range of colors and finishes available.

1. Submit 2-1/2" x 4" samples of color chips from color chart selection designated by the Architect.

E. Material certificates signed by manufacturer certifying that the epoxy resin composition flooring complies with requirements specified herein.

F. Maintenance Instructions: Submit manufacturer's written instruction for recommended maintenance practices.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer or applicator who has specialized in installing resinous flooring types similar to that required for this Project and who is acceptable to manufacturer of primary materials.

B. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain epoxy resin composition flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, and finish or sealing coats, from a single manufacturer.

C. Qualified Materials: Request for material approvals for any products other than the specified products must be submitted to the architect two weeks prior to the bid, including complete application specification, physical characteristics, and chemical resistance data. Any request after this date will not be accepted. Failure of performance requires immediate removal and replacement of unapproved substituted material with those originally specified at no cost to the owner, architect, construction manager, or general contractor.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.

B. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's directions to prevent deterioration from moisture, heat, cold, direct sunlight, or other detrimental effects.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Comply with epoxy resin composition flooring manufacturer's directions for maintenance of ambient and substrate temperature, moisture, humidity, ventilation, and other conditions required to execute and protect Work.

B. Lighting: Permanent lighting will be in place and working before installing resinous flooring.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Troweled epoxy resin composition flooring shall be Dex-O-Tex Cheminert "K" with Posi-Tred "O" top finish as manufactured by Crossfield Products Corp. in Rancho Dominguez, California and Roselle Park, New Jersey.

2.2 PROPERTIES

A. Colors: As indicated, or if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

B. Physical Properties:

Provide flooring system that meet or exceed the listed minimum physical property requirements when tested according to the referenced standard test method in parentheses.

Compressive Strength (ASTM C579)	11,000 psi.
Tensile Strength (ASTM C307)	1,643 psi.
Flexural Modulus of Elasticity (ASTM C580)	4,300 psi.
Water Absorption (MIL PRF – 3134)	0.3 percent max.
Surface Hardness (ASTM D2240)	85.5 Durometer "D"
Abrasion Resistance (ASTM D1044)	0.04 gr.
Impact Resistance (MIL-PRF-3134, Para 4.7.3)	0.024" max. No chipping, cracking loss of Adhesion
Impact Resistance (Gardner Impact Tester)	No chipping, cracking, or delamination and not more than 0.014" indentation
Adhesion (A.C.I. Comm. No. 503.1)	400 psi (100% failure in concrete)
Electrical Conductivity (NFPA 56A)	Di-electric
Flammability-Critical Radiant Flux (ASTM E648)	Greater than 1.07 watts/cm^2

Co-efficient of Friction (MIL-PRF-3134 procedure – rubber shoe surface)

	State Friction		**Sliding Friction**	
	Saltwater Solution On Surface	Oil on Surface	Saltwater Solution On Surface	Oil on Surface
Fine Profile	0.95	0.75	0.89	0.44
Medium Profile	1.03	0.75	0.95	0.45
Coarse Profile	1.09	0.85	1.00	0.56
Very Coarse Profile	1.24	0.78	1.04	0.59

2.3 SUPPLEMENTAL MATERIALS

A. Waterproofing Membrane: Type recommended or produced by manufacturer of epoxy resin composition flooring system for type of service and floor condition indicated.

B. Textured Top Coat: Type recommended or produced by manufacturer of epoxy resin matrix flooring system for type and profile of desired final finish.

C. Anti-Microbial Additive: Incorporate anti-microbial chemical additive to prevent growth of most bacteria, fungi, algae and actinomycetes.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A. Examine the areas and conditions where the epoxy resin composition flooring is to be installed and notify the Architect of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected by the Contractor in a manner acceptable to the Architect.

B. Test for moisture vapor transmission. Notify Architect immediately if moisture vapor transmission exceeds manufacturers recommended levels.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Substrate: Perform preparation and cleaning procedures according to flooring manufacturer's instructions for particular substrate conditions involved, and as specified. Provide clean, dry, and neutral substrate for flooring application.

B. Concrete Surfaces: Shot-blast, acid etch or power scarify as required to obtain optimum bond of flooring to concrete. Remove sufficient material to provide a sound surface free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, and any bond-inhibiting curing compounds or form release agents. Remove grease, oil, and other penetrating contaminates. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete to acceptable condition. :Leave surface free of dust, dirt, laitance, and efflorescence.

C. Materials: Mix resin hardener and aggregate when required, and prepare materials according to flooring system manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. General: Apply each component of epoxy resin composition flooring system according to manufacturer's directions to produce a uniform monolithic flooring surface of thickness indicated.

B. Bond Coat: Apply bond coat over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.

C. Body Coat: Over primer, trowel apply epoxy mortar mix at nominal ¼-inch thickness; hand or power trowel. When cured, sand or grind if necessary to remove trowel marks and roughness.

D. Finish or Sealing Coats: After body coat has cured sufficiently, apply grout and finish coats of type recommended by flooring manufacturer to produce finish matching approved sample and in number of coats and spreading rates recommended by manufacturer.

1. Final finish coat shall be in color and skid retardant profile as approved by the Architect.
2. Finished floor shall be ¼" thick, uniform in color and free of trowel marks.

E. Cove Base: Apply cove base mix to wall surfaces at locations shown to form cove base height of 4 inches unless otherwise indicated. Follow manufacturer's instructions and details including taping, mixing, priming, troweling, sanding, and top-coating of cove base.

3.4 CURING, PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Cure epoxy resin composition flooring materials according to manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent contamination during application stages and before completing curing process. Close application area for a minimum of 24 hours.

B. Protect finished floor with wax paper. Use Masonite, if rolling load traffic exists.

C. Clean with manufacturer recommended cleaner.

END OF SECTION 09705

SECTION 09911

EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:

1. Miscellaneous Concrete.
2. Steel.
3. Galvanized metal.
4. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
5. Wood.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
2. Division 6 Sections for shop priming carpentry with primers specified in this Section.
3. Division 8 Sections for factory priming windows and doors with primers specified in this Section.
4. Division 9 Section "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
5. Division 9 painting Sections for special-use coatings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. LEED Submitals:

1. Credit EQ 4.1: Manufacturer’s product data, including printed statement of VOC content.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.

4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

E. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:

1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. MPI Standards:

1. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
2. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.

B. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 3.

a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.

a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that are from same production run (batch mix) as materials applied and that are packaged for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Quantity: Furnish an additional 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Benjamin Moore & Co
2. ICI Paints.
3. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
4. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
5. Tnemec.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
3. Of the products each manufacturer produces, select paints that are the manufacturer’s best commercial grade of professional paints.

B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 BLOCK FILLERS

A. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI #4.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.4 PRIMERS/SEALERS

A. Alkali-Resistant Primer: MPI #3.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Bonding Primer (Water Based): MPI #17.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Bonding Primer (Solvent Based): MPI #69.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

D. Wood-Knot Sealer: Sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for use in paint system indicated.

2.5 METAL PRIMERS

A. Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer: MPI #79.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Quick-Drying Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI #76.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Cementitious Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #26.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E1.

D. Waterborne Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #134.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

E. Quick-Drying Primer for Aluminum: MPI #95.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.6 WOOD PRIMERS

A. Exterior Latex Wood Primer: MPI #6.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Exterior Alkyd Wood Primer: MPI #5.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Exterior Oil Wood Primer: MPI #7.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.7 EXTERIOR LATEX PAINTS

A. Exterior Latex (Flat): MPI #10 (Gloss Level 1).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Exterior Latex (Semigloss): MPI #11 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Exterior Latex (Gloss): MPI #119 (Gloss Level 6, except minimum gloss of 65 units at 60 deg).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.8 EXTERIOR ALKYD PAINTS

A. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (Flat): MPI #8 (Gloss Level 1).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E1.

B. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (Semigloss): MPI #94 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (Gloss): MPI #9 (Gloss Level 6).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.9 QUICK-DRYING ENAMELS

A. Quick-Drying Enamel (Semigloss): MPI #81 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Quick-Drying Enamel (High Gloss): MPI #96 (Gloss Level 7).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.10 TEXTURED AND HIGH-BUILD COATINGS

A. Latex Stucco and Masonry Textured Coating: MPI #42.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. High-Build Latex (Exterior): MPI #40.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E1.

2.11 ALUMINUM PAINT

A. Aluminum Paint: MPI #1.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.12 FLOOR COATINGS

A. Interior/Exterior Clear Concrete Floor Sealer (Water Based): MPI #99.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Interior/Exterior Clear Concrete Floor Sealer (Solvent Based): MPI #104.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Interior/Exterior Latex Floor and Porch Paint (Low Gloss): MPI #60 (maximum Gloss Level 3).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 3.

D. Exterior/Interior Alkyd Floor Enamel (Gloss): MPI #27 (Gloss Level 6).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Additives: Manufacturer's standard additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
3. Wood: 15 percent.
4. Plaster: 12 percent.
5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Clay Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content of surfaces or alkalinity of mortar joints to be painted exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Concrete Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.

H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove surface oxidation.

J. Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

K. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

L. Plaster Substrates: Do not begin paint application until plaster is fully cured and dry.

M. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates: Do not begin paint application until finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paints are being applied:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance of paint materials with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying-paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:

1. Alkyd Floor Enamel System: MPI EXT 3.2D.

a. Prime Coat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior/exterior alkyd flood enamel (gloss).
c. Topcoat: Interior/exterior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).

B. Steel Substrates:

1. Quick-Drying Enamel System: MPI EXT 5.1A.

a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Quick-drying enamel matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Quick-drying enamel (semigloss).

2. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.

a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).

C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.3B.

a. Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).

D. Aluminum Substrates:

1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.4F.

a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.
b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).

END OF SECTION 09911

SECTION 09912

INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:

1. Steel.
2. Galvanized metal.
3. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
4. Wood.
5. Gypsum board.
6. Cotton or canvas insulation covering.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "LEED Requirements" for additional LEED requirements.
2. Division 5 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
3. Division 6 Sections for shop priming carpentry with primers specified in this Section.
4. Division 8 Sections for factory priming windows and doors with primers specified in this Section.
5. Division 9 Section "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
6. Division 9 painting Sections for special-use coatings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:

1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.

E. LEED Submittals: For Credit EQ 4.2, manufacturers' product data for paints, including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. MPI Standards:

1. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
2. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.

B. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 3.

a. Wall and Ceiling Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Apply benchmark samples after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated.
3. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.

a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that are from same production run (batch mix) as materials applied and that are packaged for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Quantity: Furnish an additional 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) and not more than two 5-gallon containers of each material and color applied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Benjamin Moore & Co
2. ICI Paints.
3. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
4. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
5. Tnemec

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

B. Chemical Components of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24) and the following chemical restrictions; these requirements do not apply to primers or finishes that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:

1. Flat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
3. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing one or more benzene rings).
4. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:

a. Acrolein.
b. Acrylonitrile.
c. Antimony.
d. Benzene.
e. Butyl benzyl phthalate.
f. Cadmium.
g. Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
h. Di-n-butyl phthalate.
i. Di-n-octyl phthalate.
j. 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
k. Diethyl phthalate.
l. Dimethyl phthalate.
m. Ethylbenzene.
n. Formaldehyde.
o. Hexavalent chromium.
p. Isophorone.
q. Lead.
r. Mercury.
s. Methyl ethyl ketone.
t. Methyl isobutyl ketone.
u. Methylene chloride.
v. Naphthalene.
w. Toluene (methylbenzene).
x. 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
y. Vinyl chloride.

C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 BLOCK FILLERS

A. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI #4.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.4 PRIMERS/SEALERS

A. Interior Latex Primer/Sealer: MPI #50.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

B. Interior Alkyd Primer/Sealer: MPI #45.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Wood-Knot Sealer: Sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for use in paint systems indicated.

2.5 METAL PRIMERS

A. Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer: MPI #79.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Quick-Drying Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI #76.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Rust-Inhibitive Primer (Water Based): MPI #107.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

D. Cementitious Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #26.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E1.

E. Waterborne Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #134.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

F. Vinyl Wash Primer: MPI #80.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

G. Quick-Drying Primer for Aluminum: MPI #95.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.6 WOOD PRIMERS

A. Interior Latex-Based Wood Primer: MPI #39.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

2.7 LATEX PAINTS

A. Interior Latex (Flat): MPI #53 (Gloss Level 1).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 1.5.

B. Interior Latex (Low Sheen): MPI #44 (Gloss Level 2).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

C. Interior Latex (Eggshell): MPI #52 (Gloss Level 3).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

D. Interior Latex (Satin): MPI #43 (Gloss Level 4).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

E. Interior Latex (Semigloss): MPI #54 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 3.

F. Interior Latex (Gloss): MPI #114 (Gloss Level 6, except minimum gloss of 65 units at 60 deg).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 3.

G. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Flat): MPI #143 (Gloss Level 1).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 4.

H. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Low Sheen): MPI #144 (Gloss Level 2).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 4.5.

I. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Eggshell): MPI #145 (Gloss Level 3).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 4.5.

J. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Semigloss): MPI #147 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 3.

K. High-Performance Architectural Latex (Low Sheen): MPI #138 (Gloss Level 2).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 5.

L. High-Performance Architectural Latex (Eggshell): MPI #139 (Gloss Level 3).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 5.

M. High-Performance Architectural Latex (Satin): MPI #140 (Gloss Level 4).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 4.5.

N. High-Performance Architectural Latex (Semigloss): MPI #141 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 6.

O. Exterior Latex (Flat): MPI #10 (Gloss Level 1).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

P. Exterior Latex (Semigloss): MPI #11 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

Q. Exterior Latex (Gloss): MPI #119 (Gloss Level 6, except minimum gloss of 65 units at 60 deg).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.8 ALKYD PAINTS

A. Interior Alkyd (Flat): MPI #49 (Gloss Level 1).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Interior Alkyd (Eggshell): MPI #51 (Gloss Level 3).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Interior Alkyd (Semigloss): MPI #47 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

D. Interior Alkyd (Gloss): MPI #48 (Gloss Level 6).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.9 QUICK-DRYING ENAMELS

A. Quick-Drying Enamel (Semigloss): MPI #81 (Gloss Level 5).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

B. Quick-Drying Enamel (High Gloss): MPI #96 (Gloss Level 7).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.10 TEXTURED COATING

A. Latex Stucco and Masonry Textured Coating: MPI #42.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.11 DRY FOG/FALL COATINGS

A. Latex Dry Fog/Fall: MPI #118.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

B. Waterborne Dry Fall: MPI #133.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

C. Interior Alkyd Dry Fog/Fall: MPI #55.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.12 ALUMINUM PAINT

A. Aluminum Paint: MPI #1.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

2.13 FLOOR COATINGS

A. Interior Concrete Floor Stain: MPI #58.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 2.

B. Interior/Exterior Clear Concrete Floor Sealer (Water Based): MPI #99.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

C. Interior/Exterior Clear Concrete Floor Sealer (Solvent Based): MPI #104.

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

D. Interior/Exterior Latex Floor and Porch Paint (Low Gloss): MPI #60 (maximum Gloss Level 3).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 3.

E. Exterior/Interior Alkyd Floor Enamel (Gloss): MPI #27 (Gloss Level 6).

1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
2. Additives: Manufacturer's standard additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
3. Wood: 15 percent.
4. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
5. Plaster: 12 percent.

C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Clay Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content of surfaces or alkalinity of mortar joints to be painted exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Concrete Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.

H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove surface oxidation.

J. Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

K. Gypsum Board Substrates: Do not begin paint application until finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.

L. Cotton or Canvas Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Painting Mechanical and Electrical Work: Paint items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Mechanical Work:

   a. Uninsulated metal piping.
   b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
   c. Pipe hangers and supports.
   d. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
   e. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
   f. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
   g. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

2. Electrical Work:

   a. Switchgear.
   b. Panelboards.
   c. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paints are being applied:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying-paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:

1. Latex System: MPI INT 3.1E.

a. Prime Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior latex (eggshell).

2. Latex Over Sealer System: MPI INT 3.1A.

a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior latex (eggshell).

3. Alkyd System: MPI INT 3.1D.

a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (eggshell).

B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:

1. Latex Floor Enamel System: MPI INT 3.2A.

a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).
c. Topcoat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).

2. Water-Based Clear Sealer System: MPI INT 3.2G.

a. First Coat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (water based).
b. Topcoat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (water based).

C. CMU Substrates:

1. Latex System: MPI INT 4.2A.

a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior latex (eggshell).

2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 4.2C.

a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (eggshell).

3. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 4.2D.

a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex (eggshell).

D. Steel Substrates:

1. Quick-Drying Enamel System: MPI INT 5.1A.

a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Quick-drying enamel matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Quick-drying enamel (semigloss).

2. Water-Based Dry-Fall System: MPI INT 5.1C.

a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
b. Topcoat: Latex dry fog/fall.

3. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.1R.

a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex (semigloss).

E. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. Water-Based Dry-Fall System: MPI INT 5.3H.

a. Prime Coat: Waterborne dry fall.
b. Topcoat: Waterborne dry fall.

2. Latex Over Waterborne Primer System: MPI INT 5.3J.

a. Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior latex (semigloss).

3. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.3M.

a. Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex (semigloss).

F. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:

1. Latex System: MPI INT 5.4H.

a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.

b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior latex (semigloss).

2. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.4F.

a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.
b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex (semigloss).

G. Dressed Lumber Substrates: Including architectural woodwork.

1. Latex System: MPI INT 6.3T.

a. Prime Coat: Interior latex-based wood primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior latex (semigloss).

H. Wood Panel Substrates: Including painted plywood, medium-density fiberboard and hardboard.

1. Latex System: MPI INT 6.4R.

a. Prime Coat: Interior latex-based wood primer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior latex (semigloss).

I. Gypsum Board Substrates:

1. Latex System: MPI INT 9.2A.

a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Interior latex (eggshell).

2. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 9.2B.

a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex (eggshell).

END OF SECTION 09912

SECTION 099600

HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes surface preparation and application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:

1. Exterior Substrates:

a. Concrete, vertical and horizontal surfaces.
b. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
c. Steel.
d. Galvanized metal.
e. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).

2. Interior Substrates:

a. Concrete, vertical and] horizontal surfaces.
b. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
c. Steel.
d. Galvanized metal.
e. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
f. Wood.
g. Gypsum board.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
2. Division 09 painting Sections for special-use coatings and general field painting.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of finish-coat product indicated.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of coating system and in each color and gloss of finish coat indicated.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: For each product indicated. Cross-reference products to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

E. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.2: For coatings, including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Master Painters Institute (MPI) Standards:

1. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
2. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and coating systems indicated.

B. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of each coating system indicated to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of coating and substrate.

   a. Wall and Ceiling Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
   b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Apply benchmark samples after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated.
3. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.

   a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

B. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that are from same production run (batch mix) as materials applied and that are packaged for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Quantity: Furnish an additional 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. Provide products of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.

B. VOC Content of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

1. Flat Paints, Coatings, and Primers: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat Paints, Coatings, and Primers: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
3. Anticorrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: VOC content of not more than 250 g/L.
4. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: VOC not more than 350 g/L.
5. Clear Wood Finishes, Lacquers: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
6. Floor Coatings: VOC not more than 100 g/L.
7. Stains: VOC content of not more than 250 g/L.
8. Flat Interior Topcoat Paints: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
9. Nonflat Interior Topcoat Paints: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
10. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
11. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: VOC not more than 350 g/L.
12. Clear Wood Finishes, Lacquers: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
13. Floor Coatings: VOC not more than 100 g/L.
14. Stains: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
15. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: VOC content of not more than 200 g/L.
16. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: VOC content of not more than 340 g/L.
17. Pre-Treatment Wash Primers: VOC content of not more than 420 g/L.

C. Chemical Components of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide topcoat paints and anti-corrosive and anti-rust paints applied to ferrous metals that comply with the following chemical restrictions; these requirements do not apply to paints and coatings that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:

1. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing 1 or more benzene rings).
2. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:

    a. Acrolein.
    b. Acrylonitrile.
    c. Antimony.
    d. Benzene.
    e. Butyl benzyl phthalate.
    f. Cadmium.
    g. Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
    h. Di-n-butyl phthalate.
    i. Di-n-octyl phthalate.
    j. 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
    k. Diethyl phthalate.
    l. Dimethyl phthalate.
    m. Ethylbenzene.
    n. Formaldehyde.
    o. Hexavalent chromium.
    p. Isophorone.
    q. Lead.
    r. Mercury.
    s. Methyl ethyl ketone.
    t. Methyl isobutyl ketone.
    u. Methylene chloride.
    v. Naphthalene.
    w. Toluene (methylbenzene).
    x. 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
    y. Vinyl chloride.

D. Colors: As indicated in color schedule

2.2 BLOCK FILLERS

A. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI#4.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Moorcraft, Super Craft Latex Block Filler, 285-01.
    b. Bennette Paint Mfg. Co., Inc.; Int/Ext Acrylic Latex Block Filler, 32-4.
    c. Cloverdale Paint; Latex Block Filler, 5700.
    d. Columbia Paint & Coatings; High Performance, Int/Ext Acrylic Latex Block Filler, 05-055-PP.
    e. Coronado Paint; Super Kote 5000, Commercial Latex Block Filler, 946-11.
    f. Flex Bon Paints; Int.-Ext. 100% Acrylic Block Filler, 1151.
    g. General Paint; Block Filler, 70-224.
    h. ICI Paints; Prep-N-Prime, Block Filler, 3010, Paints; Devoe/Fuller, Devoe-Fill, DV52903 or Paints; Devoe Coatings, Bloxfil Acrylic Block Filler, 4000
    i. Kelly-Moore Paints; Fill and Prime Acrylic Block Filler, 521.
    j. Kwal-Howells Paint; Accu-Pro, Blok-Fil, 5890.

k. Miller Paint; Ext. Block Filler, 6015.
l. PARA Paints; Commercial Latex Block Filler, 5792.
m. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler, 6-12 or Speedhide, Int/Ext Block Filler, 6-15.
n. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); PrepRite, Int/Ext Block Filler, B25W25.
o. Sico, Inc.; Sico Expert, Interior Latex Block Filler, 675-115.
p. Vista Paint; Block Kote, 040.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E2.

B. Epoxy Block Filler: MPI #116.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cloverdale Paint; Epoxy Block Filler, 83065.
b. Columbia Paint & Coatings**;** Carboline, Carboguard, 954HB or Insl-x, Epoxy Block Filler, EXP 120.
c. Coronado Paint; Polyamide Epoxy Block Filler, 101-11.
d. Diamond Vogel Paints; V-Cote 100, Acrylic Epoxy Block Filler, MC-1234.
e. Frazee Paint; Ameron, Amerlock 400 BF, 400 BF.
f. General Paint; Ameron, Amerlock Block Filler, 400BF.
g. ICI Paints; Devoe Coatings, Devran 224HS, 224HS, Paints; Devoe Coatings, Bar-Rust 231, 231 or Paints; Devoe Coatings, Bar-Rust 236, 236
h. Miller Paint; PPG Aquapon, Polyamide Epoxy Block Filler, 97-685 Series.
i. PARA Paints; Insl-x, Epoxy Blockfiller, EXP 120.
j. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.; Ameron, Amerlock 400 BF, 400BF.
k. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon, Epoxy Block Filler, 97-685.
l. Rodda Paint Co.; Carboline, Carboguard 954HB.
m. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Kem Cati-Coat HS Epoxy Filler/Sealer, B24W400/V400 S.
n. Spectra-Tone; Insl-x, Epoxy Block Filler, EXP 120.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of **E1**

2.3 INTERIOR PRIMERS/SEALERS

A. Interior Latex Primer/Sealer: MPI #50.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Regal, First Coat Latex Primer/Undercoater, 216 or Moorcraft, Latex Undercoater & Primer Sealer, 253-00].
b. California Paints; ProPrime, Latex Primer White, 54500.
c. Cloverdale Paint; Interior Latex Primer Sealer, 05250.
d. Coronado Paint; Super Kote 5000, Latex Primer-Sealer, 40-11.
e. Farrell-Calhoun; Perfik-Seal, Interior Latex Primer-Sealer, 380.
f. Flex Bon Paints; Interior Alkyd Latex Primer, 1071.
g. Frazee Paint; Aqua Seal, Interior Vinyl Acrylic Wall Sealer, 061.

h. ICI Paints Prep-N-Prime, PVA Interior Primer Sealer, 1030, Prep-N-Prime, Interior Latex Wall Primer, 1000 or Devoe/Fuller, Wonder-Tones, DR50801Insl-x; Aqualock, Waterbase Primer/Sealer/Stain Killer, AQ-0500.
i. Iowa Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.; Prime Line, Hi Hide PVA Primer, 516.
j. Kwal-Howells Paint; Accu-Pro, Interior Latex Flat Drywall Primer, 0890.
k. Miller Paint; Kril Primer Sealer, 6040.
l. Mills Paint; Superior Quality, Interior Latex Primer Sealer, 133.
m. Northern Paint; Colorlox, Hi Hide Latex Primer, 301-49.
n. PARA Paints; Prime Tech Hi-Hide Latex Primer, 5799.
o. Porter Paints; Interior Latex Sealer, 37725.
p. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Speedhide, Int. Latex Primer Sealer, 6-2.
q. Rodda Paint Co.; Scotseal, Heavy Bodied Latex Sealer, 50 7801 1.
r. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); PrepRite, 200 Latex Primer, B28W200 or Quali-Kote, Interior Latex Primer, B28WQ8001.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

a. VOC Content:

1) Minimum E Range of E2.
2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 2.

B. Interior Alkyd Primer/Sealer: MPI #45.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Fresh Start, Int/Ext All Purpose Alkyd Primer, 024.
b. Bennette Paint Mfg. Co., Inc.; Interior Alkyd Primer Sealer, 32-45.
c. California Paints; Fres-Coat, Premium Int. Alkyd Primer Sealer, 20200.
d. Cloverdale Paint; Interior Enamel Undercoat, 15100.
e. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Industrial, Master Prime Interior Alkyd, 03-792-PP.
f. Coronado Paint; Super Kote 5000, Alkyd Primer Undercoater, 37-11.
g. Frazee Paint; Fraflo 11, Int. Alkyd Enamel Undercoater, 367.
h. General Paint; Interior Primer Sealer, 02-230.
i. ICI Paints: Devoe/Fuller, Killsatin, DR51601, Devoe/Fuller, Primz, FOB 220-01 or Prep-N-Prime, Stain Jammer Primer Sealer, 1110

j. Kelly-Moore Paints; Flo-Cote, Alkyd Enamel Undercoater, 985-100.
k. Kwal-Howells Paint; Accu-Pro, Alkyd Undercoat, 4200.
l. Miller Paint; Pure Paint Primer, 240.
m. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Speedhide, Interior Alkyd Primer, 6-6.
n. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); PrepRite, Interior Oil Primer/Undercoater, B49W2.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1

C. Interior Latex-Based Wood Primer: MPI #39.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Fresh Start, Interior/Exterior Primer, 23.
    b. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.; Weather-Tite, 100% Acrylic Latex Universal Primer, 6-6.
    c. California Paints; Wipe-Out, Latex Stain Block - White, 52500.
    d. Cloverdale Paint; Int./Ext. Acrylic Latex Primer, 5130.
    e. Coronado Paint; Grip & Seal Stain Killing Primer, 116-11.
    f. Diamond Vogel Paints; Sure Grip, Acrylic Latex Primer, BU-1501/02.
    g. Duron Inc.; American Paints, Terminator T2 WB Primer/Sealer, 71-218.
    h. Frazee Paint; Prime+Plus, 168.
    i. General Paint; Exterior Latex Wood Primer, 70-002.
    j. Griggs Paint; 3-1 Stain-Out Primer, 301W47.
    k. Hallman Lindsay Quality Paints; Primeguard, Acrylic Exterior Primer, 112.
    l. ICI Paints: Prep-N-Prime, Gripper Stain Killer Primer, 3210 or Prep-N-Prime, 100% Acrylic Latex Primer, 2000

    m. Kelly-Moore Paints; Uni-Prime, 295.
    n. M.A.B. Paints; Lok Tite Latex Stain Sealer, 056-159.
    o. Miller Paint; PPG Seal-Grip; Int/ Ext Stain Blocking Primer, 17-21.
    p. Northern Paint; Exterior Acrylic Primer, 30-60.
    q. PARA Paints; Blockout, Acrylic Stain Blocking Primer, 888.
    r. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.; Flex Prime, 2333.
    s. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Seal Grip, Plastic Primer (Waterborne), 17-21.
    t. Rodda Paint Co.; Lasyn Enamel Undercoat, 503001.
    u. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); PrepRite, ProBlock Int/Ext Latex Primer/Sealer, B51W20.
    v. Smiland Paint Company; Morwear, Acrylic Stain Blocking Primer, 2098.
    w. Spectra-Tone; Insl-x, AquaLock, AQ-0500.

    x. VOC Content:

        1) Minimum E Range of **E1**.
        2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

    y. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 1.

D. Wood-Knot Sealer: White shellac or other sealer recommended in writing by manufacturer for this purpose.

2.4 METAL PRIMERS

A. Inorganic Zinc Primer: MPI #19.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Inorganic Zinc Primer, M01/M02.
    b. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.; Mo-Zinc #3, 28-DH-50.

c. Cloverdale Paint; ClovaZinc 2, 83002.
d. Columbia Paint & Coatings; DuPont, Ganicin Inorganic Zinc-Rich Coating, 347-Y-931.
e. Dunn-Edwards Corporation; Interzinc 22, QHA 028/1/A.
f. Frazee Paint; Ameron, D9HS.
g. General Paint; Ameron, Dimetcoate 9 - Inorganic Zinc Rich, 96 Line.
h. Griggs Paint; MIL-P-38336 Inorganic Zinc Primer, 200A46.
i. ICI Paints; Devoe Coatings, Catha-Cote 304, 304, Devoe Coatings, Catha-Cote 304, 304
.
j. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Metalhide One-Pac, Inorganic Zinc Rich Primer, 97-676.
k. Rodda Paint Co.; Carboline, Carbozinc 11.
l. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Zinc Clad II Ethyl Silicate, B69V3/D11.
m. Sigma Coatings; Sigma Silguard SC, 7550.
n. Spectra-Tone; Insl-x Check Rust Inorganic Zinc Rich Primer, ZR-3650.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

B. Epoxy Zinc Primer: MPI #20.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cloverdale Paint; ClovaZinc 3, 83003.
b. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Carboline, Carboline 861, 861.
c. Coronado Paint; Polyamide Epoxy Zinc Rich Primer, 101-152.
d. Dunn-Edwards Corporation; Interzinc 52, EPA 175.
e. Frazee Paint; Ameron, 68HS.
f. General Paint; Ameron, 68 H.S. - Epoxy Zinc Rich Coating, 96 Line.
g. Griggs Paint; Epoxy Zinc Rich Primer, 600A75.
h. Miller Paint; PPG Aquapon Zinc Rich Primer, 97-670.
i. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.; Ameron, Amercoat Zinc Rich Epoxy Primer, 68HS.
j. Porter Paints; Porterzinc 3000, Zinc Rich Epoxy Primer, 3000.
k. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon Epoxy Zinc Rich Primer, 97-670.
l. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Zinc Clad IV, B69A8/V8.
m. Sico, Inc.; Rust-Oleum, Zinc-Sele, 9334.
n. Sigma Coatings; Sigmarite Zinc Primer, 7401.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

C. Rust-Inhibitive Primer (Water Based): MPI #107.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Acrylic Metal Primer, M04.
b. Bennette Paint Mfg. Co., Inc.; Rust Inhibitive Primer (WB), 32-107.
c. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.; H2O RUS-KIL, Rust Resistant Primer, 310-6 /8 /9.

d. California Paints; H. P. Industrial, Rust-Stop Latex Metal Primer, 106XX-Series.
e. Cloverdale Paint; EcoLogic Rustex Primer, 703 Series.
f. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings; Aquatec, Industrial Acrylic Primer, 1636.
g. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Professional, Metal Prime, 05-255-PP.
h. Coronado Paint; H.P. Acrylic Rust Inhibitive, 180-11/147.
i. Diamond Vogel Paints; V-Code 200, Acrylic Maintenance Primer/Finish, MC-Series.
j. Dunn-Edwards Corporation; Intercryl 520, 52010.
k. Duron Inc.; Dura Clad Universal Acrylic Metal P, 33-105.
l. Frazee Paint; Acrylic Metal Primer, 561.
m. General Paint; Envirogard, Waterborne Self-Prime Coating, 15-002.
n. Griggs Paint; Waterbase Acrylic Primer, 700R05.
o. Hallman Lindsay Quality Paints; Metalguard, DTM Acrylic Metal Primer, 338-R.
p. ICI Paints; Devoe Fuller, Mirolac-WB, DP85XX, Devoe Coatings, Devflex TDM Flat Int/Ext W.B. Primer, 4020
Kelly-Moore Paints; DTM Acrylic Metal Primer, 5725.
q. Northern Paint; Colorlox Industrial, Acrylic DTM Primer, Red Oxide/Grey, 601-10/20.
r. PARA Paints; Insl-x, WB High Performance Primer, WRP-800.
s. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.; Rustoleum, Speedy Dry DTM, Red/Grey, 3169/3181.
t. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Porter Coatings, DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish, 215 or Pitt-Tech, Rust Inhibitive Primer (W.B.), 90-712.
u. Rodda Paint Co.; Professional Maintenance, Metal Master Primer, 508901X.
v. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish, B66W1.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

a. VOC Content:

1) Minimum E Range of E1.
2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR [**1**] [**2**] [**3**].

D. Cold-Curing Epoxy Primer: MPI #101.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Ameron International; Amercoat Multi Purpose Epoxy, 385PA.
b. Coronado Paint; Polyamide Epoxy Primer, 1201-147.
c. ICI Paints; Devoe/Fuller, Surface Tolerant Epoxy, DP32U-XX or Devoe Bar-Rust 235, Multi-Purpose Epoxy Coating, DC235K3501.
d. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Duraplate 235 Multi-Purpose Epoxy, B67W235.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

E. Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer: MPI #79.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Industrial, Alkyd Metal Primer, M06 orIronClad, Alkyd Low Lustre Metal & Wood Enamel, C163.
   b. Bennette Paint Mfg. Co., Inc.; Alkyd Anti-Corrosive Metal Primer, 32-79.
   c. Cloverdale Paint; Rustex Metal Primer, 71024/29/34.
   d. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Hi-Performance Coatings, Red Oxide Zinc Phosphate Primer, 04-022-PP.
   e. Coronado Paint; Rust Scat, Alkyd Metal Primer, 35-111.
   f. Frazee Paint; Metal Prime, Interior Exterior Alkyd Primer, 661.
   g. General Paint; Anti-Corrosive Marine Primer - Red, 63-212.
   h. ICI Paints; Devoe Coatings, Devguard T & S Primer, 4160.
   i. Kelly-Moore Paints; Kel-Guard, Alkyd Rust Inhibitive Primer, 1710-120.
   j. Kwal-Howells Paint; Accu-Pro, Interior/Exterior White Metal Primer, 9210.
   k. Rodda Paint Co.; Barrier III HS, High Solids Rust Inhibitive Metal Primer, 70 8295 X.
   l. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Kem Kromic Universal Metal Primer, B50WZ1.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

F. Quick-Dry Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI #76.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Rapid Dry Metal Primer, CM05-70.
   b. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.; Quick Dry Primer Red/Gray/White, 521-10/8/5.
   c. California Paints; H. P. Industrial, Prime Line Metal Primer - Gray, Red, 170X.
   d. Cloverdale Paint; Quick Dry Shop Primer, 71134.
   e. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings; Contractor's Choice, Ironize Inhibitive Primer, 640.
   f. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Industrial, Lead-Free Gray Primer/Speedset HB, 07-426/473.
   g. Coronado Paint; Quick Dry Alkyd Metal Primer, 895 Line.
   h. Diamond Vogel Paints; V-Tech 600, Fast Dry Universal Alkyd Primer, LU-0500/5500.
   i. Dunn-Edwards Corporation; Interlac 260, 26097.
   j. Duron Inc.; Dura Clad Fast Dry Universal Primer, 33-042.
   k. Frazee Paint; Metal Prime, 661.
   l. General Paint; Q. D. Anti-Corrosive Primer Red/Gray, 06-154/160.
   m. Griggs Paint; Jet-Dri Metal Primer - Gray, 200A26.
   n. Hallman Lindsay Quality Paints; Metalguard, Q. D. Alkyd Rust Inhibitive Primer, 330.
   o. ICI Paints: Devoe/Fuller, Primatite, DP271XX or Devoe Coatings, Devguard 4142, 4142
   p. Mills Paint; Superior Quality, F/D Anti-Corrosive Primer-Red/Gray, 548/543.
   q. Northern Paint; Colorlox Industrial, Fast Dry Red Oxide Primer, 601-84.
   r. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.; Overlay Red Primer, 1679.
   s. Porter Paints; U-Prime, Fast Dry Universal Primer, 286.
   t. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Multiprime, Fast Dry 2.8 VOC, 94-258/269

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

G. Cementitious Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #26.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Cloverdale Paint; Cementitious Galvanized Metal Primer, 15930.
   b. Dunn-Edwards Corporation; Galv-Alum, QD43-7.
   c. General Paint; Cementitious Self-Prime Coating, 06-020.
   d. Griggs Paint; Galvanized Metal Primer, 200W45.
   e. ICI Paints (Canada); GliddenUltra, Cementitious Primer, 8000.
   f. Miller Paint; PPG Speedhide Galvanized Metal Primer, 6-209.
   g. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Speedhide, Cementitious Galvanized Metal Primer, 6-209 or Porter Coatings, Galvanized Metal Primer, 290.
   h. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Opti-Bond Multi-Surface Coating, B50W100.
   i. Tower Paint; Dry Fog Alkyd Galvanized Primer, 375935.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

H. Waterborne Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #134.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Acrylic Metal Primer, M04.
   b. Coronado Paint; H. P. Acrylic Rust Inhibiting Primer, 180-11/14

   c. ICI Paints; Devoe Coatings, Devflex WB DTM Primer Finish, 4020

      Kelly-Moore Paints; Kel-Guard, Galvanized Iron Primer, 1722.
   d. M.A.B. Paints; HydroPrime, 073-189.
   e. Mills Paint; Superior Quality, Gripper Plastex Primer, P150.
   f. Northern Paint; Colorlox, Prime Magic Latex Primer, 30-55.
   g. PARA Paints; Waterborne Galvanized Primer, 750.
   h. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.; Galv-O-Prime, Galvanized Iron Primer, 1821.
   i. Porter Paints; Porter Guard, DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish, 215.
   j. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Pitt-Tech, DTM High Performance Primer/Finish, 90-712 or Porter Coatings, DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish, 215.
   k. Rodda Paint Co.; Professional Maintenance, Metal Master Primer, 508901X.
   l. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish, B66W1.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

   a. VOC Content:

      1) Minimum E Range of E1.
      2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR **1**.

I. Quick-Drying Primer for Aluminum: MPI #95.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Rapid Dry Metal Primer, CM05.
.
b. Coronado Paint; Quick Dry Alkyd Metal Primer, 895 Line.
c. ICI Paints; Devoe Coatings, Devguard T & S Primer, 4160 or Devoe/Fuller, Surmax, DP27915/17]
d. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Speedhide, Quick Dry Metal Primer, 6-204.
e. Rodda Paint Co.; Professional Maintenance, Barrier III HS, 708295X.
f. Sico, Inc.; Rust-Oleum, Speedy Dry, 1573.
g. Spectra-Tone; Insl-x Speedy Metal Primer, MP-915.
h. Tower Paint; Red Oxide Metal Primer, T110.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

J. Vinyl Wash Primer: MPI #80.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.; Vinyl Wash Primer, 9-42.
b. Coronado Paint; Vinyl Wash Metal Primer, 316-200.
c. ICI Paints: Devoe, Devguard, 27301/02.

d. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Polyclutch, Vinyl Wash Primer, 97-687/688.
e. Rodda Paint Co.; Professional Maintenance, Vinyl Wash Coat, 709700X.
f. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Industrial Wash Primer, P60G2/R7K44.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E2.

2.5 WATER-BASED, LIGHT-INDUSTRIAL COATINGS

A. Gloss, Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating: MPI #110-G6.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cloverdale Paint; EcoLogic W.B. Architectural Finish, 70603.
b. Columbia Paint & Coatings; High Performance, Acry-Shield Gloss Enamel, 05-260.
c. Coronado Paint; DTM Acrylic Coatings, 180 Line.
d. Kelly-Moore Paints; DTM Acrylic Gloss Enamel, 5780.
e. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Pitt-Tech, High Performance Acrylic, 90-374.
f. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Sher-Cryl HPA Gloss, B66W311.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

   a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E2.
   b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 2.

B. Semigloss, Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating: MPI #110-G5.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; (Canada), Latex, M28-08.
   b. Bennette Paint Mfg. Co., Inc.; Int/Ext Hi Performance Semi-Gloss, 32-110-2.
   c. Cloverdale Paint; EcoLogic W.B. Architectural Finish, 70623.
   d. Columbia Paint & Coatings; High Performance, Acry-Shield Semi-Gloss Enamel, 05-262.
   e. Coronado Paint; DTM Acrylic Coatings, 182 Line.
   f. Dunn-Edwards Corporation; Permasheen, Int./Ext.100% Acrylic Semi-Gloss, W 901.
   g. Farrell-Calhoun; Tuff-Boy, Waterborne DTM Enamel, 8000.
   h. General Paint, Envirogard; Waterborne Acrylic Semi-Gloss, 15-020.
   i. ICI Paints; Devoe/Fuller, Mirrolac-WB, DP 84-XX, Devoe Coatings, Devflex WB Acrylic SG Enamel, 4206-0100 or Devoe Coatings, Devflex WB Acrylic SG Enamel, 4216
   j. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Sher-Cryl HPA Semi-Gloss, B66W351.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

   a. VOC Content:

      1) Minimum E Range of E2.
      2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

   b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR [**2**] [**3**].

C. Eggshell, Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating: MPI #110-G3.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. ICI Paints Devflex, Int/Ext Acrylic Eggshell Enamel or Devoe Coatings, Devflex 4210
   b. Porter Paints; Porter Guard, DTM Acrylic Satin Enamel, 2805.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

   a. VOC Content:

      1) Minimum E Range of E2.
      2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

   b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR [**2**] [**3**].

2.6 EPOXY COATINGS

A. Epoxy, Cold-Cured, Gloss: MPI #77.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Polyamide Epoxy Coating, M36/M37.
   b. California Paints; H. P. Industrial, Tile-Cote Polyamide-Epoxy Coating, 12XX/1200.
   c. Cloverdale Paint; ClovaCoat 300, 833.
   d. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Insl-x, Insl-Tile II, EP-5300.
   e. Coronado Paint; Polyamide Epoxy Coating, 101 Line.
   f. Frazee Paint; Ameron, 72HS.
   g. ICI ICI Devoe, Devran 724, 724-KXXXX.
   h. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon, Epoxy Cold Cured Gloss, 95-1.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

B. Water-Based Epoxy (Interior and Exterior): MPI #115.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Acrylic Epoxy Gloss "A", Hardener "B", M43/M44.
   b. Coronado Paint; Water-Based Amine Adduct Epoxy, 142 Line.
   c. ICI Paints; Devoe/Fuller, Gardcote-WB, DP25U9XX or Devoe Coatings, Tru Glaze WB Epoxy Gloss Coating, 4408
   d. Porter Paints; Dura-Glaze WB, Gloss Epoxy, 9371.
   e. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon, Waterborne Epoxy, 98-1/98-98.
   f. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Water Based Catalyzed Epoxy, B70W Series

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1

C. High-Build Epoxy Marine Coating, Low Gloss: MPI #108.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Epoxy Mastic Coating, M45/M46.
   b. Cloverdale Paint; ClovaGuard, 83150.
   c. Columbia Paint & Coatings; DuPont, High Solids Epoxy Mastic, 25P.
   d. Coronado Paint; Polyamide Epoxy Coating Semi-Gloss, 101-251.
   e. ICI Paints; Devoe Coatings, Bar-Rust 236, 236 or Devoe Coatings, Bar-Rust 235, 235
   f. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon, High Build Epoxy Marine Coating, 97-130/97-139.
   g. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Macropoxy 646, B58W6 Series.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

D. Epoxy Deck Coating: MPI #82.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.; MoPoxY; Deck Armor NS200 - Gray/White, 41-BH-12/BW-2.
   b. Cloverdale Paint; ClovaCoat Anti Skid, 833 Series.
   c. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Insl-x, Insl-Tile II + NSA, EP5300 Series.
   d. Coronado Paint; Polyamide Epoxy High Build Coating, 101 Line.
   e. Frazee Paint; Ameron, Amerlock 400 + NSA, 400.
   f. General Paint, Ameron; Amerlock 400 + NSA, 400.
   g. Griggs Paint; Non Skid Epoxy Deck Coating, 600G31.
   h. ICI **Paints; Devgrip 237, 237-XXXX**
   i. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon 35, Epoxy Coating + NSA, 95-1.
   j. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); ArmorSeal, Heavy Duty Non-Skid Coating, B67A350 Series.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1

E. Water-Based Epoxy Floor Paint: MPI #93.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Industrial, Acrylic Epoxy Gloss Coating, M4303.
   b. Coronado Paint; Industrial, Amine Adduct Water Based Epoxy, 142 Series.
   c. ICI Paints**:** Devoe Coatings, Tru-Glaze WB Epoxy, 4408 or Devoe Coatings, Tru-Glaze WB Semi-Gloss Epoxy, 4406
   d. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon, Water Base Epoxy, 98-1 Series.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

   a. VOC Content:

      1) Minimum E Range of E1.
      2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

   b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR **1**.

2.7 POLYURETHANE COATINGS

A. Polyurethane, Two-Component, Pigmented, Gloss: MPI #72.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Aliphatic Acrylic Urethane Gloss, CM74/M75.
   b. ChemRex; Sonoglaze CRU.
   c. Cloverdale Paint; ClovaThane, 834 Series.

d. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Insl-x, Insl-Tron, AU-0500.
e. Coronado Paint; Superthane, Aliphatic Acrylic Urethane, 827 Line.
f. ICI Paints: Devoe Coatings, Devthane Aliphatic Urethane, 369] or Devoe Coatings, Aliphatic Urethane Gloss Enamel, 389
g. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Pitthane, Urethane Aliphatic Pigmented Gloss, 95-850.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

B. Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear, Gloss: MPI #31.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Moisture Cured Urethane Clear, M78-00.
b. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.; Mothane; MC-63 Clear, Floor Finish, 63-AF-1.
c. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Industrial, High Solids Clear Aromatic Moisture, 11-016-XX.
d. Coronado Paint; Moisture Cured Urethane Clear, 395-10.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1.

C. Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear, Flat: MPI #71.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Griggs Paint; Moisture Cure Polyurethane - Clear, 100C48.
b. ICI Paints: Devoe Aquarius, Armabrite 7000, 7000 or Aquarius, Armabrite, 7000.

3. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E2.

2.8 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE ARCHITECTURAL LATEX COATINGS

A. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Velvet Finish: MPI #138, Gloss Level 2.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. ICI Paints: Devoe/Fuller, AA Acrylic, FOB 212-XX or Devoe Coatings, Dulux Ultra Int. Eggshell, 1403
b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Superpaint, Satin Latex, A87W51.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

a. VOC Content:

1) Minimum E Range of E1.
2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 4.

B. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Eggshell Finish: MPI #139, Gloss Level 3.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Columbia Paint & Coatings; High Performance, Acry-Shield Eggshell Enamel, 05-265.
b. Hirshfield's, Inc.; Hirshfield's Paint Manufacturing, Heavy Duty Eggshell Acrylic, 9290.
c. Kelly-Moore Paints; Dura-Poxy, Eggshell Acrylic Enamel, 1686-111.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

a. VOC Content:

1) Minimum E Range of E2.
2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR **5**.

C. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Satin Finish: MPI #140, Gloss Level 4.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Bennette Paint Mfg. Co., Inc.; Int High Performance Latex, 32-140.
b. Dunn-Edwards Corporation; Permashell, Int/Ext Acrylic Eggshell, W940.
c. Kwal-Howells Paint; Ambassador, Acrylic Satin Enamel, 2900.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

a. VOC Content:

1) Minimum E Range of **E1**
2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR **4.5**.

D. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Semigloss Finish: MPI #141, Gloss Level 5.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss, M29-08.
b. Bennette Paint Mfg. Co., Inc.; Int. Hi Performance Latex Semi-Gloss, 32-141.
c. Cloverdale Paint; Acrylic Kitchen & Bath, Semigloss Enamel, 03650.
d. Columbia Paint & Coatings; High Performance; Interior Acrylic Semi-Gloss, 05-142.
e. Diamond Vogel Paints; PermAcryl Int. Semi-Gloss, DS-1570.

f. ICI Dulux Paints; Ralph Lauren, Int. Semi-Gloss Premium, RL 1391.
g. Kelly-Moore Paints; Dura-Poxy, Semigloss Acrylic Enamel, 1685-111.
h. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Speedhide, Int. Semi-Gloss Latex, 6-500.
i. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Con-Lux, Satin-Plex, CL1001 or Industrial & Marine, Sher-Cryl HPA Semi-Gloss, B66W351.

3. Environmental Characteristics:

a. VOC Content:

1) Minimum E Range of E1
2) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.

b. Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR **5**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

a. Concrete: 12 percent.
b. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
c. Wood: 15 percent.
d. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

2. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
3. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
4. Coating application indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be coated. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and coating.

1. After completing coating operations, reinstall items that were removed; use workers skilled in the trades involved.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce coating systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 400 to 1500 psi at 6 to 12 inches
2. Abrasive blast clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."

E. CMU Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale.

1. Clean using methods recommended in writing by coating manufacturer.
2. Blast clean according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning
3. Galvanized-metal substrates should not be chromate passivated (commercially known as "bonderized"). If galvanized metal is chromate passivated, consult manufacturers for appropriate surface preparation and primers.

G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.

H. Aluminum Substrates: Remove surface oxidation.

I. Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view and dust off.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and back sides of wood.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
3. Coat back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when coatings are being applied:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with specified requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with specified requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Vertical Surfaces:

1. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G 6, gloss, 5, semigloss or 3, eggshell.

2. Epoxy Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
   c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

3. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
   c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

B. Concrete Substrates, Horizontal Surfaces:

1. Epoxy Slip-Resistant Deck Coating System:

   a. Topcoat: Epoxy deck coating, MPI #82.

C. CMU Substrates:

1. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G **5,** semigloss

2. Epoxy Coating System:

   a. Block Filler: Epoxy block filler, MPI #116.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
   c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

3. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System:

   a. Block Filler: Epoxy block filler, MPI #116.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
   c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

4. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over High-Build Epoxy Coating System:

   a. Block Filler: Epoxy block filler, MPI #116.
   b. Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
   c. Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.

D. Steel Substrates:

1. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Inorganic zinc primer, MPI #19, Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer, MPI #79, Rust-inhibitive primer, (water based), MPI #107 or Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101 primer.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.

c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G 5, semigloss

2. High-Build Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
b. Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

3. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive primer, (water based), MPI #107.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

4. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer, MPI #26 or Waterborne galvanized-metal primer, MPI #134.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G 5, semigloss

5. Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
b. Intermediate Coat: [**Not required**] [**Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77**].
c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

E. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:

1. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum, MPI #95.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G 5, semigloss

2. Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer, MPI #80.
b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

F. Wood Substrates:

1. Pigmented Polyurethane Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
b. Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
c. Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.

2. Polyurethane, Clear, Two-Component Coating System:

a. Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based), MPI #13.

b. Intermediate Coat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
c. First Topcoat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
d. Second Topcoat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.

3.7 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Vertical Surfaces:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
b. Intermediate Coat**:** High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2, eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3, satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 or semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5.

2. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G **5,** semigloss

3. Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
b. Intermediate Coat**:** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77**.**
c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

4. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

B. Concrete Substrates, Horizontal Surfaces.

1. Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

2. Water-Based Epoxy Floor Paint Coating System.

a. Prime Coat: Water-based epoxy floor paint, MPI #93.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy floor paint, MPI #93.
c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy floor paint, MPI #93.

3. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

b. Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
c. Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.

4. Polyurethane, Clear, Two-Component Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
b. Intermediate Coat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
c. Topcoat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.

C. CMU Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System:

2. Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4 or Epoxy block filler, MPI #116].
b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

3. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

D. Steel Substrates:

1. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

a. Prime Coat**:** Rust-inhibitive primer (water based), MPI #107 or Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G **5,** semigloss

2. High-Build Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Epoxy zinc primer, MPI#20.
b. Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77 or High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.

3. Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

4. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive primer (water based), MPI #107.
b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

E. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer, MPI #134.
   b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5.

2. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer, MPI #134.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G[**5,** semigloss

3. Epoxy Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
   c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

F. Wood Substrates: System below corresponds to MPI INT 6.3P and MPI INT 6.4N, which require intermediate coat for Premium Grade systems and do not include Custom Grade systems.

1. Polyurethane, Clear, Moisture-Cured Coating System:

   a. Stain Coat: Interior wood stain, semitransparent (solvent based), MPI #90.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31.
   c. First Topcoat Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31.
   d. Second Topcoat: Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31.

2. Polyurethane, Clear, Two-Component Coating System:

   a. Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based), MPI #13.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
   c. Topcoat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.

G. Gypsum Board Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
   b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3, satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4, semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5.

2. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:

   a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G **5,** semigloss

3. Epoxy Coating System:

    a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    c. Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.

4. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System:

    a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
    c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

END OF SECTION 099600

SECTION 09970

HIGH-PERFORMANCE LOW-VOC CONCRETE SEALER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes surface preparation and application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:

1. Interior Substrates:

a. Concrete, horizontal surfaces.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 3 “Concrete”.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

B. Samples for Verification: For each type of coating system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

C. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:

1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.
3. VOC content.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials**,** from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Coatings: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applications experience: 5 years of concrete finishing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

B. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

C. Do not apply exterior coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. H & C Concrete Products
2. ICI Paints.
3. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
4. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
5. Zinsser.

2.2 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and are listed in "MPI Approved Products List."

B. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a coating system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in coating system and on substrate indicated.
3. Provide products of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.

C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction and, for interior coatings applied at project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

1. Sealers: 200 g/L.
2. Floor Coatings: 100 g/L.

D. Low-Emitting Materials: Interior coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Colors: Clear

1. Finish: Gloss

2.3 OIL-BASED CLEAR GLOSS COATING:

A. Clear, Gloss (Gloss Level 7):

1. H & C Concrete Products
   Low Voc Concrete Sealer: Clear- Gloss

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Coating Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If coating materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

a. Concrete: 12 percent.

B. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 500 to 700 psi to 27 580 kPa).
2. Abrasive blast clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply high-performance concrete sealer according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.

B. Drying Times

1. Touch – 30 minutes
2. Recoat – 4 hours
3. Light Traffic – Overnight
4. Heavy Traffic – 72 hours (3 days)

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test coatings for dry film thickness.

1. Contractor shall touch up and restore coated surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied coating does not comply with coating manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with coating manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Horizontal Surfaces.

1. Clear - Gloss:

a. Prime Coat: Cleaner Degreaser.
b. Intermediate Coat: Concrete Sealer.
c. Topcoat: Concrete Sealer.

END OF SECTION 09970

SECTION 10101

VISUAL DISPLAY SURFACES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Markerboards.
2. Assemblies for direct application to wall surface.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Assemblies" for gypsum board wall finishing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Visual Display Wall Covering: Erasable Dry Marker Protection Wall Covering.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include elevations and attachments to other work.

1. Show location of panel joints.

C. Samples for Initial Verification: For each type of visual display surface indicated and as follows:

1. Actual sections of low gloss dry erase projection wall covering fabric.

D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for surface-burning characteristics of vinyl and polyester fabrics.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer.

F. Maintenance Data: For visual display surfaces to include in maintenance manuals.

G. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative of low gloss dry erase projection wall covering fabric manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of visual display surface through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fabrics with the surface-burning characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver factory-built visual display boards, including factory-applied trim where indicated, completely assembled in one piece without joints, where possible. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured panel size, provide two or more pieces of equal length as acceptable to Architect. When overall dimensions require delivery in separate units, prefit components at the factory, disassemble for delivery, and make final joints at the site.

B. Store visual display units vertically with packing materials between each unit.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating visual display surfaces without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
2. Allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay the Work.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Low Gloss Dry Erase Projection Wall Covering Fabric: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fabrics that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
b. Surfaces become slick or shiny.
c. Surfaces exhibit crazing, cracking, or flaking.

2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Erasable Dry Marker Projection Wall Covering Fabric:

1. Gloss Finish: Low gloss as indicated; dry-erase markers wipe clean with dry cloth or standard eraser.
2. Material: Non-woven wallpaper with “Teflon” non-glare film that adheres to walls with a wall covering adhesive.

2.3 VISUAL DISPLAY WALL COVERING FABRIC

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Best-Rite Manufacturing.
2. Marsh Industries, Inc.
3. Walltalkers; a division of RJF International Corporation”: “Opti-Rite 5.”

B. Visual Display Fabric: Intended for use with dry-erase markers and as a projection surface and consisting of low-gloss, plastic film bonded to fabric backing; not less than 0.020-mil (0.0005-mm) total thickness.

1. Color: White.

C. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard wall-covering adhesive for adhering visual display fabric to wall surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance.

1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.

B. Examine walls and partitions for proper backing for visual display surfaces.

C. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth where sliding visual display units will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove dirt, scaling paint, projections, and depressions that will affect smooth, finished surfaces of visual display boards.

B. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, and substances that will impair bond between visual display boards and surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Install visual display surfaces in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF VISUAL DISPLAY WALL COVERING

A. Low Gloss Dry Erase Projection Wall Covering Fabric: Attach “Fabric” to wall surface with thin layer of adhesive over entire wall surface. Butt join adjacent panels and cover joint with matching joint strip installed with double-stick tape.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean visual display surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one cleaning label to visual display surface in each room.

B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

C. Cover and protect visual display surfaces after installation and cleaning.

END OF SECTION 10101

SECTION 10431

SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Plaques.
2. Panel signs.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary Project identification signs and for temporary information and directional signs.
2. Division 16 Section "Interior Lighting" for illuminated Exit signs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.

1. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
2. Provide message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including position of tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors available for the following:

1. Aluminum.
2. Acrylic sheet.
3. Polycarbonate sheet.

D. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for the full range of color, texture, and sign material indicated, of sizes indicated:

1. Plaque Casting: 6 inches (150 mm) square including border.
2. Dimensional Characters: Typical full-size Samples of dimensional character (letter, number, and graphic element).
3. Aluminum: For each form, finish, and color, on 6-inch- (150-mm-) long sections of extrusions and squares of sheet at least 4 by 4 inches (100 by 100 mm).
4. Acrylic Sheet: 8 by 8 inches (200 by 200 mm) for each color required.
5. Polycarbonate Sheet: 8 by 8 inches (200 by 200 mm) for each color required.
6. Panel Signs: Not less than 12 inches (305 mm) square.

E. Sign Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

F. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.

G. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

H. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer, with 3 years experience.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

C. Source Limitations for Signs: Obtain each sign type indicated from one source from a single manufacturer.

D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines, ICC/ANSI A117.1, and TAS.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit installation of signs in exterior locations to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

B. Field Measurements: Verify recess openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate placement of anchorage devices with templates for installing signs.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Deterioration of metal and polymer finishes beyond normal weathering.
b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image colors and sign lamination.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, of alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated.

B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.

C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 6063-T5.

D. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), Type UVA (UV absorbing).

E. Polycarbonate Sheet: Of thickness indicated, manufactured by extrusion process, coated on both surfaces with abrasion-resistant coating:

1. Impact Resistance: 16 ft-lbf/in. (854 J/m) per ASTM D 256, Method A.
2. Tensile Strength: 9000 lbf/sq. in. (62 MPa) per ASTM D 638.
3. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity: 340,000 lbf/sq. in. (2345 MPa) per ASTM D 790.
4. Heat Deflection: 265 deg F (129 deg C) at 264 lbf/sq. in. (1.82 MPa) per ASTM D 648.
5. Abrasion Resistance: 1.5 percent maximum haze increase for 100 revolutions of a Taber abraser with a load of 500 g per ASTM D 1044.

2.2 DEDICATION PLAQUES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Advance Corporation; Braille-Tac Division.
2. A. R. K. Ramos.
3. Gemini Incorporated.
4. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division.

5. Metal Arts; Div. of L&H Mfg. Co.
6. Mills Manufacturing Company.
7. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
8. Southwell Company (The).

B. Cast Plaques: Provide castings free of pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects, as follows:

1. Plaque Material: Aluminum.
2. Background Texture: Manufacturer's standard pebble or leatherette texture.
3. Border Style: Projected bevel.
4. Mounting: Concealed studs, noncorroding for substrates encountered.

2.3 PANEL SIGNS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. APCO Graphics, Inc.
2. ASI-Modulex, Inc.
3. Best Sign Systems Inc.
4. Fossil Industries, Inc.
5. Gemini Incorporated.
6. InPro Corporation
7. Nelson-Harkins Industries.

B. Interior Panel Signs: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces, with tactile, Braille, and changeable messages constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) measured diagonally from corner to corner, complying with the following requirements:

1. Sign shall include tactile and Braille room number, and room names. On private offices use: name of person in the office.
2. Restrooms shall include tactile and Braille name and tactile symbols, meeting ADA and 2012 TAS requirements.
3. Laminated, Etched Photopolymer: Raised graphics with Braille 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) above surface with contrasting colors in finishes and color combinations as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and laminated to acrylic back.
4. Edge Condition: Square cut or Beveled.
5. Corner Condition: Square.
6. Mounting: Unframed.

    a. Wall mounted with two-face tape.
    b. Manufacturer's standard anchors for substrates encountered.

7. Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone color matching system.
8. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
9. Tactile Characters: Characters and Grade 2 Braille raised 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) above surface with contrasting colors.

C. Exterior Panel Signs: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) measured diagonally from corner to corner, complying with the following requirements:

1. Aluminum Sheet: 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) thick.
2. Edge Condition: Square cut.
3. Corner Condition: Square
4. Mounting: Pole mounted.
5. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Tactile and Braille Sign: Manufacturer's standard process for producing text and symbols complying with ADA and 2012 TAS Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square-cut edges free from burrs and cut marks; Braille dots with domed or rounded shape.

1. Raised-Copy Thickness: Not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).

E. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy and background, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and are UV and water resistant for three years for application intended.

1. Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone color matching system.
2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.

1. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS standards for recommended practices in shop welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distortion or discoloration of exposed side. Clean exposed welded surfaces of welding flux and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
2. Mill joints to tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water penetration.
3. Preassemble signs in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation, in location not exposed to view after final assembly.
4. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.

2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel complying with paint manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.

1. Organic Coating: Thermosetting, modified-acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm), medium gloss.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Verify that items, including anchor inserts, are sized and located to accommodate signs.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches (75 mm) of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.

B. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.

1. Two-Face Tape: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces. Do not use this method for vinyl-covered or rough surfaces.

2. Signs Mounted on Glass: Provide matching opaque plate on opposite side of glass to conceal mounting materials.

C. Cast-Metal Plaques: Mount plaques using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for type of wall surface indicated.

1. Concealed Mounting: Mount plaques by inserting threaded studs into tapped lugs on back of plaque. Set in predrilled holes filled with quick-setting cement.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 10431

SECTION 10520

FIRE-PROTECTION SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Portable fire extinguishers.
2. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:

a. Portable fire extinguishers.

B. Owner-Furnished Material: Fire extinguishers.

C. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestopping sealants at fire-rated cabinets.
2. Division 10 Section "Signs" for directional signage to out-of-sight fire extinguishers and cabinets.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire-protection cabinets.

1. Fire Extinguishers: Include rating and classification.
2. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style.
3. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For fire-protection cabinets with factory-applied color finishes.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed factory-applied color finish required for fire-protection cabinets, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Size: 6 by 6 inches (150 by 150 mm) square.

D. Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers and fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers and fire-protection cabinets through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."

C. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FMG.

D. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements of ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

B. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire hoses, hose valves, and hose racks indicated are accommodated.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of portable fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.

2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

B. Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, 3 mm thick.

2.3 PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Amerex Corporation.
2. Ansul Incorporated.
3. Badger Fire Protection.
4. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
5. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
6. General Fire Extinguisher Corporation.
7. JL Industries, Inc.
8. Kidde Fyrnetics.
9. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
10. Modern Metal Products; Div. of Technico.
11. Moon American.
12. Potter Roemer; Div. of Smith Industries, Inc.
13. Watrous; Div. of American Specialties, Inc.

B. General: Provide fire extinguishers of type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.

1. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
2. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B.

C. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10-lb (4.5-kg) nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

2.4 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
2. General Accessory Mfg. Co.
3. JL Industries, Inc.
4. Kidde Fyrnetics.
5. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
6. Modern Metal Products; Div. of Technico.
7. Moon American.
8. Potter Roemer; Div. of Smith Industries, Inc.
9. Watrous; Div. of American Specialties, Inc.

B. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher typical, and extinguisher and hose valve where required.

C. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated, typical and fire rated where required by code and design.

D. Cabinet Material: Enameled-steel sheet.

1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.

E. Recessed Cabinet: Cabinet box recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated.

1. Exposed Flat Trim: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend) of 1/4 to 5/16 inch (6 to 8 mm).

F. Semirecessed Cabinet: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of shallow depth to suit style of trim indicated; with one-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch (32- to 38-mm) backbend depth.

G. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.

H. Door Material: Steel sheet.

I. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.

J. Door Glazing: Clear float glass.

K. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

1. Provide recessed door pull and friction latch.
2. Provide concealed hinge permitting door to open 180 degrees.

L. Accessories:

1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.

2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

   a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"

      1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
      2) Application Process: Silk-screened.
      3) Lettering Color: Red or White; contrasting with background color.
      4) Orientation: Vertical.

3. Alarm: Manufacturer's standard alarm that actuates when fire-protection cabinet door is opened and that is powered by batteries.

M. Finishes:

1. Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel paint for the following:

   a. Exterior of cabinet, door, and trim, except for those surfaces indicated to receive another finish.
   b. Interior of cabinet and door.

2.5 MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Amerex Corporation.
2. Ansul Incorporated.
3. Badger Fire Protection.
4. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
5. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
6. General Fire Extinguisher Corporation.
7. JL Industries, Inc.
8. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
9. Potter Roemer; Div. of Smith Industries, Inc.

B. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.

1. Color: Red.

C. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

   a. Orientation: Vertical.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub), with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.

1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
2. Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.0428-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) thick, fire-barrier material.

a. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.

1. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.

C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.7 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.

D. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.8 STEEL FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, grease, mill scale, rust, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond using manufacturer's standard methods.

B. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for hose valves and cabinets to verify actual locations of piping connections before cabinet installation.

B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed.

C. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.

1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged units.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire-protection specialties in locations and at mounting heights indicated but confirm height is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Protection Cabinets: 54 inches (1372 mm) above finished floor to top of cabinet.
2. Mounting Brackets: 54 inches (1372 mm) above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.

B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten fire-protection cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is not adequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
2. Provide inside latch.
3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

C. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

D. Identification: Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF CABINETS

A. Install cabinets per OSHA requirements for class “A” fire rating

1. One cabinet per 3000 square feet of floor area and no more than 75 linear feet of travel apart from cabinet.

B. Install one cabinet in break room (s).

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection specialties are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet manufacturer.

E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 10520

SECTION 10730

WALKWAY COVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Modular aluminum walkway covers at NEWPP only.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for shelters.

B. Shop Drawings: For covers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Anchor-Bolt Plans: Submit anchor-bolt plans and templates. Include location, diameter, and projection of anchor bolts required to attach shelters to concrete bases. Indicate post reactions at each location.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Evaluation Reports: For anchors, from ICC-ES.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For shelters to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Cast-in Anchorage: Coordinate installation of anchorages for shelters. Furnish sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors that are to be embedded in concrete bases. Include setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace shelters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Shelters shall withstand the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7:

1. Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 MODULAR ALUMINUM WALKWAY COVERS

A. Fabricate shelters as an integrated set of modular components ready for assembly on Project site.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Awning Works, Inc.
Clearwater, Florida
Website: awningworksinc.com

b. Or Approved Equal

B. Cover Style: As indicated on Drawings.

1. Size: 10’-0” High x Width as indicated on the drawings.

C. Structural Framework: Fabricated from manufacturer's standard: 4 inch x 4 inch x 1/8 inch posts and aluminum tubing, and channel, angle. Connect framework with exposed mechanical fasteners.

D. Post Bases: Externally adjustable, flanged, aluminum sleeves; minimum 3-inch (76-mm) vertical adjustment. Include shims for leveling.

E. Anchorage: Posts shall be “buried” into concrete, RE: Division 3, footings as recommended by the walkway covering manufacturer.

F. Fasteners: # 10 x ¾” or greater 2024-T4, 18-8 series 300 non-magnetic stainless steel and shall comply with 5.1.1C specification for aluminum structures - Section 1 , The Aluminum Association, Inc and applicable federal, state, and local codes.

1. # 10 x ¾” TEK screws with Neoprene Washers.

G. Roof: Flat with full perimeter gutter.

1. Extruded decking caps and pans: Fabricated from WWC-17, 6063-T6 aluminum with protective plastic sheet finish.
2. Cover Fascia: Fabricated from 0.063-inch- (1.60-mm-) thick aluminum sheet, of manufacturer's standard design.

a. Height: 6 inches (152 mm).

H. Welding: All welding shall be done by an AWS certified welder and shall conform to Aisc Steel Construction Manual, 13th edition, as inspected and verified by: others. Minimum welds shall be :1/4 inch – “ Fillet” Type.

I. Materials:

1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:

a. Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
b. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).

J. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, including concrete bases; accurate placement, pattern, and orientation of anchor bolts; critical dimensions; and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install covers according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Set covers plumb and aligned with full bearing on concrete bases.

C. Fasten covers securely to concrete base with anchorage indicated.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After completing installation, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 10730

SECTION 11315

PACKAGED LIFT STATIONS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Packaged lift stations with FRP wet wells, submersible pumps, motors, piping, valves, control equipment, and accessories complete and operational as shown and specified. The package lift station shall be a completely shop-assembled unit, requiring only minor field adjustments and reassembly.

B. Coordination:

1. Review installation procedures under other Sections and coordinate with the Work related to this Section.

2. Coordinate pumps, piping, valves, pipe supports and appurtenances with mechanical work as specified in Division 15, Mechanical.

3. Coordinate pumps and motors with instrumentation and controls work as specified in Division 13, Special Construction.

4. Coordinate pumps and motors with electrical work as specified in Division 16, Electrical.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Reference Standards: Comply as a minimum with applicable provisions and recommendations of the following:

1. American Bearing Manufacturers Association, (ABMA)

2. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

3. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

4. Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association (AFBMA)

5. Hydraulic Institute (HI).

6. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
7. National Electric Code (NEC)

8. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Furnish and install the package lift stations capable of handling raw surface water in accordance with these Specifications and as shown on the Drawings.

B. All components shall be specifically constructed for the specified service conditions and shall be integrated into the overall equipment assembly by the lift station manufacturer.

C. The pump supplier shall review and approve or prepare all Shop Drawings and other submittals for all components furnished under this Section.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit a list of not less than 5 installations where similar packaged lift stations of the type and approximate size specified has been in successful operation for at least 5 years.

C. Submit locations of the nearest permanent service headquarters of the pump and motor manufacturer for the size of pump and motor submitted.

D. Submit descriptive literature, including a cross-sectional view of each packaged lift station, pump, and motor which indicates materials of construction, weights, principal dimensions and other important details.

E. Submit certified performance data and pump curves showing head capacity, flow rate, brake horsepower, motor horsepower, NPSH requirements, and speed.

F. Setting drawings, templates, and directions for the installation of anchor bolts and other anchorages.

G. Drawings of control panels, furnished in accordance with the requirements of Section 13410, Instrumentation Control Systems and Field Devices.

H. Manufacturer's Certifications:

1. Submit manufacturer's certification that he has carefully examined the Contract Documents in detail, including the arrangement and conditions of proposed electrical, mechanical and structural systems affecting the performance of the pumping equipment units, and the detailed requirements of manufacturing and subsequent installation of the pumping equipment units.

2. Submit manufacturer's certification that there are no omissions, ambiguities or conflicts in the Contract Documents or in the pumping station piping layout that affects the pumping unit, as shown on the Drawings, which have not already been clarified in writing.

3. Submit manufacturer's certification that the running amperes of the motor will not exceed the nameplate rating of the motor under all expected operating conditions.

4. Submit manufacturer’s certification that spare parts, seals, bearings, o-rings and power cable shall be available locally for models to be supplied.

I. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit operation and maintenance data under provisions of Section 01782 - Operations and Maintenance Data.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All materials used shall be new, of high grade, and with properties best suited to the work required.

B. Coordination Responsibility

1. In order to ensure equipment compatibility, one vendor shall be responsible for providing all lift station equipment including wet well, access hatches, pump and motor, access frame and guides.

2. The Contractor shall name a packaged lift station supplier, who will have responsibility for the function of the complete system in accordance with the intent of these Specifications. The named supplier shall be experienced in similar work.

3. Contractor shall retain overall responsibility for equipment coordination, installation, testing and operation.

D. Substitution. The engineering design is based on a certain manufacturer's equipment. If the Contractor's choice of equipment is approved but requires modifications to plant, equipment or piping for installation, the Contractor is responsible for submitting revised engineering design and drawings to make the proposed equipment compatible with the project, at no additional cost to the City.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver equipment to site, store and protect all equipment under provisions of Section 01610 - Basic Product Requirement.

B. Store all equipment off the ground in enclosed shelter.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Provide warranty under provisions of Section 01770 - Closeout Procedures.

B. Provide manufacturer warrant that meets the requirements of the Contract's General Conditions.

1.08 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment for materials furnished and installed or work performed under this Section. Include cost in Contract price bid for work of which this is a component.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 GENERAL OPERATING REQUIREMENTS

A. The packaged lift station shall be specifically designed, constructed, and installed for the service intended and shall comply with the following minimum service conditions described below and in the Schedule of Service Conditions.

B.

C. The duplex pump lift station shall be a completely factory-assembled unit designed for installation below grade and able to withstand flood level conditions.

D. Schedule of Service Conditions are as follows:

Design Conditions	
Location:	NEWPP
Equipment Tag:	RSP-01
Number of Pumps:	2
Type:	Duplex Submersible
Pump Operation:	Duty - Standby
Liquid Pumped:	Raw Surface Water
Solids, (percent):	1-2
Max Suction Head, (ft.):	Flooded
Min. Sphere Diameter Passing, (in.):	0.5
Suction Size, (in.):	2.5
Discharge Size, (in.):	2
Design Capacity, (gpm):	112
Design Head, (ft.):	63
Drive:	Direct
Motor, (Max. Hp):	10

2.02 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Through shop drawing submittals, the following named manufacturers will be considered, provided the submitted equipment meets the specified requirements and system operating conditions:

1. ITT Flygt
2. KSB
3. Approved Equal.

B. Listing as an acceptable manufacturer will not relieve the manufacturer from conforming to the Contract Specifications.

2.03 LIFT STATION CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

A. The duplex pump lift station and associated equipment shall be a completely factory-assembled unit designed for installation below grade and contain the minimum following components:

1. Discharge Elbow: Gray cast iron, ASTM A48, Class 30, or fabricated steel, with base plate designed to mount directly to wet well floor and to anchor and align guide rails, and ANSI B16.1, Class 125 flange on discharge and a machined mating surface for receiving the self-aligning sliding bracket; epoxy-coated.

2. Guide Rails and Guide Brackets: Type 304 stainless steel; rails of Schedule 40 pipe and designed to mount directly to discharge elbow at the floor and to the upper guide bracket at the top, with intermediate guide brackets provided for rail lengths over 15 feet. The upper guiderail bracket shall be made from ASTM A283D structural steel and align and support the two guiderails at the top of the wet well. It shall bolt directly to the hatch frame or upper guiderail bracket and incorporate beveled stainless steel inserts for secure rail installation.

3. Self-Aligning Sliding Bracket: Mounted on pump discharge; replaceable; ductile iron with a machined mating flange which matches the discharge elbow, and replaceable

neoprene seal; epoxy-coated. Sealing of the discharge connection to be accomplished by a simple linear downward motion of the pump, culminating with the entire weight of the pumping unit supported entirely by the discharge elbow.

4. Lifting Cable: The lifting cable shall be 300 series stainless steel with a diameter of at least 3/16" and a nominal breaking strength of at least 2500 pounds consisting of stainless steel braided cable of sufficient length to extend from the pump in the lowest position in the wet well to the top of the wet well. Provide a device at the top of the wet well to attach the cable when not in use. Size cable according to pump weight. Coordinate upper cable end terminating device with requirements for connecting to hoisting equipment to be used. The working load of the lifting system shall be 50% greater than the pump unit weight.

5. Hoisting Bail: Stainless steel; designed for proper balance of pumps and detachment from discharge connection using a single lift cable.

6. Ventilation: Each wet well shall be ventilated as shown on the drawings.

7. Inlet Hub: A nominal pipe diameter thermoplastic pipe grommet shall be field installed to seal the inlet pipe penetration. The pipe grommet shall provide a mechanical seal and shall not require any secondary sealing materials.

8. Float Bracket: The float bracket shall be fabricated from 300 series stainless steel with compression style cord grips to maintain float level position.

9. Aluminum cover plate: An Aluminum cover plate shall be supplied to cover the wet well with hinged access covers, hold open arms, and safety grating. The cover shall be construction of 0.25 inch thick mill finish aluminum diamond plate with 300 series stainless steel hardware. The access hatch shall have a recessed handle and locking pin. The hatch shall be held open in the vertical position by means of a hold open arm. The cover and access hatch shall be flood tight and mounted to the wet well with stainless steel fasteners.

10. Anchor bolts and inserts shall be furnished under this Section and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

11. All bolts, nuts, and cap screws shall have hexagon heads, all hardware shall be stainless steel.

B. Wet Well Construction

1. The lift station wet well shall be constructed of fiberglass reinforced plastic; provide dimensions as shown on the Drawings and constructed as follows:

   a. The resins used shall be a commercial grade unsaturated polyester resin.

   b. The reinforcing material shall be commercial grade "E type glass in the form of mat, chopped roving, roving fabric and continuous roving, having a coupling agent that will provide a suitable bond between the glass reinforcement and the resin. Fillers of any type shall not be utilized. Additives, such as thixotropic agents, catalysts, promoters, etc., may be added as required by the specific manufacturing process to be used to meet the requirements of this specification. The resulting reinforced plastic material must meet the requirement of this specification.

c. The exterior surface shall be a chop-hoop filament wound structural layer. The chopped glass and continuous strand filament wound glass shall be reinforced with one or more layers of unidirectional glass applied at ninety degrees to the filament wound glass. The glass content of the exterior layer shall be 50 to 80 percent by weight. The exterior shall be relatively smooth with no exposed fibers or sharp projections.

d. The interior liner shall be reinforced by 30% (+ or – 5%) glass by weight of chopped strand glass fiber having fiber lengths averaging 1 ½. The interior surface shall be resin rich with no exposed fibers. The surface shall be free of crazing, delamination, blisters larger than 0.5 in. in diameter, and wrinkles of 0.125 in. or greater in depth.

e. The basin shall have a pipe stiffness per ASTM standard No. D3753-81, Table 1.

f. Flexural Strength and Modulus: The flexural strength and modulus of the basin wall in the hoop and axial directions shall be a minimum of 1,000,000 psi. The minimum barcol hardness shall not be less than 90% of the resin manufacturer's minimum value for the cured resin.

g. Thickness: The basin wall thickness shall be adequate to maintain structural integrity when installed, see Geotechnical Report for soil conditions.

h. 3/8" - 16 stainless steel threaded inserts shall be installed in the top flange of basin / wet well to accommodate attachment of cover. The inserts shall be on a 6 bolt pattern.

C. Submersible Pump Construction:

1. Submersible pump shall be a centrifugal submersible type, capable of handling raw surface water without clogging. Pump shall automatically connect to the discharge elbow permanently installed in the wet well when pump is lowered into place, without the need for nuts or bolts, and without the need of personnel to enter the wet well. Pump shall be guided into place by two guide bars extending from the discharge connection to the top of the wet well. Sealing of the pumping unit to the discharge connection shall be accomplished by a machined metal to metal watertight contact. Sealing of the discharge interface with a diaphragm, O-ring or profile gasket will not be acceptable. No portion of the pump shall bear directly on the sump floor. Each pump shall be fitted with stainless-steel lifting chain.

2. The impeller shall be of ASTM A-48, Class 35B grey iron, dynamically balanced, semi-open, multi-vane, back swept, screw-shaped, non-clog design. The impeller leading edges shall be mechanically self-cleaned automatically upon each rotation as they pass across a spiral groove located on the volute suction. The leading edges of the impeller shall be hardened to Rc 45 and shall be capable of handling solids, fibrous materials, heavy sludge and other matter normally found in wastewater. The impeller shall be locked to the shaft, held by an impeller bolt and shall be coated with alkyd resin primer. No impeller clearance adjustment or wear rings required.

3. Casing: ASTM A48, Class 35B grey iron; removable from motor for full inspection of impeller; discharge designed for receiving self-aligning sliding bracket included as part of pump guide assembly.

4. Stator Housing, Seal Housing, and Bearing Brackets: ASTM A36 structural grade steel or ASTM A48, Class 35B grey iron.

5. Bearings: The pump shaft shall rotate on two bearings. Motor bearings shall be permanently grease lubricated. The upper bearing shall be a single deep groove ball bearing. The lower bearing shall be a two row angular contact bearing to compensate for axial thrust and radial forces. Single row lower bearings are not acceptable. The minimum L10 bearing life shall be 50,000 hours at any usable portion of the pump curve.

6. Shaft: Machined, minimum AISI Type 329 stainless steel. Shaft sleeves are not acceptable. Pump shaft to be an extension of the motor shaft. Couplings are not acceptable.

7. The cable entry seal design shall preclude specific torque requirements to insure a watertight and submersible seal. The cable entry shall consist of a single cylindrical elastomer grommet, flanked by washers, all having a close tolerance fit against the cable outside diameter and the entry inside diameter and compressed by the body containing a strain relief function, separate from the function of sealing the cable. The assembly shall provide ease of changing the cable when necessary using the same entry seal. The cable entry junction chamber and motor shall be separated by a stator lead sealing gland or terminal board, which shall isolate the interior from foreign material gaining access through the pump top. Epoxies, silicones, or other secondary sealing systems shall not be considered acceptable.

8. All bolts, nuts, and cap screws shall have hexagon heads.

9. Stainless steel nameplates giving the manufacturer's model and serial number, rated capacity, head, speed and all other pertinent data shall be attached to the pump.

10. Mechanical Seals: Each pump shall be provided with a tandem mechanical shaft seal system consisting of two totally independent seal assemblies. The seals shall operate in a lubricant reservoir that hydro-dynamically lubricates the lapped seal faces at a constant rate. The lower, primary seal unit, located between the pump and the lubricant chamber, shall contain one stationary and one positively driven rotating, corrosion and abrasion resistant tungsten-carbide ring. The upper, secondary seal unit, located between the lubricant chamber and the motor housing, shall contain one stationary and one positively driven rotating, corrosion and abrasion resistant tungsten-carbide seal ring. Each seal interface shall be held in contact by its own spring system. The seals shall require neither maintenance nor adjustment nor depend on direction of rotation for sealing. The position of both mechanical seals shall depend on the shaft. Mounting of the lower mechanical seal on the impeller hub will not be acceptable. The following seal types shall not be considered acceptable or equal to the dual independent seal specified: shaft seals without positively driven rotating members, or conventional double mechanical seals containing either a common single or double spring acting between the upper and lower seal faces.

D. Motors:

1. NEC Division 1 Hazardous Location, Class I, Group C and D, Class II, Group F and G, T3C, 230/460 V, 60 Hz., 3-phase, solid shaft, ball bearing type.

2. Motors shall be in accordance with all current applicable standards of NEMA, IEEE, AFBMA, NEC, and ANSI.

3. Motors shall be normal starting torque, normal slip, squirrel cage induction type.

4. Motors shall be capable of carrying full load current continuously without injurious temperature rise in an ambient temperature of 40°C.

5. Motors shall be provided with a service factor of 1.15.

6. Motors shall be of sufficient size so that there will be no overload on the motor above rated nameplate horsepower under any condition of operation from shut-off to zero head, unless otherwise specifically permitted in this Section.

7. Motor thrust bearings shall be adequate to carry continuous thrust loads under all conditions of pump operation from zero head to shut-off.

8. Locked rotor currents shall be as specified in NEMA standards.

9. Lubrication may be grease or oil type.

10. Motor Sensors

    a. Each pump motor shall be equipped with a minimum of three thermal sensors embedded in the stator windings and wired to the control panel for supplemental motor protection.

    b. Leakage sensor in lower part of stator housing shall be wired to leads in the junction chamber.

11. Motors shall have built-in thermal overload protection.

12. Motor Tests and Data.

    a. For each motor from one to ten horsepower in size, furnish an inspection report for the motor or for a previously manufactured electrically duplicate motor which was tested. Provide the following minimum data:

        (1) Running light current.

        (2) Locked rotor current.

        (3) Winding resistance measurement.

        (4) High potential test.

        (5) Bearing inspection.

E. Control Panel

1. Furnish a common control panel for all pumps.

2. Panel construction shall be NEMA 4X and shall conform to the applicable requirements of Section 16160, Cabinets and Enclosures.

3. Factory test control panel prior to shipment.

4. Furnish a 120 volt, 3 phase, 60 Hz power feeder to the control panel. Include a main disconnect, transformer(s), and circuit breaker load center for all 120 volt panel power requirements.

5. Panel shall contain the following for each unit:

   a. "HAND/OFF/AUTOMATIC" selector switch for pump operation.

   b. One red pilot light for pump "ON" status.

   c. One green pilot light for pump "OFF" status.

   d. Control relays, if required, to implement the control logic described below.

   e. A main 30A, two-pole disconnect switch with terminals for incoming 120 VAC, 60 Hz power.

6. Pump Operation

   a. In the "HAND" position, the pump will run continuously. In the "AUTOMATIC" position, the pump will be started from a remote control station.

   b. The seal water solenoid shall be energized to open whenever the pump is running. Solenoid is operated on 120 VAC, single phase power.

7. Pressure Gages

   a. Provide pressure indicating gages on the discharge piping of each pump. Gages shall have a 2-inch diameter aluminum alloy case, and shall be furnished with diaphragm seals (with flush connection) and gage cocks. Factory-mount a cartridge snubber between the gage and the diaphragm seal. Range of the discharge gages shall be 0 to 50 psi.

2.04 TOOLS AND SPARE PARTS

A. Manufacturer shall furnish a list of additional recommended spare parts for an operating period of one year. The list shall describe each part, the quantity recommended, and the unit price of the part.

2.05 BOLTS, STUDS AND NUTS

A. All bolts, studs and nuts shall have American National form right-hand machine cut threads which shall be in conformity with the current ANSI B1.1, "Screw Threads", Coarse Thread Series, unless otherwise specified.

B. Bolt heads and nuts shall be semi-finished and shall be in conformity with ANSI B18.2, "Wrench-Head Bolts and Nuts and Wrench Openings", Heavy Series, unless otherwise specified. All nuts shall be hexagonal in shape.

C. Anchor bolts, flange bolts, studs and nuts shall be Type 316 stainless steel in conformity with ASTM A276.

2.06 SHOP PAINTING

A. Paint equipment in accordance to Section 09901 – Protective Coatings.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Installation of the pumping equipment shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and reviewed shop drawings.

B. Manufacturer's representative shall check and approve the installation prior to operation. Manufacturer's representative shall field test and calibrate the equipment to assure that the system operates to the OWNER'S satisfaction.

C. Field Tests:

1. All equipment will be given running tests by CONTRACTOR at the job Site following installation of the equipment and controls. Should the tests indicate any malfunction, CONTRACTOR shall make any necessary repairs and adjustments. Such tests and adjustments shall be repeated until, in the opinion of the OWNER, the installation is complete and the equipment is functioning properly and accurately, and is ready for permanent operation.

D. Start-up Data: Contractor shall complete and submit the start-up records and maintenance data sheets.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 11420

PERISTALTIC SAMPLING PUMPS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. Scope:
1. CONTRACTOR shall provide all labor, materials, equipment, and incidentals required to furnish, install, test and place in satisfactory operation, positive displacement peristaltic sampling pumps as shown and specified herein. All pumps in this section shall be supplied by a single manufacturer. This Section includes:
a. Sampling pump complete with pumps, piping and appurtenances.

B. Coordination:
1. Review installation procedures under this and other Sections and coordinate installation of items that must be installed with or before peristaltic sampling pumps and appurtenances Work.

C. Related Sections:
1. Division 13, Special Construction.
2. Division 15, Mechanical.
3. Division 16, Electrical.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment for materials furnished and installed or work performed under this Section. Include cost in Contract price bid for work of which this is a component.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Standards referenced in this Section are:
1. American Bearing Manufacturers Association, (ABMA).
2. American Gear Manufacturers' Association (AGMA).
3. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
4. API 675, Positive Displacement Pumps Controlled Volume.
5. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
6. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).
7. National Electrical Code (NEC).
8. National Sanitation Foundation (NSF).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:
1. Manufacturer: Shall have minimum of five years experience producing substantially similar equipment to that required and shall be able to show evidence of at least five installations in satisfactory operation for at least five years.

B. Component Supply and Compatibility:

1. Obtain all materials and equipment included in this Section regardless of component manufacturer, from a single pump manufacturer.
2. Peristaltic tube sampling pump manufacturer shall review and approve or prepare all Shop Drawings and other submittals for all components furnished under this Section.
3. Materials and equipment shall be fully compatible with specified service conditions, and shall be integrated into overall assembly by peristaltic tube sampling pumps and appurtenances equipment Supplier.

C. Quality Assurance - This specification is the basis for design for peristaltic pumps. All pumps, whether named as an acceptable supplier or submitted as an equal must, at a minimum, meet the following critical design requirements.
   1. Pumps shall be 100% integral in design, with the pump head, motor, controls, and pump case being a single unit. All controls, motor, and gear reduction shall be housed in a single pump case. Pumps that require separate base plates, external gear reduction and/or gear motors, and separate controls and VFDs – even if mounted on a base plate and pre-wired to the motor – are not acceptable.
   2. Pumps shall be dry self-priming, capable of running dry without damaging affects to the pump or tube.
   3. Drive and pump heads shall be 24 hour continuous duty rated and have a minimum five-year manufacturer's warranty from date of shipment.
   4. Supplier must provide Certificate of Compliance with Section 1.3.C Quality Assurance with its submittal.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Action Submittals: Submit the following:
   1. Shop Drawings:
      a. Performance curves specific to each pump model with 5 different speeds.
      b. Complete layout and installation drawings for each feed pump showing mounting details, dimensions, fitting locations, and materials of construction.
      c. Wiring diagrams.
      d. The manufacturer shall certify in writing that the design application has been reviewed, and that the equipment will thoroughly and efficiently meet the performance requirements of this application.
      e. Manufacturer's literature, catalog cuts, and specifications for accessories, showing dimensions and materials of construction.
   2. Product Data:
      a. Complete product data for each size and type of pump, motor, and accessories, including manufacturer’s brochure, specifications, weight, performance data, motor speed, turndown, and capacity.
   3. Testing Plans:
      a. Source quality control testing plan.
      b. Field quality control testing plan.

B. Informational Submittals: Submit the following:
   1. Manufacturer’s Instructions:
      a. Setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchor bolts and other anchorage devices.
      b. Instructions for handling, storing, and installing equipment.
   2. Source Quality Control Submittals: Results of source quality control tests and inspections.
   3. Field Quality Control Submittals: Results of field quality control tests.

4. Manufacturer's Reports: Submit a written report of results of each visit to Site by Supplier's service technician, including purpose and time of visit, tasks performed, and results obtained.
5. Qualifications Statements: When requested by ENGINEER, submit qualifications data from manufacturer.

C. Closeout Submittals:
1. Operation and Maintenance Data: Furnish Operation and Maintenance Manuals in conformance with the requirements of Section 01782, Operation and Maintenance Data.
2. Spare Parts, Extra Stock Materials, and Tools as required in Part 2 of this Specification.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Packing, Shipping, Handling, and Unloading:
1. Deliver materials and equipment to Site to ensure uninterrupted progress of the Work. Deliver anchorage materials to be embedded in concrete in ample time to prevent delaying the Work.
2. Inspect all boxes, crates, and packages upon delivery to the Site and notify ENGINEER in writing of loss or damage to products. Promptly remedy loss and damage to new condition in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Storage and Protection:
1. Keep materials and equipment off ground using pallets, platforms, or other supports. Protect steel, packaged materials, and electronics from corrosion and deterioration.

C. Acceptance at Site:
1. All boxes, crates and packages shall be inspected by CONTRACTOR upon delivery to the Site. CONTRACTOR shall notify ENGINEER, in writing, if any loss or damage exists to equipment or components. Replace loss and repair damage to new condition in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.7 MAINTENANCE

A. Spare Parts, Extra Stock Materials, and Tools:
1. Spare parts shall be furnished with the equipment by the manufacturer. The following spare parts shall be furnished for each unit furnished under this Section:
   a. Two replacement hose/tube elements. Element shall be prepared for long term storage; adequate lubrication for two element changes shall be provided.
   b. Complete set of any special tools required for maintenance.
   c. One spare rotor.
   d. One spare head cover, with one set of cover screws.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive OWNER of other rights or remedies OWNER may otherwise have under the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by CONTRACTOR under the Contract Documents. Obligations of CONTRACTOR under the Contracts Documents shall not be limited in any way by provisions of the specified special warranty.

B. Special Warranty: Provide manufacturer's written warranty, running to the benefit of OWNER, agreeing to correct, or at option of OWNER, remove or replace materials and equipment specified in this Section found to be defective during a period of 1 year after date of Substantial Completion of the Work under this Section.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products and Manufacturers: Provide one of the following:
   1. Bredel
   2. Larox Flowsys
   3. Blue-White Industries

B. Listing as an acceptable manufacturer does not relieve the manufacturer from conforming to the contract documents.

2.2 EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE

A. General:
   4. Provide peristaltic tube sampling pumps, complete with pump head, flexible extruded tube, motor, and controls. Pumps shall be 100% integral in design, with the pump head, motor, controls, gear reduction and pump case being manufactured by the pump manufacturer themselves.
   5. Provide equipment compatible with specified service conditions, and able to meet the flow and head requirements.
   6. Pump shall be able to put out the minimum flow rate specified without the motor speed being turned down below the minimum motor speed specified below.

B. Service Conditions and Performance Criteria:
   1. Number of Pumps: 4
   2. Pump Identification Nos.: SP-01, SP-02, SP-03, SP-04
   3. Fluid Pumped: Water
   4. Temperature Range of Pumped Fluid: 50°F – 100°F.
   5. Flow Rate: 4 gallons per minute.
   6. Design Pressure: 30 psi.

2.3 PERISTALTIC PUMP DETAILS OF CONSTRUCTION

A. Pump Head:
   1. Pump head shall consist of fixed track with hinged or removable guard door or front cover, adjustable tube retainer mechanism, and roller rotor assembly.
   2. Tubing shall be replaceable with no disassembly of pump head and without using tools.
   3. Pump shall be capable of delivering continuous discharge pressure specified in Section 2.2 of this document.
   4. Rotor shall be capable of rotating in either direction without damaging pump or tubing.
   5. Pump shall be capable of self-priming with suction lift capability of 30 feet of water.
   6. Pump shall be able to run dry without damaging pump or tubing.
   7. Pump shall not require use of check valves or dynamic seals in contact with pumped fluid. At all times, one roller shall be fully engaged with the hose providing complete compression and preventing back flow or siphoning.

B. Tubing:
   1. During normal operation, tubing's inner wall shall be the only surface in contact with pumped fluid.

2. Tubing shall be extruded from material compatible with pumped fluid.
3. Tubing shall be compatible with the pumped fluid and pressures up to 30 psi.

C. Drive:
1. Drive: Drive motor shall be reversible, brushless DC gear motor, rated for continuous duty in a NEMA 4X enclosure.
2. Pumphead, motor, controls, and case shall all be housed in a single totally integrated pump manufactured by a single manufacturer. Pumpheads, gearing, and motors manufactured by third party manufacturers are not acceptable.
3. Rear of pump enclosure shall be provided with cable interface connections with cable gland fittings.

D. Electrical Service:
1. Pump shall be suitable for 120V, single-phase, 60 Hz electrical service.
2. Power cord and plug shall be NEMA 5/15 (USA) standard three-prong plug.
3. Provide at least 6 feet of power cord from pump to receptacle.

2.4 APPURTENANCES

A. Stand:
1. Provide chemical resistant stand for mounting pumps.
2. The pump stand shall support pump, valves and piping assemblies.

B. Nameplate:
1. Provide pump with chemical resistant nameplate attached with Type 316 stainless steel screws. Nameplate shall have engraved letters displaying the following minimum information:
   a. Maximum flow rate.
   b. Pressure and temperature rating.
   c. Date of manufacture.
   d. Manufacturer’s name.
   e. Serial number.

2.5 FINISHING

A. Shop Painting:
1. Surface preparation and painting shall be manufacturer’s standard coat.
2. Apply in the shop primer coating to metallic parts (excluding surfaces exempted) of pumps, motors, drives, frames, supports, and appurtenances.
3. Do not paint corrosion-resistant parts such as plastic, fiberglass, and stainless steel.
4. Gears, bearing surfaces, machined surfaces, and other surfaces that are to remain unpainted shall receive heavy application of grease or other rust-resistant coating. Maintain coating during storage and until equipment is placed into operation.
5. Chemical resistant powder coating is acceptable.

2.6 CONTROLS

A. On the face of each casing pump provide:
1. Local-Off-Remote switch.
2. Run light.
3. Start/stop switch.
4. Fail light.
5. Speed adjustment dial.
6. Speed indicator.

B. Provide for the following signals to/from the plant control system via the integral pump interface field wiring terminal strip inside the pump enclosure.
   1. 4-20 mA speed control signal (24VDC remote source).
   2. Pump Start/Stop (24VDC wetting voltage from pump for remote dry contact closure to start / open to stop).
   3. Pump Fail signal (24VDC dry contact closure).
   4. Pump Run signal (24VDC dry contact closure).
   5. Pump Leak (24VDC dry contact closure).
   6. Pump In Auto (24VDC dry contact closure).

C. Provide for the following signals to the plant control system:
   1. High discharge pressure.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A. Examine conditions under which products are to be installed and notify ENGINEER in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of the Work. Do not proceed with the Work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install materials and equipment in conformance with Laws and Regulations, applicable standards, manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and the Contract Documents.

B. Anchorages and Base Plates:
   1. Provide anchorages for pump in concrete walls, as applicable, in accordance with equipment manufacturer's recommendations and the Contract Documents.
   2. Fasten pump to supports constructed as shown on drawings.

C. General:
   1. Perform drilling and fitting required for installation. Set equipment accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, plumb, true, and free of rack.
   2. Making plate cutouts or openings at the Site is not allowed.
   3. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form tight hairline joints.
   4. Provide utility connections in accordance with the Contract Documents.
   5. Prior to energizing electric motor drive equipment, rotate drive motor by an external source to demonstrate free operation of all mechanical parts. Do not energize equipment until safety devices are installed, connected, and functional.

D. Conform to Section 01755, Starting Systems.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Site Tests:
   1. Following installation, CONTRACTOR and qualified field service representative of Supplier shall conduct operating tests of all equipment, functions, and controls at the Site in presence of ENGINEER.
   2. Field Operating Test:
      a. Manufacturer to provide calibration curve based on field capacity/speed test.
      b. Field test equipment and its controls in local mode, followed by demonstrating proper operation and controls in automatic mode. Demonstrate that each part individually and all parts together function properly in manner intended. Total duration of testing shall be 48 hours, continuous and uninterrupted, in automatic mode. All testing equipment and labor shall be by CONTRACTOR.
      c. Should tests result in malfunction, make necessary repairs, revisions, and adjustments and restart test from the beginning. Repeat tests and repairs, revisions, and adjustments until, in opinion of ENGINEER, installation is complete and equipment is functioning properly and accurately, and is ready for permanent operation.

B. Manufacturer's Services: Provide a qualified, factory-trained serviceman to perform the following:
   1. Instruct CONTRACTOR in installing equipment.
   2. Supervise installation of materials and equipment.
   3. Inspect, calibrate, adjust, and test equipment after installation and ensure proper operation.
   4. Manufacturer's representative shall make a minimum of 2 visits, with minimum of 4 hours at the Site for each visit. First visit shall be for checking, adjusting, and calibrating completed installation and starting up the system; third visit shall be to instruct operations and maintenance personnel. Representative shall revisit the Site as often as necessary until installation is acceptable.
   5. Training: Furnish services of qualified factory trained specialists from manufacturer to instruct OWNER's operations and maintenance personnel in recommended operation and maintenance of the products. Training requirements, duration of instruction, and other qualifications shall be per Section 01555, Starting Systems.
   6. All costs, including expenses for travel, lodging, meals and incidentals, and cost of travel time, for visits to the Site shall be included in the Contract Price.

+ + END OF SECTION + +

SECTION 11440

PRE-ENGINEERED WALK - IN COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pre-Engineered Walk-In Cooler at 4200 Leeland Annex.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 16 “Electrical Installations”

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:

1. Manufacturer's model number.
2. Accessories and components that will be included for Project.
3. Clearance requirements for access and maintenance.
4. Utility service connections for water, drainage, power, and fuel; include roughing-in dimensions.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabricated equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, roughing-in dimensions, fabrication details, utility service requirements, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Samples of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For foodservice equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01770 "Closeout Procedures" and Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. NSF Standards: Provide equipment that bears NSF Certification Mark or UL Classification Mark certifying compliance with applicable NSF standards.

B. BISSC Standards: Provide bakery equipment that complies with BISSC/Z50.2.

1. Provide BISSC-certified equipment, with certification verified by a third-party agency.

C. UL Certification: Provide electric and fuel-burning equipment and components that are evaluated by UL for fire, electric shock, and casualty hazards according to applicable safety standards, and that are UL certified for compliance and labeled for intended use.

D. Regulatory Requirements: Install equipment to comply with the following:

1. ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."
2. NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code."
3. NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."
4. NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations."
5. UL: Flame Spread and Smoke Developed, UL-R8160
6. DOORS: UL – E46140 for Walk-In-Door Assemblies
7. NSF: NSF Section 7
8. FM: FM 4880 Requirements
9. Installed as Required for: City of Houston, Building Code Requirements.

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with foodservice equipment by field measurements before fabrication. Indicate measurements on Coordination Drawings.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate foodservice equipment layout and installation with other work, including layout and installation of lighting fixtures, HVAC equipment, and fire-suppression system components.

B. Coordinate locations and requirements of utility service connections.

C. Coordinate sizes, locations, and requirements of the following:

1. Overhead equipment supports.
2. Equipment bases.
3. Insulated floors.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Refrigeration Compressor Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace compressors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failure includes, but is not limited to, inability to maintain set temperature.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRE-ENGINEERED WALK-IN COOLER EQUIPMENT

A. Pre-Engineered Walk-in-Cooler Units: As indicated on the drawings.

1. Equipment Mark Number: 101

2. Quantity: Two (2)

3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. KOLPACK, a division of MANITOWAC
2915 Tennessee Avenue North
Parsons, TN 38363 www.kolpak.com

4. Description: Cooler.

a. Wall and Ceiling Panels: Interlocking foamed-in-place urethane insulation sandwiched between interior and exterior “skin” metal sheets that are die-formed and gauged for uniformity in size. Edges of panels shall be foamed-in-place tongue and grooved with locking devices/facilities foamed-in-place at time of fabrications. Insulation shall have 97% closed cell structure. Panel thickness : 4 inches.

b. Floorless: Provide 1 ½ high “temp-guard” screeds. Screeds shall be coved on both sides and sit “flat” on the floor. Screeds shall be “anchored” to the existing concrete floor. Screeds shall be “anchored” to the existing concrete floor at 2’-0” on centers.

c. Metal Finishes: Exterior and Interior walls shall be:

1) 20 gauge Type 304 stainless steel with #3 finish.

2) Ceilings: to match wall panels.

d. Doors: Standard 34” wide x 78” high swing type flush type, finished to match wall panels and shall be UL listed.

1) Features:

a. Door shall be equipped with magnetic gasket, Posi-Seal door closure and latch. Hardware has provisions for locking and a safety release which prevents entrapment of personnel within the box.

b. Door shall be self-closing with two strap-type, cam-lift hinges.

c. Door jamb shall be made of Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic. An isolated, low wattage header strip covered by magnetically attracting stainless steel shall be fitted onto this jamb (freezer only). This strip shall provide perfect sealing of magnetic gasket and prevent frost and condensation build up.

d. Each entrance door section shall be provided with an incandescent type vapor-proof light, pilot light switch and conduit between switch box and outlex box. Concealed wiring shall be standard on each entrance door section.

e. A threshold with non-skid stainless steel striping shall be provided with each door section.

f. A 2” dial thermometer shall be included with each door section to indicate inside temperature.

e. Refrigeration Equipment

1) Condensing units shall be fully hermetic or semi-hermitic type. Refrigerant shall be R-22 or R-404A unless otherwise specified. Condenser shall be air-cooled or optional water-cooled. Condensing units shall be factory assembled and UL or ETL listed. Evaporators shall be forced air type. Air discharge shall be parallel to the walk-in ceiling. Fan motors, guards, multi-fin and tube-type coil, shall be housed in heavy gauge aluminum. Unit shall have drain pan with suitable drain pipe fitting. Freezer evaporators shall have and automatic electric defrost system including heater, time clock, fan delay control, and heated drain pan. Defrost shall be time initiated and temperature terminated with built-in-fail-safe control. All evaporators shall be UL listed. All systems include pump down cycle to provide additional protection against unwanted refrigerant flow.

2) Location of Equipment: “CS” Self-Contained Top Mounted.

f. Air Vent

1) A-Tri Action air vent shall be provided to equalize pressure between the interior and exterior, caused by sudden temperature changes due to door openings and evaporator defrosting. The vent shall be heated to prevent moisture accumulation.

g. Temperature Monitoring System: Electronic monitoring and remote audible alarm system that warns when temperatures register 10 deg F (6 deg C) above or below set temperature.

h. Closure Panels and Trim: Include closure panels and trim.

i. Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.

5. Finishes:

a. Exposed Exterior Finish: Stainless Steel with # 3 Finish.

b. Unexposed Exterior Finsh: Stainless Steel with # 3 Finish.

c. Interior Finish: Stainless Steel with #3 Finish.

d. Closure Panels and Trim: Matched to exposed finish of panels.

6. Size:

a. Nominal size: 10’W x 12’D x 7’-6h

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install walk-in coolers level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Connect equipment to utilities.
2. Provide cutouts in equipment, neatly formed, where required to run service lines through equipment to make final connections.

B. Complete equipment assembly where field assembly is required.

1. Provide closed butt and contact joints that do not require a filler.

C. Install walk-in coolers with access and maintenance clearances that comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Install walk-in coolers on bases in a full bed of sealant.

E. Install closure-trim strips and similar items requiring fasteners in a bed of sealant.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. After completing installation of walk-in coolers, repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean and adjust walk-in coolers as required to produce ready-for-use condition.

C. Protect walk-in-coolers from damage during remainder of the construction period.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain foodservice equipment.

END OF SECTION 11400

SECTION 11600

LABORATORY EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

The General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and the requirements of Division 1, apply to the Work in this Section.

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Equipment items as listed below by Equipment Mark Number:

LOCATION - NORTHEAST WPP ADMINISTRATION BUILDING

1. SPECTROPHOMETER
   Equipment Mark Number: 012

2. COAGULANT CHARGE ANALYZER
   Equipment Mark Number: 013

3. TURBIDIMETER
   Equipment Mark Number: 014

4. JAR TESTER
   Equipment Mark Number: 015

5. STIRRER PROBE AND PADDLE
   Equipment Mark Number: 016

6. MULTI-PARAMETER METER
   Equipment Mark Number: 017

7. VACUUM PUMP
   Equipment Mark Number: 018

8. MAGNETIC STIRRER
   Equipment Mark Number: 019

9. STIR PLATE AND STAND
   Equipment Mark Number: 020

10. MOISTURE ANALYZER
    Equipment Mark Number: 021

11. MOISTURE AND SOLIDS ANAYZER
    Equipment Mark Number: 022

LOCATION - 4200 LEELAND ANNEX

12. WATER SYSTEM
    Equipment Mark Number: 102

13. GAS CYLINDER RACK, 8 CYL, 12" Diameter
    Equipment Mark Number: 106

14. GAS CYLINDER RACK, 2 CYL, 18" Diameter
    Equipment Mark Number: 110

15. FUME HOOD, 72"
    Equipment Mark Number: 127

16. FUME HOOD, 48"
    Equipment Mark Number: 128

17. INCUBATOR
    Equipment Mark Number: 141

18. WASHER
    Equipment Mark Number: 145

19. COMPACT REFRIGERATOR
    Equipment Mark Number: 146

20. REFRIGERATOR/FREEZER
    Equipment Mark Number: 150

21. DI LAB WATER SYSTEM
    Equipment Mark Number: 192

22. BALANCE TABLE
    Equipment Mark Number: 194

B. Installation of equipment with labor, services, and incidentals necessary for complete and operational equipment installation.

C. Utilities to be roughed in at location recommended by manufacturer.

1.2 ALTERNATIVE BIDS

A. Refer to Division 1 – General Requirements for possible effect on Work of this Section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Equipment shall be produced by a manufacturer of established reputation with a minimum of five years of experience supplying specified equipment.

1.4 STANDARD AND REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Equipment indicated within this specification section shall comply with all applicable national, state and local codes and regulations, including seismic, fire, and racking codes and regulations. Additional, more specific compliance requirements may be listed under individual equipment headings.

B. All materials shall be made in the United States.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to the Equipment Schedules on the Drawings for submittal requirements listed in the "Submittals" column of the equipment list.

B. Product Data (PD):

1. Submit Product Data in accordance with Division 1 - General Requirements of these specifications.

a. All Product Data submittals shall identify proposed project specific items marked by arrow, circle, underline, reproducible highlight, or other markings clearly discernable by the reviewer, to show which specific items, parts and accessories are being submitted for the project product data review. Non-marked or generic product data submittals with no marks indicating specific items, parts and accessories will be a cause for rejection.

2. Restrict submitted material to pertinent data. For instance, do not include manufacturer's complete catalog when pertinent information is contained on a single page.

C. Operation and Maintenance Manual (OM):

1. Provide a complete parts list, operating instructions, and maintenance manual covering equipment at time of installation including, but not limited to:

a. Description of system and components.

b. Manufacturer's printed operating instructions.

c. Printed listing of periodic preventive maintenance items and recommended frequency required to validate warranties. Failure to provide maintenance information will indicate that preventive maintenance is not a condition for validation of warranties.

d. List of original manufacturer's parts, including suppliers' part numbers and cuts, recommended spare parts stockage quantity and local parts and service source.

e. Assemble and provide copies of manual in 8-1/2 by 11 inch format. Foldout diagrams and illustrations are acceptable. Manual to be reproducible by dry copy method. Provide copies per provisions of Division 1 - General Requirements.

D. Shop Drawings (SD): Submit shop drawings in accordance with Division 1 -General

Requirements of these specifications. Refer to the Equipment Schedule for the equipment mark numbers requiring shop drawings.

1. Submitted shop drawings shall be project specific and shall include a minimum 1/8 inch to 1 foot scaled (or larger standard architectural imperial scale), dimensioned, graphical representation of the size, orientation, and location for the submitted equipment. The drawings shall further include dimensions from structural elements or architectural grid lines, operational clearances, locations of any utility service connection points, mounting requirements, and structural supports required for the submitted equipment.

E. Required Documents for Permit and Local Jurisdictional Approval:

1. Where required by local jurisdiction and/or code officials, the contractor shall be responsible for producing and submitting all documentation required for obtaining any and all applicable approvals related to the specified equipment. This documentation may include, but may not be limited to, engineered signed and stamped plans, details, anchorage layouts for storage equipment, as well as racks to show compliance with locally adopted building, fire, and other codes. A copy of these required documents shall be included with the product submittal to the architect for their review.

1.6 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Follow requirements specified in Division 1 - General Requirements.

B. Additional costs resulting from substitution of products other than those specified, including drawing changes and construction, will be at the sole expense of the Contractor.

C. Substitution Approval: Manufacturers listed for each equipment item may bid without submittal for that item. Manufacturers not listed shall submit for approval in accordance with "Instructions to Bidders". Prior to procurement, submittals for each equipment item by Mark Number shall be provided in accordance with Division 1 - General Requirements.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Warrant work specified herein for one year from substantial completion against defects in materials, function and workmanship.

B. Warranty shall include materials and labor necessary to correct defects.

C. Defects shall include, but not be limited to loose, damaged and missing parts and abnormal deterioration of finish.

D. Submit warranties in accordance with Division 1 - General Requirements of these specifications.

E. All parts shall be readily available locally in the United States.

1.8 SPECIAL WARRANTY

A. Three years manufacturer's special extended warranty for materials and installation.

1.9 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver equipment in manufacturer's containers, appropriately packaged and/or crated for protection during shipment and storage in humid, dusty conditions. Equipment shall be stored per manufacturer's recommendation.

B. Indelibly label all containers, including those contained in others, on outside with item description(s) per title and Mark Number of this specification.

C. Provide equipment and materials specified complete in one shipment for each equipment item. Split or partial shipments are not permissible.

1.10 LABELING

A. Manufacturer shall securely attach in a prominent location on each major item of equipment a non-corrosive nameplate showing manufacturer's name, address, model number, serial number, and pertinent utility or operating data.

B. All electrical equipment and materials shall be new and shall be listed by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (U.L.), or other National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL), in categories for which standards have been set by that agency and labeled as such in the manufacturer's plant.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SPECTROPHOTOMETER
Equipment Mark Number: 012

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Operating Mode: Transmittance (%), absorbance and concentration (wavelength and time)
2. Wavelength Range: 190 - 1100 nm
3. Wavelength Accuracy: plus or minus 1 nm
4. Wavelength Reproducibility: < 0.1 nm nm
5. Wavelength Resolution: 0.1 nm
6. Wavelength Selection: Automatic, based on method selection
7. Spectral Bandwidth: 2 nm
8. Scanning Speed: 900 nm/min (in 1 nm steps)
9. Photometric Measuring Range: plus or minus 3 Abs
10. Photometric Accuracy: 5 mAbs at 0.0-0.5 Abs; <1% at 0.5-2.0 Abs at 546 nm
11. Data Logger: 5000 data points (result, date, time, sample-ID, user-ID)
12. Dimensions: 8.5" H x 19.7" W x 18.1" D
13. Weight: 24.25 lbs

B. Features

1. Source Lamp: Tungsten (visible range), deuterium (UV range)
2. Display: TFT 7 inch WVGA color touch
3. Preprogrammed Methods: > 250
4. User Programs: 200
5. Interfaces: USB type A (2), USB type B, Ethernet, RFID module
6. Enclosure Rating: IP20 with closed lid
7. Warranty: one year

C. Accessories

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: HACH, Model # DR 6000 UV VIS Benchtop Spectrophotometer with RFID Technology, 1-800-227-4224, orders@hach.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.2 COAGULANT CHARGE ANALZER
Equipment Mark Number: 013

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Adjustable height stand
2. Dimensions: 8.5" W x 17.8" H x 9.2" D; Unit fully extended: 8.5"x26"x9.2"
3. Sample Volume: 250 mL to 2000 mL
4. Weight: 18 lbs
5. Power requirements: 110 VAC 60 hz, 1A

B. Features

1. Low/High conductivity gain adjustment
2. Display: -10.00 to +10.00
3. Probe Type: Immersion, quick replacement cartridge
4. Piston Type: Quick replacement
5. Signal gain: Low/High gain switch
6. Materials Contacting Sample: Delrin, stainless steel
7. Self Diagnostics: Flashing LED, motor, optoswitch
8. Warranty – one year

C. Accessories

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: CHEMTRAC, Coagulant Charge Analyzer, Model # CCA3100, 1-800-442-8722, www.chemtrac.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.3 TURBIDIMETER
Equipment Mark Number: 014

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Accuracy: ± 2 % of reading plus 0.01 NTU from 0 to 1000 NTU; ±5% of reading from 1000 to 4000 NTU
2. Dimensions (H x W x D): 156 mm x 400 mm x 305 mm
3. Warranty: 2 years
4. Weight: 7.56 lbs.
5. Power Requirements: 115 to 230 VAC; 50 to 60 Hz; 60 VA maximum

B. Features

1. Air Purge: 0.1 scfm at 69 kPa , hose barb connection for 1/8 in tubing, maximum 138 kPa. Dry nitrogen or instrument-grade air.
2. Compliance Certifications: UL/CSA
3. Display Type: 8-digit LED display
4. Interface: RS232 serial (bi-directional)
5. Max. operating humidity: 90
6. Measurement Modes: NTU, EBC, Nephelo
7. Operating Temperature Range: 0 to 40 °C
8. Range: 0 to 0.999 EBC units EBC mode, ratio on: manual; 0 to 26800 Nephelos Nephelo mode, ratio on: auto, auto-decimal; 0 to 26800 Nephelos Nephelo mode, ratio on: manual
9. Regulatory: USEPA method 180.1
10. Repeatability: ± 1 % of reading or ± 0.01 NTU, whichever is greater
11. Resolution: 0.001 on lowest range
12. Response Time: 6.8 s with signal averaging off; 14 s with signal averaging on
13. Sample Cell Compatibility: 25 mm round; 12, 13, 16, and 19 mm round with optional adapter kit
14. Sample Volume: 30 mL with 25 mm sample cells
15. Serial input interface: RS232 serial interface (bidirectional
16. Source Lamp: Tungsten lamp
17. Storage Conditions: -40 °C to 60 °C
18. User Interface: Button
19. User Interface Languages: English

C. Accessories

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: HACH, Model # 2100N Laboratory Turbidimeter, EPA, 115 Vac, 1-800-227-4224, orders@hach.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.4 JAR TESTER
Equipment Mark Number: 015

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Four operator-programmable memory banks
2. Paddle speeds from 5 to 300 rpm in 1-rpm increments
3. Stirrers that run sequentially, independently or continuously
4. Six (6) stainless steel 1" x 3" paddles with adjustable depth to up to 9 inches
5. Six (6) standard, round, glass, 1-liter laboratory beakers

B. Features

1. Programmable Audio Signals
2. Powder-coated steel uniframe chassis
3. LED floc illuminator built into the base
4. Warranty – two year

C. Accessories

1. 120V AC adapter

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: PHIPPS & BIRD, Programmable Jar Tester, Model # CPB900, 1-800-955-7621, www.phippsbird.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.5 STIRRER PROBE AND PADDLE
Equipment Mark Number: 016

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Description: Stirrer probe (for benchtop meters)

a. Diameter: 0.6 inch round (stirring paddle)
b. Weight: 0.8 lb.
c. Dimensions (L x W x H): 8.3 in. x 0.8 in. x 0.8 in.

2. Description: Stirrer paddle
   a. Diameter: 0.6 inch round (stirring paddle)
   b. Weight: 0.8 lb.
   c. Dimensions (L x W x H): 0.5 in. x 0.6 in. x 0.6 in.

B. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: ORION, Star Series Automatic Stirrer Probe, Model # 096019 and Replacement Paddles, Model # 096021, 1-800-225-1480, www.thermoscientific.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.6 MULTI-PARAMETER METER
Equipment Mark Number: 017

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Benchtop Multi-parameter meter that combines a pH meter, an ion meter, and a conductivity meter.
2. Two measuring channels: Channel 1, pH and Conductivity with temperature °C; Channel 2, pH, ORP/Redox or I.S.E. + °C
3. Equipped with a connection for a second stirrer which allows for a second measuring stand.
4. Equipped with a data logger with storage of up to 330 measurements per channel
5. Includes RS 232 C connectibility for printer or PC as well as a connection for external PC keyboard or barcode reader.

B. Testing Specifications

Specifications

	Measurement Ranges	Resolution	Input Accuracy (± 1 digit)	Reproducibility (± 1 digit)
pH	-2 to 16	0.1/0.01/0.001	≤0.002	±0.001
mV	±2000	0.1/1	≤0.2	±0.1
Temp.	-20 to 150°C (-4 to 302°F)	0.1 °C (0.1°F)	≤0.2 °C (0.4°F)	±0.1°C (0.1°F)
ISE	10^{-6} M to 10^{-1} M	programmable	--	--
Conductivity	0.001* µS/cm to 1000* mS/cm * With 5070 cell: 0.2 µS/cm to 200 mS/cm	variable	≤0.5 %	±0.1 %
Resistivity	0 Ohm to 500 MOhm	--	≤0.5%	± 0.1 %
Salinity	5.85 mg/L to 311.1 g/l NaCl	--	--	--
NaCl	--	variable	≤0.5 %	±0.1 %
TDS	0 mg/L to 500 g/L	variable	≤0.5 %	±0.1 %

C. Accessories

1. pH Electrode, Model # LZW5014.97.0002:5014
2. Conductivity Cell, Model # LZW5070.97.002:5070
3. Thermal Printer: Model # LZW8201

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: HACH, sensION + MM374 Benchtop Multi-Parameter Meter with Accessories, Model # LPV4140T.97.002, 1-800-227-4224, orders@hach.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.7 VACUUM PUMP
Equipment Mark Number: 018

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Power rating: 1/8 Horsepower
2. Free Air flow capacity @ 0 psi: 1.9 cfm
3. Max Pressure: 60 psi
4. Max Vacuum: 25.50 in-Hg
5. < 70 dBA

6. Inlet and Outlet Size: 3/8" hose barb
7. Dimensions: 5-1/8" W x 10-15/16" H x 7-5/8" L
8. Weight: 14.4 lbs
9. Power requirements: 115 V, 60 Hz, Single Phase
10. Warranty: one year

B. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: GAST, Compressor/Vacuum Pump, Model # DOA-P704-AA, 1-269-926-6171, www.gastmfg.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.8 MAGNETIC STIRRER
Equipment Mark Number: 019

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Max stirring capacity: 2.5 liters
2. Speed range: 100 rpm to 1000 rpm
3. Dimensions: 7.1" x 7.1" x 2.8"
4. Power: 110/115 V
5. Cover Material: AISI 316 Stainless Steel
6. Weight: 3.1 lbs
7. Warranty: one year

B. Accessories

1. Stir Bars – ten (10) each, Model # HI 731320

C. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: HANNA INSTRUMENTS, Magnetic Stirrer, Model # HI 300N-1, 1-214-414-2214, http://hannainst.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.9 STIR PLATE AND STAND
Equipment Mark Number: 020

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Stirring Speed: Approximately 300 rpm at 60 Hz
2. Dimensions (H x W x D): 229 mm x 152 mm x 64 mm
3. Power Requirements (Hz): 60 Hz
4. Power Requirements (Voltage): 115 V
5. Weight: 5.73 lbs.

B. Accessories

1. Digital Titrator, Product # 1690001
2. Delivery Tubes for Digital Titrator, 90 degree bend, Project # 4157800
3. Stir Bar, Magnetic, Octagonal, Project # 2095355 – six (6) each

C. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: HACH, Stir Plate, TitraStir, Product # 19400-00, 1-800-227-4224, orders@hach.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.10 MOISTURE ANALZER
Equipment Mark Number: 021

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Applications: Percent Moisture Determination, Percent Solid Determination, Percent Moisture Regain Determination and Weighing
2. Six (6) shut off criteria (manual, timed, 3 pre-defined auto settings, or user-set auto)
3. Four (4) heating profiles (standard, ramp, step, fast),
4. Heating Range: 50° to 200° C (1° C increments)
5. Power requirements: 115 V, 60 Hz

B. Features

1. Backlit dot matrix display to include % moisture, % solids, % regain, time, temperature, weight, test ID, drying curve & statistics
2. RS232 with GLP/GMP data output
3. Warranty: one year

C. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: OHAUS CORPORATION, Moisture Analyzer, Model # MB45, 1-800-672-7722, http://us.ohaus.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.11 MOISTURE AND SOLIDS ANAYZER
Equipment Mark Number: 022

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Moisture | Solids Range: 0.005 to 100%
2. Moisture Resolution: 0.001% (Default) or programmable from 0.0 to 0.00000
3. Repeatability: 0.002% standard deviation depending on test program
4. Balance Resolution: 0.0001 g
5. Temperature Range: 25°C to 275°C controlled to ±1°C, nickel chromium heating element
6. Sample Size: 100 mg to 40 g (0.2 ± 0.1 g – 39.9 ± 0.1 g)
7. Ending Criteria: Prediction, Rate, Time, Time or Rate, Temp → Predict, Temp → Rate, Temp → Time or Rate; Rate can be set as low as 0.0010% per minute; Test Parameter Memory: Storage of up to 250 Programs (246 User, 4 Factory); 1000 Test Results with last 100 test graphs
8. Statistical Analysis: Mean, Standard Deviation, Relative Standard Deviation
9. Results Display: Moisture, Solids, Dry Weight, Purity
10. Linked Test Program: Programmable temperatures for free & bound moisture
11. Balance Calibration: Menu driven calibration and verification in the field Programmable calibration reminder
12. Heater Calibration: Menu driven
13. NIST traceable using Temperature Calibration Kit
14. Self Diagnostics: Built in hardware and software diagnostics
15. Access Code: Master Code, Calibration Code
16. Power Requirements: 100-120 VAC, 50/60 Hz @ 8 A, 0.2 A heat off
17. Dimensions: 9.5" H x 11.5" W x 19.5" D
18. Weight: 32 lbs
19. Warranty: Two years, factory parts and labor (one year international)

B. Features

1. Accuracy, Durability, Reliability, Consistency and Speed
2. Fan-Assisted Cool-Down Provides 25% Faster Throughput
3. Four Decimal Place Balance
4. Menu Driven User Programmable Interface Through Keypad | Color LCD Display
5. Nitrogen Purge Capabilities
6. Parameter Expert (Develop parameters to match reference method)
7. Pass/Fail Criteria
8. Programmable Temperature Ramp Control
9. Ethernet and Serial Ports, USB

C. Accessories

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: ARIZONA INSTRUMENTS, Moisture and Solids Analyzer, Model Computrac Max 4000XL, 1-800-528-7411, www.azic.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.12 WATER SYSTEM
Equipment Mark Number: 102

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Dimensions: 17.5" x 13.5" x 19.5"
2. Flow Rate: Up to 2 L/hr
3. Power requirements: 110 V, 60 Hz, 1 phase

B. Features

1. With TOC Monitor
2. Nanopure Analytical UV
3. Warranty: one year

C. Accessories

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: BARNSTEAD THERMO SCIENTIFIC, Deionizer Nanopure Diamond UV TOC Water System, Model # D11951, 1-800-442-8722, www.chemtrac.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.13 GAS CYLINDER RACK, 8 CYL, 12" DIAMETER
Equipment Mark Number: 106

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Outdoor bulk cylinder storage rack
2. Eight (8) cylinder capacity
3. Supports cylinder diameters up to 12"
4. Dimensions: 58" x 26" x 30"

B. Features

1. UFC, NFPA, CGA & OSHA compliant
2. 2" square steel tube continuously seam welded
3. Two levels of welded steel chains
4. Snaps for each cylinder
5. Pre-drilled 0.406" diameter floor mounting holes
6. Secure to existing concrete with Hilti Anchor Bolts
7. Sealed with exterior grade powder paint

C. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: USA SAFETY SOLUTIONS, INC., 4 Cylinders (4x1) – Barricade – Gas Cylinder Rack, USA Safety Model # BR4X2FS, 1-877-805-8650, www.usasafety.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.14 GAS CYLINDER RACK, 2 CYL, 18" DIAMETER
Equipment Mark Number: 110

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Outdoor bulk cylinder storage rack
2. Two (2) cylinder capacity
3. Supports cylinder diameters up to 18" – 22"
4. Dimensions: 38" x 36" x 40"

B. Features

1. UFC, NFPA, CGA & OSHA compliant
2. 2" square steel tube continuously seam welded
3. Two levels of welded steel chains
4. Snaps for each cylinder
5. Pre-drilled 0.406" diameter floor mounting holes
6. Secure to existing concrete with Hilti Anchor Bolts
7. Sealed with exterior grade powder paint

C. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

a. Basis of Design: USA SAFETY SOLUTIONS, INC., 2 Cylinders (2x1) – Barricade – Gas Cylinder Rack, USA Safety Model # BR2x1CRY022, 1-877-805-8650, www.usasafety.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.15 FUME HOOD, 72"
Equipment Mark Number: 127

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. General Purpose Bench Fume Hood with Vertical Rising Sash
2. Open By-Pass Hood
3. Overall Hood Length: 72"
4. Hood Depth: 36"
5. Sash Opening Length: 64"
6. Sash Opening Height: 28" above airfoil
7. Sash Opening: 12.9 square feet
8. Total CFM and Static Pressure: 80 FPM – CFM = 1040 & S.P = 0.25"; 100 FPM - CFM = 1290 & S.P = 0.40"; 120 FPM – CFM = 1550 & S.P = 0.60"
9. Complies with ASHRAE 110-1995, BS-7258 and DIN 12 924 standards

B. Features

1. 4" thick endwalls
2. Interior baffles
3. Frameless sash with full-length formed steel handle
4. Low profile PVC sash tracks and sash leveling and alignment feature
5. Friction-fit interior access panels
6. Heavy gauge cold rolled steel exterior panels with independent rigid structural frame with powder coated chemical resistant finish.
7. Interior: Epoxy Resin coated liner
8. Warranty – one year

C. Accessories

1. Worktop: Kewaunee Model # 019243-72RBK, black in color with sink located on left end.
2. Base Cabinets: 36" L, Steel, Kewaunee Model # G08C352236 - 0104 (two each)
3. Service Fittings
4. Sink: Kewaunee Model # 1006-00, 18"x8"x15"
5. Fan/Blower

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

a. Basis of Design: KEWAUNEE SUPREME AIR FUME HOOD, Model # H05K5472-00, 704-873-7202, www.kewaunee.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.16 FUME HOOD, 48"
Equipment Mark Number: 128

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. General Purpose Bench Fume Hood with Vertical Rising Sash
2. Open By-Pass Hood
3. Overall Hood Length: 48"
4. Hood Depth: 36"
5. Sash Opening Length: 40"
6. Sash Opening Height: 28" above airfoil
7. Sash Opening: 8.1 square feet
8. Total CFM and Static Pressure: 80 FPM – CFM = 650 & S.P = 0.15"; 100 FPM - CFM = 810 & S.P = 0.25"; 120 FPM – CFM = 980 & S.P = 0.35"
9. Complies with ASHRAE 110-1995, BS-7258 and DIN 12 924 standards

B. Features

1. 4" thick endwalls
2. Interior baffles
3. Frameless vertical rising sash with full-length formed steel handle
4. Low profile PVC sash tracks and sash leveling and alignment feature
5. Friction-fit interior access panels
6. Heavy gauge cold rolled steel exterior panels with independent rigid structural frame
7. Interior: Epoxy Resin coated liner
8. Warranty – one year

C. Accessories

1. Worktop: Kewaunee Model # 019243-48RBK, black in color with sink located on left end.
2. Base Cabinet: 48" L, Steel, Kewaunee Model # G08C352248-0104
3. Service Fittings
4. Sink: Kewaunee Model # 1006-00, 18"x8"x15"
5. Fan/Blower

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

a. Basis of Design: KEWAUNEE SUPREME AIR FUME HOOD, Model # H05K5448-00, 704-873-7202, www.kewaunee.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.17 INCUBATOR
Equipment Mark Number: 141

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Large laboratory Incubator
2. Exterior Dimensions: 41.5" x 34.8" x 87.5"
3. Interior Dimensions: 35" x 26" x 73.2"
4. Number of Shelves: Six (6)
5. Temperature Range: 8 degrees above ambient to 70 degrees C
6. Temperature Uniformity: plus or minus 8 degrees @ 37 degrees C
7. Volume: 38.6 cubic feet
8. Power requirements: 220 V, 60 Hz, 1650 W

B. Features

1. Microprocessor Temperature Control
2. Over-Temperature Safety Protection
3. Gentle Air Flow
4. Temperature Uniformity to 0.8°C
5. 4 Interior Electrical Outlets
6. Prewired Access Panel for Chart Recorder
7. Two Year Warranty

C. Accessories

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: VWR INTERNATIONAL, Incubator, Model # 35962-096, 1-800-932-5000, https://us.vwr.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.18 WASHER
Equipment Mark Number: 145

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Water Recirculation Rate: 112 gal./min., 230V, 60Hz
2. Dimensions: 32.25" x 27.5" x 34.25 to 36.25"
3. Shipping Weight: 260 lbs

B. Features

1. Freestanding washer
2. Door, sides, and interior are to be constructed of Type 304 stainless steel
3. Liquid detergent and rinse aid store in door and dispense automatically.
4. Adjustable cycle programs
5. Ten (10) factory-set cycle programs
6. Microprocessor control with liquid crystal display
7. Memory storage
8. RS-232 port
9. Viewing window with light
10. Temperatures up to 199°F may be programmed for wash and rinse cycles
11. Up to six purified water rinses may be programmed
12. Water rinses can use pressurized or non-pressurized water
13. Separate water pumps for washing and draining
14. Steam generator
15. Forced air drying system
16. HEPA filter to remove airborne particulates
17. Programmable drying from 100 to 158°F for up to 250 minutes.

C. Accessories

1. Base Stand, 17" High with Two (2) storage compartments, Labconco No. 4595500

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: LABCONCO, FlaskScrubber Vantage Glassware Washer, Model # 4540031, 1-800-821-5525, http://www.labconco.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.19 COMPACT REFRIGERATOR
Equipment Mark Number: 146

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. 5 cubic feet
2. Dimensions: 33-3/4" x 21-3/8" x 22-3/4"
3. Weight: 76 lbs
4. Temperature Range: -2 to 10 degrees C
5. Power requirements: 120 V, 60 Hz

B. Features

1. Can be placed under a bench or used freestanding
2. Adjustable mechanical thermostat control
3. Interior liner fabricated from seamless high-impact polystyrene
4. R134A refrigerant
5. Manual defrost

6. Three adjustable wire shelves and flat inner door liner
7. Freezer has two fixed shelves
8. Complies with UL Standards for safety and performance
9. UL and C-UL listed
10. Warranty: two (2) years

C. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: VWR INTERNATIONAL, VWR® General-Purpose Laboratory Refrigerator and Freezer, Model # 14236-524, 1-800-932-5000, https://us.vwr.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.20 REFRIGERATOR/FREEZER
Equipment Mark Number: 150

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Upright combination refrigerator/freezer
2. 10 cubic feet
3. Power requirements: 120 V, 60 Hz

B. Features

1. Manual defrost
2. Single door model with internal freezer compartment
3. Three adjustable wire shelves
4. Warranty: 13 months

C. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: LAB-LINE INSTRUMENTS, Refrigerator/Freezer Combo, Model # 3764A, 1-800-522-5463, http://www.labline.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.21 DI LAB WATER SYSTEM
Equipment Mark Number: 192

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Flow rate: up to 2-Liters per minute
2. Ion exchange capacity: up to 2,000 grains
3. Cabinet Dimensions: Width - 20 in, Depth - 12 in, Height - 20 in
4. Operating Weight: 45 lbs
5. Inlet Pressure: 30 psi (min), 100 psi (max)
6. System Power Source: Switching power supply - 12 VDC at 2.5 Amps
7. Power requirements: Two (2) 100-240 AC, 50/60Hz, 1.0A grounded receptacles within 5 feet of the right side of the system cabinet

B. Features

1. Biological Grade Ultra-Low TOC Type I DI System
2. Built-in combination ultraviolet (UV) Oxidizer/Sterilizer
3. Built-in Ultrafilter (UF) to remove pyrogen, endotoxin, RNase, & DNase
4. Continuous recirculation
5. Built-in activated carbon prefilter
6. Digital, temp-compensated resistivity monitor with red/green LED alarm set point
7. Teflon recirculating remote dispenser with 0.22-µm final filter capsule
8. Bench, shelf or wall-mounted
9. Two (2) year system warranty

C. Accessories

D. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: AQUA SOLUTIONS, Biological Grade Ultra-Low TOC Type I DI System, Model # 2121BL, 1-800-458-2021, http://www.AquaA.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.22 BALANCE TABLE
Equipment Mark Number: 194

A. Capacities and Dimensions

1. Marble
2. Dimensions: 35" x 24" x 31"
3. Weight: 650 lbs

B. Features

1. Three inch (3") thick marble slab construction
2. Marble slab legs are reinforced with an iron cross-beam coated for corrosion resistance.

3. All edges are rounded and precisely cut to ensure a smooth, level working surface.
4. Color: white with brown, green, and gray mark

C. Manufacturer's Reference:

1. Prime manufacturer: Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

   a. Basis of Design: GAWET MARBLE AND GRANITE, Marble Balance Table, Model # A4-1602, 1-802-773-8868, http://gawetmarble.com

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A. Coordinate location of rough-in work and utility stub-outs to assure match and/or non-interference with equipment to be installed.

B. Inspect delivered equipment for damage from shipping and exposure to weather. Compare delivered equipment with packing lists and specifications to assure receipt of all items.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Perform work under direct supervision of Foreman or Construction Superintendent with authority to coordinate installation of scheduled equipment with Architect.

B. Install equipment in accordance with plans, shop drawings, and manufacturer's instructions:

1. Positioning: Place equipment in accordance with any noted special positioning requirements generally level, plumb, and at right angles to adjacent work.

2. Fitting: Where field cutting or trimming is necessary, perform in a neat, accurate, professional manner without damaging equipment or adjacent work.

3. Anchorage: Attach equipment securely to floor, per manufacturer's instructions and as directed by Architect, to prevent damage resulting from inadequate fastening. Installation fasteners shall be installed to avoid scratching or damaging adjacent surfaces.

4. Upon completion of work, finish surfaces shall be free of tool marks, scratches, blemishes, and stains.

3.3 TESTING

A. After final installation is complete and prior to authorizing payment, specified equipment shall be checked for compliance with specifications in the presence of the Architect using acceptance procedures provided by the manufacturer.

3.4 CLEANUP

A. Touch-up damage to painted finishes.

B. Wipe and clean equipment of any oil, grease, and solvents, and make ready for use.

C. Clean area around equipment installation and remove packing or installation debris from job site.

D. Notify Architect for acceptance inspection.

END OF SECTION 11600

SECTION 12360

LABORATORY CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment, and incidentals required and design and deliver laboratory casework for the Project as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

B. The work includes:

1. Metal laboratory casework, with doors and drawer fronts.
2. Wood laboratory casework.
3. Plastic-laminate laboratory casework.
4. Utility-space framing at backs of base cabinets and between backs of base cabinets.
5. Filler/closure panels and utility chases as indicated.
6. Laboratory casework system that includes support and utility-space framing, filler, and closure panels, wall panels, under cabinet lighting, and modular countertops/frames.
7. Laboratory countertops.
8. Shelves.
9. Laboratory sinks and troughs.
10. Laboratory accessories.
11. Water, laboratory gas, and electrical service fittings.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Base Bid.

1.3 RELATED WORK

A. Wood blocking for anchoring laboratory casework is included in Section 06105 and 06423.

B. Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing for reinforcements in metal-framed partitions for anchoring laboratory casework is included in Section 05400.

C. Trowelled on epoxy base as included in epoxy flooring in Division 09.

D. Fume hoods, including base cabinets and countertops under fume hoods are included in Section 11610.

E. Installing service fittings specified in this Section, including connecting service utilities are included in Division 15 and 16.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit in accordance with Section 01300 the following:

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Shop Drawings: For laboratory casework. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Indicate locations of hardware and keying of locks.
2. Indicate locations and types of service fittings.
3. Indicate locations of blocking and reinforcements required for installing laboratory casework.
4. Include details of utility spaces showing supports for conduits and piping.
5. Include details of support framing system.
6. Include details of exposed conduits, if required, for service fittings.
7. Indicate locations of clearances from adjacent walls, doors, windows, other building components, and other laboratory equipment.
8. Include coordinated dimensions for laboratory equipment specified in other Sections.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-applied finishes and other materials requiring color selection.

E. Samples: For each type of cabinet finish and each type of countertop material indicated, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

F. Samples: Unless otherwise directed, approved full-size Samples may become part of the completed Work, if in an undisturbed condition at time of Substatial Completion. Notify Engineer of their exact locations. If not incorporated into the Work, retain acceptable full-size Samples at Project site and remove when directed by Engineer.

1. One full-size, finished base cabinet complete with hardware, doors, and drawers.
2. One full-size, finished wall cabinet complete with hardware, doors, and adjustable shelves.
3. One Sample each of hinged and sliding doors.
4. 6-inch-(150-mm-) square Samples for each type of countertop material.
5. One of each service fitting specified, complete with accessories and specified finish.
6. One of each type of sink and accessory item specified.
7. One of each type of hardware item specified.

G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For laboratory casework indicated to comply with seismic performance requirements, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

H. Qualification Data: For qualified manufacturer.

I. Product Test Reports for Casework: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance of laboratory casework with requirements of specified product standard and system structural performance specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

J. Product Test Reports for Countertop Surface Material: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance of laboratory countertop surface materials with requirements specified for chemical and physical resistance.

1.5 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM International

1. ASTM A 240/ A 240M – Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium- Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
2. ASTM A 1008/A 1008M – Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low- Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
3. ASTM C 1036 – Standard Specification for Flat Glass
4. ASTM C 1048 – Standard Specification for Heat- Treated Flat Glass – Kind HS, Kind FT Coated and Uncoated Glass
5. ASTM C 1172 – Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass
6. ASTM C 1186 – Standard Specification for Flat Fiber – Cement Sheets

B. American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute

1. ASCE/SEI 7 – Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

C. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association

1. BHMA A156.9 – Cabinet Hardware
2. BHMA A156.11 – Cabinet Locks

D. Forest Stewardship Council

1. FSC STD-01-001- FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship (available in PDF at www.fsc.org)

E. FM Approvals

F. Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association

1. HPVA HP-1-2000: Hardwood and Decorative Plywood

G. The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.

1. IEEE C62.41.2 –Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits
2. IEEE C62.45 – Recommended Practice on Surge Testing for Equipment Connected to Low- Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits

H. Laminating Materials Association

1. LMA EDG-1- Voluntary Product Standard and Typical Physical Properties of Edgebanding Materials
2. LMA SAT-1- Voluntary Product Standard and Typical Physical Properties of Saturated Paper Overlays

I. Metal Framing Manufacturers Association

1. MFMA-4- Metal Framing Standards Publication

J. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

1. NEMA LD 3 – High Pressure Decorative Laminates
2. NEMA WD 1 – General Requirements for Wiring Devices
3. NEMA WD 6 – Wiring Devices – Dimensional Requirements

K. NFPA

1. NFPA 30- Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code
2. NFPA 70- National Electrical Code

L. Scientific Equipment & Furniture Association

1. SEFA 2.3 – Installations
2. SEFA 7 – Laboratory and Hospital Fixtures
3. SEFA 8 – Casework Recommended Practice

M. Underwriters Laboratories Inc.

1. UL 20- Standard for Safety General – Use Snap Switches
2. UL 498- Attachment Plugs and Receptacles
3. UL 943- Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters

N. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Institute of Standards and Technology

1. DOC PS 1 – U.S. Product Standard for Construction and Industrial Plywood

O. Where reference is made to one of the above or other referenced standards, the revisions in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.6 DEFINITIONS

A. Exposed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces visible when doors and drawers are closed, including bottoms of cabinets more than 48 inches (120 mm) above floor, and visible surfaces in open cabinets or behind glass doors.

1. Ends of cabinets, including those installed directly against walls or other cabinets, are defined as “exposed.”
2. Ends of cabinets, indicated to be installed directly against and completely concealed by walls or other cabinets are defined as “concealed.”

B. Semiexposed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces behind opaque doors, such as cabinet interiors, shelves, and dividers; interiors and sides of drawers; and interior faces of doors. Tops of cabinets 78 inches (1980 mm) or more above floor are defined as “semiexposed.”

C. Concealed Surfaces of Casework: Include sleepers, web frames, dust panels, and other surfaces not usually visible after installation.

D. Hardwood Plywood: A panel product composed of layers or plies of veneer, or of veneers in combination with lumber core, joined with adhesive and faced both front and back with hardwood veneers.

1. Wood Species: White Maple (Clear) Veneers.

1.7 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. System Structural Performance: Laboratory casework and support framing system shall withstand the effects of the following gravity loads and stressed without permanent deformation, excessive deflection, or binding of drawers and doors:

1. Support Framing System: 600 lb/ft. (900 kg/m).
2. Suspended Base Cabinets (Internal Load): 160 lb/ft. (240 kg/m).
3. Work Surfaces (Including Tops of Suspended Base Cabinets): 160 lb/ft. (240 kg/m).
4. Wall Cabinets (Upper Cabinets): 160 lb/ft. (240 kg/m).
5. Shelves: 50 lb/sq.ft.

B. Delegated Design: Design laboratory casework, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using seismic performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that produces casework of types indicated for this Project that has been tested for compliance with SEFA 8 and is certified for chain of custody by an FSC – accredited certification body.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain laboratory casework from single source from single manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

1. Obtain countertops, sinks, accessories, and service fittings from casework manufacturer.

C. Product Designations: Drawings indicate sizes and configurations of laboratory casework by referencing designated manufacturer's catalog numbers. Other manufacturers' laboratory casework of similar sizes and similar door and drawer configurations and complying with the Specifications may be considered.

D. Casework Product Standard: Comply with SEFA 8, "Laboratory Furniture – Casework, Shelving and Tables – Recommended Practices."

E. Flammable Liquid Storage: Where cabinets are indicated for solvent or flammable liquid storage, provide units that are listed and labeled as complying with requirements in NFPA 30 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying requirements.

H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project Site.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finished surfaces during handling and installation with protective covering of polyethylene film or other suitable material.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install laboratory casework until building is enclosed, utility roughing-in and wet work are complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of framing and reinforcements for support of laboratory casework.

B. Coordinate installation of laboratory casework with installation of fume hoods and other laboratory casework.

1.12 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish complete touchup kit for each type and color of metal laboratory casework provided. Include fillers, primers, paints, and other materials necessary to perform permanent repairs to damaged laboratory casework finish.

B. Furnish complete touchup kit for each type and color of wood laboratory casework provided. Include scratch fillers, stains, finishes, and other materials necessary to perform permanent repairs to damaged laboratory casework finish.

C. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Cabinet Mounting Clips and Related Hardware: Quantity equal to 5 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 20 of each type.

2. Modular Countertop Units: Two extra units of each length and material installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CABINET MATERIALS

A. Metal: Cold-rolled, commercial steel (CS) sheet, complying with ASTM A 1008/ A 1008M; matte finish; suitable for exposed applications.

B. Nominal Metal Thickness:

1. Sides, Ends, Fixed Backs, Bottoms, Tops, Soffits, and Items Not Otherwise Indicated: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm). Except for flammable liquid storage cabinets, bottoms may be 0.036 inch (0.91 mm) if reinforced.

2. Back Panels, Doors, Drawer Fronts and Bodies, and Shelves: 0.036 inch (0.91mm) except 0.048 inch (1.21mm). for back panels and doors of flammable liquid storage cabinets and for unreinforced shelves more than 36 inches (900mm) long.

3. Intermediate Horizontal Rails, Table Aprons and Cross Rails, Center Posts, and Top Gussets: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm).

4. Drawer Runners, Sink Supports, and Hinge Reinforcements: 0.075 inch (1.90 mm).

5. Leveling and Corner Gussets: 0.105 inch (2.66 mm).

2.2 WOOD CABINET AND TABLE MATERIALS

A. General:

1. Certified Wood Materials: Provide cabinets with not less than 70 percent of wood products for all wood products obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, “FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship.”

2. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

3. Maximum Moisture Content for Lumber: 7 percent for hardwood and 12 percent for softwood.

4. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1, either veneer core, unless otherwise indicated, made without urea formaldehyde.

5. Edgebanding for Wood-Veneered Construction: Minimum 1/8-inch- (3-mm) thick, solid wood of same species as face veneer.

a. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range.

B. Exposed Materials:

1. General: Provide materials that are selected and arranged for compatible grain and color. Do not use materials adjacent to one another that are noticeably dissimilar in color, grain, figure, or natural character markings.

2. Wood Species: White Maple (Clear)

3. Plywood: Hardwood plywood with face veneer of species indicated, selected for compatible color and grain. Grade A exposed faces at least 1/50 inch (0.5 mm) thick, and Grade J crossbands. Provide backs of same species as faces.

a. Face Veneer Cut: Plain sliced.

4. Solid Wood: Clear hardwood lumber of species indicated and selected for grain and color compatible with exposed hardwood plywood.

a. Wood Species: White Maple (Clear)

C. Semiexposed Materials:

1. Solid Wood: Sound hardwood lumber, selected to eliminate appearance defects, of any species similar in color and grain to exposed soil wood.

2. Plywood: Hardwood plywood of same species as exposed plywood. Provide backs of same species as faces.

3. Provide solid wood or hardwood plywood for semiexposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

4. Metal for Steel Drawer Pans: Cold-rolled,carbon-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M; matte finish; suitable for exposed applications.

D. Concealed Materials:

1. Solid Wood: Any species of hardwood, with no defects affecting strength or utility.

2. Plywood: Hardwood plywood. Provide backs of same species as faces.

2.3 PLASTIC-LAMINATE CABINET MATERIALS

A. General:

1. Certified Wood Materials: Provide cabinets with not less than 70 percent of wood products obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, “FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship.”

2. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

3. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1, either veneer core, unless otherwise indicated, made without urea formaldehyde.

4. Plastic Laminate: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with NEMA LD 3.

5. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.

6. Edgebanding for Plastic Laminate: Plastic laminate matching adjacent surfaces.

a. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range.

7. Edgebanding for Thermoset Decorative Panels: PVC or polyester edge banding complying with LMA EDG-1 and matching thermoset decorative panels.

B. Exposed Materials:

1. Plastic Laminate: Grade VGS.

a. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range.

C. Semiexposed Materials:

1. Plastic Laminate: Grade VGS or Grade CLS.

a. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range.
b. Provide plastic laminate for semiexposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
c. Provide plastic laminate for interior faces of doors and drawer fronts and where indicated.

2. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Provide thermoset decorative panels for semiexposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

   a. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

3. Solid Wood: Sound hardwood lumber, selected to eliminate appearance defects.

4. Plywood: Hardwood plywood. Grade B faces and Grade J crossbands. Provide backs of same species as faces.

5. Metal for Steel Drawer Pans: Cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M; matte finish; suitable for exposed applications.

D. Concealed Materials:

1. Solid Wood: Any species, with no defects affecting strength or utility.
2. Plywood: Hardwood plywood
3. Plastic Laminate: Type BKL.

2.4 AUXILARY CABINET MATERIALS

A. Acid Storage-Cabinet Lining: ¼-inch-(6-mm-) thick, glass-fiber cement board complying with ASTM C 1186 polyethylene or polypropylene, polyethylene, polypropylene, epoxy, or phenolic- composite lining material.

B. Glass for Glazed Doors: Clear tempered glass complying with ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality-Q3; not less than 5.0 mm thick.

2.5 COUNTERTOP SHELF, TROUGH, AND SINK MATERIALS

A. Solid surfacing material: RE: Section 06402.

1. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As selected by Architect from plastic-laminate manufacturer's full range of solid colors.

2.6 METAL CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Provide products by one of the following:

1. Hanson Lab Furniture.
2. Kewaunee Scientific Corporation; Laboratory Products Group.
3. Lab Crafters, Inc.
4. Lab Fabricators.
5. Laboratory Design & Supply.
6. Mott Manufacturing, Ltd.

B. Fabrication: Assemble and finish units at point of manufacture. Use precision dies for interchangeability of like-size drawers, doors, and similar parts. Perform assembly on precision jigs to provide units that are square. Reinforce units with angles, gussets, and channels. Except where otherwise specified, integrally frame and weld cabinet bodies to form

dirt and vermin-resistant enclosures. Where applicable, reinforce base cabinets for sink support. Maintain uniform clearance around door and drawer fronts of 1/16 to 3/32 inch (1.5 to 2.4 mm).

C. Flush Doors: Outer and inner pans that nest into box formation, with full-height channel reinforcements at center of door. Fill doors with noncombustible, sound-deadening material.

D. Hinged Doors: Mortise for hinges and reinforce with angles welded inside inner pans at hinge edge.

E. Drawers: Fronts made from outer and inner pans that nest into box formation, with no raw metal edges at top. Sides, back, and bottom fabricated in one piece with rolled or formed top of sides for stiffening and comfortable grasp for drawer removal. Provide drawers with rubber bumpers, polymer roller slides, and positive stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact or accidental removal.

F. Adjustable Shelves: Front, back, and ends formed down, with edges returned horizontally at front and back to form reinforcing channels.

G. Toe Space: Fully enclosed, 4 inches (100 mm) high by 3 inches (75mm) deep, with no open gaps or pockets.

H. Tables: Welded tubing legs, not less than 2 inches (50mm) square with channel stretchers as needed to comply with product standard. Weld or bolt stretchers to legs and cross-stretchers, and bolt legs to table aprons. Provide leveling device welded to bottom of each leg.

1. Leg Shoes: Satin- finished stainless steel, open-bottom, slip-on type.

I. Utilities: Provide space, cutouts, and holes for pipes, conduits, and fittings in cabinet bodies to accommodate utility services and their support-strut assemblies.

1. Provide base cabinets with removable backs for access to utility space.

J. Utility-Space Framing: Laboratory casework manufacturer's standard steel framing units consisting of 2 steel slotted channels complying with MFMA-4, not less than 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) square by 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal thickness, and connected at top and bottom by U- shaped brackets made from 1-1/4-by-1/4-inch (32-by-6-mm) steel flat bars. Framing units may be made by welding specified channel material into rectangular frames instead of using U-shaped brackets.

K. Filler and Closure Panels: Provide where indicated and as needed to close spaces between cabinets and walls, ceilings, and indicated equipment. Fabricate from same material and with same finish as cabinets and with hemmed or flanged edges unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide utility-space closure panels at spaces between base cabinets where utility space would otherwise be exposed, including spaces below countertops.

2. Provide closure panels at ends of utility spaces where utility space would otherwise be exposed.

3. Provide knee-space panels (modesty panels) at spaces between base cabinets, where cabinets are not installed against a wall or where space is not otherwise

closed. Fabricate from back-to-back panels or of hollow construction to eliminate exposed hemmed or flanged edges.

2.7 PLASTIC-LAMINATE CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Lab Concepts, Inc.
2. Case Systems Inc.
3. Laboratory Design & Supply
4. LSI Corporation of America; a Sagus International company.
5. Sheldon Laboratory Systems.
6. South Texas Woodmill, Inc.
7. Stevens Industries, Inc.
8. Terrill Manufacturing Company.
9. TMI Systems Design Corporation.
10. Or equal.

B. Design: Flush overlay.

C. Construction: Provide plastic-laminate-faced laboratory casework of the following minimum construction:

1. Bottoms and Ends of Cabinets, and Tops of Wall Cabinets and Tall Cabinets: ¾-inch-(19-mm-) thick plywood, plastic-laminate faced on exposed surfaces, thermoset decorative panels on semiexposed surfaces.
2. Shelves: ¾-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood, plastic-laminate faced.
3. Backs of Cabinets: ½-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick plywood, plastic-laminate faced on exposed surfaces, thermoset decorative panels on semiexposed surfaces.
4. Drawer Fronts: ¾-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood, plastic-laminate faced.
5. Drawer Sides and Backs: ½-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick solid-wood or veneer-core hardwood plywood, with glued dovetail or multiple-dowel joints.
6. Drawer Bottoms: ¼-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick hardwood plywood. Use ½ inch- (12.7-mm-) thick material for drawers more than 24 inches (600mm) wide.
7. Drawer Bodies: Steel drawer pans formed from 0.036-inch- (0.91-mm-) thick metal, metallic phosphate treated, and finished with manufacturer's standard 2-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat and 2 mils (0.05 mm) for system.

8. Doors 48 Inches (1200 mm) High or Less: ¾ inch (19mm) thick, with plywood or MDF cores and solid-wood stiles and rails, plastic-laminate faced.

D. Utility-Space Framing: Laboratory casework manufacturer's standard steel framing units consisting of 2 steel slotted channels complying with MFMA-4, not less than 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) square by 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal thickness, and connected at top and bottom by U-shaped brackets made from 1-1/4-by ¼-inch (32-by-6-mm) steel flat bars. Framing units may be made by welding specified channel material into rectangular frames instead of using U- shaped brackets.

E. Filler and Closure Panels: Provide where indicated and as needed to close spaces between cabinets and walls, ceilings, and indicated equipment. Fabricate from same material and with same finish as adjacent exposed cabinet surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide utility-space closure panels at spaces between base cabinets where utility space would otherwise be exposed, including spaces below countertops.

2. Provide closure panels at ends of utility spaces where utility space would otherwise be exposed.
3. Provide knee-space panels (modesty panels) at spaces between base cabinets, where cabinets are not installed against a wall or where space is not otherwise closed. Fabricate from same material and with same finish as exposed cabinet backs.

2.8 LABORATORY CASEWORK SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Kewaunee Scientific Corporation; Laboratory Product Group.
2. MOTT Manufacturing, Ltd.
3. Or equal

B. Provide casework manufacturer's standard integrated system that includes support framing, suspended modular cabinets, filler and closure panels, wall panels, undercabinet task-lighting fixtures, countertops, and fittings needed to assemble system. System includes hardware and fasteners for securing support framing to permanent construction.

1. Cabinet Construction: Hardwood Plywood and solid clear wood.

2. Cabinets can be removed and reinstalled without use of special tools for relocation within system

3. Base cabinets can be removed without providing temporary support for, or removing, countertops.

4. Sinks are supported independent of base cabinets.

5. Support framing has provision for fastening pipe supports at utility space in not more than 1-inch (25-mm) increments.

6. System includes filler and closure panels to close spaces between support framing, cabinets, shelves, countertops, floors, and walls unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate panels from same material and with same finish as metal cabinets and with hemmed or flanged edges.

C. Support Framing: Casework manufacturer's standard system consisting of vertical supports and connecting braces and rails as follows:

1. Cabinets, shelves, and countertops are supported from vertical supports except where floor-supported base cabinets are indicated. Vertical positioning of supported cabinets, shelves, and countertops can be varied in 1-inch (25-mm) increments through full height of supports.

2. Vertical supports rest on adjustable leveling bases and are secured to floor with metal clips fastened to floor.

3. Vertical supports are installed with braces and rails connecting them to each other and to permanent building walls to create a stable, rigid structure with framed utility spaces where indicated.

4. Vertical supports are braced at floor with cantilevered horizontal leg members where indicated.

D. Countertops: Provide in modular lengths indicated, without seams. RE: Section 06402 for Solid Surfacing Material.

2.9 METAL CABINET FINISH

A. General: Prepare, treat, and finish welded assemblies after assembling. Prepare, treat, and finish components that are to be assembled with mechanical fasteners before assembling. Prepare, treat, and finish concealed surfaces same as exposed surfaces.

B. Preparation: After assembly, clean surfaces of mill scale, rust, oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.

C. Chemical-Resistant Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply laboratory casework manufacturer's standard two-coat, chemical-resistant, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).

1. Chemical and Physical Resistance of Finish System: Finish complies with acceptance levels of cabinet surface finish tests in SEFA 8. Acceptance level for chemical spot test shall be no more than four Level 3 conditions.

2. Colors for Metal Laboratory Casework Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.10 WOOD FINISH

A. Preparation: Sand lumber and plywood before assembling. Sand edges of doors, drawer fronts, and molded shapes with profile-edge sander. Sand after assembling for uniform smoothness at least equivalent to that produced by 220-grit sanding and without machine marks, cross sanding, or other surface blemishes.

B. Staining: Remove fibers and dust and apply stain to exposed and semiexposed surfaces as necessary to match approved Samples. Apply stain in a manner that will produce a consistent appearance. Apply wash-coat sealer before applying stain to closed-grain wood species.

1. Stain Color: Clear, Non-yellowing.

C. Chemical-Resistant Finish: Apply laboratory casework manufacturer's standard three-coat, chemical-resistant, transparent finish. Sand and wipe clean between coats. Topcoat(s) may be omitted on concealed surfaces.

1. Chemical and Physical Resistance of Finish System: Finish complies with acceptance levels of cabinet surface finish tests in SEFA 8. Acceptance level for chemical spot test shall be no more than four Level 3 conditions.
2. Finish Color: Clear, non-yellowing.

2.11 HARDWARE

A. General: Provide laboratory casework manufacturer's standard, commercial-quality, heavy-duty hardware complying with requirements indicated for each type.

B. Hinges: Stainless-steel, 5-knuckle hinges complying with BHMA A156.9, Grade 1, with antifriction bearings and rounded tips. Provide 2 for doors 48 inches (1200 mm) high or less and 3 for doors more than 48 inches (1200 mm) high.

C. Hinges for Wood and Plastic-Laminate Cabinets: Frameless concealed hinges (European type) complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B01602, 100 degrees of opening, self-closing.

D. Hinged Door and Drawer Pulls: Solid, stainless steel, back-mounted pulls. Provide 2 pulls for drawers more than 24 inches (600 mm) wide.

1. Design: Wire pulls.

2. Overall Size: 1 by 4-1/2 inches (25 by 114 mm).

E. Sliding Door Pulls: Stainless-steel recessed flush pulls.

1. Design and Size: Oval, 1 by 3 inches (25 by 76 mm), 3/8 inch (10 mm) deep.

F. Door Catches: Nylon-roller spring catches. Provide 2 catches on doors more than 48 inches (1200 mm) high.

G. Drawer Slides: Side mounted, epoxy-coated steel, self-closing; designed to prevent rebound when drawers are closed; complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B05091.

1. Provide Grade 1; for drawers not more than 6 inches (150mm) high and 24 inches (600mm) wide.
2. Provide Grade 1HD-100; for drawers more than 6 inches (150mm) high or 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
3. Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Full-extension, ball-bearing type.

H. Drawer Slides for Wood and Plastic-Laminate Cabinets: Hardwood runners under centers of drawers with polymer guides fastened to back of drawers.

I. Label Holders: Stainless steel, aluminum, or chrome plated; sized to receive standard label cards approximately 1 by 2 inches (25 by 50mm), attached with screws or rivets. Provide on all drawers.

J. Locks for Metal Cabinets: Cam or half-mortise type with 5-pin tumbler, brass with chrome-plated finish; complying with BHMA A156.11, Type E07281, E07111, or E07021.

1. Provide a minimum of two keys per lock and two master keys
2. Provide on all drawers and doors.
3. Keying: Key locks as directed.
4. Master Key System: Key all locks to be operable by master key.

K. Locks for Wood and Plastic-Laminate Cabinets: Cam type with 5-pin tumbler, brass with chrome-plated finish; complying with BHMA A156.11, Type E07281.

1. Provide a minimum of two keys per lock and three master keys.
2. Provide on all drawers and doors.
3. Keying: Key locks within each room alike, key each room separately unless otherwise directed by Owner.
4. Master Key System: Key all locks to be operable by master key.

L. Sliding-Door Hardware Sets: Laboratory casework manufacturer's standard, to suit type and size of sliding-door units.

M. Adjustable Shelf Supports for Wood and Plastic-Laminate Cabinets: Powder-coated steel shelf rests complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B04013.

N. Adjustable Wall Shelf Supports: Surface-type steel standards and steel shelf brackets, with epoxy powder-coated finish, complying with BHMA A156.9, Types B04102 and B04112.

2.12 COUNTERTOPS, AND SINKS

A. Countertops and Back-Splashes, General: Provide units with smooth surfaces in uniform plane free of defects. Make exposed edges and corners straight and uniformly beveled. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch (25 mm), with continuous drip drove on underside ½ inch (13 mm) from edge, with bullnose edge(s).
1. Material: re: Section 06402 for solid surfacing material (s)

B. Sinks, General: Provide sizes indicated or laboratory casework manufacturer's closest standard size of equal or greater volume, as approved by Architect.

1. Outlets: Provide with strainers and tailpieces, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material: Re: Section 06402 for Solid Surfacing Material (s)

2.13 LABORATORY ACCESSORIES

A. Reagent Shelves: Provide as indicated, fabricated from same material as adjacent countertop, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Burette Rods: Aluminum or stainless-steel rods, ½ inch (13mm) in diameter and 18 inches (450 mm) long, threaded on 1 end to fit tapered plug adapter for flush socket receptacle. Provide with tapered plug adapter and receptacle.

C. Upright Rod Assembly and Metal Crossbar: Aluminum or stainless steel. Two vertical rods and 1 horizontal crossbar, ¾ inch (19 mm) in diameter and 36 inches (900 mm) long, unless otherwise indicated; 2 flush socket receptacles and 2 crossbar clamps. Ends of vertical rods are tapered to fit receptacles; all other rod ends are rounded.

D. Greenlaw Arm Assembly: Aluminum or stainless-steel vertical rod, tapered on one end to fit flush socket receptacle. Adjustable crossbar of hardwood with black, acid-resistant finish, secured to upright with adjustable clamp. Provide with receptacle.

2.14 WATER AND LABORATORY GAS SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Provide products by one of the following:

1. Broen A/S.

2. WaterSaver Faucet Co.

3. Or equal.

B. Service Fittings: Provide units that comply with SEFA 7, “Laboratory and Hospital Fixtures – Recommended Practices.” Provide fittings complete with washers, locknuts, nipples, and other installation accessories. Include wall and deck flanges, escutcheons, handle extension rods, and similar items.

1. Provide units that comply with “Vandal-Resistant Faucets and Fixtures” recommendations in SEFA 7.

C. Materials: Fabricated from cast or forged red brass unless otherwise indicated.

1. Reagent-Grade Water Service Fittings: Polypropylene, PVC, or PVDF for parts in contact with water.

D. Finish: Acid-and solvent-resistant powder coating complying with requirements in SEFA 7 for corrosion-resistant finishes.

1. Provide chemical-resistant powder coating in laboratory casework manufacturer’s standard, white, or other color as approved by Architect.

E. Water Valves and Faucets: Provide units complying with ASME A112.18.1, with renewable seats, designed for working pressure up to 80 psig (550 kPa).

1. Vacuum Breakers: Provide ASSE 1035 vacuum breakers on water fittings with serrated outlets.
2. Aerators: Provide aerators on water fittings that do not have serrated outlets.
3. Self-Closing Valves: Provide self-closing valves where indicated.

F. Ground-Key Cocks: Tapered core and handle of one-piece forged brass, ground and lapped, and held in place under constant spring pressure. Provide units designed for working pressure up to 40 psig (280 kPa), with serrated outlets.

G. Ball Valves: Chrome-plated ball and PTFE seals. Handle requires no more than 5 lbf (22N) to operate. Provide units designed for working pressure up to 125 psig (520 kPa), with serrated outlets.

1. Where ball valves are indicated for fuel-gas use, provide locking safety handles that must be pushed in or pulled up before being turned on unless otherwise indicated.

H. Stream Valves: Stainless-steel seat and PTFE seat disc, where shown on the Drawings, provide units designed for steam working pressure up to 200 psig (140 kPa), with serrated outlets.

I. Needle Valves: Provide units with renewable, self-centering, floating cones and renewable seats of stainless steel or Monel metal, with removable serrated outlets.

1. Provide units designed for working pressure up to 125 psig (860 kPa).

J. Hand of Fittings: Furnish right-hand fittings unless fitting designation is followed by “L.”

K. Remote-Control Valves: Provide needle valves, straight-through or angle type as indicated for fume hoods and where indicated.

L. Handles: Provide three- or four-arm, forged-brass or three- or four-wing, molded plastic or powder-coated metal handles for valves unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide lever-type handles for ground-key cocks. Lever handle aligns with outlet when valve is closed and is perpendicular to outlet when valve is fully open.
2. Provide lever-type handles for ball valves unless otherwise indicated. Lever handle aligns with outlet when valve is closed and is perpendicular to outlet when valve is fully open.
3. Provide heat-resistant plastic handles for steam valves.
4. Provide knurled, molded plastic handles for needle valves.

M. Service-Outlet Identification: Provide color-coded plastic discs with embossed identification, secured to each service-fitting handle to be tamper resistant. Comply with SEFA 7 for colors and embossed identification.

2.15 ELECTRICAL SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Service Fittings, General: Provide units complete with metal housings, receptacles, terminals, switches, pilot lights, device plates, accessories, and gaskets required for mounting on laboratory casework.

B. Receptacles: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, and UL 498. Duplex type, Configuration 5 20R.

1. Receptacle Grade: Hospital grade unless otherwise indicated.

2. Color of Receptacles: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70.

3. GFCI Receptacles: Straight blade, feed-through or non-feed-through type. Comply with UL 943, Class A, Hospital grade, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.

4. TVSS (Transient Voltage Surge Suppressor) Receptacles: Comply with UL 1449, with integral TVSS in line to ground, line to neutral and neutral to ground.

a. TVSS Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 V and a minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.

b. Active TVSS Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is “active” or “no longer in service.”

c. Receptacle Type: Hospital grade, with isolated-ground terminal.

d. Identification: Distinctive marking on face of device to denote TVSS- type unit.

e. Color of TVSS Receptacles: Blue.

C. Switches: Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20. Provide single-pole, double-pole, or 3-way switches as required; rated 120 to 277-V ac; and in amperage capacities to suit units served.

1. Color of Switches: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70.

2. Provide pilot light adjacent to switch or neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is “ON,” where noted as “PL” next to switch identification.

3. Provide key-operated switch where noted as “KEY” next to switch identification.

4. Provide thermal-overload switches, single or double pole, as required, with maximum overcurrent trip setting to suit particular motor controlled.

D. Service Fittings, General: Provide units with metal housings and gaskets required for mounting on laboratory casework. Receptacles, terminals, switches, pilot lights, device plates, and accessories are included in Division 16.

E. Pedestal-Type Fittings: Cast-aluminum housings with sloped single face or two faces, as indicated, with neoprene gasket under base and with concealed mounting holes in base for attaching to laboratory casework. Provide holes tapped for conduits.

F. Line-Type Fittings: Provide with cast-metal boxes with threaded holes for mounting on rigid steel conduit. Provide cover plates same size as boxes.

G. Recessed-Type Fittings: Provide with galvanized-steel boxes.

H. Finishes for Service-Fitting Components: Provide housings or boxes for pedestal – and line – type fittings with manufacture’s standard baked-on, chemical-resistant enamel in color as selected by Engineer from manufacturer’s full range.

I. Cover Plates: Provide satin finish, Type 304, stainless-steel cover plates with formed, beveled edges.

J. Cover-Plate Identification: Use ¼-inch- (6-mm-) high letters unless otherwise indicated. For stainless steel or chrome-plated metal, stamp or etch plate and fill in letters with black enamel.

1. Provide on all cover plates.
   a. Receptacles other than standard 125-V duplex, grounding type.

   b. Switches and thermal-overload switches.

   c. Pilot lights when located remotely from associated equipment or switch, where function is not obvious.

   d. Receptacles, switches, and other locations indicated.

2. Provide the following information:

a. Voltage and phase for receptacles other than standard 125-V duplex, grounding type.

b. Indicate equipment being controlled by switches and thermal-overload switches.

c. Indicate equipment being controlled for pilot lights when located remotely from associated equipment or switch, where function is not obvious.

d. Number of breaker in panelboard that controls device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of laboratory casework.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CABINETS

A. Comply with installation requirements in SEFA 2.3. Install level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims. Where laboratory casework abuts other finished work, apply filler strips and scribe for accurate fit, with fasteners concealed where practical. Do not exceed the following tolerances:

1. Variation of Tops of Base Cabinets from Level: 1/16 inch in 10 feet (1.5 mm in 3m).
2. Variation of Bottoms of Upper Cabinets from Level: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3mm in 3m).
3. Variation of Faces of Cabinets from a True Plane: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3mm in 3m)
4. Variation of Adjacent Surfaces from a True Plane (Lippage): 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
5. Variation in Alignment of Adjacent Door and Drawer Edges: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).

B. Utility-Space Framing: Secure to floor with two fasteners at each frame. Fasten to partition framing, wood blocking, or metal reinforcements in partitions and to base cabinets.

C. Base Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to utility-space framing, partition framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in partitions with fasteners spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Bolt adjacent cabinets together with joints flush, tight, and uniform.

1. Where base cabinets are installed away from walls, fasten to floor at toe space at not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. and at sides of cabinets with not less than 2 fasteners per side.

D. Wall Cabinets: Fasten to hanging strips, masonry, partition framing, blocking, or reinforcements in partitions. Fasten each cabinet through back, near top, at not less than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.

E. Install hardware uniformly and precisely. Set hinges snug and flat in mortises.

F. Adjust laboratory casework and hardware so doors and drawers align and operate smoothly without warp or bind and contact points meet accurately. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF COUNTERTOPS

A. Comply with installation requirements in SEFA 2.3. Abut top and edge surfaces in one true plane with flush hairline joints and with internal supports placed to prevent deflection. Locate joints only where shown on Shop Drawings.

B. Field Jointing: Where possible, make in same manner as shop-made joints using dowels, splines, fasteners, adhesives, and sealants recommended by manfucaturer. Prepare edges in shop for field-made joints.

1. Use concealed clamping devices for field-made joints in plastic-laminate countertops. Locate clamping devices within 6 inches (150mm) of front and back edges and at intervals not exceeding 24 inches (600 mm). Tighten according to manufacturer's written instructions to exert a uniform heavy pressure at joints.

C. Fastening:

1. Secure countertops, except for epoxy countertops, to cabinets with Z-type fasteners or equivalent, using two or more fasteners at each cabinet front, end, and back.

2. Secure epoxy countertops to cabinets with epoxy cement, applied at each corner and along perimeter edges at not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c.

3. Where necessary to penetrate countertops with fasteners, countersink heads approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) and plug hole flush with material equal to countertop in chemical resistance, hardness, and appearance.

D. Provide required holes and cutouts for service fittings.

E. Seal unfinished edges and cutouts in plastic-laminate countertops with heavy coat of polyurethane varnish.

F. Provide scribe moldings for closures at junctures of countertop, curb, and splash with walls as recommended by manufacturer for materials involved. Match materials and finish to adjacent laboratory casework. Use chemical-resistant, permanently elastic sealing compound where recommended by manufacturer.

G. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF SINKS

A. Comply with installation requirements in SEFA 2.3.

B. Semiflush Installation of Stainless-Steel Sinks: Before setting, apply sink and countertop manufacturers' recommended sealant under rim lip and along top. Remove excess sealant while still wet and finish joint for neat appearance.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF LABORATORY ACCESSORIES

A. Install accessories according to Shop Drawings, installation requirements in SEFA 2.3, and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Securely fasten adjustable shelving supports, stainless-steel shelves, and pegboards to partition framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in partitions.

C. Install shelf standards plumb and at heights to align shelf brackets for level shelves. Install shelving level and straight, closely fitted to other work where indicated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Comply with requirements in Divisions 15 and 16 Sections for installing water and laboratory gas service fittings and electrical devices.

B. Install fittings according to Shop Drawings, installation requirements in SEFA 2.3, and manufacturer's written instructions. Set bases and flanges of sink – and countertop – mounted fittings in sealant recommended by manufacturer of sink or countertop material. Securely anchor fittings to laboratory casework unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Clean finished surfaces, touch up as required, and remove or refinish damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish, as approved by Engineer.

B. Protect countertop surfaces during construction with 6-mil (0.15 mm) plastic or other suitable water-resistant covering. Tape to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c.

END OF SECTION 12360

SECTION 12491

HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Horizontal louver blinds with aluminum slats, at all exterior window openings (existing and new)

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting horizontal louver blinds and accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for horizontal louver blinds

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of horizontal louver blind indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of horizontal louver blind indicated.

1. Slat: Not less than 12 inches (300 mm) long.
2. Valance: Full-size unit, not less than 12 inches (300 mm) wide.

E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of horizontal louver blind. (Required for substitutions only.)

F. Maintenance Data: For horizontal louver blinds to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain horizontal louver blinds through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Standard: Provide horizontal louver blinds complying with WCSC A 100.1.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver horizontal louver blinds in factory packages, marked with manufacturer and product name, lead-free designation, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings and in a window treatment schedule.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install horizontal louver blinds until construction and wet and dirty finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

B. Field Measurements: Where horizontal louver blinds are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operable glazed units' operation hardware throughout the entire operating range. Notify Architect of discrepancies. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Horizontal Louver Blinds Slats: Before installation begins, for each size, color, texture, pattern, and gloss indicated, width slats units equal to 10 slats per window blind.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS, ALUMINUM SLATS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Hunter Douglas.
2. Levolor, a Newell Rubbermaid Company.
3. Springs Window Fashions Division, Inc..

B. Slats: Aluminum; alloy and temper recommended by producer for type of use and finish indicated; with crowned profile and radiused corners.

1. Width: 1 inch (25 mm).

a. Spacing: Manufacturer’s standard.

2. Thickness: Not less than 0.008 inch (0.20 mm).
3. Finish: One color.

a. Reflective Coating: Manufacturer's special coating enhancing the reflection of solar energy on the outside-facing slat surface.

C. Headrail: Formed steel or extruded aluminum; long edges returned or rolled; fully enclosing operating mechanisms on three sides and end plugs and the following:

1. Capacity: One blind per headrail.
2. Integrated Headrail/Valance: Curved face.
3. Light-blocking lower back lip.
4. Tilt limiter with preselected degree settings.

D. Bottom Rail: Formed-steel or extruded-aluminum tube, with plastic or metal capped ends; with enclosed ladders and tapes to prevent contact with sill.

E. Ladders: Evenly spaced to prevent long-term slat sag.

1. For Blinds with Nominal Slat Width 1 Inch (25 mm) or Less: Braided string.

F. Lift Cords: Manufacturer's standard.

G. Lift Operation: Manual, cord lock; locks pull cord to stop blind at any position in ascending or descending travel.

H. Tilt Control: Enclosed worm-gear mechanism, slip clutch or detachable wand preventing overrotation, and linkage rod, and the following:

1. Tilt Operation: Manual with clear plastic wand.
2. Length of Tilt Control: Length required to make operation convenient from floor level.
3. Tilt: Full.

I. Lift Operation: Manual, top-locking cord lock; locks pull cord to stop blind in either fully opened or fully closed position only and is equipped with a ring pull not more than 4 inches (100 mm) long.

J. Tilt-Control and Cord-Lock Position: Right and left side of headrail, respectively, unless otherwise indicated.

K. Valance: Two slats .

1. Finish Color Characteristics: Match color, texture, pattern, and gloss of slats.

L. Mounting: End mounting at window head, permitting easy removal and replacement without damaging blind or adjacent surfaces and finishes; with spacers and shims required for blind placement and alignment indicated.

1. Provide intermediate support brackets if end support spacing exceeds spacing recommended by manufacturer for weight and size of blind.

M. Hold-Down Brackets and Hooks or Pins: Manufacturer's standard.

N. Side Channels and Perimeter Light Gap Seals: Manufacturer's standard.

O. Colors, Textures, Patterns, and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLIND FABRICATION

A. Concealed Components: Noncorrodible or corrosion-resistant-coated materials.

1. Lift-and-Tilt Mechanisms: With permanently lubricated moving parts.

B. Unit Sizes: Obtain units fabricated in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F (23 deg C):

1. Blind Units Installed between (inside) Jambs: Width equal to 1/4 inch (6 mm) per side or 1/2 inch (13 mm) total, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.1 mm), less than jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which each blind is installed. Length equal to 1/4 inch (6 mm), plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.1 mm), less than head-to-sill dimension of opening in which each blind is installed.

C. Installation Brackets: Designed for easy removal and reinstallation of blind, for supporting headrail, valance, and operating hardware, and for hardware position and blind mounting method indicated.

D. Installation Fasteners: No fewer than two fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal noncorrosive to blind hardware and adjoining construction; type designed for securing to supporting substrate; and supporting blinds and accessories under conditions of normal use.

E. Color-Coated Finish:

1. Metal: For components exposed to view, apply manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

F. Component Color: Provide rails, cords, ladders, and exposed-to-view metal, wood, and plastic matching or coordinating with slat color, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install horizontal louver blinds level and plumb and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions, and located so exterior slat edges in any position are not closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to interior face of glass. Install intermediate support as required to prevent deflection in headrail. Allow clearances between adjacent blinds and for operating glazed opening's operation hardware if any.

B. Flush Mounted: Install horizontal louver blinds with track face flush with finish face of opening.

C. Jamb Mounted: Install headrail flush with face of opening jamb and head.

D. Connections: Connect motorized operators to building electrical system.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust horizontal louver blinds to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free of binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean horizontal louver blind surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that horizontal louver blinds are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

C. Replace damaged horizontal louver blinds that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 12491

Section 12500

FURNITURE SYSTEMS

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Base Bid.

1.03 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Furniture Systems.

2. Free standing furniture.

3. Storage units

4. Chairs/Stools

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 9 Section "Carpet for floor covering".

2. Division - Section “Electrical and Tele/Data” connections.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include material descriptions, individual components, installation plans/details, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Floor plans, system(s) elevations and wiring connections.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, telephone and data. Include the following:

a. System(s) schematics.

b. Point to point wiring diagram(s)

C. Samples for Verification: Submit minimum 2 inch by 4 inch (51mm by 102mm) samples of the following:

1. Plastic laminates

2. Paint colors

3. Fabrics

4. Plastic finishes

D. Product Certificates: For electrical whips, tele/data whips, electrical receptacles, tele/data receptacles.

1. Certify that the components meet the following:

a. MEC, NFPA 70, IEC 2006 and UL

1.05 TEST REPORTS

A. Submit test reports in accordance with Section 01330 “Submittal Procedures” from approved independent testing laboratories, certifying partition system(s) complies with sound transmission rating, fire hazard classification and load capacities as specified.

1.06 SITE CONDITIONS

A. Completely protect all components in manufacturer’s sealed packaging from weather and environmental conditions comparable to those that will exist after hearing, ventilating and air conditioning systems have been functioning for at least two (2) weeks for climatization of the exterior spaces.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical, tele/data Components, Devices and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NECA.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer’s warranty of 10 years against defects in design, materials and workmanship.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements to provide all materials from:

1. TEKNION FURNITURE SYSTSEMS, INC.; US 12000 Horizon Way, Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054.

a. System: “Volterra”

b. Chairs:

1. Private Offices: “Contessa”

2. Open Plan Offices: “Projek”

2.02 FURNITURE SYSTEM

A. Work Surfaces and Supports

1. Work surfaces shall be constructed of 45lb. Core Density Particleboard or 38-42lb OSB board with surface tip and backing of .032 inch high pressure laminate or source laminate for total thickness of 1-1/16" inch. All corners of high pressure laminate shall be: Square Edge All corners of source laminate are square. Specific work surfaces will also include a reinforcing wire tray as required.

2. Work surfaces shall be designed to support a minimum of 300lbs.

   a. Laminate work surface non-user edges shall be finished with a bonded PVC impact resistant "T" Molding in "Flat" Style.

   b. All HPL work surfaces shall provide access for cable management by an integrated cable scallop standard in every work surface to provide 3/8" rear access for cable management and an optional wire management trough beneath the work surface.

   c. All source laminate work surfaces do not include an integrated cable management scallop.

3. Thickness: 1 inch

4. Weight Load: 300 lbs

5. Weight load of corners: 300 lbs

B. Surface finishes available in LPL and HPL .

1. Colors:

   a. Private Offices: "Choice Maple"

   b. Open Plan Offices: "Crisp Gray"

2 Structural Support Columns. Shall support elements, overhead storage units [with task lighting], countertops, tool rails power components, tele/data components and accessories. They shall be capable of accepting column extensions to increase heights without disassembly of work stations and shall be inserted into desk assembly without tools.

3. Work surface Depth: Minimum 24 inches/maximum 36 inches. (Re: Drawings)

4. Work surface Length: As indicated on drawings.

5. Work surface Configurations: As indicated on drawings.

B. Storage

1. Overhead cabinet units are to be provide lockable, attach easily to Structural Support Columns. In addition, off modular attachment on semi and fully segmented attachment is available.

   a. The metal cabinet shall be constructed of cold-rolled steel and the door shall retract

outside of the cabinet and the bottom shelf is steel.

b. A lock with a durable plated metal finish shall be included with each cabinet.

c. All cabinets 36 inches and longer shall have a reinforced bottom section for weight distribution.

d. All cabinets shall be 15” high and 14” deep and are available in the following widths: 24”, 30”, 36”, 42”, 48”, 54” and 60” (54” and 60” shall come with Double Doors).

e. The interior of the cabinet shall be equipped with a rail that accepts personal organizers and book organizers infinitely adjustable.

f. Overhead cabinet can be mounted off module on semi and fully segmented panels.

2. Shelves shall be open and supported from structural columns .via mounting brackets on 1” increments. Shelf comes knocked down.

a. The open shelf shall be constructed of cold-rolled steel with a durable epoxy polyester finish and shipped in a stretch-wrap film with cardboard end caps on pallets.

Door Retreats: Outside/Over Overhead Up-mount Overhead

b. All Open Shelving shall be 12-13” high, 14” deep and come in the following widths: 24”, 30”, 36”, 42”, 48”, 54” and 60”.

c. Shelf shall have a load limit of 141lbs and back edge shall have a lip.

3. Pedestals shall be part of support system, load bearing and fit under work surfaces with locks included.

a. Pedestals shall be constructed of 22-gauge cold rolled steel with ¾ extension, box drawers and full progressive ball bearing suspensions on all file drawers.

b. All pedestals shall have as standard a field changeable lock and leveling glides.

c. All metal finishes shall have as standard a field changeable lock and leveling glides.

d. File drawers shall be full height and accept hanging file folders both front to back and side-to-side. Box drawers shall include as a standard one metal divider and one pencil tray.

e. Configurations shall come in: 1 Box – 1 File, 2 Box – 1 File, 2 File

f. Pedestals shall be available in 3 depths 18, 22” and 28” with a weight load of 200lbs.

g. Pedestal can be work surface supporting utilizing appropriate bracket.

C. Electrical Power

1. Provide an 8 wire solution

a. 8K-Eight-wire solution shall be a 120/140-volt single-phase system comprised of three (3) circuits rated at 20 amps each. System contains 2 neutrals and 2 grounds.

b. Power must run from panel to panels without going outside of panel.

c. Electrics shall be modular and non-dedicated to panels allowing for reconfiguration.

2. Receptacle outlets shall be 15 or 20 amps each. Identification numbers of all circuits shall be printed on the face of each receptacle. The isolated circuit receptacle shall be symbol displayed.

   a. Receptacle outlets shall be accessed at base, ADA base (18” AFF), work surface or standing height (48” AFF). All within the elements.

   b. Receptacle outlets shall be duplex outlets as noted drawing.

3. Connection from the main building supply to the panel

   a. For base entry, power shall be activated through lower base element of panel. Power shall enter at either end of the panel width and at a height 6 inches from the floor by means of a base electrical feed or junction box and feed placed behind lower base element.

   b. Multiple stations shall be powered from a single electrical feed. The number shall depend on the amount of power loaded into each workstation, not the capacity of the panel.

4. Task lights shall mount under shelf or hanging cabinet in a fixed or movable location or shall be freestanding.

   a. Task light shall use an energy efficient cool white fluorescent tube that is mounted in a case-sheet steel housing. The lens shall snap into extruded polycarbonate.

   b. Prismatic exterior controls light diffusion while remaining firmly in place. Instant starts must insure immediate illumination. Plunger switch shall be located at one side only and task light must not be handed.

   c. Units shall come with a wire management encasement that holds the electrical cord and attaches into the vertical panel slots. Bulbs to be included.

D. Communications Cable Management

1. For floor entry, cables shall be easily managed to the work surfaces through punch-outs within each of the horizontal members of the panel(s) and add-on modules.

2. Cables shall be routed and effectively managed through the panel fram(s) at multiple heights.

   a. Multiple horizontal cable paths shall be available within the upper panel frame.

   b. Cables and network connectors shall be concealed within the panel.

   c. Cable termination shall be conveniently located at base, ADA base (18” AFF), work surface or standing height (48” AFF) and shall be accessible by users on either side of the panel.

   d. Cable Management shall be enclosed around all corners.

E. Accessories

1. Accessories shall be of painted metal fabrications and hang off-surface from an accessory rail or rail element.

2. Provide types and number as indicated.

2.03 LATERAL FILES

A. Cabinet

1. All cabinets shall be of welded construction using cold rolled steel.

2. Front corners shall be M.I.G. welded on laterals and storage cabinets.

3. Ganging knockouts (four in total) shall be located on the side of cabinet.

4. The cabinet case front, sides, back, top, bottom and interior supporting members shall be a minimum of 22 gauge steel.

5. The cabinet case shall be designed to hold both fixed front drawers and rool-out shelves with receding doors.

6. Interiors shall be completely modular and interchangeable in the filed so that cabinets can be fitted with optional accessories as required.

B. Drawers

1. Drawers shall be a minimum of 18 gauge steel with fronts attached and have the following features:

a. Drawers shall accommodate letter, legal and A4 both in lateral and front-to-back configuration.

b. Drawers shall incorporate a positive interlocking system integrated into each suspension that will prohibit more than one drawer to be opened at a time.

c. Drawers shall be slotted to accept full height dividers.

d. Drawer fronts shall have a recessed pull located at top of front.

C. Shelves

1. Roll-out shelves with receding doors shall be a minimum of 18 gauge steel.

2. Shelves shall incorporate a positive interlocking system integrated into each suspension that will prohibit more than one shelf to be extended at a time.

3. Load shall not exceed 285.63 pounds.

D. Suspension

1. Drawers band Shelves shall operate on a full three stage progressive ball bearing suspension with built in grip to prevent bounce back and creepage.

2. Components of the suspension shall be cold rolled steel, plated with suitable rust preventative material and of adequate strength to support fully loaded drawers or shelves.

3. Receding doors and drawers shall slide into the cabinet evenly by using a full sliding panel.

E. Glides

1. Cabinets shall have four 1-1/2” leveling glides with one inch of adjustment accessible from the interior of the cabinet.

F. Posting Shelves

1. Full width posting shelves shall be offered as an option on four and five high cabinets.

G. Locks

1. Locks shall be included as standard.

2. Locks shall be equipped with removable cores which can be keyed alike or easily changeable.

H. Caution Label

1. A caution label shall be affixed to the interior surface of the top of the compartment, prominently visible to the user when the compartment is opened, advising the user to adjust the leveling glides so that the cabinet is level side to side and where applicable the front is slightly higher than the back. The label shall further advise the user that the bottom drawers should be loaded first. Reference shall also be made to a complete instruction sheet (to be provided with each cabinet) for conversion from letter to legal filing and vice versa.

I. Gauge of Steel – Summary

Top	20
Top Stiffener	18
Side	20
Back	20
Base	20
Base Stiffener	18
Fronts	22
Drawers/Shelves	18

J. Finish: Shall be painted as indicated.

K. Configurations: As indicated.

2.04 Open Shelving Units

A. Extra Strength Non- Bolting, 16ga shelves, 14 ga double vivet beams, 14 ga. angle uprights, 4000 lb max. shelf cap, 1 ½ inch increments of adjustment. By: Global Industrial.

B. Shall be 84” high units with adjustable shelves.

C. Width: 36 inches/Depth: 18 inches and 24 inches, as indicated

D. Shelf Capacity: 4000 lbs on length of shelf

E. Shelves shall be easily moved up or down in the unit with minimal tools or no tools.

F. Finish: Painted

1. Color: Gray

G. Gauge of Steel – Summary : Paragraph 2.3.I as applicable

2.05 MEETING TABLES

A. Meeting tables shall be 29-3/8 inches high with 1-9/16 inch thick work surfaces. All tables shall have edge trim to match the work surface finish material. Work surface shall be able to fold down 90 degrees from horizontal plane for easy and efficient storage. Length: 8'-0".

B. Shape: Convex Racetrack and Round.

C. Support: "T" legs with 1 inch leveling range.

D. Each work surface shall have reinforcing bars included for additional support.

E. Finish: HPL

1. Color: to be selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.06 ROUND TABLES

A. Tables shall be 30 inches high with 1-9/16 inch thick top. Edge trim shall match top finish.

B. Shapes: Circular: 42 inch diameter & Square: 3'-6" x 3'-6"

C. Support: 4 angular legs or pedestal with 4 legs.

D. Finish: HPL, on top and powdered coated painted metal legs.

1. Color: to be selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.07 CHAIRS/STOOLS

A. Task: "Contessa" and "Projek" by Teknion, with Grade 4 fabric on seat, mesh back, padded adjustable arms, polished chrome base with carpet casters, tilt-control, depth adjustment, armrest pivoting, seat and arm adjustments. Private closed in offices: "Contessa" and open plan work station/office: "Projek."

B. Adjustable stools: 19 1/2" to 27", seat material: Polypropylene, color: to be selected from manufacturer's full range, frame finish: powder coat-"black", 2 inch caster on a 5 leg base, green guard certified and meets ansi/bifma standards. By: Virco – " sage lab stool.

C. Guest Chair / Side Chair: "Jakarta" by Teknion; No. 8570 with upholstered seat and perforated back in maple finish and polished chrome legs.

D. Conference Room/Breakroom Chairs: " t-3" by Teknion with Grade 4 fabric seat, mesh back, adjustable back-height and carpet casters.

2.08 TACKBOARDS

A. 13" high, widths as indicated, fabric: "Brazil" and " Serra".

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Field verify all existing conditions of wall and floor finishes prior to delivery and installation of all furniture. Record any damages that may exist and inform the general contractor of damages.

B. Deliver all materials in manufactures sealed cartons or wrapping.

C. Store all materials in a dry and low humidity environment prior to delivery to the site.

D. The building HVAC system shall be fully operational prior to delivery of all materials. Do not deliver materials if the HVAC system is NOT working properly.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Unwrap all materials and note damaged materials. Do NOT install any damaged materials.

B. Coordinate with the contractor all electrical connections, data/telephone connections.

C. Install all furniture according to the manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions.

D. Remove all packaging debris from the building each night.

3.04 CLEANING

A. When all furniture has been installed clean all dust, fingerprints or other contaminations as per the manufacturer's specifications

END OF SECTION 12500

Section 12566

APPLIANCES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include the cost for this work in the lump sum Base Bid.

1.3 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Cooking equipment including:

a. Microwave ovens.

2. Refrigerator/freezers units for Break Rooms, Lab refrigerator is covered under Section 11600

3. Dishwasher

4. Ice Machines

B. Owner-Furnished Material:

1. Coffee makers.

2. Trash receptors with lids.

C. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 6 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for custom-grade cabinets and plastic-laminate tops that receive residential appliances.

2. Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water distribution piping connections to residential appliances.

3. Division 15 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for drainage and vent piping connections to residential appliances.

4. Division 15 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for kitchen sinks, waste disposers, and instant hot-water dispensers.

5. Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables" for services and connections to residential appliances.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include operating characteristics, dimensions of individual appliances, and finishes for each appliance.

B. Samples for Verification: For factory-applied color and stainless-steel finishes, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Size: Manufacturer's standard color chips of actual finish, at least 2 inches square.

C. Appliance Schedule: For appliances; use same designations indicated on Drawings.

D. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that products comply with requirements.

E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each product

F. Maintenance Data: For each product to include in maintenance manuals.

G. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacture and a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain residential appliances through one source from a single manufacturer.

1. To the greatest extent possible, provide appliances by a single manufacturer for entire Project.

D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with provisions of the following product certifications:

1. NFPA: Provide electrical appliances listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

2. UL and NEMA: Provide electrical components required as part of residential appliances that are listed and labeled by UL and that comply with applicable NEMA standards.

3. ANSI: Provide gas-burning appliances that comply with ANSI Z21 Series standards.

4. NAECA: Provide residential appliances that comply with NAECA standards.

E. Regulatory Requirements, Accessibility: Where residential appliances are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," ANSI A117.1, FED- STD-795, "Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards," and Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS).

1. Operable Parts: Provide controls with forward reach no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor, horizontal front reach no more than 25 inches (635 mm), horizontal side reach no more than 24 inches (610 mm), and that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N).

2. Refrigerator/Freezer: Provide 50 percent of freezer space within 54 inches (1370 mm) of the floor.

F. AHAM Standards: Provide appliances that comply with the following AHAM standards:

1. Refrigerators: AHAM HRF-1.

2. Freezers: AHAM HRF-1.

G. Energy Ratings: Provide residential appliances that carry labels indicating energy-cost analysis (estimated annual operating costs) and efficiency information as required by the FTC Appliance Labeling Rule.

1. Provide appliances that qualify for the EPA/DOE ENERGY STAR product labeling program.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of each appliance specified agrees to repair or replace residential appliances or components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Microwave Oven: Five-year limited warranty for in-place service on defects in the magnetron tube.

2. Refrigerator/Freezer: Five-year limited warranty for in-place service on the sealed refrigeration system.
3. Dish Washer: 10-year limited warranty for in-place service.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. The following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified below as a “Basis of Design”. Specifications are based on equipment identified herein by manufacturer's name and model to establish acceptable standards of quality, performance, features, and construction.

2. Other manufacturers: Contingent upon compliance with these specifications and documentation requirements set forth in SUBMITTALS, equipment produced by other manufacturers, may be considered as equivalent.

2.2 DISHWASHER
Equipment Mark # 023

A. Dishwasher [NEWPP Admin Building Lab Only]

1. Basis of Design:

a. Maytag

2. Type: Under the counter

3. Style: “QUIETSERIES: 400” Model No. MDB8959SDM

4. Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel

5. ADA COMPLIANT

2.3 REFRIGERATION APPLIANCE
Equipment Mark # 024

A. Refrigerator [NEWPP Admin Building Lab Only]

1. Basis-of-Design

a. Sub-Zero Freezer Co., Inc.

2. Type: Freestanding / Built-in type: Model No. BI-36R/S

3. Refrigerator Features:

a. Door Storage: Modular compartments.

b. Micro-processor control

c. Air purification system

d. “Soft-Bright” interior lighting

e. Magnetic door

f. Adjustable shelves

g. Refrigerator capacity: 23.5 cubic feet

h. Dimensions: 35”W x 84”H x 24” D

i. Door Clearance: 37 ¼ inches

j. Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel

Energy Consumption: Measured and certified by AHAM HRF-) and Energy Star compliant.

4. Temperature Controls: Separate temperature controls for each compartment, and with switch for condensation-control heating element at freezer opening.

5. Appliance Color: Brushed Stainless Steel.

2.4 FREEZER APPLIANCE
Equipment Mark # 025

A. Freezer [NEWPP Admin Building Lab Only]

1. Basis-of-Design

a. Sub-Zero Freezer Co., Inc.

2. Type: Freestanding / Built-in type: Model No.BI-36F/S

3. Freezer Features:

a. Door Storage and Adjustable shelves

b. Micro-processor control

c. Water filtration system for ice maker

d. “Soft-Bright” interior lighting

e. Magnetic door

f. Freezer Capacity:22.7 cubic feet

g. Dimensions: 36”W x 84”H x 24’D

h. Door Clearance: 37 ¼ inches

i. Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel

2.5 ICE MAKER
Equipment Mark # 026

A. Ice Maker [NEWPP Admin Building Lab Only]

1. Basis of Design:

a. SCOTSMAN: CO522 Prodigy

b. 500 pound[s] capacity

c. Auto-Alert Indicator Lights

d. Water Sense purge control

e. “Smart-Board” to provide NAFEM data protocol and operational data

f. Energy Use: 6.7KWh/100 lbs of ice

g. Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel

h. Dimensions: 22” x 24” x 23” [Ice machine dimensions only]

2.6 RESIDENTIAL TYPE HOOD WITH EXHAUST FAN
Equipment Mark # 113

A. Exhaust Fan [4200 Leeland Annex Only]

1. Basis of Design:

a. Maytag: Model No. UXT5536AAS

b. Assembled Depth: 19.75 inches

c. Assembled Height: 9 inches

d. Assemble Width: 35.88 inches

e. Duct length: 600 inches

f. Duct Width: 10 inches

g. Color/Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel

h. Control Type: Push Button

i. Exhaust Vent Location: Top

j. Filter type: Metal

k. Light: YES

l. Maximum Air Flow Capacity [CFM]: 400

m. Minimum Air Flow Capacity [CFM] 106

n. Amps: 15

2.7 RESIDENTIAL MICROWAVE OVEN
Equipment Mark # 134

A. Microwave [4200 Leeland Annex Only]

1. General Electric: Model No.JNM3161DFBB - Black
2. Countertop model
3. Capacity: 1.6 cubic feet
4. Watts: 1000 [IEC-705 test procedure]
5. Auto and time defrost
6. Turnable on/off: Controls turntable operation
7. Two-speed, 300 CFM venting system that removes: smoke, steam and odors
8. Size: 29-7/8”W x 23-3/4”D x 15-3/4”H

2.8 REFRIGERATOR/FREEZER APPLIANCE
Equipment Mark # 188

A. Refrigerator/Freezer [4200 Leeland Annex Only]

1. Basis of Design:

a. Maytag: Side By Side; Model No. MSB26C6MDM

b. Refrigerator Capacity: 16.66 cubic feet

c. Freezer Capacity: 8.93 cubic feet

d. Total Capacity 25.6 cubic feet

e. ADA Compliant: ADA Height and side and front reach compliant

f. Filtration and Dispensing: Exterior type for water and ice

g. Filtered water

h. Door bins

i. Humidity-Controlled Drawers: 1 Full-Width

j. Door Style: Bevel-Edged

k. Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel

2.9 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Built-in Equipment: Securely anchor units to supporting cabinets or countertops with concealed fasteners. Verify that clearances are adequate for proper functioning and rough openings are completely concealed.

C. Freestanding Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.

D. Utilities: Refer to Divisions 15 and 16 for plumbing and electrical requirements.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Test each item of residential appliances to verify proper operation. Make necessary adjustments.

B. Verify that accessories required have been furnished and installed.

C. Remove packing material from residential appliances and leave units in clean condition, ready for operation.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain residential appliances. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 013233

PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:

1. Preconstruction photographs.
2. Periodic construction photographs.
3. Final completion construction photographs.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for unit prices for extra photographs.
2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as project record documents at Project closeout.
3. Section 024119 "Selective Structure Demolition" for photographic documentation before selective demolition operations commence.
4. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for photographic documentation before site clearing operations commence.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

A. Costs: Photographic documentation services are included under the cash allowance for construction photographic services established in Section 012100 "Allowances."

1.4 UNIT PRICES

A. Basis for Bids: Base number of construction photographs on average of 10 photographs per week over the duration of Project.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For photographer.

B. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.

C. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.

1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
2. Format: Minimum 3200 by 2400 pixels, in unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped, date and time stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan file.
3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:

   a. Name of Project.
   b. Name and contact information for photographer.
   c. Name of Architect and Owner.
   d. Name of Contractor.
   e. Date photograph was taken.
   f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
   g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

D. Construction Photographs: Submit four prints of each photographic view within seven days of taking photographs.

1. Format: 5-by-7-inch (127-by-178-mm) smooth-surface matte prints on single-weight, commercial-grade photographic paper; enclosed back to back in clear plastic sleeves that are punched for standard three-ring binder.
2. Identification: On back of each print, provide an applied label or rubber-stamped impression with the following information:

   a. Name of Project.
   b. Name and contact information for photographer.
   c. Name of Architect and Owner.
   d. Name of Contractor.
   e. Date photograph was taken if not date stamped by camera.
   f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
   g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has been regularly engaged as a professional photographer of construction projects for not less than three years.

B. Web-Based Photographic Documentation Service Provider: A firm specializing in providing photographic equipment, Web-based software, and related services for construction projects, with record of providing satisfactory services similar to those required for Project.

1.7 USAGE RIGHTS

A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights from photographer to Owner for unlimited reproduction of photographic documentation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 8 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

A. Photographer: Engage a qualified photographer to take construction photographs.

B. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.

1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.

C. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.

1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect and Owner.

D. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of excavation, commencement of demolition or starting construction, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.

1. Flag excavation areas construction limits before taking construction photographs.
2. Take 10 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
3. Take 10 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.

E. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 10 photographs weekly, with timing each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

F. General Contract-Directed Construction Photographs: From time to time, Architect Construction Manager will instruct photographer about number and frequency of photographs and general directions on vantage points. Select actual vantage points and take photographs to show the status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

G. Time-Lapse Sequence Construction Photographs: Take 10 photographs as indicated, to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

1. Frequency: Take photographs monthly, coinciding with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment.
2. Vantage Points: Following suggestions by Contractor, photographer to select vantage points. During each of the following construction phases, take not less than two of the required shots from same vantage point each time to create a time-lapse sequence as follows:

    a. Commencement of the Work, through completion of subgrade construction.
    b. Above-grade structural framing.
    c. Exterior building enclosure.
    d. Interior Work, through date of Substantial Completion.

H. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as project record documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

1. Do not include date stamp.

I. Additional Photographs: Architect or Owner may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified. Additional photographs will be paid for by Change Order and are not included in the Contract Sum or in the allowance for construction photographs.

1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Special events planned at Project site.
    b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
    c. Photographs to be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site. These photographs are not subject to unit prices or unit-cost allowances.
    d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
    e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.
    f. Owner's request for special publicity photographs.

END OF SECTION 013233

SECTION 13730

ACCESS CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Security access operating system and application software.
   2. Security access controllers connected to high-speed electronic-data transmission network.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CPU: Central processing unit.

B. Credential: Data assigned to an entity and used to identify that entity.

C. dpi: Dots per inch.

D. DTS: Digital Termination Service. A microwave-based, line-of-sight communication provided directly to the end user.

E. GFI: Ground fault interrupter.

F. Identifier: A credential card; keypad personal identification number; or code, biometric characteristic, or other unique identification entered as data into the entry-control database for the purpose of identifying an individual. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.

G. I/O: Input/Output.

H. LAN: Local area network.

I. Location: A Location on the network having a PC-to-controller communications link, with additional controllers at the Location connected to the PC-to-controller link with a TIA 485-A communications loop. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.

J. PDF: Portable Document Format. The file format used by the Acrobat document-exchange-system software from Adobe.

K. RAS: Remote access services.

L. RF: Radio frequency.

M. ROM: Read-only memory. ROM data are maintained through losses of power.

N. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.

O. TWAIN: Technology without an Interesting Name. A programming interface that lets a graphics application, such as an image editing program or desktop publishing program, activate a scanner, frame grabber, or other image-capturing device.

P. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

Q. USB: Universal serial bus.

R. WAN: Wide area network.

S. WAV: The digital audio format used in Microsoft Windows.

T. WMP: Windows media player.

U. Wiegand: Patented magnetic principle that uses specially treated wires embedded in the credential card.

V. Windows: Operating system by Microsoft Corporation.

W. Workstation: A PC with software that is configured for specific, limited security-system functions.

X. WYSIWYG: What You See Is What You Get. Text and graphics appear on the screen the same as they will in print.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Reference each product to a location on Drawings. Test and evaluation data presented in Product Data shall comply with SIA BIO-01.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Diagrams for cable management system.
2. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cable and asset identification system of the software specified in Parts 2 and 3.
3. Wiring Diagrams. For power, signal, and control wiring. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:

   a. Workstation outlets, jacks, and jack assemblies.
   b. Patch cords.
   c. Patch panels.

4. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in "Identification" Article.
5. Battery and charger calculations for central station, workstations, and controllers.

C. Other Action Submittals:

1. Project planning documents as specified in Part 3.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For security system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Microsoft Windows software documentation.
2. PC installation and operating documentation, manuals, and software for the PC and all installed peripherals. Software shall include system restore, emergency boot diskettes, and drivers for all installed hardware. Provide separately for each PC.
3. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on CD-ROM of the hard-copy submittal.
4. System installation and setup guides with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

1. Cable installer must have on staff a registered communication distribution designer certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain central station, workstations, controllers, Identifier readers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

E. Comply with SIA DC-03 and SIA DC-07.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Controllers:

1. Store in temperature- and humidity-controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers. Maintain ambient temperature between 50 and 85 deg F, and not more than 80 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
2. Open each container; verify contents against packing list; and file copy of packing list, complete with container identification, for inclusion in operation and maintenance data.

3. Mark packing list with the same designations assigned to materials and equipment for recording in the system labeling schedules that are generated by software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article.
4. Save original manufacturer's containers and packing materials and deliver as directed under provisions covering extra materials.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
   1. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in air-conditioned indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION

A. Security Access System: Access control system controllers shall be manufactured by Open Options. No Substitute

B. System Software: Make programming modifications required to monitor and operate the access control devices installed in the building.

C. Network(s) connecting Central Monitoring System and controllers shall consist of one or more of the following:

   1. Local area, IEEE 802.3 Fast Ethernet Gigabit-Ethernet, star topology network based on TCP/IP.

2.2 CONTROLLERS

A. Controllers: Intelligent peripheral control unit, complying with UL 294, that stores time, date, valid codes, access levels, and similar data downloaded from the central station or workstation for controlling its operation.

B. Subject to compliance with requirements in this article, manufacturers may use multipurpose controllers.

C. Battery Backup: Sealed, lead acid; sized to provide run time during a power outage of 90 minutes, complying with UL 924.

D. Alarm Annunciation Controller:

   1. The controller shall automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network, with dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.

a. Inputs: Monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions. Provides at least eight alarm inputs, which are suitable for wiring as normally open or normally closed contacts for alarm conditions.
b. Alarm-Line Supervision:

1) Supervise the alarm lines by monitoring each circuit for changes or disturbances in the signal, and for conditions as described in UL 1076 for line security equipment using dc change measurements. System shall initiate an alarm in response to an abnormal current, which is a dc change of 5 percent or more for longer than 500 ms.
2) Transmit alarm-line-supervision alarm to the central station during the next interrogation cycle after the abnormal current condition.

c. Outputs: Managed by central-station software.

2. Auxiliary Equipment Power: A GFI service outlet inside the controller enclosure.

E. Entry-Control Controller:

1. Function: Provide local entry-control functions including one- and two-way communications with access-control devices such as card readers, door strikes, magnetic locks, and exit push buttons.

a. Operate as a stand-alone portal controller using the downloaded database during periods of communication loss between the controller and the field-device network.
b. Accept information generated by the entry-control devices; automatically process this information to determine valid identification of the individual present at the portal:

1) On authentication of the credentials or information presented, check privileges of the identified individual, allowing only those actions granted as privileges.
2) Privileges shall include, but are not limited to, time of day control, day of week control, group control, and visitor escort control.

c. Maintain a date-, time-, and Location-stamped record of each transaction. A transaction is defined as any successful or unsuccessful attempt to gain access through a controlled portal by the presentation of credentials or other identifying information.

2. Inputs:

a. Data from entry-control devices; use this input to change modes between access and secure.
b. Database downloads and updates from the central station that include enrollment and privilege information.

3. Outputs:

a. Indicate success or failure of attempts to use entry-control devices and make comparisons of presented information with stored identification information.
b. Grant or deny entry by sending control signals to portal-control devices and mask intrusion-alarm annunciation from sensors stimulated by authorized entries.

c. Maintain a date-, time-, and Location-stamped record of each transaction and transmit transaction records to the central station.
d. Door Prop Alarm: If a portal is held open for longer than 20 seconds, alarm sounds.

4. With power supplies sufficient to power at voltage and frequency required for field devices and portal-control devices.
5. Data Line Problems: For periods of loss of communication with the central station, or when data transmission is degraded and generating continuous checksum errors, the controller shall continue to control entry by accepting identifying information, making authentication decisions, checking privileges, and controlling portal-control devices.

   a. Store up to 1000 transactions during periods of communication loss between the controller and access-control devices for subsequent upload to the central station on restoration of communication.

6. Controller Power: NFPA 70, Class II power-supply transformer, with 12- or 24-V ac secondary, backup battery and charger.

   a. Backup Battery: Premium, valve-regulated, recombinant-sealed, lead-calcium battery; spill proof; with a full one-year warranty and a pro rata 19-year warranty. With single-stage, constant-voltage-current, limited battery charger, comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current recommendations for maximum battery life.
   b. Backup Power-Supply Capacity: 90 minutes of battery supply. Submit battery and charger calculations.
   c. Power Monitoring: Provide manual, dynamic battery-load test, initiated and monitored at the control center; with automatic disconnection of the controller when battery voltage drops below controller limits. Report by using local controller-mounted digital displays and by communicating status to central station. Indicate normal power on and battery charger on trickle charge. Indicate and report the following:

      1) Trouble Alarm: Normal power-off load assumed by battery.
      2) Trouble Alarm: Low battery.
      3) Alarm: Power off.

2.3 CARD READERS, CREDENTIAL CARDS, AND KEYPADS

A. Card-Reader Power: Powered from its associated controller, including its standby power source, and shall not dissipate more than 5 W.

B. Response Time: Card reader shall respond to passage requests by generating a signal that is sent to the controller. Response time shall be 800 ms or less, from the time the card reader finishes reading the credential card until a response signal is generated.

C. Enclosure: Suitable for surface, semi-flush, or weatherproof mounting. Mounting types shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:

   1. Indoors, controlled environment.
   2. Outdoors, with built-in heaters or other cold-weather equipment to extend the operating temperature range as needed for operation at the site.

D. Display: Digital visual indicator shall provide visible and audible status indications and user prompts. Indicate power on or off, whether user passage requests have been accepted or rejected, and whether the door is locked or unlocked.

E. Combination magnetic stripe and proximity readers:

1. Magnetic stripe card reader shall read tracks 1 2 and 3 on coded magnetic stripe cards bi directionally, using a single read head, 3-60 ips card speed. Reads encoded data that meets ANSI/ISO/AAMVA standards.
2. The card reader shall read proximity cards in a range from direct contact to at least 6 inches from the reader.

F. Communication Protocol: Compatible with local processor.

2.4 PUSH-BUTTON SWITCHES

A. Push-Button Switches: Momentary-contact back-lighted push buttons with stainless-steel switch enclosures.

B. Electrical Ratings:

1. Minimum continuous current rating of 10 A at 120-V ac or 5 A at 240-V ac.
2. Contacts that will make 720 VA at 60 A and that will break at 720 VA at 10 A.

C. Enclosures: Flush or surface mounting. Push buttons shall be suitable for flush mounting in the switch enclosures.

D. Enclosures shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:

1. Indoors, controlled environment.
2. Indoors, uncontrolled environment.
3. Outdoors.

E. Power: Push-button switches shall be powered from their associated controller, using dc control.

2.5 FIELD-PROCESSING SOFTWARE

A. Operating System:

1. Local processors shall contain an operating system that controls and schedules that local processor's activities in real time.
2. Local processor shall maintain a point database in its memory that includes parameters, constraints, and the latest value or status of all points connected to that local processor.
3. Execution of local processor application programs shall utilize the data in memory resident files.
4. Operating system shall include a real-time clock function that maintains the seconds, minutes, hours, date, and month, including day of the week.
5. Local processor real-time clock shall be automatically synchronized with the central station at least once per day to plus or minus 10 seconds (the time synchronization shall be accomplished automatically, without operator action and without requiring system shutdown).

B. Startup Software:

1. Causes automatic commencement of operation without human intervention, including startup of all connected I/O functions.
2. Local processor restart program based on detection of power failure at the local processor shall be included in the local processor software.
3. Initiates operation of self-test diagnostic routines.
4. Upon failure of the local processor, if the database and application software are no longer resident, the local processor shall not restart and systems shall remain in the failure mode indicated until the necessary repairs are made.
5. If the database and application programs are resident, the local processor shall immediately resume operation.

C. Operating Mode:

1. Local processors shall control and monitor inputs and outputs as specified, independent of communications with the central station or designated workstations.
2. Alarms, status changes, and other data shall be transmitted to the central station or designated workstations when communications circuits are operable.
3. If communications are not available, each local processor shall function in a stand-alone mode and operational data, including the status and alarm data normally transmitted to the central station or designated workstations, shall be stored for later transmission to the central station or designated workstations.
4. Storage for the latest 4000 events shall be provided at local processors, as a minimum.
5. Local processors shall accept software downloaded from the central station.
6. Panel shall support flash ROM technology to accomplish firmware downloads from a central location.

D. Failure Mode: Upon failure for any reason, each local processor shall perform an orderly shutdown and force all local processor outputs to a predetermined (failure-mode) state, consistent with the failure modes shown and the associated control device.

E. Functions:

1. Monitoring of inputs.
2. Control of outputs.
3. Reporting of alarms automatically to the central station.
4. Reporting of sensor and output status to central station upon request.
5. Maintenance of real time, automatically updated by the central station at least once a day.
6. Communication with the central station.
7. Execution of local processor resident programs.
8. Diagnostics.
9. Download and upload data to and from the central station.

2.6 FIELD-PROCESSING HARDWARE

A. Alarm Annunciation Local Processor:

1. Respond to interrogations from the field device network, recognize and store alarm status inputs until they are transmitted to the central station, and change outputs based on commands received from the central station.

2. Local processor shall also automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network and provide dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.
3. Local processor inputs shall monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions.
4. Local processor shall have at least eight alarm inputs which allow wiring contacts as normally open or normally closed for alarm conditions; and shall provide line supervision for each input by monitoring each input for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc current change measurements.
5. Local processor shall report line supervision alarms to the central station.
6. Alarms shall be reported for any condition that remains abnormal at an input for longer than 500 milliseconds.
7. Alarm condition shall be transmitted to the central computer during the next interrogation cycle.
8. Local processor outputs shall reflect the state of commands issued by the central station.
9. Outputs shall be a form C contact and shall include normally open and normally closed contacts.
10. Local processor shall have at least four command outputs.
11. Local processor shall be able to communicate with the central station via RS-485 or TCP/IP as a minimum.

B. Processor Power Supply:

1. Local processor and sensors shall be powered from an uninterruptible power source.
2. Uninterruptible power source shall provide eight hours of battery back-up power in the event of primary power failure and shall automatically fully recharge the batteries within 12 hours after primary power is restored.
3. If the facility is without an emergency generator, the uninterruptible power source shall provide 24 hours of battery backup power.
4. There shall be no equipment malfunctions or perturbations or loss of data during the switch from primary to battery power and vice versa.
5. Batteries shall be sealed, non-outgassing type.
6. Power supply shall be equipped with an indicator for ac input power and an indicator for dc output power.
7. Loss of primary power shall be reported to the central station as an alarm.

C. Auxiliary Equipment Power: A GFI service outlet shall be furnished inside the local processor's enclosure.

D. Entry-Control Local Processor:

1. Entry-control local processor shall respond to interrogations from the field device network, recognize and store alarm status inputs until they are transmitted to the central station, and change outputs based on commands received from the central station.
2. Local processor shall also automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network and provide dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.
3. Entry-control local processor shall provide local entry-control functions including communicating with field devices such as card readers, keypads, biometric personnel identity-verification devices, door strikes, magnetic latches, gate and door operators, and exit push buttons.
4. Processor shall also accept data from entry-control field devices as well as database downloads and updates from the central station that include enrollment and privilege information.

5. Processor shall send indications of successful or failed attempts to use entry-control field devices and shall make comparisons of presented information with stored identification information.
6. Processor shall grant or deny entry by sending control signals to portal-control devices and mask intrusion-alarm annunciation from sensors stimulated by authorized entries.
7. Entry-control local processor shall use inputs from entry-control devices to change modes between access and secure.
8. Local processor shall maintain a date-time- and location-stamped record of each transaction and transmit transaction records to the central station.
9. Processor shall operate as a stand-alone portal controller using the downloaded database during periods of communication loss between the local processor and the central station.
10. Processor shall store a minimum of 4000 transactions during periods of communication loss between the local processor and the central station for subsequent upload to the central station upon restoration of communication.
11. Local processor inputs shall monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions.
12. Local processor shall have at least eight alarm inputs which allow wiring contacts as normally open or normally closed for alarm conditions; and shall also provide line supervision for each input by monitoring each input for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc current change measurements.
13. Local processor shall report line supervision alarms to the central station.
14. Alarms shall be reported for any condition that remains abnormal at an input for longer than 500 ms.
15. Alarm condition shall be transmitted to the central station during the next interrogation cycle.
16. Entry-control local processor shall include the necessary software drivers to communicate with entry-control field devices. Information generated by the entry-control field devices shall be accepted by the local processor and automatically processed to determine valid identification of the individual present at the portal.
17. Upon authentication of the credentials or information presented, the local processor shall automatically check privileges of the identified individual, allowing only those actions granted as privileges.
18. Privileges shall include, but are not limited to, time of day control, day of week control, group control, and visitor escort control. The local processor shall maintain a date-time- and location-stamped record of each transaction.
19. Transaction is defined as any successful or unsuccessful attempt to gain access through a controlled portal by the presentation of credentials or other identifying information.
20. Local processor outputs shall reflect the state of commands issued by the central station.
21. Outputs shall be a form C contact and shall include normally open and normally closed contacts.
22. Local processor shall have at least four addressable outputs.
23. The entry-control local processor shall also provide control outputs to portal-control devices.
24. Local processor shall be able to communicate with the central station via RS-485 or TCP/IP as a minimum.
25. The system manufacturer shall provide strategies for downloading database information for panel configurations and cardholder data to minimize the required download time when using IP connectivity.

2.7 TIA 232-F ASCII INTERFACE SPECIFICATIONS

A. ASCII interface shall allow TIA 232-F connections to be made between the control station operating as the host PC and any equipment that will accept TIA 232-F ASCII command strings, such as CCTV switches, intercoms, and paging systems.

1. Alarm inputs in system shall allow for individual programming to output up to four unique ASCII character strings through two different COM ports on the host PC.
2. Inputs shall have the ability to be defined to transmit a unique ASCII string for alarm and one for restore through one COM port, and a unique ASCII string for a nonalarm, abnormal condition and one for a normal condition through the same or different COM port.
3. Predefined ASCII character strings shall have the ability to be up to 420 characters long with full use of all the ASCII control characters, such as return or line feed. Character strings shall be defined in the system database and then assigned to the appropriate inputs.
4. COM ports of the host PC used to interface with external equipment shall be defined in the setup portion of the software. COM port's baud rate, word length, stop bits, and parity shall be definable in the software to match that of the external equipment.

B. Pager-System Interface: Alarms shall be able to activate a pager system with customized message for each input alarm.

1. TIA 232-F output shall be capable of connection to a pager interface that can be used to call a paging system or service and send a signal to a portable pager. System shall allow an individual alphanumeric message per alarm input to be sent to the paging system. This interface shall support both numeric and alphanumeric pagers.

C. Alarm-System Interface:

1. TIA 232-F output shall be capable of transmitting alarms from other monitoring and alarm systems to central-station automation software.
2. Alternatively, alarms that are received by this access-control system are to be transferred to the alarm automation system as if they were sent through a digital alarm receiver.

a. System shall be able to transmit an individual message from any alarm input to a burglar-alarm automation monitoring system.
b. System shall be able to append to each message a predefined set of character strings as a prefix and a suffix.

2.8 CABLES

A. General Cable Requirements: Comply with requirements in Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" and as recommended by system manufacturer for integration requirement.

B. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 232-F Cables:

1. Two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, and individual aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; PVC jacket.
2. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.

3. NFPA 70, Type CM.
4. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

C. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 485-A Cables: Two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, PVC jacket, and NFPA 70, Type CMG.

D. Multiconductor, PVC, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. No. 22 AWG, paired and twisted multiple conductors, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, semirigid PVC insulation, overall aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage, plus tinned copper braid shield with 65 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.
4. For TIA 232-F applications.

E. Paired, PVC, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. Three pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shielded pairs each with No. 22 AWG, stranded tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CM.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

F. Paired, Lock Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

G. Paired, Lock Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

H. Paired, Input Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, overall aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield with No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMR.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1666 riser flame test.

I. Paired, AC Transformer Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (7x26) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.

J. LAN Cabling:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."
2. NFPA 262.

2.9 TRANSFORMERS

A. NFPA 70, Class II control transformers, NRTL listed. Transformers for security access-control system shall not be shared with any other system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.

B. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to PCs, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.

B. Comply with TIA/EIA 606-A, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."

C. Obtain detailed Project planning forms from manufacturer of access-control system; develop custom forms to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Project planning documents for review and approval.
   1. For each Location, record setup of controller features and access requirements.
   2. Propose start and stop times for time zones and holidays, and match up access levels for doors.
   3. Set up groups, facility codes, linking, and list inputs and outputs for each controller.
   4. Assign action message names and compose messages.
   5. Set up alarms. Establish interlocks between alarms, intruder detection, and video surveillance features.
   6. Prepare and install alarm graphic maps.
   7. Develop user-defined fields.
   8. Develop screen layout formats.
   9. Propose setups for guard tours and key control.
   10. Discuss badge layout options; design badges.
   11. Complete system diagnostics and operation verification.
   12. Prepare a specific plan for system testing, startup, and demonstration.
   13. Develop acceptance test concept and, on approval, develop specifics of the test.

D. In meetings with Architect and Owner, present Project planning documents and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use final documents to set up system software.

3.3 CABLING

A. Comply with NECA 1, "Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction."

B. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."

C. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

D. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Use NRTL-listed plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

E. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5E rating of components and fiber-optic rating of components, and that ensure Category 6 and fiber-optic performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.

F. Boxes and enclosures containing security-system components or cabling, and which are easily accessible to employees or to the public, shall be provided with a lock. Boxes above ceiling level in occupied areas of the building shall not be considered accessible. Junction boxes and small device enclosures below ceiling level and easily accessible to employees or the public shall be covered with a suitable cover plate and secured with tamperproof screws.

G. Install end-of-line resistors at the field device location and not at the controller or panel location.

3.4 CABLE APPLICATION

A. Comply with TIA 569-B, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces."

B. Cable application requirements are minimum requirements and shall be exceeded if recommended or required by manufacturer of system hardware.

C. TIA 232-F Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of 50 ft..

D. TIA 485-A Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of 4000 ft..

E. Card Readers:

1. Install number of conductor pairs recommended by manufacturer for the functions specified.
2. Unless manufacturer recommends larger conductors, install No. 22 AWG wire if maximum distance from controller to the reader is 250 ft., and install No. 20 AWG wire if maximum distance is 500 ft..
3. For greater distances, install "extender" or "repeater" modules recommended by manufacturer of the controller.

4. Install minimum No. 18 AWG shielded cable to readers and keypads that draw 50 mA or more.

F. Install minimum No. 16 AWG cable from controller to electrically powered locks. Do not exceed 250 ft..

G. Install minimum No. 18 AWG ac power wire from transformer to controller, with a maximum distance of 25 ft..

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Comply with Section 16060 "Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security."

B. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."

C. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

D. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.

E. Signal Ground:

1. Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
2. Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
3. Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each equipment room and wiring closet.

3.6 INSTALLATION

A. Push Buttons: Where multiple push buttons are housed within a single switch enclosure, they shall be stacked vertically with each push-button switch labeled with 1/4-inch- high text and symbols as required. Push-button switches shall be connected to the controller associated with the portal to which they are applied, and shall operate the appropriate electric strike, electric bolt, or other facility release device.

B. Install card readers, keypads, push buttons, and biometric readers.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements in Section 16075 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and with TIA/EIA 606-A.

B. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

1. All wiring conductors connected to terminal strips shall be individually numbered, and each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with the name and number of the particular device as shown.

2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if the color of the wire is consistent with the associated wire connected and numbered within the panel or cabinet.

C. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.

3.8 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform database tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license to Owner.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. LAN Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use Class 2, bidirectional, Category 5 tester. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to TIA/EIA 568-B.1, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards - Part 1: General Requirements." Link performance for UTP cables must comply with minimum criteria in TIA/EIA 568-B.1.
2. Test each circuit and component of each system. Tests shall include, but are not limited to, measurements of power-supply output under maximum load, signal loop resistance, and leakage to ground where applicable. System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of the calculated battery operating time. Provide special equipment and software if testing requires special or dedicated equipment.
3. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.

C. Devices and circuits will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Enroll and prepare badges and access cards for Owner's operators, management, and security personnel.

3.11 PROTECTION

A. Maintain strict security during the installation of equipment and software. Rooms housing the control station, and workstations that have been powered up shall be locked and secured with an activated burglar alarm and access-control system reporting to a central station complying with UL 1610, "Central-Station Burglar-Alarm Units," during periods when a qualified operator in the employ of Contractor is not present.

3.12 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain security access system. Provide for 8 hours of training for up to 16 maintenance staff for operation, maintenance and repair procedures, 8 hours of training for IT or security staff from programming and database management and 4 hours of training for up to 8 building staff for operation procedures.

END OF SECTION 13730

SECTION 13740

INTRUSION DETECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Intrusion detection with communication links to perform monitoring, alarm, and control functions.
2. Integration of other electronic and electrical systems and equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCTV: Closed-circuit television.

B. PIR: Passive infrared.

C. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

D. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

E. Control Unit: System component that monitors inputs and controls outputs through various circuits.

F. Master Control Unit: System component that accepts inputs from other control units and may also perform control-unit functions. The unit has limited capacity for the number of protected zones and is installed at an unattended location or at a location where it is not the attendant's primary function to monitor the security system.

G. Monitoring Station: Facility that receives signals and has personnel in attendance at all times to respond to signals. A central station is a monitoring station that is listed.

H. Protected Zone: A protected premises or an area within a protected premises that is provided with means to prevent an unwanted event.

I. Standard Intruder: A person who weighs 100 lb or less and whose height is 60 inches or less; dressed in a long-sleeved shirt, slacks, and shoes unless environmental conditions at the site require protective clothing.

J. Standard-Intruder Movement: Any movement, such as walking, running, crawling, rolling, or jumping, of a "standard intruder" in a protected zone.

K. Systems Integration: The bringing together of components of several systems containing interacting components to achieve indicated functional operation of combined systems.

L. Zone. A defined area within a protected premises. It is a space or area for which an intrusion must be detected and uniquely identified. The sensor or group of sensors must then be assigned to perform the detection, and any interface equipment between sensors and communication must link to master control unit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Components for sensing, detecting[**,** systems integration, and control, including dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail assemblies of standard components that are custom assembled for specific application on this Project.

1. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components including interconnections between components specified in this Section and those furnished under other Sections. Indicate methods used to achieve systems integration. Indicate control, signal, and data communication paths and identify networks and control interface devices and media to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.

   a. Indicate methods used to achieve systems integration.
   b. Indicate control, signal, and data communication paths and identify PLCs, networks, control interface devices, and media to be used.
   c. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
   d. Describe methods used to protect against power outages and transient voltages including types and ratings of isolation and surge suppression devices used in data, communication, signal, control, and ac and dc power circuits.

2. Raceway Riser Diagrams: Detail raceway runs required for intrusion detection and for systems integration. Include designation of devices connected by raceway, raceway type and size, and type and size of wire and cable fill for each raceway run.
3. UPS: Sizing calculations.
4. Site and Floor Plans: Indicate final outlet and device locations, routing of raceways, and cables inside and outside the building.
5. Master Control-Unit Console Layout: Show required device identification.
6. Device Address List: Coordinate with final system programming.
7. System Wiring Diagrams: Include system diagrams unique to Project. Show connections for all devices, components, and auxiliary equipment. Include diagrams for equipment and for system with all terminals and interconnections identified.
8. Details of surge-protection devices and their installation.
9. Sensor detection patterns and adjustment ranges.

C. Equipment and System Operation Description: Include method of operation and supervision of each component and each type of circuit. Show sequence of operations for manually and automatically initiated system or equipment inputs. Description must cover this specific Project; manufacturer's standard descriptions for generic systems are unacceptable.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, intrusion detection systems integrator, and testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

D. Other Information Submittals:

1. Test Plan and Schedule: Test plan defining all tests required to ensure that system meets technical, operational, and performance specifications within 60 days of date of Contract award.
2. Examination reports documenting inspections of substrates, areas, and conditions.
3. Anchor inspection reports documenting inspections of built-in and cast-in anchors.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For intrusion detection system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Data for each type of product, including features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
2. Master control-unit hardware and software data.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Intrusion Detection Devices: Furnish quantity equal to five percent of the number of units of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.
2. Fuses: Three of each kind and size.
3. Tool Kit: Provide six sets of tools for use with security fasteners, each packaged in a compartmented kit configured for easy handling and storage.
4. Security Fasteners: Furnish no fewer than 1 box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type and size of security fastener installed.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. An employer of workers, at least one of whom is a technician certified by the National Burglar & Fire Alarm Association.
2. Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Intrusion Detection Systems Integrator Qualifications: An experienced intrusion detection equipment supplier and Installer who has completed systems integration work for installations

similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Control Units, Devices, and Communications with Monitoring Station: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency for compliance with SIA CP-01.

F. FM Global Compliance: FM-Approved and -labeled intrusion detection devices and equipment.

G. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Altitude: Sea level to 500 feet.
2. Master Control Unit: Rated for continuous operation in an ambient of 60 to 85 deg F and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
3. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except master control unit, installed in temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambients of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
4. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambients of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Comply with UL 294 and UL 639 for outdoor-use equipment. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

A. Description: Intrusion Detection System: System control hardware shall be manufactured by BOSCH and shall compatible with the Intrusion Detection System currently in use at the plant.

B. System Software: Make programming modifications required to monitor and operate the Intrusion Detection control devices installed in the building.

C. Supervision: System components shall be continuously monitored for normal, alarm, supervisory**,** and trouble conditions. Indicate deviations from normal conditions at any location in system. Indication includes identification of device or circuit in which deviation has occurred and whether deviation is an alarm or malfunction.

1. Alarm Signal: Display at master control unit and actuate audible and visual alarm devices.
2. Trouble Condition Signal: Distinct from other signals, indicating that system is not fully functional. Trouble signal shall indicate system problems such as battery failure, open or shorted transmission line conductors, or control-unit failure.
3. Supervisory Condition Signal: Distinct from other signals, indicating an abnormal condition as specified for the particular device or control unit.

D. System Control: Master control unit shall directly monitor intrusion detection units and connecting wiring.

E. System shall automatically reboot program without error or loss of status or alarm data after any system disturbance.

F. Operator Commands:

1. Help with System Operation: Display all commands available to operator. Help command, followed by a specific command, shall produce a short explanation of the purpose, use, and system reaction to that command.
2. Acknowledge Alarm: To indicate that alarm message has been observed by operator.
3. Place Protected Zone in Access: Disable all intrusion-alarm circuits of a specific protected zone. Tamper circuits may not be disabled by operator.
4. Place Protected Zone in Secure: Activate all intrusion-alarm circuits of a protected zone.
5. Protected Zone Test: Initiate operational test of a specific protected zone.
6. System Test: Initiate system-wide operational test.
7. Print reports.

G. Timed Control at Master Control Unit: Allow automatically timed "secure" and "access" functions of selected protected zones.

H. Response Time: Two seconds between actuation of any alarm and its indication at master control unit.

I. Circuit Supervision: Supervise all signal and data transmission lines, links with other systems, and sensors from master control unit. Indicate circuit and detection device faults with both protected zone and trouble signals, sound a distinctive audible tone, and illuminate an LED. Maximum permissible elapsed time between occurrence of a trouble condition and indication at master control unit is 20 seconds. Initiate an alarm in response to opening, closing, shorting, or grounding of a signal or data transmission line.

J. Programmed Secure-Access Control: System shall be programmable to automatically change status of various combinations of protected zones between secure and access conditions at scheduled times. Status changes may be preset for repetitive, daily, and weekly; specially scheduled operations may be preset up to a year in advance. Manual secure-access control stations shall override programmed settings.

K. Manual Secure-Access Control: Coded entries at manual stations shall change status of associated protected zone between secure and access conditions.

2.2 SYSTEM COMPONENT REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Detection devices and their communication features, connecting wiring, and master control unit shall be selected and configured with accessories for full compatibility with the following equipment:

1. Door hardware specified in Section 08710 "Door Hardware."
2. Access control system specified in Section 13730 "Access Control."
3. Fire alarm system specified in Section 13851 "Addressable Fire-Alarm System."

B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor entry connection to components.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Lines 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 16289 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Lines: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency for compliance with NFPA 731.

C. Intrusion Detection Units: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency for compliance with UL 639.

D. Interference Protection: Components shall be unaffected by radiated RFI and electrical induction of 15 V/m over a frequency range of 10 to 10,000 MHz and conducted interference signals up to 0.25-V rms injected into power supply lines at 10 to 10,000 MHz.

E. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on detection devices, control units, annunciators, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled and when entering conductors are cut or disconnected. Master control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

F. Self-Testing Devices: Automatically test themselves periodically, but not less than once per hour, to verify normal device functioning and alarm initiation capability. Devices transmit test failure to master control unit.

G. Antimasking Devices: Automatically check operation continuously or at intervals of a minute or less, and use signal-processing logic to detect blocking, masking, jamming, tampering, or other operational dysfunction. Devices transmit detection of operational dysfunction to master control unit as an alarm signal.

H. Addressable Devices: Transmitter and receivers shall communicate unique device identification and status reports to master control unit.

I. Remote-Controlled Devices: Individually and remotely adjustable for sensitivity and individually monitored at master control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition.

2.3 ENCLOSURES

A. Interior Sensors: Enclosures that protect against dust, falling dirt, and dripping noncorrosive liquids.

B. Interior Electronics: NEMA 250, Type 12.

C. Screw Covers: Where enclosures are readily accessible, secure with security fasteners of type appropriate for enclosure.

2.4 SECURE AND ACCESS DEVICES

A. Keypad and Display Module: Arranged for entering and executing commands for system-status changes and for displaying system-status and command-related data.

B. Key-Operated Switch: Change protected zone between secure and access conditions.

2.5 DOOR AND WINDOW SWITCHES

A. Description: Balanced-magnetic switch, complying with UL 634, installed on frame with integral overcurrent device to limit current to 80 percent of switch capacity. Bias magnet and minimum of three encapsulated reed switches shall resist compromise from introduction of foreign magnetic fields.

B. Flush-Mounted Switches: Unobtrusive and flush with surface of door and window frame.

C. Remote Test: Simulate movement of actuating magnet from master control unit.

2.6 PIEZOELECTRIC-TYPE, GLASS-BREAK SENSORS

A. Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency for compliance with SIA GB-01.

B. Device Performance: Detect unique, high-frequency vibrations caused by breaking glass.

1. Sensor Element: Piezoelectric crystals in a housing designed to mount directly to glass surface with adhesive provided by element manufacturer. Circular detection pattern, with at least a 60-inch radius on a continuous glass pane. Sensor element shall not be larger than 4 sq. in..
2. Hookup Cable: Factory installed, not less than 72 inches.
3. Activation Indicator: LED on sensor housing that lights when responding to vibrations, remaining on until manually reset at sensor control unit[**or at master control unit**].
4. Control Unit: Integral with sensor housing or in a separate assembly, locally adjustable by control under housing cover.
5. Glass-Break Simulator: A device to induce frequencies into protected glass pane that simulate breaking glass without causing damage to glass.

2.7 MICROWAVE-PIR DUAL-TECHNOLOGY SENSORS

A. Description: Single unit combining a sensor that detects changes in microwave signals and a PIR sensor that detects changes in ambient level of infrared emissions caused by standard-intruder movement within detection pattern.

B. Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency for compliance with SIA PIR-01.

C. Device Performance: An alarm is transmitted when either sensor detects a standard intruder within a period of three to eight seconds from when the other sensor detects a standard intruder.

1. Minimum Detection Pattern: A room 20 by 30 feet.
2. PIR Sensor Sensitivity: Adjustable pattern coverage to detect a change in temperature of 2 deg F or less, and standard-intruder movement within sensor's detection patterns at any speed between 0.3 to 7.5 fps across two adjacent segments of detector's field of view.
3. Microwave Sensor Sensitivity: Adjustable, able to detect standard-intruder movement within sensor's detection pattern at any speed between 0.3 to 7.5 fps. Sensor sensitivity adjustments shall be accessible only when sensor housing is removed, and sensors shall comply with 47 CFR 15.
4. Activation Indicator: LED indicator shall not be visible during normal operation. Indicator shall light when sensor detects a standard intruder. Locate test enabling switch under sensor housing cover.
5. Remote Test: When initiated by master control unit, start a test sequence for each detector element that simulates standard-intruder movement within sensor's detection patterns, causing an alarm.

2.8 MASTER CONTROL UNIT

A. Description: Supervise sensors and detection subsystems and their connecting communication links, status control (secure or access) of sensors and detector subsystems, activation of alarms and supervisory and trouble signals, and other indicated functions.

1. System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
2. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
3. Addressable initiation devices that communicate device identity and status.
4. Control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment in response to an alarm.

B. Construction: Wall mounted cabinet, modular, with separate and independent alarm and supervisory system modules. Arrangements that require removal of field wiring for module replacement are unacceptable.

C. Comply with UL 1076.

D. Console Controls and Displays: Arranged for interface between human operator at master control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Annunciator and Display: LCD, two line(s) of 40 characters, minimum.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
3. Control-Unit Network: Automatic communication of alarm, status changes, commands, and other communications required for system operation. Communication shall return to normal after partial or total network interruption such as power loss or transient event. Total or partial signaling network failures shall identify the failure and record the failure at the annunciator display and at the system printer.

4. Field Device Network: Communicate between the control unit and field devices of the system. Communications shall consist of alarm, network status, and status and control of field-mounted processors. Each field-mounted device shall be interrogated during each interrogation cycle.
5. Operator Controls: Manual switches and push-to-test buttons that do not require a key to operate. Prevent resetting of alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals while alarm or trouble condition persists. Include the following:

    a. Acknowledge alarm.
    b. Silence alarm.
    c. System reset.
    d. LED test.

6. Timing Unit: Solid state, programmable, 365 days.
7. Confirmation: Relays, contactors, and other control devices shall have auxiliary contacts that provide confirmation signals to system for their on or off status. Software shall interpret such signals, display equipment status, and initiate failure signals.
8. Alarm Indication: Audible signal sounds and an LED lights at master control unit identifying the addressable detector originating the alarm. Annunciator panel displays a common alarm light and sounds an audible tone.
9. Alarm Indication: Audible signal sounds and a plain-language identification of the addressable detector originating the alarm appears on LCD display at master control unit. Annunciator panel displays a common alarm light and sounds an audible tone.
10. Alarm Indication: Audible signal sounds and a plain-language identification of the addressable detector originating the alarm appears on LCD display at master control unit.
11. Alarm activation sounds a siren.

E. Power Supply Circuits: Master control units shall provide power for remote power-consuming detection devices. Circuit capacity shall be adequate for at least a 25 percent increase in load.

F. UPS: Comply with Section 263353 "Static Uninterruptible Power Supply." UPS shall be sized to provide a minimum of six hours of master control-unit operation.

G. Cabinet: Lockable, steel enclosure arranged so operations required for testing, normal operation, and maintenance are performed from front of enclosure. If more than a single cabinet is required to form a complete control unit, provide exactly matching modular enclosures. Accommodate all components and allow ample gutter space for field wiring. Identify each enclosure by an engraved, laminated, phenolic-resin nameplate. Lettering on enclosure nameplate shall not be less than 1 inch high. Identify, with permanent labels, individual components and modules within cabinets.

H. Transmission to Monitoring Station: A communications device to automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to the monitoring station, operating over a standard voice grade telephone leased line. Comply with UL 1635.

2.9 SECURITY FASTENERS

A. Operable only by tools produced for use on specific type of fastener by fastener manufacturer or other licensed fabricator. Drive system type, head style, material, and protective coating as required for assembly, installation, and strength.

B. Drive System Types: Pinned Torx-Plus.

C. Socket Flat Countersunk Head Fasteners:

1. Heat-treated alloy steel, ASTM F 835.
2. Stainless steel, ASTM F 879, Group 1 CW.

D. Socket Button Head Fasteners:

1. Heat-treated alloy steel, ASTM F 835.
2. Stainless steel, ASTM F 879, Group 1 CW.

E. Socket Head Cap Fasteners:

1. Heat-treated alloy steel, ASTM A 574.
2. Stainless steel, ASTM F 837, Group 1 CW.

F. Protective Coatings for Heat-Treated Alloy Steel:

1. Zinc chromate, ASTM F 1135, Grade 3 or Grade 4, for exterior applications and interior applications where indicated.
2. Zinc phosphate with oil, ASTM F 1137, Grade I, or black oxide unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of intrusion detection.

B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of intrusion detection connections before intrusion detection installation.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of intrusion detection.

D. Inspect built-in and cast-in anchor installations, before installing intrusion detection, to verify that anchor installations comply with requirements. Prepare inspection reports.

1. Remove and replace anchors where inspections indicate that they do not comply with requirements. Reinspect after repairs or replacements are made.
2. Perform additional inspections to determine compliance of replaced or additional anchor installations. Prepare inspection reports.

E. For material whose orientation is critical for its performance as a ballistic barrier, verify installation orientation.

F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SYSTEM INTEGRATION

A. Integrate intrusion detection system with the following systems and equipment:

1. Electronic door hardware.
2. Access control.
3. Fire-alarm system.
4. Closed Circuit Television System

3.3 SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Comply with UL 681 and NFPA 731.

B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

C. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing premises security system is operational before making changes or connections.

1. Connect new equipment to existing control panel at plant.
2. Connect new equipment to existing monitoring equipment at the Supervising Station.
3. Expand, modify, and supplement existing monitoring equipment as necessary to extend existing monitoring functions to the new points. New components shall be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading the performance of either system.

3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceways according to Section 16130 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." Conceal raceway except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch. Control and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Use lacing bars and distribution spools. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with intrusion system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

C. Wires and Cables:

1. Conductors: Size as recommended in writing by system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
2. 120-V Power Wiring: Install according to Section 16123 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Control and Signal Transmission Conductors: Install unshielded, twisted-pair cable unless otherwise indicated or if manufacturer recommends shielded cable, according to Section 16123 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

E. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components for detection devices at control units unless otherwise indicated or required by manufacturer. Do not install such items near devices they serve.

F. Identify components with engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for master control unit and each terminal cabinet, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Section 16075 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with identification requirements in Section 16075 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install instructions frame in a location visible from master control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. Ground the master control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to master control unit.

B. Ground system components and conductor and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

C. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment rack or cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding. Provide 5-ohm ground. Measure, record, and report ground resistance.

D. Install grounding electrodes of type, size, location, and quantity indicated. Comply with installation requirements in Section 16060 "Grounding and Bonding."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Pretesting: After installation, align, adjust, and balance system and perform complete pretesting to determine compliance of system with requirements in the Contract Documents. Correct deficiencies observed in pretesting. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items with new ones and retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved. Prepare forms for systematic recording of acceptance test results.

1. Report of Pretesting: After pretesting is complete, provide a letter certifying that installation is complete and fully operable; include names and titles of witnesses to preliminary tests.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform tests and inspections.

E. Tests and Inspections: Comply with provisions in NFPA 731, Ch. 9, "Testing and Inspections."

1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
2. Test Methods: Intrusion detection systems and other systems and equipment that are associated with detection and accessory equipment shall be tested according to Table "Test Methods" and Table "Test Methods of Initiating Devices."

F. Documentation: Comply with provisions in NFPA 731, Ch. 4, "Documentation."

G. Tag all equipment, stations, and other components for which tests have been satisfactorily completed.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Visits for this purpose shall be in addition to any required by warranty.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the intrusion detection system. Comply with documentation provisions in NFPA 731, Ch. 4, "Documentation and User Training."

END OF SECTION 13740

SECTION 13760

VIDEO SURVEILLANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, digital video recorder, data transmission wiring, and a control station with its associated equipment.

B. Video surveillance system shall be integrated with monitoring and control system specified in Section 13740 "Intrusion Detection," Section 13730 "Access Control," which specifies systems integration.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AGC: Automatic gain control.

B. BNC: Bayonet Neill-Concelman - type of connector.

C. B/W: Black and white.

D. CCD: Charge-coupled device.

E. FTP: File transfer protocol.

F. IP: Internet protocol.

G. LAN: Local area network.

H. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.

I. NTSC: National Television System Committee.

J. PC: Personal computer.

K. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.

L. RAID: Redundant array of independent disks.

M. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.

N. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

O. WAN: Wide area network.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Equipment List: Include every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For video surveillance, cameras, camera-supporting equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, power supplies, infrared illuminators, monitors, videotape recorders, digital video recorders, video switches, and control-station components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

D. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 60 to 85 deg F and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
2. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in air-conditioned interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
3. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in non-air-conditioned interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 0 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.
4. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.
5. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Video-signal format shall comply with NTSC standard, composite interlaced video. Composite video-signal termination shall be 75 ohms.

B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 16289 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 16289 "Surge Protection for Low-

Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

C. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.2 IP CAMERAS

A. Cameras shall be Samsung SNV-6084R vandal resistant POE Powered, High Definition, IP based camera. No Substitution.

2.3 LENSES

A. Lenses are provided with camera and are 3-8.5 mm varifocal lens with auto iris.

2.4 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

A. Interior Ceiling Mount: Samsung SHD-B-3100FP

B. Interior Stem Mount: Samsung SBP-301HM6 and SBP-300CM.

C. Exterior Wall Mount: Samsung SBP-301HM6 and SBP-300WM

2.5 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS

A. Network Video Recorder shall be Samsung Model SRN-1670D with 6TB of video memory.

2.6 SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

A. Cable: Category 6 UTP 4 pair plenum rated cable.

- Connectors: 8P8C connector type RJ-45.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.

B. Examine roughing-in for IP network before device installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 16130 "Raceways and Boxes."

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.

1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

E. For copper communication wiring, comply with Section 16123 "Control Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

F. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install cameras and infrared illuminators level and plumb.

B. Install cameras with 84-inch- minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.

C. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components at control stations unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install tamper switches on components indicated to receive tamper switches, arranged to detect unauthorized entry into system-component enclosures and mounted in self-protected, inconspicuous positions.

E. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:

   a. Prepare equipment list described in "Informational Submittals" Article.
   b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
   c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
   d. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
   e. Verify operation of control-station equipment.

3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.

D. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within [**12**] <**Insert number**> months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to [**two**] <**Insert number**> visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Check cable connections.
2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. [**Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train**] [**Train**] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

END OF SECTION 13760

SECTION 13851

ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A . This section specifies the design, furnishing, installation and testing of a complete analog, electrically supervised, addressable fire alarm and communications system. The system shall include, but not be limited to, all control and communication equipment, power supplies, supervisory devices, signal initiating devices, audible and visual alarm notification devices, conduit, wire, fittings and all other accessories required to provide a complete and operable system. Devices shown on the drawings are intended to aid in defining coverage requirements for initiation and notification. All devices required to meet the operational requirements defined in local fire codes, state regulations, and these specifications are not shown in their entirety. The fire alarm system supplier shall review the final drawings and provide all devices interconnections, and operating software necessary to fully comply with applicable codes and the operational requirements of this specification. However, in no case shall the supplier provide less than the initiating and notification coverages defined in the drawings. The system shall operate as a protected premises, non-coded, continuous sounding system which shall have addressable devices on signaling line circuits as specified herein.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A . NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code

B . NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm Code

C . NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.

D . NFPA 1221 - Public Fire Service Communications.

E . Article 601B, Vernon's Texas Civil Statutes.

F . Article 5.43-2, Texas Insurance Code.

G . ADA - American With Disabilities Act.

H . Texas Accessibility Standards

I . UL 38 - Manually Activated Signaling Boxes.

J . UL 228 - Door Holders for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

K . UL 268 - Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

L . UL 268A - Smoke Detectors for Duct Applications.

M . UL 464 - Audible Signal Appliances.

N . UL 521 - Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

O . UL 864 - Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

P . UL 1481 - Power Supplies for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

Q . UL 1638 - Visual Signaling Appliances.

R . UL 1711 - Amplifiers for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

1.3 CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS

A . Manufacturer's Approval. The Contractor shall be an authorized representative of the fire alarm manufacturer to install and service the manufacturer's equipment.

B . State Fire Marshal Licensing. The Contractor shall be licensed by the State Fire Marshal to install fire alarm systems. The Contractor's installation superintendent shall be licensed by the State Fire Marshal to supervise the installation of the fire alarm system.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A . Conform to requirements of NFPA 70, Article 601B, Article 5.43-2, ADA, and state/local ordinances.

B . Meet the requirements of design, fabrication, installation and testing established by NFPA 72.

C . Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratory, Inc. as suitable for purpose as specified herein. Assure panels and devices for each station are compatible with existing COH equipment where augmentations an existing system at any of the facilities. Assure force notification equipment is also compatible with existing.

1.5 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM OPERATION

A . Device Actuation. The actuation of any manual or automatic alarm initiating device shall indicate, at the main fire alarm and communication panel, the device from which the alarm was initiated and sound all trouble devices and cause the system to operate as herein specified.

B . Device Silencing. All audible signaling appliances shall continue to sound and all visual signaling appliances shall flash until the alarm condition has been silenced, at which time the audible signaling appliances shall stop and all visual signaling appliances shall remain flashing until the system is cleared and reset. Silencing of any system signal shall not interfere with subsequent alarms for other zones.

C . Air Handler Deactivation. The actuation of any automatic smoke detector shall automatically deactivate its respective air handler.

D . Wiring Classification. The signaling line circuits shall be Class B, Style 4, 2-wire, and the alarm signaling circuits shall be Class A, Style Z, 4-wire supervised circuits.

E . Alarm Signals. The audiovisual alarms shall be activated at all locations in the facility.

F . Alarm Operation. The actuation of any manual or automatic alarm initiating device shall immediately sound the evacuation tone throughout the facility.

G . Control Operation. The alarm signals shall deactivate floor HVAC systems, close smoke compartment doors and dampers. Controls shall automatically operate in the fail safe mode upon loss of power.

H . Evacuation Tone. When an alarm condition occurs, an evacuation tone shall be transmitted. This tone shall be the ANSI S3.41 American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal.

2.2 ZONING

A . General. All initiating devices shall be of the addressable analog type and connected to a signal circuits via addressable module. Although each individual device point number and message shall be displayed on the Master Controller's LCD, the initiating devices shall be zoned to provide the appropriate indication on the remote annunciator panel and cause appropriate response from alarm notification devices and controlled devices and systems.

B . Minimum Zoning. Minimum virtual zoning shall be as follows:

1. Each floor shall constitute a separate initiating zone. Where floor areas exceed allowable fire or smoke compartment limits, each fire or smoke compartment shall constitute a separate initiating zone.
2. Each floor shall constitute a separate voice evacuation zone. Elevator cabs shall be grouped as a separate voice evacuation zone. Egress stairwells shall be grouped as a separate voice evacuation zone. Designated areas or refuge shall be grouped as a separate voice evacuation zone.
3. The main mechanical and electrical equipment rooms shall constitute separate initiating zones. Air handling rooms and electrical closets for service to localized areas within the overall building shall be included in the general zoning for those spaces. Where air handlers serve more than one initiating zone, detectors shall be provided in suitable locations to identify the smoke source zone for zoning purposes. For zoning purposes, the supply detector shall be included in the zone containing the air handler.
4. Mechanical penthouses shall constitute separate initiating zones.
5. Manual pull stations and automatic detectors shall be on respective floor zones and shall initiate alarm signals as specified herein.
6. Waterflow initiating devices shall be on respective zones served by the sprinkler piping on the discharge side of the flow sensor and shall initiate alarm signals as specified herein.
7. The main sprinkler waterflow detector shall constitute a separate initiating zone and shall initiate an alarm signal as specified herein.
8. Each sprinkler supervisory device shall initiate a dedicated supervisory signal. Supervisory devices shall not be “ganged” together. Operation of a supervisory signal shall not prevent receipt of an alarm signal

9. Remove this paragraph if no fire pump or water storage tanks are provided. Remove the reference to the water storage tank a fire pump is provided but no tank is provided.
10. The control panel shall contain separate supervisory circuits for the facility fire pump system and shall be capable of providing status indication of the operation of the fire pump system. Diesel-driven pumps shall include supervisory monitoring of available fuel levels for remote fuel tanks. Provide supervisory monitoring for adequate storage level in fire water storage tanks.

2.3 MASTER FIRE ALARM PANEL

A . Construction. Control panel is an existing non-coded, single zone alarm panel and shall be relocated as shown on the plans.

B . Auxiliary Relays. An adequate quantity of addressable auxiliary relays shall be provided for proper interface with the HVAC, dampers, and door controls to accomplish the functional responses required.

C . Supervision. Each initiating circuit, horn circuit, alarm notification circuit, auxiliary control circuit, and fire department interfacing circuit shall be supervised. Any loss of power, open, or ground in the circuit shall initiate the audiovisual trouble indicator at the remote processor panel serving the circuit and the main processor panel. The trouble lamp illumination shall be non-canceling except by an actual clearing of the trouble condition. The audible trouble signal may be silenced by use of a trouble silence switch which incorporates the ring-back feature or by use of a self-restoring trouble silence switch.

D . Operating Power. Power for operating d-c alarm initiating devices and audiovisual alarm devices shall be obtained from a supervised power supply within the main fire alarm control panel. Remote location of supervised power supplies for audible or visual devices shall not be allowed unless shown on the drawings or approved by the Owner's Representative. Remote power supplies shall be readily accessible and protected by local spot smoke detectors as required by applicable codes.

E . Primary Power Supply. The control panel and alarm notification circuit shall receive its primary operating power from a dedicated 120-volt a-c, single-phase, 60-hertz supply. Where a legally-required emergency power system is provided in accordance with local ordinance and NFPA 110, that system shall serve as the primary power supply.

F . Auxiliary Power Supply. Replace existing batteries with new batteries of the same type to provide operating and supervisory power for 24 hours and to operate all alarm signals for a minimum duration of 5 minutes.

G . Battery Charger. Verify proper operation of the battery charging circuit and replace with new charger if deemed inoperable.

H . Remote Transmission. Provide transfer of alarm to an approved alarm monitoring company as designated by the Owner and approved for the purpose by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. A switch shall be provided to prevent an alarm from being transmitted during a fire drill. Activation of this switch will cause the system trouble LED and audible device to be activated. Transfer of the alarm shall occur at a Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT) integrated into the Master Fire

Alarm Panel. Provide two dedicated loop-start telephone circuits from the Owner-approved telephone service provider serving the Owner's premises. Ground-start telephone circuits are not acceptable. Connect the DACT to these two lines ahead of any private telephone system equipment on the protected premises. Assign the monthly service contract for these two dedicated lines to the Owner after completing the DACT installation and testing.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE ALARM STATION

A . Manual fire alarm stations shall conform to UL 38, be non-code, non-break-glass, double-action type with a key operated test-reset lock so that they may be tested, and so designed that after actual emergency operation, they cannot be restored to normal except by use of a key. An operated station shall automatically condition itself so as to be visually detected at a minimum distance of 100 feet, front or side. The word FIRE shall appear on each side of the stations in depressed letters, ☐ inch high or larger. Stations shall be suitable for surface mounting on matching back boxes or semi-flush mounting on a standard single gang box and shall be installed 48 inches above the finished floor to the centerline of the back box. The manual fire alarm station shall be used with an integral or remote monitor module for point addressability.

2.5 AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTORS

A . General. Automatic fire detectors shall conform to UL 268 for smoke sensing detectors, UL 268A for duct-type smoke sensing detectors and UL 521 for heat sensing detectors. Automatic fire detectors shall operate in accordance with NFPA 72. Automatic fire detectors shall be specifically listed for the application and for operation with the control panel.

B . Heat Sensing Detectors. The detector shall incorporate a built in type identification so the system can identify the type of detector. The detector shall be continually monitored to measure any change in their sensitivity because of environment (dirt, temperature, humidity, etc.). The detector shall use dual solid state thermistors and shall monitor the ambient temperature from 32°F, to +100°F and provide a fast response to rapid increases in temperature. The detector shall function on both fixed temperature, factory-set at 135°F, and rate-of-rise set at 15°F per minute. An LED on the unit shall flash green each time the detector is polled to indicate the detector is in operable condition and shall continuously flash red when the detector is in an alarm condition. The detector, on command from the control panel, shall send data to the panel representing the analog value of the ambient temperature. Detectors shall have a minimum recommended spacing of 50 feet when mounted on a smooth, flat ceiling at 10 feet above the floor.

C . Photoelectric-Type Smoke Sensing Detectors. The detector shall incorporate a built in type identification so the system can identify the type of detector. The detector shall be continually monitored to measure any change in their sensitivity because of the environment (dirt, smoke, temperature, humidity, etc.). The detector shall use the photoelectric principle to measure smoke density and shall on command from the control panel send data to the panel representing the analog value of the smoke density. The detector shall provide advanced indication of the analog value of the level of smoke density to the panel that maintenance is required, reducing the maintenance required to inspect routinely all detectors in order to insure normal operation. The detector sensitivity shall be adjustable by device. The detector shall operate on signaling line circuit with the wiring monitored for trouble conditions

resulting from a loss of power to the detectors. An LED on the unit shall flash green each time the detector is polled to indicate the detector is in operable condition and shall continuously flash red when the detector is in an alarm condition. Ceiling-mounted detectors shall be semi-flush mounted with a hard-wired base and removable detector head. A trouble signal shall be lit at the control panel if the detector head is removed. Provide relay base with SPDT auxiliary alarm contacts for additional switching capability. Detectors shall be UL-listed for use in the airflow rates applied. Detectors shall have a minimum recommended spacing of 30 feet when mounted on a smooth, flat ceiling.

D . Duct-Type Smoke Sensing Detectors. The detector shall incorporate a built in type identification so the system can identify the type of detector. The detector shall be continually monitored to measure any change in their sensitivity because of the environment (dirt, smoke, temperature, humidity, etc.). The detector shall use the photoelectric principle to measure smoke density and shall on command from the control panel send data to the panel representing the analog value of the smoke density. The detector shall provide advanced indication of the analog value of the level of smoke density to the panel that maintenance is required, reducing the maintenance required to inspect routinely all detectors in order to insure normal operation. The detector sensitivity shall be adjustable by device. The detector shall operate on signaling line circuit with the wiring monitored for trouble conditions resulting from a loss of power to the detectors. An LED on the unit shall flash green each time the detector is polled to indicate the detector is in operable condition and shall continuously flash red when the detector is in an alarm condition. When the detector is mounted in a location hidden from normal viewing, a remote indicating lamp which duplicates the flashing status indication on the detector shall be mounted in a readily viewable location as close to the detector as practical. Detectors shall be mounted in an enclosure with a hard-wired base and removable detector head. The enclosure shall be permanently affixed to sampling tubes specifically designed for the duct installation. The sampling tube shall extend into the duct (7/8 duct width minimum) allowing a sample of air through the detector and back into the duct via the return air tube. The detector head shall be UL listed for the air velocity anticipated in the duct. A trouble signal shall be lit at the control panel if the detector head is removed. Provide relay base with SPDT auxiliary alarm contacts for additional switching capability.

2.6 REMOTE MONITOR MODULE

A . The remote monitor module shall be used to connect supervised conventional initiating devices such as water flow switches, tamper switches, and projected beam detectors to the signaling line circuits and shall mount in a 4 inch square, 2 1/8 inch deep electrical box. The remote monitor module shall provide address setting means using rotary decimal switches and also store an internal identifying code which the control panel shall use to identify the type of device. The remote monitor module shall contain an integral LED that flashes each time the monitor module is polled.

2.7 REMOTE CONTROL MODULE

A . The remote control module shall be used to connect and supervise conventional notification and communication devices or zones of such devices that require an external power supply, such as horns, strobes, bells, speakers or telephones to the signaling line circuits. The remote control module also shall be capable of operating as a relay (dry contact form C), to control door holders, HVAC equipment, and elevator equipment. The remote control module shall mount in a 4 inch square, 2

1/8 inch deep electrical box. The remote control module shall contain an integral LED that shall flash each time the module is polled. The remote control module shall provide address setting means using rotary decimal switches and also store an internal identifying code which the control panel shall use to identify the type of device.

2.8 HVAC MANUAL CONTROL

A . A means shall be provided in the remote annunciator panel and the fire alarm control panel to allow fire department personnel manual control of all heating, ventilating and air conditioning equipment. This panel shall be operational only by use of a "fireman's key." The panel, when activated, shall allow override of all automatic control and safety devices for the control of fire spread and smoke evacuation, and shall include status indication of each piece of equipment.

2.9 AUDIBLE AND VISUAL SIGNALING APPLIANCES

A . General. Audible signaling appliances shall conform to UL 464. Visual signaling appliances shall conform to UL 1638. Provide combination audible and visual signaling appliances manufactured as a single unit with the capability for terminating separate audible and visual circuits. The unit shall be surface mounted on a special surface back box or flush mounted on a special flush back box.

B . Audible Signaling Appliances. Audible alarm shall be of the standard vibrating horn type designed for operation on 24 volts d-c.

C . Visual Signaling Appliances. Visual alarms shall be of the strobe type designed for operation on 24 volts d-c. The lamp circuit shall be supervised and the lamp shall remain on after the audible device has been silenced.

2.10 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

A . Provide a remote annunciator panel, which shall include: audible and visual indication of alarm and supervisory zones, and audible and visual indication of system trouble. Install annunciator enclosure recessed in wall with finished annunciator panel installation to be flush with corridor wall.

2.11 WIRE

A . Conductors shall be of the type, size and quantity as recommended by the manufacturer of the equipment to be installed. All wiring shall be installed in conduit; however, at the Contractor's option, wire that is UL classified for use in air plenums may be used without conduit.

2.12 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A . New fire alarm devices shall be compatible with the existing fire alarm control panel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A . Work. The work shall be accomplished by personnel experienced in the installation of the specific type system. The services of a qualified technician shall be provided to supervise the installation, testing and adjustment.

B . Color Coding. Appropriate color coding shall be provided for the conductors of the system.

C . Final Connections. Final connections of the system equipment shall be under the supervision of the manufacturer's representative.

D . Audible Levels. The manufacturer's technical representatives shall supervise the final balancing of the audible levels controlled by the fire alarm system.

E . Interconnections. Provide intercommunications to other systems and devices.

F . Labels. Label wiring at terminations, pull, junction and outlet boxes.

G . Terminations. Fire alarm conductor terminations in control panel and annunciator panels to be made on terminal strips with separate point for each conductor. All such strips to be number identified as shown in wiring diagram attached to inside of door of control panel. Connect wiring neatly to terminal strips. Connect clip with nylon cable straps or lace with jute cord. Set up termination of cabling so that sections of the system may be isolated or shorted out for servicing.

H . Telephone Systems. From fire alarm control panel, provide one 3/4 inch conduit to nearest telephone backboard or panel location for tie-in to central station.

I . Identification. Identify primary power disconnecting means in red marking as "Fire Alarm Control Circuit". Identify location of the primary power disconnecting means at the fire alarm control panel.

J . Detector Installation. Install automatic fire detectors only after final clean-up has been completed. Replace detectors installed prior to final clean-up with new detectors.

3.2 INSPECTION AND TESTING

A . Testing Equipment. The Contractor shall furnish all instruments, labor and materials required for the tests and a qualified technician to conduct the tests.

B . System Testing. Upon completion of the installation, the system shall be subjected to operational tests. Any deficiencies found shall be corrected by the Contractor and the system shall be retested as necessary, prior to final acceptance. Testing shall be in accordance with NFPA 72, Chapter 7. Every component and operational sequence of the system shall be satisfactorily tested prior to requesting acceptance testing from any jurisdictional agency.

C . Documentation. On completion of system testing, submit completed NFPA 72, Figure 7-5.1 Inspection and Testing form and NFPA 72, Figure 1-7.2.1 Certificate of completion form to the Owner.

D . Acceptance Testing for the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The Contractor shall schedule acceptance testing with the Authority Having Jurisdiction only after completing the system testing described above. The Contractor shall pay all testing observation fees levied by Authority Having Jurisdiction, including any fees or costs associated with retests necessitated by inadequate system performance or inadequate test preparation and organization by the supplier during the initial acceptance tests.

3.3 QUALIFICATIONS

A . Personnel Qualifications. The Contractor shall submit two copies of a statement showing the experience of the installing personnel. Installation personnel must have a minimum of 3 years of experience in installing systems of this magnitude.

B . Service. The equipment supplier must maintain a 24-hour service department with a guarantee of service within 8 hours of being called any time 7 days a week. The service department shall have service technicians, factory trained in the care and maintenance and troubleshooting of the equipment supplied.

3.4 CERTIFICATION

A . Upon completion of system testing, submit completed NFPA 72, Figure 1-7.2.1 Certificate of completion form to the Owner along with a letter of certification attesting to the fact that he has tested and adjusted the system, that all components are properly installed and free of defects, and that the system is in compliance with this specification.

3.5 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A . Submit operating and maintenance manuals in accordance with NFPA 72.

3.6 GUARANTEE

A . The system shall be guaranteed to be free from all defects of material and workmanship for a period of 1 year effective upon date of acceptance. Equipment or components showing inherent defects of a mechanical or electrical nature shall be replaced promptly at no expense to the Owner.

3.7 INSTRUCTION

A . The equipment manufacturer shall make available the services of a qualified manufacturer's trained representative to instruct the Owner's operating personnel as to the operation and maintenance of the entire system for a period of four (4) hours.

3.8 INSPECTIONS

A . Two periodic inspections, at no expense to the Owner, shall be made within the first year's guarantee period to ensure satisfactory operation of the system.

END OF SECTION 13851

SECTION 15005

MECHANICAL GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . All work shall be in accordance with the General Conditions, Special Conditions, Instructions to Bidders, and other related to project documents as issued by the Owner or Owner's Representative. This and other parts of these Specifications are herewith made a part of all other sections of these Project Specifications and Contract Documents.

1.2 COORDINATION

A . All work shall be in accordance with City of Houston, Harris County and State of Texas Building, Plumbing, Fire Protection, and Mechanical Codes and Energy Conservation Code and with all state and national codes as they may apply to the project and to public safety.

B . Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC and plumbing installations. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.

C . Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

D . Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for mechanical items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

E . Coordinate the cutting and patching of building components to accommodate the installation of the various system equipment and materials.

F . Coordinate the installation of the various system materials and equipment above ceilings with suspension system, light fixtures, and other installations.

G . Coordinate the connection of the various systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies. Provide all required connections for each service.

H . All materials, equipment and apparatus installed on the project shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions. The manufacturer, or his authorized Representative, shall certify, in writing, to the Owner and Owner's Representative that the installation has been made in accordance with such printed requirements.

I . Model numbers as may be specified or indicated on the Drawings are only for reference convenience. The Contractor, through the manufacturer, shall be responsible to confirm the correctness of all model numbers so as to meet the specific project requirements and minimum indicated performance data.

J . It is the intent that the Contractor shall install complete and operable systems, fully tested, adjusted and ready for use.

K . Materials and equipment shall have been carefully selected for the project. The Contractor is expected to furnish and install, where required, items as near as possible to those of the Drawings and Specifications.

L . The Drawings accompanying these Specifications show the extent of the work and the general arrangement. The Drawings, however, are diagrammatic and exact coordinated layout of the various systems is the responsibility of the Contractor.

M . The Contractor shall obtain all permits and pay all fees and charges to all local and other related agencies as required.

N . Contractor shall coordinate the exact location of this work with the work of other trades prior to fabrication or installation of same. Verify all dimensions and elevations. Provide additional offsets and sections of material as may be required to meet the applicable job condition requirements. Coordinate with and review all related Contractor construction Drawings and Shop Drawings of all equipment suppliers prior to start of any work.

O . It will be the responsibility of each Contractor to coordinate between his equipment suppliers and any subcontractor as to which devices are supplied with equipment, required wiring and voltages and other coordination items as related to a proper and operable installation.

P . It is to be the responsibility of the Contractor to coordinate between his equipment suppliers and his temperature control subcontractor as to which control devices are supplied with equipment, required control pneumatics or wiring and voltages and other related coordination items, so as to insure a complete, proper, and operable installation.

1.3 WARRANTY

A . In entering into a contract covering this work, the Contractor accepts the Specifications and Contract Documents and guarantees that the work will be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the Specifications and Drawings or such authorized modifications as may be made in the Contract Documents. Contractor further guarantees that the workmanship and material will be of the best procurable and that none but experienced workers familiar with each particular class of work will be employed. The Contractor further guarantees to replace and make good at his own expense any defects which may develop, within one (1) year after final payment and acceptance by the Owner, due to faulty workmanship or material, upon receipt of written notification from the Owner.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Regulations and Standards.

1. All equipment, apparatus, and systems shall be fabricated and installed in complete accordance with the Owner's fire insurance related rules and regulations, the Life Safety Code, Applicable Building, Mechanical, Plumbing, Fire and Energy Conservation Codes, and the latest (authority adopted) edition or revision of the following applicable regulations, standards, and codes:

AGA	American Natural Gas Association
AIA	American Institute of Architects
ANSI	American National Standard Institute
ARI	Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
AWWA	American Water Works Association
AMCA	Air Moving and Conditioning Association
MCAA	Mechanical Contractor's Association of America, Inc.
MSSV	Manufacturer's Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting Industry
NACE	National Association of Corrosion Engineers
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NEC	National Electric Code
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
PDI	Plumbing and Drainage Institute
SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association (1995)
UL	Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.

2. Give all required notices so as to comply with, and meet, all inspections that are required by Federal, State, and Local authorities.
3. It is not the intent herewith to modify, reduce, or change any rules, standards, regulations, or requirements that are applicable under local, state and federal codes, ordinances, or regulations of the various authorities having jurisdiction. Where the standards differ among the various authorities, the most rigid shall apply. Where the requirements called for in the Specifications exceed code requirements, these Specifications shall take precedence. Where the requirements within the Specifications of this division of work conflict with the hereinbefore referenced documents (including Division 1 requirements of these Specifications), the documents having the excess, or more rigid and higher cost requirements shall apply.

B . Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

C . Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

D . Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

E . In general, most wiring and conduit requirements are addressed either as a part of a packaged equipment assembly, within Division 15 of the Project Specifications, or within these Specifications. However, should an equipment component, panel, or system device need additional wiring and conduit so as to be complete, approved and fully operational, the Contractor who supplied the equipment component, panel or system device shall be responsible for the required wiring and conduit for same when it is not otherwise covered by the Project Specifications or Drawings. All wiring shall be done by State (and Local as required) licensed electricians.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A . Protect equipment and trim against damage and injury due to building materials, acid, tools, equipment and any causes incidental to construction. Cover the finished surface of each piece of equipment with building paper or similar protection. Replace all equipment damaged by any cause and any trim with marred or scratched finish at no cost to the Owner, upon receipt of written notification from the Owner's Representative.

B . Where materials to be installed are being stored at or near the project during construction, arrange such materials so as to minimize the possibility of contamination, corrosion and damage. Keep ends of pipe, ductwork, equipment and specialties, properly closed during construction and installation to avoid the possibility of miscellaneous materials being placed in the openings.

1.6 ROYALTIES AND PATENTS

A . The Trade Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. He shall defend and shall indemnify and save the Owner and Owner's Representative harmless from any and all suits, demands or claims for infringement of any patent rights.

B . The review by the Owner's Representative of any method of construction, invention, appliance, process, article, device or material of any kind shall be for its adequacy for the work, and shall not be an approval of the use thereof by the Contractor in violation of any patent or other rights of any third person.

1.7 SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS

A . These Specifications and Drawings are intended to describe and provide for a complete and finished project. They are intended to be complementary. All items of work called for by either shall be as binding as if called for by both. The work

described shall be complete in every detail, notwithstanding the fact that every item necessarily involved is not particularly mentioned or shown.

B . If the Bidder, Supplier, or Contractor sees anything to question, it must be brought to the attention of the Owner's Representative immediately.

C . Minor Deviations. The Drawings accompanying these Specifications indicate, generally, the design and arrangement of equipment, apparatus, fixtures, accessories and piping necessary to complete the installation of the system. The exact location or arrangement of the apparatus and equipment, unless otherwise dimensioned, is subject to minor changes necessitated by field conditions and shall be required without additional cost to the Owner. Measurements shall be verified by actual observation at the construction site. Each Trade Contractor shall be responsible for all of his work fitting into place in a satisfactory and workmanlike manner to the approval of the Owner's Representative.

D . Provide all labor and materials necessary for the completion of the work described. Referenced codes and industry standards and methods shall apply when no other specifics are indicated. Bring questions relating to this paragraph to the attention of the Owner's Representative for resolution prior to the receipt of Bids.

E . The Specifications are divided into various sections and divisions only for the distinct purpose of facilitating the work. However, this Contractor will become responsible for furnishing all labor and materials necessary to complete the project as contemplated by the Drawings and Specifications. Any item mentioned under any heading of the Specifications must be supplied even though it is not called for again under the heading for the respective work.

F . Should discrepancies occur within the Contract Documents, the more stringent and more costly approach shall apply for bidding purposes. The Contractor is to notify the Owner's Representative of discrepancies for clarification. Clarifications issued after the contract is awarded are to be incorporated by the Contractor at no additional costs and are to be reviewed by the Owner's Representative to determine if a reduction in cost is justified.

1.8 TRADE CONTRACTORS, SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS

A . The Trade Contractor is any person or organization who contracts to perform work for the Project. Wherever the word "Contractor" is used on the Drawings or in the Specifications, it shall be construed to mean the Trade Contractor applicable to the work requirements of these Specifications.

B . A subcontractor is a person or organization who has a direct contract with a Trade Contractor to perform any of the Work at the site and includes all who furnish material worked to a special design in accordance with the Drawings and Specifications, but excludes suppliers or persons furnishing material not specially designed. Wherever the term "subcontractor" is encountered in the Contract Documents, it shall mean the subcontractor and/or his sub-subcontractors and/or his material suppliers.

C . A sub-subcontractor is a person or organization who has a direct or indirect contract with a subcontractor to perform any of the Work at the project site or for the subject project.

D . A material supplier is a person or organization who has a direct contract with a Trade Contractor to furnish material not specially designed.

E . It is to be the responsibility of each Trade Contractor to be fully familiar with various local trade jurisdictional requirements and to engage the services of any other subcontractors as may be required within the various trades to complete all of the work as indicated upon the Drawings and within the Specifications. Only Trade Subcontractors with established knowledge and skills of their specific trade shall be used so that all work is performed in a complete, finished, and workmanship like manner.

1. Whenever any provisions of any section of the Specifications conflict with any agreements or regulations of any kind at any time in force among members of any Trade Associations, Unions, or Councils, which regulate or distinguish what work shall or shall not be included in the work of any particular trade, the Trade Contractor shall make all necessary efforts to reconcile any such conflict without delay, damage or cost to the Owner or Owner's Representative.
2. If the progress of the work is affected by any undue delay in furnishing or installing any items of material or equipment required under the contract because of a conflict involving any such agreement or regulation, the Owner's Representative may require that other material or equipment of equal kind and quality be provided at no additional cost to the Owner.
3. Any Trade Contractor, subcontractor, or material supplier not normally employing union labor shall make all provisions necessary to avoid any resulting disputes with labor unions and shall be responsible for any delays, damages or extra cost caused by employment of such non-union labor, except as otherwise governable by state or federal rules and regulations.
4. Each Trade Contractor shall pay for all applicable Federal, State and Local taxes on all materials, labor or services furnished by him, and all taxes arising out of his operations under the Contract Documents which may be imposed upon or collectable from the Owner or become a lien against his property. Such taxes shall include but not be limited to, Occupational, Sales, Use, Excise, Old Age Benefit and Unemployment Taxes, customs duties, and all income taxes and other taxes not in force or hereafter enacted prior to final acceptance of the work. The Trade Contractor shall assume all liability for the payment of and shall pay any unemployed benefits payable under any Federal or State law to individuals employed by him during the progress of the work covered by the Contract.

1.9 OPERATIONAL AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

A . All operational and maintenance instructions that are provided to various Owner-selected members of the facility engineering and/or maintenance staff are, at the same time presented, to be fully video-taped by the Contractor so that all such sessions can be later reviewed by the Owner's staff on a retraining basis as needed. All such video-based DVDs are to become the property of the Owner at the end of

each applicable training period, with one copy of each also being supplied to the Owner's Representative for the Owner's Representative project files.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS/PRODUCTS/SUBMITTALS

A . Under the Base Bid, no other manufacturers except those indicated on the Drawings or those listed within the sections of this Division, that are in turn able to comply with the contract document requirements and minimum standards of these Specifications, will be acceptable. In addition to specific required "Alternates," proposed substitutions, that may or may not be acceptable to the Owner, may be submitted by the Contractor only at the time of initial base bid submittal.

B . Although design base models of various manufacturers may be indicated within the various schedules, it will be the responsibility of the various equipment manufacturers to verify the model selections so that all items of equipment comply with the minimum standards of performance that are indicated within the schedules, as well as the requirements within various sections of the Specifications under which the equipment is also specified.

C . All submittals shall conform completely to the requirements of the Contract Documents, including all requirements set forth in the various Division 1 procedures.

D . Shop Drawings are to be submitted on each item of specified or scheduled equipment, valves, specialties, insulation, fixtures, drains, controls and related accessories as indicated within the Specifications. All control submittals must include a typed sequence of control for each system.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

A . Unless otherwise indicated, each Trade Contractor is to locate and furnish all access doors required for non-accessible surfaces (such as ceilings, walls, chases, and similar locations), so that all fire dampers, volume dampers, valves, terminal boxes, coils, control devices, vents, and similar items, as well as items needing lubrication and inspection, are easily accessible for operation, inspection and maintenance. Access panels and doors for ceiling, walls, chases, etc. are to be installed by the Contractor. Each Trade Contractor, whose item or device the access panel door serves, shall bear the costs of the installation of the access panels or doors.

B . Install equipment, materials and piping systems to provide required access for servicing, maintenance, and general inspection. Coordinate the final location of concealed equipment and devices requiring access with final location of required access panels and doors. Allow ample space for removal of all parts that require replacement or servicing. Piping systems shall not block service access of any nature, such as filter removal, equipment access panels, cleaning of tubes, and similar items.

C . Requirements for access panel sizing or distance from provided access panel shall be as follows:

1. Minimum of 16" x 16" size when the item requiring access is less than 18" (radius) from center of access panel.
2. Minimum of 24" x 24" size when the item requiring access is less than 5'-0" and greater than 18" (radius) from center of access panel.
3. Minimum of 36" x 24" size when the item requiring access is greater than 5'-0".

D . Access doors in ductwork and plenums are to be provided as part of Ductwork Accessories.

2.3 SLEEVES

A . This Contractor is to provide properly sized, secured and fire stopped sleeves for all of their piping systems, plumbing systems, fire protection systems, ductwork systems, and control systems conduits and tubes at all penetrations of walls, foundations, partitions, floors and roofs throughout the entire facility.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A . Provide all materials, labor, equipment, and services necessary for a complete and operable installation as specified and shown on the Drawings. The word "Provide" shall mean "Furnish and Install."

B . Provide new material and equipment in strict accordance with these Specifications and the Project Drawings.

C . At all times, take such precautions as are necessary to protect materials from damage. Close all pipe and duct openings to prevent obstructions and contamination.

D . Pitch Pockets and Roof Penetrations.

1. Provide pitch pockets, or special pre-fabricated penetration-type fittings for all pipes, ducts, flue pipes, etc. which pass through the roof. Such pre-fabricated fittings shall be as manufactured by Thycurb or approved equal.
2. All such fittings shall be properly flashed and counterflashed to conform to the requirements of the roofing system, or as may be approved in writing by the Owner’s Representative.
3. No roof openings shall be left open overnight, but shall be provided with temporary covers until the installation is completed, and watertightness assured.

3.2 CUTTING AND PATCHING IN BUILDINGS

A . Each Contractor is responsible for all costs associated with the necessary cutting and patching as required for the installation of his work, unless otherwise indicated.

B . Patching is to be performed by the trade proper for each material to be patched. Patching shall leave premises and finishes in a complete and neat condition comparable to the original. Painting of patched surfaces to be by the proper painting trade of the Contractor, unless otherwise specifically indicated. Maintain the fire integrity of all walls, floors, ceilings, roof and partitions.

C . The cutting and patching of components shall also include proper removal and legal disposal of selected materials, components and equipment.

D . Refer to the Division 1 Section. CUTTING AND PATCHING for general requirements for cutting and patching.

E . Refer to Division 15 sections for requirements related to cutting and patching for installation of electrical equipment, components, and materials.

F . Do not endanger or damage installed Work through procedures and processes of cutting and patching. NO STRUCTURAL MEMBER MAY BE CUT WITHOUT THE WRITTEN APPROVAL OF THE STRUCTURAL ENGINEER.

G . Arrange for repairs required to restore other work, because of damage caused as a result of mechanical installations.

H . No additional compensation will be authorized for cutting and patching Work that is necessitated by ill-timed, defective, or non-conforming installations.

3.3 ROOF-MOUNTED EQUIPMENT

A . Install roof-mounted equipment and appliances on a well-drained surface. Maintain at least six (6) foot clearance between the appliance and the edge of a roof or similar hazard. Otherwise, provide rigidly fixed rails or guards at least three (3) feet in height on the exposed side, except that parapets at least three (3) feet in height may be utilized in lieu of rails or guards.

B . Each roof-mounted item of equipment or appliance is to be provided with an accessible weatherproof disconnect switch and a 110-120 volt AC, 60 Hz. grounding-type weatherproof convenience outlet adjacent to the appliance. The convenience outlet is to be on the line side of the disconnect switch.

C . Provide adequate and safe access to appliances and equipment located on roofs or other elevated locations.

3.4 ACCESSIBILITY

A . Install equipment, materials and piping systems to provide required access for servicing, maintenance, and general inspection. Coordinate the final location of concealed equipment and devices requiring access with final location of required access panels and doors. Allow ample space for removal of all parts that require replacement or servicing.

B . Piping systems shall not block service access of any nature, such as filter removal, equipment access panels, cleaning of tubes, and similar items.

3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A . Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

B . Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

C . Install HVAC and plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

D . Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.6 PAINTING

A . Painting of mechanical systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."

B . Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.7 CONCRETE BASES

A . Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.

1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.

4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A . Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.

B . Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.

C . Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.9 GROUTING

A . Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.

B . Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

C . Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

D . Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.

E . Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.

F . Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.

G . Place grout around anchors.

H . Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 15005

SECTION 15008

MECHANICAL DIVISION 15 SUBMITTALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 MECHANICAL SUBMITTALS

A . Refer to the Conditions of the Contract (General and Supplementary) and Division 1 Section. SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES for submittal definitions, requirements, and procedures.

B . Submittal of Shop Drawings, product data, and samples will be accepted only when submitted by The Contractor. Data submitted from subcontractors and material suppliers directly to the Owner’s Representative will not be processed.

C . Submit Shop Drawings, product data, and samples on the specific items indicated herein.

D . Shop Drawings and submittal data shall not be used as requests or proposals for alternate equipment or materials. Refer to Item "Product Alternate Considerations, or Options and Substitutions" as referenced within Section 15005, Mechanical General Provisions and Division 1.

E . The Contractor shall be held responsible to see that all products and items, methods and materials, meet or exceed the specified and scheduled requirements even if a submittal is not herein requested for review prior to the installation of any item, product or materials.

F . Standards for Materials.

1. The various sections of these Specifications indicate a standard for all materials incorporated into the work, with manufacturer's names and catalog numbers used to establish a grade and quality of materials and equipment. The manufacturer listed on the equipment schedules, or named first in the Specifications, is the one on whose equipment the layout is based. Other named manufacturers must meet the indicated performance and space requirements.
2. The "approved equal" clause, whenever (and if ever) used in these Specifications is to permit the proposal of unnamed manufacturer's products for the work. However, the Owner’s Representative's decision concerning equal products in final.
3. Where a single manufacturer's name is indicated, or whenever more than one manufacturer's name is indicated, only the specific manufacturer's names and products as listed or referenced within each section of these Specifications, or as scheduled upon the Drawings, shall be acceptable for consideration under the base-bid.
4. Considerations as to determination of equal products include, but are not limited to, the following:

Materials	Physical size and rated sound levels
Workmanship	Weight (operational)
Gauges of materials	Appearance
Capacity and Efficiency	Performance
Available Local Service Personnel	
Previous successful installations	
Delivery Schedules	

G . Requests for substitutions for equipment, materials and apparatus listed in Division 15 Sections must be submitted in writing a minimum of fifteen (15) days prior to the scheduled bid date. Such requests must be accompanied by complete data to permit proper evaluation. Submittal of requests shall not in itself constitute any degree of acceptance or approval.

H . BIDS SHALL NOT BE BASED ON UNAPPROVED MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT, OR APPARATUS.

I . Should electrical, water, drain, natural gas, structural support, or other similar requirements for alternate equipment, whether named in the Specifications or approved as a substitution, be different from requirements for the products used in laying out the project, such changes shall be the responsibility of the Contractor, and shall not result in extra charges to the Owner or Owner's Representative.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTALS UNDER THIS SPECIFIC BID PACKAGE

A . Submittals required under this specific bid package for various materials, equipment or apparatus are as listed under Part 3 and within Attachment "A" of this Section 15008 of the Specifications called "Mechanical Submittal Register."

B . This Contractor shall (at time of submittal), clearly identify the primary Division 15 section of the specifications under which a specific product or system component submitted is mainly referenced and shall likewise simultaneously submit all products or system components that are mainly referenced under the same identical section number, at the same time.

C . Submittals shall include, but not be limited to the following:

1. Annotated Specifications. Provide a copy of the applicable specification section with an attachment annotating compliance of the submitted equipment or system on a paragraph-by-paragraph basis. Each annotation shall cross-reference submitted catalog material, shop drawing, certification statement, or test report which corroborates the compliance. Failure to supply complete annotation of the specification shall be cause for return of the submittal without review.

2. Brochures. Provide complete brochure information on all components which are cataloged and produced without modification as a part of the supplier's standard manufacture.
3. Mechanical, Plumbing, Process Piping, Fire Protection and Electrical composite coordination drawings and details of the Mechanical Rooms, Pump Rooms, Fire Pump Rooms, etc shall be provided. Drawings shall include but not limited to the following, light fixtures, conduits 3 inches and greater, cable trays, piping, ductwork, control components, etc. Show all piping, conduit, equipment. etc down walls and columns. Plan, elevation and detail drawings shall indicate actual sizes, locations and elevations. Drawings shall be of a legible scale but not less than 1/8 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SUMMARY

A . This submittal register delineates specific requirements for the submittal of Drawings, sketches, documents, catalogs, etc., for electrical materials, equipment, and systems. The requirements herein amplify and further define the requirements for submittals set forth under Division 1.

B . The Contractor shall maintain complete and accurate documentation for all equipment, materials, and systems used on this project. This documentation shall include those Shop Drawings, reports, catalogs, etc., that are obtained from and system manufacturers or suppliers, as well as those Drawings, sketches, and supporting documents that are issued by the Contractor. The Owner maintains his option to have this information submitted as a part of project record documents.

C . Prior to the commencement of any work, the Contractor shall submit the required documentation for review by the Owner's representative. No material, equipment, or system shall be purchased, fabricated, or delivered to the site that is not in accordance with the requirements of its associated specification section and this submittal register.

D . Whether reviewed or not, all materials, systems and work provided under this contract must meet the requirements of the contract documents unless those requirements are specifically altered by contract modification.

E . Only submittals regarding those items of equipment or systems which are listed in the following paragraphs of this specification will be reviewed for compliance by the Owner's Representative. Any other submittals will be returned without review.

F . When two or more items of the same material or equipment are required (plumbing fixtures, pumps, air terminals, air devices, heaters, valves, air conditioning units, etc.) they shall be of the same manufacturer. Product manufacturer uniformity does not apply to raw materials, bulk materials, pipe, tube, fittings (except flanged and grooved types), sheet metal, wire, steel barstock, welding rods, solder, fasteners, motors for dissimilar equipment units, and similar items used in Work, except as otherwise indicated.

G . Provide products which are compatible within systems where used and compatible with other related or connected items.

H . Provide permanent operational data nameplate on each item of power operated mechanical equipment, indicating manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of approval agencies (U/L, FM, PDI, ARI, NFPA, ASME, etc.) and similar essential data. Locate nameplates in an accessible location.

I . Product Data. Submit manufacturer's technical product data for equipment showing dimensions, weights, capacities, ratings, fan or pump performance curves with operating point clearly indicated, motor electrical characteristics, gauges and finishes of materials, and installation instructions.

J . Shop Drawings. Submit shop drawings showing unit dimensions, weight loadings, required clearances, construction details, and field connection details.

K . Wiring Diagrams. Submit manufacturer's electrical power and control requirements for equipment. Submit manufacturer's ladder type wiring diagrams for interlock and control wiring. Contractor is responsible to coordinate between portions of wiring that are factory-installed and portions to be field-installed.

L . Maintenance and Operational Data. Submit maintenance instructions, including instructions for lubrication, filter replacement, motor and drive replacement, and spare parts lists. Include all product data, shop drawings, and wiring diagrams in maintenance manuals, in addition to a DVD formatted instructional video of all maintenance and operational procedures.

3.2 ITEMS REQUIRING COMPLETE SUBMITTALS

A . For materials, equipment, and systems indicated within specifications, the Contractor shall provide a complete submittal of all Shop Drawings, Product Data, Diagrams, Certificates and documents for review and approval of the Owner's Representative prior to purchase, fabrication, or commencement of work. For those items not listed, submittals will be returned without review or comment. Compliance with the Drawings and Specifications remains the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

END OF SECTION 15008

SECTION 15058

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A . Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.

B . Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

C . Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A . Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 100 deg F and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B . Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A . Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B . Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C . Service Factor: 1.15.

D . Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

E . Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

F . Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

G . Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

H . Insulation: Class F.

I . Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

J . Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A . Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B . Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.

3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C . Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A . Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B . Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C . Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D . Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E . Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 15058

SECTION 15060

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCE

A . All applicable requirements of other portions of the Contract Documents apply to the Work of this Section, including, but not limited to, Section 15005, Mechanical General Provisions.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Extent of supports and anchors required by this section is indicated on drawings and/or specified herein or in other Division-15 sections.

B . Types of supports and anchors specified in this section include the following:

1. Pipe and equipment hangers, supports, and anchors.
2. Equipment bases.

C . Supports and anchors furnished as part of factory-fabricated equipment, are specified as part of equipment assembly in other Division-15 sections.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Codes and Standards

1. Code Compliance. Comply with applicable plumbing codes pertaining to product materials and installation of supports and anchors.
2. MSS Standard Compliance.
   a. Provide pipe hangers and supports of which materials, design, and manufacture comply with MSS SP-58.
   b. Select and apply pipe hangers and supports, complying with MSS SP-69.
   c. Fabricate and install pipe hangers and supports, complying with MSS SP-89.
   d. Terminology used in this section is defined in MSS SP-90.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HORIZONTAL-PIPING HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A . General. Except as otherwise indicated, provide factory- fabricated horizontal-piping hangers and supports complying with MSS SP-58, of one of the following MSS types listed, selected by Installer to suit horizontal-piping systems, in accordance with MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's published product information. Use only one type

by one manufacturer for each piping service. Select size of hangers and supports to exactly fit pipe size for bare piping, and to exactly fit around piping insulation with saddle or shield for insulated piping. Provide copper- plated hangers and supports for copper-piping systems.

B . Adjustable Steel Clevis Hangers. MSS Type 1.

C . Yoke Type Pipe Clamps. MSS Type 2.

D . Steel Double Bolt Pipe Clamps. MSS Type 3.

E . Steel Pipe Clamps. MSS Type 4.

F . Pipe Hangers. MSS Type 5.

G . Adjustable Swivel Pipe Rings. MSS Type 6.

H . Adjustable Steel Band Hangers. MSS Type 7.

I . Adjustable Band Hangers. MSS Type 9

J . Adjustable Swivel Rings, Band Type. MSS Type 10.

K . Split Pipe Rings. MSS Type 11

L . Extension Split Pipe Clamps. MSS Type 12

M . U-Bolts. MSS Type 24

N . Clips. MSS Type 26

O . Pipe Slides and Slide Plates. MSS Type 35, including one of the following plate types:

1. Plate. Unguided type.
2. Plate. Guided type.
3. Plate. Hold-down clamp type

P . Pipe Saddle Supports. MSS Type 36, including steel pipe base-support and cast-iron floor flange.

Q . Pipe Stanchion Saddles. MSS Type 37, including steel pipe base support and cast-iron floor flange.

R . Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports. MSS Type 38, including steel pipe base support and cast-iron floor flange.

S . Single Pipe Rolls. MSS Type 41.

T . Adjustable Roller Hangers. MSS Type 43.

U . Pipe Roll Stands. MSS Type 44.

V . Pipe Rolls and Plates. MSS Type 45.

W . Adjustable Pipe Roll Stands. MSS Type 46.

2.2 VERTICAL-PIPING CLAMPS

A . General. Except as otherwise indicated, provide factory- fabricated vertical-piping clamps complying with MSS SP- 58, of one of the following types listed, selected by Installer to suit vertical piping systems, in accordance with MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's published product information. Select size of vertical piping clamps to exactly fit pipe size of bare pipe. Provide copper-plated clamps for copper-piping systems.

B . Two-Bolt Riser Clamps. MSS Type 8.

C . Four-Bolt Riser Clamps. MSS Type 42.

2.3 HANGER-ROD ATTACHMENTS

A . General. Except as otherwise indicated, provide factory- fabricated hanger-rod attachments complying with MSS SP- 58, of one of the following MSS types listed, selected by Installer to suit horizontal-piping hangers and building attachments, in accordance with MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's published product information. Use only one type by one manufacturer for each piping service. Select size of hanger-rod attachments to suit hanger rods. Provide copper-plated hanger-rod attachments for copper-piping systems.

B . Steel Turnbuckles. MSS Type 13.

C . Steel Clevises. MSS Type 14.

D . Swivel Turnbuckles. MSS Type 15.

E . Malleable Iron Sockets. MSS Type 16.

F . Steel Weldless Eye Nuts. MSS Type 17.

2.4 BUILDING ATTACHMENTS

A . General. Except as otherwise indicated, provide factory- fabricated building attachments complying with MSS SP-58, of one of the following MSS types listed, selected by Installer to suit building substrate conditions, in accordance with MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's published product information. Select size of building attachments to suit hanger rods. Provide copper-plated building attachments for copper-piping systems.

B . Top Beam C-Clamps. MSS Type 19.

C . Side Beam or Channel Clamps. MSS Type 20.

D . Center Beam Clamps. MSS Type 21.

E . Welded Beam Attachments. MSS Type 22

F . C-Clamps. MSS Type 23.

G . Top Beam Clamps. MSS Type 25

H . Side Beam Clamps. MSS Type 27

I . Steel Beam Clamps W/Eye Nut. MSS Type 28

J . Linked Steel Clamps W/Eye Nut. MSS Type 29

K . Malleable Beam Clamps. MSS Type 30

L . Steel Brackets. One of the following for indicated loading.

Light Duty. MSS Type 31, suspending 750 lbs. max.
Medium Duty. MSS Type 32, suspending 1500 lbs. max.
Heavy Duty: MSS Type 33, suspending 3000 lbs. max.

M . Side Beam Brackets. MSS Type 34.

N . Plate Lugs. MSS Type 57.

O . Horizontal Travelers. MSS Type 58

2.5 CONCRETE INSERTS

A . Cast-In-Place Spot Type. Malleable iron, or steel with recommended insert nut. Size inserts nut to suite threaded hanger rod. MSS SP-69, Type 18.

B . Drill-In Spot Type. Steel, attached wedge, lock washer and nut. Size inserts to suite threaded hanger rod.

Acceptable Manufacturers and Models.

Hilti	"Kwik Bolt"
Ramset	"Wedge Anchor"
Rawl	"Stud"

C . Continuous Channel Type. Steel, anchoring lugs, with channel nuts, rated for 2000 lbs. per foot minimum load. Size channel nut to suit threaded hanger rod.

Acceptable Manufacturers and Models.

B-Line	B22
Elcen	1150
Unistrut	P3200
PHD Manufacturing, Inc.	700

2.6 SADDLES AND SHIELDS

A . General. Except as otherwise indicated, provide saddles or shields under piping hangers and supports, factory- fabricated, for all insulated piping. Size saddles and shields for exact fit to mate with pipe insulation.

B . Protection Saddles. MSS Type 39; fill interior voids with segments of insulation matching adjoining insulation.

C . Protection Shields. MSS Type 40; of length recommended by manufacturer to prevent crushing of insulation.

D . Thermal Hanger Shields. Constructed of 360° insert of high density, 125 psi compressive strength, water-proofed calcium silicate, encased in 360° sheet metal shield. Provide assembly of same thickness as adjoining insulation.

Acceptable Manufacturers.

Elcen Metal Products Co.
Pipe Shields, Inc.
PHD Manufacturing, Inc.

2.7 MANUFACTURERS OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

Acceptable Manufacturers.

B-Line Systems Inc.
Fee & Mason Mfg. Co.; Div. Figgie International.
ITT Grinnel Corp.
PHD Manufacturing, Inc.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A . Metal Framing. Provide products complying with NEMA STD ML 1.

B . Steel Plates, Shapes and Bars. Provide products complying with ASTM A 36.

C . Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D . Auxiliary Steel. Fabricate from steel shapes selected for loads required; weld steel in accordance with AWS standards.

E . Pipe Guides. Provide factory-fabricated guides, of cast semi-steel or heavy fabricated steel, consisting of bolted two-section outer cylinder and base with two-section guiding spider bolted tight to pipe. Size guide and spiders to clear pipe and insulation (if any), and cylinder. Provide guides of length recommended by manufacturer to allow indicated travel.

2.9 CONCRETE HOUSEKEEPING BASES

A . Concrete housekeeping bases shall be in accordance with Division 3 and constructed of 3,500 psi concrete and reinforced with welded wire fabric in accordance with ASTM A 185 or deformed reinforcing bar in accordance with ASTM A 615, Grade 60.

B . Reinforcement shall be provided for base thickness as follows unless otherwise noted:

Thickness of Base	Size and Type of Reinforcement	Spacing and Location of Reinforcement
4"	W 1.4 x 1.4 welded wire fabric	6" x 6" at centerline of pad
6" to 8"	No. 4 bars	18" on center each way (3" from top of pad)
12"	No. 4 bars	16" on center each way (3" from top of pad)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A . Examine areas and conditions under which supports and anchors are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

3.2 PREPARATION

A . Proceed with installation of hangers, supports and anchors only after required building structural work has been completed in areas where the work is to be installed. Correct inadequacies including (but not limited to) proper placement of inserts, anchors and other building structural attachments.

B . Prior to installation of hangers, supports, anchors and associated work, Installer shall meet at project site with Contractor, installer of each component of associated work, inspection and testing agency representatives (if any), installers of other work requiring coordination with work of this section and Owner's Representative for purpose of reviewing material selections and procedures to be followed in performing the work in compliance with requirements specified.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF BUILDING ATTACHMENTS

A . Install building attachments at required locations within concrete or on structural steel for proper piping support. Space attachments within maximum piping span length indicated in MSS SP-69. Install additional at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, guides, strainers, expansion joints, and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten insert securely to forms. Where concrete with compressive strength less than 2500 psi is indicated, install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A . General. Install hangers, supports, clamps and attachments to support piping properly from building structure; comply with MSS SP-69. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping to be supported together on trapeze type hangers where possible. Install supports with maximum spacings complying with MSS SP-69. Where piping of various sizes is to be supported together by trapeze hangers, space hangers for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipe. Do not use wire or perforated metal to support piping, and do not support piping from other piping.

B . Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers and other accessories. Except as otherwise indicated for exposed continuous pipe runs, install hangers and supports of same type and style as installed for adjacent similar piping.

C . Support fire-water piping independently of other piping.

D . Prevent electrolysis in support of copper tubing by use of hangers and supports which are copper plated, or by other recognized industry methods.

E . Support and laterally brace vertical pipe runs at every floor level and at intervals not to exceed 20'-0". Support vertical pipe with riser clamps installed below hubs, couplings or lugs welded to the pipe.

F . Provisions for Movement.

1. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled movement of piping systems and to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends and similar units.
2. Load Distribution. Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loading and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
3. Pipe Slopes. Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes, and so that maximum pipe deflections allowed by ANSI B31 Pressure Piping Codes are not exceeded.

G . Insulated Piping. Comply with the following installation requirements.

1. Clamps. Attach clamps, including spacers (if any), to piping with clamps projecting through insulation; do not exceed pipe stresses allowed by ANSI B31.
2. Piping hangers shall be sized large enough to allow insulation to pass through. Hangers for piping 2-1/2" and greater shall be provided with pipe covering protection saddle, or high compressive strength insulation saddle. Hangers for piping 2" and less shall be provided with pipe covering shields. On cold or chilled water piping provide vapor barrier through hanger.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORS

A . Install anchors at proper locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ANSI B31, and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

B . Fabricate and install anchor by welding steel shapes, plates and bars to piping and to structure. Comply with ANSI B31 and with AWS standards.

C . Where expansion compensators are indicated, install anchors in accordance with expansion unit manufacturer's written instructions, to limit movement of piping and forces to maximums recommended by manufacturer for each unit.

D . Anchor Spacings. Where not otherwise indicated, install anchors at ends of principal pipe-runs, at intermediate points in pipe-runs between expansion loops and bends. Make provisions for preset of anchors as required to accommodate both expansion and contraction of piping.

3.6 CONCRETE HOUSEKEEPING BASES

A . Provide concrete housekeeping bases for all floor-mounted equipment furnished as part of the work of Division 15 in accordance with Division 3. Size bases to extend minimum of 4” beyond equipment base in any direction, and 4” above finished floor elevation, unless otherwise noted on drawing. Construct of reinforced concrete, roughen floor slab beneath base for bond, and provide steel rod anchors between floor and base. Locate anchors bolts using equipment manufacturer’s templates. Chamfer top and edge corners.

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

3.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A . Provide structural steel stands to support equipment not floor mounted or hung from structure. Construct of structural steel members or steel pipe and fittings. Provide factory-fabricated tank saddles for tanks mounted on steel stands.

B . Furnish roof equipment supports to Contractor for installation as part of work of Division 7; not work of this section.

3.8 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A . Hanger Adjustments. Adjust hangers so as to distribute loads equally on attachments.

B . Support Adjustment. Provide grout under supports so as to bring piping and equipment to proper level and elevations.

C . Cleaning. Clean factory-finished surfaces. Repair any marred or scratched surfaces with manufacturer's touch-up paint.

END OF SECTION 15060

SECTION 15072

VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . This Section includes the following:

1. Isolation pads.
2. Isolation mounts.
3. Freestanding spring isolators.
4. Housed spring mounts.
5. Spring hangers.
6. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
7. Seismic snubbers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A . IBC: International Building Code.

B . ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A . Wind-Restraint Loading:

1. Basic Wind Speed: 130 mph.
2. Building Classification Category: II.
3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by the maximum area of the HVAC component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: For the following:

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.

B . Welding certificates.

C . Qualification Data: For testing agency.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A . Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Mason Industries.
6. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
7. Vibration Isolation.
8. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B . Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.

C . Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.

1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.

D . Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch-thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

E . Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.

1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.

F . Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

G . Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.

3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES (FOR WIND FORCE PROTECTION)

A . Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
2. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
3. Hilti, Inc.
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.
6. Mason Industries.
7. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
8. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.

B . General Requirements for Restraint Components for outdoor-installed equipment: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic (wind) forces to which they will be subjected.

C . Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.

1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- thick resilient cushion.

D . Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

E . Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

F . Hanger Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.

G . Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

H . Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

I . Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

J . Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A . Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic- and wind-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B . Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C . Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A . Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B . Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C . Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A . Equipment Restraints:

1. Install seismic snubbers for wind force protection on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.

B . Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

C . Install wind-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for equipment installed outdoors.

D . Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

E . Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

F . Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

G . Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B . Perform tests and inspections.

C . Tests and Inspections:

1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
5. Measure isolator deflection.
6. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
7. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

D . Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E . Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A . Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.

B . Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

C . Adjust active height of spring isolators.

D . Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 15072

SECTION 15077

IDENTIFICATION FOR PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Duct labels.
5. Stencils.
6. Valve tags.
7. Warning tags.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B . Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C . Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D . Valve numbering scheme.

E . Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B . Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C . Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A . Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B . Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C . Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A . Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B . Letter Color: Black.

C . Background Color: White.

D . Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E . Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F . Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger

lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G . Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H . Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I . Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A . General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B . Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C . Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D . Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

A . Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B . Letter Color: Black.

C . Background Color: Black.

D . Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E . Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F . Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G . Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws self-tapping screws.

H . Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I . Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.5 STENCILS

A . Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.

1. Stencil Material: Brass.
2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 VALVE TAGS

A . Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

B . Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.7 WARNING TAGS

A . Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.

3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A . Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A . Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B . Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A . Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09.

B . Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C . Pipe Label Color Schedule: Install PVC pipe covers as manufactured by Seton for all piping throughout building. Install per manufacturers instructions.

1. Domestic Cold Water – Green background with white letters.
2. Domestic Hot Water – Yellow background with black letters.
3. Domestic Hot Water Recirculation - Yellow background with black letters.
4. Non-Potable Water - Yellow background with black letters.
5. Sanitary Sewer - Yellow background with black letters.
6. Sanitary Vent - Yellow background with black letters.

7. Oily Waste - Yellow background with black letters.
8. Oily Vent- Yellow background with black letters.
9. Natural Gas - Yellow background with black letters..
10. Lubrication EO, ATF, EC, & HO – Yellow background with black letters.
11. Refrigeration – Yellow background with black letters.
12. Condensate – Yellow background with black letters.
13. Compressed Air – Green background with white letters.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

A . Install plastic-laminated, self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:

1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.

B . Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A . Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B . Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape: 1-1/2 inches, round.
2. Valve-Tag Color: Natural.
3. Letter Color: Black.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A . Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 15077

SECTION 15081

DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
5. Outdoor, exposed supply.

B . Related Sections:

1. Division 15 Section "Piping Insulation."
2. Division 15 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B . Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

C . Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

D . Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance

of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

E . Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B . Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A . Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B . Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C . Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A . Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B . Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A . If retaining more than one type of insulation in this article, indicate where each type applies in insulation system schedules.

B . Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

C . Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

D . Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

E . Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

F . Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

G . Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
   b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
   c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet, K-Flex Gray Duct Liner, and K-FLEX LS.

H . Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
   b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
   c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
   e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

I . Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements,:
   a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
   b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
   c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
   d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
   e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
   f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

J . Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
   b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
   c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
   e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A . Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 1-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Johns Manville; Super Firetemp M.

B . Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 1-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
   b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
   c. Nelson Fire Stop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.

d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
f. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A . Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B . Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
   b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
   d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

C . Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

D . ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

2.4 MASTICS

A . Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B . Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
   b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C . Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.

4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

D . Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A . Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
   b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
   c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A . FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

B . ASJ Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A . Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A . Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B . FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
   b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
   c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
   d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White.

C . Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
   b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
   c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
   a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
   b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
   d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

D . Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

2.9 TAPES

A . ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
   b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
   c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
   d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B . FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
   b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
   c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
   d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C . Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
   b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
   c. Compac Corporation; 120.
   d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

A . Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
   b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B . Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
      2) GEMCO; CD.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
      4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
      2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
      4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
      2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
   b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
   c. Spindle: Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
      2) GEMCO; R-150.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
      4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
   b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C . Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D . Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. C & F Wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A . Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B . Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A . Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A . Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B . Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C . Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D . Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E . Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F . Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G . Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H . Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I . Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J . Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K . Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
   a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

L . Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M . Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N . Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A . Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B . Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C . Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D . Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping"firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A . Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A . Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
   a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
   b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
   c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
   d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
   e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
   f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B . Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
   a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
   b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
   c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
   d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
   e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A . Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.

3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B . Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C . Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A . Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B . Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C . Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FINISHES

A . Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
   a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B . Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C . Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D . Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B . Perform tests and inspections.

C . Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D . All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A . Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Outdoor, exposed supply.

B . Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE AND FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE.

A . See Table 1 for duct and field-applied jacket schedule.

B . Exposed, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.13 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A . Exposed supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE AND FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE
TABLE 1

Service	Insulation Material	Min. Installed R-Value, h.ft^2 ^{o}F/Btu	Insulation Thickness, Inches	Number of Layers	Field-Applied Jacket	Vapor Retarder Required Yes/No
A. Indoor Duct and Plenum Located in Attic with Insulated Roof or in Indirectly Air-Conditioned Spaces						
1. Round and oval supply-air, return air and outside-air duct, concealed.	Mineral-Fiber Blanket	5.0	1.5	One	-	Yes
2. Rectangular supply-air, return-air and outside air duct, concealed.	Mineral-Fiber Blanket Mineral-Fiber Board	5.0	1.5	One	-	Yes
B. Indoor Duct and Plenum Located in Air-Conditioned Spaces						
1. Round supply-air and return air duct, concealed.	Mineral-Fiber Blanket	3.5	1.5	One	-	Yes
2. Rectangular supply-air and return-air duct, concealed.	Mineral-Fiber Blanket	3.5	1.5	One	-	Yes
3. Round and rectangular supply-air and return-air duct, exposed.	Mineral-Fiber Blanket Mineral-Fiber Board Liner	3.5	1.5	One	-	Yes
C. Duct and Plenum Located in Unconditioned Space						
1. Round and rectangular supply-air and return-air duct.	Mineral-Fiber Blanket Mineral-Fiber Board	6.0	2.0	One		Yes
D. Duct and Plenum Located Outside of Building Envelope						
1. Round and rectangular supply-air and return-air duct.	Mineral-Fiber Blanket Mineral-Fiber Board	8.0	2.0	One	Aluminum	Yes

END OF SECTION 15081

SECTION 15083

PIPE INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 Specification Sections, and all other specification sections apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . This Section includes mechanical insulation including jackets, accessories and attachments for pipe, pumps and boiler breeching as follows:

1. Insulation Materials:
   a. Mineral fiber.
   b. Cellular glass.
   c. Flexible elastomeric.
   d. Polyolefin.
   e. Calcium silicate.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A . ASJ: All-service jacket.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.

B . Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:

1. Application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at pipe hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
3. Insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
4. Removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
5. Application of field-applied jackets.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B . Insulation Contractor Company Qualifications: Insulation shall be installed by a company with 5 years minimum experience and whose principal business is the application and installation of thermal insulating material on piping systems and equipment. Materials shall be by recognized manufacturers and shall be installed by skilled mechanics in accordance with manufacturer's standard published instructions except as otherwise specified.

C . Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A . Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

B . On-site Storage: Insulation materials shall be protected from the weather and kept dry during shipping, storage, and installation. Contractor shall replace any material which becomes wet during storage and installation without any additional cost to the owner.

1.7 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.

B . Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for insulation application.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A . Schedule insulation application after testing piping systems and where required, after installing and testing heat-trace tape. Insulation application may begin on segments of piping that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A . Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, these manufacturers offering products are acceptable to these specifications:

1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:
   a. CertainTeed Manson Insulation
   b. Knauf Insulation
   c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
   d. Schuller International, Inc.
   e. Fibrex Insulation
   f. Johns Manville
2. Cellular-Glass Insulation:
   a. Pittsburgh-Corning Corp.
   b. Cell-U-Foam Corporation
3. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:
   a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
   b. RBX Corporation
   c. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
4. Polyolefin Insulation:
   a. Armacell LLC
   b. Nomaco Inc., IMCOA
   c. RBX Corporation
5. Fire-Rated Insulation:
   a. Johns Mansville
   b. CertainTeed Corp.
   c. Nelson Firestop Products
   d. Thermal Ceramics
   e. 3M
   f. Unifrax Corporation
   g. Vesuvius

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A . Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation:

1. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 75 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less.
2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A.
3. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A.
4. Blanket Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing.
5. Fire-Resistant Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C in the following classes and grades:

a. Class 1, Grade A for bonding glass-cloth and tape to unfaced glass-fiber insulation, for sealing edges of glass-fiber insulation, and for bonding lagging cloth to unfaced glass-fiber insulation.
b. Class 2, Grade A for bonding glass-fiber insulation to metal surfaces.

6. Vapor-Barrier Mastics: Fire- and water-resistant, vapor-barrier mastic for indoor applications. Comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
7. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 195.
8. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

B . Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells.

1. Maximum service temperature is 900 deg F, (55 deg C) 7.5 lbs/ft^3 minimum nominal density, 0.0 perm-in water permeability, 0.0% (by volume) water absorption and the thermal conductivity (k-value) at 75 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.32 Btu-in./hr- ft^3-^oF (0.042 W/m x K).
2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.

C . Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

1. Maximum service temperature is 220 deg. F, 1.5 lbs/ft^3 minimum nominal density, 0.10 perm-in water permeability, 0.0% (by volume) water absorption and the thermal conductivity (k-value) at 75 deg. F (55 deg C) is 0.27 Btu-in./hr- ft^3-^oF (0.042 W/m x K).

D . Flexible Polyolefin: Polymer based, low density, closed cell insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

1. Maximum service temperature is 210 deg F, 1.5 lbs/ft^3 minimum nominal density, 0.0 perm-in water permeability, 0.0% (by volume) water absorption and the thermal conductivity (k-value) at 75 deg. F (55 deg C) is 0.25 Btu-in./hr- ft^3-^oF (0.042 W/m x K).

2.3 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A . Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F (927 deg C). Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. UL tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating.

1. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is UL tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating.

2.4 INSULATION JACKETS

A . Provide insulation with insulation manufacturer's factory applied standard reinforced fire retardant all service jacket with or without integral vapor barrier as required by the service. All service jackets shall be white, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing or self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

B . Field-applied jackets shall be a properly sealed foil, scrim, kraft-paper jacket, common with factory-applied jackets for mineral-fiber insulation, meets vapor-retarder requirements of ASTM C 921, Type I.

C . PVC Jacket: High-impact, ultraviolet-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; 20 mils thick; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
2. PVC Jacket Color: White.
3. Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.

D . Standard PVC Fitting Covers: Factory-fabricated fitting covers manufactured from 20-mil- thick, high-impact, ultraviolet-resistant PVC.

1. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories for the disabled.
2. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
3. Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.

E . Aluminum Jacket: Factory cut and rolled to indicated sizes. Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 3003 alloy, H-14 temper.

1. Finish and Thickness: Smooth finish, 0.016 inch thick.
2. Moisture Barrier: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
3. Elbows: Preformed, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows; same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
4. Bands: Stainless steel, 3/4 inch minimum width.

2.5 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS

A . Glass Cloth and Tape: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I for cloth and Type II for tape. Woven glass-fiber fabrics, plain weave, presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.

1. Tape Width: 4 inches.

B . Pressure Sensitive Tape: Aluminum foil tape listed and labeled under UL 181A, Part 1(P), T identified by a date of manufacture, product model number and UL 181A(P). Tapes shall be a minimum of 2-1/2" wide.

C . Adhesive, Mastics and Sealants: All materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets and substrates and as recommended by insulation manufacturer.

D . Bands: 3/4 inch wide, in one of the following materials compatible with jacket:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304; 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
2. Galvanized Steel: 0.005 inch (0.13 mm) thick.
3. Aluminum: 0.007 inch thick.
4. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel; or 0.062-inch (1.6-mm), soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

2.6 VAPOR BARRIERS

A . Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A . Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A . Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A . Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B . Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C . Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D . Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E . Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F . Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G . Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H . Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I . Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J . Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K . Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L . In mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, shop areas, maintenance areas, and other areas subject to high traffic or potential damage, provide PVC or metal jackets on all exposed insulated piping from finished floor up to 8 feet above finished floor.

M . Weatherproof exterior pipe insulation with weatherproof aluminum jacket.

N . In mechanical rooms provide PVC fitting covers on all ells and tees.

O . Install insulation with factory-applied all service jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) on center.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches (100 mm) on center.
   a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are required, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

P . Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

Q . Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

R . Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

S . For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A . Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B . Insulation Installation at Below-Grade Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C . Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D . Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E . Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations.

1. Firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers are specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

F . Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Install pipe insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A . Requirements in this Article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B . Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap

adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.

5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C . Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D . Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A . Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) on center.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B . Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C . Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D . Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

A . Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) on center.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B . Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C . Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D . Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A . Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B . Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C . Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D . Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.9 FLEXIBLE POLYOLEFIN INSULATION INSTALLATION

A . Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B . Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C . Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D . Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A . Where jackets are provided, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B . Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C . Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D . Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) on center. and at end joints.

3.11 FINISHES

A . Coordinate first paragraph below with Division 9 painting Sections. If PVC jackets are specified, consult jacket manufacturers to determine suitable paint products and edit painting Sections to suit Project.

B . Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 9 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
   a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

C . Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

D . Flexible Polyolefin Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

E . Color: Final color white. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

F . Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

3.12 PIPING SYSTEM APPLICATIONS

A . Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedule at the end of this Section.

B . Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:

1. Flexible connectors.
2. Vibration-control devices.
3. Fire-suppression piping.
4. Air chambers, unions, strainers, check valves, shut-off and balancing valves, and flow regulators.

3.13 INSULATION INSTALLATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A . Refer to insulation application schedule for required insulation materials, vapor barriers, and jackets.

B . Application schedule identifies piping system and indicates pipe size ranges and material, thickness, and jacket requirements.

3.14 INTERIOR PIPING INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE

Service	Pipe Size, Inches	Insulation Material	Min. Insulation Thickness, Inches	Jacket	Vapor Barrier Required Yes/No
Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 deg. F.	All	Mineral Fiber	1.0	ASJ	Yes
	All	Cellular Glass	1.5	ASJ	No
	All	Flex.Elastom.	0.5	NR	No
Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping	≤1.5	Mineral Fiber	1.5	ASJ	Yes
	>1.5	Mineral Fiber	1.5	ASJ	Yes
	≤1.5	Cellular Glass	1.5	NR	No
	>1.5	Cellular Glass	2	NR	No
	≤1.5	Flex.Elastom.	1.5	NR	No
	>1.5	Flex.Elastom.	1.5	NR	No
	≤1.5	Polyolefin	1.5	NR	No
	>1.5	Polyolefin	1.5	NR	No
Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing	≤1.5	Flex.Elastom.	1.5	NR	No
	>1.5	Flex.Elastom.	1.5	NR	No
	≤1.5	Polyolefin	1.5	NR	No
	>1.5	Polyolefin	1.5	NR	No

PIPE INSULATION SCHEDULE NOTES:

1. The portion of condensate drain lines run on the floor in equipment rooms does not require insulation.

END OF SECTION 15083

SECTION 15093

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

C. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

C. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber or NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel, Plastic, or Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Presealed Systems.

C. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 07920 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07841 "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.

1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 07620 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07841 "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 15093

SECTION 15183

REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A . Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:

1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
2. Solenoid valves.
3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
4. Filter dryers.
5. Strainers.
6. Pressure-regulating valves.

B . Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.

C . Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

1. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided,

elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

D . Welding certificates.

E . Field quality-control test reports.

F . Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

B . Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

C . Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.6 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A . Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

1.7 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A . Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L, to be cleaned, dehydrated, sealed and marked labeled for refrigerant use.

B . Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

C . Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D . Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E . Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.

F . Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A . Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B . Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C . Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D . Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.

4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

E . Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24 or 115-V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
8. Manual operator.

F . Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

G . Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.

H . Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
6. Equalizer: Internal.
7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24 or 115-V ac coil.
8. End Connections: Socket.
9. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

I . Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J . Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

K . Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L . Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig Insert value.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M . Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

N . Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

2.3 REFRIGERANTS

A . Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.

B . ASHRAE 34, R-410A; Pentafluoroethane Diffuoromethane

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

A . Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A . Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.

B . Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.

C . Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

D . Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

E . Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.

F . Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.

G . Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.

1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

H . Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

I . Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

J . Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:

1. Solenoid valves.
2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
4. Compressor.

K . Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.

L . Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.

M . Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A . Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location of HVAC equipment. Based on field conditions, the Contractor shall verify piping routing and arrangements in order to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as approved on Shop Drawings.

B . Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and equipment manufacturer's instructions.

C . Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D . Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E . Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F . Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

G . Install piping free of sags and bends.

H . Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I . Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

J . Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

K . Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

L . Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

M . Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

N . Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

O . When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

P . Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.

Q . Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

R . Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

S . Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.

T . Seal pipe penetrations through exterior walls according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and methods.

U . Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 15 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A . Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B . Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C . Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.

D . Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E . Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F . Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G . Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A . Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B . Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
2. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
3. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C . Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

D . Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B . Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
   b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
   c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
   d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A . Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A . Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B . Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C . Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D . Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E . Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 15183

Section 15300

FIRE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, and other Division Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Design, furnish and install a complete automatic sprinkler system throughout the entire 4200 Leeland Annex Building and in building areas noted on drawings within the NEWPP Administration Building. Design shall include complete piping and sprinkler layout, details, sections and hydraulic calculations. Furnishing and installation shall include all related excavation, bedding, backfilling, piping, fittings, valves, hangers and supports, alarm switches, painting, equipment; cutting and patching and finishing of floors, walls and pavement; and all appurtenant and incidental work required to complete and provide operable fire protection system as shown on the drawings and specified herein.

B. All fees and permits to be obtained and paid for by the Contractor installing that portion of the work.

C. Provide “Record” drawings after completion of project.

1.3 DESIGN CRITERIA

A. Design systems to the occupancy requirements of NFPA 13-2010, International Fire Code (IFC) 2006 and the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

B. Provide Fire Department connection.

C. Provide inspector’s test stations and drains.

D. Provide detailed shop drawings of the automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with NFPA 13.

E. System design pressure is 175 psig.

F. Provide hydraulic calculations of the automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with NFPA 13. Hydraulic calculations shall not exceed 90 percent of the available pressure.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Specialist Company. Company specializing in sprinkler systems design and installation. Licensed Fire Protection Contractor by the State of Texas.

B. Design Certification. Person performing design of sprinkler systems shall have a NICET Level 3 or higher certification. All drawings and calculations shall be signed and sealed accordingly.

C. Installation Certification. Persons performing fire protection installation shall have a current Texas State Fire Protection Installation License.

D. Persons performing electrical (fire alarm) work shall have a current Texas State Electricians License.

E. Persons welding shall be certified in accordance with AWS QC11 – Specification for Qualification and Certification for Level II – Advanced Welders.

F. Pipe sizes, as shown on the Drawings and or specified herein, are minimum pipe sizes. Pipe sizes shall be increased at no additional cost to the Contract if so required by applicable codes and ordinances, or if sizes are not available in certain materials and equipment. Under no circumstances shall pipe sizes be decreased.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide in accordance with NFPA 13-2010, NFPA 24-2010, International Fire Code (IFC) 2006 and the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The Authority Having Jurisdiction includes City of Houston, Texas (City Fire Marshal) and the requirements of Owner's Insurance Underwriter.

B. Welding shall be in accordance with AWS D10.12 – Recommended Practices and Procedures for Welding Low Carbon Steel Pipe.

C. Piping materials specified herein are acceptable products to the Owner's Representative but all are not necessarily acceptable to applicable local codes and ordinances. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide materials, from the options listed herein, that are acceptable to both the Owner's Representative and applicable local codes and ordinances.

D. Pipe sizes as shown on the Drawings are minimum pipe sizes. Contractor shall increase those pipe sizes if calculations so require, but under no circumstance shall pipe sizes be decreased.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Prior to submittal to Owner's Representative, submit shop drawings, product data, and hydraulic calculations to the Authority Having Jurisdiction for approval in accordance with NFPA 13 and 01330 Submittal Procedures.

B. After approval from the Authority Having Jurisdiction, submit shop drawings, product data, and hydraulic calculations to Owner's Representative (with Certificate of Approval from the Authority Having Jurisdiction) for approval in accordance with NFPA 13 and 01330 Submittal Procedures.

C. Indicate pipe materials used, jointing methods, supports, floor and wall penetration seals.

D. Indicate valve data and ratings.

E. Submit certificates in accordance with 01330 Submittal Procedures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All products shall be UL listed, and in accordance with NFPA 13.

2.2 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Aboveground Piping

1. Steel Pipe shall be in accordance with ASTM A53, A135 and A795. Steel pipe shall have a Corrosion Resistance Ratio (CRR) of 1 as issued by UL. Fittings shall be in accordance with NFPA 13. In addition, pipe and fittings shall be in accordance with City of Houston, Texas and Owner’s Insurance Underwriter.

B. Underground Pipe And Fittings

1. Piping within 5'-0" of the building, provide ductile iron piping. ANSI/AWWA C115, Class 53. Fittings. ANSI/AWWA C110, ductile iron, standard thickness. Joints: Flanged, full face, 1/8-inch thick red rubber, 316 stainless steel bolts and nuts. Pipe, fittings, bolts and nuts to be tar coated outside. Pipe and fitting to be cement mortar lined inside, ANSI A21.4. Pipe and fittings to be polyethylene encased, ANSI/AWWA C105.

2. In lieu of ductile iron piping above, piping within 5’-0” of the building may be a manufactured one piece in-building riser, UL listed/FM approved, composed of 304 stainless steel pipe and 90 degree fitting with a working pressure of 175 psi.

The riser shall have a grooved-end connection on the outlet side and cast iron hub on the inlet side. In-building riser shall be manufactured by Ames Company.

3. Piping beyond 5'-0" of the building shall be ductile iron pipe (AWWA C151) or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe (AWWA C900). Fittings for ductile iron and PVC shall be ductile iron (AWWA C110), 250 pound rated, mechanical joint or push-on. Joints shall be mechanical joint or push-on (AWWA C111). Ductile iron pipe and fittings shall be tar coated outside and cement-mortar lined inside (AWWA C104).

2.3 BACKFLOW PREVENTER

A. Double check backflow preventer shall be supplied as a complete assembly consisting of two spring loaded check valves, two OS&Y shut-off valves and test cocks. The assembly shall be constructed of stainless steel, bronze or iron body with bronze or stainless steel internal parts, 175 psi working pressure, and shall comply with ANSI/ASSE 1015, AWWA C506, USC-FCCCHR and UL listed.

2.4 VALVES AND ACCESSORIES

A. Valves and accessories shall be in accordance with NFPA 13.

2.5 SPRINKLER HEADS

A. Suspended Ceiling Type

1. In ceilings less than 9 feet high, provide quick response, concealed pendent type heads with white factory painted cover.

2. In ceilings 9 feet high and greater, provide quick response semi-recessed low profile pendent type heads with white factory painted escutcheon and head.

B. Horizontal Sidewall Type.

1. Sidewall sprinklers located less than 9 feet above finished floor shall be quick response concealed type heads with white factory painted finish.

2. Sidewall sprinklers located 9 feet and greater above finished floor shall be quick response semi-recessed low profile type heads with white factory painted finish.

C. Exposed Non-Ceiling Area Type

1. Quick response, low profile, upright type with brass finish.

D. Provide sprinkler head guards on all pendent sprinkler heads less than 8 feet above finished floor in non-finished non-ceiling areas.

2.6 ELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Alarm switch.

1. Vane type, 24 VDC, adjustable retard (wet system only), dual SPDT.

2. Pressure Type, Snap Action, NEMA 4 construction, 5 psi to 15 psi adjustment range, 24 VDC (dry system only), dual SDPT. Designed to activate alarm on increase in pressure.

B. Supervisory switch.

1. OS&Y gate valve type, 24 VDC.

2. Indicator Post Type, 24 VDC, weatherproof

3. Pressure switch. 24 VDC, dual SPDT.

2.7 ALARM BELL

A. Exterior Alarm Bell. Electric 10" diameter, weatherproof, 97 dB at 10'-0", 24 VDC, marked "Sprinkler Alarm."

B. Interior Alarm Bell. Electric 6" diameter, 93 dB at 10'-0", 24 VDC, marked sprinkler alarm.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Provide 1-1/2” piping labels at 25’ intervals and 1-1/2” valve tags numbered and scheduled. Place schedule in Sprinkler Riser Room under glass and mounted to wall. In addition, provide signage as required by NFPA 13.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION – GENERAL

A. Installation shall be in accordance with NFPA 13, NFPA 24 and the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

B. Excavating, trenching, bedding, backfilling, and compacting are specified in Section 02300 Earthwork.

3.2 INSTALLATION - PIPE

A. Ream pipe and tube ends to full inside diameter and remove burrs and bevel plain end pipe.

B. Remove scale and foreign material, inside and outside, before assembly.

C. Thread steel pipe joints up to and including 1-1/2 inch diameter. Thread, weld, or groove 2-inch diameter and larger, including branch connections.

D. Mechanical joints may be used instead of threaded or welded joints.

E. Die-cut threaded joints with full-cut standard taper pipe threads with red lead and linseed oil or other non-toxic joint compound applied to male threads only.

F. Coat threaded ends with pipe lubricant compound.

G. In steel piping, main sized saddle branch connections or direct connection of branch lines to mains is permitted if main is two pipe sizes larger than the branch. Do not project branch pipes inside the main pipe.

H. Do not penetrate or cut building structural members.

I. Fire protection water service piping below building shall be provided with flanged joints, rodding and thrust block restraint in accordance with NFPA 24. Flange bolts and nuts shall be 316 stainless steel. All rodding shall be coated with bitumastic coating. Gravity thrust block restraint shall be provided on the below floor elbow at the base of the riser. Minimum size of concrete thrust block shall be 36”x 36” x 36”.

J. Establish elevation of buried pipe outside the building to ensure not less than 3 feet of cover over top of pipe.

K. Piping shall not run through grade beams. Piping shall run under grade beams.

L. Place pipe runs to minimize obstruction to other work.

M. Place piping in concealed spaces above finished ceilings.

3.3 INSTALLATION - VALVES

A. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.

B. Provide drain valves at main shut-off valve and after all zone valves. In addition, provide auxiliary drains at all low points.

3.4 INSTALLATION - EQUIPMENT

A. Locate Fire Department connection in accordance with City Fire Marshal, with sufficient clearance from walls, obstructions, or adjacent siamese connectors to allow full swing of Fire Department wrench handles.

B. Locate exterior alarm bell on outside building wall next to fire department connection.

C. Apply strippable tape or paper cover to ensure sprinkler heads do not receive field paint finish.

D. Provide inspectors test stations in accordance with NFPA 13 and the Authority Having Jurisdiction to properly test all alarms and flow. Inspectors test station locations shall be acceptable to the Owner's Representative.

E. Provide 3/4-inch ball drip at low point of Fire Department Connection and pipe to floor drain or through exterior wall.

F. Penetration Seals.

1. Install caulked seals in exterior walls above grade where piping passes from one space to another, where any one of the spaces the piping penetration is not concealed by a ceiling.

2. Piping penetrations through conventional built-up roof shall be made water tight by flashing and counter flashing in roof system and sealed with bituminous sealant. Piping penetrations through non-conventional roof such as membrane, standing seam, etc. shall be in accordance with the roofing manufacturer's requirements and meet the roofing manufacturer's warranty.

3. Seal and make air tight all clean room wall and ceiling penetrations.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Flush entire piping system of foreign matter in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 24.

3.6 TESTING

A. Hydrostatically leak test entire piping system in accordance with the Authority Having Jurisdiction, NFPA 13 and NFPA 24 or 1-1/2 times the operating pressure, whichever is greater.

B. Leak testing shall be witnessed and approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and Owner's Representative.

C. Submit "Certificates of Test Completion and Approval" for Piping Systems Leak Testing stating that all test results are satisfactory. Certificates must be signed by Contractor, the Authority Having Jurisdiction and Owner's Representative.

D. Test automatic sprinkler systems, including alarm switches, supervisory switches, electric alarm bells, and interfacing with building fire and smoke alarm system to ensure proper

operation. Tests shall be performed in accordance with the Authority Having Jurisdiction and NFPA 13.

E. Operational tests shall be witnessed and approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and Owner's Representative.

F. After completion and approval of testing submit "Certificate of Test Completion and Approval" for automatic sprinkler systems operation stating that all test results are satisfactory. Certificates must be signed by Contractor, the Authority Having Jurisdiction and Owner's Representative.

3.7 OWNERS OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE TRAINING

A. Fire Protection Contractor shall provide a minimum of 4 hours (or as long as required by the Owner) to demonstrate to the Owner the proper operation and maintenance of the automatic sprinkler system including associated accessories and alarms. Fire Protection Contractor shall arrange times and dates satisfactory to all persons required to be in attendance.

B. After completion and approval of demonstrations, submit "Certificates of Demonstration Completion and Approval" for automatic sprinkler system stating that the Demonstrations of the systems are satisfactory. Certificates must be signed by the Contractor, Owner and Owner's Representative.

C. After completion and approval of demonstrations, submit "Certificates of Demonstration Completion and Approval" for fire system stating that the Demonstrations of the systems is satisfactory. Certificates must be signed by the Contractor, Owner and Owner's Representative.

END OF SECTION

Section 15400

PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, and other Division Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Plumbing systems including related excavation, bedding, backfilling, piping, fittings, valves, hangers and supports, controls, painting, insulation, plumbing fixtures and trim, and plumbing specialties and equipment; cutting and patching of floors and walls; and all appurtenant and incidental work to complete and provide operable systems as shown on the drawings and specified herein.

B. Demolition of plumbing systems including piping, fittings, valves plumbing fixtures and appurtenant and incidental work as shown on the drawings. Cutting and patching of existing floors, walls and roofs to match existing.

C. Fees and permits to be obtained and paid for by the Contractor installing that portion of the work.

D. Deionized water system equipment is to be relocated from existing labs at EWPP1 and SEWPP and reinstalled in the Leeland Annex Building Room #110 by Mueller Water Conditioning, Inc, 1500 Sherwood Forest Dr., Houston Texas, Phone # 713/467-3226. Contact David Davis Phone # 281/667-7662. General Contractor shall include as part of his contract.

E. Provide “Record” drawings after completion of project.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Persons performing plumbing work shall have a current Texas State Plumbing License.

B. Persons performing electrical work shall have a current Texas State Electricians License.

C. Welding Materials and Procedures. Conform to ASME Code or AWS 10.12.

D. Welders Certification. Employ certified welders conforming to ANSI/ASME Sec. 9. or AWS QC11-Level II Advanced Welders.

E. Manufacturer's model numbers listed under the acceptable manufacturers and models are provided to indicate the basic product series required. In addition, features listed in the product description shall be included whether or not included with the listed model number.

F. Pipe sizes, as shown on the Drawings and or specified herein, are minimum pipe sizes. Pipe sizes shall be increased at no additional cost to the Contract if so required by applicable codes and ordinances, or if sizes are not available in certain materials and equipment. Under no circumstances shall pipe sizes be decreased.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Plumbing work to Conform to the most recent editions of the City of Houston, Texas applicable codes and ordinances, International Plumbing Code-2006, International Energy Conservation Code-2006 and International Fuel Gas Code-2006.

B. Conform to the most recent editions of the Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS).

C. Materials specified herein are acceptable products to these specifications, but are not necessarily acceptable to applicable local codes and ordinances. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide materials, from the options listed herein, that are acceptable to both these specifications and applicable local codes and ordinances.

D. Under PART 2- PRODUCTS where acceptable products and models are called out by product “acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal”, contractor may substitute an equal product and submit that product to the Owner’s Representative for approval prior to ordering product. Where it is called out “acceptable manufacturers and models” contractor shall select from one of those listed and submit it to the Owner’s Representative.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data on valves, fixtures and trim, plumbing specialties and equipment and other items specified herein and shown on the drawings to the Owner's Representative for review.

B. Submit product data on pipe materials, fittings, valves and accessories specified within this Section in accordance with Section 01330 Submittal Procedures.

C. Submit certificates required within this specification section in accordance with Section 01330 Submittal Procedures

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Domestic Water Piping.

1. Pipe: Copper tubing, ASTM B88, Type "L" hard drawn. Fittings: ANSI B16.22 wrought copper, ANSI B16.18 cast copper or copper press fittings with EPDM O-rings as manufactured by ProPress. Joints: ANSI/ASTM B32, solder, Grade 95TA or press type.

B. Sanitary Sewer Waste and Vent.

1. Belowground. Pipe and fittings: Hub and spigot service weight cast iron soil pipe and fittings - ASTM A74 joined with a compression type rubber gasket. Pipe and fittings tar coated inside and outside.

2. Aboveground. Pipe and fittings: No-hub cast iron soil pipe and fittings - CISPI 301. Joints: Couplings shall conform to ASTM A-888, 3” wide for pipe 1-1/2’ to 4” diameter, 4” wide for pipe sizes 5” to 10” diameter with neoprene sealing conforming to ASTM C-564, 28 gauge 304 stainless steel shields and 304 stainless steel worm drive clamps with a minimum clamp torque of 80 in/lbs, as manufactured by Clamp-All Products, Model HI-TORQ 80.

3. Above and belowground. Pipe. PVC, ASTM D2665, Schedule 40. Fittings. PVC, DWV type, Schedule 40. Joints: ASTM D2855 and D2564, solvent weld. Do not use in air plenum spaces.

C. Storm Drainage Piping

1. Pipe. PVC, ASTM D2665, Schedule 40. Fittings. PVC, DWV type, Schedule 40. Joints: ASTM D2855 and D2564, solvent weld.

D. Natural Gas Piping

1. Pipe. Steel, ASTM A53, Schedule 40 black. Fittings. Malleable iron, ANSI/ASME B16.3 or forged steel welding type ASTM A234. Joints: Threaded for pipe 2 inches and less and welded ANSI/AWS D1.1 for pipe over 2 inches. Field apply two coats of exterior grade enamel paint to all new and existing exterior gas piping. Color shall be grey.

E. Chemical Waste Piping.

1. Belowground. Pipe: ASTM A518A, Silicone cast iron hub-and-spigot, acid resistant, extra heavy weight. Fittings: Silicone cast iron, hub-and- spigot. Joints:

Rubber seal between the hub and spigot shall be Viton manufactured by high silicone cast iron drainage waste piping manufacturer. Installation shall be in accordance with high silicone cast iron drainage waste pipe manufacturer. Acceptable Manufacturer is Duriorn or approved equal.

2. Aboveground. Pipe: Silicone cast iron hubless acid resistant extra heavy weight. Fittings: Silicone cast iron. Joints: Teflon inner sleeve reinforced with neoprene outer sleeve clamped in place with two bolt stainless steel clamp. Acceptable Manufacturer is Duriorn or approved equal.

3. Above and belowground. Pipe: Stainless steel drainage waste pipe intended for corrosive service shall be designed and manufactured for drainage, TP 316L austenitic stainless steel, 0.04 inches minimum wall thickness, hub x spigot. Fittings: Stainless steel drainage pattern intended for corrosive service shall be designed and manufactured for drainage, TP 316L austenitic stainless steel, 0.04 inches minimum wall thickness, hub x spigot and manufactured by stainless steel drainage waste pipe manufacturer. Joints: Stainless steel drainage waste piping shall be joined by a gasketed hub and spigot joint. The rubber seal between the hub and spigot shall be Viton manufactured by stainless steel drainage waste piping manufacturer. Installation shall be in accordance with stainless steel drainage waste pipe manufacturer. Acceptable Manufacturer is Blucher-Watts or approved equal.

4. Above and belowground. Pipe: Schedule 40 CPVC drain, waste and vent pipe shall be dimensioned to meet ASTM F441 and pipe compound used for pipe up to 8” in diameter shall meet cell class 24448 as defined by ASTM D1784. Fittings: Fittings shall conform to NSF Standard 14 and drainage pattern per ASTM D3311. Fittings shall be from CPVC Type IV, Grade I compounds ASTM Cell Classification 23447 for fittings. Joining Method shall be One-Step Solvent Cement. Solvent Cement shall be specifically formulated for chemical waste applications and conform to ASTM F493. All pipe & fittings shall be certified by NSF International for use in chemical waste drain systems and bear the NSF mark. Acceptable manufacturer is ChemDrain manufactured by Charlotte Pipe & Foundry or approved equal.

F. Compressed Air Piping.

1. Pipe: Copper tubing, ASTM B88, Type "L" hard drawn. Fittings. ANSI B16.22 wrought copper, ANSI B16.18 cast copper or copper press fittings with EPDM O-rings as manufactured by ProPress. Joints: ANSI/ASTM B32, solder, Grade 95TA or press type.

G. Vacuum Piping.

1. Pipe: Copper tubing, ASTM B88, Type "L" hard drawn. Fittings. ANSI B16.22 wrought copper, ANSI B16.18 cast copper or copper press fittings with EPDM O-rings as manufactured by ProPress. Joints: ANSI/ASTM B32, solder, Grade 95TA or press type.

2. Pipe: PVC ASTM D1785, Schedule 80. Fittings: PVC, Schedule 80, ASTM D2467 and ASTM D2464. Joints: ASTM D2855 and D2564, solvent weld and ASTM D 2464, threaded in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. Joints shall be prepared with primers conforming to ASTM F 656 prior to cementing and assembly. Do not use in air plenum spaces.

H. Deionized Water Piping.

1. Pipe: PVC ASTM D1785, Schedule 80. Fittings: PVC, Schedule 80, ASTM D2467 and ASTM D2464. Joints: ASTM D2855 and D2564, solvent weld and ASTM D 2464, threaded in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. Joints shall be prepared with primers conforming to ASTM F 656 prior to cementing and assembly. Do not use in air plenum spaces.

I. Sample Test Water Piping.

1. Interior and exterior, above and belowground to 5' outside of the building. Pipe: ASTM A312, stainless steel, Type 316, Schedule 10. Fittings: ASTM A403, stainless steel, Type 316, Schedule 10, ASME B16.11 socket welded. Joints: AWS D10.4, belowground and below slab shall be welded and above floor shall be threaded.

2.2 VALVES

A. Ball Valves. For Domestic Water Shut-Off.

1. MSS-SP-110 and NSF 61, lead free, 600 PSI working pressure, brass or bronze construction, reinforced TFE seat and Viton seal materials, lever handle, threaded or soldered connections. Throttling valves shall be provided with memory stops.

B. Ball Valves. For Natural Gas Shut-off.

1. 2" and less. MSS-SP-110 and UL listed and labeled for natural gas, 400 PSI minimum working pressure, brass or bronze construction, TFE seats, lever or "T" handle, threaded connections.

C. Plug Valve. For Natural Gas Shut-off.

1. UL listed and labeled for natural gas, 175 PSI minimum working pressure, cast iron body, non-lubricated resilient plug seal and stem seal for natural gas, lever handle, and threaded connections for sizes 2" and less, flanged connections for sizes 2 1/2" and greater.

D. Ball Valves. For Sample Test Water Shut-Off.

1. MSS-SP-110 and NSF 61, lead free, 600 PSI working pressure, full port, 316 stainless steel construction, reinforced TFE seat and EPDM seal materials, lever handle, threaded connections.

E. Ball Valves. For Deionized Water Shut-Off.

1. 235 PSI working pressure, full port, PVC construction, reinforced TFE seat and EPDM seal materials, lever handle, threaded connections.

F. Ball Valves. For Compressed Air and Vacuum Shut-Off

1. MSS-SP-110, rated 600 PSI working pressure, brass or bronze construction, reinforced TFE seat and EPDM seal material, dezincification resistant, lever handle, threaded, soldered or press type connections.

2.3 REGULATORS AND METERS

A. Gas Pressure Regulator

1. Cast iron body, flanged connections, internal relief valve, adjustable spring range setting. See drawings for size and pressure setting. Relief vent shall be piped to outside.

Acceptable manufacturers or approved equal:

Fisher
American
Sprague
Equimeter

B. Gas Meter

1. Diaphragm-type, positive displacement, aluminum case, temperature compensated, with internal corrosion-resistant components, threaded ends for 2-inch and smaller, flanged ends for 2-1/2-inch and larger, for gas pressure, and volume flow indicated on drawings.

2.4 INSULATION

A. Fiberglass pipe insulation - ASTM C547, Class 1. Jackets for piping shall be ASTM C921, Type I for piping with temperatures below ambient and Type II for piping with temperatures above ambient. Encase pipe fittings insulation with one piece premolded PVC fitting covers.

Acceptable manufacturers or approved equal:

Owens-Corning Fiberglass
Certainteed Corp.
Knauf Fiberglass
Manville Products Corp.

B. Staples, bands, wire, cements, adhesives, sealers and protective finishes as recommended by insulation manufacturer for applications indicated.

2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Provide hangers and supports in accordance with Manufacturer Standardization Society (MSS) SP-58, SP-69 and SP-89.

B. Roof Piping Supports – Engineered prefabricated pipe support system designed for installation without roof penetration, flashing or damage to roofing system. System shall consist of bases made of high density polypropylene plastics with UV protection, electro-plated structural steel frame, pipe hanger, nuts, threaded rod washers, spring nuts and bolts. Pipe supports shall be manufacturer's standard support for piping type, media and size to be supported.

Acceptable manufacturer or approved equal:

PHP Systems

2.6 PLUMBING SPECIALTIES

A. Roof Drain.

1. RD-1. Cast iron body with sump, bottom outlet, removable polyethylene dome strainer, adjustable level, membrane flange and clamp with integral gravel stop, with adjustable underdeck clamp drain receiver and extension collar.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam Series 21500-AE

2. DSN-1. Downspout nozzle, bronze, wall flange and threaded inlet.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam Series 21500-AE

B. Floor Drains.

1. FD-1. Cast iron body, double drainage flange, weepholes, bottom outlet, 9" diameter nickel bronze adjustable heavy duty tractor type flat strainer, and non-puncturing flashing collar.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam 30,000-E

2. FD-2. Type 316 stainless steel body, double drainage flange, weepholes, bottom outlet, 7" diameter 316 stainless steel adjustable heavy duty tractor type flat strainer and flashing ring. Floor drain shall be designed for acid use.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam Series 30000-E-SS-316

C. Floor Sink Drain.

1. FSD-1. Square cast iron body, double drainage flange, weepholes, bottom outlet, aluminum dome strainer, non-puncturing flashing collar, porcelain enamel or epoxy coated interior, and less grate. Size 8" x 8" x 6".

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam 49000

D. Cleanout.

1. FCO-1. Floor cleanout, cast iron body, adjustable type, round nickel bronze top, and thread plastic plug.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam 56,000

2. FCO-2. Floor cleanout, cast iron body, adjustable type, heavy duty tractor type, round nickel bronze top, and threaded plastic plug.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam 56040-1

3. YCO. Yard cleanout, cast iron body, with straight body for caulking into soil pipe hub with countersunk tapered threaded bronze plug. Provide "T" handle wrench.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam 58190-22

4. DYCO. Double yard cleanout, cast iron body, with straight body for caulking into soil pipe hub with countersunk tapered threaded bronze plug and double cleanout T. Provide "T" handle wrench.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam	58710

5. WCO. Wall cleanout, Recessed type, cast iron body with threaded brass plug, flush mounted stainless steel access cover with countersunk center screw.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Josam	58710

E. Water Hammer Arresters.

1. WHA. ASSE 1010 and PD1 WH-201, permanently sealed bellows or expanding chamber. Sizing symbols indicated on drawings are standard classification established by PD1-WH201.

F. Trap Protection Devices.

1. Trap Protection Device. ASSE 1072 Certified, designed to allow wastewater to open and adequately discharge floor drain through its interior and closes and returns to original position after wastewater discharge is complete.

Acceptable manufacturers and models or approved equal:

Proset Systems	Trap Guard
SureSeal	Inline Trap Seal
Smith	2692

G. Backflow Preventer.

1. RPBP. Reduced pressure backflow preventer 2" and smaller; ANSI/ASSE 1013; complete unit of two independently acting check valves together with an automatically operating pressure relief valve, two ball valves, strainer, and four test cocks, bronze or stainless steel body and internal parts, 150 psi working pressure, and shall comply with AWWA Standard C506.

H. Flashings

1. Sheet lead shall be 4 pound weight.

2. Sheet copper shall be 16 ounce weight.

2.7 PLUMBING FIXTURES

A. Lavatory System and Trim

1. L-1. Wall mounted, TAS handicapped, two station, solid surface polyester resin and densified recycled granules, (2) single faucet back mount holes, stainless steel wall brackets, with underside high impact plastic trap cover, two drain with 300 series stainless steel strainers and tailpiece, three (2) 1-1/2" dia. single faucet holes, and 16 oz soap dispenser. Size: 55" long x 21" front to back with 2-1/2" high backsplash. Submit complete color board to Architect for color selection.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

   Bradley ELX-2-SSD-6334-TMA

2. Faucets for L-1. Two TAS handicapped, chrome plated brass with trim plate, deck mount, single hole and ridgid spout. Faucets shall be single temperature supply with thermostatic mixing valve under lavatory. Faucets shall be electronic, 6-volt (4) D-cell alkaline battery powered sensor operated type factory set to run for 6 seconds. Maximum flow is 0.5 gpm.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

   Bradley S53-315

3. Supplies and Stops for sinks. Through the wall angle type, chrome plated lead free brass, 1/4 turn, 1/2" threaded or soldered inlet by 3/8" O.D. compression type outlet, 3/8" O.D. chrome-plated flexible copper riser and wall escutcheon.

4. P-Trap for sinks. 17 gauge, chrome plated brass and wall escutcheon. Size 1-1/2" diameter.

B. Sink and Trim.

1. S-1. Countertop mounted, TAS handicapped, double compartment, 18-gauge stainless steel, faucet deck, self-rim, with undercoated underside, off-center drain, one (3) 1-1/2" dia. faucet hole, 4" centers, size 33" x 21" x 6" deep.

   Acceptable manufacturers and models or approved equal:

   Elkay LRADQ 3321

2. S-2. Countertop mounted, TAS handicapped, double compartment, 18-gauge stainless steel, faucet deck, self-rim, with undercoated underside, off-center drain, three (3) 1-1/2" dia. faucet holes 4" centers and additional one (1) 1-1/2" diameter faucet hole on right side, size 33" x 21" x 6" deep.

   Acceptable manufacturers and models or approved equal:

   Elkay LRADQ 3321

3. S-3. Countertop mounted, handicapped, single compartment, 18 gauge stainless steel, faucet deck, self-rim, with undercoated underside, off-center drain, three (3) 1-1/2" diameter faucet holes, 4" on center, size. 25 x 21" x 6" deep.

Acceptable manufacturers and models or approved equal:

Elkay LRADQ 2521

4. S-4. Sample sink wall mounted, single compartment, 14 gauge stainless steel, back mounted faucet with undercoated underside, dual-center drains, seven (7) 1-1/2" diameter single equally spaced faucet holes 12” O.C., size: 96” long x 20" front to back x 8" deep with a 10” high back.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Elkay EWMA 9620 Special

5. DHW and DCW Faucet for S-1, S-2 & S-3. Chrome plated cast brass, deck mount, 8" centers swing gooseneck laminar flow spout with 8" reach (centerline of spout inlet to centerline of spout outlet) and lever handles. Maximum flow is 1.0 gpm.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Chicago Faucet 201A-GN8A-369

6. DIW faucet for S-2. Chrome plated polypropylene, deck mounted single set control, pure water, gooseneck spout reach with atmospheric vacuum breaker with serrated laboratory nozzle, 6" spout reach and lever handle.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Chicago Faucet 828-ACP

7. Faucets for S-4 (7 Sample Faucets). Chrome plated cast brass, back mount, gooseneck spout reach with atmospheric vacuum breaker with serrated laboratory nozzle, 6" spout reach and lever handles.

Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

Chicago Faucet 934-CP

8. Supplies and Stops for S-1, S-2, & S-3 sinks. Through the wall angle type, chrome plated lead free brass, 1/4 turn, 1/2" threaded or soldered inlet by 3/8" O.D. compression type outlet, 3/8" O.D. chrome-plated flexible copper riser and wall escutcheon.

9. Supplies and Stops for S-4 sink. In-line type, chrome plated lead free brass, 1/4 turn, 1/2" threaded or soldered inlet by 3/8" O.D. compression type outlet, 3/8" O.D. chrome-plated flexible copper riser and wall escutcheon.

10. Strainer and Tailpiece for S-1, S-2, & S-3 sinks. Stainless steel body, conical strainer, and tailpiece, with neoprene stopper. Size: 1-1/2" diameter.

11. Strainer and Tailpiece for S-4 sink. Stainless steel perforated grid strainer with 1-1/2" chrome-plated brass tailpiece. Size: 1-1/2" diameter.

12. P-Trap for sinks. 17 gauge, chrome plated brass and wall escutcheon. Size 1-1/2" diameter.

C. Laboratory Sinks and Trim

1. LS-1. Epoxy resin, double compartment, undercounter mounted with single center hole for DHW/DCW swing faucet, and an additional single right hand side hole for DIW rigid faucet, acid resistant strainer and tailpiece and p-trap. Approximate size: 33"x 21" x 6" deep. Sink to be part of the countertop.

2. LS-2. Epoxy resin, single compartment, undercounter mounted with single 1-1/2” dia. center hole for DHW/DCW ridged faucet, and an additional single right hand side hole for DIW rigid faucet, acid resistant strainer and tailpiece and p-trap. Approximate size. 23"x 19" x 6" deep. Sink to be part of the countertop.

3. LS-3. Epoxy resin, single compartment, undercounter mounted with single 1-1/2” dia. center hole for DHW/DCW ridged faucet, acid resistant strainer and tailpiece and p-trap. Approximate size. 23"x 19" x 6" deep. Sink to be part of the countertop.

4. DHW & DCW faucet for LS-1, LS-2 & LS-3. Chrome plated cast brass, deck mounted single set combination control, swing gooseneck spout reach with atmospheric vacuum breaker with serrated laboratory nozzle, 6" spout reach and lever handles.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

   Chicago Faucet 930-369CP

5. DIW faucet for LS-1 & LS-2. Chrome plated polypropylene, deck mounted single set control, pure water, gooseneck spout reach with atmospheric vacuum breaker with serrated laboratory nozzle, 6" spout reach and lever handle.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

   Chicago Faucet 828-ACP

6. Supplies and Stops for lab sinks. Through the wall angle type, chrome plated lead free brass, 1/4 turn, 1/2" threaded or soldered inlet by 3/8 O.D. compression type outlet, 3/8" O.D. chrome-plated flexible copper riser and wall escutcheon.

7. Acid resistant perforated grid strainer with 1-1/2" chrome-plated acid resistant polypropylene tailpiece.

8. P-Trap for utility sink. Acid resistant polypropylene and wall escutcheon. Size: 1-1/2" diameter.

D. Shower

1. Mixing valve assembly for SH-1. TAS handicapped, complete with mixing valve, combination backflow preventer/wall spout with wall escutcheon for hand held shower head assembly for concealed piping installation with chrome-plated exposed parts. Pressure balancing type mixing valve with adjustable temperature limit stop, single lever handle, and integral checks and stops. Hand held shower head assembly shall include a 69" minimum long metal hose, nylon hand held shower head and 24" minimum long stainless steel slide bar with up/down and right/left pivoting sprayer slide bracket. Shower valve shall be provided with universal rough-in. Maximum flow of shower head shall be 1.5 GPM.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

   Moen 8346EP15 w/accessories

E. Emergency Shower/Eyewash Station

1. ESE-1. Floor Standing exposed type with floor flange, galvanized steel, piping plastic shower head actuated by a stay open ball valve with rigid pull rod and handle, eyewash with large stainless steel bowl and two soft stream heads actuated by stay open ball valve with push-flag. Pipe sizes shall be 1-1/4" water inlet and 1-1/4" drain.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

   Guardian G1902

2.8 PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

A. Domestic Water Heater Circulation Pump And Accessories

1. Circulation pumps (HWCP). Inline type, flanged connections, rated for 125 psi at 220°F, single stage, vertical split case, all bronze or stainless steel and provided with oil cups. See Schedule for capacity.

   Acceptable manufacturers or approved equal:

   Bell & Gossett
   Armstrong

2. Time clock for circulation pump. On-off control, 24 hour 7 days a week SPST mechanical time switch, NEMA 1 enclosure, 40 amp rated at 120 VAC, UL listed.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

   Tork 1101

B. Neutralization Basin and Accessories

1. Acid Neutralization Basin shall be precast concrete with 3/16 thick high density polyethylene liner and jacket. Concrete shall be 4500 psi at 28 days and reinforced with Grade 60 steel rebar conforming to ASTM A615. All piping inside basin shall be Schedule 40 PVC supported with 316 stainless steel brackets. Cover and frame shall be 24” diameter bolted down with 316 stainless steel bolts. Cover shall be marked “Neutralization Basin”. Non-wetted interior surfaces of the neutralization basin shall be coated with 2 coats of acid resistant epoxy paint.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal.

   Park ANT-100-PP

2. Sample Well shall be 15” diameter precast concrete. Concrete shall be 4500 psi at 28 days and reinforced with Grade 60 steel rebar conforming to ASTM A615. Cover and frame shall be bolted down with 316 stainless steel bolts Cover shall be marked “Sample Well”. Interior surfaces of the sample well shall be coated with 2 coats of acid resistant epoxy paint. Exterior shall be coated with 2 coats of bitumastic coating.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal.

   Park SWB-156

2.9 PIPING PENETRATIONS

A. Provide pipe sleeves of one of the following:

1. Sheet-Metal. Fabricate from galvanized sheet metal; round tube closed with snaplock joint, welded spiral seams, or welded longitudinal joint. Fabricate from the following gauges. 3" and smaller, 20 gauge; 4" to 6" 16 gauge; over 6", 14 gauge.

2. Steel-Pipe. Fabricate from Schedule 10 (minimum) steel pipe; remove burrs.

3. Floor sleeves shall be provided with water stop around perimeter of sleeve.

B. Caulked Seals. Provide seals for penetrations through interior walls of one of the following:

1. Mineral Wool. Packed tightly between sleeve and pipe.

2.10 IDENTIFICATION

A. Provide 1-1/2” piping labels at 25’ intervals and 1-1/2” valve tags numbered and scheduled. Place schedule in Mechanical Room under glass and mounted to wall. In addition, provide labels for all equipment.

B. Special piping abbreviations, color coding and indexing of faucets and piping.

Water	Abbreviation	Ring Color	Disc Color
Deionized Water	DIW	Gray	White

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION

A. Installation to be in accordance with the most recent edition of the City of Houston, Texas applicable codes and ordinances and the International Plumbing Code.

B. Provide chrome plated brass stops on fixtures.

C. Provide non-conducting dielectric connections whenever joining dissimilar metals.

D. Fixtures and trim to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

E. Install fixtures and equipment level, plumb, and at right angles to walls.

F. Provide necessary adapters constructed of the specified compatible materials for connections from one pipe size or connection to another.

G. Provide carriers on wall mounted fixtures.

H. Seal fixtures to wall and floor surfaces with white silicone sealant.

I. Provide manufactured removable insulation covering kit on stops and supplies, tailpieces and P-traps of handicapped lavatories.

J. Provide water hammer arresters on hot and cold water supplies to plumbing fixtures. Water hammer arresters to be as shown on diagrams and, if not shown, provide for each fixture in accordance with Standard PDI-WH-201. Sizing shown on the drawings to be in accordance with PD1-WH-201.

K. Provide excavation, bedding, backfilling and compaction for underfloor plumbing piping. Excavation shall be down to 6” below pipe. Bedding material shall be clean sand from 6” below pipe to 6” above pipe. Backfill shall be excavated material free from any debris. Compact 6” increments to 95% proctor per ASTM D1557.

L. Vents through roof to be made watertight in accordance with the roof manufacturers requirements. The annular space between the flashing and the bare pipe shall be sealed with tightly packed fiberglass wool insulation.

M. Extend floor cleanouts to flush with finished floor. Lubricate threaded cleanout plugs with non-hardening teflon pipe dope.

N. Trap drains connected to sanitary sewer.

O. Install drains in floor with top depressed 1/4" below finished floor.

P. Inlet of overflow scupper to be 2" above inlet of adjacent roof drain.

Q. Outlet of plumbing vents to be located a minimum of 25'-0" from fresh air intakes. Provide offset as required.

R. Materials within ducts or plenums (ceiling spaces used as supply or return air plenums) shall have a flame-spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke developed rating of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with the Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Materials, U.B.C. Standard No. 42-1.

S. Installation of equipment shall be in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations.

T. Seal piping penetrations to achieve fire and smoke resistance equivalent to fire and smoke assembly rating.

U. Handicapped fixtures shall be provided in accordance with TAS regulations.

V. Provide identifying tags and markers on piping and valves.

W. Provide cutting and patching of floors, walls, ceilings and roof for plumbing systems to match existing. Patch floors with 4500 psi concrete at 28 days.

X. Provide access for serving, maintenance, and general inspection of valves and other devices requiring maintenance. Coordinate the location of concealed equipment and devices requiring access with location of access panels and doors. Allow ample removal space and coordinate piping locations so not to block access. Provide access for the following equipment.

Y. Provide record drawings to indicate revisions to piping, size and location, both exterior and interior; including locations of equipment, inverts and locations of underground piping, mains and branches of piping systems with valves located and numbered, items requiring maintenance, etc.

Z. Provide operation and maintenance manuals showing description of function, normal operating characteristics and limitations, performance curves, engineering data and tests, complete nomenclature and commercial numbers of replacement parts, printed operating procedures, routine preventive maintenance, servicing instructions and lubrication charts.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Piping hangers shall be sized large enough to allow insulation to pass through. Hangers for piping 2-1/2" and greater shall be provided with pipe covering protection saddle, or high compressive strength insulation saddle. Hangers for piping 2" and less shall be provided with pipe covering shields. On cold water piping provide vapor barrier through hanger.

B. Install hangers for horizontal and vertical piping as follows:

1. Install hangers for horizontal cast iron soil piping with the following maximum spacing and the minimum rod sizes:

   a. 2 inch and smaller: Maximum span - 5 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   b. 3 inch: Maximum span - 5 feet and minimum rod size - 1/2 inch.
   c. 4 inch and 5 inch: Maximum span – 5 feet and minimum rod size - 5/8 inch.
   d. 6 inch: Maximum span – 5 feet and minimum rod size - 3/4 inch.
   e. Spacing for 10-foot pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 5 feet.
   f. Install supports for vertical cast iron piping every 15 feet.

2. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and the minimum rod sizes:

   a. 1-1/4 inch and smaller: Maximum span - 7 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   b. 1-1/2 inch: Maximum span - 9 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   c. 2 inch: Maximum span – 10 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   d. 2-1/2 inch: Maximum span – 11 feet and minimum rod size - 1/2 inch.
   e. 3 inch: Maximum span – 12 feet and minimum rod size - 1/2 inch.
   f. 4 inch and 5 inch: Maximum span – 12 feet and minimum rod size - 5/8 inch.
   g. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.

3. Install hangers for horizontal hard copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and the minimum rod sizes:

   a. 3/4 inch and smaller: Maximum span - 5 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   b. 1 inch through 1-1/4 inch: Maximum span - 6 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   c. 1-1/2 inch through 2 inch: Maximum span - 8 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   d. 2-1/2 inch: Maximum span - 9 feet and minimum rod size - 1/2 inch.
   e. 3 inch through 5 inch: Maximum span - 10 feet and minimum rod size - 1/2 inch.
   f. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

4. Install hangers for horizontal CPVC tubing with the following maximum spacing and the minimum rod sizes:

   a. 1 inch and smaller: Maximum span - 3 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   b. 1-1/4 inch through 2 inch: Maximum span - 4 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   c. 2-1/2 inch and 3 inch: Maximum span - 4 feet and minimum rod size - 1/2 inch.
   d. 4 inch and 5 inch: Maximum span - 4 feet and minimum rod size - 5/8 inch.
   e. 6 inch: Maximum span – 4 feet and minimum rod size - 3/4 inch.
   f. Install supports for vertical CPVC tubing every 5 feet for 1 inch and smaller, every 6 feet for 1-1/4 inch and larger.

5. Install hangers for horizontal PVC piping with the following maximum spacing and the minimum rod sizes:

   a. 2 inch and smaller: Maximum span - 4 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.
   b. 2-1/2 inch and 3 inch: Maximum span - 4 feet and minimum rod size - 1/2 inch.
   c. 4 inch and 5 inch: Maximum span - 4 feet and minimum rod size - 5/8 inch.
   d. 6 inch: Maximum span – 4 feet and minimum rod size - 3/4 inch.
   e. Install supports for vertical PVC tubing every 4 feet.

3.3 INSULATION.

A. Insulate domestic cold and hot water piping.

B. Insulation thickness schedule.

Cold Water and Horizontal Storm Drain Piping
Fiberglass. 1" thick for all pipe sizes.

Hot Water Piping
Fiberglass. 1" thick for pipe sizes up to 1", 1-1/2" thick for pipe sizes from 1-1/4" to 2", 2" thick for pipe sizes from 2-1/2" and larger.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS.

A. Threaded Connections

1. Threaded joints shall be in accordance with ANSI B1.20.1. Threaded joints shall be made up teflon tape or lead free pipe joint compound applied to the male thread only. Should a joint be loosened after being made up, it shall not be made up a second time unless the threads are cleaned and new compound applied.

2. Steel piping which is assembled with screwed joints shall have exposed threads thoroughly primed with a coat of lead free rust resistant paint. Paint immediately after installation. This shall apply to both piping which is to be covered as well as uncovered.

B. Soldered Connections

1. Soldered joints shall be in accordance with ASTM B32. Flux shall be nonacid type. Remove composition discs from solder end valves during soldering. Pipe ends, fittings and valves shall be properly cleaned before soldering and wiped clean to remove flux and excess solder after soldering.

C. Copper Tubing Press Type. In lieu of providing soldered fittings in copper tubing, Installer may, as option, provide press connections, providing they are in accordance with following:

1. Press connections: Copper press fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturers installation instructions. The tubing shall be inserted into the fitting and the tubing marked at the shoulder of the fitting. The fitting alignment shall be checked against the mark on the tubing to assure the tubing is fully engaged (inserted) in the fitting. The joints shall be pressed using the tool approved by the manufacture.

D. Welded joints shall be in accordance with AWS D10.12 and made by the oxyacetylene or electric process.

E. Solvent cement connections.

1. Solvent cement connections shall be joined with primer and PVC solvent cement complying to ASTM D2564. Solvent cement connections shall be in compliance with GSR Bulletin #SCJ-1 Solvent Cementing Procedure.

3.5 PIPE PENETRATIONS.

A. Sleeve or core drill pipe penetrations as specified below where piping passes through walls, floors, and roofs. Do not penetrate structural members, or cut concrete reinforcementunless otherwise noted on drawings. Install penetrations accurately centered on pipe runs. Size penetrations so that piping and insulation (if any) will have free movement in sleeve, including allowance for thermal expansion; but not less than two pipe sizes larger than piping run. Where insulation includes vapor-barrier jacket, provide penetration with sufficient clearance for installation. When sleeves are required, install length of sleeve equal to thickness of construction penetrated, and finish flush to surface; except floor sleeves. Extend floor sleeves two inches above finished floor. Provide temporary support of sleeves during placement of concrete and other work around sleeves, and provide temporary closure to prevent concrete and other materials from entering sleeve. Pipe penetrations shall be as follows.

1. New floors on grade. Provide sleeved penetrations for piping except waste, drain, and vent piping. Piping not requiring sleeves shall be provided with 30 lb. asphalt saturated roofing felt wrapped around pipe through the thickness of the floor with concrete floor placed up to roofing felt.

2. New and Existing Walls. Provide sleeved or core drilled penetrations for piping.

3. Floor type drains and cleanouts do not require sleeved or core drilled penetrations. Concrete shall be placed tight to connection.

4. Core drill penetrations through existing interior grade beams. Penetrations shall be in the middle third of the beam.

B. Pipe Sleeves. Install in accordance with the following:

1. Install sheetmetal or steel pipe sleeves in interior walls.

2. Install steel pipe sleeves in interior floors above grade.

3. Install galvanized steel pipe sleeves in floors on grade and in exterior walls above grade and below grade.

C. Penetration Seals.

1. Install caulked seals in exterior walls above grade where piping passes from one space to another, where any one of the spaces the piping penetration is not concealed by a ceiling.

2. Piping penetrations through conventional built-up roof shall be made water tight by flashing and counter flashing in roof system and sealed with bituminous sealant. Piping penetrations through non-conventional roof such as membrane, standing seam, etc. shall be in accordance with the roofing manufacturer's requirements and meet the roofing manufacturer's warranty.

3. Seal and make air tight all clean room wall and ceiling penetrations.

3.6 TESTING

A. Testing piping systems in accordance with the most recent editions of the City of Houston, Texas applicable codes and ordinances and the International Plumbing Code and International Fuel Gas Code.

B. Test all piping system to 1-1/2 times the operating pressure for 4 hours with no leaks.

C. Test water heater to ensure proper operation.

3.7 FLUSHING AND DISINFECTION

A. Flush and disinfect domestic water piping system in accordance with the most recent editions of the City of Houston, Texas applicable codes and ordinances and the International Plumbing Code.

B. Flush natural gas, compressed air and vacuum piping with air until air flows clear for minimum of 60 seconds per 100 linear feet of piping being flushed at 25 CFM per 1 inch diameter of pipe.

3.8 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust and balance stops for intended water flow to fixtures without splashing, noise or overflow.

B. At completion, clean plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION

Section 15500

LAB GAS PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, and other Division Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Lab gas systems including related, piping, fittings, valves, hangers and supports, gas cocks, cutting and patching of walls and all appurtenant and incidental work to complete and provide operable lab gas systems as shown on the drawings and specified herein.

B. Demolition and relocation of lab gas regulators and systems including piping, fittings, valves and appurtenant and incidental work as shown on the drawings.

C. Fees and permits to be obtained and paid for by the Contractor installing that portion of the work.

D. Provide “Record” drawings after completion of project.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Persons performing lab gas work shall have a current Texas State Plumbing License.

B. Persons performing electrical work related to the lab gas system shall have a current Texas State Electricians License.

C. Manufacturer's model numbers listed under the acceptable manufacturers and models are provided to indicate the basic product series required. In addition, features listed in the product description shall be included whether or not included with the listed model number.

D. Pipe sizes, as shown on the Drawings and or specified herein, are minimum pipe sizes. Pipe sizes shall be increased at no additional cost to the Contract if so required by applicable codes and ordinances, or if sizes are not available in certain materials and equipment. Under no circumstances shall pipe sizes be decreased.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Lab gas work to conform to the most recent editions of the City of Houston, Texas applicable codes and ordinances, International Plumbing Code-2006.

B. Materials specified herein are acceptable products to these specifications, but are not necessarily acceptable to applicable local codes and ordinances. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide materials, from the options listed herein, that are acceptable to both these specifications and applicable local codes and ordinances.

C. Under PART 2- PRODUCTS where acceptable products and models are called out by product “acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal”, contractor may substitute an equal product and submit that product to the Owner’s Representative for approval prior to ordering product. Where it is called out “acceptable manufacturers and models” contractor shall select from one of those listed and submit it to the Owner’s Representative.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data on valves, fixtures and trim, plumbing specialties and equipment and other items specified herein and shown on the drawings to the Owner's Representative for review.

B. Submit product data on pipe materials, fittings, valves and accessories specified within this Section in accordance with Section 01330 Submittal Procedures.

C. Submit certificates required within this specification section in accordance with Section 01330 Submittal Procedures

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Lab Gas Piping.

1. Pipe: Stainless steel tubing, ASTM A269, ASTM A632, seamless, Type 316, minimum wall thickness of 0.020”. Fittings: Compression with EPDM o-ring seals, ASTM A479 Type 316 stainless steel nuts ferrules and bodies rated for a minimum pressure of 600 psi. Joints: Compression or threaded.

2.2 VALVES

A. Ball Valves. For Lab Gas Shut-Off.

1. MSS-SP-110, 600 PSI working pressure, 316 stainless steel construction, reinforced TFE seat and EPDM seal materials, lever handle, threaded connections.

B. Lab Gas Cock

1. Needle valve type rated for 150 psi working pressure, serrated hose end, polished chrome plated brass body and stainless steel floating needle and stainless steel seat construction, four arm handle with colored index, wall mounted, floating escutcheon and 3/8” female threaded connections.

   Acceptable manufacturer and model or approved equal:

   WaterSaver L4880FT-325

C. Lab Gas Pressure Regulators

1. Lab Gas Pressure Regulator (LDPR). Relocate gas regulators from existing building EWPP1 and re-install into new system.

2. Maximum regulated gas pressure settings for regulators shall be as follows:

Nitrogen:	80 psi
Argon:	100 psi
Helium:	80 psi
Ultra Pure Air:	60 psi
10% Methane/90% Argon Mix:	10 psi

2.3 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Provide hangers and supports in accordance with Manufacturer Standardization Society (MSS) SP-58, SP-69 and SP-89.

2.4 PIPING PENETRATIONS

A. Provide pipe sleeves of one of the following:

1. Sheet-Metal. Fabricate from galvanized sheet metal; round tube closed with snaplock joint, welded spiral seams, or welded longitudinal joint. Fabricate from the following gauges. 3" and smaller, 20 gauge; 4" to 6" 16 gauge; over 6", 14 gauge.

2. Steel-Pipe. Fabricate from Schedule 10 (minimum) steel pipe; remove burrs.

B. Caulked Seals. Provide seals for penetrations through interior walls of one of the following:

1. Mineral Wool. Packed tightly between sleeve and pipe.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Provide 1-1/2" piping labels at 25' intervals and 1-1/2" engraved plastic valve tags numbered and scheduled. Place schedule in Mechanical Room under glass and mounted to wall. In addition, provide engraved plastic labels for all equipment.

B. Abbreviations, color coding and indexing of gas cocks and piping.

Gas	Abbreviation	Ring Color	Disc Color
Nitrogen	N	Green	Green
Argon	AR	Gray	Gray
Helium	HE	Gray	White
Ultra Pure Air	PA	Blue	White
Mixed Gas (10% Methane/90% Argon)	MG	Blue	Yellow
Vacuum	VAC	Gray	Black
Compressed Air	CA	Blue	Yellow

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION

A. Installation to be in accordance with the most recent edition of the City of Houston, Texas applicable codes and ordinances and the International Plumbing Code.

B. Provide non-conducting dielectric connections whenever joining dissimilar metals.

C. Fixtures and trim to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

D. Install fixtures and equipment level, plumb, and at right angles to walls.

E. Provide necessary adapters constructed of the specified compatible materials for connections from one pipe size or connection to another.

F. Seal piping penetrations to achieve fire and smoke resistance equivalent to fire and smoke assembly rating.

G. Provide identifying tags and markers on piping valves.

H. Provide cutting and patching of walls for lab gas systems to match existing.

I. Provide access for serving, maintenance, and general inspection of valves. Coordinate the location of concealed equipment and devices requiring access with location of access panels and doors.

J. Provide record drawings to indicate revisions to piping, size and location, both exterior and interior; including locations of equipment, inverts and locations of underground piping, mains and branches of piping systems with valves located and numbered, items requiring maintenance, etc.

K. Provide operation and maintenance manuals showing description of function, normal operating characteristics and limitations, performance curves, engineering data and tests, complete nomenclature and commercial numbers of replacement parts, printed operating procedures, routine preventive maintenance, servicing instructions and lubrication charts.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Install hangers for horizontal and vertical piping as follows:

1. Install hangers for horizontal stainless steel piping with the following maximum spacing and the minimum rod sizes:

a. 1 inch and smaller: Maximum span - 7 feet and minimum rod size - 3/8 inch.

2. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 7 feet.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS.

A. Threaded Connections

1. Threaded joints shall be in accordance with ANSI B1.20.1. Threaded joints shall be made up teflon tape or lead free pipe joint compound applied to the male thread only. Should a joint be loosened after being made up, it shall not be made up a second time unless the threads are cleaned and new compound applied.

2. Steel piping which is assembled with screwed joints shall have exposed threads thoroughly primed with a coat of lead free rust resistant paint. Paint immediately after installation. This shall apply to both piping which is to be covered as well as uncovered.

3.4 PIPE PENETRATIONS.

A. Sleeve or core drill new construction or core drill existing construction pipe penetrations as specified below where piping passes through walls, floors, and roofs. Do not penetrate structural members, or cut concrete reinforcement except as detailed on drawings, or as reviewed by Owner’s Representative. Install penetrations accurately centered on pipe runs. Size penetrations so that piping and insulation (if any) will have free movement in sleeve, including allowance for thermal expansion; but not less than two pipe sizes larger

than piping run. Where insulation includes vapor-barrier jacket, provide penetration with sufficient clearance for installation. When sleeves are required, install length of sleeve equal to thickness of construction penetrated, and finish flush to surface; except floor sleeves. Extend floor sleeves two inches above finished floor. Provide temporary support of sleeves during placement of concrete and other work around sleeves, and provide temporary closure to prevent concrete and other materials from entering sleeve. Pipe penetrations shall be as follows.

1. New and Existing Walls. Provide sleeved or core drilled penetrations for piping.

2. Floor type drains, cleanouts, waste connections do not require sleeved or core drilled penetrations. Concrete shall be placed tight to connection.

B. Pipe Sleeves. Install in accordance with the following:

1. Install sheet metal on steel pipe sleeves in interior walls.

2. Install steel pipe sleeves in interior floors above grade.

3. Install galvanized steel pipe sleeves in floors on grade and in exterior walls above grade and below grade.

C. Penetration Seals.

1. Install caulked seals in exterior walls above grade where piping passes from one space to another, where any one of the spaces the piping penetration is not concealed by a ceiling.

2. Piping penetrations through conventional built-up roof shall be made water tight by flashing and counter flashing in roof system and sealed with bituminous sealant. Piping penetrations through non-conventional roof such as membrane, standing seam, etc. shall be in accordance with the roofing manufacturer's requirements and meet the roofing manufacturer's warranty.

3. Seal and make air tight all clean room wall and ceiling penetrations.

3.5 TESTING

A. Test lab gas piping systems at 1-1/2 times its operating pressure but not less than 100 psi (whichever is higher) for 4 hours with no leaks.

B. Test new and relocated lab gas regulators to ensure proper operation.

3.6 FLUSHING

A. Flush lab gas piping with air until air flows clear for minimum of 60 seconds per 100 linear feet of piping being flushed at 10 CFM.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust regulators as required by the user.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 15732

PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (rooftop units) with the following components and accessories:

1. Direct-expansion cooling.
2. Heat-pump refrigeration components.
3. Hot-gas reheat.
4. Electric-heating coils.
5. Gas furnace.
6. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.
7. Integral, space temperature controls.
8. Roof curbs.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Section 15733 "Dedicated Outdoor-Air Units" for outdoor equipment air conditioning 100 percent outdoor air to replace air exhausted from a building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct-digital controls.

B. ECM: Electrically commutated motor.

C. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the outdoor-air stream to reject heat during cooling operations and to absorb heat during heating operations. "Outdoor air" is defined as the air outside the building or taken from outdoors and not previously circulated through the system.

D. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant-Coil Fan: The outdoor-air refrigerant-coil fan in RTUs. "Outdoor air" is defined as the air outside the building or taken from outdoors and not previously circulated through the system.

E. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

F. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

G. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the supply-air stream to absorb heat (provide cooling) during cooling operations and to reject heat (provide heating) during heating operations. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design RTU supports to comply with wind performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Wind-Restraint Performance:

1. Basic Wind Speed: .
2. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by the maximum area of the mechanical component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
2. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
3. Wind-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind and seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Structural members to which RTUs will be attached.

2. Roof openings
3. Roof curbs and flashing.

B. Manufacturer Wind Loading Qualification Certification: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Section 15072 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that RTUs, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Section 15072 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
2. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ARI Compliance:

1. Comply with ARI 203/110 and ARI 303/110 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
2. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. AAON, Inc.
2. Addison Products Company.
3. Carrier Corporation.
4. Engineered Air.
5. Lennox Industries Inc.

6. McQuay International.
7. Trane; American Standard Companies, Inc.
8. YORK International Corporation.

2.2 CASING

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.

B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.

1. Exterior Casing Thickness: 0.079 inch (2.0 mm) thick.

C. Inner Casing Fabrication Requirements:

1. Inside Casing: Galvanized steel, 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.

D. Casing Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.
2. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
3. Liner materials shall have air-stream surface coated with an erosion- and temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric.
4. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

E. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of stainless-steel sheet, a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.

1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple.
3. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Corrosion-resistant compound.

F. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

2.3 FANS

A. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, motor resiliently mounted in the fan inlet. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

B. Belt-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, single-speed motor installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted in the casing. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

C. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motor.

D. Fan Motor: Comply with requirements in Section 15058 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.4 COILS

A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:

1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless internally grooved copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
3. Coil Split: Interlaced.
4. Baked phenolic or Cathodic epoxy coating.
5. Condensate Drain Pan: Stainless steel formed with pitch and drain connections complying with ASHRAE 62.1.

B. Hot-Gas Reheat Refrigerant Coil:

1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless internally grooved copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
3. Baked phenolic or Cathodic epoxy coating.

2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

A. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: One.

B. Compressor: Hermetic, reciprocating, or Semihermetic, reciprocating, or Hermetic, scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.

C. Refrigeration Specialties:

1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
6. Minimum off-time relay.
7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.
9. Low-ambient kit high-pressure sensor.
10. Hot-gas reheat solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.
11. Hot-gas bypass solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.
12. Four-way reversing valve with a replaceable magnetic coil, thermostatic expansion valves with bypass check valves, and a suction line accumulator.

2.6 AIR FILTRATION

See mechanical schedules.

2.7 GAS FURNACE

A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.

1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.

B. Burners: Stainless steel.

1. Fuel: Natural gas.
2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.

C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.

D. Venting: Gravity vented

E. Safety Controls:

1. Gas Control Valve: Two stage
2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.8 DAMPERS

A. Outdoor-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for 0 to 25 percent outdoor air, with motorized damper filter.

1. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
2. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, with bird screen and hood.

2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTION

A. Provide for single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.10 CONTROLS

A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 15900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls."

B. Basic Unit Controls:

1. Control-voltage transformer.
2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:

a. Heat-cool-off switch.
b. Fan on-auto switch.
c. Fan-speed switch.
d. Automatic changeover.
e. Adjustable deadband.
f. Exposed set point.
g. Exposed indication.
h. Degree F indication.
i. Unoccupied-period-override push button.
j. Data entry and access port to input temperature set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.

3. Remote-Mounted Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:

a. Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
b. DDC controller or programmable timer and interface with HVAC instrumentation and control system.
c. Digital display of outdoor-air temperature, supply-air temperature, return-air temperature, economizer damper position, indoor-air quality, and control parameters.

C. Electronic or DDC Controller:

1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
2. Safety Control Operation:

a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F (54 deg C) enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
c. Fire Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence described in Section 13851 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System"
d. Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply air temperature is less than 40 deg F (4 deg C).
e. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.

3. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day.

4. Supply Fan Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.

5. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors, and operate hot-gas bypass to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room temperature. Cycle

condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure. Operate low-ambient control kit to maintain minimum hot-gas pressure.

b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle compressors and condenser fans for heating to maintain setback temperature.

c. Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.

6. Hot-Gas Reheat-Coil Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Humidistat opens hot-gas valve to provide hot-gas reheat, and cycles compressor.

b. Unoccupied Periods: Reheat not required.

7. Gas Furnace Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain room temperature.

b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.

D. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:

1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
3. Provide BACnet or LonWorks compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:

a. Adjusting set points.
b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity.
d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
g. Monitoring cooling load.
h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

2.11 ACCESSORIES

A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required.

B. Low-ambient kit using staged condenser fans for operation down to 35 deg F (1.7 deg C).

C. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.

D. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.

E. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.

2.12 ROOF CURBS

A. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.

1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
b. Thickness: 2 inches (50 mm).

2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.

a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

B. Curb Height: 14 inches (355 mm).

2.13 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

See Mechanical Schedules

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.

B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to **NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts."** Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Section 07720 "Roof Accessories."

Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.

B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural **curbs**. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.

B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.

1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 15195 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:

1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 15820 "Duct Accessories."
4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
5. Install normal-weight, 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), compressive strength (28-day) concrete mix inside roof curb, 4 inches (100 mm) thick. Concrete, formwork, and reinforcement are specified with concrete.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing. Report results in writing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:

1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
4. Inspect internal insulation.
5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Verify that filters are installed.
9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
10. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
11. Connect and purge gas line.
12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.

    a. Start refrigeration system.
    b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.

18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.

    a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
    b. Inspect operation of power vents.
    c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
    d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
    e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
    f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.

21. Calibrate thermostats.
22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F (8 deg C) above return-air temperature:

    a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.

b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.

25. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.

    a. Supply-air volume.
    b. Return-air volume.
    c. Relief-air volume.
    d. Outdoor-air intake volume.

27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:

    a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
    b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.

28. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:

    a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
    b. Low-temperature safety operation.
    c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
    d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
    e. Relief-air fan operation.
    f. Smoke and firestat alarms.

29. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs. Refer to Section 01820 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 15732

SECTION 15733

DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes factory-packaged units capable of supplying up to 100 percent outdoor air and providing cooling and heating.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Prepare the following by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer:

a. Mounting Details: For securing and flashing roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
b. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For design of vibration isolation and wind restraints, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Unit fabrication and assembly details.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
3. Design Calculations:

a. Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
b. Indicate compliance with "Performance Requirements" article.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Roof-curb mounting details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Size and location of unit-mounted rails and anchor points and methods for anchoring units to roof curb.
2. Required roof penetrations for ducts, pipes, and electrical raceways, including size and location of each penetration.

B. Startup service reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
2. Filters: One set for each unit.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. AAON.
2. Addison.
3. Desert Aire.

4. Engineered Air.
5. LCSystems.
6. Munters Corporation, Dehumidification Division; Des Champs Products.
7. Thomas & Betts Corporation; Reznor HVAC Division.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01400 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation and wind restraints.

C. Wind-Restraint Performance:

1. Basic Wind Speed: PER 2006 IBC.
2. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by the maximum area of unit projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction and 45 degrees either side of normal.

D. Cabinet Thermal Performance:

1. Maximum Overall U-Value: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Include effects of metal-to-metal contact and thermal bridges in the calculations.

E. Cabinet Surface Condensation:

1. Cabinet shall have additional insulation and vapor seals if required to prevent condensation on the interior and exterior of the cabinet.
2. Portions of cabinet located downstream from the cooling coil shall have a thermal break at each thermal bridge between the exterior and interior casing to prevent condensation from occurring on the interior and exterior surfaces. The thermal break shall not compromise the structural integrity of the cabinet.

F. Maximum Cabinet Leakage: 0.5 percent of the total supply-air flow at a pressure rating equal to the fan shut-off pressure.

G. Cabinet Deflection Performance:

1. Walls and roof deflection shall be within 1/200 of the span at the design working pressure equal to the fan shut-off pressure. Deflection limits shall be measured at any point on the surface.
2. Floor deflections shall be within 1/240 of the span considering the worst-case condition caused by the following:

   a. Service personnel.
   b. Internal components.
   c. Design working pressure defined for the walls and roof.

H. Electrical components, devices, and accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

I. Capacities and Characteristics: see Mechanical Plans

2.3 CABINET

A. Construction: double wall.

B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with paint finish

C. Interior Casing Material: Galvanized or stainless steel.

D. Lifting and Handling Provisions: Factory-installed shipping skids and lifting lugs.

E. Base Rails: Galvanized-steel rails for mounting on roof curb or pad as indicated.

F. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1. Service Doors: Hinged access doors with gaskets. Material and construction of doors shall match material and construction of cabinet in which doors are installed.

G. Floor: Reinforced, metal surface; reinforced to limit deflection when walked on by service personnel. Insulation shall be below metal walking surface.

H. Cabinet Insulation:

1. Type: Fibrous-glass duct lining complying with ASTM C 1071, Type II or flexible elastomeric insulation complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, sheet materials.
2. Thickness: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Insulation Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Suitable for adhesive, mechanical, or welding attachment to casing without damaging liner and without causing air leakage when applied as recommended by manufacturer.

I. Condensate Drain Pans:

1. Shape: Rectangular, with 2 percent slope in at least two planes to direct water toward drain connection.
2. Size: Large enough to collect condensate from cooling coils including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends.

   a. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
   b. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep.

3. Configuration: Single wall.
4. Configuration: Double wall, with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
5. Material: Stainless-steel sheet.
6. Drain Connection:

   a. Located on one end of pan, at lowest point of pan.
   b. Terminated with threaded nipple.
   c. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 2 (DN 50).

7. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

J. Surfaces in Contact with Airstream: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1 for resistance to mold and erosion.

2.4 SUPPLY FAN

A. Forward-Curved Fan Type: Centrifugal; statically and dynamically balanced.

1. Fan Wheel Material: **Coated** steel, mounted on solid-steel shaft.
2. Bearings: Self-aligning, permanently lubricated ball bearings.

B. Plenum Fan Type: Single width, non-overloading, with backward-inclined or airfoil blades.

1. Fan Wheel Material: Aluminum; attached directly to motor shaft.
2. Fan Wheel Drive and Arrangement: Direct drive, AMCA Arrangement 4.
3. Fan panel and frame Material: Powder-coated steel, stainless steel, or aluminum.
4. Fan Enclosure: Easily removable enclosure around rotating parts.
5. Fan Balance: Precision balance fan below 0.08 inch/s (2.0 mm/s) at design speed with filter in.

C. Service Factor for Belt Drive Applications: V-belt drive with matching fan pulley and adjustable motor sheaves and belt assembly with minimum 1.4 service factor.

D. Motors:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 15058 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Enclosure: Totally enclosed.
3. Service Factor: 1.15.

E. Mounting: Fan wheel, motor, and drives shall be mounted to fan casing with restrained, elastomeric, or spring isolators.

2.5 COOLING COILS

A. Capacity Ratings: Comply with ASHRAE 33 and ARI 410 and coil bearing the ARI label.

B. Coil Casing Material: Manufacturer's standard material

C. Tube Material: Copper

D. Tube Header Material: Manufacturer's standard material

E. Fin Material: Aluminum.

F. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.

G. Leak Test: Coils shall be leak tested with air underwater.

H. Refrigerant Coil Suction and Distributor Header Materials: Seamless copper tube with brazed joints.

I. Coating: Phenolic epoxy corrosion-protection coating after assembly.

2.6 INDIRECT-FIRED GAS FURNACE HEATING

A. Furnace Assembly:

1. Factory assembled, piped, and wired.
2. Comply with requirements in NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code," and ANSI Z21.47, "Gas-Fired Central Furnaces."
3. AGA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of AGA.

B. Burners:

1. Heat-Exchanger Material: Stainless steel with a minimum thermal efficiency of 80 percent.
2. Fuel: Natural gas.
3. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark with flame sensor.

C. Heat-Exchanger Drain Pan Material: Stainless steel.

D. Venting: Gravity vented.

E. Venting: Power vent with integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.

F. Safety Controls:

1. Gas Control Valve: Electronic modulating.
2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.7 OUTDOOR-AIR INTAKE HOOD

A. Type: Manufacturer's standard hood or louver.

B. Materials: Match cabinet.

C. Bird Screen: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Configuration: Designed to inhibit wind-driven rain and snow from entering unit.

2.8 FILTERS

See mechanical schedules.

2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

A. General Electrical Power Connection Requirements: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other necessary electrical devices shall provide a single-point field power connection to unit.

B. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X, mounted in unit with hinged access door in unit cabinet having a lock and key or padlock and key,

C. Wiring: Numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.

D. Wiring Location: Install factory wiring outside an enclosure in a raceway.

E. Factory Wiring: Branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following disconnecting means:

1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 60947-4-1.
2. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfusible switch.
3. UL 489, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.

F. Factory-Mounted, Overcurrent-Protection Service: For each motor.

G. Transformer: Factory mounted with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.

H. Controls: Factory wire unit-mounted controls where indicated.

I. Lights: Factory wire unit-mounted lights.

J. Receptacle: Factory wire unit-mounted, ground fault interrupt (GFI) duplex receptacle.

K. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.

2.10 CONTROLS

A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 15900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls."

B. Control Valves: Comply with requirements in Section 15900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls."

C. Control Wiring: Factory wire connection for controls' power supply.

D. Control Devices: Sensors, transmitters, relays, switches, detectors, operators, actuators, and valves shall be manufacturer's standard items to accomplish indicated control functions.

E. Remote-Mounted Status Panel:

1. Cooling/Off/Heating Controls: Control operational mode.
2. Damper Position: Indicate position of outdoor-air dampers in terms of percentage of outdoor air.
3. Status Lights:

a. Filter dirty.
b. Fan operating.
c. Cooling operating.
d. Heating operating.

e. Smoke alarm.
f. General alarm.

4. Digital Numeric Display:

a. Outdoor airflow.
b. Supply airflow.
c. Outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
d. Outdoor dew point temperature.
e. Space temperature.
f. Supply temperature.
g. Space relative humidity.
h. Space carbon dioxide level.

F. Control Dampers:

1. Damper Location: Factory installed inside unit for ease of blade axle and bushing service. Arrange dampers located in a mixing box to achieve convergent airflow to minimize stratification.
2. Damper Leakage: Comply with requirements in AMCA 500-D. Leakage shall not exceed 6.5 cfm per sq. ft. (33 L/s per sq. m) at a static-pressure differential of 4.0 inches water column (1000 Pa) when a torque of 5 inch pounds per sq. ft. (30.1 Newton meters per sq. m) is applied to the damper jackshaft.
3. Damper Rating: Rated for close-off pressure equal to the fan shutoff pressure.
4. Damper Label: Bear the AMCA seal for both air leakage and performance.
5. Blade Configuration: Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control and equipment isolation service and use modulating control when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use an opposed-blade configuration.
6. Damper Frame Material: Extruded aluminum, galvanized steel, or stainless steel.
7. Blade Type: Single-thickness metal reinforced with multiple V-grooves or hollow-shaped airfoil].
8. Blade Material: Extruded aluminum, galvanized steel, or stainless steel.
9. Maximum Blade Width: 6 inches (150 mm).
10. Maximum Blade Length: 48 inches (1200 mm).
11. Blade Seals: Replaceable, continuous perimeter vinyl seals and jambs with stainless-steel compression-type seals.
12. Bearings: Thrust bearings for vertical blade axles.
13. Airflow Measurement:

a. Monitoring System: Complete and functioning system of airflow monitoring as an integral part of the damper assembly where indicated.
b. Remote Monitoring Signal: 0-10 volt or 4-20 mA scaled signal.
c. Accuracy of flow measurement: Within 5 percent of the actual flow rate between the range of the scheduled minimum and maximum airflow. For units with a large range between minimum and maximum airflow, configure the damper sections and flow measurement assembly as necessary to comply with accuracy.
d. Straightening Device: Integral to the flow measurement assembly if required to achieve the specified accuracy as installed.
e. flow measuring device: Suitable for operation in untreated and unfiltered outdoor air. If necessary, include temperature and altitude compensation and correction to maintain the accuracy.

G. Damper Operators:

1. Factory-installed electric operator for each damper assembly with one operator for each damper assembly mounted to the damper frame.
2. Operator capable of shutoff against fan pressure and able to operate the damper with sufficient reserve power to achieve smooth modulating action and proper speed of response at the velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.
3. Maximum Operating Time: Open or close damper 90 degrees in 60 seconds.
4. Adjustable Stops: For both maximum and minimum positions.
5. Position Indicator and Graduated Scale: Factory installed on each actuator with words "OPEN" and "CLOSED," or similar identification, at travel limits.
6. Spring-return operator to fail-safe; either closed or open as required by application.
7. Operator Type: Direct coupled, designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
8. Position feedback Signal: For remote monitoring of damper position.
9. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
10. Circuitry: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.

H. Damper Controls: Space pressure sensor modulates outdoor- and return-air dampers to maintain a positive pressure in space at a minimum of 0.05 inch wg (12.4 Pa) with respect to outdoor reference.

I. Integral Smoke Alarm: Smoke detector installed in supply air.

J. DDC Temperature Control: Standalone control module for link between unit controls and DDC temperature-control system. Control module shall be compatible with control system specified in Section 15900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls." Links shall include the following:

1. Start/stop interface relay, and relay to notify DDC temperature-control system alarm condition.
2. Hardware interface or additional sensors for the following:

   a. Room temperature.
   b. Discharge-air temperature.
   c. Refrigeration system operating.
   d. Furnace operating.
   e. Constant and variable motor loads.
   f. Variable-frequency-controller operation.
   g. Cooling load.
   h. Economizer cycles.
   i. Air-distribution static pressure and ventilation-air volumes.

K. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display unit status and alarms.

1. Hardwired Points:

   a. Monitoring: On-off status, common trouble alarm.
   b. Control: On-off operation, supply temperature set-point adjustment

2. Industry-accepted, open-protocol communication interface with the BAS shall enable the BAS operator to remotely control and monitor the unit from an operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at unit control panel shall be available through the BAS.

2.11 ACCESSORIES

A. Duplex Receptacle: Factory mounted in unit supply-fan section, with 20 amp 120 V GFI duplex receptacle and weatherproof cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine roof curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's rigging and installation instructions for unloading units and moving to final locations.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install air units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 03300 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 15072 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 15072 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Install wall- and duct-mounted sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.

D. Comply with requirements for gas-fired furnace installation in NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code."

E. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

F. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

G. Install drain pipes from unit drain pans to sanitary drain.

1. Drain Piping: Drawn-temper copper water tubing complying with ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), with soldered joints.
2. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC pipe complying with ASTM D 1785, with solvent-welded fittings.

a. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
c. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

3. Pipe Size: Same size as condensate drain pan connection.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Where installing piping adjacent to units, allow space for service and maintenance.

B. Gas Piping Connections:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 15140 "Plumbing Piping."
2. Connect gas piping to furnace, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
3. Install AGA-approved flexible connectors.

C. Duct Connections:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 15815 "Metal Ducts."
2. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
3. Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Section 15820 "Duct Accessories."

D. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements for power wiring, switches, and motor controls in electrical Sections.

1. Install electrical devices furnished by unit manufacturer but not factory mounted.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Inspect units for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
3. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing and adjust burner for peak efficiency:

a. Measure gas pressure at manifold.
b. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
c. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
d. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
e. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.

4. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:

    a. High-limit heat exchanger.
    b. Alarms.

5. Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.
6. Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits and measure and record the following:

    a. Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    b. Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    c. Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.
    d. Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.

7. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:

    a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
    b. Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.

8. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
9. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
10. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
11. Verify that filters are installed.
12. Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
13. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
14. Inspect operation of power vents.
15. Purge gas line.
16. Inspect and adjust vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
17. Verify bearing lubrication.
18. Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
19. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
20. Start unit.
21. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
22. Operate unit for run-in period.
23. Calibrate controls.
24. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
25. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke.
26. Verify operational sequence of controls.
27. Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.

    a. Supply-air volume.
    b. Return-air flow.
    c. Outdoor-air flow.

B. After startup, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.

C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate and repeat startup procedures as specified above.

D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 15733

SECTION 15738

SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . This Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components. Units are designed for exposed or concealed mounting, and may be connected to ducts.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

B . Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.

C . Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D . Field quality-control test reports.

E . Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

F . Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of split-system units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

B . Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C . ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D . ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.5 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for units. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B . Coordinate size, location, and connection details with roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

1.6 WARRANTY

A . Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A . Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.
2. Fan Belts: One set of belts for each unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A . Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AAON Corporation
2. Carrier Air Conditioning; Div. of Carrier Corporation.
3. Evcon Industries, Inc.
4. First Co.
5. Friedrich Air Conditioning Company.
6. Lennox Industries Inc.
7. Mitsubishi Electronics America, Inc.; HVAC Division.

8. Mitsubishi Heavy Industries America, Inc.; Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Division, Inc.
9. Trane Company (The); Unitary Products Group.
10. York International Corp.

2.2 CONCEALED EVAPORATOR-FAN COMPONENTS

A . Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.

1. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
2. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated and complying with ASHRAE 62.1-2007.
3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

B . Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with thermal-expansion valve.

C . Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements with refractory ceramic support bushings; automatic-reset thermal cutout; built-in magnetic contactors; manual-reset thermal cutout; airflow proving device; and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.

D . Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor, where shown.

E . Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.

F . Disposable Filters: See Mechanical Schedules.

G . Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

2.3 CEILING-MOUNTING, EVAPORATOR-FAN COMPONENTS

A . Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.

1. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.
2. Drain Pan and Drain Connection: Comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

B . Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with thermal-expansion valve.

C . Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements with refractory ceramic support bushings; automatic-reset thermal cutout; built-in magnetic contactors; manual-reset thermal cutout; airflow proving device; and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.

D . Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal fan and integral condensate pump.

E . Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.

F . Filters: See Mechanical Schedules.

2.4 AIR-COOLED, COMPRESSOR-CONDENSER COMPONENTS

A . Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.

B . Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.

1. Compressor Type: Reciprocating or Scroll.
2. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
3. Refrigerant: R-407C or R-410A.

C . Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with liquid subcooler.

D . Heat Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature air cut-off thermostat.

E . Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.

F . Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.

G . Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.

H . Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

I . Minimum Energy Efficiency: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, "Energy Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A . Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Division 15 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."

B . Ductless mini split units shall be controlled by the low voltage thermostat with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.

1. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features
2. Compressor time delay.
3. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
4. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
5. Fan-speed selection, including auto setting.

C . Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.

D . Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

1. Minimum Insulation Thickness: 1 inch thick.

E . Low-ambient kit: low ambient kit for unit operation down to 10ºF.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A . Install units level and plumb.

B . Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

C . Install ground-mounting, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.

D . Install compressor-condenser components on restrained, spring isolators with a minimum static deflection of 1 inch. Refer to Division 15 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

E . Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A . Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B . Install piping adjacent to unit to allow service and maintenance.

C . Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

D . Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

E . Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements in Division 16 Sections for power wiring, switches, and motor controls.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B . Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C . Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A . Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A . Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 15738

SECTION 15815

METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
3. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
4. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
5. Sheet metal materials.
6. Duct liner.
7. Sealants and gaskets.
8. Hangers and supports.

B . Related Sections:

1. Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A . Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B . Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."

1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.

C . Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B . Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, and vibration isolation.

C . Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing
3. Underfloor supporting structure and building system components..
4. Reinforcement details and spacing.
5. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

D . Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.

4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
   a. Lighting fixtures.
   b. Air outlets and inlets.
   c. Speakers.
   d. Sprinklers.
   e. Access panels.
   f. Perimeter moldings.

E . Welding certificates.

F . Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.

B . Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

C . ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

D . ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A . General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B . Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials

involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C . Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D . Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. McGill AirFlow LLC.
2. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.

B . Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for the inner duct.

C . Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

D . Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

E . Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

F . Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

G . Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.

H . Formed-on Transverse Joints (Flanges): Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Traverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

I . Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A . General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Lindab Inc.
   b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
   c. SEMCO Incorporated.
   d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
   e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B . Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C . Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D . Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and

Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A . General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B . Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C . Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

D . Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:

1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black.
6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.

E . Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

F . Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 DUCT LINER

A . Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
   b. Johns Manville.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Owens Corning.
2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
   a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
   b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
4. Solvent or Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B . Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick stainless steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

C . Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.

6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
   a. Fan discharges.
   b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
   c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
   a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A . General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B . Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: 3 inches .
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C . Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.

2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D . Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E . Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F . Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G . Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A . Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B . Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C . Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D . Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E . Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F . Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G . Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H . Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A . Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B . Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C . Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D . Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E . Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F . Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G . Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H . Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I . Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J . Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K . Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L . Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A . Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B . Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C . Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D . Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E . Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

A . Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B . Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
5. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
6. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air and Return Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
7. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A . Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."

B . Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C . Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D . Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E . Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F . Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A . Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B . Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 PAINTING

A . Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Perform tests and inspections.

B . Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:
   a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg (vehicle exhaust ductwork): Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C . Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D . Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DUCT CLEANING

A . Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B . Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C . Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D . Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E . Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.

3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.9 START UP

A . Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

A . Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units and Terminal Units:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg .
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg .
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C (Class A for supply duct located outdoors.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 3.

B . Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, and Terminal Units:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg .
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 12.
2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg .
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 3.

C . Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
   a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg .
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

D . Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel .

E . Liner: Liner shall be provided on the first 15 feet of supply air and return air ducts of air handling units and the first 10 feet of the exhaust duct at Administration Area.

1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1.5 inch thick.
2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
3. Exhaust Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
4. Supply Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 1 inch thick.
5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 1 inch thick.
6. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.

F . Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation (make-up air duct outside of building):

1. Supply Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.

G . Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
   a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
      1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
   b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
      1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
   c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
      1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
   a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
   b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
   c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."
   a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
      2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
      3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
      4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
   b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
   c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

H . Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."
   a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
   b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
   a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
   b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
   c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 15815

SECTION 15820

AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Flange connectors.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Remote damper operators.
9. Duct-mounted access doors.
10. Flexible connectors.
11. Flexible ducts.
12. Duct accessory hardware.

B . Related Sections:

1. Division 16 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A . Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
   a. Special fittings.
   b. Manual volume damper installations.
   c. Control damper installations.

d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

B . Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

C . Source quality-control reports.

D . Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B . Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A . Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A . Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B . Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

C . Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and No. 2 finish for exposed ducts.

D . Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

E . Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

F . Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

G . Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Ruskin Company.
6. SEMCO Incorporated.
7. Vent Products Company, Inc.

B . Description: Gravity balanced.

C . Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.

D . Maximum System Pressure: 1-inch wg.

E . Frame: 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.

F . Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center-pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.

G . Blade Action: Parallel.

H . Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.

I . Blade Axles:

1. Material: Nonferrous metal.
2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.

J . Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

K . Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

L . Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

M . Accessories:

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Electric actuators.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
   a. Sleeve Thickness: 20-gage minimum.
   b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
7. Screen Material: Galvanized steel.
8. Screen Type: Bird.
9. 90-degree stops.

2.3 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Ruskin Company.
6. SEMCO Incorporated.
7. Vent Products Company, Inc.

B . Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.

C . Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.

D . Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.

E . Frame: 0.064-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.

F . Blades:

1. Multiple, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum.
2. Maximum Width: 6 inches.
3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.

5. Eccentrically pivoted.

G . Blade Seals: Neoprene.

H . Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

I . Tie Bars and Brackets:

1. Material: Galvanized steel.
2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.

J . Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

K . Bearings: Synthetic.

L . Accessories:

1. Flange on intake.
2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A . Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
   b. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
   c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
   d. METALAIRE, Inc.
   e. Nailor Industries Inc.
   f. Ruskin Company.
   g. Vent Products Company, Inc.
2. Standard leakage rating**,** with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
   a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 0.064-inch minimum thickness.
   b. Mitered and welded corners.
   c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
   a. Multiple or single blade.
   b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
   c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
   d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
   a. Oil-impregnated bronze.

b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B . Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
   b. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
   c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
   d. METALAIRE, Inc.
   e. Nailor Industries Inc.
   f. Ruskin Company.
   g. Vent Products Company, Inc.
2. Low-leakage rating**,** with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
   a. Hat shaped.
   b. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
   c. Mitered and welded corners.
   d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
   a. Multiple or single blade.
   b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
   c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
   d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
   a. Molded synthetic.
   b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
9. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel.
10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
11. Accessories:
    a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

C . Jackshaft:

1. Size: 1-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

D . Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Duro Dyne Inc.
4. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
5. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
6. McGill AirFlow LLC.
7. METALAIRE, Inc.
8. Nailor Industries Inc.
9. Ruskin Company.
10. Vent Products Company, Inc.
11. Young Regulator Company.

B . Low-leakage rating**,** with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

C . Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D . Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches.
2. Opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized steel.
4. 0.064 inch thick.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene edging.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

E . Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F . Bearings:

1. Oil-impregnated bronze.

2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
4. METALAIRE, Inc.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.
6. Ruskin Company.
7. Vent Products Company, Inc.
8. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B . Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C . Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 4000-fpm velocity.

D . Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.

E . Frame: Curtain type with blades inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F . Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

G . Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

H . Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

I . Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

J . Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.7 TURNING VANES

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. METALAIRE, Inc.
4. SEMCO Incorporated.
5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B . Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

C . General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

D . Vane Construction: Double wall.

2.8 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
3. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. McGill AirFlow LLC.
6. Nailor Industries Inc.
7. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B . Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-10, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 2-11, "Access Panels - Round Duct."

1. Door:
   a. Double wall, rectangular.
   b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
   c. Vision panel.
   d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.

e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
   a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
   b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
   c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
   d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

C . Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at 10-inch wg.
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B . Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

C . Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

D . Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

E . Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F . Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Minimum Tensile Strength: 500 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

G . Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

2.10 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B . Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.

C . Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.

D . Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.

E . Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.
5. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.

F . Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

2.11 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A . Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B . Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A . Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.

B . Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C . Install backdraft and control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D . Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

E . Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F . Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G . Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.

H . Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
2. At drain pans and seals.
3. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
4. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
5. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
6. Upstream from turning vanes.
7. Control devices requiring inspection.
8. Elsewhere as indicated.

I . Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

J . Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

K . Label access doors according to Division 15 Section "Identification for HVAC and Plumbing Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

L . Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

M . For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

N . Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

O . Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

P . Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

Q . Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

R . Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 15820

SECTION 15837

CENTRIFUGAL FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: For each product.

1. Airfoil centrifugal fans.
2. Backward-inclined centrifugal fans.
3. Forward-curved centrifugal fans.
4. Plenum fans.
5. Plug fans.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each fan.
2. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
3. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
4. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
5. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
6. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, and base weights.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show fan room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate and certify field measurements.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Belts: One set for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. AMCA Compliance:

1. Comply with AMCA performance requirements and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
2. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedules

2.2 AIRFOIL CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Acme Engineering & Mfg. Corp.
2. Chicago Blower Corporation.
3. Cincinnati Fan.
4. CML Northern Blower Inc.
5. Howden Buffalo Inc.
6. Loren Cook Company.
7. New York Blower Company (The).

C. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

D. Housings:

1. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
2. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
3. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
4. Spun inlet cone with flange.
5. Outlet flange.

E. Airfoil Wheels:

1. Single-width-single-inlet and double-width-double-inlet construction with curved inlet flange.
2. Heavy backplate.
3. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

F. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

G. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type bearings.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

H. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

I. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at120,000 hours.

J. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.2.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

K. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 (DN 25) steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
3. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
4. Variable Inlet Vanes: With blades supported at both ends with two permanently lubricated bearings of same material as housing. Variable mechanism terminating in single control lever with control shaft for double-width fans.
5. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with parallel or opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around and to shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
6. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
7. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
8. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99.
9. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
10. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.

2.3 BACKWARD-INCLINED CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Acme Engineering & Mfg. Corp.
2. Aerovent; a Twin City Fan company.
3. Central Blower Company.
4. Chicago Blower Corporation.
5. Cincinnati Fan.
6. CML Northern Blower Inc.
7. Howden Buffalo Inc.
8. Loren Cook Company.
9. New York Blower Company (The).

C. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

D. Housings:

1. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
2. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
3. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
4. Spun inlet cone with flange.
5. Outlet flange.

E. Backward-Inclined Wheels:

1. Single-width-single-inlet and double-width-double-inlet construction with curved inlet flange, backplate, backward-inclined blades, and fastened to shaft with set screws.
2. Welded or riveted to flange and backplate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate.

F. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

G. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000] hours.

H. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

I. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

J. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.

2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.2.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

K. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 (DN 25) steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
3. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
4. Variable Inlet Vanes: With blades supported at both ends with two permanently lubricated bearings of same material as housing. Variable mechanism terminating in single control lever with control shaft for double-width fans.
5. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with parallel or opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around and to shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
6. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
7. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
8. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99.
9. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
10. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.

2.4 FORWARD-CURVED CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Acme Engineering & Mfg. Corp.
2. Central Blower Company.
3. Howden Buffalo Inc.
4. Lau Industries.
5. New York Blower Company (The).

C. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.

3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

D. Housings:

1. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
2. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
3. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
4. Spun inlet cone with flange.
5. Outlet flange.

E. Forward-Curved Wheels:

1. Black-enameled or galvanized-steel construction with inlet flange, backplate, shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow.
2. Mechanically secured to flange and backplate; cast-steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

F. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

G. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

H. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

I. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

J. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.2.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.

4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

K. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 (DN 25) steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
3. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
4. Variable Inlet Vanes: With blades supported at both ends with two permanently lubricated bearings of same material as housing. Variable mechanism terminating in single control lever with control shaft for double-width fans.
5. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with parallel or opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around and to shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
6. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
7. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
8. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99.
9. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
10. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.

2.5 PLENUM FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Aerovent; a Twin City Fan company.
2. Chicago Blower Corporation.
3. CML Northern Blower Inc.
4. Howden Buffalo Inc.
5. Loren Cook Company.
6. New York Blower Company (The).

C. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

D. Airfoil Wheels:

1. Single-width-single-inlet construction with smooth-curved inlet flange.
2. Heavy backplate.
3. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

E. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

F. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

G. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

H. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

I. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.2.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

J. Accessories:

1. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.

2. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99.
3. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.

2.6 PLUG FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Aerovent; a Twin City Fan company.
2. Chicago Blower Corporation.
3. Cincinnati Fan.
4. CML Northern Blower Inc.
5. Howden Buffalo Inc.
6. Loren Cook Company.
7. New York Blower Company (The).

C. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

D. Airfoil Wheels:

1. Single-width-single-inlet construction with smooth-curved inlet flange.
2. Heavy backplate.
3. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

E. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

F. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000] hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

G. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

H. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, Ll0 at 120,000 hours.

I. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.2.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

J. Accessories:

1. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
2. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99.
3. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.

2.7 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 15058 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install centrifugal fans level and plumb.

B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

D. Curb Support: Install roof curb on roof structure, level and secure, according to "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual," Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Section, Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts." Install and secure centrifugal fans on curbs, and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure units to curb support with anchor bolts.

E. Unit Support: Install centrifugal fans level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts.

F. Isolation Curb Support: Install centrifugal fans on isolation curbs, and install flexible duct connectors and vibration isolation and seismic-control devices.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 15820 "Duct Accessories" for flexible duct connectors.
2. Comply with requirements in Section 15068 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.

G. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

H. Label fans according to requirements specified in Section 15077 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 15820 "Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.

C. Install piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain with pipe sizes matching the drain connection.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. See Section 15950 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
10. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 15837

SECTION 15838

HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section Includes:

1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
2. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
3. Propeller fans.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A . Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on actual Project site elevations.

B . Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Roof curbs.
7. Fan speed controllers.

B . Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C . Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

D . Field quality-control reports.

E . Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B . AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C . UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.6 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

B . Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

C . Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A . Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Belts: One set for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corporation.
2. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
3. American Coolair Corporation.
4. Broan-NuTone LLC.
5. Broan-NuTone LLC; NuTone Inc.
6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
7. Loren Cook Company.
8. PennBarry.
9. W.W. Grainger, Inc.; Dayton Products.

B . Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle or galvanized steel, mushroom-domed top; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

1. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C . Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D . Belt Drives:

1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

E . Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent where shown.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

F . Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Built-in cant and mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 16 inches.
3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

2.2 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. American Coolair Corporation.
2. Broan-NuTone LLC.
3. Broan-NuTone LLC; NuTone Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Loren Cook Company.
6. PennBarry.
7. W.W. Grainger, Inc.; Dayton Products.

B . Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

C . Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.

D . Grille: Painted aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.

E . Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

F . Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent where shown.
2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
3. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
4. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
5. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

2.3 PROPELLER FANS

A . Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corporation.
2. American Coolair Corporation.
3. Big Ass Fan Company
4. Broan-NuTone LLC; NuTone Inc.
5. King Company; part of Mestek, Inc.
6. Loren Cook Company.
7. PennBarry.
8. W.W. Grainger, Inc.; Dayton Products.

B . Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.

C . Steel Fan Wheels: Formed-steel blades riveted to heavy-gage steel spider bolted to cast-iron hub.

D . Fan Wheel: Replaceable, cast-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.

E . Fan Drive: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.

F . Fan Drive:

1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
2. Statically and dynamically balanced.
3. Selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
4. Extend grease fitting to accessible location outside of unit.
5. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.4.
6. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
7. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
   a. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L_{10} of 100,000 hours.
8. Pulleys: Cast iron with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
9. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
10. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
11. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.

G . Accessories:

1. Gravity Shutters: Aluminum blades in aluminum frame; interlocked blades with nylon bearings.
2. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.
3. Wall Sleeve: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
4. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent where shown.
5. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.

2.4 MOTORS

A . Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 15 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 15 Sections.

B . Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A . Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B . Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A . Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B . Support units using spring isolators having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Vibration Controls for Piping and Equipment."

1. Secure vibration and seismic controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.

C . Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

D . Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

E . Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC and Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

F . Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

G . Label units according to requirements specified in Division 15 Section "Identification for HVAC and Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A . Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B . Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

C . Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D . Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B . Tests and Inspections:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.

4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C . Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D . Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A . Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B . Adjust belt tension.

C . Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D . Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E . Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 15838

SECTION 15855

DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section Includes:

1. Round ceiling diffusers.
2. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
3. Louver face diffusers.
4. Drum louvers.
5. Adjustable bar registers and grilles.
6. Fixed face registers and grilles.

B . Related Sections:

1. Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B . Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES:

A . See Mechanical Schedules on Drawings

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
   b. Carnes.
   c. Hart & Cooley Inc.
   d. METALAIRE, Inc.
   e. Nailor Industries Inc.
   f. Price Industries.
   g. Titus.
   h. Tuttle & Bailey.
   i. Krueger

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A . Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A . Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B . Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A . Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B . Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C . Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A . After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 15855

SECTION 15861

PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal panel filters.
2. Flat panel filters.
3. Pleated panel filters.
4. Ring panel filters.
5. Nonsupported bag filters.
6. Supported bag filters.
7. Rigid cell box filters.
8. V-bank cell filters.
9. Self-supported pocket filters.
10. Automatic roll filters.
11. Bulk media.
12. Front- and rear-access filter frames.
13. Side-service housings.
14. Filter gages.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For air filters. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Show filter rack assembly, dimensions, materials, and methods of assembly of components.
2. Include setting drawings, templates, and requirements for installing anchor bolts and anchorages.
3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Provide one complete set(s) of filters for each filter bank. If system includes prefilters, provide only prefilters.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality"; Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment"; and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
2. Comply with ASHRAE 52.1 for arrestance and ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.

C. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PANEL FILTERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, cleanable, all-metal, impingement-type, panel-type, permanent air filters with holding frames.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. AAF International.
b. Airguard.
c. Camfil Farr.
d. Filtration Group.
e. Flanders-Precisionaire.
f. Koch Filter Corporation.

g. Purafil, Inc.
h. Research Products Corp.

B. Media: Six alternate layers of galvanized-steel, aluminum, or stainless-steel flat and herringbone-crimp screen.

1. Nonoiled for grease removal application.
2. Adhesive coating.

a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Filter-Media Frame: Galvanized steel, Hot-dip galvanized steel, Aluminum, or Stainless steel, hinged, and with pull and retaining handles fastened to the media.

1. Drain holes.

D. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedules

2.2 FLAT PANEL FILTERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, flat, nonpleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. AAF International.
b. Airguard.
c. Camfil Farr.
d. Columbus Industries, Inc.
e. CRS Industries, Inc.; CosaTron Division.
f. D-Mark.
g. Filtration Group.
h. Flanders-Precisionaire.
i. Koch Filter Corporation.
j. Purafil, Inc.
k. Research Products Corp.
l. Tri-Dim Filter Corporation.

B. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 or Class 2.

C. Media: Interlaced glass or synthetic fibers or Cotton and synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.

1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
3. Media shall be coated with an antimicrobial agent.
4. Metal Retainer: Upstream side and downstream side.

D. Filter-Media Frame: Galvanized steel with metal grid on outlet side and steel rod grid on inlet side, hinged, with pull and retaining handles sealed or bonded to the media.

E. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

F. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedules

2.3 PLEATED PANEL FILTERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. AAF International.
   b. Airguard.
   c. Camfil Farr.
   d. Columbus Industries, Inc.
   e. CRS Industries, Inc.; CosaTron Division.
   f. D-Mark.
   g. Filtration Group.
   h. Flanders-Precisionaire.
   i. Koch Filter Corporation.
   j. Purafil, Inc.
   k. Research Products Corp.
   l. Tri-Dim Filter Corporation.

.

B. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 or Class 2.

C. Media: Interlaced glass or synthetic fibers or Cotton and synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.

1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
3. Media shall be coated with an antimicrobial agent.
4. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
5. Welded wire grid shall be on downstream side to maintain pleat.

6. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
7. Support members on upstream and downstream sides to maintain pleat spacing.

D. Filter-Media Frame: Galvanized steel or Aluminized steel sealed or bonded to the media.

E. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

F. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedules

2.4 RIGID CELL BOX FILTERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, disposable, packaged air filters with media perpendicular to airflow, and with holding frames.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. AAF International.
b. Airguard.
c. Camfil Farr.
d. Columbus Industries, Inc.
e. CRS Industries, Inc.; CosaTron Division.
f. D-Mark.
g. Filtration Group.
h. Flanders-Precisionaire.
i. Koch Filter Corporation.
j. Purafil, Inc.
k. Research Products Corp.
l. Tri-Dim Filter Corporation.

B. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 or Class 2.

C. Media: Fibrous material constructed so individual pleats are maintained in tapered form under rated-airflow conditions by flexible internal supports.

1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
3. Media shall be coated with an antimicrobial agent.

D. Filter-Media Frames: Galvanized steel

E. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

F. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedules

2.5 V-BANK CELL FILTERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, disposable, packaged air filters with media angled to airflow, and with holding frames.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. AAF International.
b. Airguard.
c. Camfil Farr.
d. Columbus Industries, Inc.
e. CRS Industries, Inc.; CosaTron Division.
f. D-Mark.
g. Filtration Group.
h. Flanders-Precisionaire.
i. Koch Filter Corporation.
j. Purafil, Inc.
k. Research Products Corp.
l. Tri-Dim Filter Corporation.

B. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 or Class 2.

C. Media: Fibrous material constructed so individual pleats are maintained in tapered form under rated-airflow conditions by flexible internal supports.

1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
3. Media shall be coated with an antimicrobial agent.

D. Filter-Media Frames: Galvanized steel.

E. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

F. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedules

2.6 FILTER GAGES

A. Diaphragm-type gage with dial and pointer in metal case, vent valves, black figures on white background, and front recalibration adjustment.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Airguard.

b. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.

3. Diameter: 4-1/2 inches (115 mm).
4. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 1.0- to 2.0-Inch wg (250 to 500 Pa) or Less: 0- to 2.0-inch wg (0 to 500 Pa).

B. Manometer-Type Filter Gage: Molded plastic, with epoxy-coated aluminum scale and logarithmic-curve tube gage with integral leveling gage, graduated to read from 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa), and accurate within 3 percent of the full scale range.

C. Accessories: Static-pressure tips, tubing, gage connections, and mounting bracket.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.

B. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.

C. Install filter gage for each filter bank.

D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.

E. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Install filter gages on filter banks with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in an accessible position. Adjust and level inclined gages.

F. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate automatic roll filters to demonstrate compliance with requirements.
2. Test for leakage of unfiltered air while system is operating.

D. Air filter will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

END OF SECTION 15861

SECTION 15900

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A . DDC: Direct digital control.

B . I/O: Input/output.

C . LonWorks: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.

D . MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.

E . PC: Personal computer.

F . PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.

G . RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A . The HVAC system controls shall be provided by local DDC unitary controllers capable for future connection to future building automation systems and shall be web accessible.

B . Comply with the following performance requirements:

1. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.
2. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 8 seconds.
3. Object Command: Reaction time of less than two seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.
4. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within six seconds.
5. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.
6. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as five seconds, but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.
7. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per second.
8. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:
   a. Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
   b. Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
   c. Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
   d. Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F.
   e. Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
   f. Airflow (Measuring Stations): Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
   g. Airflow (Terminal): Plus or minus 10 percent of full scale.
   h. Carbon Monoxide: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.
   i. Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
   j. Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

1.5 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

A . Refer to Mechanical Drawings.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A . Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.

1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

B . Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, coils, dampers and control devices.
3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
5. Written description of sequence of operation.
6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
7. DDC System Hardware:
   a. Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
   b. Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.
   c. Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.
8. Controlled Systems:
   a. Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.
   b. Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.
   c. Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
   d. Points list.

C . Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

D . Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with LonWorks.

E . Samples for Initial Selection: For each color required, of each type of thermostat or sensor cover with factory-applied color finishes.

F . Samples for Verification: For each color required, of each type of thermostat or sensor cover.

G . Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
5. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

H . Software Upgrade Kit: For Owner to use in modifying software to suit future systems revisions or monitoring and control revisions.

I . Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

J . Field quality-control test reports.

K . Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device and compressed-air station.
2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
5. Calibration records and list of set points.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project.

B . Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C . Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system components.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A . Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.

B . System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.9 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.

B . Coordinate equipment with Division 16 Section "Intrusion Detection" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system and with building master clock.

C . Coordinate equipment with Division 16 Section "Access Control" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

D . Coordinate equipment with Division 16 Section "Network Lighting Controls" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

E . Coordinate equipment with Division 16 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

F . Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical branch circuits for control units and operator workstation.

G . Coordinate equipment with Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" to achieve compatibility of communication interfaces.

H . Coordinate equipment with Division 16 Section "Panelboards" to achieve compatibility with starter coils and annunciation devices.

I . Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A . Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Maintenance Materials: One thermostat adjusting key(s).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A . In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONTROL SYSTEM

A . Available Manufacturers:

1. Alerton Inc.
2. Andover Controls Corporation.

3. Automated Logic Corporation.
4. Delta Controls Inc.
5. Electronic Systems USA, Inc.
6. Heat-Timer Corporation.
7. Honeywell International Inc.; Home & Building Control.
8. Invensys Building Systems.
9. Johnson Controls, Inc.; Controls Group.
10. McQuay International.
11. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.
12. TAC Americas, INC.
13. Teletrol
14. Trane; Worldwide Applied Systems Group

B . Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

C . Control system shall interface with the following:

1. Fire alarm system specified in Division 16 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm."

2.3 DDC EQUIPMENT

A . Diagnostic Terminal Unit: Portable notebook-style, PC-based microcomputer terminal capable of accessing system data by connecting to system network with minimum configuration as follows:

1. System: With one integrated USB 2.0 port, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), integrated audio, bios, and hardware monitoring.
2. Processor: Intel Pentium 4, MHz.
3. Random-Access Memory: 128 MB.
4. Graphics: Video adapter, minimum 800 x 600 pixels, 64-MB video memory.
5. Monitor: 17 inches, LCD color.
6. Keyboard: QWERTY 105 keys in ergonomic shape.
7. CD Drive: 1.44 MB.
8. Hard-Disk Drive: 80 GB.
9. Pointing Device: Touch pad or other internal device.

B . Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.

1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:

a. Global communications.
b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.

3. Standard Application Programs:
   a. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
   b. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
   c. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.
   d. Remote communications.
   e. Maintenance management.
   f. Units of Measure: Inch-pound.
4. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
5. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
6. LonWorks Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.

C . Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.

1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
   a. Global communications.
   b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
   c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
5. LonWorks Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.

D . I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.

1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.

4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation with three-position (on-off-auto) override switches and status lights.
5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA) with status lights, two-position (auto-manual) switch, and manually adjustable potentiometer.
6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.

E . Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:

1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.

F . Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:

1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

2.4 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

A . Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.

1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.
2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform scheduling with real-time clock. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.
4. LonWorks Compliance: Communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol using LonTalk protocol.
5. Enclosure: Dustproof and waterproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.

2.5 ALARM PANELS

A . Unitized cabinet with suitable brackets for wall or floor mounting. Fabricate of 0.06-inch- thick, furniture-quality steel or extruded-aluminum alloy, totally enclosed, with hinged doors and keyed lock and with manufacturer's standard shop-painted finish. Provide common keying for all panels.

B . Indicating light for each alarm point, single horn, acknowledge switch, and test switch, mounted on hinged cover.

1. Alarm Condition: Indicating light flashes and horn sounds.
2. Acknowledge Switch: Horn is silent and indicating light is steady.
3. Second Alarm: Horn sounds and indicating light is steady.
4. Alarm Condition Cleared: System is reset and indicating light is extinguished.
5. Contacts in alarm panel allow remote monitoring by independent alarm company.

2.6 ANALOG CONTROLLERS

A . Step Controllers: 6- or 10-stage type, with heavy-duty switching rated to handle loads and operated by electric motor.

B . Electric, Outdoor-Reset Controllers: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range, adjustable set point, scale range minus 10 to plus 70 deg F, and single- or double-pole contacts.

C . Electronic Controllers: Wheatstone-bridge-amplifier type, in steel enclosure with provision for remote-resistance readjustment. Identify adjustments on controllers, including proportional band and authority.

1. Single controllers can be integral with control motor if provided with accessible control readjustment potentiometer.

D . Fan-Speed Controllers: Solid-state model providing field-adjustable proportional control of motor speed from maximum to minimum of 55 percent and on-off action below minimum fan speed. Controller shall briefly apply full voltage, when motor is started, to rapidly bring motor up to minimum speed. Equip with filtered circuit to eliminate radio interference.

E . Receiver Controllers: Single- or multiple-input models with control-point adjustment, direct or reverse acting with mechanical set-point adjustment with locking device, proportional band adjustment, authority adjustment, and proportional control mode.

1. Remote-control-point adjustment shall be plus or minus 20 percent of sensor span, input signal of 3 to 13 psig.
2. Proportional band shall extend from 2 to 20 percent for 5 psig.
3. Authority shall be 20 to 200 percent.

2.7 TIME CLOCKS

A . Available Manufacturers:

1. ATC-Diversified Electronics.
2. Grasslin Controls Corporation.
3. Paragon Electric Co., Inc.
4. Precision Multiple Controls, Inc.
5. SSAC Inc.; ABB USA.
6. TCS/Basys Controls.
7. Theben AG - Lumilite Control Technology, Inc.
8. Time Mark Corporation.

B . Seven-day, programming-switch timer with synchronous-timing motor and seven-day dial; continuously charged, nickel-cadmium-battery-driven, eight-hour, power-failure carryover; multiple-switch trippers; minimum of two and maximum of eight signals per day with two normally open and two normally closed output contacts.

C . Solid-state, programmable time control with 4 separate programs each with up to 100 on-off operations; 1-second resolution; lithium battery backup; keyboard interface and manual override; individual on-off-auto switches for each program; 365-day calendar with 20 programmable holidays; choice of fail-safe operation for each program; system fault alarm; and communications package allowing networking of time controls and programming from PC.

2.8 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

A . Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.

B . Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:

1. Available Manufacturers:
   a. BEC Controls Corporation.
   b. Ebtron, Inc.
   c. Heat-Timer Corporation.
   d. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.
   e. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
   f. RDF Corporation.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F at calibration point.
3. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft..
5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 36 inches long, flexible; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft..
6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
7. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
   a. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed.
   b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed.

c. Thermometer: Exposed.
d. Orientation: Vertical.

8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
9. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

C . RTDs and Transmitters:

1. Available Manufacturers:
   a. BEC Controls Corporation.
   b. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
   c. RDF Corporation.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.2 percent at calibration point.
3. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft..
5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 18 inches long, rigid; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 9 sq. ft.; length as required.
6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
7. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
   a. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed.
   b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
   c. Thermometer: Exposed.
   d. Orientation: Vertical.
8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
9. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

D . Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.

1. Available Manufacturers:
   a. BEC Controls Corporation.
   b. General Eastern Instruments.
   c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
   d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
   e. TCS/Basys Controls.
   f. Vaisala.
2. Accuracy: 5 percent full range with linear output.
3. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
4. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
   a. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed.
   b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
   c. Thermometer: Exposed.
   d. Orientation: Vertical.
5. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
6. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of 0 to 120 deg F.
7. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.

E . Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:

1. Available Manufacturers:
   a. BEC Controls Corporation.
   b. General Eastern Instruments.
   c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
   d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
   e. TCS/Basys Controls.
   f. Vaisala.
2. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.
   a. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
   b. Output: 4 to 20 mA.
   c. Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg.
   d. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg.
3. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
4. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

F . Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.

1. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed.
2. Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
3. Thermometer: Exposed.
4. Orientation: Vertical.

G . Room sensor accessories include the following:

1. Insulating Bases: For sensors located on exterior walls.
2. Guards: Locking; heavy-duty, transparent plastic; mounted on separate base or metal wire, tamperproof (or maintenance areas).
3. Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.

2.9 STATUS SENSORS

A . Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg.

B . Status Inputs for Pumps: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig, piped across pump.

C . Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.

D . Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.

E . Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.

F . Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.

G . Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

H . Water-Flow Switches: Bellows-actuated mercury or snap-acting type with pilot-duty rating, stainless-steel or bronze paddle, with appropriate range and differential adjustment, in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

1. Available Manufacturers:
   a. BEC Controls Corporation.
   b. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.

2.10 THERMOSTATS

A . Available Manufacturers:

1. Erie Controls.
2. Danfoss Inc.; Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Div.
3. Heat-Timer Corporation.
4. Sauter Controls Corporation.
5. tekmar Control Systems, Inc.
6. Theben AG - Lumilite Control Technology, Inc.

B . Combination Thermostat and Fan Switches: Line-voltage thermostat with push-button or lever-operated fan switch.

1. Label switches "FAN ON-OFF".
2. Mount on single electric switch box.

C . Electric, solid-state, microcomputer-based room thermostat with remote sensor.

1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from set point.
3. Set up for four separate temperatures per day.
4. Instant override of set point for continuous or timed period from 1 hour to 31 days.
5. Short-cycle protection.
6. Programming based on weekday, Saturday, and Sunday.
7. Selection features include degree F or degree C display, 12- or 24-hour clock, keyboard disable, remote sensor, and fan on-auto.
8. Battery replacement without program loss.
9. Thermostat display features include the following:

a. Time of day.
b. Actual room temperature.
c. Programmed temperature.
d. Programmed time.
e. Duration of timed override.
f. Day of week.
g. System mode indications include "heating," "off," "fan auto," and "fan on."

D . Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.

E . Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.

1. Electric Heating Thermostats: Equip with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
2. Selector Switch: Integral, manual on-off-auto.

F . Remote-Bulb Thermostats: On-off or modulating type, liquid filled to compensate for changes in ambient temperature; with copper capillary and bulb, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Bulbs in water lines with separate wells of same material as bulb.
2. Bulbs in air ducts with flanges and shields.
3. Averaging Elements: Copper tubing with either single- or multiple-unit elements, extended to cover full width of duct or unit; adequately supported.
4. Scale settings and differential settings are clearly visible and adjustable from front of instrument.
5. On-Off Thermostat: With precision snap switches and with electrical ratings required by application.
6. Modulating Thermostats: Construct so complete potentiometer coil and wiper assembly is removable for inspection or replacement without disturbing calibration of instrument.

G . Fire-Protection Thermostats: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction; with fixed or adjustable settings to operate at not less than 75 deg F above normal maximum operating temperature, and the following:

1. Reset: Manual.
2. Reset: Automatic, with control circuit arranged to require manual reset at central control panel; with pilot light and reset switch on panel labeled to indicate operation.

H . Immersion Thermostat: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range and adjustable set point.

I . Airstream Thermostats: Two-pipe, fully proportional, single-temperature type; with adjustable set point in middle of range, adjustable throttling range, plug-in test fitting

or permanent pressure gage, remote bulb, bimetal rod and tube, or averaging element.

J . Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual- or automatic- reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or below set point.

1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.

K . Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual- or automatic- reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or above set point.

1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.

L . Heating/Cooling Valve-Top Thermostats: Proportional acting for proportional flow, with molded-rubber diaphragm, remote-bulb liquid-filled element, direct and reverse acting at minimum shutoff pressure of 25 psig, and cast housing with position indicator and adjusting knob.

2.11 HUMIDISTATS

A . Available Manufacturers:

1. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
2. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.

B . Duct-Mounting Humidistats: Electric insertion, 2-position type with adjustable, 2 percent throttling range, 20 to 80 percent operating range, and single- or double-pole contacts.

2.12 ACTUATORS

A . Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.

6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.

B . Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.

1. Available Manufacturers:
   a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
2. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
   a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
   b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
3. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
4. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
5. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
6. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 120-V ac.
7. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
8. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
9. Temperature Rating: 20 to 104 deg F.
10. Temperature Rating (Smoke Dampers): Minus 22 to plus 250 deg F.
11. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed.

2.13 CONTROL CABLE

A . Electronic and fiber-optic cables for control wiring are specified in Division 16 Section "Wires and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A . Verify that power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.

B . Verify that duct and equipment-mounted devices are installed before proceeding with installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A . Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.

B . Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.

C . Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches above the floor.

1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.

D . Install guards on thermostats in the following locations:

1. Entrances.
2. Public areas.
3. Equipment maintenance areas.
4. Where indicated.

E . Install automatic dampers according to Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

F . Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.

G . Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 15 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

H . Install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 15 Section "Refrigerant Piping."

I . Install duct volume-control dampers according to Division 15 Sections specifying air ducts.

J . Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Division 16 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.3 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A . Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 16 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B . Install building wire and cable according to Division 16 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C . Install signal and communication cable according to Division 16 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
2. Install exposed cable in raceway.
3. Install concealed cable in raceway.
4. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.

5. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
6. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
7. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.

D . Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.

E . Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B . Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
3. Test calibration of electronic controllers by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
4. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
5. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
6. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
7. Test software and hardware interlocks.

C . DDC Verification:

1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
5. Check installation of air supply for each instrument.
6. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
7. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
8. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
9. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.

10. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
11. Check DDC system as follows:
    a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
    b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
    c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
    d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

D . Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A . Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Calibrate instruments.
2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.
3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.
4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:
    a. Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
    b. Check analog outputs using milliampere meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.
    c. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
    d. Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
    e. Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.
5. Flow:
    a. Set differential pressure flow transmitters for 0 and 100 percent values with 3-point calibration accomplished at 50, 90, and 100 percent of span.
    b. Manually operate flow switches to verify that they make or break contact.
6. Pressure:
    a. Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
    b. Calibrate pressure switches to make or break contacts, with adjustable differential set at minimum.
7. Temperature:
    a. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
    b. Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.
8. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.
9. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.

10. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.
11. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.

B . Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

C . Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A . Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 15900

SECTION 15950

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:
   a. Constant-volume air systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A . AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B . NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

C . TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D . TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

E . TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A . Qualification Data: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B . Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

C . Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D . Certified TAB reports.

E . Sample report forms.

F . Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A . TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.

B . TAB Conference: Meet with Architect, Owner, and Commissioning Authority on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Agenda Items:
   a. The Contract Documents examination report.
   b. The TAB plan.
   c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
   d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.

C . Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

D . TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Commissioning Authority.

E . Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A . Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.7 COORDINATION

A . Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

B . Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS

A . Subject to compliance with requirements, engage one of the following available TAB contractors that may be engaged shall be approved by the Owner.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A . Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B . Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.

C . Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D . Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E . Examine ceiling plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Division 15 Section "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.

F . Examine equipment performance data.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

G . Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

H . Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

I . Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J . Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

K . Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.3 PREPARATION

A . Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

B . Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:

1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
2. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
3. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
4. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
5. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
6. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A . Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2, "Air Balancing."

B . Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 15 Section "HVAC Insulation."

C . Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D . Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A . Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B . Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C . Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

D . Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

E . Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

F . Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

G . Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

H . Check for airflow blockages.

I . Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

J . Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

K . Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 15 Section "Metal Ducts."

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A . Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.
   a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
   a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
   b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
   c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
   d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
   a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
6. Obtain approval from Architect and Commissioning Authority for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B . Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
   a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.

3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C . Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.

1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D . Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A . Verify proper rotation of fans.

B . Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C . Record compressor data.

3.8 TOLERANCES

A . Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 10 or minus 0 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus 10 or minus 5 percent.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

3.9 REPORTING

A . Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B . Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a

separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.10 FINAL REPORT

A . General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B . Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Fan curves.
2. Manufacturers' test data.
3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C . General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.

e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D . System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
3. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
4. Terminal units.
5. Balancing stations.
6. Position of balancing devices.

E . Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
   a. Unit identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Make and type.
   d. Model number and unit size.
   e. Manufacturer's serial number.
   f. Unit arrangement and class.
   g. Discharge arrangement.
   h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
   j. Number, make, and size of belts.
   k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
   a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
   b. Horsepower and rpm.
   c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
   d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
   e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
   b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
   c. Fan rpm.
   d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
   e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
   f. Static-pressure differential in inches wg.
   g. DX Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
   h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
   i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
   j. Return airflow in cfm.
   k. Outdoor-air damper position.
   l. Return-air damper position.
   m. Vortex damper position.

4. For gas fired section of rooftop units, provide applicable test data listed for gas-fired heat apparatus below.

F . Gas- Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: Rooftop units and make-up air units. In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
   a. System identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Make and type.
   d. Model number and unit size.
   e. Manufacturer's serial number.
   f. Fuel type in input data.
   g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
   h. Ignition type.
   i. Burner-control types.
   j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
   k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
   l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
   m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
   b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
   c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
   d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
   e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
   f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
   g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
   h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
   i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
   j. Manifold pressure in psig.
   k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
   l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
   m. Motor voltage at each connection.
   n. Motor amperage for each phase.
   o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

G . Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:
   a. System identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Make and type.
   d. Model number and size.
   e. Manufacturer's serial number.
   f. Arrangement and class.
   g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Motor Data:
   a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
   b. Horsepower and rpm.

c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
   b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
   c. Fan rpm.
   d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
   e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

H . Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:
   a. System and air-handling-unit number.
   b. Location and zone.
   c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
   d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
   e. Duct size in inches.
   f. Duct area in sq. ft..
   g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
   h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
   i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
   j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
   k. Barometric pressure in psig.

I . Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:
   a. System and air-handling unit identification.
   b. Location and zone.
   c. Apparatus used for test.
   d. Area served.
   e. Make.
   f. Number from system diagram.
   g. Type and model number.
   h. Size.
   i. Effective area in sq. ft..
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Air flow rate in cfm.
   b. Air velocity in fpm.
   c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm.
   d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
   e. Final air flow rate in cfm.
   f. Final velocity in fpm.
   g. Space temperature in deg F.

J . System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
   a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
   b. Location and zone.
   c. Room or riser served.
   d. Coil make and size.
   e. Flowmeter type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Air flow rate in cfm.
   b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
   c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
   d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
   e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
   f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

3.11 INSPECTIONS

A . Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
2. Check the following for each system:
   a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
   b. Measure water flow of at least 10 percent of terminals.
   c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
   d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
   e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B . Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Architect and Commissioning Authority.
2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect and Commissioning Authority.
3. Architect or Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

C . TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:

1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

D . Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A . Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B . Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 15950

SECTION 15951

COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section includes commissioning process requirements for HVAC&R systems and Plumbing systems, assemblies, and equipment.

B . Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A . Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.

B . CxA: Commissioning Authority.

C . HVAC&R: Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration.

D . Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 ALLOWANCES

A . Labor, instrumentation, tools, and equipment costs for technicians for the performance of commissioning testing are covered by the "Schedule of Allowances" Article in Division 01 Section "Allowances."

1.5 UNIT PRICES

A . Commissioning testing allowance may be adjusted up or down by the "List of Unit Prices" Article in Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" when actual man-hours are computed at the end of commissioning testing.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A . Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.

B . Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.

C . Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.

D . Participate in HVAC&R and Plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.

E . Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.

F . Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

G . The following systems and their components shall be included in the scope of the Commissioning activities:

1. DX Air Handling Units
2. Split System Fan Coil Units
3. Make up Air Units
4. Exhaust Fans
5. Building Controls including Gas Detection System
6. Domestic Hot Water System
7. Compressed Air Systems
8. Fire Pumps
9. Lighting Controls

1.7 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A . Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.

B . Direct commissioning testing.

C . Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.

D . Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.8 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

A . Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:

1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
5. Certificate of readiness certifying that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
7. Corrective action documents.
8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

1.9 SUBMITTALS

A . Certificates of readiness.

B . Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

A . Certify that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.

B . Certify that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.

C . Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.

D . Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

E . Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.

F . Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.

G . Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 TESTING AND BALANCING VERIFICATION

A . Prior to performance of testing and balancing Work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.

B . Notify the CxA at least 10 days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness testing and balancing Work.

C . Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of HVAC&R systems at the direction of the CxA.

1. The CxA will notify testing and balancing Contractor 10 days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
2. The testing and balancing Contractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
3. Failure of an item includes, other than sound, a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report. For sound pressure readings, a deviation of 3 dB shall result in rejection of final testing. Variations in background noise must be considered.
4. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A . Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.

B . Scope of HVAC&R testing shall include entire HVAC&R installation, from central equipment for heat generation and refrigeration through distribution systems to each conditioned space. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.

C . Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.

D . The CxA along with the HVAC&R Subcontractor, testing and balancing Subcontractor, and HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control Subcontractorshall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment.

E . Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.

F . Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.

G . The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.

H . The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.

I . If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

J . If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.4 HVAC&R SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES

A . HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Division 15 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls." Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.

B . Energy Supply System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of gas, hot-water, and solar systems and equipment at the direction of the CxA. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.

C . Refrigeration System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of chillers, cooling towers, refrigerant compressors and condensers, heat pumps, and other refrigeration systems. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.

D . HVAC&R Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of air, and hydronic distribution systems; special exhaust; and other distribution systems, including HVAC&R terminal equipment and unitary equipment.

E . Vibration and Sound Tests: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of vibration isolation and seismic controls.

END OF SECTION 15951

SECTION 16010

ELECTRICAL GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 -GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A . Provide labor, materials, equipment, services, and incidentals required for complete and functioning electrical systems as required by the contract documents.

1.2 APPLICABLE PROVISIONS

A . General and Supplementary General Conditions, applicable provisions of Division 1 -General and other provisions of contract documents apply to work of Division 16. Provisions of this section apply to every section of Division 16 - Electrical, except where specifically modified. Sections of Division 16 - Electrical are complementary, interrelated, and mutually binding. Where electrical equipment or work is furnished as a part of equipment or systems supplied or installed under other Divisions, that electrical equipment or work shall comply with the requirements of Division 16, in its entirety. The only allowable exception to this requirement shall be when listing or labeling required under these specifications would be voided by modification or substitution of electrical equipment. Where provisions of these specifications appear to conflict with drawings or other specifications, such conflict shall be identified in writing to the Owner's representative and clarification requested.

1.3 REFERENCE CODES AND STANDARDS

A . Standards of the following organizations may be referenced in the specification. Unless noted otherwise, references are to standards or codes current at the time of bidding.

1 Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC).
2 American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
3 Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).
4 Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA).
5 National Electrical Code (NEC).
6 National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA).
7 National Electrical Safety Code (NESC).
8 National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
9 Underwriters' Laboratories (UL).

1.4 REGULATIONS AND PERMITS

A . Regulations. Work, materials and equipment must comply with the latest rules and regulations of the following:

- a National Electrical Code (NEC).
- a National Electrical Safety Code (NESC).
- a Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
- a Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).
- a City of Houston.
- a State and federal codes, ordinances and regulations.
- a Serving utilities for electric power, telephone, or cable television.

 B . Discrepancies. The drawings and specifications are intended to comply with listed codes, ordinances, regulations and standards. Where discrepancies occur, immediately notify the Owner's representative in writing and ask for an interpretation. Should installed materials or workmanship fail to comply, the Contractor is responsible for correcting the improper installation. Where sizes, capacities, or other such features are required in excess of minimum code or standards requirements, provide those specified or shown.

 C . Permits. Obtain certificates of inspection and other permits required as a part of the work. The Contractor shall obtain timely inspections by jurisdictional authorities at such times as are required by those authorities. Costs associated with exposing work not inspected in a timely manner, or testing required by authorities to demonstrate compliance with codes or standards shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

1.5 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

 A . Intent. The intent of the drawings is to establish the types of systems and functions, but not to set forth each item essential to the functioning of the system. Electrical drawings are generally diagrammatic and show approximate location and extent of work. Install the work complete, including minor details necessary to perform the function indicated. In case of doubt as to work intended, or if amplification or clarification is needed, request instructions from the Owner's representative.

 B . Discrepancies. Review pertinent drawings and adjust the work to conditions shown. Where discrepancies occur between drawings, specifications, and actual field conditions, immediately notify the Owner's representative for his interpretation.

 C . Existing Conditions. Visit the site and ascertain the conditions to be met and the work to be accomplished in removing and modifying the existing work, and installing the new work. Failure to comply with this provision shall not constitute grounds for additional payment in connection with removing or

modifying part of the existing installations and installing new or temporary work.

D . Switch, Outlet, and Equipment Locations. Coordinate the actual locations of electrical switches, outlets, and equipment with building features and equipment as indicated on architectural, structural, mechanical and plumbing drawings. Review with the Owner's representative any proposed changes in switch, outlet, or equipment location. Relocation of switches, outlets, or equipment before installation, of up to 5 feet from the position indicated, may be directed by the Owner's representative without additional cost. Remove and relocate outlets placed in an unsuitable location, when so requested.

1.6 CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS

A . An acceptable Contractor for the work under this division must have personnel with experience, training and skill in the NEC and electrical construction to provide a practical working system. The Contractor may be required to furnish acceptable evidence of having installed not less than three systems of size and type comparable to this project. The systems must have served satisfactorily for not less than 3 years. The superintendent must have had experience in installing not less than three such systems. The Contractor shall employ and utilize licensed and certified professionals and tradesmen where required by local jurisdictions.

PART 2 -PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

A . Condition. Provide new products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production of such equipment. Provide the manufacturer's latest standard design for the type of product specified.

B . NEC and UL. Products must conform to requirements of the National Electrical Code. Where Underwriters' Laboratories or a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) has set standards, listed products and issued labels, products used must be listed and labeled by UL or the NRTL for their intended application.

C . Space Limitations. Equipment selected must conform to the building features and must be coordinated with them. Do not provide equipment which will not suit arrangement and space limitations. Where equipment is described by manufacturer's designations, yet alternate manufacturers are designated in the contract drawings as acceptable suppliers, spatial considerations will bear equally with performance criteria in determining the acceptability of alternate equipment.

D . Factory Finish. Equipment must be delivered with a hard surface, factory-applied finish so that no additional field painting is required except for touch-up as required.

2.2 EQUIPMENT FOR UTILITY COMPANY"S METERING

A . Service enclosures, meter sockets, current transformer cabinets, and transockets shall comply with the requirements of the electrical power utility company.

2.3 TOUCHUP PAINT

 A . Use equipment manufacturer's touchup paint selected to match the finish of the installed equipment.

 B . Touch up galvanized surfaces with zinc-rich paint recommended by the item manufacturer.

2.4 SUBSTITUTIONS

A . Substitutions will not be considered unless submitted prior to the bid opening or contract award as defined under Division 1. If a product or system is specifically defined on the drawings or in the specifications, requests for substitution will not be considered unless the Contractor can demonstrate that the specified product or system is unavailable within the contract duration. Claims of non-availability must be substantiated by certified letter from the specified supplier stating that the specified product was ordered in a timely fashion and that delivery has become impossible due to factors beyond the supplier's control.

PART 3 -EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT

 A . Moisture. During construction, protect switchgear, transformers, motors, control equipment, and other items from insulation moisture absorption and metallic component corrosion by appropriate use of strip heaters, lamps or other suitable means. Apply protection immediately on receiving the products and maintain continually.

 B . Clean. Keep products clean by elevating above ground or floor and by using suitable coverings.

 C . Damage. Take such precautions as are necessary to protect apparatus and materials from damage. Failure to protect materials is sufficient cause for rejection of the apparatus or material in question.

D . Finish. Protect factory finish from damage during construction operations and until acceptance of the project. Factory paint finish systems must comply with the minimum corrosion resistance established in NEMA ICS 6. Satisfactorily restore any finishes that become stained or damaged.

3.2 COORDINATION

A . Coordinate chases, slots, inserts, sleeves, and openings with general construction work and arrange in building structure during progess of construction to facilitate the electrical installations that follow. Set inserts and sleeves in poured-in-place concrete, masonry work, and other structural components as they are constructed.

B . Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment requiring positioning before closing in the building.

C . Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are concealed by finished surfaces. Access doors and panels are specified in (where?).

D . Where electrical identification devices are applied to field-finished surfaces, coordinate installation of identification devices with the completion of the finished surface.

E . Where electrical identification markings and devices will be concealed by acoustical ceilings and similar finishes, coordinate installation of these items before ceiling installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A . If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to comply with ADA Guidelines and to provide the maximum possible headroom.

B . Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with a minimum of interference with other installations.

C . Give right of way to installation of raceways and piping systems installed at a required slope.

D . Cooperation with Other Trades. Cooperation with trades of adjacent, related or affected materials or operations, and of trades performing continuations of this work under subsequent contracts, is considered a part of this work in order to effect timely and accurate placing of work and to bring together, in proper and correct sequence, the work of such trades.

 E . Workmanship. Work must be performed by workmen skilled in their trade. The installation must be complete.

 F . Concrete Equipment Pads. Install 4" thick concrete housekeeping pads for indoor floor-mounted equipment unless direct floor mounting is recommended by the equipment manufacturer or directed on the Drawings. Pour pads on roughened floor slabs and size slabs to extend a minimum of 6" beyond all edges of the equipment. Where several pieces of equipment are grouped, a single pad shall be poured for the group. Trowel pads smooth and chamfer edges to a 1" bevel. Edges shall be dressed smooth to eliminate sharp or irregular surfaces. Secure the equipment to the pad as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.

 G . Setting of Equipment. Equipment must be leveled and set plumb. Sheet metal enclosures mounted against a wall must be separated from the wall not less than 1/4 inch by means of corrosion-resistant spacers or by 3 inches of air for freestanding units. Use corrosion-resistant bolts, nuts and washers to anchor equipment. In sufficient time to be coordinated with work under other divisions, provide drawings and layout work showing exact size and location of sleeves, openings or inserts for electrical equipment in slabs, walls, partitions and chases.

 H . Sealing of Equipment. Seal openings into equipment to prevent entrance of animals, birds and insects.

 I . Motors and Equipment.

e Motors are specified under other sections of Division 16, but are provided as a part of the associated driven equipment.

e Electrical work includes the electrical connection of all motors, except those which are wired prior to delivery as a part of equipment. Electrical work also includes the mounting and connection of loose motor starters, disconnects, controls, and alarms furnished with equipment provided under other parts of this contract.

e Provide, install, and adjust motor overload protective elements sized in accordance with the National Electrical Code and based on the rated motor full load current indicated on each motor nameplate.

e J . Concealed Work. Conceal electrical work in walls, floors, chases, under floors, underground and above ceilings except:

e Where shown or specified to be exposed. Exposed is understood to mean open to view.

e Where exposure is necessary to the proper function.

e Where size of materials and equipment preclude concealment.

e Where conduit is shown concealed below the surface of the floor, conduit must be installed below the floor slab unless written approval

has been obtained from the Structural Engineer of Record to allow installation within the concrete slab.

3.4 ELECTRICAL SERVICE

A . Temporary Service. Provide temporary service sufficient to allow testing of refrigeration equipment, pumps, fans, elevators, and other equipment furnished under other divisions of the Contract Documents. Temporary service shall be available no later than thirty (30) days prior to scheduled substantial completion.

B . Permanent Service. Coordinate with the Owner's representative and electric utility to establish permanent service no later than seven (7) days prior to scheduled substantial completion. The Contractor shall make such provisions as are required by the utility to establish permanent service. Such provisions may include, but are not limited to, mounting of utility-furnished metering equipment, construction of transformer or switchgear pads or vaults in accordance with utility requirements, installation of grounding, or provision of raceways. Delays in obtaining permanent electrical service caused by the Contractor's failure to identify and comply with utility service criteria shall not be cause for increased costs to the Owner nor extension of the Contractor's contractual duration.

C . Outages. Schedule power outages to avoid interference with the Owner's activities. Obtain approval from Owner at least thirty (30) days prior to the requested outage. If required by Owner, provide a schedule showing sequence and duration of all activities during the requested outage.

3.5 TELEPHONE SERVICE

A . Permanent Service. Coordinate with the Owner's representative and telephone utility to establish permanent service no later than seven (7) days prior to scheduled substantial completion. The Contractor shall make such provisions as are required by the utility to establish permanent service. Such provisions may include, but are not limited to, mounting of utility-furnished equipment, installation of grounding, or provision of raceways. Delays in obtaining permanent telephone service caused by the Contractor's failure to identify and comply with utility service criteria shall not be cause for increased costs to the Owner nor extension of the Contractor's contractual duration.

B . Outages. Schedule communications outages to avoid interference with the Owner's activities. Obtain approval from Owner at least thirty (30) days prior to the requested outage. If required by Owner, provide a schedule showing sequence and duration of all activities during the requested outage.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A . Apply firestopping to cable and raceway penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to achieve fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 7 Section "Fire Resistive Joint Systems."

3.7 TESTING

A . Test Conditions. Place circuits and equipment into service under normal conditions, collectively and separately, as may be necessary to determine satisfactory operation. Perform specified tests in the presence of the Owner's representative. Furnish all instruments, wiring, equipment and personnel required for conducting tests. Demonstrate that the equipment operates in accordance with requirements of the drawings and specifications. Special tests on certain items are specified hereinafter. Where specified that the testing be performed by an independent testing company, an Owner approved NETA certified testing company shall be used.

B . Test Dates. Schedule final acceptance tests sufficiently in advance of the contract date to permit completion of any necessary adjustment or alterations within the number of days allotted for completion of the contract.

C . Retests. Conduct retests as directed by the Owner's representative of such time duration as may be necessary to assure proper functioning of adjusted or altered parts or items of equipment. Resultant delays as a result of such necessary retests do not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility under this contract.

END OF SECTION 16010

SECTION 16060

GROUNDING AND BONDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:

1. Underground distribution grounding.
2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

1. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS.

1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
2) Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
2. Dossert; AFL Telecommunications LLC.
3. ERICO International Corporation.
4. Fushi Copperweld Inc.
5. Galvan Industries, Inc.; Electrical Products Division, LLC.
6. Harger Lightning and Grounding.
7. ILSCO.
8. O-Z/Gedney; A Brand of the EGS Electrical Group.
9. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
10. Siemens Power Transmission & Distribution, Inc.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.3 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.

2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

2.4 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits. Grounding conductors shall be routed within the same raceways as the circuit conductors.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Lighting circuits.
3. Receptacle circuits.
4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
6. Flexible raceway runs.
7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.

C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.

C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection above grade is required, use a bolted clamp. All connections below grade shall be exothermic-welded.

D. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install [**tinned**]bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

E. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.

    a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.

F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 16060

SECTION 16073

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 07720 "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
c. ERICO International Corporation.
d. GS Metals Corp.
e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
g. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
3. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

4. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
5. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except exterior mounted metal items may be stainless steel.
6. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.

B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.

3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel, ¼" (6 mm) minimum diameter.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 05500 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69 or Spring-tension clamps.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

B. Touchup: Touch up paint on finished surfaces as directed by the Contracting Officers Representative..

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 16073

SECTION 16075

ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power cables.
3. Identification for conductors.
4. Warning labels and signs.
5. Instruction signs.
6. Equipment identification labels.
7. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.

D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER AND CONTROL RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.

B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on a white field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage.

C. Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

D. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

F. Tape and Stencil for Raceways Carrying Circuits More Than 600 V: 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers diagonally over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.

2.2 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each cable size.

B. Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

C. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the cable diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

D. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around cable it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.

E. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

F. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

G. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

2.3 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide.

B. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the conductor diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

C. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of conductor it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

D. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve with diameter sized to suit diameter of conductor it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

E. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around conductor it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.

F. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

2.4 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).

2.5 CABLE TIES

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.

B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
5. Color: Black.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

F. Attach plastic raceway and cable labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.

G. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.

H. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. Emergency Power.
2. Power.
3. UPS.

B. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.

1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.

a. Color shall be factory applied for conductor sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

1) Phase A: Black.
2) Phase B: Red.
3) Phase C: Blue.

c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

1) Phase A: Brown.
2) Phase B: Orange.
3) Phase C: Yellow.

d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

C. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.

D. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

E. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards or other equipment in finished spaces.

F. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels.

1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

G. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

H. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
b. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
c. Fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
d. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
e. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
f. Dedicated equipment receptacles: indicate circuit ID and equipment served.
g. Enclosed switches.
h. Enclosed circuit breakers.
i. Enclosed controllers.
j. Variable-speed controllers.
k. Contactors.

END OF SECTION 16075

SECTION 16091

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

   a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
   b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM or Nitrile (Buna N) rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

A. Description: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 07920 "Joint Sealants."
b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

D. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

END OF SECTION 16091

SECTION 16120

CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. VFC: Variable frequency controller.

B. NETA: InterNational Electrical Testing Association

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
2. Alpha Wire.
3. Belden Inc.
4. Encore Wire Corporation.
5. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
6. Southwire Incorporated.

B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.

C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THHN-2-THWN-2.

D. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for metal-clad cable, Type MC with ground wire.

E. VFC Cable:

1. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable.
2. Type TC-ER with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Services: Copper. Stranded.

B. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger, except VFC cable, which shall be extra flexible stranded.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-2/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-2/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN-2/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

D. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN-2/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable.

E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-2/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.

F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-2/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

G. VFC Output Circuits: Type TC-ER cable with braided shield.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 16130 "Raceways and Boxes" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips that will not damage cables or raceway.

E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

F. Support cables according to Section 16073 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 16091 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply listed firestopping materials to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Use fire stopping systems approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.

2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification (ATS) “INSPECTION AND TEST PROCEDURES.” Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice and termination in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices and terminations are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.

   a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice/termination 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
   b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
   c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices/terminations checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

B. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Procedures used.
2. Results that comply with requirements.
3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

C. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 16120

SECTION 16123

CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. RS-232 cabling.
3. RS-485 cabling.
4. Low-voltage control cabling.
5. Control-circuit conductors.
6. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

C. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

D. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).

E. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Maintenance Data: For wire and cable to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
1. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install UTP cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

A. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of Category 5e, RS-485, RS-232, and multi-conductor cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.

1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
3. Straps and other devices.

B. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes." Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.

1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

2.2 UTP CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products complying with the COH cabling standard:

B. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:

   a. Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or Type CMG; or Type MPP, Type CMP, Type MPR, Type CMR, Type MP, or Type MPG.

2.3 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products complying with the COH cabling standard:

B. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.

C. Connecting Blocks: 110 style for Category 5e. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare; integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

2.4 RS-232 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

2.5 RS-485 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM[or Type CMG].

1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

2.6 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

2.7 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, complying with UL 83.

B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, complying with UL 83.

C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

B. Comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

E. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.

B. Comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes" for installation of conduits and wireways.

C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.

D. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:

1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
2. Secure conduits to backboard if entering room from overhead.
3. Extend conduits [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> above finished floor.
4. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

E. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
6. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
7. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
8. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

2. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes."

E. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
2. Cable shall be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

F. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

G. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).

3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

5. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).

6. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

3.3 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables.

3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits, No 12 AWG.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. For data communication wiring, comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not after cross connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

D. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 16123

SECTION 16130

RACEWAYS AND BOXES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Surface raceways.
3. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 16073 "Hangers and Supports for Elecrical Systems" for support of conduits, wireways and boxes serving electrical systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing

D. FMC: Flexible metallic conduit

E. LFMC: Liquidtight Flexible metallic conduit

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

C. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.

D. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

E. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.

F. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

G. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Fittings for EMT:

a. Material: Steel.
b. Type: Compression. Set screw-type fittings are not acceptable.

2. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

H. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Mono-Systems, Inc.
b. Panduit Corp.
c. Wiremold / Legrand.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

E. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.

I. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

J. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).

K. Gangable boxes are prohibited.

L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

M. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4X.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC or IMC. Raceway locations include the following:
   a. Mechanical rooms.

4. Concealed above Ceilings and within Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC or IMC.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4X stainless steel in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch (16-mm) trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 16073 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

H. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm)of enclosures to which attached.

I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m)intervals.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
5. Change from RNC to GRC before rising above floor.

J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35mm) trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

O. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

P. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

Q. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

S. Surface Raceways:

1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

   a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
   b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
   c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
   d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.

4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Z. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

AA. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel or wall bay.

BB. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

EE. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 16091 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 16130

SECTION 16140

WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. Weather-resistant receptacles.
3. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
4. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
5. Communications outlets.
6. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

D. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Provide plugs which match installed receptacles.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:

1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.

2.3 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; 5351 (single), CR5362 (duplex).
b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), HBL5352 (duplex).
c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
d. Pass & Seymour; 5361 (single), 5362 (duplex).

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description:

1. Straight blade, non-feed-through type.
2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; VGF20.
b. Hubbell; GFR5352L.
c. Pass & Seymour; 2095.
d. Leviton; 7590.

2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Single Pole:

2) Cooper; AH1221.
3) Hubbell; HBL1221.
4) Leviton; 1221-2.
5) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC1.

6) Two Pole:

7) Cooper; AH1222.
8) Hubbell; HBL1222.
9) Leviton; 1222-2.
10) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC2.

11) Three Way:

12) Cooper; AH1223.
13) Hubbell; HBL1223.
14) Leviton; 1223-2.
15) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC3.

16) Four Way:

17) Cooper; AH1224.
18) Hubbell; HBL1224.

19) Leviton; 1224-2.
20) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC4.

C. Pilot-Light Switches, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; AH1221PL for 120 and 277 V.
b. Hubbell; HBL1201PL for 120 and 277 V.
c. Leviton; 1221-LH1.
d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1RPL for 120 V, PS20AC1RPL7 for 277 V.
.

2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "off."

2.6 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic or Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.7 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.

B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.

C. Service Plate: Rectangular with satin finish.

D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 jacks for UTP cable

2.8 PREFABRICATED MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
2. Wiremold/Legrand.

B. Description:

1. Two-piece surface metal raceway, with factory-wired multioutlet harness.
2. Components shall be products from single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.

C. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish PVC. Multioutlet Harness:

1. Receptacles: 15-A, 125-V, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles complying with NEMA WD 1, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
2. Receptacle Spacing: 6 inches (150 mm).
3. Wiring: No. 12 AWG solid, Type THHN copper, single circuit.

2.9 FINISHES

A. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.

B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:

   a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
   b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.

c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections. Ensure such splices do not violate NFPA 70 box fill limitations.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles only.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
   1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
   2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

   1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 108 to 132 V.
   2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
   3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 5 ohms are acceptable.
   4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
   5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
   6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 16140

Section 16145

LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Digital Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Indoor occupancy sensors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 16140 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.

1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DIGITAL TIME SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. Invensys Controls.
4. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
5. NSi Industries LLC; TORK Products.
6. Tyco Electronics; ALR Brand.

B. Requirements for Time Switches:
1. Operation: Pressing the on/off button turns lights on and begins the preset timing interval. The timing interval shall be programmable for a duration of 15 minutes to 12 hours in 15 minute increments. At the end of the timing interval, the switch shall automatically turn the lights off.
2. The switch shall be equipped with an audible and/or visual warning that the timing interval is nearing completion. The warning shall occur at 3-5 minutes prior to the end of the timing interval and again at one minute prior to the end of the interval.
3. If the on/off button is pressed and held prior to the end of the timing interval, timing is reset and the 'on' cycle starts over.
4. A momentary press of the on/off button during the timing interval shall switch the lights off.
5. Switch shall be rated for line voltage, 15 amps and shall be compatible with electronic ballasts and LED drivers.

2.2 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Bryant Electric; a Hubbell company.
2. Cooper Industries, Inc.
3. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
4. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
5. Lightolier Controls.
6. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
7. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
8. NSi Industries LLC; TORK Products.
9. RAB Lighting.
10. Sensor Switch, Inc.
11. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
12. Watt Stopper.

B. General Requirements for Sensors: Wall- or ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with or without a separate power pack, dual technology type.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.

4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
5. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.

C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.

2.3 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Bryant Electric; a Hubbell company.
2. Cooper Industries, Inc.
3. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
4. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
5. Lightolier Controls.
6. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
7. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
8. NSi Industries LLC; TORK Products.
9. RAB Lighting.
10. Sensor Switch, Inc.
11. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
12. Watt Stopper.

B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
3. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA fluorescent at 120 V, 1200-VA fluorescent at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.

2.4 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller thanNo. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve 100 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Sensitivity: Adjust sensitivity levels to Maximum.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.

2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate operation of lighting control devices in the presence of Owner’s representative.

B. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 16145

SECTION 16269

VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes separately enclosed, preassembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system.

B. CE: Conformite Europeene (European Compliance).

C. CPT: Control power transformer.

D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. NC: Normally closed.

G. NO: Normally open.

H. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

I. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.

J. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

K. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated.

1. Include dimensions and finishes for VFCs.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated.

1. Include mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Required working clearances and required area above and around VFCs.
2. Show VFC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
3. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support.
4. Indicate field measurements.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Product Certificates: For each VFC from manufacturer.

D. Harmonic Analysis Report: Provide Project-specific calculations and manufacturer's statement of compliance with IEEE 519.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic circuit breaker and motor-circuit protector trip settings.
b. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
c. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
d. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
e. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate, full-load currents.

f. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.
4. Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish one spare for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
5. Power Contacts: Furnish three spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers and install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Provide products from one of the following:

1. Danfoss Inc; Danfoss Drives Div.
2. Eaton Electrical Sector; Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
3. Rockwell Automation, Inc; Allen-Bradley Brand.
4. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
5. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General Requirements for VFCs:

1. VFCs and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508C.

B. Application: Variable torque.

C. VFC Description: Variable-frequency motor controller, consisting of power converter that employs pulse-width-modulated inverter, factory built and tested in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
1. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
2. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.

E. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.

F. Unit Operating Requirements:

1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 15 percent of VFC input voltage rating.
2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 3 percent.
3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
4. Minimum Efficiency: 97 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 98 percent under any load or speed condition.
6. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 32 deg F (0 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
7. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
8. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).
9. Vibration Withstand: Comply with NEMA ICS 61800-2.
10. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
11. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
12. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 percent.
13. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15 kHz.
14. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.

G. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 32 bit, isolated from all power circuits.

H. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.

1. Signal: Electrical.

I. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:

1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
3. Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.

4. Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.

J. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:

1. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the VFC, complying with UL 1449 SPD, Type 1 or Type 2.
2. Surge Suppression: Field-mounted surge suppressors complying with Section 16289 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits," UL 1449 SPD, Type 2.
3. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
4. Under- and overvoltage trips.
5. Inverter overcurrent trips.
6. VFC and Motor-Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
7. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
8. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
9. Loss-of-phase protection.
10. Reverse-phase protection.
11. Short-circuit protection.
12. Motor-overtemperature fault.

K. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.

L. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.

M. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.

N. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.

O. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.

P. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: UL 489, thermal-magnetic circuit breaker with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
2. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
3. NO alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

2.3 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:

1. Power on.
2. Run.
3. Overvoltage.
4. Line fault.
5. Overcurrent.
6. External fault.

B. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English-language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.

1. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
2. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.

   a. Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.

C. Historical Logging Information and Displays:

1. Real-time clock with current time and date.
2. Running log of total power versus time.
3. Total run time.
4. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.

D. Indicating Devices: Digital display and additional readout devices as required, mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:

1. Output frequency (Hz).
2. Motor speed (rpm).
3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
4. Motor current (amperes).
5. Motor torque (percent).
6. Fault or alarming status (code).
7. PID feedback signal (percent).
8. DC-link voltage (V dc).
9. Set point frequency (Hz).
10. Motor output voltage (V ac).

E. Control Signal Interfaces:

1. Electric Input Signal Interface:

   a. A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 0- to 10-V dc or 4- to 20-mA dc as required.
   b. A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.
2. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the BAS or other control systems:

   a. 0- to 10-V dc.
   b. 4- to 20-mA dc.

c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
d. Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.

3. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of one programmable analog output signal(s) (0- to 10-V dc or 4- to 20-mA dc), which can be configured for any of the following:

a. Output frequency (Hz).
b. Output current (load).
c. DC-link voltage (V dc).
d. Motor torque (percent).
e. Motor speed (rpm).
f. Set point frequency (Hz).

4. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:

a. Motor running.
b. Set point speed reached.
c. Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
d. PID high- or low-speed limits reached.

F. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or temperature regulation.

1. Number of Loops: One.

G. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software shall interface with BAS to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing reports. VFC settings shall be retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.

1. Hardwired Points:

a. Monitoring: On-off status.
b. Control: On-off operation.

2. Communication Interface: Comply with ASHRAE 135. Communication shall interface with BAS to remotely control and monitor lighting from a BAS operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally shall be available through the BAS.

2.4 LINE CONDITIONING AND FILTERING

A. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the manufacturer's harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit total demand (harmonic current) distortion and total harmonic voltage demand at the defined point of common coupling to meet IEEE 519 recommendations.

B. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.

2.5 BYPASS SYSTEMS

A. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.

B. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor, and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.

C. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.

1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC-rated contactor.
2. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, IEC-rated contactor.
3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

D. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) type.

1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors.

a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
b. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.

5. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.

a. CPT Spare Capacity: 50 VA.

6. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.

a. Solid-State Overload Relays:

1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
2) Sensors in each phase.
3) Class 10 tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
5) Analog communication module.

b. NO isolated overload alarm contact.
c. External overload, reset push button.

2.6 OPTIONAL FEATURES

A. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer and a notebook computer.

2.7 ENCLOSURES

A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.

1. Push Buttons: Shielded.
2. Pilot Lights: Push to test.
3. Selector Switches: Rotary type.

B. Reversible NC/NO bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).

C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.

1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.

E. Supplemental Digital Meters:

1. Elapsed-time meter.
2. Kilowatt meter.
3. Kilowatt-hour meter.

F. Spare control-wiring terminal blocks; unwired.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.

1. Test each VFC while connected to its specified motor.
2. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.

B. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.

D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 16073 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

C. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors are installed.

D. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.

E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Install wiring in raceways between VFCs, remote devices and facility's central-control (BAS) system. Comply with requirements in Section 16123 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.

C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control devices where applicable.

1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.
2. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor-overload protectors.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
3. Test continuity of each circuit.
4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Contracting Officer’s Representative before starting the motor(s).
5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
6. Perform tests according to the Inspection and Test Procedures for Adjustable Speed Drives stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:

a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each VFC. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each VFC 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.

B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.

C. Adjust the trip settings of instantaneous-only circuit breakers and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to 6 times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed 8 times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Contracting Officer’s Representative before increasing settings.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.

B. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION 16269

SECTION 16289

SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 16442 "Panelboards" for factory-installed SPDs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Inominal: Nominal discharge current.

B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.

C. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.

D. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

E. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

F. SPD: Surge protective device.

G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Copy of UL Category Code VZCA certification, as a minimum, listing the tested values for VPRs, Inominal ratings, MCOVs, type designations, OCPD requirements, model numbers, system voltages, and modes of protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace or replace SPDs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. ABB France.
2. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
3. Eaton Corporation.
4. GE Zenith Controls.
5. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
6. PowerLogics, Inc.
7. Schneider Electric Industries SAS.
8. Siemens Industry, Inc.

2.2 GENERAL SPD REQUIREMENTS

A. SPD with Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with UL 1449.

D. MCOV of the SPD shall be at least 125 percent of the nominal system voltage.

2.3 PANEL SUPPRESSORS

A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 2.

1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
3. Include Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status.

B. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

C. Comply with UL 1283.

D. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V and 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
4. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V and 1200 V for 208Y/120 V

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
2. Line to Ground: 700 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
4. Line to Line: 1200 V.

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 100 kA.

G. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

A. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables."

B. Class 2 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, complying with Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install an OCPD or disconnect as required to comply with the UL listing of the SPD.

C. Install SPDs with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible, and adjust circuit-breaker positions to achieve shortest and straightest leads. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.

D. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.

E. Wiring:

1. Power Wiring: Comply with wiring methods in Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables."
2. Controls: Comply with wiring methods in Section 16123 "Control Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and Specifications.
2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.

B. An SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests, and reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.

C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION 16289

SECTION 16410

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Nonfusible switches.
   2. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NC: Normally closed.

B. NO: Normally open.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

   1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
   2. Current and voltage ratings.
   3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
   4. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

   1. Test procedures used.
   2. Test results that comply with requirements.

3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

C. Manufacturer's field service report.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate the general location for switches. Provide products which will fit in the allocated space. Ensure that required working space clearances are maintained.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Contracting Officers Representative no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Contracting Officer’s Representative’s written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.2 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
3. Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches with top of enclosures at uniform height unless otherwise indicated. Maximum height to top of enclosure shall be 6'-8" above finished floor.

B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

C. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch, component, connecting supply, and feeder circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

   a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
   b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
   c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Enclosed switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 16410

SECTION 16420

ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following enclosed controllers rated 600 V and less:

1. Full-voltage manual.
2. Full-voltage magnetic.

B. Related Section:

1. Section 16269 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers" for general-purpose, ac, adjustable-frequency, pulse-width-modulated controllers for use on variable torque loads in ranges up to 200 hp.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CPT: Control power transformer.

B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.

C. MCP: Motor circuit protector.

D. N.C.: Normally closed.

E. N.O.: Normally open.

F. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

G. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed controller. Include manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and enclosure types and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each enclosed controller. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, details, and required clearances and service spaces around controller enclosures.

1. Show tabulations of the following:

   a. Each installed unit's type and details.
   b. Factory-installed devices.
   c. Nameplate legends.
   d. Short-circuit current rating of integrated unit.
   e. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating of OCPDs in combination controllers by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   f. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual OCPDs in combination controllers.

2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

   1. Routine maintenance requirements for enclosed controllers and installed components.
   2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
   3. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
   4. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming reduced-voltage solid-state controllers.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

   1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

D. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 16074 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store enclosed controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect enclosed controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.

B. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover enclosed controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers; install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

B. Interruption of Existing Electrical Systems: Do not interrupt electrical systems in facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Contracting Officer's Representative no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical systems.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical systems without Contracting Officer's Representative written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed controllers with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FULL-VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS

A. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.

B. Motor-Starting Switches: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
   c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.
   d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
   e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

2. Configuration: Nonreversing.
3. Surface mounting.
4. Red pilot light.

C. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
   c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.
   d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
   e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

2. Configuration: Nonreversing.
3. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type.
4. Surface mounting.
5. Red pilot light.

D. Magnetic Controllers: Full voltage, across the line, electrically held.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
   c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.
   d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
   e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

2. Configuration: Nonreversing.
3. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors.

   a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.

4. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
5. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.

    a. CPT Spare Capacity: 50 VA.

6. Bimetallic Overload Relays:

    a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    b. Class 10 tripping characteristic.
    c. Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    d. Ambient compensated.
    e. Automatic resetting.

7. N.C. and N.O., isolated overload alarm contact.
8. External overload reset push button.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.

1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy-duty, oiltight type.

    a. Push Buttons: Shielded types; momentary as indicated.
    b. Pilot Lights: LED types; colors as indicated.
    c. Selector Switches: Rotary type.

B. Reversible N.C./N.O. auxiliary contact(s).

C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.

E. Breather and drain assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in Type 4X enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.

F. Space heaters, with N.C. auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in Type 4X enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.

G. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.

H. Cover gaskets for Type 1 enclosures.

I. Terminals for connecting power factor correction capacitors to the load side of overload relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and surfaces to receive enclosed controllers, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine enclosed controllers before installation. Reject enclosed controllers that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on walls with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 16073 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

C. Install fuses in each fusible-switch enclosed controller.

D. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Section 16491 "Fuses."

E. Install heaters in thermal overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.

F. Install power factor correction capacitors to increase motor power factor to at least 90 percent. Connect to the load side of overload relays. If connected to the load side of overload relays, adjust overload heater sizes to accommodate the reduced motor full-load currents.

G. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify enclosed controllers, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved nameplate.
3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

3.4 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Install wiring between enclosed controllers and remote devices and facility's central control system. Comply with requirements in Section 16123 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.

C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control selection devices where applicable.

1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switch is in manual-control position.
2. Connect selector switches with enclosed-controller circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation.

2. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
3. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed-controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
4. Test continuity of each circuit.
5. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within plus or minus 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Contracting Officer's Representative before starting the motor(s).
6. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
7. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
8. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
9. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

   a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each multi-pole enclosed controller. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
   b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each multi-pole enclosed controller 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
   c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

10. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports including a certified report that identifies enclosed controllers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.

B. Adjust overload-relay heaters or settings if power factor correction capacitors are connected to the load side of the overload relays.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.

B. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controllers.

END OF SECTION 16420

SECTION 16442

PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.

B. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
6. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
7. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

C. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate general location for panelboards. Select products which will fit in the allocated space. Ensure that required working space clearances are maintained.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F (minus 5 deg C) to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Contracting Officer''s Representative no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Contracting Officer's Representative's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

A. Enclosures: Surface-mounted cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.

2. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
3. Finishes:

   a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
   b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
   c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.

4. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.

B. Incoming Mains Location: Top or bottom as required for the installation.

C. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.

D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.

E. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

G. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.2 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only as scheduled.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.3 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:

a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.

2.4 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Mount top of trim 72 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

C. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

D. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.

E. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

F. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

G. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment:

        1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.

1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 16442

SECTION 16460

DRY-TYPE TRANSFORMERS - 600 VOLT AND BELOW PRIMARY
AND RATED 500 kVA AND SMALLER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A . This section specifies the furnishing and installation of dry-type transformers with 600 volt and below primary and rated 500 kVA and smaller.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A . NEMA ST 20 - Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications.

B . UL 506 - Specialty Transformers.

C . UL 508 – Industrial Control Panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 RATINGS

A . Required kVA, voltages, phases and winding configurations are indicated on the drawings. Transformers must be rated for 60 hertz operation, self-cooled NEMA Class AA.

2.02 COILS

A . Windings. Use aluminum or copper wire (bar stock) for coil windings. Aluminum foil windings are not acceptable.

B . Taps. Furnish transformers with full load rated taps in the primary winding as follows:

KVA Rating	Taps
3-15 kVA, single phase; 9-15 kVA, three phase	Two 5 percent taps below rated voltage
25-100 kVA, single phase; 30-300 kVA, three phase	Six 2-1/2 percent taps, four below and two above rated voltage
167-250 kVA, single phase; 500 kVA, three phase	Four 2-1/2 percent taps, two below and two above rated voltage

2.03 INSULATION

A. Provide transformers rated at a 150°C temperature over a 40°C ambient. Provide all insulating materials in compliance with NEMA ST20 standards for a 220°C, UL component recognized insulation system. Provide transformers capable of sustaining a continuous overload without exceeding their rated rise over a 40°C ambient. Provide transformers rated from 30 kVA through 150 kVA with 208/120-volt wye secondaries having a minimum rating of K=13.

2.04 HARMONIC FILTERS

A. For transformers having 208/120-volt wye secondaries, provide one neutral insertion filter immediately adjacent to the transformer matched to the transformer full load rating. Each filter shall be series-connected, bi-directional, and tuned to minimize 3rd-order current harmonics in the secondary neutral connection to the transformer. For ratings up to 150 kVA, neutral filters shall be wall-mounted. For ratings from 225 kVA through 500 kVA, neutral filters may be free-standing. Each neutral insertion filter shall consist of passive inductive/capacitive elements housed in a NEMA 1 enclosure. The enclosure shall include power terminal blocks for phase and neutral conductors and shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Units shall be listed in accordance with UL 508. Neutral insertion filters shall be HLN***-F7 series manufactured by Harmonics Limited, 731 Main Street, Monroe, CT 06468.

2.05 SOUND REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide manufacturer's certification that average sound levels will not exceed the following limits as measured in accordance with NEMA ST 20-4.12.

kVA Rating	Sound Level
0-9	40 dB
10-50	45 dB
51-150	50 dB
151-300	55 dB
301-500	60 dB

2.06 EFFICIENCY

A . Provide manufacturer's certification that total losses will not exceed the following percentages of the transformer rating.

kVA Rating	150°C Rise	115°C Rise	80°C Rise
30-75 kVA	3.71%	2.88%	2.65%
112.5-225 kVA	2.84%	2.33%	1.80%
300-500 kVA	2.47%	1.94%	1.60%

2.07 CONSTRUCTION

A . Enclosure. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, install transformers in metal enclosures designed to provide air cooling and to prevent accidental contact with live conductors.

B . Wiring Compartment. Locate the wiring compartment below the core and coil. Have the compartment cooled by air circulation or insulated from the core and coil with a suitable thermal barrier.

C . Grounding. Ground the core of the transformer to the enclosure with a flexible grounding conductor sized according to NEC requirements.

D . Mounting Brackets. Furnish mounting brackets, as required, for wall or structure mounting of transformers rated 45 kVA and less.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 TAP SETTING

A . Select the appropriate tap setting on transformer so that the actual secondary voltage is ± 1/2 of a tap span at full load. Record the transformer serial number, kVA rating, selected tap setting and secondary voltage readings. Submit three copies of the record to the Owner's representative.

3.02 CONDUIT CONNECTIONS

A . Attach incoming and outgoing conduits to the transformer enclosure with 24-inch long flexible metal conduit. Run a bonding jumper, sized per NEC Table 250-102, on outside of flexible conduit.

3.03 CABLE CONNECTIONS

A . Make transformer cable connections with compression-type lugs suitable for termination of 75°C rated conductors. Position lugs so that field connections and wiring will not be exposed to temperature above 75°C.

3.04 FLOOR MOUNTING

A . Maintain a minimum of 6 inches free air space between enclosure and walls. Install pad type vibration isolators, Korfund Elasto-Grip or approved substitute, sized at 50 pounds per square inch between transformer and floor.

3.05 WALL MOUNTING

A . Securely anchor wall mounting brackets to wall to provide adequate support. Install pad type vibration isolators, Korfund Elasto-Grip or approved substitute, sized at 50 pounds per square inch between transformer and wall.

3.06 MOUNTING FROM STRUCTURE

A . Suspend transformers by means of trapeze hangers constructed of galvanized all-thread rods and metal framing channels. Make double-nut connections between rods and channels. Provide stainless steel locknuts and washers. Locate to provide adequate ventilation and accessibility. Install pad type vibration isolators, Korfund Elasto-Grip or approved substitute, sized at 50 pounds per square inch between transformer and trapeze hanger.

END OF SECTION 16460

SECTION 16461

LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1000 kVA:

1. Distribution transformers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Source quality-control test reports.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type through one source from the same manufacturer as the panelboards.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91, "Test Code for Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

B. Coordinate installation of wall-mounting and structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Challenger Electrical Equipment Corp.; a division of Eaton Corp.
2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
3. General Electric Company.
4. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
5. Square D; Schneider Electric.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.

B. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.

C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.

1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
2. Coil Material: Copper.

2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

A. Comply with NEMA ST 20, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.

B. Cores: One leg per phase.

C. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.

1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.

D. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.

1. Finish Color: Gray.

E. Taps for Transformers 7.5 to 24 kVA: One 5 percent tap above and one 5 percent tap below normal full capacity.

F. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.

G. Insulation Class: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 150 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.

H. Energy Efficiency for Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:

1. Complying with NEMA TP 1, Class 1 efficiency levels.
2. Tested according to NEMA TP 2.

I. K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.

1. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor.
2. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.

J. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.

K. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for coil and core.

L. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Minimum of 3 dBA less than NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

2.4 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each distribution transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.91.

B. Factory Sound-Level Tests: Conduct sound-level tests on equipment for this Project.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.

B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.

D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Section 16060 "Grounding and Bonding" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall-mounted transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer or as indicated.

1. Brace and support wall-mounted transformers as indicated.

B. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounting transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements in Section 16073 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Section 16060 "Grounding and Bonding."

B. Connect wiring according to Section 16120 "Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

C. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.

D. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections.

1. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
2. Perform 2 follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at 4 months and the other at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
3. Prepare a certified report identifying transformer checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.

E. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.

B. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 16461

SECTION 16475

FUSES - 600 VOLT AND BELOW

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A . This section specifies the furnishing and installation of low voltage fuses rated 600 volts and below.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A . NEMA FU 1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses.

B . UL 198C - High-Interrupting-Capacity Fuses, Current-Limiting Type.

C . UL 198D - Class K Fuses.

D . UL 198E - Class R Fuses.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 VOLTAGE

A . Provide fuses with a voltage rating suitable for the nominal voltage of the system in which they are to be applied.

2.02 TYPES

A . Time Delay Fuses. Unless otherwise indicated, provide UL Class RK-5 time delay, current limiting fuses having 200,000 rms symmetrical amperes interrupting rating. Use on all 600-ampere or smaller circuits supplying individual motors and transformers, and where otherwise indicated.

B . Non-Time Delay Fuses. Fuses indicated by "K-1" on the drawings are UL Class RK-1 non-time delay having 200,000 rms symmetrical amperes interrupting rating. Use on all 600-ampere or smaller circuits supplying branch circuit panelboards, resistance heating and where otherwise indicated.

C . Class L Fuses. Fuses rated 601-6000 amperes are UL Class L with 200,000 rms symmetrical amperes interrupting rating.

D . Cable Limiters. Provide cable limiters rated 600 volts with tubular-type terminals for compression connection to cable. Cable limiters shall be compatible with the cable to be protected.

2.03 MANUFACTURER

A . Low voltage fuses must be products of a single manufacturer.

2.04 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A . Acceptable manufacturers are Bussman, Gould-Shawmut, and Littelfuse.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A . Instructions. Follow the manufacturer's installation instructions.

B . Fuse Clips. Check fasteners on fuse clips for tightness when installing fuses.

C . Labels. Install fuses so label is in an upright, readable position. Fuses without labels are not acceptable.

3.02 SPARE FUSES

A . As spares, provide the greater amount of either three fuses or 10 percent of each size and type installed. Deliver the spare fuses to the Owner at the time of final acceptance of the project. Neatly encase the spare fuses in suitable containers or cabinets.

END OF SECTION 16475

SECTION 16490

ENCLOSED SAFETY SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A . This section specifies the furnishing and installation of enclosed safety switches.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A . UL 98 - Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches.

B . NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CHARACTERISTICS

A . Voltage. Provide switches with a voltage rating of 250 volts d-c, 240 volts or 600 volts a-c, as required for the installed system voltage.

B . Type. Provide switches conforming to NEMA KS 1 standard for Type HD (heavy duty).

C . Contacts. Provide switches with quick-make, quick-break contacts, rated minimum 30-ampere at designated voltage, unless noted otherwise.

D . Poles. Unless otherwise shown, provide 3-pole, visible blade switches.

2.02 CONSTRUCTION

A . Enclosure. Provide NEMA 1 switch enclosures for indoor dry locations and NEMA 3R for outdoor locations unless otherwise shown.

B . Operating Handle. Provide a handle suitable for padlocking in the OFF position with as many as three padlocks of 5/16-inch diameter shank. Use a defeatable, front accessible, coin-proof door interlock to prevent opening the door when the switch is in the ON position and to prevent turning the switch ON when the door is open.

C . Terminal Shield. Provide incoming line terminals with an insulated shield so that no live parts are exposed when the door is open.

D . Neutral. Provide each switch with an isolated, fully rated neutral block. Make provisions for bonding the block to the enclosure.

E . Ground. Provide each switch with a ground lug.

F . Fuse Holders. Where fusible switches are shown, provide switches with rejection-type fuse holders which are suitable for use with fuses specified.

G . Nameplates. Provide metal nameplates, front cover mounted, that indicates the switch type, catalog number and horsepower rating (with both standard and time delay fuses).

H . Service Entrance. Safety switches furnished as service entrance switches shall be suitable for such use. Provide each switch with a neutral bus and SE label.

2.03 LISTING

A . UL 98 - Safety Standard for Enclosed Switches.

2.04 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A . Acceptable manufacturers are Cutler-Hammer, General Electric, Siemens, and Square D.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

A . Install switches where indicated on drawings. In general, mount so that operating handle is approximately 60 inches above finished floor. Where grouped, align tops of switches.

END OF SECTION 16490

SECTION 16510

LIGHTING FIXTURES AND LAMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A . This section specifies the furnishing and installation of lighting fixtures complete with lamps and other accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A . ANSI C78 Series - Lamps.

B . ANSI C82 Series - Ballasts.

C . UL 844 - Electric Lighting Fixtures for Use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

D . UL 935 - Fluorescent-Lamp Ballasts.

E . UL 1029 - High-Intensity-Discharge Lamp Ballasts.

F . UL 1570 - Fluorescent Lighting Fixtures.

G . UL 1571 - Incandescent Lighting Fixtures.

H . UL 1572 - High-Intensity-Discharge Lighting Fixtures.

I . UL 1574 - Track Lighting Systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 LIGHTING FIXTURES

A . Lighting fixtures are specified by type and manufacturer in the lighting fixture schedule on the drawings. Provide only fixtures listed in the lighting fixture schedule. Where fixture listings appear incomplete or may be superseded by more recent fixture offerings from the listed manufacturer, request clarification from the Owner's Representative during the submission process. Provide complete fixture assemblies including lamps, ballasts, integral controls, protective fusing, poles, support arms, and all other accessories indicated for a complete, operational lighting system.

2.02 LAMPS

A . Provide lamps for lighting fixtures. Types are specified in the lighting fixture schedule. Use energy saving type fluorescent lamps. Where metal halide lamps are specified in open fixtures, only those lamps designated by ANSI as Type “O” shall be provided. ANSI Type “S” lamps are not acceptable. Where specific lamp product numbers are included in the lighting fixture schedule, equivalent products from other acceptable manufacturers may be used, only if approved by the corresponding fixture manufacturer. Acceptable lamp manufacturers include General Electric, Osram/Sylvania, Philips, and Venture.

2.03 BALLASTS

A . General. Provide lighting fixture ballasts as required for proper operation of the lamps specified for each fixture type.

B . Fluorescent. Provide fixtures with Class P ballasts with power factor greater than 0.95 and Class A sound ratings. Provide fully electronic instant start ballasts for T8 and compact fluorescent lamps except where occupancy sensors are employed. Programmed start ballasts shall be provided for fixtures controlled by occupancy sensors. Provide ballasts with ballast factors greater than 0.95, crest factor less than 1.7, FCC Class A compliance for RFI/EMI, and total harmonic distortion less than 20 percent. Use ballasts tested or approved by Electrical Testing Laboratories and Certified Ballast Manufacturers. Fluorescent ballasts for exterior use shall be rated to start reliably at temperatures as low as 0ºF. Acceptable manufacturers of fluorescent ballasts are Advance, MagneTek, Motorola, Osram/Sylvania, and Valmont.

C . High-Pressure Sodium, Mercury, and Metal Halide (HID). Provide constant wattage ballasts with high power factor. Ballasts must be suitable for operation in ambient temperatures from –20°C through 55°C. Acceptable manufacturers of HID ballasts are Advance, Valmont, and the listed lighting fixture manufacturers.

2.04 LENS

A . Lenses for fluorescent fixtures shall be virgin acrylic and have a minimum thickness of 0.125 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 COORDINATION

A . Verify that the lighting fixtures are compatible with the specified ceiling systems as indicated on the Architectural drawings. Advise the Owner's representative of any discrepancies before placing the lighting fixture order.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A . Fixtures must be completely wired and lamps installed. Lighting fixtures must be operating properly at final completion.

B . Provide hangers and support members for fixtures as required for proper installation. Provide all necessary appurtenances for a complete installation which may include stud supports, stems, back boxes, mounting brackets, frames, or plaster rings.

C . Support fixtures from the building structure or from furring channels. Furring channels must be a minimum size of 1-1/2 inches. Fixtures in suspended ceilings shall be supported independently from the ceiling grid with a minimum of four hanger wires, except for recessed downlights which shall be supported with a minimum of two wires.

D . Flexible metal conduit from junction box to lighting fixture shall not touch the ceiling as finally installed.

E . Provide any special mounting, enclosures, or fire safing required by the authority having jurisdiction in order to maintain the fire rating integrity of UL listed ceiling assemblies.

F . Immediately prior to final inspection, clean all fixture surfaces, both internal and external. Adjust all trims to match adjacent surfaces and repair light seals and gaskets. Replace any lamps which have accumulated more than 500 hours operation during construction.

G . Test and aim all adjustable floodlights or area lights with adjustable optics to provide uniform illumination over areas designated by the Owner's Representative.

END OF SECTION 16510

SECTION 16711

PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 16130 "Raceways and Boxes" for conduits, wireways, surface raceways, boxes, enclosures, cabinets, handholes, and faceplate adapters serving electrical systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Pathway routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of pathway groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

C. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B.

B. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

C. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.

D. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

E. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Fittings for EMT:

a. Material: Steel.
b. Type: compression.

2. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL-467, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

F. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 HOOKS

A. General Requirements for Hooks:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-C.
3. Galvanized steel.
4. J shape.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:

1. Comply with TIA-569-B.
2. Boxes, enclosures and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

B. Sheet-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

D. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

E. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

G. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).

H. Gangable boxes are prohibited.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PATHWAY APPLICATION

A. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Pathway locations include the following:

   a. Loading dock.
   b. Mechanical rooms.

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250 Type 1, except use NEMA 250 Type 4 stainless steel in damp or wet locations.

B. Minimum Pathway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size. Minimum size for optical-fiber cables is 1 inch (27 mm).

C. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.

D. Install surface pathways only where indicated on Drawings.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, NECA 101, and TIA-569-B for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum pathways. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep pathways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 16073 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction. Utilize long radius ells for all optical-fiber cables.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

H. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.

I. Pathways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure pathways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
2. Arrange pathways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange pathways to keep a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.

J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.

M. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

N. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

O. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.

P. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg)tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm)of slack at each end

of pull wire. Cap underground pathways designated as spare above grade alongside pathways in use.

Q. Pathways for Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:

1. 3/4-Inch (21-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
2. 1-Inch (27-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

R. Install pathway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

S. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

T. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.

U. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

   a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
   b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
   c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
   d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.

5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

V. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

W. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

X. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

Y. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

Z. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

AA. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 16092 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Use firestopping systems approved for the particular installation by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage or deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 16711

SECTION 16712

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding conductors.
2. Grounding connectors.
3. Grounding busbars.
4. Grounding labeling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.

B. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

C. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.

D. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room signal reference grid. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:

1. Ground rods.
2. Ground and roof rings.
3. BCT, TMGB, TGBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer**,** installation supervisor, and field inspector.

C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of BCT connection.
b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a registered communications distribution designer to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

B. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.

1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.

C. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.

5. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 incheswide and 1/16 inchhick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

B. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.

1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.

C. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inchcenters for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.

D. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. TMGB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section by 24-inches in length. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with J-STD-607-A.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

B. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with J-STD-607-A. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
2. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72 or 36 inchesstainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 LABELING

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.

B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
   1. The bonding conductors between the TMGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

   1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
   2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
   3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
   4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

C. Conductor Support:

   1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches

D. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:

   1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
   2. Install without splices.
   3. Support at not more than 36-inchintervals.

4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inchPVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.

    a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with requirements in Section 16711 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TMGB.

3.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

A. The BCT between the TMGB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 1/0 No. 3/0 AWG.

3.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Install busbars where indicated horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inchesminimum from wall, 12 inchesabove finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.

C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

    1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
    2. Pretwist the conductor.
    3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.

D. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.

E. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install vertically mounted rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the TGB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.

F. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.

G. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond the TMGB to the ground bar of the panelboard.

H. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

1. Label TMGB with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
2. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in the telecommunications equipment room containing the TMGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.

   a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.

3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.

   a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the TMGB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.

D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

E. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 16712

SECTION 16714

COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Telecommunications mounting elements.
2. Telecommunications equipment racks and cabinets.
3. Grounding.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 16717 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. LAN: Local area network.

C. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.

3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under the direct supervision of RCDD/NTS.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT FRAMES

A. Chatsworth, B-Line, Panduit.

B. General Frame Requirements:

1. Distribution Frames: Freestanding, modular-steel units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
2. Module Dimension: Width compatible with EIA 310-D standard, 19-inch panel mounting.
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.

C. Modular Freestanding Cabinets:

1. 84” high units
2. Removable and lockable side panels.
3. Hinged and lockable front and rear perforated metal doors.
4. Adjustable feet for leveling.
5. Screened ventilation openings in the roof and rear door.
6. Cable access provisions in the roof and base.
7. Grounding bus bar.
8. Roof-mounted, 550-cfm fan with filter.
9. Power strip.
10. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
11. All cabinets keyed alike.

D. Cable Management for Equipment Frames:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.

3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.

2.2 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Rack mounting.
3. Twelve, 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R receptacles.
4. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
5. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
6. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
7. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
8. Close-coupled, direct plug-in line cord.
9. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
10. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 33 kA per phase.
11. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all three modes shall be not more than 330 V.

2.3 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:

1. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
2. Ground Bus Bar: Copper, minimum 1/4 inch thick by 4 inches wide with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart.
3. Stand-Off Insulators: Comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.4 LABELING

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.

C. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.

1. Meet jointly with Owner’s IT Staff to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
3. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.
4. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in the equipment room.

E. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.2 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with TIA-569-B, Annex A, "Firestopping."

B. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.3 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements in Section 16075 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 3 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

END OF SECTION 16714

SECTION 16717

COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
3. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
4. Cabling system identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.

C. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.

D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

E. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

F. LAN: Local area network.

G. MUTOA: Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors.

H. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.

I. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

J. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

B. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:

a. Nominal OD.
b. Minimum bending radius.
c. Maximum pulling tension.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:

a. Cross-connects.
b. Patch panels.
c. Patch cords.

5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.

3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.
2. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.
3. Device Plates: One of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
1. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called a "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.

1. TIA/EIA-568-B.1 requires that a minimum of two telecommunications outlet/connectors be installed for each work area.
2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
4. Splitters shall not be installed as part of the optical fiber cabling.

B. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft., and includes the components that extend from the telecommunications outlet/connectors to the station equipment.

C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1 when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Grounding: Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.3 UTP CABLE

A. Acceptable manufacturers of UTP cable are: Ber-Tek, Remee, ComScope, Mohawk.

B. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:

   a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262.

2.4 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Acceptable UTP cable hardware are: Panduit, Avaya

B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

C. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable.

D. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, green colored, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.

E. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 72-inch lengths; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
3. Provide one (1) patch cord for each active port plus 25 percent spare.

2.5 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

A. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, Category 6, green-colored, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

B. Workstation Outlets: Two or four-port-connector assemblies mounted in single faceplate.

1. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
2. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.

   a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

3. Legend: Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.6 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 16712 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.7 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 16075 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

3.2 WIRING METHODS

A. Install cables in pathways except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal pathways and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements in Section 16711 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures:

1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
2. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
3. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install cables and connecting hardware in accordance with this specification and the City of Houston’s Information Technology Systems Standards attached at the end of these specifications. Where conflicts between this specification and the City of Houston’s Information Technology Systems Standards exist the City of Houston’s standards shall govern the installation.

C. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.

6. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
9. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- long service loop on each end of cable.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

D. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend UTP cable not in a pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

F. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

G. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-B for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.

3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.

b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.

5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 07841 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-B, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 16075 " Electrical Identification."

1. Administration Class: 3.
2. Color-code cross-connect fields. Apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 3 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

D. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions,

horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of TIA/EIA-606-A. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software and format selected by Owner.

E. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

   a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
   b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.

5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

F. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA-606-A.

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Visually confirm Category 6, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.

4. UTP Performance Tests:

   a. Test for each outlet and MUTOA. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:

      1) Wire map.
      2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).

3) Insertion loss.
4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
8) Return loss.
9) Propagation delay.
10) Delay skew.

5. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.

   a. Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and digital subscription line telephone call.
   b. Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.

C. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

D. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 16717

City of Houston

Houston Information Technology Systems

Telecommunications Cabling Systems Standards

Revision 2.0

June 25, 2015

Table of Contents

Purpose……4

Applies To……4

Background……..4

1. Standard……...5
1.2 The Houston Information Technology Services Responsibility for Telecommunication Projects…….5
1.3 The Telecommunications System Design and Install Process for the City of Houston……...7

2. Functional Requirements……..8
2.1 General Requirements…….....8

3. The Horizontal Segment……..9
3.1 Overview……9
3.2 Design Process……9
3.3 Type and Configuration of Outlets……10
Cable Types and Lengths……11
3.4 Termination Hardware Requirements at Outlet……13
3.5 Workstation Identification……..13
3.6 Data Patching/Cross Connecting Workstations……..14
3.7 Structures for Supporting the Horizontal Cabling……..14
3.8 Cable Testing and Procedures……....17

4. The Riser Segment……..21
4.1 Overview……21
4.2 The Size of the Fiber Optic Cable……..21
4.3 Structure to Support Vertically Aligned IDF's……21
4.4 Structures to Support Horizontally offset IDF's……...22

5. The Campus and Main Segments……....23
5.1 The Design Process……23
5.2 Cable Distribution……24
5.3 Underground Conduits and Direct Buried Cable Requirements….24
5.4 Cable Types……..27

6. The Telecommunications Closet……..30
6.1 The Design Process……..30
6.2 The Size of the IDF……30
6.3 The Location of the IDF……30
6.4 Design Requirements……31
6.5 Minimum Electrical Requirements for the IDF……..32
6.6 Termination Hardware Requirements in the IDF……...33
6.7 Structures to Support the Cabling in the IDF……34

7. The Main Telecommunications Closet……..…35
7.1 Overview……35
7.2 The Design Process……35
7.3 Design Requirements……35
7.4 The Size of the MDF……..36
7.5 The Location of the MDF……...37
7.6 Termination Hardware Requirements in the MDF……38
7.7 Structures to Support the Cabling in the MDF……...39
7.8 Cable Pathway Entering the MDF……..40

8. Special……..41

9. Sample Drawings…….41
Wall……42
Rack……43
Rack II……44

10. Wavier…….45

PURPOSE

The purpose of the Telecommunications Cabling System Standards is to define a set of guidelines for deploying and managing the growing environment in the City of Houston. The Telecommunications Cabling System Standards is to establish an efficient, logical, cost-effective and strategic foundation for the support of the physical communications layer installed for the City's telecommunications systems. Following this standard will ensure that citywide installation of all telecommunications cabling infrastructure - both inside and outside - will meet end-user needs, current industry safety standards, technical and performance specifications, and warranty requirements for all systems and equipment. This document is to be used as a minimum guideline.

Future revisions of this standard will be made when competing industry efforts indicate a clear direction is established, based upon industry-wide acceptance of standards.

APPLIES TO

These standards apply to departments, architects, contractors, and design professionals who are involved in telecommunications cabling projects for the City of Houston. These standards should be used for all projects involving provision of telecommunications cabling and services.

BACKGROUND

A structured cabling system is defined as the complete collective configuration of cabling and associated hardware at a given site that has been installed to provide a comprehensive telecommunications infrastructure. This infrastructure is intended to serve a wide range of usage, such as to provide telephone service or computer networks and should not be device dependent.

This document also assumes that the user is familiar with telecommunications distribution systems, with the cable and hardware used within, and with the installation of cabling in many different environments; including, but not limited to, LANs, MANs, WANs and campus distribution systems. It is not intended to be a training manual in telecommunication distribution systems or to replace existing industry standards.

STANDARD

1 The application of standards and guidelines for telecommunications cabling systems remains facility sensitive. The size, architecture, location and intended use of a facility can significantly affect the particular design of the telecommunications cabling system for a building or campus. The design for specific facilities should be developed by the staff of HITS as part of the normal facilities design, review and approval process. HITS will always assist staff in evaluating both standard practices and alternatives, recommending telecommunications design solutions that are technically appropriate to meet the department's present operational and business needs, and those of the foreseeable future.

Changes and updates to this document will be made as necessary to keep it current with standard industry practices.

1.1.1 Requests for a waiver of these standards, or for technical clarification of specific design issues must be forwarded to HITS, who will review all requests in a timely and professional manner:

1.1.2 Work performance and standards must warrant that the installation of all materials shall be completed in a professional manner and in accordance with the highest standards of the telecommunications industry.

1.1.3 All work and materials shall be in full accord with the requirements of the City of Houston Fire Department, the National Electric Code and other applicable City and state laws or regulations. Nothing in the specifications shall be construed to permit work not conforming to these codes and orders.

1.2 The HITS Responsibilities for Telecommunications Projects

1.2.1 HITS is responsible for City of Houston inside and outside telecommunications system facilities, network connectivity and the associated backbone cabling. These responsibilities include the review of all telecommunications cabling project plans. These responsibilities are outlined below.

1.2.2 HITS will indicate, on the design drawings and in the design specifications, the locations and specifications of the physical infrastructure required for a complete telecommunications cabling pathway and distribution system. This infrastructure shall include:

a) Identifications and Workstation locations

b) Connectivity for a complete telecommunications cabling system, including connecting hardware and cabling requirements

c) The infrastructure necessary to support the horizontal and riser cabling systems

d) The required telecommunications IDF/MDF size and locations

e) The necessary infrastructure to interconnect buildings: including routes, conduit, manholes, pull boxes and building entrances, cables, splices, D-marc points.

f) Grounding and bonding requirements

1.2.3 HITS shall be provided copies of the Telecommunication Service Request (TSR) or other such documents describing the approved project. These documents shall be provided to HITS upon approval of the department responsible for managing that project.

1.2.4 HITS shall be provided Schematic Design (SD) documents for review at each stage of the schematic design process, and be provided a minimum of five workdays from the date documents are received by HITS for review and return of comments.

1.2.5 HITS shall be provided Design Development (DD) documents for review at each stage of the design development process, and be provided a minimum of ten workdays from the date documents are received by HITS for review and return of comments.

1.2.6 HITS shall be provided Construction Documents (CD) for review at each stage of the construction document process, and be provided a minimum of ten workdays from the date documents are received by HITS for review and return of comments.

1.2.7 When a new project, building or building renovation is planned, architectural drawings are typically released for review by HITS in the following order:

a) Schematic - These are the initial planning documents and design drawings that assist departments in the early stage of the project. The Schematic Design documents shall consist of system narrative, including MDF/IDF information, and campus connection points.

b) The schematic design documents should also include drawings composed of a title sheet, single line diagrams, and site plans. These plans may be part of the overall site and or electrical plan.

c) Design Development -- As the architectural design process progresses, overlays are developed to show the various structures and systems planned for the building. Design Development documents shall consist of outline specifications. Drawings should include title sheet, single line diagram site plan, enlarged floor plans of the proposed MDF/IDF and details.

d) Construction Documents -- These documents depict the final design before bid submittal is undertaken. The Construction Documents shall consist of a completed cabling specification and drawing set.

e) Working Copy -- This is the Bid Copy.

f) Final Documentation and Drawings- these drawings and documents represent the project as it is finally constructed and delivered prior to final inspection of the project.

1.3 The Telecommunications System Design and Install Process for the City of Houston

These specifications provide a minimum configuration that must be used when planning new construction, remodeling and or any ADDS, MOVES, OR CHANGES of an existing facility. HITS must be consulted during the early planning phase of the project. Each project may have technical requirements requiring a modification of these specifications.

1.1.1 City of Houston's telecommunications distribution system design process is broken down into six segments:

a) The **Functional Requirements** explains the functional vision that the City of Houston has planned for in the future.

b) The **Horizontal Segment** consists of the workstation outlets, cabling to the IDF and all associated pathways

c) The **Riser Segment** refers to the riser cable, and the sleeves, slots, and conduits that enable the cable to pass from floor to floor: Main IDF(MDF) to the IDF's

d) The **Campus Segment** or **Metropolitan Area Network (MAN)** refers to the cabling and infrastructure that interconnect buildings and or systems on a campus or within a metro area.

e) The **Intermediate Distribution Frame (IDF)** contains the hardware i.e., patch panels, and punch down blocks and racks for terminating the cabling from the workstation outlets, electronic equipment, and riser cables.

f) The **Main Distribution Frame (MDF)** is the room that houses common system equipment and hardware for terminating the campus and riser cables.

g) **Special Systems**

2 FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

2.1 General Requirements

2.1.1 In general, this document refers to the physical elements required to support data or any other hardware systems within a specific environment.

2.1.2 Information is provided; nonetheless, it shall be the HITS's responsibility to confirm or determine the specific telecommunications infrastructure that will be required to support the required voice and data cable systems.

2.1.3 It is anticipated that the cable plant will be required to support Data needs for the next 5 to 10 years.

2.1.4 New intra-building Data station cable will be required to support anticipated communications systems. This cabling will distribute to hard wall offices and modular furniture workstations. This station cable must support initial requirements for 100BaseT or higher, 10/100, and potential future requirements, e.g., ATM and Gigabit Ethernet.

2.1.5 All new intra-building backbone copper cables and fiber optic composite (multimode) cables will be required between the floor building entrance facility and the MDF. The multimode fiber is intended primarily for data networking purposes; however it will be capable of supporting additional (e.g., energy management, broadband, base band video, etc.) communications services.

2.1.6 Complete testing of intra-building backbone copper and fiber cable is required to insure that all fiber strands and copper pairs will accommodate the anticipated communications systems.

3 THE HORIZONTAL SEGMENT

3.1 Overview

3.1.1 All intra-building Data and LAN cable systems will support high-speed data network requirements. Complete testing must be done on all horizontal cabling and backbone cabling between the MDF/IDF, Building entrance and workstations. Below ceiling cable will not be acceptable.

3.1.2 All data applications, 4-pair UTP CAT5E on existing sites and CAT6 or fiber optic cables shall be run using a star topology from the telecommunications closet (IDF) on each floor to every individual workstation and information outlet. All cable routes shall be approved by HITS prior to installation of the cabling.

3.1.3 All horizontal cables, serving the floor areas, shall originate from this one MDF/IDF and shall travel above the ceiling to their destination.

3.1.4 This station cable shall be installed in cable trays, hard walls, and surface mount raceways and communications poles. I.e.: J hooks & Velcro ties

3.1.5 In hard wall offices, cables are to be routed within walls. At modular furniture workstations (cubicles), route station cables within cubicle chases (when available) to non-metallic faceplates. When cubicle chases are not available, spiral-wrapped cable to furniture surfaces.

3.2 The Design Process

3.2.1 The horizontal segment consists of two elements:

a) The horizontal cable and connecting hardware that provide the means for transporting the telecommunications signals between the work station outlet and the horizontal cross-connect in the IDF.

b) The horizontal cabling pathways and spaces that distribute and support the horizontal cable and connecting hardware between the work station outlet and the IDF and from IDF to IDF.

3.2.2 Horizontal cables will not be connected directly to telecommunications equipment. Suitable connecting hardware (i.e. patch panels/cords and punch-down blocks) and equipment cables must be used to make the connection.

3.2.3 Installation of cable must meet all specifications identified in the applicable TIA/EIA Commercial Building Wiring Standards. Care must be taken to avoid excessive bending radii and to not over pull, micro bend, kink, or over bend cable during installation.

3.2.4 Care is required in the management of the station cable as it enters telecommunications closets. All cables must be neatly organized, routed and

secured with Velcro wraps to the cable support systems and management hardware in an aesthetically pleasing manner. Cable must have the appearance of being combed, with no tangles. Cable overlap must be kept to a minimum.

3.2.5 All Category 5e and CAT 6 cable shall be tested per Category 5e and CAT 6 performance level standards.

3.2.6 IEEE termination standards for Category 5e and CAT 6-station cable must be followed for termination at IDFpatch panels and at station jacks. Specific care must be taken to maintain pair twists up to point of termination, or no less than within 1/2" of termination.

3.2.7 Horizontal UTP cable at any time will not be spliced.

3.2.8 All conductive cabling and associated components must comply with NFPA 70 Article 800 of the NEC (1999). Furthermore, all fiber optic cabling must comply with Article 770 of the NEC (1999)

3.2.9 The following information given will to be used to assist HITS in its design and install activities.

This section will describe the procedures for the installation and design activities relating to:

a) Identify the type and number of outlets in the work area.

b) Identify the type equipment used in the work area.

c) Determine termination hardware requirements at the outlet

d) Design the structures needed to support the horizontal cabling. Sketch the route of the conduit and the cable tray on the floor plan.

e) Assign and document the work station identification numbers to the appropriate locations.

f) Verify that the distance from each outlet to the IDF does not exceed 295 feet. This distance must include the planned cable path as well as any vertical transitions.

g) Cable testing and procedures

h) Documentation and drawings

3.3 The Type and Configuration of Outlets

3.2.1 Work area outlets at the City of Houston fall into three general configurations:

a) The *basic data only* design supports data and IPT applications. It consists of 1 single jack RJ45 within the work station outlet supported by one 4-pair plenum unshielded twisted pair (UTP) Category 5e and CAT 6cable.

Note: A *basic data only* workstation outlet may be used applications such as server farms, labs and computer room environments.

b) The *standard* design support system includes data and 10/100-switched applications. It consists of one RJ45 jack per workstation outlet.

Note: This will become most commonly used configuration at the City of Houston as of June 2001.

Note: The features of these three designs may be combined in the most cost-effective manner with HITS's written approval.

Cable Types and Lengths

3.3.1 City of Houston recognizes two types of cables for use in the horizontal segment:

a) Unshielded twisted pair (UTP) cable will be 4-pair plenum, 24 AWG, solid conductor blue Category 5E cabling that meets or exceeds all of the latest ANSI/TIA/EIA 568-A and TIA/EIA 568-A-1

b) Fiber optic cable: single mode and multi-mode, graded index, and loose and tight-buffered cable.

(i) Approved manufacturers for copper and fiber are:
(ii) Ber-Tek
(iii)Remee
(iv)Corning Cable
(v) Seicor
(vi)Comscope
(vii)Mohawk
(viii)System Max

Or an HITS approved equal.

3.3.2 All station cables shall be Category 6 plenum 4-pair unshielded twisted pair (UTP) copper cable on new installations. No substitutions will be accepted. On existing locations that have CAT5E installed, CAT5E can be used.

3.3.3 All cables shall be installed per EIA/TIA 568B building standards to designated stations. Data cable shall be terminated on Category 6 patch panels within the IDF and on Category 6 rated RJ-45 modular jacks at the station end. On existing CAT5E sites, CAT5E patch panels and modular jacks may be used.

3.3.4 The maximum lengths of horizontal distribution cables from the workstation to the IDF will not exceed 295 feet.

3.3.5 Patch cords and cross-connect jumpers in the IDF will not exceed 16 feet

3.3.6 All cabling will be UL Listed Type CMP if it is placed in air-handling plenums without conduit. The cable sheath will be marked with the UL listing. **(Note: all indoor cable will be plenum rated)**

3.3.7 All patch cords cables and cross-connect that attach directly to active equipment and must meet the same performance requirements as the installed cabling system

3.3.8 Care must be taken to maintain minimum bending radii and to avoid kinking when dressing excess cable at termination locations.

3.3.9 Cable service loops must be provided at both ends of cable runs to accommodate future cabling system changes.

3.3.10 The minimum amount of slack must be 10 feet at both ends for UTP cables and 15 feet for fiber optic cables at the work area outlet. At the MDF and IDF, slack will remain the same as the work area.

3.3.11 Service Loops placed during installation of 4-pair horizontal cables should be coiled neatly above the ceiling and attached to building support.

3.3.12 Service Loops placed during installation of fiber optic cables should be coiled neatly above the ceiling in a large loop configuration that will meet the manufactures, minimum bend radius requirements.

3.3.13 The service loops must be included in all testing and length calculations to ensure that the horizontal cable does not exceed 295 feet.

3.4 Termination Hardware Requirements at the Outlet

3.4.1 Each data UTP plenum Category 5e and CAT 6 cable will terminate all 4 pairs at the outlet with an RJ45 8-pin, 8-conductor universal T568A/B modular jack.

CAT5E inserts will be Red in color. CAT 6 inserts will be Green in color

a) Approved manufactures
b) Panduit
c) Avaya

a) Faceplates for any designated outlets must be from the same manufacture with coinciding part numbers for the jacks being used. .

3.5 Workstation Identification

3.5.1 The workstation identification numbers are assigned by HITS. They are crucial to the implementation of service to the project.

3.5.2 Pre-assign the workstation identification numbers to the floor plans.

3.5.3 The HITS will need to know how many Data workstation identification numbers are required.

3.5.4 Each workstation identification number will be pre-assigned by HITS, prior to any bid or installation.

3.5.5 The HITS will provide the unique 8-digit workstation identification numbers. This number is referred to as a workstation identification number or workstation Id.

3.5.6 Prepare workstation identification cut sheets.

3.5.7 Ensure that a cross connect sheet is provided which identifies all cross connects from the workstation identification to the IDF and to the MDF.

3.5.8 Workstation identifications are to be labeled either on a pre-printed label or they must be printed using computer-generated labels or a label maker. No workstations identification numbers will be hand written labels. Hand written labels will be accepted.

3.5.9 Each workstation identification number will be unique.

3.5.10 After workstations identification numbers have been pre-assigned to the floor plans, HITS will then input workstations identification numbers into the City of Houston cable management database.

3.5.11 Workstations identification numbers are to be completed at the beginning of Construction Document preparation. A hardcopy of the workstations identification numbers shall be provided to the installation team, as well as an Excel 2010 spreadsheet file is to be provided to HITS upon completion of the installations.

3.5.12 HITS will ensure that specifications are placed in the contract documents that inform the installation team regarding use of and maintenance of the workstations identification numbers for the project.

3.5.13 Workstations identification numbers will be configured as follows: Building, Floor, North/South/East/West when applicable and workstation outlet.

a) Sample: 1A-A001

3.5.14 All cables shall be labeled with a computer-generated label within 6" of the Jack and within 2 to 4" from the Patch Panel.

3.5.15 The workstation identification number will be placed above the workstation identification on the faceplate, outlet and cubical area. HITS will provide locations for the workstation Id's.

3.5.16 When a surface mounted outlet is used the top of the outlet will be labeled. .

3.6 Data Patching /Cross Connecting workstations

3.6.1 HITS's PM shall ensure that the Installers and or Contractors will provide Data workstation identification cut sheet.

3.6.2 The installer and or contractor shall provide the Data workstation cut sheets to HITS PM as part of the final documentation.

3.6.3 The Data workstation cut sheets shall be provided prior to final inspection and acceptance of the cabling work being done.

3.6.4 All Data patch cords will be UTP **stranded** category 6 and 5E on existing sites, non-booted.

3.6.5 All patch cords cables and cross-connect that attach directly to active equipment must meet the same performance requirements as the installed cabling system.

3.7 Structures for Supporting the Horizontal Cabling

3.7.1 General: Structures for Supporting the Horizontal Cabling and for determining and providing the required materials (e.g., freestanding and wall mount relay racks, cabinets, mounting brackets, cable runway, J-hooks, cable management hardware, mounting hardware, wraps, etc.) for supporting the systems herein described.

3.7.2 Special attention must be given when designing and installing the type and layout of structures to support the horizontal cabling. The design and install must accommodate all foreseeable cabling changes needed for future capacity and applications.

3.7.3 The City of Houston requires that the spaces above the ceiling grid and or under a raised floor be used to route the horizontal cabling.

3.7.4 Hard walls, wall molding, and Power poles will be used at the work area. Per customer approval.

3.7.5 Relay racks: Freestanding relay racks, Heavy Duty 19" x 84", drilled sides per EIA/TIA with universal thread standards, properly anchored and grounded will be used. Wall mount racks will only be used with HITS written approval.

a) Approved manufactures
b) Panduit
c) Bee Line
d) Chatsworth

For 2 post racks – minimum of 6 inch wide vertical wire management will be used.
For 4 post racks – minimum of 8 inch wide vertical wire management will be used.
For 2 and 4 post racks 4U horizontal wire management will be used unless otherwise specified.

3.7.6 Open ceiling cabling: When cable tray is not feasible to install, cable supports (J-HOOKS) shall be used. J Hooks must be installed by means that is structurally independent of the suspended ceiling, its framework, or supports. These cable supports shall be spaced no more than 5 ft apart.

3.7.7 Cable Tray: Cable trays must be aluminum trays or corrugated ventilated trays. They must be at least 12 inches wide and 2 inches deep. Smaller buildings and secondary tray sections serving fewer than 50 work areas may utilize a 12 inch wide tray.

3.7.8 In the IDF where cable trays or cable racking are used, the appropriate means of cable management such as reusable Velcro cable managers (cable ties) to create a neat appearing and practical installation must be provided

3.7.9 Cable trays must be secured on 10-foot centers using dual mounted steel supporting rods, angled wall supports, or a standard trapeze type support system.

3.7.10 Cable trays will be used only over areas with ceiling access and must transition to a minimum of three 4-inch conduits when routed over fixed ceiling spaces larger than 10 feet in length.

3.7.11 Cable trays must be grounded and bonded end-to-end.

3.7.12 Cable trays must extend into and down to the IDF to protect cables from potential damage.

3.7.13 All cable tray penetrations through firewalls must allow cable installers to fire-seal around the cables after they are installed. Mechanical firestop systems will be used when a cable tray must penetrate a fire barrier.

3.7.14 Cable trays will not be placed within 5 inches of any overhead light fixture and within 12 inches of any electrical ballast.

3.7.15 Cable trays will not run above and parallel to the building lighting system.

3.7.16 A minimum clearance of 8 inches above the cable tray must be maintained at all times. All bends and joints in the cable trays must be fully accessible.

3.7.17 Conduits: Conduit is to be sized appropriately for the fill of cable it is to accommodate.

3.7.18 Hard walls: A 1-inch EMT conduit containing 4 cables or larger if appropriate can be used from the workstation outlets, stub into the above ceiling.

3.7.19 All firewalls and or bearing walls will require a minimum 4” conduit sleeve for access between the wall.

3.7.20 All conduits will be fire stopping accordance with fire codes as interpreted by the City of Houston Fire Marshal.

3.7.21 All firewalls shall be properly sleeved with metallic chases terminated with connectors and plastic bushings, and fire stopped per local fire codes with a re-enterable compound. Sleeves shall have connectors and plastic bushing on both ends and are properly anchored to walls (e.g., anchored unistrut with strut clamps).

3.7.22 Conduit will be installed with a pull string with a minimum test rating of 200 pounds.

3.7.23 The ends of all conduits installed will be reamed and bushed to eliminate sharp edges that can damage cables during installation.

3.7.24 Conduit runs must be designed and installed to:

a) Follow the most direct route possible with no more than two 90° bends between pull boxes

b) Contain no continuous sections longer than 100 feet. Pull boxes must be used for runs that exceed 100 feet in length.

c) Be bonded to ground on one or both ends.

d) Conduit must not be run through areas in which flammable materials may be stored or over or adjacent to boilers, incinerators, hot water lines, or steam lines.

3.7.25 Bend Radius:

3.7.26 The radius of a conduit bend must be at least 6 to 10 times the diameter of the conduit, depending on its size. Choose the bend radii for conduit using the following.

a) 2 inches or less, 6 times the internal conduit diameter
b) 2 inches or more,10 times the internal conduit diameter

Note: For additional information on conduit bend radius requirements and recommendations, see specifications in ANSI/NFPA 70 and ANSI/EIA/TIA 569.The guidelines used by ANSI/EIA/TIA-569 on cable capacity for horizontal conduit that have no more than two 90° bends. The diameter of the conduit increases incrementally as the run approaches the IDF from the furthest outlet. This is based on 40% fill ratio.

3.7.27 Back Boxes, Mud rings:

3.7.28 New Construction: A 4 ´ 4 ´ 2½ inch back box with a single gang plaster ring must be used at each work area for cable installations.

3.7.29 For existing installations a metal single gang box eliminator will be required.

3.8 Cable Testing and Procedures

3.8.1 General: This section describes performance tests required for Acceptance of newly installed cables. Tests shall be conducted in accordance with TIA/EIA Standards. All installed cables are to be tested.

3.8.2 These tests are designed to detect damage or errors that may have occurred in the manufacturing, placing or splicing of cable.

3.8.3 Cables with bad pairs must be properly labeled and documented in a manner, which clearly identifies the cable pairs tested and test(s) failed. Materials and installation should be of a high quality, which minimizes the number of bad pairs in any cable.

3.8.4 No bad pairs will be accepted in any cable.

3.8.5 Acceptance Criteria: Prior to acceptance, installed cable must be thoroughly tested to demonstrate that all materials and installation will meet performance specifications.

3.8.6 No cables with bad fibers will be accepted. Cables not meeting the manufacturer performance specifications and those, and may be additionally described herein, must be replaced.

3.8.7 Basic Guidelines for Loss Measurements for Installed Fiber Optic Cables:

a) Connector loss: 0.75 dB per mated pair

b) Fiber signal loss: Multi-mode: 2.5 dB/km @ 850 nm, 2.5 dB/km @ 1300 nm

c) Fiber signal loss: Single mode: 1.0 dB/km @ 1310 nm

3.8.8 Optical source meter is stabilized and has a center wavelength within ± 20 nm of the multi-mode nominal wavelength.

3.8.9 Power meter and the light source are set to 850 nm if testing multi-mode fiber or 1310 if testing single mode fiber.

3.8.10 These tests are designed to detect damage or errors that may have occurred in the manufacturing, placing, connectorizing or the splicing of cable. The following tests must be conducted as described below and in the following order.

a) On-Reel (OTDR) Testing: Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (OTDR) testing shall be conducted on all fibers to detect damaged or attenuated fibers.

b) On-reel uni-directional test shall be conducted prior to installation of cable to assure the integrity and length of all fibers. Hard copies of OTDR strip reports, at 850 nm for multimode fiber, must be submitted to HITS prior to removal from reels.

c) OLTS Testing: Optical Loss Test Set (OLTS) testing shall be conducted for all installed multimode fibers to measure end-to-end attenuation, and installed length. Testing for multimode fiber shall be conducted Bi-directionally at 850 nm and 1300 nm. Certified test records of all OLTS test results shall be provided as documentation and will become part of the "as-built" record.

d) Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (OTDR) testing will be accepted as a substitute for OLTS or light meter tests and shall be conducted on all multimode and single mode fibers to detect damaged or attenuated fibers.

3.8.11 Acceptance Testing for Data Station Cabling: Testing will be done on all installed and terminated voice and data cables. Cable tests are to be conducted to ensure that the engineering design is achieved in the actual construction and that transmission quality meets specifications

and objectives described herein. These tests are designed to detect damage or errors that may have occurred in the placing or termination of the cable.

3.8.12 All submitted test result documentation indicating "pass" condition with notations indicating any required repairs. Test result documentation shall be dated and signed by test technician and shall be neatly bound.

3.8.13 Data Category 5e and CAT 6 Cable Testing: performance measurement. Complete 4-pair testing is required in both directions for the following characteristics:

a) Near-end-cross talk (NEXT)
b) Mapping
c) Attenuation-to-Crosstalk Ratio (ACR)
d) Length
e) Resistance
f) Impedance
g) Attenuation
h) Capacitance

3.8.14 Use of test equipment with a two-way injector that measures NEXT and ACR simultaneously from both cable ends of the link will preclude the requirement for bi-directional testing.

3.8.15 HITS requires that all Category 5E and CAT 6 cable pairs must be tested at a minimum using a Category 5 Level II or Level III tester for full compliance with Category 5e and CAT 6 specifications regardless of intended use.

3.8.16 All field-testing must comply with the **worst case** EIA/TIA 568B Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring specification and must be used as a framework for testing all UTP cables at the City of Houston.

3.8.17 Documentation of Test Results:

3.8.18 For testers that will document results in electronic and printed form: Hard and soft (prints/disk) copies of all test results shall be provided as documentation and will become part of the "as-built" record. One set of all test results shall be neatly bound and provided prior to systems acceptance.

3.8.19 For all cables, test documentation must include the following:

3.8.20 All voice and data Category 5 test results are to be documented on a HITS approved testing sheet, along with Category 5 tester generated test results sheets.

3.8.21 All testing must include confirmation of continuity and proper pair terminations and that pairs are free of shorts, crosses, opens and polarity reversals

3.8.22 OTDR trace printouts and disk copy must be provided for all fibers installed and tested.

3.8.23 OLTS results are to be documented on installer-provided and HITS approved result worksheet.

3.8.24 All submitted test results and documentation indicating "pass" condition must have notations indicating any required repairs. Test result documentation shall be dated as to when the test was completed. Completed data test results shall be sent to the HITS PM.

4 THE RISER SEGMENT

4.1 Overview:

4.1.1 The Building entry Telecommunications Main Point of Presence serves as the building point of entry and the main inter-building termination point for communications services. These facilities then get extended into the Main IDF(MDF)/Server room

4.1.2 The building riser system provides copper and optical fiber connectivity between the MDF and the MDF and from the MDF to the IDF. (Building Entrance Facilities to Computer room.

4.1.2.1 The riser segment consists of the riser cable and the supporting infrastructure within a building or cluster of buildings that connect the and the building distribution frame (MDF)

4.2 The Size of the Fiber Optic Riser Cable

4.2.1 The size of the fiber optic cable from the MDF to the IDF will be no less than a 12-strand multimode.

4.3 Structures to Support Vertically Aligned IDF's

4.3.1 IDF that are vertically aligned must be connected with sleeves. A sleeve is a circular opening through the ceiling or floor of a IDF that allows the passage of cables and wires.

4.3.2 3 4" sleeves it the IDF is minimum.

4.3.3 Sleeves and slots must be positioned with in 12" of a near wall on which the riser cables can be supported.

4.3.4 Sleeves are not be placed directly above or below the termination fields.

4.3.5 All sleeves installed must conform to the National Electrical Code (NEC) and local fire codes.

4.3.6 Sleeves must not be left open after cable installation and they must be properly fire-stopped at all times in accordance with all applicable building codes.

4.3.7 Sleeves must extend a minimum of 4 inches above the floor level.

4.3.8 Sleeves shall have connectors and plastic bushings on both ends and be properly anchored to walls (e.g., anchored unistrut with strut clamps)

4.3.9 Rigid conduit sleeves must be 4 inches in diameter unless a structural engineer requires a smaller size or obstructions are present. They must be fitted with plastic bushings on both ends and equipped with pull strings.

4.3.10 All unused sleeves must be filled and capped.

4.3.11 In a multi-story building, cable grips must be specified to support the riser cable's weight as it passes through the IDF.

4.3.12 The minimum number of 4-inch sleeves that must be used based on the total feet that the sleeves support.

4.3.13 Up to 50,000 sq. = 4, 4”

4.3.14 50,000 to 100,000sq.= 5, 4”

4.3.15 100,000 to 300,000sq.=5-8, 4”

4.4 Structures to Support Horizontally Offset IDF

4.4.1 HITS recommends stacking all IDF within a building, HITS also understands that there are times when this cannot be met.

4.4.2 IDF that are not vertically aligned must be connected with cable trays and or conduits.

4.4.3 Determine the number of conduits required. This number is the same as the number of sleeves required if the IDF had been vertically stacked.

4.4.4 Pull boxes are required in sections of conduit that are 100 feet or more in length or that contain more than two 90° bends. Pull boxes must not be used in lieu of a bend.

4.4.5 Cable trays and conduit that are used to support horizontal cabling may be used to support riser cables provided the following conditions are met:

a) The cable trays' carrying capacity can accommodate the riser cables.

b) The riser cables must be UL Listed Type CMP or OFNP if they are run in a air-handling plenums without conduit.

c) The riser cables conform to NEC Article 800-3(b)(1), NEC Article 800-3(b)(3), and comply with the State of California fire codes as interpreted by the State Fire Marshal's department.

d) Conduit will be used to route the riser cables between the IDF.

e) Cable tray can be used if the Horizontal cable and riser cable are in separate tray.

f) Conduit will be grounded at each end.

g) Conduit will be installed with a true tape and bushings at both to protect the cable from damage

4.4.6 Cable trays and conduits that enter the IDF must be placed near the corner and as close as possible to the wall where the backboard is mounted to allow for proper cable racking and to minimize the cable route inside the IDF.

4.4.7 Cable trays and conduit located in the ceiling must protrude into the IDF 1 to 2 inches and above 71/2 feet above the finished floor.

4.4.8 Conduit must be grounded using a path other than the telecommunications ground provided in the IDF.

4.4.9 All riser cables are to be labeled based on a cable number assigned by HITS. The number of cable pair will also be included in this label.

5 THE CAMPUS and MAN SEGMENTS

5.1 The Design Process

5.1.1 These specifications provide a minimum configuration that must be used when planning a campus or Metropolitan Area Network (MAN) segments. HITS must be consulted during the early utilities planning phase of a project to provide technical requirements that require a modification of these specifications.

5.1.2 The campus and Metropolitan Area Network (MAN) segments consists of the cables and structures needed to inter-connect building to building and building to metro area distribution frames (MADFs). It includes underground conduit, underground cables, direct buried cables, splice boxes, manholes, pull boxes, aerial cables, pole lines, outside terminals, and support structures.

5.1.3 This section describes the activities for identifying cable routes from building to building selecting cable distribution methods, determining the underground and direct buried cable requirements identifying the types of cable used in the segment, determining splice boxes, manholes, pull boxes requirements, determining aerial cable requirements and satisfying electrical protection and bonding/grounding requirements

5.1.4 All campus and MAN segments must be designed and installed to BICSI, Customer-Owned Outside plant manual and ANSI/EIA/TIA-758 Specifications for Outside Plant Construction.

5.1.5 The cable routes steps must be taken to identify the routes between new buildings and major building renovations.

5.1.6 Obtain a MAN and or campus layout drawing.

5.1.7 Determine where the cable entrance points are for each building.

5.1.8 Sketch the cable route from the starting point to the terminating point in the buildings to be served.

5.1.9 Note any obstacles, existing cable facilities, or other underground utilities on the campus layout map.

5.1.10 Note and document all of the right-of-ways and easements, to determine if permits required.

5.1.11 Review proposed cable route to determine if conditions exist that require would require an environmental impact. Identify all possible sources of future cable maintenance problems.

5.2 Cable Distribution

5.2.1 HITS and City of Houston engineers must be contacted to determine the best cable distribution method along a proposed cable route. The methods used may be one or a combination of the following.

a) Underground cable in conduit
b) Direct buried cable
c) Directional boring,
d) Aerial.

5.2.2 Underground cable systems consists of cables placed in buried conduits, using manholes and/or pull boxes for splices in large runs. The conduit runs from the building entrance location to a pole, pedestal, or manhole. HITS recommend that all outside plant cabling be placed in conduits.

5.2.3 Direct buried cable systems consist of cables and associated splices directly placed in the earth. The trench runs from the building entrance location to a pole, pedestal, or manhole. This is not an HITS recommended distribution method.

5.2.4 Aerial cable systems is installed on aerial supporting structures with messenger cable such as poles, sides of buildings, and other above ground structures.

5.3 Underground Conduits and Direct Buried Cable Requirements.

5.3.1 Underground cabling in conduit and direct buried cable projects must be worked from engineering drawings approved by HITS and EAS (Engineering and Architectural Services).

5.3.2 All submitted drawings and documentation must include the following information.

a) Submittals and/or details of a typical trench cross sections showing cable and duct locations in the trench, clearances from final grade, backfill materials and depths, pavement cutting information, and compacting requirements for both paved and unpaved areas.

b) Construction notes applicable to the work being performed.

c) Scale drawings showing location ties to existing structures, cable, conduit, utility boxes, and any conflicting substructures and profile drawings of congested areas where vertical and horizontal separation from other utilities is critical during cutting and placing operations and any other areas as requested by HITS.

d) Legends explaining symbols of all relevant structures and work operations.

e) Cable types counts, and directions of feed.

f) Conduit types, dimensions, and wall-to-wall measurements when used with pull boxes splice boxes, manholes.

g) Manhole drawings showing cable-racking information, applicable cable counts conduit assignments, splicing details, north point arrows, and street names. Manhole drawings must be consistent with HITS standards.

5.3.3 All areas around the conduit entrances must be free of any construction, storage, or mechanical apparatus.

5.3.4 Conduit stubs entering the building must extend beyond the foundational landscaping. All conduit ends adjacent to the building must be flagged for easy identification

5.3.5 All entrance conduits must be securely fastened to the building to withstand a typical placing operation.

5.3.6 All unused entrance conduits must be capped and installed with pull strings

5.3.7 Conduit entering from a below grade point must extend 4 inches above the finished floor.

5.3.8 Conduit entering from ceiling height must terminate 4 inches below the finished ceiling.

5.3.9 All cables entering a building must conform to the grounding and bonding requirements listed in NEC Articles 250 and 800.

5.3.10 Conduit must be positioned on the field side of the poles. The field side refers to the side that is protected from the normal flow of traffic.

5.3.11 All utilities need be identified and located prior to any digging. This is to locate all subsurface facilities such as power, gas, water, traffic and outdoor lighting.

5.3.12 Warning tape color orange for the telecommunications cables containing metallic tracings must be placed a minimum of 18 inches above the buried conduits and or cables to minimize any chance of an accidental dig-up.

5.3.13 The minimum depth of a trench must allow 24 inches of cover from the top of the cable to the final grade point. See NEC 300-5 for condition pertaining to other depths.

5.3.14 The following minimum vertical or horizontal separations that must be maintained between telecommunications facilities and other facilities sharing a common trench.

a) Power or other foreign conduits: 3” of concrete, 4” of masonry, or 12” of well-tamped earth.

b) Pipes such as gas, oil, water: 6” when crossing, 12” when parallel

c) Railways: 3’ below top of rails.

5.3.15 Conduit must be encased in concrete when the following conditions exists:

a) Minimum conduit depth cannot be attained

b) Conduit must pass under roads, driveways, railroad tracks, or when bend points are subject to movement.

5.3.16 Reinforcing bars and or crutches within the concrete must be used at any location subject to potentially extreme stress.

5.3.17 The inside-the-building end of the conduit must be sealed to prevent rodents, water, or gases from entering the building.

5.3.18 All bends must be long, sweeping bends with a radius not less than 6 times the internal diameter of a conduit 2 inches or smaller, or 10 times the internal diameter of a conduit larger than 2 inches.

5.3.19 Conduit must be PVC Schedule 40, corrosion-resistant plastic with a 4 inch inside diameter

5.3.20 There must be no more than two 90° bends between pulling points on all entrance cables

5.3.21 Conduit bends that extend above ground are to be metallic.

5.3.22 All metallic conduit and sleeves must be reamed, bushed, and capped.

5.3.23 Metal sleeves through foundation floors and or walls must extend to undisturbed earth to prevent shearing.

5.3.24 All open conduits must be provided with a # 12 Tracer wire with a minimum pull tension of 200+ pounds.

5.3.25 The City of Houston minimum number of conduits standard for any installation of cable will be:

a) 3 -4" conduits, 2 open, 1 filled with 2-1.5 inch 1-1 inch interducts.

5.3.26 The quantity and size of underground entrance conduit are based on the anticipated number and type of telecommunications circuits that will be brought into the building. HITS requires 2 entrance pairs per 100 square feet of usable office space. The following shows the data for determining the quantity and size of underground entrance conduit.

5.3.27 Telephone Entrance Copper Pairs Conduit Required

a)	1 – 1000	1 each 4-inch conduit + 2 spare 4-inch conduit
b)	1001 – 2000	2 each 4-inch conduit + 2 spare 4-inch conduit

5.3.28 Fiber optic Entrance Cable Conduits Required

a)	2-48 strand	1 each 4-inch conduit + 2 spare 4-inch conduits + 3 Interducts
b)	48+	2 each 4-inch conduit + 2 spare 4-inch conduits +3 Interducts

5.3.29 If installing both fiber and copper cable utilize the City of Houston minimum standard.

5.3.30 All conduits containing interducts must be provided with a # 14 Tracer wire.

5.4 Cable Types

5.4.1 HITS recognizes two types of cable for outside use in the campus and MAN segments: copper cable and fiber optic cable.

5.4.2 Indoor/Outdoor copper and fiber cable will be used in all outside plant installs.

5.4.3 Filled polyethylene-insulated conductor (PIC) cable must be used for direct buried copper cable. Filled cable preserves the integrity of the cable by providing physical protection against moisture penetration and seepage.

5.4.4 Direct buried cable requires an armored sheath to resist rodent and penetration type damage.

5.4.5 All cables must be marked with cable length, cable code, date and location of manufacture, and manufacturer.

5.4.6 The following standard designations for copper exchange cable have been assigned by the Rural Utilities Services (RUS): PE-39 refers to filled cable with solid insulation for direct-buried applications. PE-89 refers to filled cable with an expanded insulation for direct-buried applications.

5.4.7 Indoor/Outdoor Fiber Optic Cable Construction is to be:

5.4.8 Optical fibers shall be placed inside a loose buffer tube. The nominal outer diameter of the buffer tube shall be 3.0 mm.

5.4.9 Each buffer tube shall contain up to 12 fibers.

5.4.10 The fibers shall not adhere to the inside of the buffer tube.

5.4.11 Each fiber shall be distinguishable by means of color coding in accordance with TIA/EIA-598-B, Optical Fiber Cable Color Coding.

5.4.12 The cable shall contain at least one ripcord under the sheath for easy sheath removal of all-dielectric cable.

5.4.13 The cable shall contain at least one ripcord under the inner sheath and under the steel armor for armored cable.

5.4.14 The dielectric yarns shall provide tensile strength. The high tensile strength dielectric yarns shall be helically stranded evenly around the cable core.

5.4.15 All dielectric cables (non-armored) shall be sheathed with medium density polyethylene (MDPE).

5.4.16 Armored cables shall have an inner sheath of MDPE. The armor shall be a corrugated steel tape, plastic-coated on both sides for corrosion resistance, and shall be applied around the outside of the water blocking tape with an overlapping seam with the corrugations in register.

5.4.17 The MDPE jacket material shall be as defined by ASTM D1248, Type II, Class C and Grades J4, E7 and E8.

5.4.18 All cable jackets or sheaths shall be free of holes, splits, and blisters.

5.4.19 The cable jacket shall contain no metal elements and shall be of a consistent thickness.

5.4.20 Cable jackets shall be marked with manufacturer's name, sequential meter or foot markings, month and year or quarter and year of manufacture, and a

telecommunication handset symbol, as required by Section 350G of the National Electrical Safety Code (NESC).

5.4.21 The actual length of the cable shall be within -0/+1% of the length markings.

5.4.22 The cable jacket of a cable containing two different fiber types (hybrid construction) shall be marked to indicate quantity of each fiber type, identity of each fiber type, and the fiber sequence.

5.4.23 The maximum pulling tension shall be 2700 N (608 lbf) during installation (short term), and 890 N (200 lbf) long term installed.

5.4.24 Performance Single Mode:

5.4.25 Chromatic Dispersion

5.4.25.1 Minimum Zero Dispersion Wavelength: 1301.5 nm
5.4.25.2 Maximum Zero Dispersion Wavelength: 1321.5 nm
5.4.25.3 Maximum Zero Dispersion Slope: 0.090 ps/nm2 per km

5.4.26 Dispersion:

5.4.26.1 <-3.2ps/(nm.km) from 1285 nm to 1330 nm
5.4.26.2 <18 ps (nm.km) at 1550 nm
5.4.27 Polarization Mode Dispersion: <- 0.5 ps/km

5.4.28 Attenuation:

5.4.28.1 Point Discontinuity: <-0.10 dB at 1310 nm or 1550 nm
5.4.28.2 Water peak attenuation at 1383 (+-) 3nm : <- 2.1 dB/km
5.4.28.3 Bending Attenuation: induced @ 1550 nm, with 100 turns on 75mm diameter mandrel >0.10dB
5.4.28.4 Water Immersion: Induced attenuation, 23 degrees C water immersion: <-0.05dB/km

5.4.28.5 HITS approved manufacturer

a) Corning
b) Seicor
c) Bertek
d) Hitachi
e) Or approved equal.

5.4.29 Multimode Performance:

5.4.30 Bandwidth: (1) 850 nm >220 MHz at 1 km (2) 1300 nm> 600 MHz at 1 km

5.4.31 Chromatic Dispersion:

5.4.31.1 Minimum Zero Dispersion Wavelength 1332 nm
5.4.31.2 Maximum Zero Disperson Wavelength: 1354 nm
5.4.31.3 Maximum Zero Dispersion Slope: 0.098 ps/nm².km

5.4.32 Attenuation: Max attenuation point discontinuity: <0.2 dB at any design wavelength.

5.4.33 Bending Attenuation: induced @ 1550 nm, with 100 turns on 75mm diameter mandrel: <0.10dB.

5.4.34 HITS approved manufacturer

a) Corning
b) Ber-Tek
c) Hitachi
d) Or approved equal.

6 THE TELECOMMUNICATION CLOSET

6.1 The Design Process

6.1.1 Overview: The IDF is the space where the data horizontal cable is terminated on patch panels,
.

6.1.2 The IDF supports the data, and other low voltage needs of one floor of a building.

6.1.3 The IDF may also be used to support other building information systems such CATV, alarms, security, audio/Video, 800 MHz radio, other wireless systems, and other telecommunications low voltage systems.

6.1.4 A MDF and IDF can be collocated within the same room. Additional space, racks, electrical and cable management are required to support the MDF.

6.2 The Size of the IDF

6.2.1 The size of the IDF depends on its function and the size of the usable floor space it will serve.

6.2.2 Usable floor space refers to the occupied areas used for normal daily work functions.

6.2.3 There must be at least a minimum of one IDF per floor

6.2.4 Multiple IDF are required if the usable floor space to be served exceeds 10,000 square feet or the cable length between the work area outlet and the horizontal cross-connect in the IDF exceeds 295 feet or 90 meters.

6.2.5 Additional floor space in the IDF will be required for additional applications such as Video Distribution cabling, equipment, fire alarm panels and/or building monitoring equipment.

6.2.6 The minimum IDF sizes shown are based on providing telecommunications service to one individual work area of 100 sq. ft. Minimum IDF sizes are as follows:

a) 5,000sq. or less = 10 × 8 finished room size

b) 5,000 to 8,000= 10 × 10 finished room size

c) 8,000 to 10,000= 10 × 12 finished room size

6.3 The Location of the IDF

6.3.1 Since the IDF is the main focal point for many communications services located for a specific floor, it must be designed as an integral part of the overall building.

6.3.2 The IDF must be located as close as possible to the center of, and on the same floor as, the workstation area it serves; this will minimize the horizontal cable lengths.

6.3.3 Access to the IDF must be located directly from hallways, not within classrooms, offices, and electrical or mechanical spaces.

6.3.4 The IDF must be located above any threat of flooding. All water threats must be removed or contained. IDF with a water threat located within the space at a minimum and if approved by HITS will require a drain.

6.3.5 At no time is a IDF to be located near power supply transformers, elevator or pump motors, generators, radio transmitters, and other potential sources of electromagnetic interference.

6.3.6 IDF must not share space with electrical, janitorial, or storage facilities.

6.3.7 IDF must be stacked vertically in a multi-story building. Special conditions will need prior approval from HITS.

6.3.8 When secure and controlled access to an IDF cannot be guaranteed, free standing or wall mounted lockable cabinets will be used.

6.3.9 At all time the locations of the IDF must be submitted for inclusion in the construction drawings, and they must be annotated on any and all floor plan.

6.4 Design Requirements

6.4.1 Major factors that must be considered when designing the IDF are as follows:

6.4.2 Minimum ceiling height must be 8 feet, 6 inches.

6.4.3 The doors must be a minimum of 3 feet wide and 6 feet, 8 inches tall. The doors must be lockable.

6.4.4 The floor must be sealed concrete or a VCT type tile to minimize dust and static electricity.

6.4.5 There must be continuous and dedicated environmental control (24 hours per day, 365 days per year).

a) Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning sensors and control equipment must maintain the room temperature between 64° F and 87° F.

b) The relative humidity must be 20% to 80%.

6.4.6 The IDF must not have a drop tile or other false ceiling.

6.4.7 The lighting in the IDF must provide a minimum equivalent of 50 foot-candles when measured 3 feet above the finished floor.

6.4.8 All light fixtures must be mounted a minimum of 8 feet, 6 inches above the finished floor.

6.4.9 All controls and light switches must be located inside the room.

6.4.10 All walls must be lined with 3/4-inch fire treated plywood with stamp clearly visible, 8 feet high, as measured 3” from finished floor.

6.4.11 3/4-inch AC Grade plywood can be used if painted with two coats of white fire-retardant paint.

6.4.12 The plywood must be securely fastened to the wall-framing members.

6.5 Minimum electrical requirements for the IDF are as follows:

6.5.1 A minimum of four dedicated 3-wire 120V AC quad electrical outlets on separate branch circuits and 20-ampere rated.

6.5.2 Separate duplex 120V AC convenience outlets (for tools, test sets, vacuums, etc.) installed at least 18 inches above the finished floor at 6-foot intervals around perimeter walls.

6.5.3 Each IDF must be provided with an electrical ground on a system and building sized buss bar as defined by NEC Article 250-71(b).

6.5.4 Buss bars must be mounted 6 feet, 6 inches above the finished floor if ladder racking is included in the design. If ladder racking is not part of the design,, buss bars must be located near, but not behind, the riser sleeves between floors.

6.5.5 This grounding bar must be connected to a main building ground electrode, and it must be common to all IDF. *Reference ANSI/EIA/TIA-607*.

6.5.6 All grounding systems must be provided in the IDF, MDF and MDF which shall include but not limited to, cable bonding, cabinet and relay rack ground kits with #6 THHN wire, ground busses, and ground clamps.

6.5.7 All grounds are to be installed per ANSI/TIA/EIA-607, *Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications in Commercial Buildings.*

6.6 Termination Hardware Requirements in the IDF

6.6.1 They must be wall mounted or rack mounted in either equipment racks or enclosed data cabinets.

6.6.2 Space for terminations of each type of cable must be located on one continuous wall or rack.

6.6.3 A clear space of at least 8 inches above and below the connecting hardware must be provided for cabling handling

6.6.4 There must be additional backboard space for routing cables, patch cords, and/or cross-connect jumpers

6.6.5 The horizontal cabling must be terminated on, RJ45, 110 type, patch panels for data cabling and 110 type punch blocks for the voice cabling, in the IDF.

6.6.6 All UTP data cables must be terminated on 24 or 48 fixed-port high density Category 5e patch panels (no 96 port) which are to mounted on wall racks, in a free standing equipment rack, or in an enclosed data cabinet

6.6.7 For smaller installations, smaller port density patch panels can be used if approved by HITS.

6.6.8 Patch panels must support RJ-45 modules wired to the TIA/EIA 568-B standard on the front, and have 110-style IDC connectors on the back.

6.6.9 Patch panels must be clearly labeled with a type or computer generated label above the RJ45 module.

6.6.10 The City of Houston approved manufacturer for all data patch panels is

a) Panduit
b) Or a HITS approved equivalent

6.6.11 Fiber optic cables will be terminated on Connector panels in a fiber distribution cabinet

6.6.12 All terminated fibers shall be properly dressed and mounted in Rack-Mount fiber connect panels. All patch panel bulkhead spaces must contain either connector panels or blank panels.

6.6.13 16-gauge heavy steel rack mount patch panels are required

6.6.14 The Patch panel connector panels shall contain multimode and or single mode (ceramic ferrule) connector coupling compatible with the ceramic ST connectors.

6.6.15 Multimode connector panels must be preloaded with metal inserts.

a) Approved manufacture
b) Panduit

6.6.16 The single mode connector panel must be preloaded with 568ST adapters with ceramic inserts. Color of connector shall be blue or beige.

6.6.17 A minimum 12 strand Fiber housing units will be used to mount all terminated fiber in the IDF.

6.6.18 The fiber-housing unit must be configured with fiber patch cable troughs to assist in cable management.

6.6.19 Relay Racks shall be freestanding relay racks, CPI Heavy Duty 19" x 84", drilled both sides per EIA/TIA universal thread standards, and properly anchored and grounded.

6.6.20 Cross-connect fields, patch panels, and active equipment in the IDF must be placed to allow all cross-connections and interconnections via jumpers, patch cords, and equipment cables whose lengths per channel do not exceed:

a) 16 feet per patch cords or jumpers in the horizontal cross-connect.
b) 33 feet total for patch cords or jumpers and line cords used to connect to the outlet.

6.7 Structures to Support the Cabling in the IDF

6.7.1 A 3-foot working clearance must be maintained in the front and in the back of each equipment rack, and a 2-foot working clearance must be maintained at both ends of the equipment rack or rack rows. This clearance must be measured from the outermost surface of the equipment and connecting hardware rather than from

the equipment rack since some of these devices may extend beyond the equipment rack

6.7.2 Ladder racking, equipment racks, plywood backboards, data equipment cabinets, and wire management brackets must be used in the IDF to keep the cabling and equipment organized, and to allow the cable plant to be installed to HITS, BICSI distribution methods and EIA/TIA 569 specifications.

6.7.3 Ladder racking must be used to route bulk telecommunications cables within the IDF.

6.7.4 Ladder racking must be at least 12 inches wide and placed 7 feet above the finished floor to coincide with the top of the equipment racks and/or cabinets.

6.7.5 All ladder racking must be bonded and grounded to the ground point in the IDF.

6.7.6 Free Standing Equipment racks must be as noted in 5.5.29, 19 inches wide by 84 inches tall, double sided with ANSI/EIA-310D spacing and 12-24 threads.

6.7.7 All racks and cabinets must be grounded and bonded to the ground point in the IDF.

6.7.8 Equipment and connecting hardware may be wall mounted on a plywood backboard that is permanently attached to the wall and treated with a nonconductive, fire-resistant covering.

6.7.9 Wire management brackets must be used to manage cables and jumpers.

7 THE MAIN TELECOMMUNICATIONS CLOSET

7.1 Overview: The Main IDFserves as the main inter-building termination point for communications services

7.1.1 The Main IDFMDF (also known as a computer room) is the room that houses the telecommunications equipment that meets the voice, data, and other low voltage needs of an entire building. This equipment may include Private Branch Exchange (PBX), switching nodes, local area network hubs, and video distribution equipment, and/or network routers

7.1.2 The MDF contains cross-connect facilities for terminating cables and for connecting the horizontal and riser segments to each other and to telecommunications equipment. The MDF may also support other building information systems such CATV, alarms, security, audio, and other telecommunications systems.

7.1.3 A MDF can be collocated with a IDF and/or a Building Entry Telecommunications Main Point of Presence. Additional racks, electrical and

cables management will be required. The quantity of additional equipment is dependent upon the quantity of workstations that must be supported.

7.2 The Design Process

7.2.1 Whether the space is separated or combined with the building service entrance, it is, by definition, a specialized area. This room will house sensitive electronic components that will generate heat 24 hours a day, 365 days a year, and must be cooled to maintain operating performance.

7.2.2 The air handling system for equipment rooms must be designed to provide positive airflow and cooling even during times when the main building systems are shut down. This may require separate air handlers and/or small stand-alone cooling systems that are thermostatically controlled in this space.

7.2.3 If this room is to be used as a Metro Area Distribution Facility (MADF), the air handling system should be connected to the building's backup power generation system.

7.2.4 Because this room will house sensitive electronic components and is a specialized area. Detailed attention to the design will need to be done.

7.3 Design Requirements

7.3.1 Most of the requirements for the MDF are transparent to the IDF.

7.3.2 The major factors that must be considered when designing the MDF are as follows:

7.3.3 The minimum ceiling height must be 8 feet, 6 inches.

7.3.4 Ceiling protrusions must be placed to assure a minimum clear height of 8 feet 6 inches to provide space over the equipment frames for cables and suspended racks.

7.3.5 The doors must be double doors that are 6 feet wide by 7 feet, 6 inches tall. The doors shall be keyed and or badge accessible only to the department directly responsible.

7.3.6 The floor must be raised floor, sealed concrete or tile to minimize dust and static electricity.

7.3.7 There must be continuous and dedicated environmental control, 24 hours per day, 365 days per year.

7.3.8 Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning sensors and control equipment must be located in the MDF.

7.3.9 The room temperature must be maintained between 64° F and 80° F.

7.3.10 The relative humidity must be 30% to 55%.

7.3.11 Heat load is 5,000 BTUs per hour average per cabinet, equipment rack.

7.3.12 Positive air pressure differential must be maintained with respect to surrounding areas.

7.3.13 The lighting in the MDF must provide a minimum equivalent of 50 foot-candles when measured 3 feet above the finished floor.

7.3.14 The light fixtures must be mounted a minimum of 8 feet, 6 inches above the finished floor.

7.3.15 The light switches must be located inside and near the entrance of the MDF.

7.3.16 Power for the lighting must not come from the same circuits as power for the telecommunications equipment.

7.3.17 The MDF electrical requirements must be provided based on the equipment needs.

7.3.18 Outlets are to be located on active equipment racks 24" AFF.

7.3.19 Separate duplex 120V AC convenience outlets (for tools, test sets, etc.) must also be installed at 18 inches above the finished floor at 6-foot intervals around perimeter walls.

7.3.20 The MDF must be provided with an electrical ground pursuant to NEC Article 250-71, ANSI/EIA/TIA-607.

7.3.21 Acoustic noise levels in the MDF must be maintained to a minimum by locating noise-generating equipment outside the MDF.

7.3.22 Additional equipment such as fire alarm panels and/or building monitoring devices must not be housed in the MDF. Separate space for these services can be provided as part of the electrical room or in a separate space.

7.4 The Size of the MDF

7.4.1 The size of the MDF depends on the size and variety of the equipment to be installed and the size of the area that the room will serve.

7.4.2 The MDF must provide enough space for all planned equipment and cables, including any environmental control equipment, power distribution units/conditioners, and uninterrupted power supply systems that will be installed there.

7.4.3 The MDF must also provide space for access to the equipment for maintenance and administration, and for equipment changes with minimal disruptions.

7.4.4 The MDF should be sized according to the equipment's needs. And not by the square foot print.

7.4.5 The minimum size of the MDF can be determined as follows:

7.4.5.1 In a MDF dedicated to communications and if the environment allows open equipment cabinets or racks, a 19" x 84" space will be utilized with 6" vertical cable management on each side. This equates to a 32" per equipment bay. A minimum of three bays will be installed in any size building with a wall minimum of 10 feet.

7.4.5.2 A minimum of 2 feet shall be left at the end of the row of equipment bays. A minimum of 5 feet between walls and equipment bays will allow space for wall mounted copper cable terminations and the required 36" distance from equipment for workspace.

7.4.5.3 In larger size buildings requiring additional rows of equipment bays, the bays shall be lined up in rows with 5 feet between the rows and walls.

7.5 The Location of the MDF

7.5.1 The MDF must be located as close as possible to the building entrance so that it is accessible for the delivery of large equipment.

7.5.2 The MDF must not be located in any place that may be subject to water or steam infiltration, humidity from nearby water or steam, heat, and any other corrosive atmospheric or environmental conditions.

7.5.3 The MDF must not be located near electrical power supply transformers, motors, generators, transmitters, radar transmitters, induction heating devices, and other potential sources of electromagnetic interference.

7.5.4 The MDF must not share space in or be located near electrical closets, boiler rooms, washrooms, janitorial closets, and storage rooms.

7.6 Termination Hardware Requirements in the MDF

7.6.1 The MDF serves as the main cross-connect common equipment circuits coming from the PBX, and riser cables that extend to the IDF. Campus cables and service provider cables are also cross connected in the MDF.

7.6.2 The distribution cabinets must be configured with jumper troughs to aid in jumper management, and they must be racks mounted in either equipment racks or enclosed data cabinets.

7.6.3 Cabinets are used in lieu of equipment racks based upon. Security, and cleanliness of the room in which the proposed equipment rack is to be placed.

7.6.4 If the communications room is a single use room, for communications access only, and is a secure, heated and cooled space with appropriate lighting, racks can be used in lieu of cabinets.

7.6.5 All midsize/larger MDFs and ADFs require cabinets. 4. UTP cables supporting data workstations must be terminated on Category 5e patch panels (see section 6).

7.6.6 Space for data terminations must be located on one continuous rack.

7.6.7 There must be a clear space of 6 to 8 inches above and below the top and bottom of the connecting hardware for cabling handling.

7.6.8 There must be additional backboard space for routing cables, patch cords, and/or cross-connects jumpers.

7.6.9 Cross-connect fields patch panels, and active equipment in the MDF must be placed to allow cross-connections and interconnections via jumpers, patch cords, and equipment cables whose lengths per channel do not exceed. 16 feet per patch cords or jumpers in the horizontal cross-connect and 33 feet total for patch cords or jumpers and line cords used to connect to the outlet.

7.7 Structures to Support the Cabling in the MDF

7.7.1 Some of the Structures to Support the Cabling in the MDF are the same as the IDF (see section 6 for details).

7.7.2 Ladder racking, equipment racks, data equipment cabinets, and wire management brackets must be used in the MDF to keep the cabling and equipment organized, and to allow the cable plant to be installed to EIA/TIA 569 specifications.

7.7.3 Cable Tray and Ladder racking must be used to route bulk telecommunications cables within the MDF.

7.7.4 Cable tray and Ladder racking must be at least 12 inches wide and placed under a raised floor or 7 feet above a finished floor to coincide with the top of the equipment racks and cabinets.

7.7.5 Cable Trays and Ladder racking must provide a proper clearance from HVAC ducting or other obstacles.

7.7.6 All cable trays and ladder racking must be bonded and earthed.

7.7.7 Free Standing Equipment racks must be 19 inches wide by 84 inches tall, double sided with ANSI/EIA-310D spacing and 12-24 threads.

7.7.8 Enclosed Cabinets are equipped with 10-32 threads

7.7.9 3-foot working clearance must be maintained in the front and in the back of each equipment rack, and a 2 foot working clearance must be maintained at both ends of the equipment rack or multiple rack assemblies. This clearance must be measured from the outermost surface of the equipment and connecting hardware rather than from the equipment rack since some of these devices may extend beyond the equipment rack.

7.7.10 The equipment racks must meet, all grounded and bonded requirements to the TGB in the MDF.

7.8 Cable Pathway Entering the MDF

7.8.1 Sleeves, slots, and conduits are used to route the cables entering and exiting the MDF. The cross-connect points must be located near the end of the riser pathways to minimize the need for cable routing in the MDF.

7.8.2 Sleeves must conform to the firestopping requirements as established by the National Electrical Code (NEC) and local fire codes.

7.8.3 Sleeves must not be left open after cable installation and they must be properly firestopped in accordance with applicable building codes. All conduits will be firestopped in accordance with fire codes as interpreted by the State Fire Marshal

7.8.4 Conduit will be metallic conduit, 4 inches in diameter.

7.8.5 The conduit will be grounded on both ends.

7.8.6 The conduit will be equipped with a pull string.

7.8.7 The conduit ends will be bushed to protect the cable.

8 SPECIAL SYSTEMS

8.1 Radio Communications equipment and cabling shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer instructions and the Motorola R-56 Quality Standards manual. The City of Houston Cabling System Standards Document will apply in situations where the R-56 manual does not.

8.2 Special Circuits. Since special circuits (such as data circuits, T1s, or alarms) are usually non-switched, they shall be treated differently than voice and modem circuits. The protector modules shall be marked to indicate a special circuit. Various colors of protector modules are available to help in this differentiation. The special circuits shall be cross connected to designated blocks on the horizontal side. (Not to the switch blocks).

8.3 Coaxial Cable. When CATV or CCTV requirements are identified, either a broadband coaxial cable or single-mode fiber optic cable system shall be installed. When a coaxial system is installed, care shall be taken to ensure the correct cable is used. The table below lists cable type with the corresponding distance limitation.

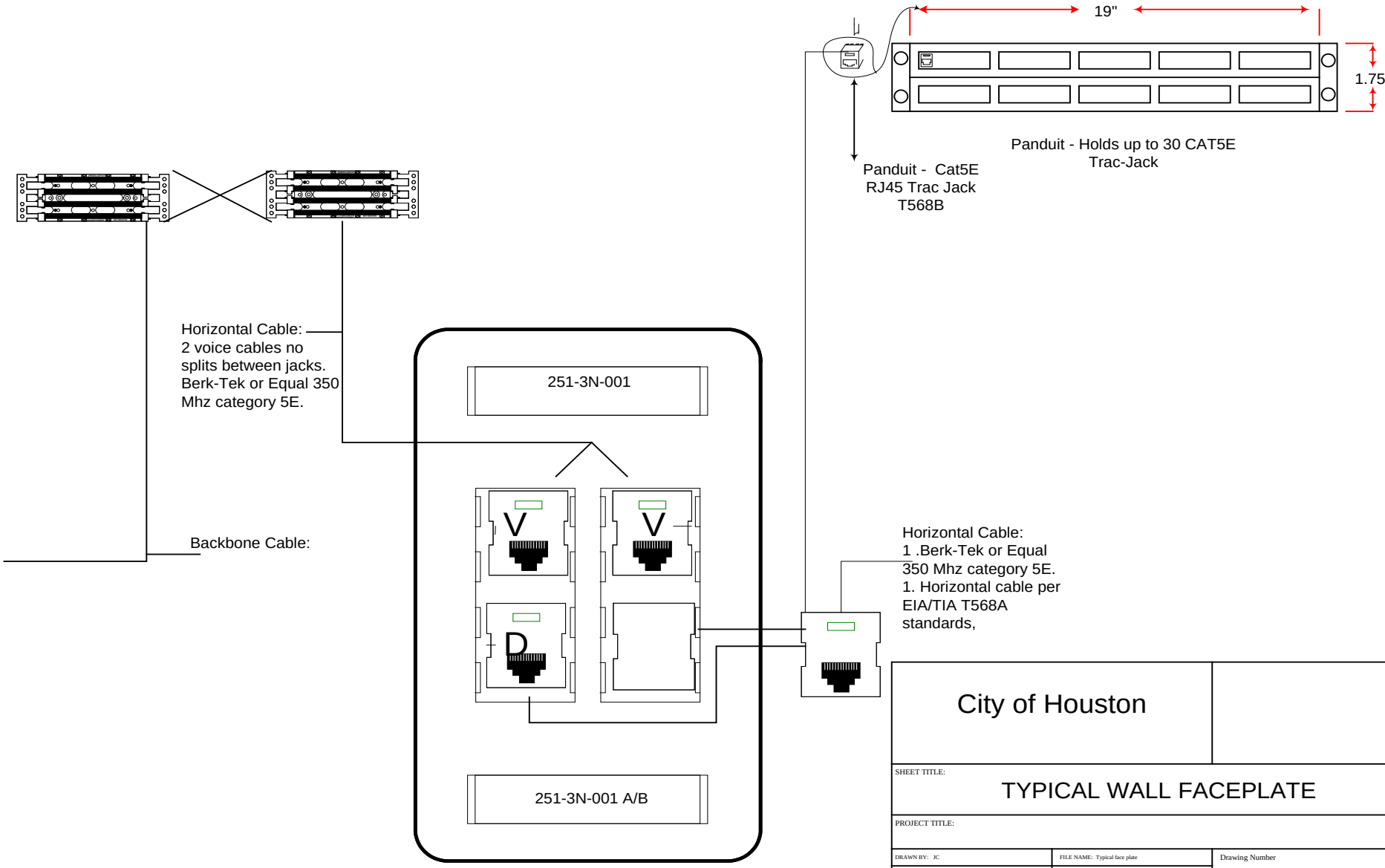
8.3.1 Cable Distance, RG-6 <=250 feet

9 SAMPLE DRAWINGS

9.1 The following drawings are to be used as representations of City of Houston installations, both the Telecommunication closets and workstation information outlets. They are also an example of the final documentation received upon completion of any City of Houston install.

Labeling Scheme:

XXX - Bld XX - TC XX - Port Number



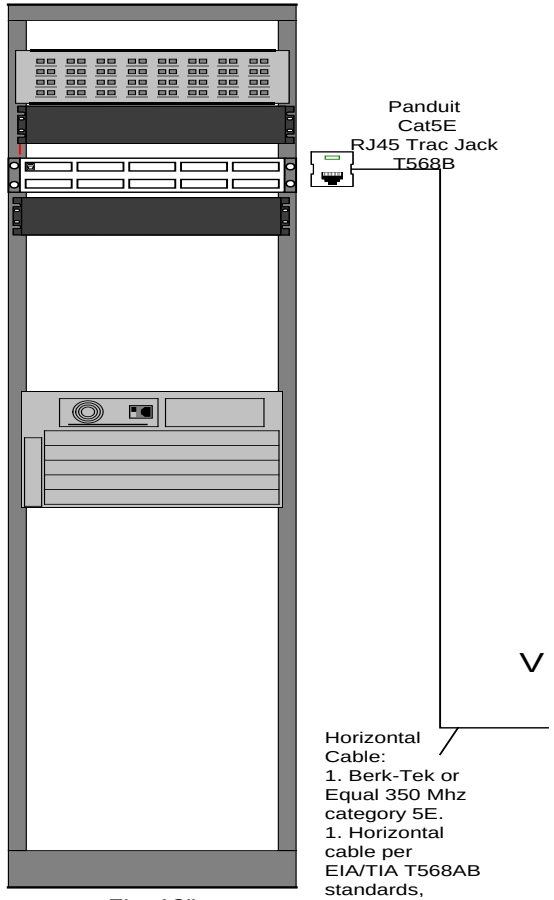
City of Houston

SHEET TITLE:

TYPICAL WALL FACEPLATE

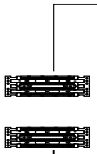
PROJECT TITLE:

DRAWN BY: JC	FILE NAME: Typical face plate	Drawing Number
DATE: 08/08/01	JOB NO.	
SCALE: NONE	PLOT SCALE: none	



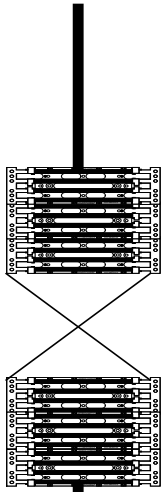
7' x 19"
struct. rack

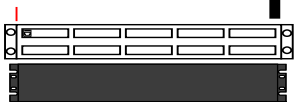
Panduit
Cat5E
RJ45 Trac Jack
T568B



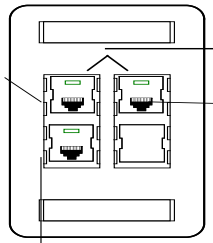
Backbone
Cable:

Horizontal
Cable:
2(v) cables
jacks. Berk-Tek
or Equal 350
Mhz category
5E.





Wall
mounted
Patch Panel



V

V

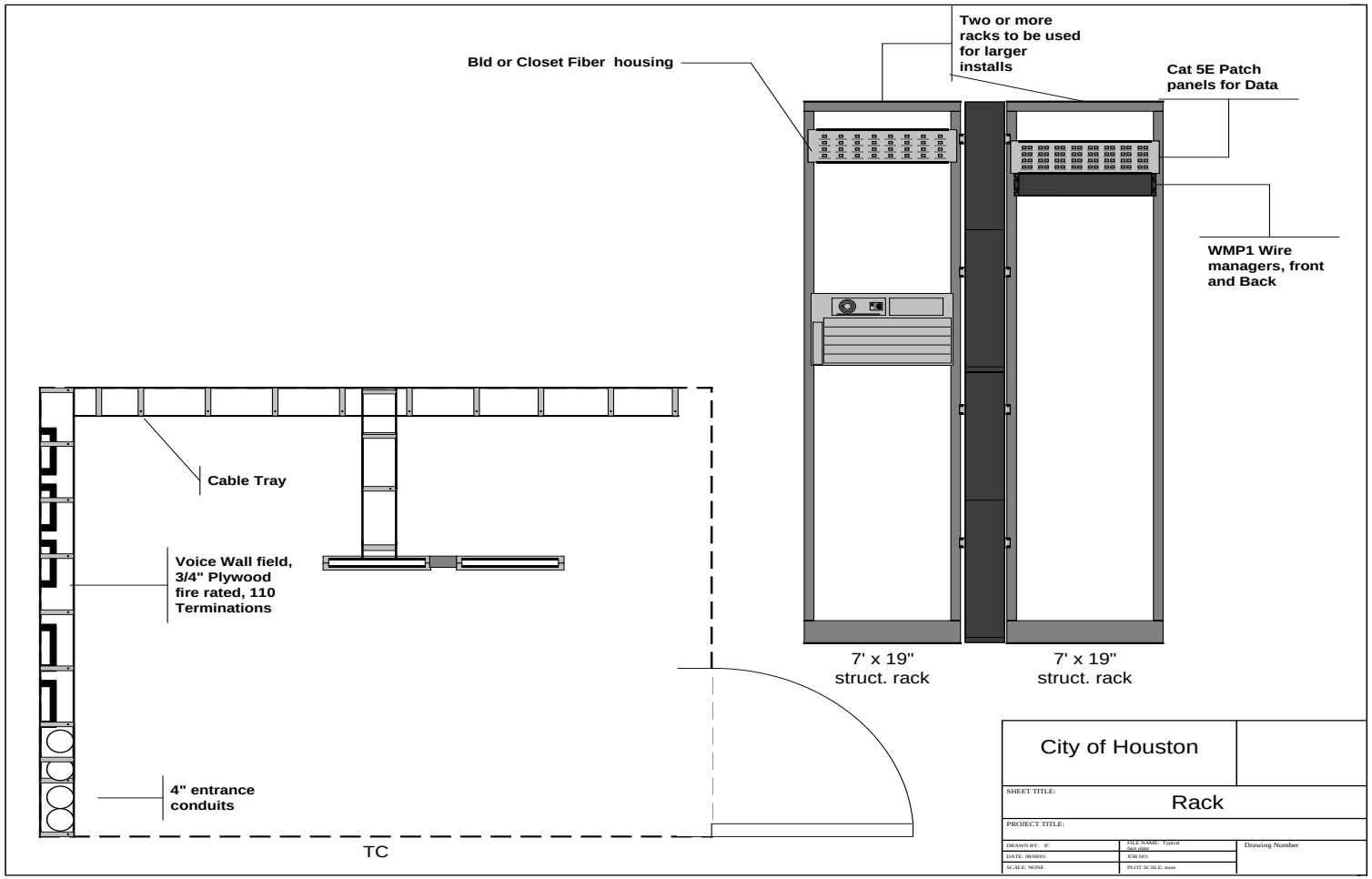
D

Horizontal
Cable:
1. Berk-Tek or
Equal 350 Mhz
category 5E.
1. Horizontal
cable per
EIA/TIA T568AB
standards,

WALL FIELD INSTALL

RACK & WALL FIELD INSTALL

City of Houston		
SHEET TITLE: Rack		
PROJECT TITLE:		
DRAWN BY: JC	FILE NAME: Typical face plate	Drawing Number
DATE: 08/08/01	JOB NO.	
SCALE: NONE	PLOT SCALE: none	


Two or more racks to be used for larger installs
Bld or Closet Fiber housing
Cat 5E Patch panels for Data
WMP1 Wire managers, front and Back
Cable Tray
Voice Wall field, 3/4" Plywood fire rated, 110 Terminations
4" entrance conduits
TC
7' x 19" struct. rack
7' x 19" struct. rack
City of Houston
SHEET TITLE:
Rack
PROJECT TITLE:
DRAWN BY: JC
DATE: 08/08/01
SCALE: NONE
FILE NAME: Typical
JOB NO.
PLOT SCALE: none
Drawing Number

WAIVER

There may be other circumstances that may require a department to request a waiver from this standard. Specific implementations that require approval of a waiver and coordination with HITS include real-time remote synchronization with, or connection to, an Enterprise network resource; connection to or synchronization with resources on a network other than the City's; or selection of a manufacturer or operating system not cited herein.

In order to be considered for a waiver, a department must:

1. Submit a memo to the Chief Information Officer requesting a waiver to the Standard. The request must include:

    a. Description of the waiver request.
    b. Business need that requires a solution not covered by this standard.
    c. Description of the proposed alternative environment or solution.
    d. Assessment of risk to the Enterprise or departmental systems, data, or security.

2. The Chief Information Officer will approve or disapprove the waiver request, based on the justification provided in the requesting memo.

Approved by:

_____

Chief Information Officer
(SIGNATURE ON FILE)

Section 16951

COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL ELEMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A . Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A . Section includes commissioning process requirements for electrical systems, assemblies, and equipment.

B . Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A . Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.

B . CxA: Commissioning Authority.

C . Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A . Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA and as described herein.

B . Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.

C . Participate in power monitoring, lighting and motor control systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.

D . Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.

E . Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period. Provide calibration record of the test equipment.

1.5 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A . Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual power monitoring and lighting control systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.

B . Direct commissioning testing.

C . Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.

D . Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.6 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

A . Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:

1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for power and lighting control systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
5. Certificate of readiness certifying that power, lighting and motor control systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
7. Corrective action documents.
8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and load balancing reports.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

A . Certificates of readiness.

B . Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

A . Certify that power, lighting and motor control systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.

B . Certify that power, lighting and motor control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.

C . Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.

D . Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

E . Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.

F . Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with life-safety systems during each mode of operation.

G . Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A . Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.

B . Scope of power, lighting and motor controls testing shall include entire power, lighting and motor control installation, from service entrance equipment for power distribution and through branch panels systems to each space. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.

C . Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.

D . The CxA, along with the Contractor, shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for power, lighting and motor control systems, subsystems, and equipment.

E . Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.

F . Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.

G . The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.

H . The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.

I . If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the power, lighting and motor control systems, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

J . If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.3 POWER, LIGHTING AND MOTOR CONTROL SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES

A . Power, Lighting and Motor Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Division 16 Sections." Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.

END OF SECTION 16951